SAFARI Technologies, Inc.



SAFARI Digital Library 410/430 History List of Contents*

Copyright © 2002 • SAFARI Technologies, Inc. • 63855 M-40 Highway • Lawton, MI 49065 • 269-624-7123 • Fax: 269-624-7248 • SAFARIPathways.com

**Materials provided in partnership with Instructional Resources Corporation (IRC).*

Individual pictures and/or abstracts may be used copyright free.

Ref. 092002-0032 Rev B *November, 2002 K.Z.*

American History 11
Section A: Prehistory to 1680 13
European Exploration and the Rediscovery of America 13
Indigenous People Before European Contact 16
Later European Exploration and First Settlement to 1688 17
Spanish and Portuguese Explorers After Columbus 20
The English Settlement of New England 22
Section B: Mature Colonial Life, 1680-1765 25
Colonial Expansion: Spain and France 25
English Colonial Economic Developments of the Mid-18th Century 26
Peace and Colonial Expansion: England 28
The Glorious Revolution and the Beginnings of Wars for Europe 29
The Second Phase of the Anglo-French War for Empire: 1739-1763 30
Section C: The American Revolution and the Early Republic, 1765-1820 31
African Americans in the New Nation 31
Postwar Nationalism and Expansionism 32
The Background for American Revolution, 1765-1774 33
The Beginnings of Colonial Resistance, 1774-1776 35
The Decision for Independence 36
The Federal Era, 1789-1800 36
The Jefferson Era 38
The New Nation Under the Articles of Confederation 39
The War for Independence 40
The War of 1812 43
Section D: Expansion, Development, Sectionalism and Division, 1820-1860 44
Early California and the Pacific Northwest 45
Industrialization and Economic Change in the North 45
Intellectual, Religious and Reform Ferment at Mid-Century 46
Slavery and the Southern Economy and Society 49
Texas: Settlement by Americans and the Fight for Independence 50
The Growing Sectional Crisis 51
The Mexican War and the California Gold Rush 53
The Political Consequences of Growth 54
Westward Expansion, Transportation Improvements and Urban Growth 56
Section E: The Civil War and Reconstruction, 1860-1877 57
Life in the Civil War 57
Politics Under Grant, and the "Redemption" of the South 60
Reconstruction, 1865-1876 61
The Assassination of Abraham Lincoln 62
The Civil War Campaigns: The First Two Years 62
The End of the War, 1863-1865 66
The Final Political Crisis and the Beginning of the War 68
The Impeachment of Andrew Johnson 69
Wartime Politics in the North 69
Section F: Post-Civil War Expansion and Change, 1865-1900 70
American Expansion Abroad 70
An Urban Society and Culture 71
Immigration in the Late 19th Century 72
Industrial Frontiers; Inventions, Technology 73
Politics in the Gilded Age 74
The Emergence of a National Labor Movement 76
The End of the Western Frontier 76
The New South 77
The Postwar Western Frontiers 78
Section G: The Progressive Era and the First World War, 1901-1920 81
Progressive Era Politics and Diplomacy 81
Symbols of the Twentieth Century 84
The Progressive Era 84
World War I 88
Section H: The Twenties and the Great Depression, 1920-1940 90
Franklin D. Roosevelt and the New Deal 90
Life in the 1920's 93
The Diplomacy of the 1930's and the Beginnings of World War II 96
The Great Depression 97
The Politics of the Twenties 98
Section I: World War II and the Beginning of the Cold War, 1941-1960 99
Post-WWII American Life 99
The Cold War at Home 100
The Eisenhower Years 101

The Entry Into WWII and the Transformation of American Life....102
The Korean War....104
The Postwar World....104
The War Abroad....106
Section J: Contemporary America, 1960 to the Beginning of the New Millennium....109
Lyndon Johnson's America....109
Reagan, the First President Bush, and the Republican Ascendancy of the 1980s....110
The 1990s and the Beginning of the New Millennium....112
The Aftermath of Watergate: Domestic and International Politics Under Ford....113
The Kennedy Years....113
The Nixon Administration....115
Western Civilization....116
Section A: Early Middle Eastern Civilizations to 500 B.C....118
Ancient Egypt....118
Ancient Egypt in Decline,1070-1030 B.C./Wars to Control Palestine....118
Burial Practices in Ancient Egypt....119
Daily Life in Ancient Egypt....119
Necessities for the Afterlife....120
Preparing a Mummy....120
The Karnac Temple in Thebes, 2000-221 B.C.....121
The Middle and New Kingdoms, 2052-1075 B.C.....121
The Old Kingdom, 2664-2155 B.C.....122
The Ptolemaic Period....123
The Temple at Abu Simbel....123
The Temple of Amun at Luxor, 1567 to 1320....123
The Valley of the Kings....124
Early Human Development....124
Hebrew History....124
The Exodus....124
The Hebrews Settle in Palestine....124
The Period of the Patriarchs....125
In Other Lands....125
Introduction....126
Mesopotamian Civilizations....126
Neo-Babylonian (Chaldean)....126
Persia....126
The Assyrians....126
The Sumerian, Babylonian and Hittitie Civilizations....127
Section B: Greek and Helenistic Civilizations, 200 B.C. – 31 B.C.....127
Archaic Greece....127
Athletic Competition at Olympia....128
Classic Greek Architecture....129
Factors that United the Greeks: the Sanctuaries of Apollo....129
Gods, Goddesses, Mythology....130
Greek Cultural Leaders....131
Medicine and Health Treatments....132
The Temple of Zeus....132
The Theater as a Teacher of Tradition....132
Athens: Source of Unity and Disunity....133
The Athenian Agora....133
The Panathenaic Procession: The Worship of Athena....133
The Parthenon....134
In Other Lands....134
The First European Civilizations....134
The Minoan Civilization....134
The Mycenaean Civilization....135
The Hellenistic Civilization....135
Alexander the Great and Phillip V....135
Hellenistic Sculpture....135
Urban Life in the Hellenistic World: Ephesus....136
Urban Life in the Hellenistic World: Perge in Turkey....136
Section C: Roman Civilization and the Origins of Christianity, 31 B.C. - 700....137
Before Rome: The Etruscans....137
Byzantium, 565-1000....137
Byzantium's Last Claim on the West: Ravenna, Italy....137
Constantinople....137
In Other Lands....137
The Final Days of the Roman Empire in the West: Germanic Invasions....138
The Roman Empire, 31B.C. to 500....138

An Imperial City, Pompeii: A Private Home in Pompeii....138
An Imperial City, Pompeii: Public Services....138
Athletics....139
Provinces of the Empire: England (Anglia)....139
Provinces of the Empire: Gaul (Gallia)....139
Provinces of the Empire: Petra and Palmyra....139
Provinces of the Empire: Spain....140
Provinces of the Empire: Syria: Baalbek....140
Public Entertainment....140
Religions: Christianity....141
Religions: Early Christianity, 30 – 300 A.D.....141
Religions: Jesus of Nazareth....141
Religions: Mithraism, a Mystery Religion....142
Religions: The State Religion....142
The Dacian Wars, 85 – 180 A.D.....142
The Emperors and their Families, 31 B.C. to 180 A.D.....142
The Forum: Heart of the Empire....143
The Jewish Wars: 66-73 A.D. 144
The Later Roman Empire, 180-337: The Emperors....144
The Later Roman Empire, 180-337: The Empire Divided:
The Tetrarchy and Constantine....144
The Roman Legions and Their Armament....145
The Roman Republic, 509- 31 B.C. 145
A City of the Republic: Ostia Antica: Export-Import Trade....145
A City of the Republic: Ostia Antica: Neighborhood Living....145
A City of the Republic: Ostia Antica: Public Facilities....146
Civil War and the End of the Roman Republic, 133 to 131 B.C. 146
The Punic Wars, 264-202 B.C.....146
The Roamn People....146
The Spread of Christianity....147
Eastern Monasticism: Cappadocia, in Turkey....147
Eastern Monasticism: Egypt....147
The Later Roman Empire, 180-337: The Empire Divided:
The Tetrarchy and Constantine....147
Section D: The Foundations of Europe....148
Anglo-Saxon England, 500-1066....148
England, the Formation of a Kingdom....148
King Arthur, the Last of the Britons....148
William's Conquest of England in 1066....148
In Other Lands....148
Islam....149
Islam Spreads Its Message and Its Rule....149
The Teaching and Practice of Islam....149
Islamic Spain: 711-1492....150
Cordoba, Cultural Center of Europe....150
From Mosque to Cathedral....151
Islamic Seville....151
The Alhambra in Grenada....151
The Reconquest....151
Toldeo: Muslim, Jewish and Christian....152
Life in the Middle Ages....152
A Medieval City....152
Farming....152
Life on a Medieval Manor: The Nobility....153
Life on a Medieval Manor: The Village....153
Moral Instruction for the Illiterate....153
Medieval Monasteries....153
The Benedictines on the Continent....153
The Celts in Ireland....154
The Reform Movement in the 10th and 11th Centuries....154
Pilgrims and Crusades....154
The First Crusade, 1096-1099....154
The Second and Later Crusades....155
Protected Living in an Age of Conflict: The Medieval Castle....155
The First Christian Churches....155
Construction Elements....156
The Foundations of a New Civilization....156
Charlemagne, Emperor of the First Europe, 500-1000....156
The Disintegration of Charlemagne's Empire and the Foundations of

France and Germany 156
The Medieval Castle 157
Castles in Germany, Spain and France 157
Castles in Scotland and England 157
Primary Need: Defensive Location 157
The Design of the Fortifications 157
The Tower of London 158
The Work of the Monasteries in Creating the Medieval Civilization 158
Section E: The Middle Ages in Full Blossom, 1200-1500 158
In Other Lands 158
Medieval Art 159
The Hundred Years' War, 1337-1453 159
Armor, Weapons, and Military Costumes 159
France Against England 159
The Kings of Europe 160
The Kings of Europe in the 14th and 15th Centuries 160
14th and 15th Century Rulers: Spain and Portugal 160
England 161
France 161
The Medieval City 162
Living Within the Walls: The City Center 162
The Guilds 163
The Mind of the Middle Ages 163
Books: On Paper and In Stone 163
Combating Heresy in the Church 163
The Avignon Papacy, 1305-1378 164
The First Universities 164
The First Universities: Curriculum – the Liberal Arts 164
The First Universities in Spain, Portugal and Germany 165
The First Universities: Oxford and Cambridge 165
The Gothic Cathedral 166
The Gothic Cathedral: Embellishments 166
The Gothic Cathedral: Interior 166
The Gothic Cathedral: Italian Gothic Cathedrals 166
The Law 167
The Pilgrimage: Piety, Travel, Commerce 167
Canterbury 167
Fascination with Relics 167
Pilgrimage Destinations in the Holy Land 168
Pilgrims in Europe 168
The Poor, the Sick and the Dying 168
Death and Burial 168
The Practice of Medicine 168
Two Impregnable Walled Cities at Avilla and Carcassonne 168
Section F: The Italian Renaissance, 1300-1550 169
A Beginning in Florence 169
Civic Pride in the Italian Renaissance 169
Adapting Roman Architecture 169
Adapting Roman Sculpture 170
The Beautification of Churches 170
The Beautification of Public Places 170
Distinguishing Marks of the Italian Renaissance 170
A City-State 170
Commerce Creates an Upper Middle Class 170
Liberal Educations 171
Religious Structures 171
The Revival of Roman Ideals: Humanism and Individualism 171
Florence Leads the Way 172
No Challenge Too Great: The Dome 172
The Change Made Visual 172
The Gates of Paradise 172
The Merchant Aristocracy 173
The Painting Friar: Fra Angelico 173
The Return of Roman Architecture 173
In Other Lands 174
The Pioneers of Change: The Later Renaissance, 1500-1575 174
Other Islands 174
Other Renaissance Cities 174
Milan and Genoa 174

Siena....175
Urbino....175
Political Realism: Machiavelli....175
Renaissance Painters and Sculptors....175
The Pioneers of Change....175
The Pioneers of Change: The Early Renaissance, 1350-1450....176
The Pioneers of Change: The High Renaissance, 1450-1500....176
The Pioneers of Change: The Late Renaissance, 1500-1575....177
Renaissance Theater and Music....178
The Papal States....178
Rome and Tivoli....178
St. Peter's Basilica and Square....179
The Vatican....179
The Plague....180
Venice: The City on the Water....180
Buildings on Pilings, Streets on Water....180
Ships and Military....180
The Commercial Center....181
The Political, Religious, and Social Center....181
Section G: The Reformation, 1517-1600....182
Denmark, Russia and The Turks....182
In Other Lands....182
Renaissance Warfare....182
The Age of Discovery....183
Medicine....183
Portugal....184
Science and Educations....184
Spain....185
The Conquistadors....185
The English and French....186
The Life of the People....186
The Continental Reformation....187
Calvinism and Religious Wars....187
Martin Luther....187
The Counter-Reformation....187
The Dutch Wars....187
The End of the French Religious Wars....187
The Jesuits....188
The English Reformation....188
Henry VIII and his Wives....188
The Age of Elizabeth....188
The Church of England....189
Tudors and Stuarts....189
William Shakespeare....189
The French Renaissance....190
Chateau Fontainebleau....190
Paris....190
The French Chateaus....190
The Valois Kings, 1515-1589....191
The German Hapsburgs: Charles V....191
The Reformation....191
On the Eve of Reform....191
The Papacy....191
The Spanish Hapsburgs: Philip II....191
Section H: The Beginnings of the Nation State, 1600-1715....192
Baroque Art....192
Colonization....192
Daily Life of the People....193
England, 1603-1714....193
Charles I, 1625-1649; Commonwealth Replaces Monarch....193
Divine Right Monarch, James I, 1603-1625....194
Great Britain's Gift to Military Hero: Marlborough's Blenheim Palace....194
The Last of the Stuarts: James II, Mary, Anne....194
The Restoration of a Limited Monarchy: Charles II, 1660-1665....195
In Other Lands....195
Literature and Music....196
Science and Technology....196
Spain and the Low Countries....197
The Religions of the Times....197

The Splendor of Absolute Monarchy: France 198
Louis XIII, 1610-1643 198
Royal Opulence: Versailles and Paris 198
The Sun King Louis XIV, 1643-1714 198
Wars in Europe, 1618-1714 199
Territorial Wars, 1648-1714 199
The Thirty Years' War, 1618-1648 199
Section I: The Enlightenment, French Revolution and Napoleon, 1715-1815 200
City Life, 1700s to early 1800s 200
European Conflicts Overseas 200
Africa, India, the Pacific 200
The Americas 201
The Slave Trade` 201
French Porcelain and Furniture, 1700s to early 1800s 202
Great Britain, 1714-1820 202
Georgian London 202
The Aristocratic Life in England 203
In Other Lands 203
Industry and Mining, 1700s to early 1800s 203
Introduction 204
Literature, 1700s to early 1800s 204
Music and Painting, 1700s to early 1800s 205
Science, 1700s to early 1800s 205
Sickness and Treatment, 1700s to early 1800s 206
Stately Manors in England and Scotland, 1700s to early 1800s 206
The Enlightenment 206
The French Revolution 207
The Kings and the Extravagant Life 207
The Limited Monarchy, 1789-1792 207
The Reign of Terror, the Directory, War, 1793-1799 208
The Second Revolution: The Republic, 1792-1793 208
The Napoleonic Era, 1799-1815 208
Napoleon Comes to Power 208
Napoleon's Final Years 209
The Napoleonic Wars: War on Land 209
The Napoleonic Wars: War on Sea 210
Section J: Industrial, Political, and Social Revolutions, 1815-1850 210
England Abolishes Slavery 210
In Other Lands 210
Introduction 211
Liberalism: Liberty and Equality 211
Agrarian Society: Landless Laborers 211
Agrarian Society: Vast Estates Owned by Few 211
The England of George IV and William IV 212
The Irish Question 212
The Liberal Political Reform Movement in England 213
Literature, Theater and Society 213
Science 213
The Industrial Revolution 214
Classes in the Cities: The Poor 214
Classes in the Cities: The Urban Upper Class 215
Coal Mining and Iron Work 215
Cotton, Textiles 216
Factories and the Industrial Landscape 216
The Exploitation of Workers 217
Transportation: Steam 217
Water Transportation 217
Work on the Eve of the Industrial Revolution 218
The Liberal Political Revolution, 1830, 1848 218
Conservative Victory in France: Louis Bonaparte, President, 1848 218
France: From Monarchy to the Second Republic 219
Germany and Prussia 219
Louis Philippe, the Citizen King 220
Section K: Colonialism, Nationalism and Militarism, 1850-1914 220
Finance, Technology and Transportation 220
Air Transportation 221
Automobiles 221
Nation Building, 1850-1871 222
Alliances of Nation-States 222

France: Napoleon III, 1852-1870 222
Holland and Spain 222
Prussia and Germany, the Unification of Germanic Territories 223
Russia 223
The Crimean War, 1853-1856 224
The Franco-Prussian War 224
The Papal States and Roman Catholicism 224
The Unification of Italy 225
National Socio-Political Revolutions 225
Edward VII, 1901-1910; Nobility and Commoners 225
England, 1850-1901: Queen Victoria, Suffrage and Ireland 226
France's Third Republic, 1870-1914: Monarchy or Republic? 226
France's Third Republic, 1870-1914: The Dreyfus Affair and Its Consequences 226
France's Third Republic, 1870-1914: The Paris Commune, 1871 227
Physical and Mental Illnesses 227
Supports of the Urban Revolution: Science 228
Revolutions: Effects of Industrialization 228
Emigration 228
Peasants 229
Poor Working Conditions, Wages and Housing for Workers 229
Socialism and Marxism 230
Steel Factories 230
Women's Rights 230
The Arts 230
Art and Architecture 230
Literature 231
Music and Theater 231
The New Imperialism 232
Africa 232
China and Japan 232
Egypt 233
Resources, Markets, Power 233
The British Empire 233
The British Empire: India 234
The Urban Revolution 234
Paris 234
Urban Transportation 235
Victorian London 236
Section L: World War I and the Russian Revolution, 1914-1920 236
Monarchs and Political Leaders 236
Military Leaders 237
The Central Powers 237
The Easter Uprising in Ireland 238
The Russian Revolution 238
Civil War in Russia 238
World War I 239
America Enters the War 239
Battlefield Communications 239
Behind the Lines 239
Gallipoli and Italy 240
Medical Services 240
Remembrance of the Great War 240
Soldiers from the Colonies 241
The 1918 Spring and Summer Offensive 241
The Armistice 242
The Dissolution of the Ottoman Empire 242
The First Months, 1914 242
The Stalemate: Trench Warfare 243
The Versailles Peace Treaty 243
The War at Sea 244
The War Begins 244
War in the Air 245
Wartime Propaganda 245
Weapons of the Trenches 246
Section M: Between the Wars, 1920-1939 246
Arts and People 246
Germany's Weimar Republic 247
First Election, Inflation 247

Its Birth, 1918 247
The Failed Sparticist Revolution, January 1919 247
Nazi Germany 248
Anti-Semitism 248
Nazi Unity Through Propaganda 248
The Early Life of Adolf Hitler 249
The Mass Rallies 249
The Nazi Revolution: The Third Reich, 1930-1934 249
Political and Social Turmoil in Central and Eastern Europe 250
Postwar France 251
Riots, Strikes, Socialism 251
Postwar Great Britain 251
The British Empire 251
Unemployment and Depression 252
Postwar Italy 252
Introducing Fascism 252
Mussolini's March on Rome 253
Propaganda and Expansion into Africa 253
Preventing Future Wars: International Organizations and Treaties 253
Science and Technology 254
Spain: The Republican Revolution and Civil War, 1931-1939 254
The March to World War II 255
1936: Hitler Ready for Conquest 255
Appeasement Fails, 1938 255
The Anschluss, 1938 255
Transportation 256
Air Transportation 256
Automobiles 256
The Luxury Transatlantic Liners 257
Section N: World War II, 1939-1945 257
Japan's Final Days 257
The Battle of Britain 257
Britain Retaliates 257
The Beginning of the End 258
The End of the War in Europe 258
The Normandy Landings 258
The Eastern Front 260
Behind the Lines 260
Greece, Crete, Malta 261
Stalingrad and Leningrad; The German Retreat Begins 261
The Battle for Russia 262
The Holocaust 262
The Invasion of Italy 263
The U.S. Enters the War 263
The War at Sea 264
The War Crimes Trials 264
The War in Europe 264
Blitzkreig in the West 264
France Surrenders 265
Hitler Consolidates his Gains 265
Norway and Poland 265
The Resistance and Free French 266
The Vichy Government and Collaboration 266
War in Africa 266
War in Asia and the Pacific 267
Section O: The Postwar Era: The New Global Civilization, 1945 on 268
Additional Maps 268
First Steps to a New World, 1945-1960 268
Decolonization Continues 268
Decolonization: The State of Israel 269
National Leaders in the West 270
Rebuilding Europe; Towards European Unity 270
The Berlin Crisis 271
The Eastern Bloc: Warsaw Pact Countries 271
The United Nations 272
Shaping the Future 272
Computers 272
Medicine and Health 272
Toward Today's World: To 1960 and Beyond 273

Airplanes and Automobiles 273
Asia: Wealth and Poverty 273
Nations and Leaders 274
Postwar Culture 274
Religious Reform 275
Science and Space 275
The Popular Demand for Reform: Students in Paris and Beijing 275
The Power of Oil 275
Wars 275
World History 276
African History 280
Africa and Europe to World War II 280
History of Traditional Africa 283
Southern Africa to 1948 286
Sub-Saharan Africa after 1945 288
Histories of Australia, New Zealand and Canada 290
History of Australia 290
History of Canada 292
History of New Zealand 294
History of China 295
Geography, Mythology, Archaeology, and the Early Dynasties 295
The Qin, Han and Post-Han Periods 297
The Qing Period 298
The Republican Period and the People's Republic 304
The Sui Through Ming Periods 307
History of India 312
India After 1500 312
Pre-Colonial India 316
History of Japan 318
History of Korea 324
International Organizations 328
Latin American History 328
Colonial Latin America, 1492-1806 329
Independence, 1807-1825 332
Independent Latin America, 1825-1870 333
Introduction and Indian America 335
Latin America After 1914 337
Latin America, 1870-1914 343
Middle Eastern History 347
North Africa and the Middle East after 1945 347
Northern and Northeast Africa to 1945 349
The Middle East to World War II 352
Pakistan, Afghanistan and Asiatic Russia 358
Afghanistan 358
Asiatic Russia 358
Pakistan 359
Southeast Asian History 360
History of Bangladesh 360
History of Cambodia (Kampuchea) 360
History of Indonesia 360
History of Laos 362
History of Malaysia 362
History of Myanmar (Burma) 363
History of Singapore 364
History of Sri Lanka 365
History of Thailand 365
History of Vietnam 366
The Philippines and Oceania (The Pacific Islands) 367
History of the Philippines 368
Oceania (Pacific Islands) 369

American History

1912 recording, Theodore Roosevelt, "square deal."
Audio recording (image is Theodore Roosevelt): In this rare 1912 recording, Theodore Roosevelt refers to the concept which guided his presidency: ...
1918 recording, Gen. Pershing on World War I.
Audio recording (image is of the St. Mihiel advance): A rare 1918 recording of General John J. Pershing talking on the radio about World War I. ...
1941 radio plea for aluminum for defense.
Audio recording (image is of the motion picture industry in the war effort): An August 1941 radio plea for aluminum for defense. The portion we ...
A 1918 speech to German-Americans.
Audio recording (image is of IWW strikers, 1917): Ambassador James W. Gerard's 1918 speech to German-Americans. "I know that is hard for ...
A 1935 speech on Italian & British airpower.
Audio recording (image is Abyssinian (Ethiopian) infantry, 1936): General William "Billy" Mitchell in a 1935 speech on Italian and British ...
A Nazi rally in Danzig, September 19, 1939.
Audio recording (image is Adolph Hitler): A portion of a Nazi rally in Danzig, September 19, ...
A radio appeal to support the war effort.
Audio recording (image is of an African-American worker): The radio waves were full of appeals to support the war effort. This one said, in ...
A stanza from the Star Spangled Banner.
Audio recording (image is Francis Scott Key): A stanza from the Star Spangled ...
A. Philip Randolph, 1963 march on Washington.
Audio recording (image is Randolph and Rustin among marchers in Washington): A. Philip Randolph speaks at the 1963 march on Washington. " (AUDIO ...
Albert Einstein speaks to students.
Audio recording (image is Albert Einstein): Albert Einstein, despite his contribution to the development of the atomic bomb, was an outspoken ...
Amelia Earhart talks about women & aviation, 1931.
Audio recording (image is of the arrival of Amelia Earhart): Amelia Earhart talks about women and aviation in 1931. This excerpt is drawn from ...
Bing Crosby sings about buying U.S. Bonds.
Audio recording (image is students posing with jeeps their war bonds paid for): Bing Crosby sings about buying U.S. Bonds to support the war ...
Calvin Coolidge on the economy, 1925:
Audio recording (image is President Coolidge): Calvin Coolidge speaks on the economy in 1925: "We guess 700 million dollars is needed by the ...
Carl Sandburg reads from the Gettysburg Address.
Audio recording (image is Abraham Lincoln at the Gettysburg Address): Poet Carl Sandburg reads part of the Gettysburg Address. Here is the full ...
Charles Lindbergh speaks on his 1927 flight.
Audio recording (image is Charles Lindbergh): As President Coolidge welcomed Charles Lindbergh back from his historic flight in 1927, "Lucky ...
Churchill on the enduring strength of Britain.
Audio recording (image is Winston Churchill making his "Iron Curtain" speech): Churchill spoke at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in ...
Churchill speaking on May 19,1940.
Audio recording (image is of German troops advancing into Poland): Churchill spoke on May 19,1940. This brief clip is drawn from the following ...
Churchill's "iron curtain" speech, 1946.
Audio recording (image is Winston Churchill making his "Iron Curtain" speech): Churchill's "iron curtain" reference, from his speech at Fulton, ...
Congressmen toast repeal of prohibition.
Audio recording (image is an anti-prohibition activist): The repeal of prohibition prompted this somewhat undignified celebration by some members ...
Detonation of the first atomic bomb, 1945.
Audio recording (image is of the first atomic bomb detonation): The countdown and detonation of the atomic bomb, New Mexico, ...
Duck and Cover Civil Defense warning.
Audio recording (image is a home bomb shelter, 1955): "Duck and Cover" is perhaps the most widely remembered of the Civil Defense films of the ...
Eisenhower announces Korean Armistice, 1953.
Audio recording (image is American and one North Korean guard at P'anmunjom): President Eisenhower announcing the Korean Armistice in July 27, ...
Eisenhower on "the military-industrial complex."
Audio recording (image is Eisenhower with Secretary of State Dulles): On January 17, 1961, as one of his final acts before leaving office, ...
Eisenhower's D-Day message to Europe.

Audio recording (image is Panorama of D-Day invasion across English Channel): General Dwight D. Eisenhower's D-Day message to Europe from Supreme ...

Ezra Pound fascist propaganda, 1942.

Audio recording (image is Ezra Pound): Ezra Pound made many broadcasts of fascist propaganda. This one is from Rome, February 19, 1942. "Europe ...

Father Coughlin, radio critic of FDR.

Audio recording (image is FDR radio foe Father Coughlin): This is a rare recording of support for FDR from popular radio speaker Father Coughlin, ...

FDR speaks to Congress, 1943.

Audio recording (image is FDR as president): FDR speaks to a January 7,1943 joint session of Congress. "Let us redouble our efforts. (AUDIO ...

FDR's December 8, 1941 declaration of war.

Audio recording (image is a worker reading about the Pearl Harbor attack): FDR's December 8, 1941 declaration of war speech to Congress. " ...

FDR's Fireside chat, September 3, 1939.

Audio recording (image is an RCA 1929 floor model radio): FDR's Fireside chat, September 3, 1939, concerning the invasion of Poland. " (AUDIO ...

Fibber McGee and Mollyon gasoline rationing.

Audio recording (image is of rationing tires): Fibber McGee and Molly were popular radio personalities. Here is the script, as they join a ...

First President Bush announces Gulf War's end.

Audio recording (image is of soldiers in the Gulf War): The first President Bush announces the end of the Gulf War. " (AUDIO START) Kuwait is ...

Gen. MacArthur on Japanese surrender, Sept. 1945.

Audio recording (image is the formal Japanese surrender ceremonies): The end of General MacArthur's speech aboard the U.S.S. Missouri in Tokyo ...

Gen. MacArthur's farewell speech.

Audio recording (image is U.N. forces crossing the 38th parallel): End of General Douglas MacArthur's farewell speech to Congress. "I took the ...

German radio propaganda broadcast, 1941.

Audio recording (image is of the "lend-lease" program Congress authorized): German radio propaganda broadcast, September 9, 1941, made from ...

Herbert Hoover speaks bitterly in a 1939 speech.

Audio recording (image is an unemployment line, 1938): Ex-President Herbert Hoover speaks bitterly in a 1939 speech. "Every year at this time ...

Hitler speaks on propaganda, 1939.

Audio recording (image is Charles A. Lindbergh and Hermann Goering): Propaganda is the topic of Adolf Hitler's a speech in Danzig, 1939. ...

J. Edgar Hoover speaks on gambling.

Audio recording (image is J. Edgar Hoover: J. Edgar Hoover's emphasis on the perceived communist threat can be contrasted with his views on ...

Japanese Ambassador speaks on invasion of China.

Audio recording (image is a terrified baby after the Japanese attack on Shanghai): The denials of Japanese Ambassador Saito, concerning Japanese ...

JFK announces Cuba blockade, 1962.

Audio recording (image is a Soviet missile base in Cuba): JFK's announcement of the blockade of Cuba, 1962. "This government, as promised, has ...

JFK: "...ask not what America will do for you..."

Audio recording (image is John F. Kennedy): Part of John Fitzgerald Kennedy's Inaugural speech, January 1961: " (AUDIO START) The energy, the ...

Jimmy Stewart government radio broadcast, WWII.

Audio recording (image is the WPB chairman Donald M. Nelson): An important part of the mobilization was the production of broadcasts by the ...

John L. Lewis on coal companies.

Audio recording (image is John L. Lewis): John L. Lewis speaks his mind without reservation at a hearing of the Senate Committee on Labor and ...

Kate Smith 1940s speech to women.

Audio recording (image is a woman brazing an automobile casting in Buffalo): Kate Smith in a 1940s speech to women. "Friends, it would be ...

L.A. Negro Chorus sings "John Henry, 1930s."

Audio recording (image is a WPA tent theater in San Bernardino, California): One of the many WPA-sponsored organizations was the Los Angeles ...

Labor leader on unemployed "work camps," 1933.

Audio recording (image is of MacArthur's order to burn veteran's camps): American Federation of Labor leader William Green testifies on a 1933 ...

LBJ signs the Voting Rights Act, 1965.

Audio recording (image is of African Americans voting): In the same room in which Lincoln signed the Emancipation Proclamation, with Martin ...

LBJ speaks on a widening war in Vietnam in 1964.

Audio recording (image is LBJ campaigning in New England): LBJ speaks on ordering military action in a

widening war in Vietnam in 1964: " (AUDIO ...

Marine recruitment radio ad, WWII.
Audio recording (image is Roosevelt opening the first draft lottery): A national mobilization to support the war quickly transformed the culture. ...

Mary McLeod Bethune, African American educator.
Audio recording (image is educator Mary McCleod Bethune): This recording is drawn from one of Mary McLeod Bethune's speeches in World War II, ...

Nixon announces end of the Vietnam War, 1973.
Audio recording (image is Nixon announcing the ceasefire): President Nixon's January 23, 1973 speech on the agreement to end the Vietnam War. " ...

Pete Seeger, "...a dollar ain't a dollar anymore."
Audio recording (image is of drought refugees): Folk music of the 1930s reflected the severe economic hard times. " (AUDIO START) A dollar bill ...

President Clinton speaks on NAFTA, 1993.
Audio recording (image is of the health care debate): One of President Clinton's hard-fought legislative battles during his first two years was ...

President Ford on the Nixon Watergate scandals.
Audio recording (image is Jerry and Betty Ford arriving at the White House): Part of Gerald Ford's address from the inauguration ceremony, ...

President Nixon's 1973 "I'm not a crook" speech.
Audio recording (image is Senator Sam Ervin): President Nixon's November 17, 1973 "I'm not a crook" speech. "In all my years of public life, I ...

President Reagan: "Tear down this wall," 1987.
Audio recording (image is Ronald Reagan and Mikhail Gorbachev): From President Reagan's June 2, 1987 speech at the Berlin Wall: "We welcome ...

President Truman announces Hiroshima bombing.
Audio recording (image is Hiroshima, Japan, after atomic bomb blast): President Truman's radio broadcast announcing the bombing of Hiroshima. " ...

President Truman on election results.
Audio recording (image is Truman with famous contrary headline): President Truman gleefully related how he had spent the evening, awaiting ...

Presidential candidiate Al Smith on prohibition.
Audio recording (image is Presidential candidiate Alfred E. Smith): Presidential candidate Al Smith called for the repeal of prohibition. In a ...

Radio announcement, crossing of the Rhine.
Audio recording (image is U.S. troops cross the Rhine): Radio announcement of the crossing of the Rhine. " (AUDIO START) Supreme headquarters ...

Radio announcement, landing on Guam.
Audio recording (image is a Marine wounded in the recapture of Guam): Radio broadcasts during the war years might be interrupted at any time by ...

Radio announcement, liberation of Paris, 1944.
Audio recording (image is American infantrymen passing German dead): Radio announcement of the liberation of Paris on August 25, 1944. " (AUDIO ...

Radio news, Battle of Midway, June 18, 1942.
Audio recording (image is the Yorktown receiving a direct hit): Special radio news release on the Battle of Midway, June 18, 1942. " (AUDIO ...

Ruffles & Flourishes for the President.
Audio recording (image is of FDR's inauguration): "Ruffles & Flourishes" has become the traditional musical introduction of the ...

The first President Bush speaks on the Gulf War.
Audio recording (image is a pro-Gulf War counter-demonstration, Jan): 1991): The first President Bush addresses Congress about the Gulf War. ...

Tokyo Rose in a broadcast on August 14, 1944.
Audio recording (image is soldiers studing a war map): "Tokyo Rose" (Iva Toguri D'Aquino) was a Japanese propagandist, heard here in a broadcast ...

V.P. Nixon's September 23, 1952 "Checkers" speech.
Audio recording (image is Eisenhower and Nixon): Vice-President Nixon's September 23, 1952 "Checkers" speech. "I should say this, that Pat ...

Wartime agriculture goals announced on the radio.
Audio recording (image is a poster asking for farm workers): Wartime agriculture production goals were announced and celebrated on the radio: " ...

WPA recording of a person who was a slave (#1).
Audio recording (image is of slaves in a cotton field): This is one of the recordings made by the WPA and its associates and left to us as an ...

WPA recording of a person who was a slave (#2).
Audio recording (image is a Virginia slave auction): This is one of the recordings made by the WPA and its associates and left to us as an oral ...

WPA recording of a person who was a slave (#3).
Audio recording (image is of the need for freed slaves to guard against re-enslavement): This is one of the recordings made by the WPA and its ...

WPA recording of a person who was a slave (#4).
Audio recording (image is freedmen at Richmond, Virginia, April 1865): This is one of the recordings made by the WPA and its associates and left ...
WWII fascist radio propaganda.
Audio recording (image is of the American Guadalcanal offensive, 1942): WWII fascist radio propaganda, an excerpt drawn from "Radio Charlie." ...

Section A: Prehistory to 1680

Video Overview: Prehistory to 1680.
A brief video Overview of what would become the continental U.S., from prehistory to 1680. Transcript: From the imagination of the earliest ...

European Exploration and the Rediscovery of America

15th-century plague victim with three physicians.
A 15th-century plague victim with three physicians. The patient suffers from the bubonic variety of the plague, for he points to a "buboe" or ...
20th-century version of Columbus's reception.
An early 20th-century textbook version of Columbus's reception by Ferdinand and Isabella. After the Indians and the gold had been examined and ...
A 14th-century merchant ship.
A 14th-century merchant ship. The development of sailing vessels which were more sophisticated than those of the Vikings allowed Europeans to ...
A Bataka iron hoe from southern Africa.
A Bataka iron hoe from southern Africa. Iron-working had increased agricultural efficiency in Africa as early as the birth of Christ. Using ...
A Columbus letter.
A Columbus letter. Columbus did not retire to enjoy the wealth to which his contract entitled him, but accepted the orders of Ferdinand and ...
A map of the great empires of the Western Sudan.
A map of the great empires of the Western Sudan. The development of trade, especially in gold and salt, across the Sahara Desert contributed to ...
A reconstruction of Gutenberg's printing press.
A reconstruction of Gutenberg's printing press. Johann Gutenberg (ca. 1400-1468) of Mainz, Germany, is credited with inventing the idea of ...
A traditional African doctor treating a sick baby.
A traditional African doctor treating a sick baby. Traditional medical practitioners acted in both the spiritual and material worlds. Doctors had ...
A trail of footprints 3.5 million years old.
A trail of footprints 3.5 million years old, found by Mary Leakey at Laetoli, Tanzania, shows that the earliest known human-like creatures to ...
A West African king holding a gold nugget.
A West African king holding a gold nugget. This 1375 picture from a Catalan Atlas illustrates the importance of West Africa as a gold supplier to ...
African trade routes.
Long before the Portuguese began sailing along the West African coast in the 15th century, as this map shows, the kingdoms of western Sudan were ...
Agriculture in 18th-century France.
Agriculture in 18th-century France. Most Europeans considered plowing and planting to be men's work and, after contact with peoples of the ...
Biblical scene from Ethiopian Coptic manuscript.
A biblical scene from an Ethiopian Coptic manuscript. The Coptic Orthodox Church was an ancient Monophysite branch of Christianity. Even though ...
Cathedral built to house remains of Columbus.
The cathedral which was built to house the remains of Christopher Columbus, completed in 1541 at Santo Domingo. 1891 ...
Christofel Colonus, holding a quadrant.
Christofel Colonus, probably holding a quadrant , an instrument for determining a ship's position. Columbus accepted Toscanelli's huge ...
Christopher Columbus (1451-1506).
Christopher Columbus (1451-1506), who rediscovered America, was born and raised in Genoa of a respectable wool-weaving family. Genoa was one of ...
Christopher Columbus, in military regalia.
Christopher Columbus, in an English engraving showing him in military regalia. Note that each of these later portraits, while quite different ...
Christopher Columbus, Lotto (Ellsworth) portrait.
Christopher Columbus, the Lotto (Ellsworth) portrait. An avid reader, Columbus by 1484 may have learned of and adopted the 1474 theory of the ...
Columbus at the Royal Court of Spain.
Columbus at the Royal Court of Spain. On Christmas Eve, 1492, Columbus lost his flagship Santa Maria on a reef near Hispaniola. He built a ...
Columbus before Ferdinand and Isabella.

Columbus before Ferdinand and Isabella. In December 1491 Columbus appeared before the court at the fortified camp of Santa Fe, during the siege ...

Columbus embarking at Palos.

Columbus embarking at Palos. The port where Columbus had first entered Spain, Palos, was chosen for fitting out a fleet of three vessels for two ...

Columbus in chains.

Columbus in chains. Arriving at Hispaniola, Bobadilla found the colony in chaos and the peaceable Taino Indians and the Spaniards at the point of ...

Columbus landing in the Bahamas.

Columbus landing in the Bahamas. The voyage was remarkably uneventful nautically, being blessed with fair winds. However, it took much longer ...

Columbus' three ships.

Columbus' three ships. Spanish ships had both official saints' names, and unofficial nicknames used by the sailors. The Santa Maria , known to ...

Columbus with a Franciscan prior.

Columbus with a Franciscan prior. When his wife died at Lisbon in 1485, Columbus took his five-year-old son, Diego, to be educated in a ...

Elaborate fish traps, 19th century central Africa.

Elaborate fish traps in this 19th century central African scene illustrate traditional techniques used to catch the fish that were an essential ...

European peasant harvest celebration.

"The Village Fête." The life of European peasants was highly traditional in character, with rituals of planting and harvest repeated year after ...

European sailors calculating their position.

European sailors calculating their position. These sailors (center) are using an astrolabe to calculate their latitude. Without such ...

Execution of men accused of spreading the plague.

The execution of men accused of spreading the plague in Milan, Italy. The Bubonic Plague, or Black Death, swept through much of Europe between ...

Facsimile page of the Gutenberg Bible.

A facsimile of the first page of the Book of Genesis, in Latin, as printed in the Gutenberg Bible, the first book printed in the western ...

Isabella of Castile and Ferdinand II of Aragon.

Isabella of Castile and Ferdinand II of Aragon (Ferdinand V of Spain). Their secret marriage in 1469 had important consequences. Castile was a ...

King of Benin, retinue in a 1686 European print.

The King of Benin and his retinue, as depicted in a 1686 European print. At the head of the procession are chained leopards, symbols of the Benin ...

Leif Ericson rediscovers America, A.D. 1000.

Leif Ericson rediscovers America, A.D. 1000. A 13th-century Greenland saga describes a summer landing 200 years earlier at a new land, rich in ...

Life on a medieval manor.

Life on a medieval manor. The patterns of life remained stable during most of the Middle Ages. Contrast the sporting activities of the seigneur ...

Map of Africa showing the major language families.

A map of Africa showing the major language families. Just as Europe's peoples spoke a wide variety of languages, so too did Africa's. The ...

Map of Columbus's three voyages to America.

A map of Columbus's voyages of exploration to America. In all, he made three voyages. On his second, in 1493-1496, 17 ships and 1500 people ...

Map, voyages of Portuguese navigators.

A map showing the voyages of Portuguese navigators Bartholomeu Dias and Vasco da Gama around the African Cape in the late 15th century. The ...

Ox cart transporting millet, Gambia, West Africa.

An ox cart transporting newly harvested millet in Gambia, West Africa. Although Africa, like Europe, developed wealthy and powerful kingdoms, and ...

Portuguese Prince Henry the Navigator (1394-1460).

The Portuguese Prince Henry the Navigator (1394-1460) was an important patron of new naval technology and of exploration. In 1416 he established ...

Recreation of the 11th-century Norse community.

A diorama at the L'Anse aux Meadows National Historic Park recreates the 11th-century Norse community. The Viking chronicler recorded the ...

Small village workshop in Mogadishu, Somalia.

Women spinning thread while men weave cloth in a small village workshop in Mogadishu, Somalia. Although this engraving was made in the mid-19th ...

The astrolabe.

The astrolabe, used in the Middle East as early as the latter part of the 8th century, was a part of the intellectual exchange that flourished ...

The death of Columbus.

The death of Columbus. After being restored to favor, Columbus made a fourth voyage in 1502 with a fleet of

four vessels. Not permitted to land ...

The interior of a reconstructed Norse hut.

The interior of a reconstructed Norse hut at L'Anse aux Meadows. Artifacts found at the site, such as a spindle whorl, a stone oil lamp, and ...

The landing of Columbus in the West Indies.

This ca. 1846 painting by John Vanderlyn of The Landing of Columbus at the Island of Guanahani, West Indies, October 12th, 1492 , is part of the ...

The Oeseberg Viking ship.

The Oeseberg Viking ship, ca. 800-1030 A.D. This actual "classic" Viking ship was unearthed on the Oeseberg farm at Slagen, Norway, in 1904. ...

The recall of Columbus.

The recall of Columbus. While Columbus was exploring, the settlers, frustrated at their failure to find sufficient gold, sent back to Spain ...

Viking building site, Newfoundland, Canada.

Remains of a Viking building site at the L'Anse aux Meadows National Historic Park, Newfoundland, Canada. Located in a bay on the northern tip of ...

Indigenous Peoples Before European Contact

"Dog Dance of the Dakotas," by Seth Eastman.

"The Dog Dance of the Dakotas," by Seth Eastman, 1868. Although this scene was not painted until long after the European conquest of the North ...

"Sauvage Iroquois," a European conception .

"Sauvage Iroquois" is a later European conception of the fierce war-making abilities of the Iroquois. By the early 17th century, they had ...

A Canadian Inuit family.

A Canadian Inuit family. The large belt of coniferous forests that covers much of present-day Canada was home to migratory Indian groups who ...

A Hopewell Indian "platform pipe" from Mound City.

A Hopewell Indian "platform pipe" from Mound City. This beautifully carved pipe head illustrates the artistic sophistication of the Hopewell ...

A kiva in the Aztec Ruins National Monument.

A kiva in the Aztec Ruins National Monument, New Mexico. This kiva is considered unique because it features three concentric circular walls ...

A ladder emerging from a kiva, Spruce Tree House.

A ladder emerging from a kiva in Spruce Tree House, Mesa Verde National Park. Kiva is a Hopi word for "ceremonial room." Anasazi kivas were built ...

A map showing the Bering Strait Land Bridge.

A map showing the Bering Strait Land Bridge. When Columbus arrived, the peoples of the Americas had developed in cultural and biological ...

A map showing the locations of Indian mounds.

A map showing the locations of Indian mounds. The great Eastern Woodlands region, which is characterized by a moderate climate, fertile lands, ...

A Mayan Tablet of the Cross.

A Mayan Tablet of the Cross. Mayans used characters to represent ideas or objects, rather than sounds, and their writing (most of it on stone ...

A Pacific Coast totem pole.

A Pacific Coast totem pole. The moist climate, the rich source of food from migratory salmon, and the abundant timber and marine resources made ...

Aerial view, Aztec Ruins National Monument.

An aerial view of the Aztec Ruins National Monument in New Mexico. Although it was misnamed "Aztec Ruins" by the first American settlers to ...

Cadwallader Colden's map of "the Five Nations."

Cadwallader Colden's "Map of the Country of the Five Nations." The most powerful group of the northern Eastern Woodlands people at the time of ...

Cliff Palace at Mesa Verde, in Colorado.

Cliff Palace at Mesa Verde, in Colorado. About 1400 years ago a group of stone-age peoples, named "Anasazi" or "the Ancient Enemies" by the ...

Deer petroglyphs in the Navajo National Monument.

Deer petroglyphs in the Navajo National Monument, Arizona. This Monument protects the remains of the third center of Anasazi culture, the ...

Eskimos of the Kotzebu Gulf.

Eskimos of the Kotzebu Gulf. The Eskimos were the last group of Asian wanderers to cross over the Bering Strait into North America, and they ...

Excavating Indian bones, Effigy Mounds Iowa.

A worker excavating prehistoric Indian bones from the Effigy Mounds National Monument at Harpers Ferry, Iowa, in 1978. Early explorers noted the ...

Florida Native Americans hunt deer.

Florida Native Americans hunting deer, using deerskins as a disguise. The artist, Jacques Le Moyne, visited Florida in 1564-65; Theodor DeBry ...

Indian arrowhead, Effigy Mounds National Monument.

A prehistoric Indian arrowhead from the Effigy Mounds National Monument. This arrowhead, called a "paleo point," is estimated to be from 9,000 to ...

Indian burial mounds at Mound City, Ohio.

Indian burial mounds at Mound City, Chillicothe, Ohio. Mound City was not a city; it was a village along the Scioto River settled at some time ...

Indian sports, engraving by Theodor DeBry.

Indian sports, engraving by Theodor DeBry. Footraces, archery, and a game not unlike modern basketball are among the many sports that might have ...

Map, geographic area, continental U.S.states.

A map showing the geographic territory of what is today the continental United States of ...

Map, native populations, end of the 15th century.

A map of the distribution of native western hemisphere populations at the end of the 15th century. When the ice age ended and the climate of ...

Members of Hopi Indian tribe of southwestern U.S.

Members of the Hopi Indian tribe of the southwestern United States. The Hopi, like the Zuñi, are descended from their Anasazi common ancestors, ...

Montezuma or (Moctezuma) II, ruler of the Aztecs.

Montezuma or (Moctezuma) II, ruler of the Aztecs ca. 1503-1520. The Aztecs' power was concentrated in a ruling class of priests and nobles who ...

Mound culture site, Cahokia, Illinois.

Another important "mound culture" site is the one at Cahokia, Illinois, whose city is reconstructed here in a painting by William R. Iseminger. ...

Native American Artifacts from Effigy Mounds.

Prehistoric Indian artifacts from the Effigy Mounds National Monument. Beginning at the pipe and moving clockwise, the objects are a Catlinite ...

Petroglyphs in Dinosaur National Park.

Petroglyphs of human figures in the Dinosaur National Park at Dinosaur, New ...

Pueblo Bonito, New Mexico.

Pueblo Bonito, in the Chaco Culture National Historical Park, New Mexico. Chaco Canyon was one of the most important centers for Anasazi culture ...

Spruce Tree House.

Spruce Tree House, located about two miles north of Cliff Palace in Mesa Verde, was built between 1200 and 1276 A.D. It contains about 114 rooms ...

The Wrestler , an Olmec sculpture.

The Wrestler , a sculpture from the Olmec civilization, ca. 150 B.C. The history of pre-European conquest Mesoamerica (the region from the ...

The Castle at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico.

The Castle at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico, a Mayan site of the Post-Classic period, ca. 11th century. The Mayans built a highly cultured ...

The founding of Tenochtitlán, ca 1345.

The founding of Tenochtitlán, ca 1345. The Aztecs, or Mexica, were the last of the Chichimec tribes to migrate into the central valley of Mexico ...

The village of Secota.

The village of Secota. The villages of both northern and southern Eastern Woodland Indians shared many similarities, although there were ...

The Zuñi Pueblo, Zuñi-Cibola National Park, NM.

The Zuñi Pueblo, in the Zuñi-Cibola National Park, New Mexico. As the Anasazi culture disappeared, the pueblo peoples who had been part of it ...

Timucua Indians of Florida bring crops to granary.

Timucua Indians of Florida bringing their crops to a public granary by boat. The crops, primarily beans and maize, would be used for community ...

Timucua Indians, Florida planting beans and maize.

The Timucua Indians of Florida planting beans and maize (corn). Theodor DeBry engraved this scene in 1591 based on a 1565 original drawing by ...

Tuski and Mahlemut Alaskan Eskimos.

Tuski and Mahlemut Alaskan Eskimos, on the Bering Strait of Alaska, exchange oil gathered from seals. The harshness of the Alaskan climate forced ...

Later European Exploration and First Settlement to 1688

La Terra de Hochelaga Nella Nova Francia .

Woodcut, La Terra de Hochelaga Nella Nova Francia . Cartier left a detailed record of his arrival at the village of Hochelaga, and his ...

"Drake's Bay," inset from a 1590 world map.

"Drake's Bay," inset from a 1590 world map, supposedly showing Sir Francis Drake's ships during their round-the-world expedition in 1579. In the ...

"Toleration Act."

This "Toleration Act" is one of the most widely known official documents of Maryland's early years. It was passed when Maryland was in the ...

1552 map of New France by Gastaldo.

This map of New France around 1552 by the Venetian map maker Gastaldo shows the Gulf of the St.

Lawrence River, and ...

1660 map shows Charles County, MD, Court House.
A part of a 1660 plat map showing the Charles County, Maryland, Court House. This drawing illustrates how settlers in Maryland and Virginia built ...

1672 Jesuit map of Lake Superior and nearby areas.
A 1672 Jesuit map of Lake Superior and nearby areas. By the mid-17th century, French fur traders and Jesuit missionaries had extensively explored ...

A French map of La Floride, 1657.
A French map of La Floride , 1657. Until the beginning of the 18th century the French did not establish a permanent settlement in the large area ...

A map of Cartier's explorations, by Lescarbot.
A map of Cartier's explorations, by Lescarbot. The fortified Huron-Iroquois village of Hochelaga was located at the foot of Mount Royal, now ...

A model of Jamestown village.
A model of Jamestown village. In December of 1606 the London Company sent three ships and 144 colonists to Virginia. Thirty-nine of the men died ...

A modern recreation of the palisades.
A modern recreation of the palisades at the Fort Caroline National Memorial. In the fall of 1565, Menéndez had landed farther south at a place he ...

A ship lying at the wharf at Jamestown village.
A ship lying at the wharf at Jamestown village. The Jamestown settlement did not flourish at first. The original settlers were not prepared to ...

A slave coffle in Africa.
A slave coffle in Africa. To meet the demand for labor in the Americas, increasing numbers of Africans were captured, shackled in chains, forced ...

A tobacco plant.
A tobacco plant. John Rolfe had introduced tobacco-growing into Virginia quite early, in 1612, but the harsher native Virginia tobacco could not ...

Captain John Smith (ca. 1580-1631).
Captain John Smith (ca. 1580-1631) was in the group of colonists who came to Virginia in 1608, and although he was outranked by many others, he ...

Chained slaves taken across the Sahara desert.
Chained slaves being taken across the Sahara desert. The use of Africans as a labor source began in 1619 with the arrival of a Dutch ship with ...

Champlain battling the Iroquois, 1615.
Champlain battling the Iroquois, 1615. The fur trade that was the basis for profits by the French from their American colony depended on good ...

Champlain's 1612 map, interior of New France.
Champlain's 1612 map of the interior of New France. He explored the interior of North America for nearly 30 years. By 1612 he had penetrated ...

Champlain's chateau at Quebec in 1608.
Champlain's chateau at Quebec in 1608. Unlike the merchants, who were interested primarily in the fur trade, Champlain wanted Quebec to become ...

Charles I (Stuart, 1600-1649), King of England.
Charles I (Stuart, 1600-1649) became King of England in 1625. His reign was a period of growing confrontation between king and Parliament, ...

Drake attacks Cartagena, 1586.
Drake attacks Cartagena, in present-day Colombia, South America, 1586. In that year Drake also attacked the Spanish capital of La Floride at ...

Elizabeth I (1533-1603), daughter of Henry VIII.
Elizabeth I (1533-1603), the daughter of Henry VIII by his second wife, reigned from 1558 after the death of her stepsister Mary I (Tudor). ...

Fort Caroline, on the St. Johns River, Florida.
Fort Caroline, on the St. Johns River, Florida. The members of the second French expedition to Florida quickly constructed a fort, which they ...

Fort Caroline.
Fort Caroline. Despite this engraving of commercial activity and prosperity, that French community lasted only briefly. Le Moyne's account of his ...

Fr. Jacques Marquette preaching to Indians.
Fr. Jacques Marquette (1637-1675) preaching to Indians, with Louis Joliet listening. After 1660, the French under Louis XIV's chief minister, ...

French expedition enters St. Johns River, FL.
The French expedition entering the mouth of the St. Johns River in Florida, May 1562. The next attempt at a French settlement in the Americas was ...

French troops attack Onondaga village, 1615.
An attack by Champlain and French troops against an Onondaga village in ...

George Calvert, the First Lord Baltimore.
George Calvert (1580-1632), the First Lord Baltimore. Calvert had been a member of James I's Privy Council and Secretary of State, but was forced ...

Giovanni da Verrazano (ca. 1480-1528).

Giovanni da Verrazano (ca. 1480-1528). Although, by the terms of the Treaty of Tordesillos in 1494, Spain and Portugal agreed to divide between ...

Hakluyt's map of the Americas, 1587.
Hakluyt's map of the Americas, 1587. Richard Hakluyt (ca. 1552-1616) helped to promote English discovery and colonization of America. A ...

Henry VIII of England (1491-1547).
Henry VIII of England (1491-1547) brought the Reformation to England for political and dynastic, rather than religious, reasons. Before 1527 ...

Jacques Cartier (1491-1557).
Jacques Cartier (1491-1557) was successful in his explorations for France. Between 1534 and 1541 he made three voyages to the Labrador coast and ...

James I of England (and James VI of Scotland).
James I of England (and James VI of Scotland, 1566-1625). When Elizabeth I died in 1603, her successor, James I, the son of Mary, Queen of Scots, ...

John Smith rescued by Pocahantas.
John Smith rescued by Pocahantas. According to Smith in his Generall Historie of Virginia , Powhatan's daughter Pocahontas (1595?-1617) rescued ...

John White's map of Raleigh's Virginia.
John White's map of Raleigh's Virginia. White was employed by Raleigh as the official artist of the 1585 Roanoke expedition, and Thomas Harriot ...

Laudonnière's expedition arrives in Florida, 1564.
Laudonnière's expedition arrives in Florida in 1564. Ribaut's small outpost in South Carolina did not survive, and when the religious wars ...

Le Moyne's map of America.
Le Moyne's map of America. After escaping from Fort Caroline, Jacques Le Moyne and the other 44 settlers fled to two ships that had been hidden ...

Leonard Calvert, Maryland's first governor.
Leonard Calvert (1606-1647), the first colonial governor of Maryland, was the younger brother of Cecilius Calvert, the second Lord Baltimore and ...

Major figures, Continental Protestant Reformation.
Major figures of the Continental Protestant Reformation. Front row, left to right: Philipp Melanchthon of Germany, Martin Luther, and John Hus, ...

Map, Maryland, 1635.
A map of Maryland, 1635, originally published in A Relation of Maryland , ...

Outina defeats Potanou with the aid of the French.
Outina defeats Potanou with the aid of the French. The Timucua Indians were the local group that inhabited the part of Florida where the French ...

Philip II of Spain (1527-1598).
Philip II of Spain (1527-1598) became the implacable enemy of Elizabeth I of England after the death of his wife, Mary Tudor, shown with him on ...

Pocahontas, 1616.
Pocahontas, 1616. Whatever the reason for Pocahontas' championing of John Smith in 1607, she later became a central figure in maintaining peace ...

Powhatan.
Powhatan. By 1570, the chief Powhatan had established a loose confederacy among the tribes in the area of Jamestown. Although at least one early ...

René De Laudonnière and Chief Athore.
"René De Laudonnière and the Indian Chief Athore Visit Ribaut's Column." As a part of his claiming of the land for France, Ribaut planted two ...

Robert, Cavelier de la Salle (1643-1687).
Robert, Cavelier de la Salle (1643-1687) followed up on Marquette and Joliet's discoveries in an exploration that set out in 1681 to find the ...

Ruins of Jamestown Village.
Ruins of Jamestown Village. The site of Jamestown Village is still maintained as the Colonial National Historical Park, and visitors can walk ...

Samuel de Champlain (ca. 1567-1635).
Samuel de Champlain (ca. 1567-1635) A cartographer, Champlain made a number of voyages along the northern Atlantic coast at the beginning of the ...

Sebastian Cabot (ca. 1483-1557).
Sebastian Cabot (ca. 1483-1557) was an explorer in the service of both England and Spain. The son of John Cabot (1461-1498), who first ...

Sir Edwyn Sandys, reformer, Virginia Co.
Sir Edwyn Sandys was the innovative reformer of the Virginia Company. It was he who prepared what became known as the "Great Charter" of 1618, ...

Sir Francis Drake (1540-1596).
Sir Francis Drake (1540-1596) was, with Hawkins, one of the most feared of the English " sea dogs ." On one of his voyages, in 1577, he sailed ...

Sir Humphrey Gilbert (ca. 1537-1583).
Sir Humphrey Gilbert (ca. 1537-1583), an English country gentleman, soldier, and then explorer, accepted Hakluyt's challenge. In 1578 he ...

Sir John Hawkins (1532-1595).
Sir John Hawkins (1532-1595) an English admiral, learned seamanship as a slave-trader who violated Spanish law to sell Africans at a profit in ...
Sir Walter Raleigh (ca. 1554-1618).
Sir Walter Raleigh (ca. 1554-1618) was a half-brother of Sir Humphrey Gilbert. A favorite of Queen Elizabeth, an influential courtier, a poet, ...
Smokers in an English tobacco shop.
Smokers in an English tobacco shop. The Spaniards had introduced tobacco into Europe, and despite widespread opposition (James I published a ...
Sugar plantation in the French West Indies, 1667.
A sugar plantation in the French West Indies, 1667. Although the French were not successful in planting a mainland colony in North America south ...
The combatants in the English Reformation.
This allegorical 1589 woodcut shows the combatants in the English Reformation. Henry VIII has his foot on Pope Clement VII, while chancellor ...
The defeat of the Spanish Armada, 1588.
The defeat of the Spanish Armada, 1588. John White had left Roanoke intending to return immediately, but he was delayed by the outbreak of war ...
The English arrive at Roanoke, 1585.
The English arrive at Roanoke, 1585. Raleigh renamed the area Virginia, in honor of Elizabeth, the "Virgin Queen." This first group of 100 ...
The first English Legislative Assembly in America.
The first English Legislative Assembly in America. One of the provisions included in Sandys' "Great Charter," as an incentive to attract ...
The seals of the Virginia Company.
The seals of the Virginia Company. The war with Spain continued until 1602, putting a temporary stop to English attempts at settlement. The ...
Tobacco plants, 1990.
Tobacco plants, 1990. Tobacco is a crop that requires fertile land, and the development of a salable staple crop raised a demand for private ...
Tobacco ships in the James River.
Tobacco ships in the James River. The tobacco crop dispersed the population of Virginia widely. Tobacco exhausted the land quickly, and new ...

Spanish and Portuguese Explorers After Columbus

A 1544 map of Magellan's voyage around the world.
A 1544 map of Magellan's voyage around the world. Magellan was killed in a 1521 battle with Philippine natives, but his immense navigational feat ...
A herd of horses in the western desert.
A herd of horses in the western desert. The horses that the Spaniards brought with them drastically changed the mobility of many native peoples, ...
A map of the route of the Spanish treasure fleets.
A map of the route of the Spanish treasure fleets past Florida and along the Carolina coast, followed by the fleets from central America as they ...
A mid-16th century map of the Americas.
A mid-16th century map of the Americas. By the middle of the 16th century, explorations by Spanish and Portuguese, as well as French, English, ...
An Indian being punished by Corregidores .
An Indian being punished by Corregidores . The corregidor de espanoles administered Spanish settlements, and the corregidor de indio ...
Bartolomé de las Casas (1474-1566).
Bartolomé de las Casas (1474-1566). Not all Spaniards abused the peoples of the Americas. Las Casas was one of the first to widely publish ...
Cabral landing on the coast of Brazil in 1500.
Cabral landing on the coast of Brazil in 1500 and claiming it for ...
Cabral's fleet.
Cabral's fleet. Following in the wake of Vasco da Gama who had traveled around Africa to establish trade routes to India, Cabral swung far to the ...
Charles I of Spain (1500-1558).
Charles I of Spain (1500-1558). Because of the great loss of Indian life, and therefore of laborers, in the West Indies, Charles I listened to ...
Coronado advances against a city.
Coronado advances against a city. Coronado's march as it might have been seen by the tribes of Indians who lived in the vast plains across which ...
Coronado's march into Colorado.
Coronado's march into Colorado. The same stories of a fabled northern "Seven Cities of Gold," the mythical Cibola, that inspired De Soto also ...
Cortez' invasion results in Aztecs' smallpox.
Aztec Indians suffering from smallpox as a result of Cortez's invasion. Historians speak of the "Columbian Exchange" as a way of describing the ...

De Soto's map of America, published around 1544.
De Soto's map of America, published around 1544. Searching for treasures of gold and emeralds, he explored much of the southwest, including ...
De Soto's men torturing Indians in Florida.
De Soto's men torturing Indians in Florida. The Spaniards used brutality of their own to suppress and enslave the Indians. From the harsh ...
Dutch capture Spanish fleet, Matanzas Bay, 1628.
The Dutch under Admiral Piet Heyn capture a Spanish fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba, in 1628. The admiral's voyage was financed by the newly formed ...
Ferdinand Magellan (ca. 1480-1521).
Ferdinand Magellan (ca. 1480-1521). Columbus's dream of a water route to the East was finally realized in 1519-1522. Ferdinand Magellan was ...
Fort Marion, at St. Augustine, Florida.
Fort Marion, at St. Augustine, Florida. Menéndez had founded a small outpost of La Floride at the present-day site of St. Augustine as early as ...
Francisco Pizarro (ca. 1476-1541).
Francisco Pizarro (ca. 1476-1541). The illegitimate son of a Spanish gentleman, Pizarro was in Balboa's company when the latter discovered the ...
Fray Bernardino de Sahagún (ca. 1500-1590).
Fray Bernardino de Sahagún (ca. 1500-1590). Many members of the clergy did labor successfully to convert the Indians to Christianity. From ...
Hernando Cortez (or Cortés, 1485-1547).
Hernando Cortez (or Cortés, 1485-1547), a Spanish conquistador or "conqueror" who followed after Columbus, sailing to Hispaniola in 1504 at the ...
Hernando De Soto (ca. 1500-1542).
Hernando De Soto (ca. 1500-1542) discovering the Mississippi, A.D. 1541. The gold and silver of the great Aztec and Inca empires inspired Spanish ...
Indians torturing Spaniards, 1598.
Indians torturing and cannibalizing Spaniards, 1598. Rival European powers were not the only ones to contest the Spanish control of North ...
Inscription by Oñate carved into Inscription Rock.
Inscription by Oñate carved into the soft sandstone of "Inscription Rock" in 1605. The inscription reads "Passed by here the Adelantado Don Juan ...
Inscription Rock, El Morro National Monument.
Inscription Rock, in the El Morro National Monument, at Ramah, New Mexico. Oñate had camped here on his way back from an exploratory trip to the ...
Juan de Oñate enters New Mexico.
Juan de Oñate (1549-1624) enters New Mexico. A wealthy Mexican, Oñate received a contract in 1595 to colonize the northern frontier of New ...
Juan Ponce de León (ca. 1460-1521).
Juan Ponce de León (ca. 1460-1521). Conqueror of Puerto Rico, and governor of the island from 1509 to 1512, Ponce de Leon first explored the ...
Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo (d. 1543).
Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo (d. 1543) was put in charge of an expedition of two ships up the coast of the Pacific early in 1542, at about the same ...
Map of European North Atlantic crossings to 1587.
A map of European North Atlantic crossings to 1587. One of the consequences of the Spanish claims to extensive areas of South and Central ...
Map, early explorations of the California coast.
A map showing the early explorations of the California coast. Bartolomé Ferrelo had been Cabrillo's pilot on the 1542 voyage; after Cabrillo's ...
New food crops for Europe.
Another positive aspect of the Columbian exchange was the importance to Europe of new food crops. The Americas provided new and nourishing ...
Pedro Alvares Cabral (ca. 1467-1520).
Pedro Alvares Cabral (ca. 1467-1520). Many other explorers followed where Columbus and his fleets had led, representing nations competing with ...
Pieces of eight and a gold bar from Atocha .
Pieces of eight and a gold bar from the Atocha . One of the most important consequences for the Spanish of their conquest of the Inca and ...
Pizarro, Luque, and Almagro sign a contract.
Pizarro, Luque, and Almagro sign a contract. Pizarro was able to put down an Inca rebellion at Cuzco in 1539, but Almagro's sons, believing that ...
Priests with Indians and mestizos.
Priests eating and drinking with common Indians, mestizos, and mulattoes. The society of New Spain was highly stratified. At the top was a white ...
Spaniards building a fort at Santa Elena.
Spaniards building a fort at Santa Elena, in present-day South Carolina. The Spanish particularly feared French attempts to establish a foothold ...
Spanish tyranny in the West Indies.

Spanish tyranny in the West Indies. The abuse of Indian populations began with Columbus, and was formalized in the adoption before 1500 of the ...

The Castillo de San Marcos.

The Castillo de San Marcos, the principal fortification built by the Spaniards at St. Augustine, as it appears today. Construction of Fort San ...

The entrance to the El Morro fortress at San Juan.

The entrance to the El Morro fortress at San Juan, Puerto Rico. The need to defend the empire from interlopers, and to provide secure harbors for ...

The Florentine Amerigo Vespucci (1454-1512).

The Florentine Amerigo Vespucci (1454-1512) went on a voyage with Alonso de Ojeda to the mainland of South America in 1499 but then explored in a ...

Vasco da Gama (ca. 1469-1524).

Vasco da Gama (ca. 1469-1524), a Portuguese navigator. The first European to travel by sea to India in 1497-99, he set up the lucrative spice ...

Vasco Núñez de Balboa (ca. 1475-1519).

Vasco Núñez de Balboa (ca. 1475-1519) rediscovering the Pacific and claiming it for Spain, September 1513. In the second decade of the 16th ...

The English Settlement of New England

New Englands Prospect .

A tract, New Englands Prospect . In the years after 1630, tracts such as this one were written to attract even more settlers to New England. ...

Strange News from Virginia .

Title page of Strange News from Virginia , 1677. While King Philip's War raged in Massachusetts, the Virginia colony also experienced an armed ...

"The First Thanksgiving."

"The First Thanksgiving." An English-speaking Indian, Squanto, befriended the Pilgrims. He showed them how to plant corn and where to fish, and ...

A 1677 map of New England.

A 1677 map of New England. The destruction of the Pequot power enabled the English expansion of the settlements to continue. This map illustrates ...

A map of "Plimouth Colony" in the spring of 1621.

A map of "Plimouth Colony" as it appeared in the spring of 1621. It shows a " Common House " at center; the Governor's house, the third building ...

A map of Plymouth Harbor.

A map of Plymouth Harbor. From Samuel de Champlain, Voyages (Paris, ...

A mid-17th century Puritan woman.

A mid-17th century Puritan woman, dressed in costly fabrics but without extravagance in dress design or fabrication. The Puritans wanted to ...

A part of a 1639 map of Manhattan.

A part of a 1639 map of Manhattan. This is the earliest known map of the Dutch settlement in New Amsterdam, where outposts were first established ...

A Quaker meeting in England, late 17th century.

A Quaker meeting in England, late 17th century. The members of the Society of Friends were more radical rebels against authority than even ...

A wooden plow.

A wooden plow. The soil of New England was thin, and farming was difficult. The lack of tools made it difficult to farm more than the small ...

American men's costumes of the mid-17th century.

American men's costumes of the mid-17th century, showing how the more elaborate fashions of England during the Restoration were copied by rich ...

Anne Marbury Hutchinson (1591-1643).

Anne Marbury Hutchinson (1591-1643) arrived with her husband in Boston in 1634. She too challenged the unity of New England by questioning the ...

Bacon confronts Governor William Berkeley, 1676.

Nathaniel Bacon confronting Governor William Berkeley, 1676. When Berkeley refused Nathaniel Bacon permission to punish the Indians, he recruited ...

Boston in 1764.

Boston in 1764. With the Restoration of Charles II, Puritan power began to wane in New England as well. The Navigation Act of 1660, designed to ...

Boston's original Town House.

Boston's original Town House, the first State House of Massachusetts. Boston's role as the center for both government and trade demanded a public ...

Cambridge University, in England.

Cambridge University, in England. The New England Company's charter was issued in March of 1629. Within a year, important changes in England led ...

Charles II crowned, Westminster Abbey, 1661.

The coronation of Charles II in Westminster Abbey, 1661. Charles II (1630-1685) had fled into exile upon his father's beheading. After Cromwell's ...

Codfishing off the coast of New England.

Codfishing off the coast of New England. Even though no permanent settlement emerged on the New England coast before 1620, English fishermen ...

Colonists vs. Indians in King Philip's War.
A battle between the colonists and Indians in King Philip's War. To defend the frontier, Massachusetts drafted all men between the ages of 16 and ...

Departure of the Pilgrims from Delfthaven, 1620.
The departure of the Pilgrims from Delfthaven, September 1620. The Scrooby Separatists found religious freedom in Holland, but felt that they ...

Dutch surrender New Amsterdam, September 8, 1664.
The Dutch surrender New Amsterdam, September 8, 1664. The Second Anglo-Dutch War began over the issue of trade in North America and the West ...

Edward Winslow.
Edward Winslow, one of the signers of the Mayflower Compact, who served as governor in 1633, 1636, and 1644 when Bradford was not ...

Gov. Wm. Bradford's house at Plymouth in 1621.
Governor William Bradford's house at Plymouth in 1621. The first governor elected by the Pilgrims, John Carver, died during that first winter, ...

Governor Edward Winslow's house at Plymouth.
Governor Edward Winslow's house at Plymouth. Winslow's house illustrates the substantial homes which the early settlers in Plymouth and the rest ...

Henry Hudson (d. 1611).
Henry Hudson (d. 1611), an English explorer, first visited the Hudson River in a 1609 voyage for the Dutch East India Company, searching for a ...

Henry Hudson in the Bay of New York, 1609.
The arrival of Henry Hudson in the Bay of New York, September 12, 1609. Hudson's 1609 discovery laid the basis for Dutch claims to extensive ...

Increase Mather.
Increase Mather (1639-1723) was a leading member of the second generation of New England divines. Born in Dorchester, where his father Richard ...

Indians battling New Englanders, 1675.
Indians battling New Englanders, 1675. In June of that year, Philip launched a war against the English towns at the edge of settlement. It began ...

John Cotton (1584-1652).
When Cambridge-educated John Cotton (1584-1652) was brought to trial in England for his Puritanism in 1632, he fled to New England. Widely ...

John Eliot preaching to the Indians.
John Eliot preaching to the Indians. Indians who converted to Christianity were urged by Eliot and other missionaries to adopt English ways as ...

John Endecott (ca. 1589-1665).
John Endecott (ca. 1589-1665). Although Plymouth Plantation was the first permanent English settlement in New England, it was not the main ...

John Locke (1632-1704).
John Locke (1632-1704). Best known as an English Enlightenment philosopher, Locke as a young man tutored Anthony Ashley Cooper's children and ...

John Smith's map of New England.
John Smith's map of New England. This area had been part of James I's division of English claims between two joint stock companies. The Virginia ...

John Winthrop (1588-1649).
John Winthrop (1588-1649) was a substantial English landowner who supported the Puritan cause. A leader in the Cambridge Agreement , he was ...

King Charles II.
King Charles II. In 1663, he granted a charter to a group of eight powerful Englishmen headed by Lord Anthony Ashley Cooper. Charles granted to ...

Map, Ashley and Cooper Rivers, 1685.
"A Particular Map for the going into Ashley and Cooper Rivers, 1685." The proprietors sent a group of settlers to establish their colony in 1670, ...

Metacomet, chief, Wampanoag Indians.
King Philip, or Metacomet, chief of the Wampanoag Indians of Massachusetts after the death of Massasoit in 1661. Metacomet watched his people ...

Mid-17th century women's costumes.
Mid-17th century women's costumes. Contrast the more elaborate fashions of these well-to-do women with the plain dress of the Puritan lady in ...

Miles Standish (ca. 1584-1656).
Miles Standish (ca. 1584-1656), the military leader who was hired to accompany the Pilgrims. A fiery officer, he did not trust the Indians, and ...

Minot House, Dorchester, MA, built 1633-34.
The Minot House at Dorchester, Massachusetts, built 1633-34. Town residents built simple but sturdy clapboard houses such as this one for their ...

New Amsterdam in 1671.
New Amsterdam in 1671. At the end of Stuyvesant's 17-year rule, fewer than 8,000 settlers lived in New

Amsterdam, although the port was a ...

Oliver Cromwell (1599-1658).
Oliver Cromwell (1599-1658). The purpose of the "New England Experiment" changed dramatically when the Puritans who remained in England came into ...

Oliver Cromwell dissolves Parliament in 1653.
Oliver Cromwell dissolves the Long Parliament in 1653. The Long Parliament was the name given to the session of Parliament called by Charles I in ...

Penn's 1681 pamphlet promoting Pennsylvania.
William Penn's 1681 pamphlet promoting Pennsylvania, Some Account of the Province of Pennsylvania . Although Penn objected to having the colony ...

Peter Stuyvesant (ca. 1595-1672).
Peter Stuyvesant (ca. 1595-1672), Director-General of New Netherlands from 1647 to 1664, was sent by the company to reverse the economic disaster ...

Pilgrims landing at Plymouth, December 21, 1620.
The landing of Pilgrims at Plymouth, December 21, 1620. Winter was the worst of times to begin a new colony. The Pilgrims were spared attacks by ...

Roger Williams (ca. 1603-1683).
Roger Williams (ca. 1603-1683) attended Cambridge, where he became a Puritan, and emigrated to Massachusetts Bay in 1631. An idealist, Williams ...

Roger Williams is sheltered by the Indians.
Roger Williams is sheltered by the Indians. In 1635, Williams angered the General Court by preaching that the government could punish only civil ...

Roger Williams opposing the Pequot Indians.
Roger Williams opposing the Pequot Indians. The Puritans experienced no large-scale opposition until the outbreak of the Pequot War in 1636-1637. ...

Salem meeting house where Roger Williams spoke.
The Salem, Massachusetts, meeting house in which Roger Williams preached. Puritans did not call their place of worship a church, for they held ...

Signing the Mayflower Compact.
Signing the Mayflower Compact. Their charter entitled the Pilgrims to settle in Virginia, but in New England they had no legal authority. A few ...

The Mayflower under sail.
The Mayflower under sail. Fall is not the best time to sail across the Atlantic, and the journey took two months. The Speedwell had to turn ...

The attack on the Pequot fort at Mystic, 1637.
The attack on the Pequot fort at Mystic, 1637. Having in their view been attacked without provocation, the Pequots made a series of retaliatory ...

The Boston Town House Square.
The Boston Town House Square, ca. 1657. The civil government enforced laws against Sabbath breaking, usury, theft, and other crimes in part ...

The church at Scrooby in South Yorkshire, England.
The church at Scrooby in South Yorkshire, England. While many of the Puritans wanted to reform the Church of England, a small group of ...

The earliest view of New Amsterdam, 1651.
The earliest view of New Amsterdam, 1651. In order to promote colonization, the Dutch West India Company gave up its monopoly of the fur trade ...

The execution of Charles I, 1649.
The execution of Charles I, 1649. Charles was defeated by Cromwell's forces in 1645, 1646 and 1648. After his final capture in 1648, the ...

The French theologian John Calvin (1509-1564).
The French theologian John Calvin (1509-1564) was an important force shaping the settlement of New England more than half a century after his ...

The plan of Philadelphia, 1684.
The plan of Philadelphia, 1684. From the beginning, Penn planned to attract merchants to his colony, and carefully planned a city to meet their ...

Thomas Hooker (ca. 1586-1647).
Thomas Hooker (ca. 1586-1647), a leading Puritan minister in England, migrated to New England with his congregation in 1633, settling first in ...

Thomas Hooker's house at Hartford.
Thomas Hooker's house at Hartford. Hooker quickly became the leading figure for the three Connecticut River Valley towns of Hartford, Windsor, ...

Title page, Eliot's 1663 Bible in Algonquian.
The title page of John Eliot's 1663 translation of the Bible into Algonquian for Indians. Once the Pequot war had removed that tribe as a threat, ...

William Kieft, Director-General, New Netherlands.
William Kieft (1597-1647), Director-General of the New Netherlands 1638-1647. The influx of farmers sponsored by the patroon families threatened ...

William Penn (1644-1718).
William Penn (1644-1718), the founder of Pennsylvania, the last of the Proprietary colonies. Penn's father was a prominent supporter of Cromwell ...

William Penn gets a land grant from Charles II.
William Penn gets a land grant from Charles II. By the time his father died in 1670, William Penn the Younger had adopted the Quaker beliefs ...
William Penn landing at New Castle.
William Penn landing at New Castle. Penn went to his colony in October 1682, landing at New Castle, Delaware. He found some 4,000 settlers ...
William Penn treating with the Indians.
William Penn treating with the Indians. Authorized to deal personally with the Indians, Penn purchased Indian lands before allowing his settlers ...
Winthrop and the first "Great Migration," 1630.
The arrival of Winthrop and the first of the " Great Migration " in Boston Harbor, 1630. The ship in the foreground is Winthrop's flagship, the ...
Wouter von Twiller (ca. 1580-1656).
Wouter von Twiller (ca. 1580-1656), Director-General of the New Netherlands 1633-1638. During his tenure, his colony was little more than a ...

Section B: Mature Colonial Life, 1680-1765

Video Overview: Colonial Life 1680-1765.
A brief video Overview of mature colonial life from 1680 to 1765. Transcript: During the eighteenth century, France, England, and Spain all ...

Colonial Expansion: Spain and France

"View of Nouvelle Orléans ."
"View of Nouvelle Orléans ," by Jean Pierre Lassus, 1726. When the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713 left the French free once again to expand their ...
1691 map of the Cadodacho Indian settlement.
A 1691 map of the Cadodacho Indian settlement, near Texarkana. The eastern corridor of Spanish expansion northward was developed in response to ...
A 1730 map of the Presidio de San Antonio.
A 1730 map of the Presidio de San Antonio, showing missions and a proposed villa (center), drawn by the Marqués de San Miguel de Aguayo, the ...
Apache braves.
Apache braves. The Apache, a name given by the Spanish to a number of related bands of nomadic hunting peoples, were a formidable obstacle to ...
Comanche Indian camp, Ft. Sill, Indian Territory.
A Comanche Indian camp near Ft. Sill, Indian Territory. Comanche Indians moved into the Texas-New Mexico region in the period after 1706, and ...
Detail, 1692 map showing California as an island.
Detail of a 1692 map by Venetian cartographer Vincenzo Coronelli, showing California as an island. The West Coast corridor of the three-pronged ...
Father Eusebio Francisco Kino (1644-1711).
Father Eusebio Francisco Kino (1644-1711). The energetic extension of Spain's western borderlands came about as a result of the actions of a ...
Father Kino's 1701 map of California.
Father Kino's 1701 map of California. It was he who rediscovered that Baja California was not an island, but a ...
Interior of sanctuary of the Espada Mission church
The interior of the sanctuary of the Espada Mission church. By 1731 there were four missions in the San Antonio region, one of which was this ...
Map of claims by European powers prior to 1754.
Map of the claims by European powers prior to 1754. When the wars between competing European powers resumed again in the 1740s, each of them had ...
Map of the Spanish "Corridors of Expansion."
A map of the Spanish "Corridors of Expansion" in the 17th and 18th centuries. Expansion of population, and growth into the interior, was not ...
Mission at Loreto, first capital of California.
The mission at Loreto, the first capital of California. Loreto, shown on Kino's map in 1701, was successfully settled by two Italian Jesuits just ...
The aqueduct at the Espada Mission.
The aqueduct at the Espada Mission. The Franciscan fathers and their Indian converts and novitiates did more than construct places of worship. ...
The Fort of the Natchez.
The Fort of the Natchez. The French also established a fortress and trading post on a bluff farther up the Mississippi at Natchez. Trading posts ...
The mission church of San Francisco de la Espada.
The mission church of San Francisco de la Espada, south of San Antonio. Renewed French trade activities in Texas reactivated the Spanish ...
The Mission Concepcion.
The Mission Concepcion, another of the missions built along the San Antonio River in the early 18th century. The four missions which are now ...
The old Spanish Government House in Santa Fe.

The old Spanish Government House in Santa Fe. The reconquest of New Mexico was completed in 1696, when the Pueblo Indians once again ...

The plaza and church in El Paso.

The plaza and church in El Paso. A plaza where holy feast day celebrations were held, and which served as a market for livestock and trade goods, ...

The restored mission at Zuñi Pueblo.

The restored mission at Zuñi Pueblo. Originally built in 1629 to convert the Zuñi Indians, this mission was among those abandoned in the Pueblo ...

The Taos Pueblo.

The Taos Pueblo. The Spanish method of conquest in the northern part of New Spain combined the establishment of missions among the pueblo ...

English Colonial Economic Developments of the Mid-18th Century

Poor Richard's Almanack .

The popular Poor Richard's Almanack . The literacy of the British colonial population, especially in New England, was high enough to sustain a ...

" Observations on Inslaving...Negroes ," 1758.

Title page, Observations on the Inslaving, importing, and purchasing of Negroes , 1758. Despite the profits from the slave trade, some colonists ...

"Butterfly lakes" and gardens, Middleton Place.

The "butterfly lakes" and restored landscaped gardens of Middleton Place. Located along the Ashley River, Middleton Place was built early in the ...

"Duche's House," Delaware governor's home.

"Duche's House," the residence of Governor Thomas McKean (of Delaware) on 3rd Street, Philadelphia. Like Boston and New York, Philadelphia ...

"The City of New York", from Survey by James Lyne.

"The City of New York, from an Actual Survey by James Lyne, 1728." New York served one of the potentially richest hinterlands in all the colonies ...

A library.

High literacy rates supported not only the publication of newspapers, books and almanacs in the colonies, but also the establishment of ...

A shoemaker's shop "of the olden times."

A shoemaker's shop "of the olden ...

A silver bowl, crafted by Paul Revere (1735-1818).

A silver bowl, crafted by Paul Revere (1735-1818), Boston silversmith and revolutionary patriot. In addition to silversmithing, Revere made ...

Bedroom in house in which Washington was born.

A bedroom in the house in which George Washington was born, restored to show furnishings and textiles characteristic of families of wealth of the ...

Charles Town in 1768.

Charles Town in 1768. The shipping trade filled the harbor with "Canoes, Boats, Pettygues," craft of all sizes and descriptions. Charles Town was ...

Christ Church, on Salem Street in Boston.

Christ Church, on Salem Street in Boston. The influx of a merchant community into Puritan Boston, with close ties to English merchant ...

Col. William Byrd of Westover plantation.

Col. William Byrd (1674-1744) of Westover plantation. Tobacco made enormous fortunes for planters who cultivated large plantations with the help ...

Colonial trade routes.

Colonial trade routes. Historians used to write of a "triangular trade" between Europe, Africa, and North America involving slaves, raw materials ...

Diagram showing loading of slaves into a ship.

A part of a cutaway diagram showing the loading of a cargo of slaves into a ship. The more slaves that could be carried on board, the higher the ...

Drawing of the Saugus, Massachusetts, Iron Works.

A conjectural drawing of the Saugus, Massachusetts, Iron Works. Despite British trade policies to protect English manufacturers, Americans did ...

Drayton Hall, built by John Drayton.

Drayton Hall, built by John Drayton on the banks of the Ashley River in Charleston County, South Carolina, between 1738 and 1742. At his death, ...

Episcopal church built in Connecticut, ca. 1750.

Anglican or Church of England (later called Episcopal) congregations spread to other areas of New England as well. This Episcopal church at ...

Forge hearth, reconstructed Saugus Iron Works.

The forge hearth at the reconstructed Saugus Iron Works. Heat for working the iron was provided by charcoal, while the bellows which forced air ...

George Washington's birthplace.

George Washington's birthplace. This comfortable brick house, while nowhere near as elaborate as a Westover or Gunston Hall, nevertheless ...

George Whitefield, evangelical preacher.

English-born George Whitefield (1714-1770) was a leading evangelical Calvinist preacher of the Great Awakening . He attended the Methodist ...

Gilbert Tennent, clergyman of Great Awakening.
Gilbert Tennent (1703-1764) was the leading Presbyterian clergyman of the Great Awakening . A pastor in New Brunswick, New Jersey, he began a ...

Gunston Hall, the home of George Mason.
Gunston Hall, the home of George Mason (1725-1792), was built in 1755-58 on land overlooking the Potomac River on Mason's 5,000-acre tobacco ...

Harvard College, at Cambridge, around 1725.
Harvard College, at Cambridge, Massachusetts, around 1725. Begun in 1636 to educate a "learned ministry" for a Puritan colony, Harvard was ...

Isaac Backus, an Active Separate-Congregationalist
Isaac Backus (1724-1806), an Active Separate-Congregationalist in New England who had preached against the Arminianism of the established clergy, ...

Jonathan Edwards, influential theological writer.
Jonathan Edwards (1703-1758) was the most influential theological writer and thinker of the Great Awakening and perhaps of mid-18th century ...

Last page, New England Primer Improved .
The last page of the New England Primer Improved (Boston, 1773). Education for young children of both sexes was important in New England from ...

Leyden Street, Plymouth, Massachusetts.
Leyden Street, Plymouth, Massachusetts. Communities of all sizes prospered during the mid-18th century. Increasingly, all of New England came ...

New York, 1745: two parts of a five-part engraving
New York, 1745: two parts of a five-part engraving. During the decades of peace after the Treaty of Ryswick, New York City's population nearly ...

Packing wool for shipment.
Packing wool for shipment. The British controlled the trade of their colonies by a series of acts, beginning in the 1654s, known collectively as ...

Philadelphia in 1702.
Philadelphia in 1702 was still a town, although well established along its grid design between the Delaware and Schuylkill Rivers. Its population ...

Phillis Wheatley (1753?-1784).
Phillis Wheatley (1753?-1784). Brought from Africa in 1761, Wheatley was an early woman poet, and is considered the first important ...

Plan of Boston by William Burgin.
A plan of Boston in New England, drawn by William Burgin and engraved by Thomas Johnson in 1728. A bustling metropolis that reminded visitors of ...

Plan of Charles Town in 1704 drawn by Edward Crisp
A plan of Charles Town (now Charleston, South Carolina) in 1704, drawn by Edward Crisp. Like Philadelphia at the beginning of the century, ...

Plan of Philadelphia drawn in 1777-1778.
A plan of the City of Philadelphia in 1777-1778, by Pierre Nicole. By the end of the colonial era, 18th-century trading patterns had made ...

Printing press like Franklin used in Philadelphia.
A printing press such as Benjamin Franklin used in Philadelphia. From William Gay and J. H. Beale, Picturesque Sketches of American Progress ...

Rice cultivation in Ogeechee River low country.
Rice cultivation on the Ogeechee River near Savannah, as practiced in the Georgia and Carolina low country. The staple crop of plantation ...

Slave trading Fort des Nauvres, West Africa.
Slave trading activity at Fort des Nauvres, on Moyella Island, West Africa. Slaves brought from " factories " in the African interior to the ...

Slaves aboard a slave ship.
Slaves aboard a slave ...

Slaves cultivating sugar cane in the West Indies.
Slaves cultivating sugar cane in the West Indies. The West Indies played a key role in the colonial trade of the 18th century. By the early ...

The 1765 home of William Paca, Annapolis.
The 1765 William Paca house, in Annapolis, Maryland. In 1674 the capital of Maryland was moved to the new town of Annapolis, more centrally ...

The Boston gravestone of Christopher Kilby, age 4.
The Boston gravestone of Christopher, four and a half, son of John and Rebecca Kilby, 1698. Childhood mortality was a fact of life at the turn ...

The Bruton Parish Church, Williamsburg, Virginia.
The Bruton Parish Church at Williamsburg, Virginia. The Anglican church was the established church in Virginia from the inception of the colony, ...

The College of William and Mary.
The College of William and Mary, at Williamsburg, Virginia, granted a charter in 1693, was also intended to provide an educated clergy for the ...

The European factories at Xavier.
The European factories at Xavier. The slave trade was an international one in the 18th century, This engraving shows compounds maintained by an ...
The governor's palace at Williamsburg.
The governor's palace at Williamsburg. Virginia also moved its capital inland in 1699 from the original capital at Jamestown. The town became a ...
The Hancock House in Boston.
The Hancock House in Boston illustrates the wealth that a merchant like John Hancock could amass through trade (both legal and illegal) in the ...
The interior of the Tuoro Synagogue.
The interior of the Tuoro Synagogue. Designed by Peter Harrison, it is presently the place of worship of the Congregation Jeshuat ...
The North Meeting House in Salem, Massachusetts.
The North Meeting House in Salem, Massachusetts. Despite royal governors and a growing tolerance granted to other religious groups such as the ...
The Old State House at Boston as it appears today.
The Old State House at Boston as it appears today, in the Boston National Historical ...
The Old State House at Boston.
The Old State House at Boston. Built in 1711 to house the governments of both the town of Boston and the province of Massachusetts Bay, the brick ...
The Philadelphia Merchants' Exchange in 1754.
The Philadelphia Merchants' Exchange in 1754. Built in 1702 as a private home, by mid-century it was a meeting place for merchants to exchange ...
The processing of indigo.
The processing of indigo. In the 1740s, rice cultivation in Carolina and Georgia was supplemented by the introduction of indigo culture. Indigo ...
The reconstructed Iron Works at Saugus.
The reconstructed Iron Works at Saugus include a furnace, forge, and rolling and slitting mills, all water ...
The restored grounds and gardens at Gunston Hall.
The restored grounds and gardens at Gunston Hall. Gentlemen of wealth found pleasure in imitating the elaborate formal gardens of the estates of ...
The schoolroom at Gunston Hall, in Virginia.
The schoolroom at Gunston Hall, in Virginia. Wealthy planters like George Mason or William Byrd II hired tutors to teach their children, and some ...
The Society of Friends Meeting House at Newport.
The Society of Friends Meeting House at Newport, Rhode Island. Although persecuted in Massachusetts Bay, Quakers had been welcomed in Rhode ...
The Tuoro Synagogue at Newport, Rhode Island.
The Tuoro Synagogue at Newport, Rhode Island. The first Jews arrived in the English colonies in the middle of the 17th century, and were ...
Tobacco processing.
Tobacco processing. The staple crop of the upper South in the early 18th century was tobacco. A labor-intensive crop grown with slave labor, it ...
Tobacco traders on Chesapeake Bay wharf.
Tobacco traders and hogsheads of tobacco on a wharf in the Chesapeake Bay. Cartouche from the 1754 Joshua Fry and Peter Jefferson map of ...
Transporting tobacco to market in Virginia.
Transporting tobacco to market in ...
Vaccinating a baby.
Vaccinating a baby. Although this image is from a century later, one of the important advances in medicine was the development of immunization ...
Westover, on the James River, Virginia.
Westover, on the James River, Virginia. William Byrd II lived like English nobility on his 100,000-acre estate. Much of the present city of ...
Women visiting an early classroom.
Women visiting an early classroom. Studies of literacy reveal that men and women in New England had a much higher rate of literacy than those of ...
Yale University, founded in 1701.
Yale University, founded in 1701, is the third-oldest college in the United States. One of its founders was Cotton Mather (see B 14) who believed ...

Peace and Colonial Expansion: England

"Plan of an American New Cleared Farm."
"Plan of an American New Cleared Farm." Much of the back country of the colonies was settled by another major group of immigrants, called by ...
A log cabin on a river bank.
A log cabin on a river bank. The homes of the frontier settlers, whether Scots Irish or German, were often of logs, a readily available building ...
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania, in 1784.
Bethlehem, Pennsylvania, in 1784. The third-largest of the German religious groups who came to the English

colonies, the Moravians, fled ...

General James Edward Oglethorpe.

General James Edward Oglethorpe (1696-1785), as a Parliamentary reformer, became concerned about people incarcerated in English debtors' prisons. ...

Landing of Schwenckfelders from St. Andrew .

Landing of the Schwenckfelders from the St. Andrew at Philadelphia, September 1734. In the 1750s, a great migration of 100,000 Germans flooded ...

Savannah in 1734.

Savannah in 1734. Oglethorpe himself led the first settlement group of 35 families to Georgia. He laid out the design of his capital city, built ...

Savannah in 1749.

Savannah in 1749. After the initial restrictions were lifted, and more than 1,500 settlers brought to Georgia by the Trustees, the grid plan, of ...

The ruins of Fort Frederica, Georgia.

The ruins of Fort Frederica, a National Monument on St. Simon's Island, Georgia. Increasingly, Oglethorpe found his time consumed by organizing ...

The Glorious Revolution and the Beginning of the Wars for Empire

Couriers des bois gather around a campfire.

Some Couriers des bois on a fur-gathering expedition gather around the campfire. Note the traps at lower ...

"Combat between English and French," near Canada.

"Combat between two ships, English and French," near Canada, 1694. The principal impacts upon England's North American colonies of King William's ...

A French coureur de bois or fur trader.

A French coureur de bois or fur trader. French traders were welcomed by the Hurons of the interior. Instead of ousting the Indian people with ...

A French 1688 map of the Lac des Hurons .

A French 1688 map of the Lac des Hurons . In 1701 the French built several fortifications at the northern end of the Mississippi Valley. The ...

A map of North America, 1698.

A map of North America, 1698, by Father Louis Hennepin (1640-1701). Belgian priest and explorer Hennepin's map illustrates the extent of French ...

A Mohawk chief.

A Mohawk chief. Although the Five Tribes of the Iroquois attempted to remain neutral, playing the French and English against each other to their ...

A View of Salem in the 1770s.

A View of Salem in the 1770s. Salem was originally a Puritan farming community, but by 1690 a thriving port had emerged in the eastern part of ...

An American beaver.

An American beaver. The economic importance of the fur trade in beaver and deer pelts, and the need to control access to them through Indian ...

Anne, younger daughter of James II.

Anne (1665-1714), the younger daughter of James II, became Queen of England and the last Stuart monarch in 1702 when William III died childless. ...

Blackbeard (1680-1718).

Blackbeard (Edward Teach, Thatch, or Tench, 1680-1718) was one of the best known of the pirates active along the Carolina coasts during the years ...

Cotton Mather (1663-1728).

Cotton Mather (1663-1728) was one of several New England ministers who believed that witchcraft may have been responsible for the decline of ...

Detail of "A Plan of Several Villages ..."

Detail of "A Plan of Several Villages in the Illinois Country, with part of the River Mississippi." The French began to reinforce their hold on ...

Detail of La Potherie's View of Quebec in 1700.

Detail of La Potherie's View of Quebec in 1700. Quebec was the capital of New France, whose control over the interior of the continent had been ...

Duquay-Trouin forcing entrance of Rio de Janeiro .

Duquay-Trouin forcing the entrance of Rio de Janeiro in September 1711. French privateers harassed colonial shipping in the West Indies, and ...

Jacob Leisler's house in New York.

Jacob Leisler's house in New York. News of the Glorious Revolution and of Massachusetts' rebellion against Andros reached fertile ground in New ...

James II burns order to convene a free Parliament.

James II throws the order to convene a free Parliament into the fire and flees. Englishmen and colonists alike regarded the "Glorious Revolution" ...

Map, pre-US in 1750.

A map of the pre-United States territorial claims by European powers in ...

Mary II (1662-1694), Queen of Great Britain.

Mary II (1662-1694), Queen of Great Britain. Reared as a Protestant despite her father's Catholic leanings, she was married to William of Orange ...

Mobile in 1711.
Mobile in 1711. This additional French fur-trading post was established in 1703 closer to the Spanish at Pensacola, near present day ...
Northern settlements become royal colonies.
A map showing the transformation of the northern British colonies into royal colonies. In the aftermath of the Glorious Revolution and a series ...
Rebecca Nourse's home; executed for witchcraft.
The home of Rebecca Nourse, one of those executed by hanging for witchcraft in Salem, 1692. The house is said to have been built in 1636, and is ...
Salem, Massachusetts, witchcraft trials in 1692.
An 1883 artist's conception of the Salem, Massachusetts, witchcraft trials in 1692. Unrest from political and military upheaval in New England ...
Sir Edmond Andros (1637-1714).
Sir Edmond Andros (1637-1714). The Glorious Revolution brought political change as well as war to England's colonies. After serving as governor ...
Sir William Phips, Royal Governor, Massachusetts.
Sir William Phips (1651-1695), leader of Massachusetts expeditions against the French, and Royal Governor of Massachusetts, 1692-1694. After ...
Southern British colonies created.
The transformation of the southern British colonies into royal colonies. The Maryland colony's proprietor was restored to ownership, but not ...
The pirate Stede Bonnet.
The pirate Stede Bonnet. During Queen Anne's War, privateers (who were little more than legalized pirates) played an important role off the ...
William of Orange became William III of England.
William of Orange became William III (1650-1702) of England. He brought England into the War of the League of Augsburg, which was already raging ...

The Second Phase of the Anglo-French War for Empire: 1739-1763

"Braddock's Retreat," French & Indian War, 1755.
"Braddock's Retreat" in the French and Indian War, 1755. Nine hundred British soldiers were killed or wounded on the retreat from Fort Duquesne ...
"Join or die."
"Join, or Die," the famous cartoon logo usually associated with the American Revolution, was printed in Franklin's Pennsylvania Gazette on May ...
1769 chart of San Diego harbor.
A 1769 chart of the San Diego harbor, by the Spanish explorer Gaspar de Portolá. Courtesy Archivo General de Indias, Seville, ...
A south view of Oswego, on Lake Ontario, 1755.
A south view of Oswego, on Lake Ontario, 1755. The senior British commander left in America after Braddock's death was General William Shirley ...
Admiral Edward Vernon (1684-1757).
Admiral Edward Vernon (1684-1757). Lawrence Washington, one of those who served under Vernon at Cartagena, named his northern Virginia home Mount ...
Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790).
Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790) was the leader of the Pennsylvania delegation at the Albany Congress. While the Indian negotiations were going on, ...
Colonel Washington on mission to Ohio, May 1754.
Colonel George Washington on his mission to the Ohio, May 1754. The English fort builders were forced out so the French could build Fort ...
Crown Point, New York.
Crown Point, New York. The Amherst forces also retook Crown Point from the French in 1759, then halted there for the winter on their way north to ...
De Portolá discovers San Francisco Bay, 1769.
De Portolá discovers San Francisco Bay, 1769. Sebastian Vizcaino had explored the California coast for Spain in 1602 (see A 108-109) and had ...
English general Wolfe and French leader Louis Jose
The English general James Wolfe (1727-1759, left), and the French defender Louis Joseph, Marquis de Montcalm (1712-1759, right), faced each other ...
Father Junípero Serra (1713-1784).
Father Junípero Serra (1713-1784) was chosen by Galvez in 1767 to head the group of Franciscan priests who implemented Galvez's plans for ...
Fort Duquesne, at present-day site of Pittsburgh.
Fort Duquesne, at the present-day site of Pittsburgh. The French used the cease fire to strengthen their military position in the interior of ...
Fort George commanded southern end of Lake George.
Fort George commanded the southern end of Lake George, the southernmost waterway on the Albany-Montreal corridor. William Pitt's plan was to ...
General Edward Braddock (1695-1755).
General Edward Braddock (1695-1755). To recapture the forks of the Ohio and block the French, the British

sent two regiments in 1754 under the ...

José de Galvez (1729-1786).
José de Galvez (1729-1786). The Peace of Paris of 1763 strengthened England's position in North America at the expense of France, and gave the ...

Juan de Anza, founder of city of San Francisco.
Juan de Anza (1735-1788) became the actual founder of the city of San Francisco in 1776. In the early winter of that year he led 240 colonists ...

Lord Jeffrey Amherst (1717-1797),.
Lord Jeffrey Amherst (1717-1797), the commander of the British forces in North America during part of the French and Indian ...

Louisbourg during the siege, in 1758.
Louisbourg during the siege, in 1758. In July, the British under Lord Jeffrey Amherst and James Wolfe recaptured Louisbourg. Drawn on the spot ...

Map of crucial battles of French and Indian War.
A map of the crucial battles of the French and Indian War. Arrows in brown show the movement of British forces in their successful attempt to ...

Map: European control after Treaty of Paris.
A map showing the European colonial control of the interior of North America after the Treaty of Paris of 1763 ended the Seven Years' or French ...

New England forces expedition against Cape Breton.
The landing of the New England forces in the expedition against Cape Breton, 1745. This was the most ambitious cooperative venture ever attempted ...

New England troops in Louisbourg expedition.
The embarkation of New England troops under William Pepperell during the expedition against Louisbourg. In the spring of 1745, Pepperell led on ...

Panic in Philadelphia caused by the Paxtons, 1763.
The panic in Philadelphia caused by the Paxtons, 1763. The failure of the Quaker majority in the Pennsylvania legislature to pay for an adequate ...

Porto Bello, Panama, taken by Admiral Verno.
Porto Bello, Panama, when it was taken by Admiral Edward Vernon in 1739. The peaceful interlude after the Treaty of Utrecht ended in the Americas ...

Presidio of Monterey, by artist in British navy.
The Presidio of Monterey, as sketched by an artist in the British naval expedition under George Vancouver in 1794. De Portolá discovered San ...

Robert Dinwiddie, Lt. governor, Virginia 1751-58.
Robert Dinwiddie (1693-1770), lieutenant governor of Virginia 1751-1758. Dinwiddie sent a force of Virginians to the forks of the Ohio to prevent ...

San Carlos mission church at Carmel.
The San Carlos mission church at Carmel as it appears ...

The San Carlos enters SF Bay, 1775.
The San Carlos enters San Francisco Bay, 1775. The California settlements grew only slowly in the first decades, and remained dependent upon ...

The Indian uprising of 1763: Pontiac's Rebellion.
The Indian uprising of 1763: Pontiac's Rebellion. The end of the war and the removal of the French from English North America did not end the ...

The Proclamation Line of 1763.
The Proclamation Line of 1763. In response to Pontiac's uprising, the new king, George III, signed an edict which created crown colonies in all ...

The San Carlos (Carmel) mission in 1794.
The San Carlos (Carmel) mission in 1794, as sketched by J. Sykes, an artist traveling with the British expedition under George Vancouver. The ...

The surrender of Fort Necessity.
The surrender of Fort Necessity. The main French force was much larger than Washington's band of Virginia militia. At Great Meadows, Washington ...

The taking of Quebec, September 13, 1759.
The taking of Quebec, September 13, 1759. This engraving shows the entire series of events of the British victory, from the landing of the ...

William Pepperell.
William Pepperell (1696-1759), a merchant from Kittery, Maine, and a lieutenant general in the British Army. In 1743, the War of Jenkins' Ear ...

William Pitt the Elder (1708-1778).
William Pitt the Elder (1708-1778) was called to head a new government in England in 1757. Reversing earlier strategies, he hired European forces ...

Section C: The American Revolution and the Early Republic, 1765-1820

Video Overview: Revolution, Republic 1765-1820.
A brief video Overview of the history of the American Revolution and the early Republic, from 1765 to 1820 Transcript: American school children ...

African Americans in the New Nation

"$30 Reward" for capture of runaway NC slave.

"$30 Reward" advertisement for the capture of a runaway North Carolina slave. Runaways were a constant problem in maintaining a work force of ...

A camp meeting of American Methodists in 1819.
A camp meeting of American Methodists in 1819. Evangelical Methodists and Baptists challenged the religious establishment and domination of older ...

A manumission document.
A manumission document. Not all African-Americans were held in slavery. Some achieved freedom by running away. Others were freed by their owners, ...

A new England kitchen, late 18th century.
A new England kitchen, late 18th century. In a pre-industrial village or agricultural economy, womens' household roles were an important part of ...

A violinist with a slave family.
A violinist with a slave family. Music was an important diversion for slaves, offering them temporary relief from their everyday lives, as well ...

Benjamin Banneker, African-American scientist.
Benjamin Banneker (1731-1806), a free African American in Maryland, became an amateur scientist, a gifted clockmaker, a surveyor, and the ...

Charles Willson Peale (1741-1827).
Charles Willson Peale (1741-1827), inventor, artist, scientist, patriot, and father of artists, illustrates the energy and breadth of talents of ...

David Rittenhouse (1732-1796).
David Rittenhouse (1732-1796). This American astronomer, the first director of the U.S. Mint, and president of the American Philosophical ...

Gas street lighting in Baltimore.
Gas street lighting in Baltimore. Charles Willson Peale and his son Rembrandt were instrumental in introducing gas lighting into American cities, ...

Ratio of males to females in early Republic, 1790.
The ratio of males to females in the early Republic, 1790. Women did not gain substantial political rights in the aftermath of the American ...

Richard Allen, African Methodist Episcopal Church.
In 1816, Richard Allen (1760-1831) founded the African Methodist Episcopal Church, one of the important institutions developed in the early ...

Slaves working in a cotton field.
Slaves working in a cotton field. The expansion of cotton cultivation on plantations in the deep South insured the continued growth of slavery ...

Weaving on a power loom in a Samuel Slater mill.
Weaving on a power loom in a Samuel Slater mill. New England women in the early 19th century increasingly found employment, and a small degree of ...

Postwar Nationalism and Expansion

Philadelphia and Trenton Packet steamboat.
John Fitch's successful Philadelphia and Trenton Packet steamboat, which sailed regularly between Philadelphia, Trenton, and three other New ...

"Mule Spinning" in Samuel Slater's mill.
"Mule Spinning" in Samuel Slater's mill (see also C ...

A 20-star U.S. flag.
A 20-star U.S. flag. After the War of 1812, westward expansion brought a new state into the Union each year: Indiana in 1816, Mississippi in ...

A flatboat.
A flatboat. In the interior, water transportation was necessary to move heavy freight, and flatboats were the workhorses of the Ohio River ...

A map of Chicago in 1812.
A map of Chicago in 1812. By the end of the War of 1812, the removal of the Indian threat brought expansion of settlement as far inland as Lake ...

A pioneer's home in the summertime.
A pioneer's home in the summertime. The improved transportation networks in the interior helped to create a market economy, and within a short ...

A ship's carpenter plies his trade.
A ship's carpenter plies his trade, building the vessels that made eastern ports such as Baltimore, Philadelphia, New York, Newport, and Boston ...

American inventor and artist Robert Fulton.
American inventor and artist Robert Fulton (1765-1815) is credited with the first commercially successful development of steamboat travel. This ...

An improved cast steel mold board plow.
An improved cast steel mold board plow. The growth of urban centers, and the establishment of industrial villages such as Pawtucket and Lowell, ...

Carding, drawing, roving & spinning at the mills.
Carding, drawing, roving and spinning at the Slater mills in Rhode ...

Chicago in 1820.
Chicago in 1820, though still small, exhibited some permanent buildings, such as the church at center. By

1818, the Illinois territory had ...

Cincinnati in 1802.

Cincinnati in 1802. On the eve of Ohio becoming a state in 1803, Cincinnati was still a frontier village with a population of about 800. Its ...

Cincinnati, pictured here in 1810.

Cincinnati, pictured here in 1810, had grown substantially in only a decade. The steamboat accelerated the growth of inland cities, bringing ...

Conestoga wagons such as this one carried freight.

Conestoga wagons such as this one carried freight between Philadelphia and Pittsburgh, or along the National ...

Eli Whitney (1765-1825).

Massachusetts-born Eli Whitney (1765-1825) was an American inventor best known for his 1793 invention of the cotton gin, supposedly developed at ...

Eli Whitney's cotton gin.

Eli Whitney's cotton gin. The simple principles of the gin could be copied so readily that Whitney never realized any financial gain from his ...

Hog slaughtering.

Hog slaughtering. The market economy linked agriculture to industry in numerous ways. Animals driven to market along the improved roads, or ...

Main post roads, 1804.

Main post roads, 1804. Post roads were established and maintained locally, but encouraged under the Constitution as part of a system of postal ...

Most late 18th-century travel was by horseback.

Most late 18th-century travel was by horseback, but this couple probably would not have been traveling far in this uncomfortable ...

Quilting.

A quilting party. Midwesterners increased their efficiency in the new market economy by pooling their labor in community cooperation at such ...

Reaping at Syracuse.

Reaping at Syracuse, 1850s. New and improved scythes and grain cradles allowed fewer men to harvest the increased grain yields. Increased ...

Robert Fulton's first steamboat, 1807.

Robert Fulton's first steamboat, 1807. The registered name of the boat was the North River Steamboat , but she is usually called the Clermont , ...

Samuel Slater, the inventor of the spinning jenny.

Samuel Slater (1768-1835), the inventor of the spinning jenny, imported from England in his head the plans to build a textile industry in New ...

Second Bank of the United States, at Philadelphia.

The Second Bank of the United States, at Philadelphia. The period after the War of 1812 saw the renewal of several of Alexander Hamilton's plans ...

Slater's first American cotton mill in Pawtucket.

Slater founded his first American cotton mill in Pawtucket, Rhode Island, in 1790. At first, cotton textile mills remained small; until the ...

The Arch Street Ferry at Philadelphia.

The Arch Street Ferry at Philadelphia. The growth of the West did not slow down the growth of urban centers in the East. Philadelphia in 1800 was ...

The Bushongo Tavern.

The Bushongo Tavern, five miles from York Town on the Baltimore Road, 1780s. A second part of the "American system" of postwar economic ...

This map shows all of U.S.territory 1820.

This map shows the extent of the territory of the United States in 1820, and the remaining claims of other nations. The Adams Onis Treaty in ...

Travel in public transportation.

Even in public coaches, travel was uncomfortable and slow. This "Philadelphia and Washington City Mail Stage" took 22 hours to make the trip ...

Virginian James Monroe (1758-1831).

Virginian James Monroe (1758-1831) had been a member of the Continental Congress, minister to France, Governor of Virginia, one of the ...

The Background for American Revolution, 1765-1774

Pennsylvania Journal and Weekly Advertiser

The Pennsylvania Journal and Weekly Advertiser , October 31, 1765. The Stamp Act aroused so much opposition in part because its burden fell on ...

"An Attempt to Land a Bishop in America, 1768."

"An Attempt to Land a Bishop in America, 1768." Although Lord Hillsborough did not see any connection between his order to send troops to Boston ...

"Join or Die," The Constitutional Courant .

"Join or Die," from the masthead of The (Connecticut) Constitutional Courant , September 21, 1765. Protests against the Stamp Act spread to ...

"This is this place to affix the STAMP."

"This is this place to affix the STAMP." The skull and crossbones "stamp," first printed in the Pennsylvania Journal , was copied by newspapers ...

A British tax stamp, 1765.

A British tax stamp, 1765. To help pay the enormous debts that the French and Indian War had saddled on England, and to support the military and ...

Benjamin Franklin before the Privy Council.

Benjamin Franklin before the Privy Council. By the time the American protests against the tax reached London, George Grenville had already been ...

Boston in the 1770s.

Boston in the 1770s. The publication of Dickinson's Letters prompted the Massachusetts General Court to send a circular letter , written by ...

Carding and spinning wool.

Carding and spinning wool. The boycott of imported goods increased the demand for home-manufactured ones. It became a patriotic duty to wear ...

Chancellor of the Exchequer Charles Townshend.

Chancellor of the Exchequer Charles Townshend (1725-1767) was the next minister to attempt to balance the budget. His plans for colonial revenue ...

Christopher Gadsden of South Carolina.

Christopher Gadsden (1724-1805) of South Carolina helped to keep opposition to British policies alive in the South. A member of the Stamp Act ...

Detail of cartoon concerning repeal of Stamp Act.

Detail of a cartoon concerning the repeal of the Stamp Act. In March, after lengthy debate, Parliament capitulated and repealed the Stamp Tax, ...

Faneuil Hall in Boston.

Faneuil Hall in Boston. After troops were sent to Boston, the city's merchants met at Faneuil Hall on August 1, 1768, and subscribed to an ...

George Grenville (1712-1770).

George Grenville (1712-1770), prime minister of England from 1763 to 1765, was one of the prosecutors of John Wilkes. He alienated the colonists ...

George III (1738-1820).

George III (1738-1820). The new king of England, a young man hailed as an enlightened monarch by his American subjects at his ascension to the ...

Handbill urging citizens to boycott British goods.

This handbill, urging citizens to boycott the merchant William Jackson for importing British goods in violation of the "subscription," ...

Isaac Barré spoke against Stamp Tax in Parliament.

Isaac Barré (1726-1802) spoke out against the passage of the Stamp Tax in Parliament, referring to the Americans as "those Sons of Liberty." ...

James Otis (1725-1783).

James Otis (1725-1783) was one of the leading political opponents of Thomas Hutchinson. Throughout the 1760s, he was a leader of a popular ...

John Dickinson, wealthy Philadelphia lawyer.

John Dickinson (1732-1808), a wealthy Philadelphia lawyer, sounded the alarm against the Townshend Duties. In an essay titled Letters from a ...

John Hancock (1737-1793) .

One of the wealthiest merchants in Boston, John Hancock (1737-1793) was one of the leading opponents of the Townshend Duties, and customs ...

John Wilkes (1727-1797).

John Wilkes (1727-1797), Member of Parliament, Lord Mayor of London, and editor of the newspaper The North Briton . One of the colonists' ...

Joseph Warren, Boston physician.

Joseph Warren (1741-1775), a Boston physician and close friend of both Adams men, was one of the most effective speakers on the March 5, 1772 ...

List of Merchants trading with British.

Merchants who traded with the British in violation of the agreements were listed in this notice in Edes and Gill's North American Almanack and ...

Lord Frederick North.

Lord Frederick North (1732-1792) was appointed prime minister in 1770 after the death of Charles Townshend. He remained in that office until ...

Map, the United States in 1776.

A map of the pre-United States territorial claims by European powers in ...

Patrick Henry (1736-1799).

Patrick Henry (1736-1799). He served as the first governor of the Commonwealth of Virginia; he supported independence, but opposed the adoption ...

Patrick Henry addressing VA House of Burgess.

Patrick Henry addressing the Virginia House of Burgesses. After being elected in May of 1765, Henry made a powerful opening speech criticizing ...

Samuel Adams (1722-1803).

Samuel Adams (1722-1803) was the de facto leader of Boston opposition to the Stamp Act. The son of another Hutchinson opponent, and a collector ...

The Boston Massacre, March 5, 1770.
The Boston Massacre, March 5, 1770. The reestablishment of good relations with the American colonists was not as easy as Lord North and George ...
The burning of the Gaspée .
The burning of the Gaspée . In Rhode Island, tensions erupted when the British naval vessel Gaspée ran aground on June 9, 1772 while chasing ...
The busy port of Boston.
The busy port of Boston. All of prime minister Grenville's measures, but especially the stamp tax, met determined resistance from the colonists. ...
The Liberty Tree in Boston.
The Liberty Tree in Boston became the site for popular protests against British tyranny. In December of 1765, a crowd of nearly 2,000 gathered ...
Thomas Hutchinson (1711-1780).
Thomas Hutchinson (1711-1780) served as colonial lieutenant governor of Massachusetts 1758-61 and as governor 1771-74. Although opposed to the ...
Woodcut showing landing British troops at Boston.
A woodcut by Paul Revere showing the landing of British troops at Boston, 1768. Samuel Adams' circular letter infuriated another British ...

The Beginnings of Colonial Resistance, 1774-1776

"The Boston Tea Party," December 16, 1773.
"The Boston Tea Party," December 16, 1773. The only tax left was that on tea, and despite attempts at reconciliation with the colonies, Lord ...
"The tarring and feathering of John Malcolm."
"The tarring and feathering of John Malcolm, Tory tax collector, Boston, January 20, 1774." Customs officer Malcolm was tarred and feathered ...
A 1775 map of Boston.
A 1775 map of Boston. While the Congress in Philadelphia debated conciliatory measures and proposed an " Olive Branch Petition ," Boston was ...
Benedict Arnold (1741-1801).
Benedict Arnold (1741-1801) appeared in 1775 to be one of the more promising young officers in the American force, despite a tendency toward ...
British vs. militiamen, Lexington, April 19, 1175.
The British troops reached Lexington at sunrise on April 19, 1775, to discover 70 armed militiamen drawn up in battle formation on the village ...
Burning of the Peggy Stewart , October 1774.
The Burning of the Peggy Stewart , October 1774. Nonimportation was scheduled to go into effect in the fall of 1774. When a vessel containing ...
Capitol Place, Quebec, from view taken in 1770s.
Capitol Place, Quebec, from a view taken in the 1770s. Engraving by Francois Xavier ...
Carpenter's Hall, site of Continental Congress.
Carpenter's Hall, where the First Continental Congress met in September, 1774. Delegates represented a wide range of political beliefs. ...
Charles Thompson (1729-1824).
Charles Thompson (1729-1824). The radicals won a second victory in the First Continental Congress by naming Thompson, a popular Philadelphia ...
Ethan Allen, of the "Green Mountain Boys."
Ethan Allen (1738-1789) originally formed an armed unit known as the "Green Mountain Boys" in an attempt to separate what is now Vermont from the ...
George Washington before the Continental Congress.
George Washington (1732-1799) appeared before the Continental Congress in the uniform of a Virginia colonel when it reconvened in Philadelphia in ...
John Murray, Lord Dunmore (1732-1809).
John Murray, Lord Dunmore (1732-1809), the last royal governor of Virginia, 1772-1775. When the Virginia House of Burgesses supported the ...
Joseph Galloway (1731- 1803).
Joseph Galloway (1731- 1803) attempted to keep the First Continental Congress on a more moderate course by introducing a "Plan of Union" ...
Journal, Proceedings of the Congress Sept. 1774.
The Journal of the Proceedings of the Congress Held at Philadelphia, September 5, 1774 . The official record of Congress's actions, it contains ...
Old South Church, Boston National Historical Park.
The Old South Church, in the Boston National Historical Park. Although Gage sent 700 British regulars to Concord in secrecy under the command of ...
Philadelphia in 1768.
Philadelphia in 1768. Once news of passage of the Coercive Acts reached North America, the committees of correspondence urged the colonies to act ...
Privates in uniform of Green Mountain Rangers.
Privates in the dress uniform of the Green Mountain Rangers. From Charles M. Lafferts, Uniforms of the American, British, French, and German ...

Reenactment of the charge of the American militia.
Reenactment of the charge of the American militia under Maj. John Buttrick across the North Bridge at Concord. The British left Lexington for ...
Richard Montgomery (1736-1775).
Richard Montgomery (1736-1775), a former British regular officer, had retired to New York, and married into the provincial elite. Americans ...
Sir Henry Clinton (1738-1795)
Sir Henry Clinton (1738-1795), who with Howe and Sir John Burgoyne arrived in Boston with reinforcements for Gage in May of 1775, and urged Gage ...
Sir William Howe (1729-1814).
Sir William Howe (1729-1814). A British general, he was the younger brother of Admiral Lord Richard Howe and was made commander-in-chief after ...
Society of Patriotic Ladies at Edenton in NC 1775.
"A Society of Patriotic Ladies at Edenton in North Carolina" in 1775. This British cartoon depicts the North Carolina women as lewd, unfeminine, ...
The battle of Bunker Hill.
The battle of Bunker Hill. The most costly battle of the entire revolution actually took place on Breed's Hill, the lower of the two promontories ...
The retreat of the British from Concord.
The retreat of the British from Concord. After the skirmish at the bridge, in which three British men were killed and nine wounded, Lt. Col. ...
The Suffolk Resolves House at Milton, MA.
The Suffolk Resolves House at Milton, Massachusetts. Dr. Joseph Warren, angry over the Boston Port Act, wrote a series of resolutions that were ...
Thomas Gage (1721-1787).
Thomas Gage (1721-1787), sent to Boston as commander of military forces in North America, had been appointed governor of Massachusetts when ...

The Decision for Independence

Charles Town, the capital of South Carolina, 1768.
Charles Town, the capital of South Carolina, 1768. Even before the Declaration of Independence was adopted, the Continental Congress realized ...
Declaration of Independence, July 4th, 1776.
"Declaration of Independence in Congress, at the Independence Hall, Philadelphia, July 4th, 1776," celebrated the signing of the Declaration, ...
Independence Hall in Philadelphia.
Independence Hall in Philadelphia. Built between 1732 and 1756 as the Pennsylvania State House, this building became the meeting place of the ...
Jefferson's draft Declaration of Independence.
A part of the first page of Thomas Jefferson's rough draft of the Declaration of Independence. When Lee's resolution was introduced to Congress ...
Page of text, Common Sense , Paine's pamphlet.
A page of the text of Common Sense , Thomas Paine's pamphlet urging continental unity and military action against ...
Part of text of Lee's resolution for independence.
The text of Richard Henry Lee's resolution for independence: "Resolved: that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and ...
Philadelphia waterfront with British ships.
The Philadelphia waterfront in the 1770s, with British ships in the harbor. Hand-colored engraving by Balth. Frederick ...
Richard Henry Lee, head of the Virginia radicals.
Richard Henry Lee (1732-1794), leader of the Virginia radicals. Early in June 1776, acting for the Virginia provincial assembly, Lee introduced a ...
The Assembly Room in Independence Hall.
The Assembly Room in Independence Hall. The Declaration of Independence was signed in this room in 1776, and the constitutional convention ...
The Great Seal of the United States.
The Great Seal of the United States. On July 4, after signing the Declaration of Independence, the Continental Congress appointed Franklin, Adams ...
Thomas Paine (1737-1809).
Thomas Paine (1737-1809), an English radical, met Benjamin Franklin in London and came to the colonies in 1774. His pamphlet, Common Sense , ...

The Federal Era, 1789-1800

"Citizen Genét Formally Presented to Washington."
"Citizen Genét Formally Presented to George Washington." The question of the French Revolution became an important domestic issue when France ...
"View of Suburbs of the City of Washington" 1800.
"View of the Suburbs of the City of Washington," showing the college town of Georgetown on the Maryland side of the Potomac River in 1800. The ...
A map of Indiana, shows influence of ordinance.

A map of a part of present-day Indiana, showing the continued influence of the Northwest Ordinance scheme of straight roads and square townships. ...

A meeting between Indians and whites in 1764.

A meeting between Indians and whites in 1764. A series of treaties after the end of the Revolution attempted to remove Indians from lands in the ...

A Shawnee Indian.

A Shawnee Indian. For a decade after the Treaty of Paris, the continued presence of British troops at Forts Detroit and Miami encouraged the ...

Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury.

Alexander Hamilton (1755-1804) became Washington's Secretary of the Treasury, and head of the largest department of the new government. Ca. 1859 ...

American ship Planter vs. French privateer.

The American merchant ship Planter beating off a French privateer , July 10, 1799, during the Quasi-War with France. 1800 aquatint, ...

Anthony Wayne, American Revolution general.

Anthony Wayne (1745-1796), a general in the American Revolution, was sent to put down a Shawnee and Miami uprising in 1794. The Indians had ...

Arches for Washington reception.

The triumphal arches erected for the reception of General Washington near Philadelphia, April 20, 1789. After notification of his unanimous ...

Bank of the United States at Philadelphia, 1800.

The Bank of the United States at Philadelphia, 1800. The new government faced enormous financial difficulties which it had inherited from ...

Building of the frigate Philadelphia in 1798.

The building of the frigate Philadelphia in 1798 illustrates President John Adams' strategy in the crisis of the " Quasi-War " with France. He ...

Campus Martius.

Campus Martius was a private fort in the old Ohio Company territory, just west of the original seven ranges. It was built in 1791 to protect ...

Charles Maurice de Talleyrand-Périgord.

Charles Maurice de Talleyrand-Périgord (1754-1838), the French foreign minister from 1797 to 1807. When John Adams, the second U.S. president, ...

Conflict in Congress, February 15, 1798.

Political conflict on the floor of Congress, February 15, 1798. In preparation for war, the Federalists passed a series of "Alien and Sedition ...

Congress Hall in Philadelphia.

Congress Hall in Philadelphia was the site of the meetings of the House of Representatives from December 1790 until in June 1800 the government ...

Edmund Randolph, Washington's attorney general.

Edmund Randolph (1753-1813), a former governor and a leading planter from Virginia, became Washington's attorney general. Fresco by Constantino ...

Elbridge Gerry (1744-1814).

Elbridge Gerry (1744-1814) of Massachusetts. A signer of the Declaration but an initial opponent of the Constitution, Gerry supported the limited ...

First water-powered grist mill, Washington County.

The first water-powered grist mill in Washington County, Tennessee, erected in 1779. Just as Virginians moved westward across the Appalachians ...

George Washington at the end of his presidency.

George Washington at the end of his presidency. He had not wanted to undertake a second term, but the political quarreling between the ...

George Wasington enters Trenton, 1789.

George Washington greeted by an adoring crowd in Trenton, 1789. By the time he retired, Washington had achieved the status of a mythic hero ...

Henry Knox, Washington's secretary of war.

Henry Knox (1750-1806), Washington's comrade in arms during the Revolution, and his right-hand man as Chief of Artillery, became Secretary of ...

John Adams, Washington's vice president.

John Adams (1735-1826) was chosen as Washington's vice president; he had served as the first minister to the Court of St. James (Ambassador to ...

Lady Washington's reception day.

Lady Washington's reception day. Washington cherished the image of the "citizen soldier," and of the importance of Republican simplicity and ...

Map, Washington by Pierre L'Enfant.

A map of the city of Washington, showing the plan for the new capital envisioned by Pierre L'Enfant. A compromise in the First Congress had led ...

Martha Washington (1731-1802).

Martha Washington (1731-1802), the wife of George Washington, played an important role in the creating a sense of dignity and importance in the ...

Pittsburgh, 1790.

Pittsburgh, 1790. First settled in 1759, the site first of the French Fort Duquesne and then the English Fort

Pitt, this community was located at ...

Senate wing of the Capitol, completed around 1800.
The Senate wing of the Capitol, completed around 1800. At that time, the unfinished capitol building and president's house were separated by ...

The beginnings of Ohio, 1784-1800.
The beginnings of Ohio, 1784-1800. Ohio was the first new state carved out of the old Northwest Territories, using the Northwest Ordinances ...

The inauguration of George Washington.
The inauguration of George Washington as the first president of the U.S., on the balcony of Federal Hall in New York City on April 30, 1789. ...

The Kentucky frontiersman Daniel Boone.
The Kentucky frontiersman Daniel Boone (1734-1820). Another problem for the new nation was that of controlling its westward expansion. Boone ...

The old fort at Boonesboro, Kentucky, 1775.
The old fort at Boonesboro, Kentucky, 1775. Both during and after the Revolution, Kentucky tried to break away from Virginia. The process for ...

The taking of the Bastille, on July 14, 1789.
The taking of the Bastille, on July 14, 1789, marked the beginning of the French Revolution. A second source of partisan differences during ...

Thomas Jefferson, Washington's secretary of state.
Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826) became Washington's Secretary of State. He later served as the second president of the U.S., 1801-09 (see C ...

Three of seven townships, under 1785 Ordinance.
Three of the seven ranges of townships, begun in 1786 under the 1785 Ordinance. The survey of the Ohio territory was carried out by the first ...

Washington reviews Army at Fort Cumberland, 1794.
George Washington reviewing the Western Army at Fort Cumberland, October 18, 1794. The rapid expansion of western populations created ...

The Jefferson Era

"Bull boats" near St. Louis.
"Bull boats" near St. Louis. Lewis and Clark encountered Indians along the upper Missouri river who used buffalo skins to make sturdy vessels ...

"The Old House" of John Adams.
"The Old House" of John Adams. Bitter and disillusioned by his defeat in 1800 and sick at heart over the death of his son Charles, ex-president ...

Aaron Burr and Alexander Hamilton dueling, 1804.
Aaron Burr and Alexander Hamilton dueling on the fields of Weehawken, New Jersey, July 11, 1804. Burr was still Vice President, although ...

Aaron Burr, Jefferson's first vice president.
Aaron Burr (1756-1836) was elected as Jefferson's first vice president, but served under a cloud caused by his failure to withdraw his name when ...

Albert Gallatin, secretary of the treasury.
Albert Gallatin (1761-1849), born in Switzerland, served Jefferson and then Madison as secretary of the treasury. To help pay off the national ...

Burning of the frigate Philadelphia in 1804.
"Burning of the Frigate Philadelphia in the Harbor of Tripoli, February 16. 1804, by 70 gallant Tars of Columbia Commanded by Lieutenant ...

Dolly Madison (1768-1849).
Dolly Madison (1768-1849) was an important Washington hostess for fifty years. A vivacious and outgoing woman, she served unofficially as hostess ...

James Madison, Jefferson's secretary of state.
James Madison (1751-1836), who had served as Jefferson's Secretary of State (see C 166), became the fourth president in 1809. The renewal of war ...

James Wilkinson (1757-1825).
James Wilkinson (1757-1825), a veteran of the American Revolution, became the military governor of Upper Louisiana. He corresponded with Burr in ...

John Marshall, chief justice of the Supreme Court.
John Marshall (1755-1835), the chief justice of the Supreme Court 1801-1835. One of John Adams' last-minute acts as president was to appoint a ...

Lewis and Clark with Indians.
"Captains Lewis and Clark Holding a Council with the Indians," from A Journal of the Voyage of Captain Lewis and Captain Clarke , published by ...

Mansion of Blennerhasset, on an Ohio river island.
The mansion of Blennerhasset, on an island in the Ohio river. After Hamilton's death, Burr began an ambitious scheme to recoup his political ...

Map of the Louisiana Purchase.
Map of the Louisiana Purchase. The purchase of Louisiana doubled the size of the United States, adding 828,000 square miles of territory west of ...

Map, electoral votes, 1800 election.

A map showing the electoral votes in the election of 1800. In this election Federalist John Adams and Democratic-Republican Thomas Jefferson, ...

Meriwether Lewis, co-leader of the expedition.
Meriwether Lewis (1774-1809), a Virginian and secretary and friend of Thomas Jefferson, was put in charge of an expedition to explore the newly ...

Reconstruction, Ft. Clatsop, near Astoria, Oregon.
A reconstruction of Fort Clatsop, near Astoria, Oregon. The Lewis and Clark expedition reached the Pacific Ocean in November 1805, and waited at ...

Robert R. Livingston (1746-1813).
Robert R. Livingston (1746-1813), a wealthy Democratic-Republican from New York. When Jefferson took office, Spain owned the Louisiana territory ...

Sacajawea, (1784?-1884) Shoshone guide.
Sacajawea, (1784?-1884) a Shoshone woman, served as a guide and interpreter for Lewis and Clark. Having been captured and sold to a Mandan ...

Stephen Decatur (1779- 1820).
Stephen Decatur (1779- 1820), an American naval officer from Maryland, first gained experience and recognition in a series of wars against the ...

The U.S. Capitol in 1806.
The U.S. Capitol in 1806, drawn for Thomas Jefferson by Benjamin Henry ...

Thomas Jefferson, the third president of the U.S.
Virginian Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826) became the third president of the U.S. after having served as Washington's secretary of state. He was one ...

Upper Louisiana territory transfer to U.S., 1804.
The transfer of the upper Louisiana territory to the U.S. at St. Louis, March 9, 1804. Louisiana was divided into two territories. In the ...

William Clark, co-leader of the expedition.
William Clark (1770-1838), co-leader of the 1804-06 Lewis and Clark Expedition. Also a Virginian, Clark was later superintendent of Indian ...

The New Nation Under the Articles of Confederation, 1783-1788

"The Federal Pillars."
"The Federal Pillars." Beginning in January 1788 with five pillars (Delaware, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Georgia and Connecticut) in place, The ...

A 1786 Rhode Island pound note.
A 1786 Rhode Island pound note. The peace treaty did not solve the new nation's continued economic problems. States continued to find it ...

Alexander Hamilton (1757-1804).
Alexander Hamilton (1757-1804) was one of the leading Federalists who worked for ratification in the key state of New York. To urge voters to ...

Annapolis State House.
The Annapolis State House was the site of the 1786 "Annapolis Convention," called to discuss mutual commercial problems. When only five states ...

Benjamin Franklin.
Benjamin Franklin was the oldest delegate to the Constitutional Convention. At its conclusion, he urged all delegates to sign it, noting that ...

Bowdoin pardons Shays's Rebellion participants.
Governor James Bowdoin's pardon for the participants in Shays's Rebellion. The outbreak made it possible for nationalists who wanted a stronger ...

Connecticut's Roger Sherman (1721-1793).
Connecticut's Roger Sherman (1721-1793) had attended the first and second Continental Congresses, and had been a member of the committee assigned ...

End of Shays's Rebellion, Springfield, MA.
The end of Shays's Rebellion, at Springfield, Massachusetts, 1787. Massachusetts had refused to print paper money, and had required that the high ...

George Washington (1732-1799).
George Washington (1732-1799), the revered hero of the Revolutionary War, presided over the Constitutional Convention. Robert Edge Pine portrait ...

James Madison,"the father of the Constitution."
James Madison (1751-1836), "the father of the Constitution," designed a plan of government which the head of the Virginia delegation, Edmund ...

New York parade for federal Constitution.
The New York City procession in honor of the federal Constitution. New York became the 11th state to ratify the Constitution on July 26, ...

Pierce Butler (1744-1822).
Pierce Butler (1744-1822), a South Carolina planter born in Ireland, argued fiercely in the constitutional debates for guarantees against ...

Signing of the Constitution, September 17, 1787.
The scene at the signing of the Constitution, September 17, 1787. 39 of the 55 delegates to the Constitutional Convention signed it. Luther ...

The State House in Philadelphia, 1778.

The State House in Philadelphia, 1778. Twelve states (all except Rhode Island) were represented by 55 delegates to a Constitutional Convention ...

Washington's home at Mount Vernon.

Washington's home at Mount Vernon. Within two years of his retirement, Washington found himself once again trying to solve the problems of the ...

The War for Independence

Serapis & Bon Homme Richard battle.

The Serapis and the Bon Homme Richard in a naval battle, September 23, 1779. When asked to surrender his badly damaged ship, John Paul Jones ...

"The Savages let loose."

"The Savages let loose, or The Cruel Fate of the Loyalists." Although no more major battles were fought after Yorktown, the war was not yet over, ...

"The surrender of the British at Yorktown."

"The surrender of the British at Yorktown" shows Yorktown in the background, and the French naval vessels in the Chesapeake. The American army ...

"The unfortunate death of Major André..."

"The unfortunate death of Major André, Adjutant General of the English army at headquarters in New York, October 2, 1780 who was found within the ...

A 1777 "Continental" bill for seven dollars.

A 1777 "Continental" bill for seven dollars. Congress was perennially short of money. Unable to tax citizens directly, and dependent upon the ...

A 1777 Pennsylvania bill for eight shillings.

A 1777 Pennsylvania bill for eight shillings. The states, too, suffered financial difficulties. Short of specie (metal money) throughout the ...

A cartoon, "The American Rattlesnake."

A cartoon, "The American Rattlesnake." A rattlesnake coiled around two British armies, representing those of Burgoyne at Saratoga and Cornwallis ...

A poster recruiting men into the continental army.

A poster recruiting men into the continental army. Washington's greatest need at the beginning of 1777 was to recruit and keep men in his army. ...

A private in Sherburne's Continental Regiment.

A private in Sherburne's Continental Regiment, 1778-1780. This regiment was recruited at large but was mostly composed of men from Connecticut. ...

Arthur Lee (1740-1792).

Arthur Lee (1740-1792), the second of the three commissioners sent to France, and Richard Henry Lee's brother, was a member of the Continental ...

Baron Freidrich Wilhelm von Steuben (1730-1794).

Baron Freidrich Wilhelm von Steuben (1730-1794) represented another important source of European aid. An experienced Prussian officer who had ...

Baron Johann de Kalb (1721-1780).

Baron Johann de Kalb (1721-1780), a German-born French army officer, also arrived in North America in 1777. Appointed a brigadier general in the ...

Benjamin Chew's house; battle of Germantown.

Benjamin Chew's house at the battle of Germantown, October 4, 1777. While Gates and Arnold were battling Burgoyne in New York, George Washington ...

Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790) .

Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790) in a portrait painted by the French artist Joseph Siffred Duplessis in 1779, shortly after the signing of the ...

Benjamin Franklin at the Court of France in 1778.

Benjamin Franklin at the Court of France in 1778. Despite his long diplomatic experience, Franklin played the role of the rustic American to the ...

Benjamin Lincoln (1733-1810).

After serving under Horatio Gates at Saratoga, Benjamin Lincoln (1733-1810) was sent south to command the southern army, leading the attack ...

Benjamin Rush, member of the Continental Congress.

Benjamin Rush (1745-1813) was another important member of the Continental Congress from Pennsylvania in 1776-77. A contributor to the American ...

Brandywine Creek batllefield, September 1777.

The battlefield at Brandywine Creek, September 1777. Instead of moving northward in accord with this strategy, Howe left General Henry Clinton in ...

British enter New York City, September 1776.

British troops enter New York City, September 1776. Engraving by Francois Xav. Habermann, ...

British landing on Long Island, August 22, 1776.

The British landing on Long Island, August 22, 1776. Engraving by B. Mourik, published May 1777 in Mercurius, a Dutch ...

Burgoyne's "Convention Army" at Charlottesville.

Burgoyne's "Convention Army" at Charlottesville, Virginia. When Burgoyne refused to surrender unconditionally, Gates agreed to a "convention" ...

Casimir Pulaski (1748-1779).

Casimir Pulaski (1748-1779), another Polish nobleman, came to America in 1777, having fled Poland after an earlier Polish rebellion and having ...

Charles Town viewed from a British ship, 1776.
Charles Town viewed from a British ship, 1776. The British believed that the South would provide loyalist supporters to help put down the ...

Conrad-Alexandre Gérard (1729-1790).
Conrad-Alexandre Gérard (1729-1790), the first Minister of France to the United States. One of the results of the treaties and French recognition ...

Count Francois Joseph Paul de Grasse.
Count Francois Joseph Paul de Grasse (1722-1788), Admiral of the French Navy in North America during the American Revolution. Although most of ...

Count Rochambeau (1725-1807).
Count Jean Baptiste Donatien de Vimeur de Rochambeau (1725-1807), commander of the French forces in America during the Revolutionary war. ...

Daniel Morgan, involved with Benedict Arnold.
Daniel Morgan (1736-1802), the leader of a unit of Virginia riflemen, was taken prisoner at the siege of Quebec, played a key role with Benedict ...

Deborah Sampson enlisted under a man's name.
Deborah Sampson, who enlisted in the army under the name of Timothy ...

Forces of France and U.S. trap English Army.
A map of the part of Virginia where the combined armies of France and the U.S. trapped Lord Cornwallis's English army at Yorktown, October 19, ...

Fort Stanwyx, near Rome, New York.
The reconstructed Fort Stanwyx, near Rome, New York. The site of a treaty with the Iroquois in November 1768, this fort played a major role in ...

Franklin, Adams, Rutledge meet with Admiral Howe.
Benjamin Franklin, John Adams, and Edmund Rutledge meet with Admiral Lord Howe on Long Island, September 11, 1776. As Washington retreated slowly ...

Fraunce's Tavern served as Washington's HQ.
Fraunce's Tavern served as Washington's headquarters when he reentered New York City. It was here that he bade his officers a tearful farewell on ...

Gen. Philip Skeene's sawmill.
Gen. Philip Skeene's sawmill, which was burned by the Americans. The defeat of Burgoyne left not only the Mohawks and the Senecas without a ...

General Howe's headquarters in Philadelphia.
General William Howe's headquarters in Philadelphia. Just as he had spent the first winter of the war in comfort in New York, Howe spent the ...

General John Burgoyne (1722-1792).
General John Burgoyne (1722-1792), sometimes known as "Gentleman Johnny" for his habit of traveling with an enormous baggage train carrying all ...

General Philip Schuyler (1733-1804).
General Philip Schuyler (1733-1804), a wealthy New York landowner, commanded Washington's northern army. At first he was unable to block ...

George Washington at Princeton, early 1777.
George Washington at Princeton, early 1777. Having narrowly escaped the loss of his army, Washington followed his victory at Trenton with a rapid ...

George Washington, 1783.
George Washington, 1783. The " Newburgh conspiracy "was derailed when Washington appeared before the meeting of his rebellious officers, and ...

Governeur Morris (1752-1816).
Governeur Morris (1752-1816), no relation to Robert Morris, was his assistant superintendent of finance. A wealthy New Yorker who had moved to ...

Henry Laurens (1724-1792).
Henry Laurens (1724-1792). Even with its difficulties, the Congress was served well by men of political talent and importance from all of the ...

Horatio Gates (1727-1808).
Horatio Gates (1727-1808), an adopted Virginian and former British officer, was first appointed adjutant general by Congress in 1775. He was ...

Jefferson's division of northwest territory.
Jefferson's proposed division of the northwest territory into new states. While he waited in Annapolis for a quorum to ratify the Treaty of ...

John Adams (1735-1826).
John Adams (1735-1826), a leading Massachusetts revolutionary since 1765, was sent by Congress to France in 1778 and again in 1779, first to ...

John Jay (1745-1829).
John Jay (1745-1829) was an influential New York lawyer who helped draft his state's new constitution. He was a member of the Continental ...

John Paul Jones (1747-1792).
John Paul Jones (1747-1792), born in Scotland, became the best-known American naval hero of the Revolution. He carried out a series of daring ...

Lord Charles Cornwallis (1738-1805) .
Lord Charles Cornwallis (1738-1805) played a crucial role in the British southern strategy. In December 1779, Generals Henry Clinton and ...
Louis XVI's foreign minister Charles Gravier.
Louis XVI's foreign minister Charles Gravier, Comte de Vergennes (1717-1787) was the man Americans had to convince to secure recognition of ...
Map of the British plan of action for 1777.
Map of the British plan of action for 1777. The British believed that the key to defeating the Americans was to capture the state of New York and ...
Marie Joseph Paul, Marquis de Lafayette.
Marie Joseph Paul, Marquis de Lafayette (1757-1834). This 20-year old French aristocrat was inspired by the idealism of the French philosophes ...
Molly Pitcher takes over duties of fallen husband.
Molly Pitcher taking over the duties of her fallen husband. Women were a necessary part of an 18th-century army, and many wives were carried "on ...
Nathanael Greene (1742-1786).
Nathanael Greene (1742-1786) became a brigadier general in the Continental Army in 1775. He then became quartermaster general of the Continental ...
New York fire, September 21, 1776.
New York burns while people evacuate buildings, and red-coated soldiers attack green-shirted citizens suspected of starting the blaze, September ...
Pierre Augustin Caron de Beaumarchais.
Pierre Augustin Caron de Beaumarchais (1732-1799). The American victory at Saratoga paved the way for the establishment of European alliances. ...
Plan of the siege of Charleston, 1780.
Plan of the siege of Charleston, 1780. In February and March of 1780, Henry Clinton's army trapped 6,000 American troops under Benjamin Lincoln ...
Prisoners at battle of Bennington, Aug. 16, 1777.
Prisoners taken at the battle of Bennington, August 16, 1777. Burgoyne's slow progress southward left his army short of supplies. Hoping to ...
Private of light infantry company in British Army.
A private of a light infantry company in the British Army, shown in the uniform worn at the Battle of Bunker Hill and in the New York ...
Privates in the Hessian Grenadier forces.
Privates in the Hessian Grenadier forces that made up a large proportion of General Howe's army which occupied New York in ...
Reconstructed soldiers' cabins, Valley Forge, PA.
Reconstructed soldiers' cabins at Valley Forge, Pennsylvania. 18th-century armies did not usually carry out major campaigns in winter. Having ...
Richard Howe (1726-1784).
Richard Howe, First Earl (1726-1784), older brother of Sir William Howe, and commander of the British naval contingent in North America, ...
Robert Morris, the "financier of the Revolution."
Robert Morris (1734-1806), the "financier of the Revolution," was the man to whom Congress turned to solve its financial difficulties. He was ...
Seneca chief Red Jacket, or Sa-Go-Ye-Wat-Ha.
Seneca Indian chief Red Jacket, or Sa-Go-Ye-Wat-Ha (1758-1830). The summer 1777 campaign of the British in northern New York depended heavily ...
Signing of Preliminary Treaty of Peace at Paris.
The signing of the Preliminary Treaty of Peace at Paris, November 30, 1782, by the joint commissioners of the U.S. and England. Jay and Franklin ...
Silas Deane (1737-1789).
The third commissioner, Connecticut merchant Silas Deane (1737-1789), enraged Lee by carrying on private business, sometimes mixing it with ...
Surrender of Burgoyne at Saratoga, New York.
The surrender of Burgoyne at Saratoga, New York, October 17, 1777. Saratoga actually consisted of two battles; the first was on September 19, ...
Thaddeus Kosciuszko (1746-1817).
Thaddeus Kosciuszko (1746-1817), a Polish general and military engineer, came to America in 1776 to serve in the Continental Army. His ...
Thayendanegea, a Mohawk chief.
Chief Joseph Brant, or Thayendanegea (1742-1807), was a Mohawk chief who fought on the British side. He had visited London, had translated parts ...
The Articles of Confederation, 1777.
The Articles of Confederation, 1777. The Congress that seemed unconcerned about the soldiers starving at Valley Forge was not necessarily callous ...
The attack on Sullivan's Island, June 1776.
The attack on Sullivan's Island, June 1776. To occupy Charles Town, the British fleet first had to capture a small island fort that guarded the ...
The battle between the French and British fleets.

The battle between the French and British fleets off Virginia on September 5, l781. The French blockade prevented the relief of General ...

The battle of Camden, August 1780.

The battle of Camden, August 1780. About 100 miles inland from Charleston, Camden was one of a series of fortified positions seized by Cornwallis ...

The battle of Harlem Heights, September 16, 1776.

The battle of Harlem Heights, September 16, 1776. As his bruised and battered troops retreated northward and prepared to flee across the Hudson ...

The College of New Jersey at Princeton.

The College of New Jersey at Princeton (now Princeton University). The peace treaty signed in Paris still had to be ratified by the Congress ...

The destruction of the royal statue in New York.

The destruction of the royal statue in New York. On July 9, 1776, American troops in New York gathered to hear patriot leaders read the text of ...

The Moore house at Yorktown.

The Moore house at Yorktown, where the terms of surrender were arranged. Cut off from the sea, surrounded by 16,000 allied troops to his 8,000, ...

The New York waterfront, 1776.

The New York waterfront, 1776. In March of that year, after American forces had recaptured Dorchester Heights to the south of Boston with the ...

The siege of Savannah, 1779.

The siege of Savannah, 1779. English strategy shifted in 1778-1779 to one of occupying loyalist areas in the South. The new commander of the ...

The State House in Annapolis in 1789.

The State House in Annapolis in 1789. The Peace Treaty finally caught up with the Congress in Annapolis in December of 1783, where Governor Paca ...

United States of America under the peace of 1783.

The United States of America according to the peace of 1783. The peace treaty was generous to the Americans. In it the British recognized ...

Washington inspecting the captured British colors.

Washington inspecting the captured British colors after the battle of Trenton in December 1776. After evacuating New York, Washington retreated ...

Washington resigns commission.

Washington resigning his commission as commander in chief, December 19, 1783. Eager to be home in Mount Vernon for Christmas, Washington entered ...

Washington retreats, Long Island, August, 1776.

Washington's retreat from Long Island, August 29-30, 1776. After Howe abandoned Boston, Washington moved his continental force (which on paper ...

Washington's headquarters at Newburgh, New York.

Washington's headquarters at Newburgh, New York, April 1782-August 1783. Throughout the war, the officers and men of the Continental Army were ...

Washington's HQ at Valley Forge.

A room in a reconstruction of Washington's headquarters at Valley Forge. The men of the Continental Army survived the hardships of Valley Forge, ...

Washington's triumphant entry into New York.

Washington's triumphant entry into New York, November 25, 1783. While Congress straggled into Annapolis, the British finally withdrew from New ...

Western land claims by the original 13 states.

Western land claims by the original 13 states. The issue that prevented ratification of the Articles of Confederation until 1781 was the question ...

William Paca (1740-1799).

A member of the First and Second Continental Congresses from Maryland, William Paca (1740-1799) had been trained as a lawyer in England. He later ...

The War of 1812

"Scene on Frontier..."

"A Scene on the Frontier as Practiced by the Humane British and their Worthy Allies." American incursions into the Indian territories in ...

"The British squadron defeated by the Americans."

"The British squadron defeated by the American under Capt. O. H. Perry, September 10, 1813." Watercolor by unknown English artist, ca. ...

"The Capitol after it was burned by the British."

"The Capitol after it was burned by the British, August 24, 1814." Aquatint by William ...

"The President's House after the Conflagration."

"The President's House after the Conflagration of August 24, 1814." In order to cover up the smoke marks above the windows, the mansion was ...

A map of Indian land cessions, 1814-1820.

A map of Indian land cessions, 1814-1820. The Creek War ended in August 1814 with the Treaty of Fort Jackson, by which the Creek nation ceded ...

Battle of Niagara (Lundy's Lane) July 25, 1814.

The battle of Niagara (Lundy's Lane) on July 25, 1814. In the summer of that year, with the Napoleonic war in Europe temporarily suspended, ...

Battle of the Thames and the death of Tecumseh.
The battle of the Thames and the death of Tecumseh. The American control of Lake Erie forced the English to retreat further into Canada. The ...

Capture of Washington by British forces, 1814.
The capture of Washington by the British forces, August 24, 1814. The British army entered the city with little opposition, and burned the new ...

Catching bluefish in New England waters.
Catching bluefish in New England waters. At Ghent, Adams insisted on the inclusion in any final peace treaty of the continued right of New ...

Detroit in 1815.
Detroit in 1815. The real battle against the British for neutral rights and commercial trade took place on land. American warhawks had argued ...

Fort Dearborn in 1812.
Fort Dearborn in 1812. By the end of the summer, the Americans had also surrendered their frontier outposts at Fort Dearborn, the present site of ...

Fort Niagara on Lake Ontario.
Fort Niagara on Lake Ontario, pictured from the British side of the Niagara river. The American invasion of Canada across the Niagara in October ...

Francis Scott Key (1779-1843).
Francis Scott Key (1779-1843), a Maryland lawyer, had gone under cover of a white flag to negotiate the release of an American prisoner on board ...

Henry Clay (1777-1852).
Henry Clay (1777-1852) was one of the five American commissioners at Ghent. A "war hawk" from Kentucky who had led the House of Representatives ...

John Quincy Adams (1767-1848).
John Quincy Adams (1767-1848) was already an experienced diplomat in 1814, since as a boy of twelve he had traveled to France on a diplomatic ...

Joshua Barney, American naval officer and hero.
Joshua Barney (1759-1818), American naval officer and hero of the Battle of Bladensburg. When the militia fled the field, Barney's seamen removed ...

Naval battle that preceded battle of New Orleans.
The naval battle on December 13, 1814, that preceded the battle of New Orleans ended with a British victory. However, the five American vessels ...

Oliver Hazard Perry (1785-1819).
Oliver Hazard Perry (1785-1819) was the commander of a small fleet of American ships built hastily on Lake Erie during the winter and summer of ...

Plan of battle of Bladensburg, August 24, 1814.
Plan of the battle of Bladensburg, August 24, 1814. A second British objective in 1814 was harassment of the East Coast, to draw defensive forces ...

Residence of the American commissioners in Ghent.
The residence of the American commissioners in Ghent. The battles of New Orleans took place unnecessarily, for the negotiators had already signed ...

The United States and the Macedonian .
"The United States and the Macedonian , October 25, 1812." Madison delivered a War Message to Congress on June 18, 1812, after the failure of ...

The "impressment" of American seamen.
The "impressment" of American seamen. Both the French, in the Berlin and Milan Decrees, and the English through their " Orders in Council ," ...

The battle of Lake Champlain, September 11, 1814.
The battle of Lake Champlain, September 11, 1814. In a more convincing victory, Captain Thomas Macdonough prevented the British invasion down the ...

The battle of New Orleans.
The battle of New Orleans was actually two battles: at the first, on January 1, 1815, a British attack under General Edward Packenham was ...

The bombardment of Fort McHenry, near Baltimore.
The bombardment of Fort McHenry, near Baltimore. As Ross's invasion force of 4,000 disembarked at North Point to march overland toward Baltimore ...

The massacre at Fort Mims, Alabama, in 1813.
The massacre at Fort Mims, Alabama, in 1813. The third part of British offensive strategy was an attack upon the Americans along the Gulf Coast ...

The star-shaped Fort McHenry as it appears today.
The star-shaped Fort McHenry as it appears ...

Timothy Pickering (1745-1829).
Timothy Pickering (1745-1829) served as a Continental officer in the American Revolution, and as a Federalist Postmaster General, Secretary of ...

Section D: Expansion, Development, Sectionalism and Division, 1820-1860

Video Overview: Expansion, Division, 1820-1860.

A brief video Overview of the period of U.S. expansion, development, sectionalism and division, from 1820 to 1860. Transcript: Young America ...

Early California and the Pacific Northwest

"Texas Coming In," 1844.
"Texas Coming In," 1844. With so many Americans moving westward, political pressure emerged to incorporate the Western lands into the United ...

1844 Whig campaign banner.
An 1844 campaign banner for the Whig candidate Henry Clay. Clay, a perennial candidate for the presidency, chose Theodore Frelinghuysen, a ...

Abel Stearns (1799-1871).
Massachusetts-born Abel Stearns (1799-1871) was one of the earliest of the U.S. business men to see the opportunity for trade in California. He ...

An example of an adobe house, early 1800s.
An example of an adobe house, such as those found in New Mexico, Arizona, and California in the 1820s and 1830s. A house of this size might have ...

Coeur d'Alene mission, Idaho.
The mission at Coeur d'Alene, Idaho, west of the Rocky Mountains. The demand for the Oregon land was in part a result of an expansion of interest ...

Diamond Peak of the Willamette River, Oregon.
Diamond Peak and the Ravine of the Middle Fork of the Willamette River, Oregon Territory. The first missionaries arrived in Oregon in the spring ...

Electoral college votes, 1844 election.
A map showing the electoral votes in the 1844 presidential election. Polk won 62 percent of the electoral ...

Fort Vancouver, Hudson's Bay Company HQ, ca 1828.
Fort Vancouver, headquarters of the Hudson's Bay Company, around 1828. This fort, which was established in 1825, was the main British outpost in ...

Hides transported to a ship, 1840.
Hides being transported to a ship on the California Coast, ca. 1840. The Mexican government increasingly encouraged the development of large ...

Inhabitants of the California coast.
Inhabitants of the California coast. Smith found in California an Hispanic culture that had survived its outpost status for several decades. By ...

Jedediah Smith's party crossing the Mojave Desert.
Jedediah Smith's party crossing the Mojave Desert en route to California in 1826. One of the American entrepreneurs to take advantage of the ...

Map, Pacific Northwest boundary dispute.
A map concerning the Pacific Northwest boundary dispute. Polk's supporters in 1844 also demanded that the U.S. annex all of the territory known ...

Marcus Whitman (1802-1847).
Marcus Whitman (1802-1847) was one of the most celebrated of the Oregon territory missionaries. He and his wife Narcissa went west as ...

Spanish-style California carreta or ox cart.
A Spanish-style California carreta or ox cart. Carts such as these were the principal means of transportation of goods for the poorest of ...

The Mission San Gabriel Arcangel.
The Mission San Gabriel Arcangel (St. Gabriel the Arc-Angel), which was founded in September, 1771. Near the Pueblo of Los Angeles, its ...

Thomas O. Larkin.
Thomas O. Larkin, unlike other early Americans in California, never became a Mexican citizen. He first came to California in 1832 as a "hide and ...

Vallejo, Californio forces commander, 1829.
Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo, who maintained a presidio at Sonoma, California, at his own expense, was the commander of the Californio forces that ...

Wagon ruts of the Santa Fe Trail.
Wagon ruts of the Santa Fe Trail near Fort Larned in Kansas, photographed in November 1963, were still clearly visible a century after the ...

Industrialization and Economic Change in the North

1860 strike of 800 women shoemakers in Lynn, MA.
The 1860 strike of 800 women shoemakers in Lynn, Massachusetts. As shoemaking moved from small shops to larger factories, more and more of the ...

An interior view of S. Klous and Company's store.
An interior view of S. Klous and Company's hat, cap and fur goods store in Boston. New manufacturing techniques and improved transportation ...

Boring rifle barrels at Springfield Armory in MA.
Boring rifle barrels at the Springfield Armory in Massachusetts. Two characteristics came to symbolize the American manufacturing revolution in ...

Calico printing.
Calico printing. The great water wheels located in the basements of the mills powered machinery that processed raw cotton on the first floor, ...

Castle Clinton, on the Battery at New York City.
Castle Clinton, on the Battery at New York City, was the port of entry for many of the immigrants who streamed into the United States after 1840. ...
Interior of central office of Isaac M. Singer Co.
The interior of the central office of the Isaac M. Singer Company in New York City, Although the sewing machine was originally invented by Elias ...
Irish emigrants leaving for America.
Irish emigrants leaving for America. At first the laborers in the textile, garment, and steel mills were of American birth, many of them ...
Irish immigrants landing at New York in 1858.
Irish immigrants landing at New York in ...
MA Supreme Court Chief Justice Lemuel Shaw.
Massachusetts Supreme Court Chief Justice Lemuel Shaw (1781-1861), an early friend of labor, handed down a landmark decision in 1842 when he held ...
Making steel forgings in Pittsburgh.
Making steel forgings in Pittsburgh. By 1845, rail transportation made possible the use of anthracite coal as a power source for much larger ...
Pegging boots by hand.
Pegging boots by hand. Before mechanization and the standardization of production, complicated goods such as boots were made by skilled and ...
Replica of Morse's first telegraph instrument.
The second American contribution was the ingenuity of its inventors. This is a replica of Samuel F. B. Morse's first telegraph instrument, built ...
Samuel F.B. Morse in his study.
Samuel F. B. Morse in the study of his Victorian home in New York City about 1870, shortly before his death. His wealth came from the profits he ...
The Bible riots in Philadelphia, June 1844.
The Bible riots in Philadelphia, June 1844. Many of the immigrants of the 1840s and 1850s were Catholics. While some Catholics had emigrated ...
The foundry on Jones Creek near Baltimore, 1828.
The foundry on Jones Creek near Baltimore, 1828. This image represents the "before" status of iron-making at the start of the revolution in that ...
The Lowell, Massachusetts, mills around 1840.
The Lowell, Massachusetts, mills around 1840. The New England textile industry symbolized for both North and South the profound differences ...
W.S. and E.H. Thompson's hoop skirt manufactory.
W. S. and E. H. Thompson's hoop skirt manufactory in New York City was one of the many establishments that used Singer's sewing machine, ...
Women at work in a power loom mill.
Women at work in a power loom mill. Unlike 18th-century English mills, and later 19th-century Southern mills, the Lowell mills at first relied on ...

Intellectual, Religious, and Reform Ferment at Mid-Century

"A Bird's Eye view of new communities, Indiana."
"A Bird's Eye view of one of the new communities at New Harmony, Indiana, an association of two thousand persons formed upon the principles ...
"A Whig Parade during the Hard Cider Campaign."
"A Whig Parade during the Hard Cider Campaign." The 1840 presidential campaign was the first in which the tactics of mass political appeal were ...
"Shakers," a communal living experiment.
"Shakers" was the popular name given to another experiment in communal living, the United Society of Believers in Christ's Second Appearing. ...
"Slab Hall" or "Cincinnati Hall," Oberlin College.
"Slab Hall" or "Cincinnati Hall," one of the first dormitory buildings of Oberlin College, built in 1835. This Ohio college was designed to ...
"The Council Bluffs Ferry."
"The Council Bluffs Ferry." The push to settle west of the Mississippi did not spill into the Great Plains before the Civil War, but passed over ...
"The Drunkard's Progress."
"The Drunkard's Progress, from the first glass to the grave." Temperance was one of the most important of the reform movements before the Civil ...
"The Trap Sprung! The Kinderhook Fox Caught."
"The Trap Sprung! The Kinderhook Fox Caught." The Kinderhook Fox is Martin Van Buren; in this cartoon, the same symbolism is used to celebrate ...
"The Wayside," at Concord, Massachusetts.
"The Wayside," at Concord, Massachusetts, was the home of author Nathaniel Hawthorne, and was also home to authors Louisa May Alcott and Margaret ...
"The Whig Trap."
"The Whig Trap," a political cartoon meant to appeal to Southern Democrats, portrays the "hard cider" campaign strategy as bait to persuade ...

A fur trader.
Fur traders preceded the emigrants across the prairies, and now became guides and Indian fighters, shepherding the wagon trains across the ...
A page from McGuffey's Reader .
A page from McGuffey's Reader , which was first published by William Holmes McGuffey (1800-1873) in 1836. In six editions and 122 million ...
A ranch in New Mexico.
A ranch in New Mexico. The Santa Fe Trail brought Americans into the territory of New Mexico, first as traders, and later as settlers. Many ...
An 1830s caravan starting out on Santa Fe Trail.
An 1830s caravan starting out on the Santa Fe Trail. The more southerly trail to the west was opened up in 1822 by enterprising Arkansas and ...
An early street scene in Santa Fe, New Mexico.
An early street scene in Santa Fe, New Mexico. The Trail brought prosperity to Santa Fe, which had been founded by the Spanish in 1609 as a ...
Announcement of a public meeting.
With the increasing participation of the common man in local elections grew new campaign tactics of torchlight parades, slogans, and symbols. ...
Anti-Masonic Party symbols.
Anti-Masonic Party symbols. One of the first political campaigns that used popular fears of a special interest group to win political election ...
Antislavery editor Lovejoy is murdered.
Elijah P. Lovejoy (1802-1837) was the militant editor of an antislavery newspaper in Alton, Illinois, which proslavery men from Missouri, across ...
Arthur Tappan.
Arthur Tappan (1786-1865), a wealthy silk merchant, and his brother Lewis were New York evangelicals committed to the cause of antislavery. ...
Author Nathaniel Hawthorne (1804-1864).
Author Nathaniel Hawthorne (1804-1864) did not share Emerson's optimism. A series of government patronage jobs enabled this brilliant novelist ...
Black Hawk, leader of the Sauk Indians.
Black Hawk (1767-1838), leader of the Sauk Indians in the Black Hawk Wars. Black Hawk objected to treaties that gave away the territory of his ...
Brigham Young (1801-1877).
Brigham Young (1801-1877) became the leader of the Mormons after Joseph Smith's death. He led them on their westward search for land where they ...
Charles Grandison Finney (1792-1875).
Charles Grandison Finney (1792-1875) began his career as a Presbyterian minister after a conversion experience at the age of 21, but soon changed ...
Dorothea Lynde Dix (1802-1887).
Dorothea Lynde Dix (1802-1887), born in Maine, was outraged at the treatment of the insane and the mentally retarded. Between 1838 and the Civil ...
Edward Miner Gallaudet (1837-1918).
Edward Miner Gallaudet (1837-1918), the son of Thomas Hopkins Gallaudet, opened a school in Washington, D.C., that eventually became Gallaudet ...
Elizabeth Cady Stanton's home in Seneca Falls.
Elizabeth Cady Stanton's home in Seneca Falls, New York, after restoration, ...
Encampment of Piekann Indians, near Ft. McKenzie.
"Encampment of the Piekann (or Piegan) Indians, near Fort McKenzie on the Muscleshell River." The Piegan were one of the principal subgroups of ...
Fort Bridger on Black's Forks of the Green River.
Fort Bridger on Black's Forks of the Green River. This Oregon Trail fort was established in 1843 by fur trader Jim ...
Fort Des Moines in 1844.
Fort Des Moines in 1844. Iowa became a territory in 1838; by 1840 its population was over 40,000. Settlements in Iowa, western Illinois and ...
Fort Scott in Kansas.
Fort Scott in Kansas was established as a base for the U.S. Army's peacekeeping efforts along the "permanent Indian frontier," where the army ...
Frederick Douglass, born in slavery.
Frederick Douglass (1817-1895), born in slavery on the eastern shore of Maryland, escaped to Massachusetts in 1838. One of the most articulate of ...
Henry David Thoreau's cabin at Walden pond.
Henry David Thoreau's cabin at Walden pond. Thoreau (1817-1862), a member of Emerson's Transcendentalist circle in Concord, advocated a life of ...
Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1807-1882).
Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1807-1882) was widely known for his historically-based poetry such as Paul Revere's Ride , The Song of Hiawatha , ...
Horace Mann (1796-1859).
Horace Mann (1796-1859) believed that the key to reform was better education. As secretary of the

Massachusetts state board of education, he ...

Independence, Missouri, in 1855.
Independence, Missouri, in 1855. The jumping-off points for settlers benefited greatly from the business of outfitting and supplying the ...

James G. Birney (1792-1857).
James G. Birney (1792-1857), born in Kentucky and founder of the Kentucky Anti-Slavery Society, was a former slaveholder who helped found the ...

John Tyler (1790-1862).
John Tyler (1790-1862), Harrison's vice president, who succeeded him to become the tenth president of the U.S., had almost nothing in common with ...

Joseph Smith (1805-1844).
Joseph Smith (1805-1844) founded the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (Mormons) based on the visions which he received from God at ...

Longfellow's house from 1836 to 1854.
The house in Cambridge, Massachusetts, where Henry Wadsworth Longfellow lived while teaching modern languages at Harvard from l836 to ...

Lucretia Mott (1793-1880).
Lucretia Mott (1793-1880) was one of the many women who were active in the antislavery movement and who were radicalized by that experience to ...

Map, westward trails in the 1840s.
A map showing principal westward trails followed by the settlers in the ...

Map: electoral votes in 1840 election.
A map showing the electoral votes in the presidential election of 1840. Harrison won 80 percent of the electoral ...

Masthead of William Lloyd Garrison's newspaper.
The masthead of William Lloyd Garrison's abolitionist newspaper The Liberator . On the front page of the first issue on January 1, 1831, ...

Mormons emigrating to Utah in 1847.
Mormons emigrating to Utah in 1847. The journey ended in the Utah territory, where Brigham Young's party of explorers passed through a gap in the ...

New York Institution for Instruction of Deaf.
The New York Institution for the Instruction of the Deaf and Dumb. In the early 19th century, the building of impressive institutional ...

Noah Webster (1758-1843).
Noah Webster (1758-1843) was an American grammarian, lexicographer and author who celebrated American speech and language just as Ralph Waldo ...

One of the earliest Sunday schools.
One of the earliest Sunday schools in the U.S. was held in this Beverly, Massachusetts, building. The new focus on children and their education, ...

Poweshiek, a Fox Indian.
Poweshiek, a Fox Indian. The Fox (or Mesquakie), a tribe that had earlier moved westward into Iowa, fought as allies of Black Hawk. After their ...

Prudence Crandell, a Quaker schoolteacher.
Prudence Crandell (1803-1889), a Quaker schoolteacher who attempted to bring education to non-white children as well as whites. When she admitted ...

Robert Mills designed an innovative asylum.
Robert Mills (1781-1855), a South Carolina architect, designed an innovative asylum for the state that translated ideas about the treatment of ...

Robert Owen, the British social reformer.
Robert Owen (1771-1858) was a British social reformer whose ideas on cooperative industry led to the establishment of several model industrial ...

Salt Lake City, 1855.
Salt Lake City, the headquarters of the Mormon western colony, as it appeared in 1855, with the Wasatch mountain range in the ...

Samuel Gridley Howe provided for the sightless.
Samuel Gridley Howe (1801-1876), born in Boston, provided for the sightless some of the same reforms the Gallaudets pioneered for the deaf. For ...

Santa Fe, ca. 1846-47.
Santa Fe, ca. 1846-47. From The Report of Lt. J. W. Abert , 1848. Courtesy Museum of New ...

Sarah Josepha Hale (1788-1879).
Sarah Josepha Hale (1788-1879). Unlike Mott and Stanton, Hale did not demand political equality for women, but seemed to accept the idea of ...

Sarah Moore Grimke (1792-1873).
Sarah Moore Grimke (1792-1873) with her sister Angelina Emily Grimke (1805-1879), left their aristocratic Charleston home to live in Philadelphia ...

Susan B. Anthony (1820-1906).
Susan B. Anthony (1820-1906, standing) and Elizabeth Cady Stanton (1815-1902) joined forces to fight for women's rights. Stanton and Lucretia ...

The Amana Community, in Iowa, settled in 1855.
The Amana Community, in Iowa, settled in 1855, was another example of a perfectionist communal society

whose early experiments in alternatives to ...

The business office at the Oneida Community.
The business office at the Oneida Community. The Shakers solved the problem of gender inequality and challenges to traditional family structure ...

The Capitol of the United States in the 1840s.
The Capitol of the United States in the 1840s. Lithograph by Sarony and Major, ...

The Lunatic Asylum at New York.
The Lunatic Asylum at New York. Although after 1850 asylums increasingly became institutions for the control and separation from society of those ...

The Mormon Temple at Nauvoo, Illinois.
The Mormon Temple at Nauvoo, Illinois. The Mormons' practice of polygamy , and their successful cultivation of communally owned property, ...

The Mount Holyoke Female Seminary.
The Mount Holyoke Female Seminary was chartered in South Hadley, Massachusetts, in 1836. The first college created for the higher education of ...

The Pawnee Indian chief Pes-Ke-Le-Cho-Ko.
The Pawnee Indian chief Pes-Ke-Le-Cho-Ko. In the 16th century the Pawnee were probably a relatively settled people who lived in present-day ...

The poet Ralph Waldo Emerson (1803-1882).
The poet Ralph Waldo Emerson (1803-1882) was the leading philosopher of Transcendentalism, and the intellectual leader of one approach to the ...

The Shaker village of Alfred, Maine.
The Shaker village of Alfred, Maine, illustrates the orderly appearance of the communal life of this millenarian (persons who believe in the ...

The Smithsonian Institution, Washington D.C.
The Smithsonian Institution in Washington was founded in 1846 with a legacy from James Smithson of London. Under its first director, Joseph Henry ...

The State Prison at Auburn, New York.
The State Prison at Auburn, New York. Prisons also attracted the attention of antebellum reformers. Their goal was not to be more humanitarian, ...

The trailhead at Independence, Missouri.
The trailhead at Independence, Missouri. Spring was the time for beginning a 2,000-mile trip westward across the Plains, and thousands gathered ...

The University of Virginia at Charlottesville.
The University of Virginia at Charlottesville. Although they were institutions of a very different sort from the asylums, universities also ...

The Widows' and Orphans' Asylum in Philadelphia.
The Widows' and Orphans' Asylum in Philadelphia. In attempting to end poverty, dependency, and crime, early reformers decided that children and ...

Theodore Dwight Weld (1803-1895).
Theodore Dwight Weld (1803-1895) was one of the most charismatic of the early evangelical abolitionist leaders. A disciple of Charles G. Finney, ...

Thomas Hopkins Gallaudet (1787-1851).
Thomas Hopkins Gallaudet (1787-1851) pioneered in the education of deaf children by founding the first free school in Philadelphia for deaf ...

Thurlow Weed (1797-1882).
Thurlow Weed (1797-1882), an Albany, New York, newspaper editor, represented the new kind of politics that came to dominate the campaigns of the ...

Wendell Phillips speaking at antislavery meeting.
Wendell Phillips (1811-1884) speaking at an antislavery meeting on the Boston ...

William Ellery Channing (1780-1842).
William Ellery Channing (1780-1842) was the father of American Unitarianism in 1819, and its great early preacher. Not all religious reform in ...

William Henry Harrison (1773-1841).
William Henry Harrison (1773-1841) was born in Virginia, fought at the Battle of Fallen Timbers in 1794, was governor of the Indiana Territory at ...

William Henry Harrison's inauguration.
The inauguration of William Henry Harrison as the ninth president of the United ...

William Lloyd Garrison (1805-1879).
William Lloyd Garrison (1805-1879). Free African Americans had opposed the colonization of Africa and the idea of gradual emancipation, but many ...

Slavery and the Southern Economy and Society

"A plantation frolic on Christmas Eve."
"A plantation frolic on Christmas Eve." The banjo was probably developed from musical traditions brought from Africa, and slave musicians quickly ...

"Life in Eastern Virginia, home of a planter."
"Life in Eastern Virginia, the home of the planter," 1840s. The westward movement of slaveowners into Texas and other frontier districts brought ...

"The Death of Capt. Ferrer."

"The Death of Capt. Ferrer, the Captain of the Amistad , July, 1839." The importation of slaves into the United States was illegal after 1808, ...

A cotton gin.

A cotton gin, from the warehouse of C. V. Mapes. Cotton ginning could take place either on individual plantations, as in this wood engraving, or ...

A cotton press.

Later, cotton presses were used for compressing the ginned cotton, in order to maximize the use of space on the vessels in which cotton was ...

A Louisiana plantation house.

A Louisiana plantation house. The newly rich planters in the cotton states of the West hired architects, and built elaborate homes where they ...

A Richmond, Virginia, slave auction.

A Richmond, Virginia, slave auction. As the need for slaves declined in the upper South, slaveowners found that they could finance some of the ...

A tobacco plantation in 1856.

A tobacco plantation in 1856. Increasingly, the production of tobacco moved west; by the 1850s it was concentrated in ...

An advertisement for a runaway slave.

An advertisement for a runaway slave. One of the ways in which slaves could resist the tyranny of slavery was by running away. Some ran away ...

Charleston, South Carolina, in 1838.

Charleston, South Carolina, in 1838. The lower south along the Atlantic seaboard also suffered an economic decline in the middle quarter of the ...

Coffle of slaves driven out of South Carolina.

A coffle of slaves being driven out of South Carolina. Slaves being "sold west" were driven by overseers in groups called a "coffle." Hundreds of ...

Freed slaves were on guard against re-enslavement.

Freed slaves were forced to be on guard against re-enslavement, and most were required to carry papers verifying their status as freedmen or ...

Hauling cotton to market.

Hauling cotton to market. The basis for both the growth of the western lower South and the extension of slavery into new territories was the ...

Home of Robert Barnwell Rhett, Sr., Beaufort, SC.

The home of Robert Barnwell Rhett, Sr., (1800-1876) at Beaufort, South Carolina. Rice cultivation afforded low country planters a lavish ...

In the North, African Americans were not free.

Even in the North, African Americans were not free from discrimination and prejudice. They were segregated by law, or systematically excluded ...

Louisville, Kentucky, in 1835.

Louisville, Kentucky, in 1835. The growth of the tobacco economy in Kentucky helped to contribute to the expansion of Louisville, Kentucky's ...

Mill buildings, Pratt's cotton gin factory.

The mill buildings of Daniel Pratt's cotton gin factory at Prattville, Alabama. Some southern politicians urged the development of commercial ...

Mobile Bay, 1842.

Mobile Bay, 1842. Although other Atlantic ports remained important shipping ports, the center of the international cotton trade shifted westward ...

Nat Turner's rebellion, 1831.

Nat Turner's rebellion, 1831. In the upper South, the declining profitability of tobacco led many Virginians to debate the continued utility of ...

Packing cotton for shipment.

Packing cotton for ...

Picking cotton.

Picking cotton. In the labor-intensive plantation field system, men and women worked side by side in planting, cultivating and harvesting the ...

Slave cabins, Hermitage plantation; Savannah, GA.

Slave cabins on the Hermitage plantation near Savannah, Georgia. Though small, each of these cabins had two rooms, a bedroom and a kitchen. Built ...

The scarred back of a former slave.

The scarred back of a former slave. Whatever dignity and community slaves may have been able to create for themselves, they were never allowed to ...

The slave deck of the bark Wildfire , 1860.

The slave deck of the bark Wildfire , 1860. Although the importation of slaves was illegal after 1808, slaves continued to be imported until the ...

Texas: Settlement by Americans and the Fight for Independence

A map of the Republic of Texas, 1836-1846.

A map of the Republic of Texas, 1836-1846. The land area governed by the Republic of Texas was much larger than the eventual state of Texas, ...

Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna (1794-1876).

Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna (1794-1876) first became president of Mexico in 1833. The Texans had won concessions concerning Mexican taxes and ...

Austin, the new capital of Texas, in 1840.
Austin, the new capital of Texas, in 1840. The Texas constitution prevented Sam Houston from serving a second term and Mirabeau B. Lamar, a hero ...

Houston house, meeting of first Congress of Texas.
The Houston house in which the first Congress of Texas met in May of 1837. After the defeat at San Jacinto, Mexican troops withdrew from Texas. ...

James Bowie, one of the defenders of the Alamo.
Tennessee-born James Bowie (1795-1836), one of the defenders of the Alamo, moved to New Orleans at 19 where he eventually became a leading slave ...

Juan Nepomucena Seguin (1806-1889).
Juan Nepomucena Seguin (1806-1889), the Texas-born son of the alcalde (mayor) of San Antonio, fought fiercely against Santa Anna at San ...

Lorenzo de Zavala (1788-1836) .
Lorenzo de Zavala (1788-1836) was a Mexican liberal from Yucatan who opposed the centralist forces which were trying to unify Mexico with ...

Sam Houston (1793-1863).
Sam Houston (1793-1863) had lived as a youth among the Cherokee, and later, as an Indian trader, took a Cherokee wife. Arriving in Texas in 1833, ...

San Antonio de Bexar.
San Antonio de Bexar, as it appeared in 1840 while Seguin served as its mayor. In Homer S. Thrall, Pictorial History of Texas (St. Louis, ...

Stephen F. Austin, the "Father of Texas."
Stephen F. Austin (1793-1836), the "Father of Texas." Like his father, Moses Austin, Stephen followed the frontier from Virginia through Missouri ...

Surrender of General Santa Anna at San Jacinto.
The surrender of General Santa Anna at San Jacinto, April 21, 1836. Appointed to command a Texas army early in 1836, Sam Houston rode toward San ...

The D'Aigleville colony of Texas.
The D'Aigleville colony of Texas. One of the strangest challenges to Spanish control north of the Rio Grande was this attempted French settlement ...

The ruins of Jean Lafitte's fort.
The ruins of Jean Lafitte's fort. Lafitte (1780-1805), the "pirate of the Gulf," had aided Andrew Jackson in his defeat of the British at New ...

The siege of the Alamo, March 6, 1836.
The siege of the Alamo, March 6, 1836. Early in that year, the Mexican president Santa Anna led an army of 6000 men northward to crush a revolt ...

Vincente Guerrero (1782-1831).
Vincente Guerrero (1782-1831), the principal rebel leader in the latter half of the Mexican War for Independence. The conflicts between North New ...

Zebulon Montgomery Pike (1779-1813).
Zebulon Montgomery Pike (1779-1813) as an army lieutenant led two expeditions into the northeastern reaches of North New Spain in 1805-1807 ...

The Growing Sectional Crisis

A handbill warning the "Colored People" of Boston.
The effects of the Fugitive Slave law: A handbill dated April 24, 1851, warning the "Colored People" of Boston to beware of infringement of their ...

A Know-Nothing cartoon.
A Know-Nothing cartoon. The "Know-Nothings" (as they were called when the party was still a secret organization and answered questions with that ...

A slave coffle passing the Capitol.
A slave coffle passing the Capitol. Abolitionists had been agitating since the 1830s to end the slave trade in the nation's capital. Attempts ...

A sugar estate in Cuba, 1852.
A sugar estate in Cuba, 1852. The years after the Compromise of 1850 saw a decline in the political quarreling over slavery, and a continued ...

Abraham Lincoln's Springfield, Illinois, house.
Abraham Lincoln lived in this Springfield, Illinois, house for 17 years (with two years, 1847-49, away in Washington as a Congressman) before he ...

Andrew Butler (1796-1857).
Andrew Butler (1796-1857), a senator from South Carolina, had been a violently partisan advocate of proslavery measures. On May 19, 1856, Senator ...

Arraignment of John Brown before Federal court.
The arraignment of John Brown before the Federal court at Charles Town, West Virginia. Brown refused to plead guilty to insanity as a defense at ...

Captain Robert E. Lee.
Colonel Robert E. Lee, here shown as a captain in 1852, led the detachment of U.S. Marines which captured John Brown at Harper's Ferry in 1859. ...

Cartoon, "Honest Old Abe on the Stump."
This cartoon, "Honest Old Abe on the Stump," charges Lincoln with being two-faced about his personal political ambitions. Lincoln was chosen over ...
Cartoon, divisive issues in the 1850s.
"The Hurly Burly Pot," a cartoon about the issues threatening to divide the Union in the 1850s. The Free Soil Party was another of the parties ...
Chicago in 1865.
Chicago in 1865. Some of Douglas's critics charged that his purpose in reopening the question of slavery in the Nebraska Territory was to prepare ...
Commodore Matthew Perry (1794-1858).
Commodore Matthew Perry (1794-1858), the brother of Commodore Oliver Hazard Perry, was sent to Japan in 1852 to open up trade relations with that ...
Congressman Brooks thrashing Charles Sumner.
Believing that his uncle's honor had been insulted, Butler's nephew, Congressman Preston Brooks of South Carolina (1819-1857), entered the Senate ...
Dred Scott with his wife, Harriet Scott.
Dred Scott, shown with Harriet Scott, his wife, brought suit against Scott's former owner who had taken him from Missouri into the Wisconsin ...
Executions in California.
Statehood did not bring law and order to California. Crime, in San Francisco in particular, grew so rapidly that in 1856 its citizens had to ...
Fifth debate between Lincoln and Douglas.
The fifth debate between Abraham Lincoln and Stephen A. Douglas, October 7, 1858, at Knox College in Illinois. Lincoln challenged Douglas's bid ...
Fort Defiance, in the New Mexico Territory 1852.
Fort Defiance, in the New Mexico Territory (now in Arizona), 1852. Although the Compromise of 1850 did not use the words " popular sovereignty ," ...
Franklin Pierce, elected to presidency in 1852.
Franklin Pierce (1804-1965), a New Hampshire Democrat elected to the presidency in 1852, supported an attempt in 1853 to purchase Cuba for $130 ...
General John C. Fremont, presidential candidate.
General John C. Frémont (1813-1890) was chosen by the Republican party as its presidential candidate based on his fame as an antislavery ...
Governor's mansion of Kansas Territory in 1857.
The governor's mansion of the Kansas Territory at LeCompton in 1857. The proslavery forces in Kansas held a constitutional convention in ...
Harriet Beecher Stowe (1811-1896).
Harriet Beecher Stowe (1811-1896) was the Connecticut-born daughter of Lyman Beecher and the sister of Rev. Henry Ward Beecher. She became an ...
Harriet Tubman (1821-1913).
Harriet Tubman (1821-1913) brought home to abolitionists the real-life perils of flight described in Uncle Tom's Cabin as fiction. One of 11 ...
Henry Clay addressing the Senate, 1850.
Henry Clay addressing the Senate, 1850. The California gold rush pushed the Wilmot Proviso issue into the spotlight because in September of 1849 ...
Honolulu in 1854.
Honolulu in 1854. Franklin Pierce attempted to augment the U.S. through a foreign policy he labeled "Young America," which attempted ...
James Buchanan, 15th president of the U.S.
James Buchanan (1791-1868) was elected the 15th president of the U.S. in 1856. A Pennsylvania-born lawyer, Federalist congressman, and later a ...
Japanese admire gifts brought by Commodore Perry.
The Japanese admire technological gifts brought by Commodore Perry. Perry arrived in Tokyo harbor in July 1853 with three steam frigates and five ...
John Brown (1800-1859).
John Brown (1800-1859) emerged as a legendary figure in American history after his daring but ill-conceived raid at Harper's Ferry in 1859. Brown ...
John Brown's "fort" at Harper's Ferry.
John Brown's "fort" at Harper's Ferry. On Sunday, October 16, 1859, with a raiding party of 18 men, Brown managed to seize the federal arsenal, ...
Kitchen of Lincoln's Springfield, Illinois, home.
The kitchen of Abraham Lincoln's Springfield, Illinois, ...
Lincoln had an office in Springfield, Illinois
The street in Springfield, Illinois, where Abraham Lincoln had an office with his law partner, William Herndon, in the next to last building on ...
Map, Compromise of 1850 & the Kansas-Nebraska Act.
Map, the Compromise of 1850 and the Kansas-Nebraska Act. The issue which brought the slavery question back into open political discussion was the ...
Map: electoral votes, 1856 election.
Map showing the electoral votes in the election of 1856. Buchanan won with 59 percent of the electoral ...

Millard Fillmore (1800-1874).
Millard Fillmore (1800-1874) became president when Zachary Taylor died of cholera in July of 1850. Taylor had opposed the Compromise of 1850, but ...
October 1850 California statehood celebration.
On October 29, 1850, the citizens of San Francisco paraded in the streets to celebrate California's September 9 admission to the union as the ...
Picture from Uncle Tom's Cabin .
An illustration from Uncle Tom's Cabin , by Harriet Beecher Stowe, the book which made many non-abolitionists sympathetic to the plight of ...
Roger B. Taney (1777-1864).
Roger B. Taney (1777-1864) was a Maryland slaveholder who manumitted his own slaves, but supported the American Colonization Society because he ...
Salmon P. Chase, early leader in Republican Party.
Salmon P. Chase (1808-1873) became an important early leader in the Republican Party, which emerged as a powerful political force in the north ...
Stephen A. Douglas (1813-1861).
Stephen A. Douglas (1813-1861), the " Little Giant ," precipitated the Kansas-Nebraska crisis. As Chair of the Senate Committee on Territories, ...
The Constitutional Convention of Kansas Territory.
The Constitutional Convention of the Kansas Territory. The Kansas-Nebraska Act left the status of slavery in the two territories to popular ...
The locale of John Brown's raid, Harper's Ferry.
The locale of John Brown's raid, Harper's Ferry, West Virginia, around 1856, showing the U.S. ...
The Marais des Cygnes Massacre, May 19, 1858.
The Marais des Cygnes Massacre, May 19, 1858. The Kansas turmoil led to open warfare after John Brown sought revenge for the "sack of Lawrence" ...
The old "Bull's Head" stockyards in Chicago.
The old "Bull's Head" stockyards in Chicago which opened in 1848 at the corner of Madison Street and Ogden Avenue. Chicago became the center for ...
The schoolhouse at Ripon, Wisconsin.
The schoolhouse at Ripon, Wisconsin, one of the sites where the Republican Party held its first ...
Torchlight meeting of the "Know-Nothings."
The New York City torchlight meeting of the "Know-Nothings," or the American Party, in November 1855. Pierce's vision of a "Young America" ...
Walt Whitman (1819-1892).
Walt Whitman (1819-1892) first published his controversial verses at his own expense in a volume entitled Leaves of Grass in 1855. The first ...

The Mexican War and the California Gold Rush

"Barn-burners in a Fix," ca. 1848.
"Barn-burners in a Fix," ca. 1848. The Democratic chances for capturing the presidency were considerably lessened by the 1848 establishment of ...
"Gold Mining in California".
"Gold Mining in California" illustrates the crude "placer" mining techniques that the surface deposits in California made possible. The men on ...
"Off for California."
"Off for California." The gold rush really got under way in 1849. Those who made their way west by whatever means they could were known as ...
"The Grand National Whig Banner."
"The Grand National Whig Banner. Press Onward." In the presidential election of 1848, Whig candidate Zachary Taylor, the military hero of the ...
A cartoon about the Wilmot Proviso.
A cartoon about the Wilmot Proviso. In the summer of 1846, Pennsylvania congressman David Wilmot attached an amendment to an appropriations bill ...
African Americans in gold fields.
African Americans in the gold fields "washing for gold." The gold rush brought substantial numbers of them to California; the population of ...
An 1851 view of San Francisco .
An 1851 view of San Francisco taken from the western hill at the foot of Telegraph Hill, looking toward Ringon Point and Mission Valley. Settlers ...
Anchorage, Yerba Buena (San Francisco), 1846-47.
The anchorage at Yerba Buena, now San Francisco, 1846-1847. Once war with Mexico was declared in May 1846, Commander John D. Sloat acted quickly ...
Camp of Donner party at Donner Lake, 1846.
The camp of the Donner party at Donner Lake, November 1846. A guidebook, published to attract Americans to California who would support ...
Chinese men labor for white California miners.
Chinese men work as laborers for white California miners, 1852. Before 1850, there were fewer than 1,000 Chinese in the U.S.; by 1852 there were ...
Early photograph of San Francisco street, 1849.

A rare early photograph of a San Francisco street, about 1849. One building at the left is a "Temperance House," which may have been badly needed ...

Early placer workings near Prescott, Arizona.

Early placer workings near Prescott, Arizona. California's principal technological contribution to mining was the development of hydraulic ...

Gen. Andres Pico.

Gen. Andres Pico, descendant of a powerful Californio family, led a force of Californios which initially repulsed a U.S. army force near San ...

John A. Sutter (1803-1880).

John A. Sutter (1803-1880), an emigrant from Switzerland, established a colony and mill near Sacramento, California. When gold was discovered ...

Landing of American forces at Vera Cruz, 1847.

The landing of the American forces under General Scott at Vera Cruz, March 9, 1847. President Polk had ordered Gen. Winfield Scott to invade ...

Los Angeles in 1854.

Los Angeles in 1854. The building in the foreground is the old Mexican jail. Still a small village compared to San Francisco and Sacramento, this ...

Parade of troops going off to Mexico.

The impact of the Mexican war on the American public was profound. News arrived via telegraph and was reported in illustrated newspapers. The ...

Sacramento in 1850.

Sacramento in 1850. Within a year, California's population jumped from 14,000 to more than 100,000. First settled in 1839, Sacramento became the ...

San Francisco in 1846-47, before gold rush began.

San Francisco in 1846-47, before the gold rush ...

San Francisco in 1849.

San Francisco in 1849. Many of the numerous ships in the Bay had brought emigrants around the Horn from the East. Some of the ships' crews ...

Sutter’s Mill before the discovery of gold.

This sketch illustrates one peaceful corner of the trading camp which Sutter had established on his large land holdings before the gold rush ...

Sutter's sawmill at Coloma, California.

Sutter's sawmill at Coloma, California, where James W. Marshall noticed gold flecks in January, 1848, and reported his discovery to Sutter. ...

The Post Office at San Francisco, mid-1800s.

The Post Office at San Francisco in the mid-1800s. Throngs of newly arrived men wait for the mail, bargain for goods, or make arrangements to ...

The storming of Chapultepec.

The storming of Chapultepec. Santa Anna had used the armistice period to fortify Mexico City. Scott's forces fought a bloody battle at Molina del ...

U.S. army of occupation, Texas.

The U.S. army of occupation near Corpus Christi, Texas, in October 1845. Mexico had refused to recognize the independence of Texas in 1836, had ...

U.S. troops at Monterrey, Mexico.

U.S. troops at Monterrey, Mexico. While California was slipping with relative ease into U.S. hands, Gen. Zachary Taylor launched an invasion of ...

U.S. troops defeat Mexican army, Churubusco, 1847.

The battle at the Convent of Churubusco, August 20, 1847, in which U.S. troops defeated Santa Anna’s army. General Winfield Scott had landed his ...

Vaucluse gold mine of Orange Grove Mining Company.

The Vaucluse gold mine of the Orange Grove Mining Company in Virginia. Before the California "gold rush" the metal had been painstakingly ...

Zachary Taylor, nickname, "Old Rough and Ready."

Zachary Taylor (1784-1850), known to contemporaries by his military nickname, "Old Rough and Ready," was so apolitical that before 1848 he had ...

The Political Consequences of Growth

"Capitol Fashions for 1837/A Loose Cloak."

"Capitol Fashions for 1837/A Loose Cloak -- Trimmed with the Gold Substitute" is a satire on Van Buren's suspension of specie (i.e., gold or ...

"To the Victors Belong the Spoils."

"To the Victors Belong the Spoils ." Although this cartoon was published by Thomas Nast in 1877 to ridicule the "fraud, bribery, spoils, and ...

"Uncle Sam's Pet Pups!"

"Uncle Sam's Pet Pups! Or, Mother Bank's Last Refuge." When Jackson won reelection easily in 1832 insuring that the Bank would not be ...

A map of Washington in 1835.

A map of Washington in 1835, by T. G. ...

Andrew Jackson, the 7th U.S. president.

Andrew Jackson (1767-1845), the 7th U.S. president. His enormous popularity stemmed both from his role as

the hero of New Orleans and the success ...

Attack of Seminoles on blockhouse at Fort Brooke.
The attack of the Seminoles on the blockhouse at Fort Brooke, during the Second Seminole War. Osceola hid the women and children in the Florida ...

Cartoon, "A Grand Match."
Cartoon, "A Grand Match between the Kinderhook Poney [Van Buren] and the Ohio Ploughman [William Henry Harrison]" during the 1836 election ...

Cartoon, "General Jackson Slays Monster."
An 1836 cartoon, "General Jackson Slaying the Many Headed Monster." Jackson used the issue of the Second National Bank as his principal ...

Cartoon, Jackson's Cabinet resignations.
A satire on the resignations of Jackson's Cabinet members caused by the "Peggy O'Neale" affair. Peggy Eaton was snubbed, particularly by Floride ...

Cherokee Indian scholar Sequoya.
Cherokee Indian scholar Sequoya (ca. 1770?-1843) with the alphabet for a written Cherokee language which he developed beginning in 1809. By 1828 ...

City of Washington from east side Anacostia River.
The city of Washington from the east side of the Anacostia river, with the Navy Yard at right center, 1834. In the expanding city on the Potomac, ...

Fort Brooke, and the settlement on Tampa Bay.
Fort Brooke, and the settlement on Tampa Bay, during the Seminole ...

Jan. 30, 1835, Richard Lawrence shot at Jackson.
On January 30, 1835, Richard Lawrence stepped up to Jackson as he was leaving the House of Representatives, and fired two pistols at him. Both ...

John C. Calhoun (1782-1850).
John C. Calhoun (1782-1850) was vice president of the U.S. and president of the Senate from 1825 to 1832. Calhoun, a South Carolinian and ...

John Quincy Adams (1767-1848).
John Quincy Adams (1767-1848), the son of John Adams (see C 176) and a brilliant diplomat, won the election of 1824. The election was thrown into ...

John Ross, a Cherokee leader.
John Ross (1790-1866). Born in Tennessee of Scottish and Cherokee parents, Ross was a leader of the Cherokee, one of the "Five Civilized Nations" ...

Map shows electoral votes, 1824 election.
A map showing the electoral college votes in the election of 1824. The enormous growth of transportation networks and the emergence of a market ...

Map shows electoral votes, 1828 election.
A map showing the electoral votes in the election of 1828. Jackson's supporters began organizing for this campaign almost as soon as the 1824 ...

Martin Van Buren (1782-1862).
Martin Van Buren (1782-1862), a New York Democrat who had helped build that party's state political structure, was Jackson's trusted advisor, ...

Mrs. Margaret O'Neale Eaton.
Mrs. Margaret O'Neale Eaton. As a strong president, Jackson controlled his cabinet, but he could not always control Washington society. Peggy ...

Nicholas Biddle (1786-1844).
Nicholas Biddle (1786-1844), president of the Second National Bank, as a young man. After the Panic of 1819, many Westerners, including president ...

Osceola, Seminole leader, attacks.
"Osceola's Attack." Osceola (ca 1800-1839) was the leader of the Seminoles. The Cherokee attempted to resist white encroachment by converting to ...

President Jackson's levee at time of inaugural.
President Jackson's levee at the time of his inaugural. A "levee" was traditionally a daytime reception held by an important person for other ...

Senator Daniel Webster (1782-1852).
Senator Daniel Webster (1782-1852), born in New Hampshire but elected to office from Massachusetts, was a supporter of the protective tariff. ...

The Charles River bridge at Boston, built in 1785.
The Charles River bridge at Boston, built in 1785, came to symbolize the supremacy of Jacksonian political ideas in the courts as well as in ...

The Cherokee alphabet .
The Cherokee alphabet used 86 characters based on English, Greek, and Hebrew letters to represent the sounds of the spoken Cherokee ...

The Custom House at Salem, Massachusetts.
The Custom House at Salem, Massachusetts. The bad feelings between John C. Calhoun and president Jackson were part of a more serious disagreement ...

The deportation of the Seminoles.
The deportation of the Seminoles. The Seminoles and their African-American allies continued to resist removal after Osceola's capture, forcing ...

The South Carolina State House, 1794-1865.

The South Carolina State House, 1794-1865. President Jackson wanted to conciliate the South, and in 1832 he persuaded Congress to pass a lower ...

Westward Expansion, Transportation Improvements and Urban Growth

"Packet Row," South Street, New York, 1828.
"Packet Row," South Street, in New York City, 1828. Goods brought from the interior via the Erie Canal and down the Hudson river were transferred ...

"The Boston and Cambridge New Horse Railroad."
"The Boston and Cambridge New Horse ...

"The Meeting of the Ways."
"The Meeting of the Ways" illustrates the confrontation between the old and new motive power for coaches. 1830s drawing by Stanley M. ...

"View of the Great Treaty ... (Prairie) du Chien."
"View of the Great Treaty held at (Prairie) du Chien, Sept. 1825, at which were present Gov. Lewis Cass of Michigan and William Clark and upwards ...

A canal boat on the C&O Canal.
A canal boat on the C&O Canal. Although this photograph was probably taken late in the 19th century, life on the canals changed little during the ...

A keel boat on the Mississippi.
A keel boat on the Mississippi. Human-powered locomotion for smaller boats continued side by side with steam power during the first half of the ...

A map of the Missouri Compromise, 1820.
A map of the Missouri Compromise, 1820. A line drawn at 36 degrees, 30 minutes north latitude was established as the dividing line between free ...

A plan of St. Louis, ca. 1825.
A plan of St. Louis, ca 1825. Although Jefferson City became the capital of Missouri, St. Louis remained the state's major city, largely because ...

A steamboat race on the Mississippi river.
A steamboat race on the Mississippi river. Steam power continued to be an important component of an inland transportation network tied into the ...

American canals built between 1790 and 1850.
American canals built between 1790 and 1850. The great commercial success of the Erie Canal inspired many others. Pennsylvania built a 395-mile ...

Augusta, Maine, ca 1823.
Augusta, Maine, ca 1823. The area known as Maine was first settled by the French and English early in the 17th century. In 1652 it became part of ...

Baltimore from Federal Hill.
Baltimore from Federal Hill. On the western shore of Maryland halfway up the Chesapeake Bay, Baltimore also grew rapidly in the years after the ...

Boston, ca. 1826.
Boston, ca. 1826. With a population of more than 50,000, Boston by 1822 had outgrown its historic town government and been chartered as a city. ...

Broadway, looking north from Canal Street, 1834.
Broadway, looking north from Canal Street in New York, 1834. By the mid-1830s, New York was a bustling pre-industrial city, its lower wards ...

Cincinnati in 1835.
Cincinnati in 1835. The water transportation links between the East Coast and the cities along interior rivers helped those cities to grow too. ...

Construction of Chesapeake and Ohio (C&O) Canal.
Construction of the Chesapeake and Ohio (C&O) Canal, 1828. To the south, Maryland constructed this canal in an attempt to link the Chesapeake Bay ...

DeWitt Clinton (1769-1828).
DeWitt Clinton (1769-1828), who was successively U.S. senator, mayor of New York City, and governor of New York. In the aftermath of the War of ...

Five Points in New York City.
Five Points in New York City. Urban growing pains included the emergence of unsavory districts side by side with bustling commercial and ...

Flatboatmen on the Mississippi.
Flatboatmen on the ...

Fort at Astoria, Oregon, as it appeared in 1813.
The fort at Astoria, Oregon, as it appeared in 1813. John Jacob Astor, whose first trading post at Astoria had been started in 1811, controlled ...

Fort Ross, near Russian River California coast.
Fort Ross, near the Russian River on the northern California coast. The Russians built this fort in 1812 as a base from which they hunted seals ...

Fulton ferryboat Wm. Cutting , built in 1827.
The Fulton ferryboat Wm. Cutting , built in 1827. Just as the canals overcame physical limitations to trade, an important Supreme Court decision ...

Fur traders meet Native Americans outside a fort.
One of the barriers to the expansion of an agricultural and industrial market economy in the old Northwest

before 1820 was the continued strength ...

John Jacob Astor (1763-1848).
The Monroe Doctrine paved the way for the resolution of a conflict with Russia over control of the northern Pacific coast. John Jacob Astor ...

John Quincy Adams at a cabinet meeting.
The colonization of Liberia was an exception to a larger American foreign policy, the Monroe Doctrine, which was formally proclaimed by President ...

Lockport, New York, on the Erie Canal, ca, 1830.
Lockport, New York, on the Erie Canal, around 1830. Even though steamboats greatly increased trade along the river systems by making it possible ...

Map of the main post roads, 1834.
Map of the main post roads, 1834. Heavy goods could be moved long distances most efficiently by water, but local commercial and personal travel, ...

Map, the United States in 1820.
A map of the United States in ...

Monrovia, Liberia.
Monrovia, Liberia. The Missouri debate over slavery seemed to Thomas Jefferson and others to be "a firebell in the night." The American ...

One of America's oldest locomotives.
One of America's oldest locomotives, the John Bull . Built in England in 1831 and operated on the Camden and Amboy Railroad, it was used ...

Philadelphia in 1836.
Philadelphia in 1836. Although the Pennsylvania State Canal was not as remunerative to its stockholders as the Erie Canal, it did help to enlarge ...

Provost and Chapel streets in New York City.
Provost and Chapel streets in New York City, ca. 1826. The opening of the Erie Canal made New York the fastest-growing and wealthiest city on the ...

Reconstructed Russian chapel at Fort Ross in 1934.
The reconstructed Russian chapel at Fort Ross in 1934. The Russians sold their California property to John Sutter in 1841 for the equivalent of ...

Replica of Peter Cooper's Tom Thumb .
A replica of Peter Cooper's Tom Thumb , one of the earliest American-built locomotives. The need for more efficient systems to move goods over ...

Shipbuilding in East Boston.
Shipbuilding (here shown at East Boston) remained an important industry in Boston, since the forests of New England continued to provide timber ...

Steamboats on the levee at Vicksburg, Mississippi.
Steamboats on the levee at Vicksburg, Mississippi, ...

Street railroad cars in New Orleans.
Street railroad cars in New Orleans. Horses continued to be used to pull coaches with passengers within city limits where the noise and sparks of ...

The Dewitt Clinton .
The Dewitt Clinton , built for the Mohawk & Hudson Railroad by the West Point Foundry, made the 17-mile trip from Albany to Schenectady on ...

The Erie Canal locks at Lockport, New York.
The Erie Canal locks at Lockport, New York. Five of the 84 locks on the canal were here at ...

The life of a fireman.
The life of a big-city fireman. The growth of cities like New York demanded new municipal services. Fire fighting was an urban necessity, and ...

The locomotive Mississippi , built about 1830.
The locomotive Mississippi , built about 1830 for the Natchez & Hamburg railroad (later part of the Illinois Central system) is the oldest ...

The Philadelphia water works on Schuylkill River.
The Philadelphia water works on the Schuylkill River, ca. 1826. Growing urban areas required safe and reliable water supplies to replace the ...

The steamboat "Walk-in-the-Water" 1820s.
The steamboat "Walk-in-the-Water" in the river before Detroit, 1820s. Steam travel also helped make the Great Lakes port cities a thriving part ...

Thomas Hart Benton (1782-1858).
Thomas Hart Benton (1782-1858) became the first senator from the new state of Missouri in 1821, an office he held for the next 30 years. A member ...

Section E: The Civil War and Reconstruction, 1860-1877

Video Overview: Civil War, Reconstruction to 1877.
A brief video Overview of the history of the American Civil War and Reconstruction, from 1860 to 1877. Transcript: The election of Lincoln was ...

Life in the Civil War

"Camp of Negro Labor Crew of Quarter Master Dept."
"Camp of the Negro Labor Crew of the Quarter Master Department, at Belle Plain, Virginia." The North as a whole did not suffer the starvation and ...

"Candidates for the Exempt Brigade."
"Candidates for the Exempt Brigade." This satire on the evasion of military service points out one of the ways in which those eligible to ...
"The Albany Contracters .... and their Victim."
"The Albany Contracters (sic) who have `Influence' at Washington - and their Victim" (ragged soldier at right). The contracts for war materiel ...
"Winter in the Country: a Cold Morning."
"Winter in the Country: a Cold Morning," The disruptions of mobilizing for war and disillusionment over the progress of the war helped create a ...
A blacksmith shop in the field.
A blacksmith shop in the field. An army in the field requires extensive logistical support. Fighting combat soldiers must be backed by a host of ...
A bridge over the Chickahominy River.
A bridge over the Chickahominy River. Armies in the field did as much digging and building as they did fighting. Union units built this Grape ...
A Confederate States of America $100 bill.
A Confederate States of America $100 bill, dated Richmond, February 17, 1864. Lacking many of the financial resources enjoyed by the North, and ...
A deck scene on board the U.S.S. Mendota .
A deck scene on board the U.S.S. Mendota . This is typical of daily life on board the ships of the blockading fleets. These men seldom saw ...
A depot at City Point, Virginia.
A depot at City Point, Virginia. Extensive railroad yards were constructed at City Point in support of Grant's siege of Petersburg. Union field ...
A field hospital at Savage Station, Virginia 1862.
A field hospital at Savage Station, Virginia, June 30, 1862. More than 2,500 wounded men arrived for treatment at this makeshift hospital three ...
A naval blacksmith at work.
The iron ships required maintenance and other ironwork, so naval blacksmiths such as this one, on an unidentified U.S. vessel, were much in ...
A recruiting station in New York City.
A recruiting station in New York City. At the time of secession, the U.S. Army was small and stationed primarily in the West. Initially, the ...
A Richmond bread riot.
A Richmond bread riot. By the spring of 1863, the Confederacy suffered food shortages so severe that a series of bread riots spread from Richmond ...
A south view of stockade at Andersonville Prison.
A south view of the stockade at Andersonville Prison in Georgia, August 17, 1864. Officially known as Camp Sumter, Andersonville was the most ...
A sutler's tent.
A sutler's tent. At sutler's tents or huts, soldiers could buy amenities which were not issued to them. This one appears to be doing a good ...
A Union fife and drum corps.
A Union fife and drum corps. Such units provided music while on the march and in camp as well as for parades and other special events. They also ...
A Union officer's tent.
A Union officer's tent. Much more time was spent in camp than on the march. Because of this, soldiers tried to make their quarters as much like ...
An amputation being performed in a hospital tent.
An amputation being performed in a hospital tent at Gettysburg, July 1863. Despite the best efforts of both the Union and Confederate ...
Armory of Colt's Fire Arms Manufacturing Company.
The Armory of Colt's patent Fire Arms Manufacturing Company at Hartford, Connecticut. The Civil War gave an enormous boost to those industries of ...
Belle Boyd, the most famous Confederate spy.
Belle Boyd (1843-1900) was the most famous Confederate spy. Only 17 years old at the start of the war, Boyd used her vivacious personality to ...
Brady's mobile photographic darkroom wagon.
Brady's mobile photographic darkroom wagon and staff at Petersburg in 1864. After the war, Brady continued to make photographs, and in 1875 he ...
Burning "Colored Orphan Asylum."
The burning of the "Colored Orphan Asylum" during the New York draft riots, July 13, 1863. In one of the most heinous incidents of the riots, a ...
Buying a substitute in the North during Civil War.
Buying a substitute in the North during the Civil War. The purchase of substitutes was allowed under both Union and Confederate conscription ...
Card players on the other side.
Card players on the other side are shown in this Confederate camp scene at Corinth, Mississippi, May 1862. Note the lack of uniforms and the ...
Chimborazo Hospital in Richmond, Virginia.

The largest Confederate military hospital was Chimborazo Hospital in Richmond, Virginia (on the bluff at top), which could care for up to 8,000 ...

Clara Barton, founder of the American Red Cross.
Clara Barton (1821-1912) the founder of the American Red Cross. At the start of the Civil War, Barton became involved in medical relief work ...

Confederate refugees departing their homestead.
Confederate refugees departing from their old homestead, ca. 1863. The civilians most directly affected by fighting were in the South, where most ...

Confederate State of Alabama bill for fifty cents.
A Confederate State of Alabama bill for fifty cents, dated Montgomery, January 1, 1863. This "fractional currency" illustrates the proliferation ...

Draft riots in New York.
Draft riots in New York. In response to the conscription law, draft riots broke out in almost every northern state. The worst of these was in New ...

Enlisting Irish and German immigrants in New York.
Enlisting Irish and German immigrants on the Battery in New York. More than 500,000 foreign-born soldiers fought in the Civil War, the vast ...

Father Thomas H. Mooney performing Mass.
Father Thomas H. Mooney performing Mass for the New York State Militia, May 1861. Religion was an important mainstay of many soldiers during the ...

Federal winter quarters at Centreville, Virginia.
Federal winter quarters at Centreville, Virginia. The constant enemy of all soldiers is the weather. Here, in a typical winter scene, Union ...

Issuing rations at Andersonville Prison.
Issuing rations at Andersonville Prison on August 17, 1864. One of the major hardships suffered by prisoners at Andersonville was the inadequate ...

Mary Tippee, a sutler with the Collis Zoaves.
Mary Tippee, a sutler with the Collis Zoaves of the 114th Pennsylvania, illustrates one of the roles that women played in the operation of the ...

Mathew Brady (1823-1896).
Mathew Brady (1823-1896). A photographer already well-known for his portrait studios in New York and Washington, in 1861 Brady and his assistants ...

Members of the Christian Commission.
Members of the Christian Commission at their field headquarters near Germantown, Maryland, in September 1863. Organized by the YMCA in November ...

Montgomery Cunningham Meigs (1816-1892).
The man in charge of all these materials was Montgomery Cunningham Meigs (1816-1892). A Georgian, trained as an army engineer at West Point, ...

Nurses & officers of the U.S. Sanitary Commission.
Nurses and officers of the U.S. Sanitary Commission unit at Fredericksburg, Virginia, May ...

Nurses and patients at the Armory Square Hospital.
Nurses and patients celebrating for an unknown reason at the Armory Square General Hospital in Washington, D.C. Women nurses were an important ...

Pauline Cushman, a famous Union spy.
Pauline Cushman (1833-1893) was a famous Union spy. A well-known actress, Cushman faked secessionist sympathies in order to gain the confidence ...

Point Lookout, Maryland.
Point Lookout, Maryland. In addition to hospitals, war created another need for large-scale institutions: the prisoner of war camps. Point ...

Potomac Creek bridge.
The Potomac Creek bridge. Engineers, particularly those charged with maintaining railroad lines, did rather sophisticated building. This Potomac ...

Recruiting for the Confederate Army in Woodstock.
Recruiting for the Confederate Army in Woodstock, Virginia, in the fall of 1861. The festive atmosphere illustrates the initial rush of ...

Returned Union prisoner from Civil War prison.
A returned prisoner from another notorious Civil War prison, Belle Isle, on an island in the middle of the James River near Richmond. In 1864 ...

Sailors on board the U.S.S. Mendota .
Sailors on board the U.S.S. Mendota drill with one of the ship's Dahlgren ...

Selecting draft numbers, Provost Marshal's office.
Selecting draft numbers in the Provost Marshal's office of the 6th district, New York City, 1863. In that year, the U.S. Congress passed a ...

Sister M. Joseph of the Sisters of Mercy.
Sister M. Joseph of the Sisters of Mercy, who with other members of her order worked in the Federal military hospitals at Beaufort, South ...

Sutler's Row in Chattanooga, Tennessee.
Sutler's Row in Chattanooga, Tennessee. This row of "businesses" offers a variety of services. Present on this "main street" are several ...

The execution of Confederate Captain Henry Wirz.

Reading the death warrant before the execution of Confederate Captain Henry Wirz, the former commandant of Andersonville, November 10, 1865. He ...

The front and back of a "greenback" dollar bill.

The front and back of a "greenback" dollar bill, Civil War currency issued on August 1, 1862. Both the Confederacy and the Union turned early in ...

The quartermaster's wharf at Alexandria, Virginia.

The quartermaster's wharf at Alexandria, Virginia. Large stacks of wood and many bales of hay await shipment to the Union army. The steamer John ...

The wool machine works of Davis and Furber.

The wool machine works of Davis and Furber, North Andover, Massachusetts. Union forces were supplied with a steadily increasing quantity of ...

Typical winter "permanent" quarters.

Typical winter "permanent" quarters. Soldiers generally welcomed winter since there was little fighting. Both armies foraged lumber and other ...

U.S. military authorities feeding starving people.

The U.S. military authorities feeding the starving people of New Orleans. Hunger for civilian Confederate populations was even more severe when ...

Union company kitchen at Brandy Station, Virginia.

A Union company kitchen at Brandy Station, Virginia, 1864. When in winter quarters, soldiers took care to build support facilities as well as ...

Virginia docks show material superiority of Union.

These City Point, Virginia, docks provide a good example of the overwhelming material superiority enjoyed by the Union. When General U.S. Grant ...

War: days of waiting and moments of terror.

War consists chiefly of days of bored waiting punctuated by moments of sheer terror. Troops of both sides enjoyed numerous activities to fill in ...

Women filling cartridges at the U.S. Arsenal.

Women filling cartridges at the U.S. Arsenal at Watertown, New York. The labor shortages expected in the North did not materialize, in spite of ...

Women making uniforms for Confederate forces.

Women making uniforms for Confederate forces. Despite the fact that the South was fighting in part to preserve a particular vision of southern ...

Wounded Union soldiers convalescing.

Wounded Union soldiers convalescing at the base hospital at Fredericksburg, Virginia, May 1864. Most Civil War soldiers endured a stay in a ...

Young boys saw service in the navy as cabin boys.

Young boys saw service in the navy as cabin boys and "powder monkeys" on ships such as the U.S.S. Pawnee , off Charleston Harbor, South ...

Politics Under Grant, and the "Redemption" of the South

1868 Republican Convention nominates U.S. Grant.

The 1868 Republican Convention in Chicago which nominated General Ulysses S. Grant for president. Trying to recover from the turmoil of the ...

A cartoon about carpetbagging.

A cartoon about carpetbagging. Under Grant's administration Radical Reconstruction policies continued and were expanded, although from the ...

A painting of the Electoral Commission of 1877.

A painting of the Electoral Commission of 1877 (Florida Case). To win the support they needed, the Republicans met with several key southern ...

Broad Street, NYC, September 20, 1873.

The scene in Broad Street, New York City, near the Stock Exchange, on September 20, 1873. A severe financial panic in that year left thousands ...

Cartoon about Rutherford B. Hayes' election, 1877.

A cartoon about Rutherford B. Hayes' election as president in 1877. Called the "Let 'em alone policy," it shows Hayes bringing an end to ...

Cartoon, "Solid South" trampling Constitution.

A Thomas Nast cartoon of the "Solid South" trampling underfoot the Constitution, emancipation, suffrage, and a host of other worthwhile reforms. ...

Frederick Douglass (1817-1895).

Frederick Douglass (1817-1895). Douglass was the most visible African-American advocate of universal male suffrage as a protection of ...

Hard-currency supporters vs. inflationists.

This cartoon by C. S. Reinhart depicts the split in the Republican party between hard-currency supporters and inflationists. In 1874 ...

Henry Clay Warmoth (1842-1932).

Henry Clay Warmoth (1842-1932) was the "carpetbagger" governor of Louisiana from 1868 to 1872. Although the "redeemers" blamed much of the ...

Horace Greeley (1811-1872).

Horace Greeley (1811-1872). The end of Reconstruction came in part because of a split in the Republican ranks. Greeley, who had founded the New ...

John Brown Gordon (1832-1904).
The 1873 election of Georgia Democrat John Brown Gordon (1832-1904) to the U.S. Senate was a part of the process called "Redemption" by those ...
Map: electoral votes, 1876 election.
A map of the votes in the 1876 election. The election was extremely close, resting on the contested election returns from four states. A special ...
Nast cartoon, Grant administration corruption.
Despite its accomplishments, the Grant administration is more often remembered for the corruption portrayed in this Thomas Nast cartoon. The ...
NYC African-American parade for 15th Amendment.
A New York City African-American parade in support of the 15th Amendment, April 1870. The establishment of universal manhood suffrage was the ...
Rutherford B. Hayes (1822-1893).
Rutherford B. Hayes (1822-1893). By the time of the 1876 election, the reformers in the Republican Party were in a stronger position. Hayes ...
Samuel J. Tilden (1814-1886).
Samuel J. Tilden (1814-1886). Tilden, the Democratic nominee for president in 1876, had been active in New York politics since the mid-1840s. ...
Ulysses S. Grant, the 20th president.
Ulysses S. Grant as the 20th President. Grant's performance as president was nowhere near as good as his performance as a general had been. With ...

Reconstruction, 1865-1876

"Awkward Collision on Grand Trunk Columbia R.R."
"Awkward Collision on the Grand Trunk Columbia R.R." In this cartoon about the disagreement between Thaddeus Stevens and the president about ...
"Electioneering in the South."
"Electioneering in the South." Newly enfranchised African-American voters took their responsibilities seriously, and many leaders in their ...
"Reconstruction of the South."
"Reconstruction of the South." In this idealized portrait of the free soil and free labor America of the north, Federal generals lead the way ...
"The first vote."
"The first vote." This cartoon shows three of the most important elements of the new African-American electorate: the artisan with his tools in ...
"We Accept the Situation."
"We Accept the Situation." A Reconstruction political cartoon which depicts the freedman going to cast his vote while the disenfranchised former ...
A map of the South under Military Reconstruction.
A map of the South under Military Reconstruction. Two years after the end of the war, in large part because Andrew Johnson had been discredited ...
A Thomas Nast cartoon regarding Reconstruction.
A Thomas Nast cartoon regarding Reconstruction. Here, Columbia is replacing the seceded states in the Union. She has laid down her sword and ...
An 1876 voting cartoon.
An 1876 voting cartoon. Many whites in the South did not accept the enfranchisement of the freedmen. These ex-Confederate cartoon characters are ...
Andrew Johnson, 17th president of the U.S.
Andrew Johnson (1808-1875). The 17th president of the U.S., Johnson had served as a state legislator, governor, and as a U.S. senator from ...
Blanche Kelso Bruce, U.S. Senator, Mississippi.
Blanche Kelso Bruce (1841-1898), a U.S. Senator from Mississippi during Reconstruction. Born a slave in Virginia, Bruce had received some ...
Charles Sumner (1811-1876).
Charles Sumner (1811-1876). As senator from Massachusetts, Sumner was one of the chief architects of the Congressional Reconstruction plan. The ...
Distributing rations to the destitute in Richmond.
Distributing rations to the destitute (white and African American) at the U.S. Commissary in Richmond, Virginia, in 1865. At the end of the Civil ...
First African-American members of Congress.
An 1872 Currier and Ives lithograph of the first African-American members of the United States Congress. During Reconstruction, two African ...
Freedmen as victims of Democratic party, cartoon.
This Thomas Nast cartoon shows freedmen as victims of the Democratic party as portrayed by three of its key elements: Irish immigrants, ...
Freedmen at Richmond, Virginia, April 1865.
Freedmen at Richmond, Virginia, April 1865. At the end of the Civil War, the future of African Americans such as these was less than clear. ...
Hiram R. Revels, U.S. Senator from Mississippi.
Hiram R. Revels (1822-1901) was a U.S. Senator from Mississippi during Reconstruction. Born in freedom in

North Carolina, Revels moved to the ...

Interior of slave pens at Alexandria, Virginia.
The interior of the slave pens at Alexandria, Virginia. With the triumph of Union arms and the passage of the 13th Amendment ending slavery, ...

Issuing rations at a Freedmen's Bureau.
Issuing rations at a Freedmen's Bureau. An important task carried out by the Freedmen's Bureau was the distribution of food to the freedmen until ...

Primary school for freedmen at Vicksburg, MS.
A primary school for freedmen at Vicksburg, Mississippi. An important part of Radical Reconstruction was the passage of the Freedmen's Bureau ...

Robert Smalls, Congressman from South Carolina.
Robert Smalls (1839-1915) was a U.S. Congressman from South Carolina during Reconstruction. Born a slave in Beaufort, Smalls had been the slave ...

Students in Howard University law library, 1900.
Students in the Howard University law library, 1900. Education for the freedmen begun by reformers of radical reconstruction did not stop at ...

Thaddeus Stevens (1792-1868).
Thaddeus Stevens (1792-1868) of Pennsylvania was a leader of the Radical Republicans in the House of Representatives. A strong proponent of the ...

The Freedmen's Union Industrial School.
The Freedmen's Union Industrial School at Richmond, Virginia. Here a group of freedwomen are being taught to sew. Such practical skills were a ...

The House of Representatives on January 31, 1865.
The House of Representatives on January 31, 1865, as it voted for the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which abolished slavery. Proposed ...

The marriage of an African-American soldier.
The marriage of an African-American soldier at Vicksburg by Chaplain Warren of the Freedmen's Bureau. One of the greatest burdens which had been ...

The Memphis riot, 1866.
The Memphis riot, 1866. There was considerable race violence in the southern states during Reconstruction. Whites often violently vented their ...

The Provost Guard in New Orleans.
The Provost Guard in New Orleans rounding up vagrant former slaves, 1864. What alarmed many Radical Republicans about the state governments ...

The race riot in New Orleans in July 1866.
The race riot in New Orleans in July 1866. Under the Reconstruction policies of the Johnson administration, the Louisiana state government had ...

Two members of the Ku Klux Klan.
Two members of the Ku Klux Klan. Established in 1866 as a social club in Pulaski, Tennessee, the Klan soon took on a more sinister role as the ...

Voter registration in the South.
Voter registration in the South: the registration office at Macon, Georgia, November 1867. With the passage of the Congressional (or Radical) ...

The Assassination of Abraham Lincoln

An 1865 reward poster for the conspirators.
An 1865 reward poster for the conspirators in the assassination of President Lincoln, giving detailed physical descriptions of the men. The ...

Execution of Paine, Atzerodt, Herold, and Surratt.
The executions of Lewis Paine, George Atzerodt, David Herold, and Mary Surratt for their roles in the conspiracy to assassinate President ...

Ford's Theater.
Ford's Theater, where President Abraham Lincoln was assassinated. President Lincoln and his wife, along with two guests, were attending a ...

John Wilkes Booth (1838-1865).
John Wilkes Booth (1838-1865). A famous Shakespearean actor and strong southern sympathizer, Booth had originally planned to kidnap the ...

John Wilkes Booth fleeing across the stage.
John Wilkes Booth fleeing across the Ford's Theater stage after assassinating President Lincoln. In this dramatic rendition of the event, the ...

Portrayal of the assassination of Lincoln.
An artist's portrayal of the assassination of President Abraham Lincoln. After shooting Lincoln, Booth leapt from the box to the stage, cried out ...

President Abraham Lincoln's funeral procession.
President Abraham Lincoln's funeral procession on Pennsylvania Avenue in Washington. Lincoln was deeply mourned in the North. After a funeral ...

The Civil War Campaigns: The First Two Years

San Jacinto stops British ship Trent .
The U.S.S. San Jacinto stops the British steamer Trent in international waters. The successes of the Union blockade brought the U.S. ...

"Bombardment & Capture of the Forts at Hatteras."
"Bombardment & Capture of the Forts at Hatteras Inlet, N.C." While the armies on both sides were beginning to test each others' strengths, the ...
"Burnside's Bridge" over Antietam Creek, Maryland.
"Burnside's Bridge" over Antietam Creek, Maryland. Lee and McClellan met on the battlefield for the final time on September 17, 1862. Outnumbered ...
"Contrabands" at Cumberland Land, Virginia, 1862.
"Contrabands" at Cumberland Landing, Virginia, May 1862. The problem was what to do with the fugitive slaves once they had reached the Union ...
A David -class torpedo boat.
A David -class torpedo boat. The Confederates used all types of strange and revolutionary weapons in an attempt to overcome their naval ...
A "Quaker" gun.
A "Quaker" gun. Throughout the war, southern armies suffered from severe shortages both of men, supplies and equipment. In order to hide their ...
A Confederate Laird Ram, the Stonewall .
One of the Confederate Laird Rams, the Stonewall . This British-built ship was more advanced than any ship in the U.S. Navy. The Stonewall was ...
A Confederate vessel, the C.S.S. Sumter .
A Confederate vessel, the C.S.S. Sumter , stops a Union ship in 1861. At the outbreak of the war, the Confederacy had no real navy. What naval ...
A dead Confederate sharpshooter in Devil's Den.
A dead Confederate sharpshooter in Devil's Den. Gettysburg was one of the costliest battles of the war. At the extreme southern end of the ...
A map of Eastern Theater of Operations, 1862-1863.
A map of the Eastern Theater of Operations, 1862-1863. Following his success at Second Bull Run, Robert E. Lee decided to take the offensive and ...
A map of the 1862 western campaigns.
A map of the 1862 western campaigns. The key targets of the early stages of the Union strategy in the West were Fort Henry on the Tennessee ...
Abraham Lincoln at time of the Gettysburg Address.
Abraham Lincoln at the time of the Gettysburg Address. On November 19, 1863, a dedication service was held for the new military cemetery at ...
Action during the first day of Gettysburg battle.
An action during the first day of the Gettysburg battle. On July 1, 1863, the Army of Northern Virginia and the Army of the Potomac met in one of ...
Albert Sidney Johnston (1803-1862).
A key Confederate strategist in the West was Albert Sidney Johnston (1803-1862), one of the South's most highly respected generals when the war ...
Ambrose Everett Burnside (1824-1881).
Ambrose Everett Burnside (1824-1881) was the Federal commander who forever gave his name to the stone-arched bridge over Antietam Creek. Despite ...
Ambrose Powell Hill (1825-1865).
Ambrose Powell Hill (1825-1865). Hill's timely arrival from Harper's Ferry preserved the Confederate control of Burnside's Bridge, was one of the ...
An action during the battle of Chancellorsville.
An action during the battle of Chancellorsville. In the spring of 1863, a confident Hooker pushed south hoping to catch Lee's army in a pincer ...
An Army of the Potomac encampment.
An Army of the Potomac encampment during McClellan's Peninsula Campaign in the spring of 1862. McClellan's plan was to march up the peninsula ...
An overturned Federal supply train.
An overturned Federal supply train. In August 1862, Robert E. Lee conceived a plan to defeat General John Pope's Union army near Manassas before ...
Artilley destruction in Fredericksburg.
Rebel snipers in Fredericksburg kept up a harassing fire on Union troops as the Yankees arrived on the outskirts of the town before the battle. ...
Battle between Virginia & Monitor .
A bird's-eye view of the battle between the Virginia and the Monitor . Lithographed in colors by E. Sachse & Co. after a drawing on the spot ...
Battle of the Monitor and the Merrimac .
The battle of the Monitor and the Merrimac . Naval engineers developed important new technologies as well. The Union naval blockade of the ...
Bird's-eye view of the city of New Orleans, 1862.
A bird's-eye view of the city of New Orleans in 1862. On April 24 the city surrendered, and was occupied by General Benjamin F. Butler, ...
Caissons at Fredericksburg.
Caissons at Fredericksburg. The Confederates enjoyed the advantages of terrain and position. These destroyed artillery caissons and the horses ...
Cartoon:showing Lincoln curing illness of slavery.

A political cartoon from 1863 showing President Lincoln curing the illness of slavery with the medicine of ...

Charles F. Adams, Ambassador to Great Britain.
Charles Frances Adams (1807-1886), Ambassador to Great Britain from 1861 to 1868, arrived in London just as the Trent affair threatened ...

Company E of 4th U.S. Colored Infantry.
Company E of the 4th U.S. Colored Infantry at Fort Lincoln in Washington, D.C. African-American soldiers also suffered from discrimination. More ...

Confederate dead in the Sunken Road at Antietam.
Confederate dead in the Sunken Road at Antietam. The fighting in the center of the battlefield was as fierce as on the flanks. The Confederates ...

Confederate fortifications at Marye's Heights.
Confederate fortifications at Marye's Heights, Fredericksburg, Virginia. Burnside launched a fruitless attack across the river on December 14, ...

Confederate fortifications, Centreville, Virginia.
Confederate fortifications at Centreville, Virginia. After First Bull Run, both armies dug entrenchments all along the front which separated ...

Confederate General James Longstreet (1821-1904).
Confederate General James Longstreet (1821-1904). West Point graduate Longstreet was one of the Confederacy's most talented generals. He was ...

David Glasgow Farragut (1801-1870).
David Glasgow Farragut (1801-1870) had remained loyal to the Union in spite of his Tennessee birth, and was given command of the West Gulf ...

Dead men and horses at Gettysburg.
Dead men and horses resulting from one action at Gettysburg. The position of Captain John Bigelow's 9th Massachusetts Artillery battery at Abram ...

Dead soldiers, front of Dunker Church, Sharpsburg.
Dead soldiers in front of the Dunker Church, Sharpsburg. This small one-story church which had been built in 1852 by the Dunkers, a German ...

Dented turret of Monitor following battle.
The dented turret of the Monitor following her engagement with the Virginia . Though neither ship received serious damage during the gun ...

Engine Firefly on a trestle.
The engine Firefly on a trestle of the Orange and Virginia Railroad, n.d. The railroads assumed a most important role in the Civil War, being ...

Federal field ambulances for transporting wounded.
Federal field ambulances for transporting wounded at Fredericksburg. Civil War facilities for evacuating and treating wounded soldiers were ...

Federal forces under General Stevens.
Federal forces under General Stevens march triumphantly into the port town of Beaufort, South Carolina on December 5, 1861. DuPont's squadron of ...

Federal supply wharf at Yorktown in 1862.
In sharp contrast, the vast wealth of equipment shown in this 1862 photograph of a Federal supply wharf at Yorktown, Virginia, is a mute ...

Freed former slaves coming into the Union lines.
Freed former slaves coming into the Union lines at New Bern, North Carolina. Many slaves fled their owners whenever a northern army was nearby. ...

Fugitive African Americans ford Rappahannock.
Fugitive African Americans fording the Rappahannock River in Virginia, August 1862. The Federal government had no policy to deal with slaves who ...

Gen. George Gordon Meade (1815-1872).
Gen. George Gordon Meade (1815-1872). The defeat at Chancellorsville was a severe blow to Union civilian morale, which plummeted even further as ...

General "Stonewall" Jackson (1824-1863).
The man who is credited with the reversal of Confederate fortunes at the first battle of Bull Run, Thomas Jonathan "Stonewall" Jackson ...

General George Brinton McClellan (1826-1885).
General George Brinton McClellan (1826-1885). After the July 1861 disaster at Bull Run, Lincoln needed a new commander for the Army of the ...

General Henry Wager Halleck (1815-1872).
General Henry Wager Halleck (1815-1872) had a brilliant mind and was a meticulous administrator and a cautious tactician, but his intellectual ...

General Joseph Eggleston Johnston (1807-1891).
One of the key Confederate commanders at Bull Run was General Joseph Eggleston Johnston (1807-1891). Having been Quartermaster General of the ...

General Robert E. Lee (1807-1870).
The Confederate general whose tactical brilliance opposed McClellan's cautious doggedness was Robert Edward Lee (1807-1870), perhaps the most ...

General Ulysses S. Grant (1822-1885).
General Ulysses S. Grant (1822-1885) first emerged as a military leader in the early months of the war in the West. A West Point graduate and ...

Grave markers on the Bull Run battlefield.
Grave markers on the Bull Run battlefield, ...
Guard house & guards; 107th U.S. Colored Infantry.
The guard house and guards of the 107th U.S. Colored Infantry at Fort Corcoran, near Washington, D.C. At the start of the Civil War, African ...
Harper's Ferry, West Virginia.
Harper's Ferry, West Virginia, with a view of the Maryland heights. Lee used his victory at Second Bull Run as a springboard for a daring ...
Hospital tents at Gettysburg, July 1863.
Hospital tents at Gettysburg, July 1863. Casualties on both sides were so severe that most of the buildings in the city were used as hospitals ...
J.E.B. Stuart (1833-1864).
J.E.B. Stuart. New technology played an important role in the Civil War, but the very old warfare of armed men mounted on horseback was crucial ...
Joseph Hooker (1814-1879).
Joseph Hooker (1814-1879). The disaster at Fredericksburg spelled the end of Burnside's command of the Army of the Potomac. His replacement was ...
Lincoln reading Emancipation Proclamation.
President Lincoln with his cabinet at the first reading of the Emancipation Proclamation on July 22, 1862. Antietam was the closest thing to a ...
Lincoln replaced McClellan with General John Pope.
Dismayed at McClellan's retreat, Lincoln replaced him with General John Pope (1822-1892). A Kentuckian, a graduate of West Point and a Mexican ...
Major General Irvin McDowell (1818-1885).
The commander of the eastern Union force, the Army of the Potomac, was Major General Irvin McDowell (1818-1885), who began the war with a fine ...
Map of the Eastern Theater of Operations, 1862.
Map of the Eastern Theater of Operations, 1862. Union strategy emphasized attacks against the Confederate capital. After the first Federal ...
Massachusetts-born Benjamin Franklin Butler.
Massachusetts-born Benjamin Franklin Butler (1818-1893) who took command of New Orleans in May 1862, was experienced in dealing with a hostile ...
Panoramic view of Fredericksburg, Virginia, 1862.
A panoramic view of Fredericksburg, Virginia, in November, 1862. Neither the emancipation of slaves nor the eventual recruitment of ...
Portrayal of Pickett's Charge at Gettysburg.
A romanticized portrayal of Pickett's Charge at Gettysburg on July 3, 1863. On the previous day, Lee had attempted to turn both the Union's left ...
Preparing cotton for gin at Smith's Plantation.
Preparing cotton for the gin at Smith's Plantation in Beaufort, South Carolina. The planters who fled the Port Royal coastal region left behind ...
President Lincoln and General George McClellan.
President Abraham Lincoln and General George McClellan and his staff at Antietam on October 3, 1862. The relationship between Lincoln and ...
Raphael Semmes (1809-1877), C.S. Navy.
Raphael Semmes (1809-1877), C.S. Navy. Semmes, the captain of the Sumter and later of the Alabama , was the most successful Confederate ...
Secretary of the Navy Gideon Welles (1802-1878).
The architect of Federal naval policy was Secretary of the Navy Gideon Welles (1802-1878), an antislavery Connecticut politician. During his ...
Skulls of unburied soldiers at Chancellorsville.
Skulls of unburied soldiers killed at Chancellorsville. Despite two to one odds over the Confederate army, Hooker was unable to mount a ...
Steamboats at Pittsburg Landing, Tennessee.
Steamboats at Pittsburg Landing, Tennessee. During the night of April 6, Union reinforcements led by General Don Carlos Buell arrived at ...
The balloon Intrepid .
Professor T. S. Lowe's balloon, the Intrepid , June 1, 1862. During the Battle of Fair Oaks, Lowe ascended in his balloon, to observe the battle ...
The battle of Fort Donelson, February 1862.
The battle of Fort Donelson. On February 15, 1862, the encircled Confederate forces in this fort attempted to break out. They were successful at ...
The battlefield at Shiloh, April 1862.
The battlefield at Shiloh. On April 6, 1862, Confederate General A. S. Johnston surprised the Federal troops bivouacked around Shiloh Church, ...
The bombardment and capture of Fort Henry.
The bombardment and capture of Fort Henry. This fort guarded the Tennessee River, which flows south into the heart of the Confederate West. If ...
The bombardment of Port Royal, November 1861.
The bombardment of Port Royal, November 1861. The Federal forces were determined to gain a foothold in

the deep South, and again it was the Navy ...

The first battle of Bull Run, July 21, 1861.
The first battle of Bull Run, July 21, 1861. Many Americans believed that the war would be decided in its first major battle. When it became ...

The ruins of the Stone Bridge over Bull Run.
The ruins of the Stone Bridge over Bull Run. On the afternoon of July 21, 1861, as Federal forces began to retreat, a Confederate shell hit a ...

The southern gunboat Atlanta .
The southern gunboat Atlanta , one of a new class of ironclads whose use transformed naval warfare, photographed after her capture in Warsaw ...

The U.S. gunboat Cairo .
The U.S. gunboat Cairo . Union successes in the Western Theater of Operations were due in part to river operations. Most of the rivers in the ...

The Union attack on Fort Donelson.
The Union attack on Fort Donelson. Following their success at Fort Henry, the Union forces moved next to Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River ...

Three Confederate prisoners captured, Gettysburg.
Three Confederate prisoners captured at Gettysburg demonstrate the tough, lean character of the Confederate soldiers. Their field kits all ...

U.S. recruiting office, Hilton Head, SC.
The U.S. recruiting office at Hilton Head, South Carolina, in 1864. Hilton Head, part of the Sea Islands, fell into Federal hands early in the ...

U.S. Secretary of State William Henry Seward.
U.S. Secretary of State William Henry Seward (1801-1872). Just as the South's primary diplomatic goals in 1861 were the end of the Union ...

The End of the War, 1863-1865

A 200-pounder (8-inch) Parrott heavy rifle.
A 200-pounder (8-inch) Parrott heavy rifle at Fort Gregg on Morris Island, South Carolina, in 1864. This gun could fire a 175-pound shell more ...

A Confederate soldier boy dead in the trenches.
Both armies used young boys in a number of roles, from drummer to infantry soldier. This young Confederate died in the trenches at Petersburg on ...

A map of Grant's Vicksburg, Mississippi, campaign.
A map of Grant's Vicksburg, Mississippi, campaign. Set on bluffs high above the river, Vicksburg's Confederate guns commanded the Mississippi ...

A map of the final campaign in Virginia.
A map of the final campaign in Virginia. After U. S. Grant was made general-in-chief of all Union armies in March 1864, he planned to keep the ...

A Union wagon train at Brandy Station, Virginia.
A Union wagon train at Brandy Station, Virginia, north of Richmond, in May 1865. This photograph shows 235 wagons and teams ready to supply Union ...

Braxton Bragg (1817-1876).
Braxton Bragg (1817-1876) was the highly controversial commander of the Confederate Army of Tennessee. A North Carolina graduate of West Point ...

Cannon on terrace of the Tennessee state capitol.
Cannon on a terrace of the Tennessee state capitol in Nashville, 1864. While Sherman marched toward Savannah, Confederate General John B. Hood's ...

Captain John Winslow & officers of Kearsarge .
Captain John A. Winslow (3rd from left) and the officers of the U.S.S. Kearsarge . Northern civilian disillusionment with the progress of the ...

Cartoon showing Union General William T. Sherman.
A contemporary cartoon showing Union General William T. Sherman putting the southern city of Savannah in Uncle Sam's Christmas stocking. Sherman ...

Collecting the remains of dead soldiers.
Collecting the remains of dead soldiers at Cold Harbor, Virginia. The name Cold Harbor conjured up horror for all the Union soldiers who fought ...

Confederate dead following battle of Spotsylvania.
Confederate dead of General Richard S. Ewell's corps following the battle of Spotsylvania Court House, Virginia, May 1864. This five-day battle ...

Corey Street, Richmond.
Corey Street, Richmond. When the Confederate authorities abandoned Richmond on April 2, 1865, they burned numerous facilities to keep them out of ...

Dead Confederate, Petersburg trenches, April 1865.
A dead Confederate in the Petersburg trenches, April 1865. Confederate troops held the Petersburg lines under steadily worsening conditions until ...

Federal soldiers with stacked arms at Appomattox.
Federal soldiers with stacked arms at Appomattox, April 1865. Thus ended the Civil War, a war in which there were more casualties than in all of ...

General Hooker's capture of Lookout Mountain.

General Joseph Hooker's capture of Lookout Mountain on November 24, 1863. As part of Grant's plan to relieve the siege of Chattanooga, Hooker was ...

General Ulysses S. Grant at Cold Harbor.
General Ulysses S. Grant at Cold Harbor, Virginia, in June 1864. At Cold Harbor, Grant's army was checked once again by Lee's Army of Northern ...

General William Tecumseh Sherman (1820-1891).
General William Tecumseh Sherman (1820-1891). An Ohio-born West Point Mexican War veteran, he had lived in the South from 1853 until war broke ...

George Henry Thomas (1816-1870).
The man who saved the Union army from capture by Bragg in Georgia was a Virginian, George Henry Thomas (1816-1870). He was a career officer who ...

Grant and his staff hold a council of war.
Grant and his staff hold a council of war during the Wilderness campaign in May 1864. Grant is seated in front of the two trees, with his legs ...

John Bell Hood (1831-1879).
John Bell Hood (1831-1879). A Kentucky West Point graduate, Hood was given command of the Confederate Texas Brigade, and he fought in several ...

Laborers at quartermaster's wharf on James River.
Laborers at the quartermaster's wharf on the James River in Virginia. African Americans played an important role in the Union victory, although ...

Lee and Gordon's Mill on Chickamauga Creek.
Lee and Gordon's Mill on Chickamauga Creek in northern Georgia, where the Federal Army of the Cumberland concentrated following its occupation of ...

Map of Sherman's march to the sea.
Map of Sherman's march to the sea. After capturing Atlanta in September 1864, Union General William T. Sherman abandoned his 400-mile line of ...

Nathan Bedford Forrest (1821-1877).
Nathan Bedford Forrest (1821-1877). Cavalry played a crucial role in the war in the West, and Forrest was one of the greatest cavalry commanders ...

Peachtree Street, Atlanta, after bombardment.
Peachtree Street in Atlanta after the Federal bombardment of the city. Whitehall Street runs south from the railroad tracks toward the ...

Phillip Henry Sheridan (1831-1888).
Shown here with his staff. Philip Henry Sheridan (1831-1888) was one of the most daring Union cavalry commanders. A New York graduate of West ...

President Lincoln entering Richmond, Apr. 4, 1865.
President Abraham Lincoln entering Richmond on April 4, 1865, one day after Federal troops had captured the city. Touring the still smoldering ...

Railroad yards at Atlanta before city's capture.
Railroad yards at Atlanta before the city's capture. Atlanta's importance to the Confederacy lay in its railroad facilities. The South entered ...

Ruined Richmond following capture in April 1865.
Ruined Richmond following its capture in April 1865. The Confederate capitol dominates the skyline above the burned ruins of the city. Cannon and ...

Ruins of Charleston, South Carolina.
Ruins of Charleston, South Carolina following its Federal occupation in February 1865. Following more than a year of bombardment, Charleston also ...

Ruins of Confederate engine roundhouse in Atlanta.
The ruins of the Confederate engine roundhouse in Atlanta. Roundhouses were used for railroad engine maintenance and storage. This particular ...

Sherman's men tearing up rails.
Sherman's men tearing up rails. After capturing Atlanta, Sherman marched southeast toward Savannah, intent on destroying the Confederate morale ...

The 13-inch seacoast mortar "The Dictator."
The 13-inch seacoast mortar "The Dictator." This fearsome weapon could hurl a 200-pound shell almost 2+ miles. It was employed by Federal troops ...

The battle of Chickamauga.
The battle of Chickamauga, where the Confederate Army of Tennessee broke through the center of the Union Army of the Cumberland. Nearly routed, ...

The battle of Mobile Bay, August 5, 1864.
The second important 1864 naval action, the battle of Mobile Bay, took place on August 5, 1864. Pictured here is Admiral David G. Farragut's ...

The battle of the Crater.
The battle of the Crater. Faced with formidable Confederate defenses at Petersburg, Union commanders ingeniously planned to tunnel under a ...

The battlefield at Kenesaw Mountain, Georgia.
The battlefield at Kenesaw Mountain, Georgia. The first step in this pincer campaign was to capture the crucial Confederate rail hub of Atlanta, ...

The C.S.S. Alabama .
The C.S.S. Alabama , which was sunk on June 19, 1864 by Winslow and the Kearsarge ...

The city of Columbia, South Carolina 1865.
The city of Columbia, South Carolina, February 18, 1865, looking north from the State House. After capturing Savannah, Sherman marched inland to ...
The Confederate lines around Atlanta.
The Confederate lines around Atlanta. This was one of the most heavily fortified positions of the Civil War; the Confederates had erected miles ...
The inside of Fort Sumter, September, 1863.
The inside of Fort Sumter, September, 1863. Though it never surrendered to Union guns, Fort Sumter was quite literally reduced during the siege ...
The interior of Fort Sumter in September 1863.
The interior of Fort Sumter in September 1863, during the Federal bombardment. By war's end, Sumter's walls were barely half as high as they had ...
The Wilmer McLean House.
The Wilmer McLean House, where General Robert E. Lee agreed to the terms of surrender for the Army of Northern Virginia with General U. S. Grant ...
Ulysses S. Grant and Robert E. Lee.
Portraits of the two most famous commanders of the Civil War, Ulysses S. Grant (left) and Robert E. Lee. This is a postwar romanticized portrait ...
Vicksburg before Grant began his operations.
Vicksburg before Grant began his operations in January 1863. Grant put the town under siege on May 19; on July 4 he accepted the surrender of ...

The Final Political Crisis and the Beginning of the War

"Passage through Baltimore."
"Passage through Baltimore," a political cartoon by the Maryland dentist, caricaturist, and southern sympathizer Adalbert Volck. After the ...
A map of 1860 election results.
A map of 1860 election results. Lincoln won 59 percent of the electoral votes, but his 1,866,000 popular votes were far from a majority of the ...
A map of secession.
A map of secession. By February 1, 1861 six other states had joined South Carolina in seceding from the Union. These seven states entered into a ...
A southern Unionist family fleeing north.
A southern Unionist family fleeing north. The outbreak of war left southern Unionists in a particularly precarious position. A few fled north to ...
A Union artillery lieutenant colonel.
A Union artillery lieutenant colonel, an infantry lieutenant (talking to the mounted officer), an infantry corporal and several privates. Federal ...
Abraham Lincoln, 1860 photograph.
Abraham Lincoln, 1860 photograph by Alexander Hesler. The split in the Democratic party had made it likely that the new Republican party could ...
Alexander Stephens,Confederate Vice-President.
Alexander H. Stephens (1812-1883), Vice-President of the Confederate States of America. A Georgia member of the House of Representatives from ...
Bedraggled Confederate soldiers .
Bedraggled Confederate soldiers encamped in the Warrington Navy Yard at Pensacola, Florida, where they built works from which to besiege Federal ...
Citizens of Charleston view battle of Fort Sumter.
The citizens of Charleston on their rooftops viewing the bombardment of Fort Sumter. Though many Americans from both the North and South welcomed ...
Company K, 4th Georgia Volunteer Infantry .
Company K, 4th Georgia Volunteer Infantry (Sumter Guards). Early in the war southern militia units mobilized for Confederate service wore ...
Fort Sumter during the bombardment.
Fort Sumter during the bombardment. The fort could not be resupplied by Union ships without their coming within cannon range of Beauregard's ...
Fort Sumter, before the bombardment.
Fort Sumter, before the bombardment. Despite Lincoln's plea, war was not long in coming. As the southern states had seceded from the Union, ...
Giant smooth-bore 15-inch Columbiad cannon.
A giant smooth-bore 15-inch "Rodman" Columbiad cannon at Battery Rodgers outside the U.S. Capital. This is a good example of the Union's ...
Inauguration of Abraham Lincoln, March 4, 1861.
The inauguration of Abraham Lincoln, March 4, 1861. Scarcely two weeks after Davis's inauguration in Montgomery, Abraham Lincoln became the 16th ...
Jefferson Davis, President of Confederate States.
Jefferson Davis (1808-1889). While Lincoln quietly entered Washington, the Confederate Constitutional Convention, meeting in Montgomery, Alabama, ...
John Bell, Constitutional Union Party candidate.
John Bell (1797-1869) was chosen in 1860 as the candidate of the Constitutional Union Party, which was

made up primarily of former Whigs from the ...

John C. Breckinridge (1821-1875).
John C. Breckinridge (1821-1875) who was chosen by Southern Democrats who split from the Charleston Convention, as their candidate for president ...

Kentucky Senator John J. Crittenden (1787-1863).
Kentucky Senator John J. Crittenden (1787-1863), who proposed the "Crittenden Compromise" to save the Union in the face of growing secession ...

Major Anderson enters the unoccupied Fort Sumter.
On Christmas night 1860, Major Anderson abandoned his headquarters at indefensible Fort Moultrie and concentrated his small garrison in Fort ...

Major Robert Anderson (1805-1871), U.S. Army.
Major Robert Anderson (1805-1871), U.S. Army. Buchanan's Secretary of War John B. Floyd, a Virginian, had sent Kentucky-born Major Anderson to ...

Map, the United States in 1860.
A map of the United States in ...

Men of the 1st Connecticut Artillery practicing.
Men of the 1st Connecticut Artillery practicing with their 20-pounder Parrott field rifle. One of the U.S. Army's great battlefield advantages ...

Pierre Gustave Toutant Beauregard (1818-1893).
Pierre Gustave Toutant Beauregard (1818-1893), Brigadier General, C.S. Army. Beauregard assumed command of the Confederate forces in Charleston ...

South Carolina's Ordinance of Secession.
South Carolina's Ordinance of Secession. Lincoln's election victory convinced many southerners that they could no longer remain in the union. The ...

The Baltimore riot of April 19, 1861.
The Baltimore riot of April 19, 1861. After the fall of Sumter, Lincoln believed it was essential to keep the border slave states (Maryland, ...

The Convention Hall at Charleston, South Carolina.
The Convention Hall at Charleston, South Carolina, on the morning of April 23, 1860. John Brown's abortive raid at Harper's Ferry and the ...

The inauguration of Jefferson Davis .
The inauguration of Jefferson Davis as President of the Confederate States of America on February 18, 1861. Davis took the oath of office on the ...

The U.S. 5th Reserve Regiment being attacked.
The U.S. 5th Reserve Regiment being attacked by a pro-Confederate mob in St. Louis, Missouri, on May 11, 1861. Severely divided over the question ...

Troops "serving" their guns for the photographer.
Troops "serving" their guns for the photographer. Confederate soldiers at Pensacola brought Fort Pickens under their guns by building several ...

U.S. General Winfield Scott with his staff.
U.S. General Winfield Scott (1786-1866) posed with his staff. Scott, a veteran of the War of 1812 and the Mexican War, was General-in-Chief of ...

Washington, D.C. in 1860.
Washington, D.C. in 1860, looking down Pennsylvania Avenue toward the unfinished Capitol. The National Hotel is on the ...

William Lowndes Yancey (1814-1863).
William Lowndes Yancey (1814-1863). The southerners who had seceded from the Charleston convention, led by Yancey, nominated their own ...

The Impeachment of Andrew Johnson

Cartoon about President Johnson's unpopularity.
A cartoon about President Johnson's growing unpopularity. Many of the Radical Republicans held Johnson responsible for the South's continued ...

Edwin M. Stanton (1814-1869).
Edwin M. Stanton (1814-1869). A prominent lawyer, President Buchanan's attorney general in 1860, and Lincoln's secretary of war during the Civil ...

Formal notice of impeachment of President Johnson.
The formal notice of the impeachment of President Andrew Johnson, at the bar of the Senate, 25th February 1868. The vote to impeach Johnson had ...

Impeachment Committee of the House, 1868.
The Impeachment Committee of the House of Representatives which directed the prosecution in President Johnson's Senate trial in 1868. From left ...

Summons served on President Andrew Johnson.
George Brown, the Sergeant-at-Arms of the Senate, serving the summons on President Andrew Johnson. His impeachment trial in the Senate lasted ...

Thaddeus Stevens closing impeachment debate, 1868.
Thaddeus Stevens closing the impeachment debate in the House of Representatives, March 2, 1868. Stevens was a strong opponent of the president, ...

Wartime Politics in the North

"The Mower" shows Lincoln cutting a "copperhead."

"The Mower" shows Lincoln cutting apart a "copperhead" snake which is interfering with his work. As the 1864 elections approached, the failure of ...

Abraham Lincoln and his son Tad, February 9, 1864.

Abraham Lincoln and his son Tad, photographed on February 9, 1864 by Anthony Berger of Brady's Gallery. In that year, Lincoln was up for ...

Clement L. Vallandigham (1820-1871).

Clement L. Vallandigham (1820-1871). Although later generations have placed Lincoln on a pedestal of admiration equal to that of George ...

Justin Smith Morrill (1810-1898).

Justin Smith Morrill (1810-1898). The absence of southern Democrats from the U.S. Congress made possible the passage of a number of acts, largely ...

Part of anti-Democratic party campaign poster.

A part of an anti-Democratic party campaign poster, 1864. Although Democratic nominee McClellan sought to distance himself from the Copperhead ...

The homestead of Daniel Freeman.

The homestead of Daniel Freeman. This was the first homestead created in the United States under the Republican-sponsored Homestead Act of 1862. ...

Visibly aged Abraham Lincoln, April 10, 1865.

A visibly aged Abraham Lincoln as he appeared on April 10, 1865. This was the last portrait made of Lincoln before his untimely death five days ...

Section F: Post-Civil War Expansion and Change, 1865-1900

Video Overview: Post-Civil War, 1865-1900.

A brief video Overview of the period of post-Civil War expansion and change from 1865 to 1900. Transcript: In the late 19th century, the United ...

American Expansion Abroad

Admiral George Dewey(1837-1917).

Admiral George Dewey (1837-1917) on the deck of his flagship Olympia in 1899. The first military action in the war took place, not in Cuba, but ...

African-American soldiers in Cuba.

A quarter of the invasion force in Cuba was African-American soldiers, nearly 10,000 of whom were volunteers. The 24th and 25th Negro Infantry ...

American soldiers stricken with fever, Manila.

American soldiers stricken with fever in the First Reserve Hospital in Manila, 1900. The Philippine-American War was the first U.S. experience of ...

Captain Alfred Thayer Mahan (1840-1914).

Captain Alfred Thayer Mahan (1840-1914), a naval officer and writer on naval history, set the goal for American foreign policy in the last ...

Cartoon about German-U.S. disagreement over Samoa.

A cartoon about the German-U.S. disagreement over Samoa in 1889. American commercial vessels trading in the Pacific had been laying the basis for ...

Emilio Aguinaldo with his mother and son.

Emilio Aguinaldo with his mother and son on the porch of their home. Aguinaldo (1869-1964) was a popular leader of an indigenous Philippine ...

Packers ascending the summit of the Chilkoot Pass.

Packers ascending the summit of the Chilkoot Pass during the Alaskan gold rush of 1898. Ironically, the inflationary expansion in the money ...

Pulitzer and Hearst in conflict over Cuba.

A political cartoon by Leon Barritt showing the role of "yellow journalism" in bringing the U.S. to war with Spain over Cuba. In the 1890s, ...

Queen Liliuokalani, last reigning queen of Hawaii.

Another Pacific Island group which the U.S. was eyeing was the Hawaiian Islands. Queen Liliuokalani (1838-1917) was the last reigning queen of ...

Sanford B. Dole (1844-1921).

Sanford B. Dole (1844-1921) was one of the powerful planters in Hawaii whose interests were threatened by tariff changes and Liliuokalani's ...

Tents and buildings at Nome City, Alaska, in 1899.

Tents and buildings at Nome City, Alaska, in 1899. Just as boom towns sprang up in the California gold rush in the 1850s, and in the mining ...

The Columbia , an armored naval vessel.

The Columbia , an armored naval vessel photographed in 1898, illustrates the impact of Mahan's arguments. During the late 1880s, advocates of a ...

The native district of Manila is burned, 1899.

The native district of Manila is burned, 1899. In addition to the destruction of property, the Philippine Insurrection cost 4,300 American and ...

The Venezuelan crisis.

The Venezuelan crisis. Expansion of American interests in the Pacific coincided with a renewed U.S. activism in the western hemisphere. The ...

The wreck of the Maine .

The wreck of the Maine . The crisis in Cuba came when an explosion in Havana harbor on February 15, 1898

destroyed the battleship U.S.S. Maine ...

Theodore Roosevelt and his Rough Riders.

Theodore Roosevelt and his Rough Riders on San Juan Hill in Cuba, 1898. When war was declared, Assistant Secretary of the Navy Roosevelt resigned ...

U.S. infantrymen camped in Forbidden City Beijing.

U.S. infantrymen camped in the Forbidden City at Beijing, China, August 1900. Possession of the Philippines gave the U.S. both a stepping-stone ...

Valeriano Weyler, the Spanish governor of Cuba.

Valeriano Weyler, the Spanish governor of Cuba, whose policies in the Cuban revolution of 1892-1898 roused American sympathies for the Cubans. A ...

Women prospectors on their way to the Klondike.

Women prospectors on their way to the Klondike in 1898. News of the Klondike find reached the U.S. in July 1897; despite the isolation of the ...

An Urban Society and Culture

"Bird's-eye view" of World's Columbian Exposition.

The official "bird's-eye view" of the World's Columbian Exposition in Chicago, 1893. World's Fairs were opportunities for nations to exhibit ...

"The Royal Family of America," 1902.

"The Royal Family of America" photographed in 1902. The ideal of the American way of life that turn of the century popular fiction created was ...

A dinner party honoring Mark Twain.

A dinner party honoring Mark Twain. Samuel Leghorne Clemens (1835-1910), better known as Mark Twain, began his long and distinguished writing and ...

A Horatio Alger book.

This Horatio Alger, Jr. (1834-1899) book, From Farm to Fortune , published in 1905, was one of more than 100 such boys' novels written to ...

A horse-drawn streetcar in New York City, 1895.

A horse-drawn streetcar in New York City, 1895. Mid-19th century cities were walking cities; even the largest were limited in size to a walking ...

A Notre Dame football player in an 1880s uniform.

A Notre Dame football player in an 1880s uniform. College football was another form of the mass entertainment that reflected the increasing ...

A poster advertising "Signorita Galetti."

A poster advertising "Signorita Galetti and her troupe of the World's Greatest Performing Monkeys," 1892. Vaudeville reached its heyday after the ...

A poster for Buffalo Bill's Wild West show.

Buffalo Bill's Wild West show was the creation of William Frederick Cody (1846-1917), an army scout and buffalo hunter from Iowa who had worked ...

A revival meeting in Brooklyn, New York, 1875.

Dwight L. Moody (1837-1899) and Ira D. Sankey (1840-1908) lead a revival meeting in the skating rink at Brooklyn, New York, 1875. Moody, a ...

A woman with an early typewriter, 1892.

A woman with an early typewriter, 1892. The rise of department stores gave women new work opportunities in the cities as salesclerks, and women ...

Boston versus Baltimore Orioles, Baltimore 1897.

Boston (the winner) versus the Baltimore Orioles at Baltimore in 1897. Even sports became a mass consumption item marketed to urban America at ...

Central Park in New York City, 1902.

Central Park in New York City, 1902. As cities grew, they seemed more and more removed from the community ties that had held American society ...

Digging the subway, Union Square in New York City.

Digging the subway at Union Square in New York City, near the time that subway construction began in 1900. The first passenger segment of the NYC ...

Edward Bellamy (1850-1898).

Edward Bellamy (1850-1898) turned his attention to the social disruptions of the day in Looking Backwards (1888) to project toward a utopian ...

Electric streetcars in Atlanta, Georgia, 1895.

Electric streetcars in Atlanta, Georgia, 1895. In 1880 an engineer, Frank Sprague (1857-1934), designed the electric trolley, converting the ...

Fifth Avenue at Central Park East, 1903.

The wealthy, who were confident in their right to enjoy their wealth in part because of the arguments of men like Sumner, Conwell, and Alger, ...

Frederick Law Olmsted, designer of Central Park.

Frederick Law Olmsted (1822-1903), the landscape architect who designed Central Park. He created parks in other growing cities as well, including ...

Herbert Spencer (1820-1903).

Though an Englishman, Herbert Spencer (1820-1903), had an enormous impact on American thinking at the end of the century. A philosopher who ...

John Lawrence Sullivan (1858-1901).

John Lawrence Sullivan (1858-1901), shown here when he became the heavyweight champion of the world in 1882 by knocking out Paddy Ryan in a ...

Louis Henry Sullivan, pioneering architect.

Louis Henry Sullivan (1856-1924) met the challenge for taller buildings which was posed by the rising value of real estate in the hearts of the ...

Louisa May Alcott (1832-1888).

Louisa May Alcott (1832-1888) wrote a series of novels for girls that were the counterpart of the inspirational fiction for boys of Horatio ...

Primrose and West's Big Minstrels.

Primrose and West's Big Minstrels. Chautauquas and mass revival meetings did not take all the audiences for popular entertainment. Minstrel shows ...

R. H. Macy & Company, New York City.

R. H. Macy & Company, New York City. The department store was as much a symbol of the modern city as the skyscraper and the city park. Macy's, or ...

Richard Sears, co-founder of Sears & Roebuck.

Richard Warren Sears (1863-1914), co-founder of Sears & Roebuck, carried the department store idea of large-scale merchandising of a broad ...

Russell Conwell (1843-1925).

Russell Conwell (1843-1925) preached a religious message that complemented the "scientific" arguments of Spencer and his American disciple ...

Stephen Crane (1871-1900).

Stephen Crane (1871-1900). Not all cultural contributions of the period were aimed at a popular audience. The last decades of the 19th century ...

Stephens' Female College at Columbia, MO, 1875.

Stephens' Female College (now Stephens College) at Columbia, Missouri, in 1875. The emergence of "chautauquas" was part of a larger change in ...

Tennis, too, was an individual leisure-time sport.

Tennis, too, was an individual leisure-time sport that both men and women could enjoy. This fashionable young lady is dressed for a game of ...

The aftermath of the great Chicago fire.

The aftermath of the great Chicago fire, as seen from the corner of Wabash and Washington Streets. On October 8-9, 1871, a disastrous fire ...

The beach at Seabreeze, Florida.

The beach at Seabreeze, Florida, now a part of Daytona Beach, at the turn of the century. Increased leisure time meant that white-collar middle ...

The Chautauqua grounds at Galesburg, Illinois.

The Chautauqua grounds at Galesburg, Illinois. Not all leisure activities were devoted to watching or taking part in strenuous physical events. ...

The Connecticut Bicycle Parade at Hartford, 1885.

The Connecticut Bicycle Parade at Hartford in 1885. Not all leisure sporting activities were primarily for spectators. The bicycle craze rivaled ...

The famous "Flat Iron Building" in New York City.

The famous "Flat Iron Building" in New York City exemplifies the soaring design, thinner walls, and greater height that the use of structural ...

The first train on the Gilbert elevated railroad.

The first train on the Gilbert elevated railroad passing through 6th Avenue in New York City, 1878. Electric trolleys provided inexpensive ...

The Long Beach, California, pier & bathers, 1905.

The Long Beach, California, pier and bathers in 1905. Fashions for this recreational activity reflected Victorian attitudes toward female ...

The parlor of the Vanderbilt mansion.

The parlor of the mansion built at Hyde Park, New York by Frederick W. Vanderbilt, a grandson of railroad millionaire Cornelius Vanderbilt, ...

Thomas Eakins (1844-1916) .

Thomas Eakins (1844-1916) brought the realism of novelists like Crane and others to the painter's canvas, using detailed studies of anatomy and ...

Winslow Homer (1836-1910).

Winslow Homer (1836-1910) served his artistic apprenticeship in realism as an illustrator-reporter for Harper's Weekly during the Civil War. ...

Women rode bicycles, it was considered daring.

Although women rode bicycles, it was considered somewhat daring and radical to do so. A popular theme in the humor of vaudeville, stereograph ...

Immigration in the Late 19th Century

"Female Slaves of New York" picture of sweat shop.

"Female Slaves of New York" was the label for this illustration of a sweat shop. Although the cultural traditions of many immigrant groups ...

"Five cents a spot" unauthorized rental lodgings.

"Five cents a spot" was the title reforming photographer Jacob Riis (1849-1914) gave to this image of unauthorized rental lodgings in a Bayard ...

An immigrant train at the Baltimore pier in 1880s.
An immigrant train at the Baltimore pier in the 1880s. Not all late 19th century immigrants arrived at New York. Thousands disembarked in Boston, ...
An Italian mother, Jersey Street, NY, 1890.
An Italian mother and her baby on Jersey Street in New York City about 1890. Many immigrants brought their families, or sent for them as soon as ...
Bohemian cigarmakers at work in their tenement.
Bohemian cigarmakers at work in their New York City tenement, about 1889. Many immigrants not only lived in the single room in a tenement ...
Ellis Island a primary U.S. immigration port.
An aerial view of Ellis Island, which served as a primary U.S. immigration port from 1892 to 1954. From 1855 to 1892, immigrants who reached New ...
Emigrants leaving Bremen for America.
Emigrants leaving Bremen for America. Although this half of a stereograph view was taken in 1904, the crowded conditions and the predominantly ...
Frances E. C. Willard (1839-1898).
Frances E. C. Willard (1839-1898), president of the Women's Christian Temperance Union from 1879 to 1898, urged a different set of reforms that ...
Immigrants in "pens" at Ellis Island.
Immigrants in "pens" at Ellis Island, waiting for testing for physical and mental defects. Though the iron bars were designed to create orderly ...
Jane Addams (1860-1935).
Jane Addams (1860-1935) in 1914. Born of wealthy Chicago parents and educated in a select Illinois women's college, she became appalled at the ...
Map: Principal European origins of immigration.
A map showing the principal European origins of immigration to America. The difficulty faced by labor unions in demanding concessions for workers ...
Mulberry Street in New York City about 1900.
Mulberry Street in New York City about 1900. By that time, many immigrant groups had formed their own communities. A vibrant street life of ...
Physicians examining a group of Jewish immigrants.
Physicians examining a group of Jewish immigrants at Ellis Island in 1907. Underwood & Underwood ...
Slavic coal miners working 3 miles underground.
Slavic coal miners working three miles underground in Pennsylvania, 1895. Not by any means all immigrants remained in New York; others ...
The "bathroom"; New York City cold-water tenement.
The "bathroom" in a New York City cold-water tenement flat. As many as 150 people and two shops on the bottom level filled each building. Toilets ...
The head of Statue of Liberty during construction.
The head of the Statue of Liberty during construction on Bedloe's Island, prior to its dedication on in October 1886. Designed by Frederick ...
The roof of a "dumbbell" tenement building.
The roof of a "dumbbell" tenement building. Most immigrants arrived and stayed in New York, where pressures on available housing led to the ...

Industrial Frontiers; Inventions, Technology

A Bessemer converter.
A Bessemer converter spouting flame at Carnegie's Homestead Steel works in Pennsylvania, 1907. The Bessemer process increased the quantity and ...
A Great Lakes ore carrier at Ashtabula, Ohio.
A Great Lakes ore carrier at Ashtabula, Ohio, in ...
An early household kerosene lamp.
An early household kerosene lamp. Just as Rockefeller transformed the oil industry, petroleum transformed the lives of ordinary Americans. ...
An early telephone switchboard.
A very early telephone switchboard, n.d. Alexander Graham Bell founded the Bell Telephone Company in 1877 to market his new invention, and what ...
Andrew Carnegie (1835-1919).
Andrew Carnegie (1835-1919) transformed the iron and steel industry just as Rockefeller had the oil industry: by organizing it, introducing new ...
Building the Brooklyn Bridge, 1877.
Building the Brooklyn Bridge, 1877. This bridge came to symbolize for Americans their image of themselves as innovative, and technologically ...
Building the Washington Monument, 1879.
Building the Washington Monument, 1879. A society to raise funds for a monument to George Washington had been formed in 1833, and architect ...
First oil well derricks, Titusville, Pennsylvana.
The first oil well derricks, in Titusville, Pennsylvania. Not all of the frontiers were in the West. In the East, technological inventions and ...
Henry Clay Frick (1849-1919).

Henry Clay Frick (1849-1919) became Carnegie's partner in the steel business. He organized Frick and Company in 1871 to operate coke ovens, the ...

James B. Eads (1820-1887).
James B. Eads (1820-1887) an engineer and inventor, who developed new truss systems, using the improved steel then available, to bridge the ...

John A. Roebling (1806-1869).
John A. Roebling (1806-1869), the engineer who designed the Brooklyn Bridge. Born in Prussia, he emigrated to the U.S. in 1831, and pioneered the ...

John D. Rockefeller's Standard Oil Refinery.
John D. Rockefeller's Standard Oil Refinery in Cleveland, Ohio, ca. 1870. When he retired in 1897 to manage the charitable foundation he had ...

John Davison Rockefeller (1839-1937).
John Davison Rockefeller (1839-1937) transformed the oil industry by organizing it. He built a refinery in Cleveland, absorbed or destroyed ...

Laying tubes for underground electric wires.
Laying the tubes for underground electric wires in the streets of New York, 1882, removing some of the tangle of overhead wires (See also F ...

Part of coal mining town, Dorothy, West Virginia.
A part of the coal mining town of Dorothy, West Virginia, at the beginning of the 20th ...

Steam shovel, workers, Mesabi open pit iron mine.
A steam shovel and workers in the Mesabi open pit iron mine in Minnesota, 1903. Frick and Carnegie integrated the vast deposits of rich upper ...

Telephone and electric wires in New York City.
Telephone and electric wires on a New York City Street, 1884. Like other new industries, the electric industry grew rapidly. Edison supplied his ...

The 1860 "Home Washer and Wringer."
The demand for adaptation of technology to the work of the home did produce new appliances, such as this 1860 "Home Washer and Wringer." ...

The American Iron Works at Pittsburgh.
The American Iron Works at Pittsburgh, shown here in 1878, illustrates the size and integration of the industry. Tows on the Monongahela River ...

The Corliss engine, exhibited in 1876.
The Corliss engine, exhibited in the Machinery Hall of the Philadelphia Centennial Exposition, 1876. For many Americans in the late 19th century, ...

The cover of the "Handy Dandy Cook Book."
The cover of the Handy Dandy Cook Book by Catherine E. Beecher (New York, 1873). Beecher (1800-1878) was the daughter of Lyman Beecher and ...

The electric lamp transformed the urban landscape.
The electric lamp transformed the urban landscape, bringing brilliant lights to city streets. Grand Street in New York City was almost as ...

The first telephone.
The first telephone. Alexander Graham Bell (1847-1922), and his invention of the telephone, also helped to transform American life. The telegraph ...

The invention of the incandescent lamp.
The invention of the incandescent lamp. Even before Thomas A. Edison had succeeded in developing an incandescent lamp, he established the Edison ...

Thomas Alva Edison with his first phonograph.
Thomas Alva Edison (1847-1931) with his first phonograph. Edison came to symbolize for many the inventive genius of American technology. Born and ...

Visitors to Philadelphia Centennial Exposition.
Visitors to the Kansas and Colorado exhibit at the Philadelphia Centennial Exposition of 1876. Though the exposition as a whole emphasized the ...

Women telephone operators in the Bell exchange.
Women telephone operators in the Bell exchange at Hamburg, New York. At first, men were hired as telephone operators; by the 1890s, company ...

Woodward coal mine near Plymouth, Pennsylvania.
The Woodward coal mine near Plymouth, Pennsylvania. Although the Bessemer process reduced the amount of coal needed to produce a ton of steel to ...

Works of Edison General Electric Company, 1891.
The Schenectady, New York, Works of the Edison General Electric Company in ...

Politics in the Gilded Age

"Morgan" silver dollar and a $20 gold piece,
A "Morgan" silver dollar of 1891, and a $20 gold piece of 1871. The Sherman Silver Purchase Act did not inflate the currency significantly enough ...

"Showman Hanna Catches the Crowd."
"Showman [Mark] Hanna Catches the Crowd," refers to the successful political tactics of Republican party organizer Mark Hanna (1837-1904). A ...

"The Homestead Riot."
"The Homestead Riot." Frick hired an army of private detectives or "Pinkerton men" to drive the strikers off; in

a pitched battle, three ...

A lynching at Marion, Indiana.
A lynching at Marion, Indiana, n.d. Booker T. Washington's rhetoric and patronage could not stem the rising tide of violence against African ...

Belva Ann Lockwood (1830- 1917).
Belva Ann Lockwood (1830- 1917) was nominated for president of the U.S. in 1884 by the National Equal Rights Party, a political offshoot of the ...

Benjamin Harrison with his running mate.
Benjamin Harrison (1833-1901) was the grandson of ninth president William Henry Harrison (see D 204), a brigadier general in the Civil War, and a ...

Benjamin Ryan Tillman (1847-1918).
Benjamin Ryan Tillman (1847-1918) illustrates the other face of Populist voter appeal in the deep South. A leader in the South Carolina Farmer's ...

Booker T. Washington (1856-1915).
Booker T. Washington (1856-1915), born in slavery, founded the Tuskegee Institute in Alabama in 1881 to educate freedmen in the dignity of the ...

Chester A. Arthur (1830-1886).
Garfield was succeeded by his vice president, Chester A. Arthur (1830-1886). A Vermont-born Republican who had allied himself with the powerful ...

Convicts in segregated crews in Mississippi.
Jim Crow laws requiring segregated facilities in every aspect of public life (to the point where separate warehouses were needed for textbooks ...

Coxey's Army.
Coxey's Army in front of the U.S. Capitol, 1894. Coxey's march drew national attention, and other "armies" were raised in every section of the ...

Eugene V. Debs (1855-1926).
Eugene V. Debs (1855-1926), of Indiana, had worked as a young man on the railroads. After being elected to the Indiana legislature in 1893, he ...

Grover Cleveland the 22nd President of the U.S.
Stephen Grover Cleveland (1837-1908), a Democrat, was elected as the 22nd President of the U.S. in 1884 partly because of the divisions within ...

Jacob S. Coxey (1854-1951).
Jacob S. Coxey (1854-1951) proposed a political solution to the problems of unemployment. A middle-aged businessman, he urged Congress to pass a ...

Julia Ward Howe (1819-1910).
Julia Ward Howe (1819-1910) achieved instant fame during the Civil War when her poem, The Battle Hymn of the Republic , was published in The ...

Lucy Stone, women's rights convention organizer.
Lucy Stone (1818-1893) helped organize the first national women's rights convention, in Worcester, Massachusetts, in 1850. An abolitionist, she ...

Map: electoral votes, 1896 election.
A map showing the electoral votes in the 1896 election. Although Bryan campaigned tirelessly, carrying the popular and electoral votes for the ...

Mary Ashton Livermore; American Woman Suffrage.
Mary Ashton Livermore (1820-1905), one of the founders of the American Woman Suffrage Association. A temperance and suffrage leader before the ...

Mary Church Terrell (1863-1954).
Mary Church Terrell (1863-1954). African-American women, too, were interested in the issues of woman suffrage, and organized through the Women's ...

Mary Elizabeth Lease (1853-1933).
Mary Elizabeth Lease (1853-1933), a fiery speaker, articulated the larger sense of grievance of the farmers of the West and Midwest as to what ...

Roscoe Conkling (1819-1888).
Roscoe Conkling (1819-1888), the leader of the "stalwart" faction of the Republican Party, seemed to many liberal reformers to symbolize the ...

Senator John Sherman (1823-1900).
Senator John Sherman (1823-1900). Not all disasters were natural; to the farmers, economic disaster triggered by political manipulations rather ...

Special train which patrolled Rock Island RR.
A special train which patrolled the Rock Island railroad during the Pullman strike, carrying a company of the 15th U.S. Infantry. The strike ...

Strikers at Homestead, Pennsylvania.
Strikers at Homestead, Pennsylvania. The Populist platform appealed not only to farmers caught in an economic squeeze; it also addressed the ...

Susan B. Anthony (1820-1906).
Susan B. Anthony (1820-1906), women's rights advocate. African Americans had at least enjoyed the right to vote and hold office at the local and ...

The assassination of President Garfield.
The assassination of President Garfield (1831-1881). With the end of Reconstruction, politics became an important form of public entertainment: ...

The Charleston earthquake, August 31, 1886.
The Charleston earthquake, August 31, 1886. Natural disasters vied with politics for sensationalist news coverage in the 1880s. An earthquake in ...
The Cotton States Exposition in Atlanta.
The Cotton States Exposition in Atlanta. The aftermath of the defeat of the Populists in the South in 1892, and as a national party in 1896, was ...
The interior of a Pullman railroad car.
The interior of a Pullman railroad car. Coxey's arrest was one of several incidents that signaled to ordinary men and women that the radical ...
The Johnstown flood, May 31, 1889.
On May 31, 1889, the dam holding the rain-swollen waters of the Conemaugh River above Johnstown, Pennsylvania, broke, destroying the town under a ...
Thomas Edward Watson (1856-1922).
Thomas Edward Watson (1856-1922) of Georgia was a southern leader of the "agrarian radicals" who formed the backbone of the Populist party. The ...
Thomas Nast (1840-1902).
Thomas Nast (1840-1902), the German-born cartoonist, represented still a third faction of Republicans, young liberal reformers who called ...
Unemployed men receiving bread, New York City.
Unemployed men receiving bread on a New York City street in March 1893. The overexpansion of railroads, and heavy borrowing by farmers and ...
William Jennings Bryan (1860-1925).
William Jennings Bryan (1860-1925) as a presidential candidate in 1896. The Panic, and the seeming callousness of government officials to the ...

The Emergence of a National Labor Movement

"Bell Time."
"Bell Time." By the end of the Civil War, increasing numbers of workers were employed in large mills. These New England men, women and children ...
"The Great Strike - destruction of Union Depot..."
"The Great Strike - destruction of the Union Depot and Hotel at Pittsburgh, 1877" The Panic of 1873 (see E 277) began a recession. As part of its ...
A shoe factory in Plymouth, Massachusetts.
A shoe factory in Plymouth, Massachusetts. By the late 19th century, many jobs that had previously been done by skilled workers, such as that of ...
A small tinsmith workshop.
Before the development of industrial plants and assembly lines, most manufacturing took place in small workshops like the shop of this 1875 ...
Cigar makers, around 1873.
Cigar makers, around 1873. Workers took turns in reading from books or newspapers to alleviate the boredom. This custom was widespread, and ...
Founders of the Knights of Labor.
Founders of the Knights of Labor. Issues of low pay, long hours, unsafe working conditions, and lack of control over the pace or quality of work ...
Mexican-American farm laborers, San Antonio.
Mexican-American farm laborers outside of San Antonio, Texas. Just as day laborers, roustabouts, and those doing piece work in sweat shops were ...
Roustabouts unloading freight.
Roustabouts unloading freight. The new A. F. of L. did not include unskilled workers, or African Americans. In the South, among the latter, and ...
RR workers attempt to prevent train from starting.
Railroad workers attempt to prevent a freight train from starting while U.S. marshals defend railroad property in East St. Louis, 1886. ...
Samuel Gompers (1850-1924).
Samuel Gompers (1850-1924), born in England, migrated to America in 1863, where he followed his father into the cigar making craft. Believing ...
Terence V. Powderly (1849-1924).
Terence V. Powderly (1849-1924) became Grand Master Workman of the Knights of Labor in 1879, and transformed it into a rapidly growing union ...
Victims of mine disaster at Avondale and Plymouth.
Victims of the mine disaster at Avondale and Plymouth, Pennsylvania, 1869. The workplaces in which American workers labored were often hazardous, ...
Women attending meeting of Knights of Labor, 1886.
Women delegates attending a national meeting of the Knights of Labor, 1886. Wearing ribbon badges that identify their local, a separate ...

The End of the Western Frontier

"U.S. Land Office Practice, Contracts A Specialty"
"U.S. Land Office Practice, Contracts A Specialty," the sign on this Round Pond, Oklahoma lawyer and surveyor's office proclaimed. "Doing a land ...
A buffalo hide yard.

A buffalo hide yard. The Plains Indian way of life depended on the great buffalo herds, and the Fort Laramie Treaty (see F 11) promised the Sioux ...

An 1899 railroad poster.

An 1899 railroad poster. The railroads played an important part in bringing families into Oklahoma Territory. By 1899, Oklahoma City was well ...

Big Foot was a leader of a small band of Sioux.

Big Foot was a leader of a small band of Sioux. An advocate of the ghost dance, he led his band of 340, of whom 200 were women and children, off ...

Cartoon, "The reason of Indian Outbreak..."

"The reason of the Indian Outbreak: General Miles declares that the Indians are starved into rebellion." This cartoon, published in the London ...

Chief Gall, leader of the Hunkpapa Sioux.

Chief Gall (1839-1895), leader of the Hunkpapa Sioux, defended the village of 1500 tipis along the Little Big Horn against the June 25, 1876 ...

Chief Joseph of the Nez Percé tribe.

Chief Joseph (1840?-1904) of the Nez Percé tribe. The Nez Percé War in 1877 was an agonizing example of the impossible position in which native ...

Dobbin's Sawmill at Black Hills, Dakota Territory.

Dobbin's Sawmill at Black Hills, Dakota Territory, 1890. Although it was the discovery of gold that forced the Sioux and Cheyenne off of their ...

George Armstrong Custer (1839-1876).

Lt. Col. George Armstrong Custer (1839-1876), a West Point graduate and a Union officer during the Civil War, was by 1874 an experienced Indian ...

Geronimo (1829-1909), his son, and Natches.

Apache Chief Geronimo (1829-1909, at left on horseback), his son (at right) and Natches (wearing a hat) in the Sierra Madre mountains before ...

Group of "hostiles" from Chief Geronimo's band.

A group of "hostiles" from Chief Geronimo's band, 1886. By 1885 the majority of Geronimo's tribe were under army control, but 33, including ...

Guthrie, Oklahoma Territory, January 1893.

Guthrie, Oklahoma Territory, January 1893. In Oklahoma as in the Dakotas, women and children were part of the pattern of inward migration, and ...

Homesteaders waiting for opening, Cherokee Strip.

Homesteaders waiting for the opening of the Cherokee Strip, Oklahoma Territory, September 16, 1893. In the 1820s and 1830s, Congress had forced ...

Land promoters fill in gaps between settlements.

Land promoters helped fill in the gaps between settlements with colorful posters and other advertisements luring settlers into the territories. ...

Panorama of Lt. Col. Custer's force.

Panorama of Lt. Col. George Custer's force at Hidden Wood Creek during the campaign to drive the Sioux Indians from the Black Hills in 1874. ...

Scene at the polls in Cheyenne, Wyoming, 1888.

Scene at the polls in Cheyenne, Wyoming, 1888. In some ways the territories becoming states reflected historian Frederick Jackson Turner's belief ...

Sioux camp near Pine Ridge Agency in South Dakota.

A Sioux camp near the Pine Ridge Agency in South Dakota, where the population had reached 6,000 in 1890. The destruction of the buffalo herds ...

Sitting Bull, Chief of the Oglala Sioux.

Sitting Bull (ca. 1831-1890), Chief of the Oglala Sioux, was one of the most important of the "non-treaty" Indians and a respected spiritual ...

Students in blacksmith shop at Carlisle, PA.

Students in the blacksmith shop at the Carlisle, Pennsylvania, Indian School, ca. 1900. Founded in 1878 to train young Pawnee, Kiowa, and ...

The bodies of the Indian dead at Wounded Knee.

The bodies of the Indian dead at Wounded Knee (now South Dakota). A storm after the massacre froze the bodies, which were then thrown into mass ...

U.S. Mail coach.

The Spearfish U.S. Mail coach, at Spearfish, South Dakota. The establishment of post offices and extension of mail service marked the advance of ...

Wovoka, a Paiute medicine man.

Wovoka (1856-1932), a Paiute medicine man, received a vision in 1888 during a fever, and founded a new movement which he believed would purify ...

The New South

1884 Mississippi cotton plantation.

Cotton, the principal crop grown in much of the South after the war as before, remained stubbornly unmechanized, depending at the end (as at the ...

A bust of Robert E. Lee by Stephen Dill.

A bust of Robert E. Lee by Stephen Dill on the campus of the Mississippi A&M College at Lorman. Even as they embraced an industrial and ...

A Mississippi River boat loaded with cotton.
A Mississippi River boat, the William Garig , loaded with cotton at Baton Rouge, Louisiana. Despite the rebuilding of southern railroads, until ...
A phosphate plant.
The phosphate plant of the Charleston Mining Company at Ft. Meade, Florida, n.d., illustrates another important mineral-related industry of the ...
An advertisement for Bull Durham tobacco.
An advertisement for Bull Durham tobacco. The processing of tobacco was one of the most important success stories in postwar southern ...
Conyers family of Maple Mills, Dillon, SC.
The Conyers family of Maple Mills, Dillon, South Carolina. All the family except Mrs. Conyers worked in the mill, and she took in boarders in ...
Cotton on the levee at Huntsville, Alabama.
Cotton on the levee at Huntsville, Alabama. The restoration of an extensive levee system to prevent periodic flooding also provided a network of ...
Finishing room, Pepperrell Manufacturing Company.
The finishing room of the Pepperrell Manufacturing Company plant at Lindale, Georgia, n.d. Not all of the South's cotton crop was exported for ...
Henry Woodfin Grady.
More than any other single individual, Henry Woodfin Grady (1850-1889) epitomized the "New South Creed" that attempted to bring to the South the ...
Most cotton mill workers were women & children.
Most of the workers in southern cotton mills were women and children. Mill owners provided all the needs of their workers: a company store, ...
North Carolina "spiritine" or turpentine factory.
A North Carolina "spiritine" or turpentine factory in 1876. Turpentine manufacture provided an industrial product from one of the South's most ...
The sugar harvest in Louisiana, around 1875.
The sugar harvest in Louisiana, around 1875. The "Lost Cause" celebration of a purer and more moral way of life succeeded in part because much of ...
TN Coal, Iron and Railroad Company's furnaces.
The Tennessee Coal, Iron and Railroad Company's blast furnaces at Ensley, Alabama, illustrate the success of Grady's vision in the ...
Women workers in Virginia cigarette factory, 1877.
Women workers in a Richmond, Virginia cigarette factory, 1877. Before 1870, most Americans who used tobacco chewed it, or smoked it in cigars and ...

The Postwar Western Frontiers

"A Picture for Employers" anti-Chinese cartoon.
"A Picture for Employers" compared American working men to the living and working habits of the Chinese in this anti-Chinese cartoon by J. ...
"Down in a Silver Mine," 1892.
"Down in a Silver Mine," 1892. Where precious metals lay far below the surface, miners were hired to practice deep mining extraction. Most of the ...
"Every Dog (no distinction of color) has his day."
"Every Dog (no distinction of color) has his day." Not all Americans shared Denis Kearney's prejudices against Chinese workers. This 1879 cartoon ...
"Ten Minutes for Refreshments" in crowded station.
"Ten Minutes for Refreshments" in a crowded railroad station. In the late 19th century, the railroads revolutionized the way Americans thought of ...
"The Granger Shirt," a color lithograph.
"The Granger Shirt," a color lithograph published in 1874, illustrates several characteristics of the Grange movement. Farmers understood that ...
A 30-horse-drawn combined harvester and thresher.
A 30-horse-drawn combined harvester and thresher in use near Moro, Oregon, ca. 1903. As machines grew larger, they required more horsepower to ...
A grain mill at South Vallejo, California.
A grain mill at South Vallejo, California, about 1885. Vast increases in the production of grain, the use of railroads to bring that grain to ...
A hog line in a meat packing plant in Chicago.
A hog line in a meat packing plant in Chicago. Swift introduced more efficient techniques into his packing houses, reducing the skills needed, by ...
A homestead family posed before its sod house.
A homestead family posed before its sod house and windmill near Coburg, Nebraska, 1887. Despite the hardships, many families did survive. They ...
A homesteader's cabin on the Yampa Bench.
A homesteader's cabin on the Yampa Bench, in the Dinosaur National Monument, Colorado. For the farming frontier, the quick wealth of the ranching ...
A homesteading family with covered wagon.
A homesteading family with its covered wagon in the Loup Valley of Nebraska, in 1886. By the 1880s, wagons

such as these were needed only for the ...

A local Grange meeting in Edwardsville, Illinois.
A local Grange meeting in the Edwardsville, Illinois, schoolhouse, 1874. The Grange was founded by U.S. postal clerk Oliver H. Kelley ...

A mare with her colt behind a barbed wire fence.
A mare with her colt behind a barbed wire fence, 1908. Homesteaders in cattle frontier areas sometimes came into direct conflict with ranchers, ...

A market in San Francisco's Chinatown.
A market in San Francisco's Chinatown Looked down upon by Americans of European descent as undesirable, excluded from schools and other ...

A Missouri Railroad Company land advertisement.
A Burlington, Missouri, Railroad Company land advertisement, ca. 1868. The railroads also helped distribute land to farmers, promising emigrants ...

A North Dakota farmer gets his morning mail.
A North Dakota farmer gets his morning mail. In the 1890s, rural communities had petitioned Congress to extend the mail service, and in 1896 the ...

A recreation of the first mechanical reaper.
A recreation of the first mechanical reaper, invented by Cyrus Hall McCormick at Steele's Tavern, Virginia, July 1831. The straight long-knife ...

A threshing crew at dinner.
A threshing crew at dinner. Threshing crews moved from farm to farm and from area to area throughout the fall, and while they were working on a ...

A Union veteran's land certificate.
A Union veteran's land certificate, issued by the Department of the Interior and the Bureau of Pensions, entitled the bearer to 160 acres. ...

Ad for opening transcontinental RR, May 10, 1869.
A Union Pacific Railroad advertisement for the grand opening of the first transcontinental railroad, May 10, 1869. The railroad barons' race to ...

African-American cowboys.
Many of the men who found employment working with the western herds on the cattle frontier were former slaves who sought economic independence by ...

An anti-Chinese riot in Denver, October 1880.
An anti-Chinese riot in Denver, October 1880. That sentiment was not limited to California, but spread into the mining districts where Chinese ...

An Indian council, 1868.
An Indian council, 1868. The artist who painted this scene, Seth Eastman, was a graduate of the U.S. Military Academy at West Point. Stationed at ...

Anaconda, Colorado, in 1899.
Anaconda, Colorado, in 1899. Gold and silver were not the only valuable metals discovered and exploited in the mining frontier. While searching ...

C.P. & U.P. join, Promontory Point, Utah.
The ceremony at the joining of the Central Pacific (from the west) and the Union Pacific (from the east) railroad lines at Promontory Point, ...

Cartoon lampooning racism.
"The Poor Barbarians Can't Understand Our Civilized Republican Form of Government." The Chinese exclusion movement coincided with the end of ...

Cartoon, "The Senatorial Roundhouse."
Cartoon, "The Senatorial Roundhouse." What ultimately destroyed Native American control of the Great Plains was the completion of the railroads, ...

Cattle on the trail in the Matador Range, Texas.
A herd of cattle on the trail in the Matador Range, Texas. The outer edges of the railroad-opened territory west of the Mississippi may have been ...

Cedar Street in Abilene, Kansas, around 1900.
Cedar Street in Abilene, Kansas, around 1900. Within a short time railhead boom towns like Abilene took on the amenities of civilization as the ...

Charles Crocker (1822-1888).
Charles Crocker (1822-1888) took up gold mining in California in 1850, opened a Sacramento store in 1852, and within two years was one of the ...

Chief Red Cloud of the fierce Oglala band.
Chief Red Cloud of the Oglala band, one of the fiercest of the Sioux tribes. After the discovery of gold in the hills of Wyoming, Red Cloud led ...

Chinese immigrants at the SF custom house, 1877.
Chinese immigrants at the San Francisco custom house, 1877. Large numbers of Chinese immigrants entered the United States through California ...

Chuck wagon in roundup in Dakota Territory, 1887.
Cowboys posed by the chuck wagon in a roundup at Belle Fouche, Sturgis, Dakota Territory, 1887. The romantic myth of the cowboy portrayed him as ...

Clearing a field of grasshoppers in 1875.
Clearing a field of grasshoppers in 1875. The environmental problems of raising a crop in a hostile environment also plagued western farmers. ...

Collis Potter Huntington (1821-1900).
Collis Potter Huntington (1821-1900) joined Leland Stanford, Charles Crocker and Mark Hopkins in financing the Central Pacific railroad. In 1890 ...
Construction of Secret Town trestle on C.P. RR.
Construction of the Secret Town trestle on the Central Pacific Railroad. The railroads transformed American life in other ways. To build the ...
Cornelius Vanderbilt (1794-1877).
Cornelius Vanderbilt (1794-1877). Railroad building was not confined to the Far West in the years after the Civil War, although the completion of ...
Cowboys at a line camp.
Cowboys at a line camp, where they lived when they were out working on the ranch. Although this photograph was taken in 1908, the use of the ...
Cowboys in a Texas bar, 1908.
Cowboys in a Texas bar, ...
Cyrus McCormick (1809-1884),
Cyrus Hall McCormick (1809-1884), the inventor of the first American mechanical reaper. The second great plains frontier was the farming ...
Denis Kearney (1847-1907).
Denis Kearney (1847-1907), the self-educated Irish immigrant owner of a wagon company, became the head of the anti-Chinese Workingmen's Party of ...
Encampment of Dakota Indians at Ft. Laramie.
Encampment of Dakota Indians at Ft. Laramie. The name by which the Sioux called themselves was Dakota. Fort Laramie had been a fur company ...
Execution of 38 Sioux, Mankato, Minnesota, 1862.
The execution of 38 Sioux Indians at Mankato, Minnesota, on December 25, 1862. Late in the summer of that year, the easternmost Sioux, the ...
Faro game in Orient Saloon at Bisbee, Arizona.
A faro game in full blast in the Orient Saloon at Bisbee, Arizona. The mining frontier, which attracted men, and some women, eager to find great ...
Fort Davis, Texas, a San Antonio-El Paso outpost.
Fort Davis, in West Texas, guarded emigrants and stagecoaches along the San Antonio-El Paso Road from 1854 to 1891. It is regarded as one of the ...
Fort Yuma in California in 1864.
Fort Yuma in California, seen here in an 1864 drawing, guarded the Gila Trail crossing of the Colorado River from Arizona against hostile Apache ...
Frontiersman "Kit" Carson (1809-1868).
Indian fighter and agent Christopher "Kit" Carson (1809-1868). A frontiersman who guided expeditions to California, Carson spent the last years ...
Gustavus Franklin Swift (1843-1903).
Gustavus Franklin Swift (1843-1903) revolutionized the distribution of beef with his grasp of the usefulness of the invention of refrigerated ...
Hon. William H. Hutch (1833-1896).
Hon. William H. Hatch (1833-1896). Pressure on Congressional representatives from Granger states also led to the adoption of some federal laws to ...
Hurdy Gurdy House, a saloon, Virginia, Montana.
The Hurdy Gurdy House, a saloon in Virginia, Montana, in 1865, illustrated the sometimes rapid development of a mining community from frontier ...
Hydraulic mining at Wardner, Idaho.
Hydraulic mining at Wardner, Idaho. The third distinct frontier in the West was the mining frontier. As Indians were moved out of the frontier ...
Interior of an original Rock Island dining cars.
The interior of one of the original Rock Island Railroad dining cars. The Rock Island train, "The Orient," which operated between Chicago and ...
Jesse James (1847-1882).
Jesse Woodson James (1847-1882), in a photograph taken just before his death at age 35, after being gunned down by a member of his own gang. The ...
Judge Roy Bean's court.
Judge Roy Bean (1825-1903), known as the "hangin' judge" and "the law west of the Pecos," operated his court here in Langtry, Texas, in 1900. ...
Landing the Atlantic telegraph cable, July 1866.
Landing the Atlantic telegraph cable at Valentia, Ireland, July 1866. The period after the Civil War was marked by an enormous technological and ...
Leland Stanford (1824-1893).
Great fortunes were made in the railroad business. Leland Stanford (1824-1893), a former governor of California who had kept the state in the ...
Loading Texas cattle on the Kansas Pacific RR.
Loading Texas cattle on the Kansas Pacific Railroad at Abilene, Kansas. The cattle frontier in the 1870s flourished because the railroads made it ...
Map, expansion of railroads & land grants.
A map showing the expansion of the railroads and the use of federal land grants, 1860-1900. Within 25 years

of the first link-up at Promontory ...

Map, railroad time zones, established in 1883.
A map of the railroad time zones, established in 1883. The rapid increase in rail mileage, and the consolidation of railroad ownership into fewer ...

Map, the United States in 1865.
A map of the United States in ...

Men at work in the Terra gold stamp mill.
Men at work in the Terra gold stamp mill, one of the Homestake mills at Terraville, Dakota. At this stamp mill, the machines ground gold-bearing ...

Montezuma silver smelting works in Nevada.
The Montezuma silver smelting works at Orena, Nevada, photographed by Timothy O'Sullivan around 1868. The Comstock silver lode was discovered in ...

Omaha, eastern terminus of U.P. Railroad, 1879.
Omaha, Nebraska, the eastern terminus of the Union Pacific Railroad, in 1879. The completion of the first transcontinental line through Omaha ...

Plowing with a steam tractor in South Dakota.
Plowing with a steam tractor in South Dakota, n.d. In 1877, James Oliver of Indiana (1823-1908) invented a stronger smooth-surfaced plow blade, ...

Powell party beginning Grand Canyon tour, 1871.
The John Wesley Powell party on the Green River in Utah, 1871, at the beginning of their second voyage through the Grand Canyon. Powell ...

Ruins of Fort Union Trading Post, North Dakota.
The ruins of the Fort Union Trading Post, near Williston, North Dakota, photographed in 1979. The trading post that stood here was the principal ...

Samuel B. Reed, in charge construction UP RR.
Samuel B. Reed, superintendent and engineer in charge of the construction of the Union Pacific Railroad from Omaha to Promontory Point, Utah, ...

Scene, NYC as telegrams are first sent to Europe.
The scene in the offices of the American Telegraph Company in New York City, when it became possible to send telegrams to Europe for the first ...

Signing the treaty for purchase of Alaska, 1867.
Signing the treaty for the purchase of Alaska, 1867. Secretary of State William Henry Seward of New York, seated at the left of the globe, had an ...

The Homestake mines and mills, Lead City, Dakota.
The Homestake mines and mills at Lead City, Dakota Territory, 1899. Despite the name, this was one of the richest gold mines of the late 19th ...

The ruins of Ft. Bowie in Arizona.
A 1974 aerial photograph of the ruins of Ft. Bowie in Arizona. Established in 1862 by California volunteers in the Apache Pass at the north end ...

The Union Stockyards, Chicago, in 1878.
The Union Stockyards, Chicago, in 1878. Cattle shipped eastward by rail from the Plains were held in stockyard pens and fed and watered for ...

This first jail in Montana, at Bannock.
This first jail in Montana, at Bannock, was built in ...

Threshing in California using a steam engine.
Threshing in California, 1883, using a steam engine as a power source. The adaptation of steam power to threshing, the process of removing the ...

U.P. Railroad station, Sherman, Wyoming Territory.
The Union Pacific Railroad station at Sherman, Wyoming Territory. In addition to granting extensive lands along the railroad right of way, the ...

U.S. Geological Survey, Red Buttes, Wyoming, 1870.
A U.S. Geological Survey team taking a break for lunch at Red Buttes, Wyoming, August 24, 1870. The leader of this party, Ferdinand V. Hayden, is ...

Wheat harvesting in Dakota Territory, 1877.
Wheat harvesting in Dakota Territory, 1877. The large grain farms of the plains required more efficient methods of harvesting, and one of the ...

Workmen building the Central Pacific Railroad.
Workmen building the Central Pacific Railroad. Irish and Chinese men provided most of the labor in laying the rails that linked the Atlantic and ...

Section G: The Progressive Era and the First World War, 1901-1920

Video Overview: Progressive Era and WWI.
A brief video Overview of the Progressive Era and the First World War, from 1901 to 1920. Transcript: In the first two decades of the twentieth ...

Progressive Era Politics and Diplomacy

Titanic struck an iceberg and sank.
In April, 1912 the British steamship Titanic struck an iceberg and sank, with the loss of 1500 lives, a number of them Americans. A few of ...

"Cuba's Opportunity," 1902.
" Cuba's Opportunity," 1902. When the Spanish-American War ended, the Teller Amendment had prevented

Americans from annexing Cuba, but the Platt ...

1900 Presidential campaign, victory for McKinley.

The presidential campaign of 1900 was an easy victory for William McKinley (1843-1901). The successful prosecution of the Spanish-American War ...

A cartoon portraying William Jennings Bryan .

A cartoon portraying William Jennings Bryan as an ally of the German Kaiser Wilhelm. Bryan, Wilson's secretary of state, and a long-time ...

A different union strategy from that of Lewis.

The mining struggles farther west inspired a different union strategy from that pursued by Lewis. Angered at the limited gains won by the A. F. ...

A map showing the location of the Canal Zone.

A map showing the location of the Canal Zone. To secure the U.S. control of the Caribbean, and to give readier access to trade with China and ...

Alice Roosevelt (1884-1980).

Alice Roosevelt (1884-1980), photographed in 1902 by Frances Benjamin Johnston. The young Roosevelt family brought new life to the White House ...

Anti-German cartoon.

Many progressive women reformers, including Jane Addams of Chicago's Hull House (see F 139), opposed any American participation in wartime trade, ...

Archduke Ferdinand assassination, June 1914.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Archduke Ferdinand assassination, June ...

Cartoon urging neutrality.

Even after the German invasion of neutral Belgium to strike at France, and the use of submarines to challenge Allied shipping, most Americans ...

Coal miners at work in a mine, 1906.

Coal miners at work in a mine, 1906. Roosevelt's support did not immediately provide improved conditions in the mines. But progressive concerns ...

Coal strike representatives meets with Roosevelt.

Coal strike representatives meeting with Roosevelt. He made a symbolically important shift in federal policy in response to the anthracite coal ...

Early in World War I.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Early in World War I, troops march and cavalry charges; then, the brutal efficiency of a new kind ...

Elizabeth Gurley Flynn, labor's "Joan of Arc."

Elizabeth Gurley Flynn (1890-1964), labor's "Joan of Arc," joined the IWW as a teenager, and as a fiery radical orator helped to carry the ...

German submarine that sank the Lusitania .

The German U-20 submarine that sank the Lusitania , beached on the Danish coast after an internal explosion. Submarines were vulnerable craft, ...

German-language war news report by American paper.

While the majority of Americans, including Wilson, were more sympathetic to the Allies than to the Central Powers, there were exceptions. Large ...

Jim Thorpe won two Olympic events for U.S.

Jim Thorpe (1888-1953) won two Olympic events, the pentathlon and the decathlon, for the U.S. in 1912 during Taft's presidency. Part Indian, ...

John L. Lewis (1880-1969).

John L. Lewis (1880-1969) was a young miner when Mitchell and the United Mine Workers challenged Baer and won Roosevelt's backing. By 1920, Lewis ...

Leon Czolgosz (1873-1901), McKinley's assassin.

Leon Czolgosz (1873-1901), who assassinated McKinley, was a disappointed son of eastern European immigrants; he had been converted to ...

Lt. Eugene Ely taking off in Golden Flyer .

Lt. Eugene Ely, U.S.N., taking off in a Curtiss Golden Flyer from the U.S.S. Pennsylvania in San Francisco Bay in January of 1911. Ely's ...

Map showing alliances & WWI boundaries in Europe.

A map showing the alliances and WWI boundaries in Europe. Within weeks, the web of defensive secret alliances in Europe pitted the Allied Powers ...

Map: electoral vote, 1912 election.

A map showing the electoral vote in the election of 1912. Theodore Roosevelt ran on a platform of a "New Nationalism," calling for more ...

McKinley's assassination.

Instead of isolating Roosevelt from power, his election as vice president elevated him to the presidency when President William McKinley was ...

Miraflores Lock, Panama Canal, under construction.

The Miraflores Lock of the Panama Canal under construction in January 1913. The Canal required 42 miles of channel construction, with six locks ...

Pancho Villa in 1912.

Pancho Villa in 1912. One of the early crises that Wilson faced as president was the outbreak of revolution in Mexico in 1910. Wilson intended to ...

Progressive reforms of President Taft.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A film clip on the progressive reforms of President William Howard ...

Roosevelt & conservationist John Muir (1838-1914).
Theodore Roosevelt and conservationist John Muir (1838-1914) at Glacier Point, Yosemite, around 1909. Muir was a founder of the Sierra Club, and ...

Roosevelt and Booker T. Washington at White House.
One of Theodore Roosevelt's first controversial actions as president was to invite African-American leader Booker T. Washington (see F 207) to ...

Roosevelt arrives in Vicksburg on a steamboat.
A crowd hurries along the levee to greet President Theodore Roosevelt on his arrival in Vicksburg, Mississippi, on the steamboat Belle of the ...

Sagamore Hill, in Oyster Bay, Long Island.
Sagamore Hill, in Oyster Bay, Long Island, was Roosevelt's home from 1885 until his death, and his "Summer White House" away from Washington ...

Taft throws out the first baseball of the season.
Personally unambitious, Taft did not like the limelight of the presidency, and his four years in office found him at odds with both the ...

Taft's 1908 opponent was William Jennings Bryan.
Taft's opponent in the election of 1908 was the perennial Democratic candidate, William Jennings Bryan. Although this Clifford Berryman political ...

The "Great White Fleet" in Australia.
The "Great White Fleet" in Australia, showing the guns of the U.S.S. Wisconsin as she sailed into Sidney Harbor in 1908. To demonstrate ...

The Alaska Colliery in Mt. Carmel, Pennsylvania.
The Alaska Colliery in Mt. Carmel, Pennsylvania, photographed in 1905. The resolution of the 1902 conflict - a 10% wage increase, a nine-hour ...

The International Workers of the World.
The International Workers of the World, pictured here in a May 1, 1914 demonstration in New York City, opposed the war as total pacifists, ...

The Japanese arrive in Portsmouth, New Hampshire.
The Japanese arrive in Portsmouth, New Hampshire, in August 1905 to sign the treaty ending the Russo-Japanese war of 1904-05. American possession ...

The sinking of the Lusitania , May 1915.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The sinking of the Lusitania, May ...

Theodore Roosevelt (1858-1919) .
Theodore Roosevelt (1858-1919) was 42 years old when McKinley's assassination made him the 26th and youngest president of the U.S. The son of an ...

Theodore Roosevelt in Yosemite, 1903.
Theodore Roosevelt and his party at Inspiration Point in Yosemite Valley, California, 1903. Roosevelt retained a love of the scenic beauty of the ...

Theodore Roosevelt: Rough Riders, Inauguration.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Theodore Roosevelt and the Rough Riders returning home; his inaugural parade; his Republican ...

Torpedoing of the Lusitania .
A contemporary artist's rendition of the torpedoing of the Lusitania . American neutrality was put to the test in May 1915, when the German ...

U.S. Army trucks ready to leave Columbus, NM.
U.S. Army trucks ready to leave Columbus, New Mexico, against Villa, March 1916. Faced with the need for American troops in Europe, Wilson ...

U.S. Marines in Haiti.
U.S. Marines in Haiti. When World War I broke out, Wilson sought to safeguard the western hemisphere from intervention from the warring powers, ...

U.S. Navy "bluejackets" fire on snipers.
U.S. Navy "bluejackets" fire on snipers in Vera Cruz. In April 1914, trying to destabilize Huerta's regime, Wilson sent a U.S. fleet into the ...

Under Taft, labor worked for better wages.
During Taft's administration, labor continued to strike for better wages and working conditions. Here, New York police arrest a striker during a ...

Villa raiders captured by U.S. troops.
Villa raiders captured by U.S. troops. As the Mexican revolution continued, Villa launched a campaign from his stronghold in the north of Mexico ...

William Howard Taft (1857-1930).
William Howard Taft (1857-1930). When Roosevelt ran for election in his own right in 1904 he had promised not to seek another term. His ...

Woodrow Wilson (1856-1924).
Woodrow Wilson (1856-1924). The disillusionment of Progressives with Taft split the Republican party, with the conservatives nominating Taft for ...

Workers in a Chicago meat packing plant in 1905.
Workers in a Chicago meat packing plant in 1905. When the revelations of unsanitary conditions in the meat packing industry in Upton Sinclair's ...

Workers in Panama excavate Culebra Cut in 1907.
Workers in Panama using heavy equipment to excavate the Culebra Cut in 1907. The Panama Canal was a costly undertaking which applied the advances ...

Symbols of the Twentieth Century

A 1912 Packard 3-ton van in Chicago.
A 1912 Packard 3-ton van in Chicago. Service vehicles powered by internal combustion gasoline engines rapidly displaced horse-drawn vehicles for ...
A 1913 Mack truck.
A 1913 Mack truck. The higher speeds and greater load capacity of heavy-duty trucks like this one transformed the moving of raw materials and ...
A glider piloted by Wilbur Wright at Kitty Hawk.
The soaring flight of a glider piloted by Wilbur Wright (1867-1912) at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina, in October, 1902, an experiment that helped ...
An assembly line.
Before Ford, in 1904, Ransom E. Olds (1864-1950) had used a limited type of assembly-line system to produce several thousand automobiles in one ...
Charlie Chaplin (1889-1977).
Sir Charles Spencer Chaplin (1889-1977), better known as Charlie Chaplin and shown here with Jackie Coogan, came to the U.S. from England in ...
Edison with a film projector.
Like the automobile, motion pictures had their origins in the 1890s, but did not reach their heyday until after 1900. Their inventor, Thomas A. ...
Electric kitchen, Westinghouse Electric Corp.1907.
Another approach to new technology was this electric kitchen, demonstrated by the Westinghouse Electric Corporation in ...
First powered flight of heavier than air machine.
The promise of the glider's successful flights was fulfilled on December 17, 1903, with the first powered flight of a heavier than air machine, ...
Glenn H. Curtiss (1878-1930).
Glenn H. Curtiss (1878-1930) was himself an experimenter with new designs for aircraft. His Golden Flyer , shown here above the beach at ...
Harriet Quimby, a pioneer woman pilot.
Harriet Quimby, a pioneer woman pilot, in the French-made Bleriot monoplane in which she became the first woman to fly across the English Channel ...
Henry Ford (1863-1947).
The mass production of automobiles, putting them within reach of Americans of even modest means, transformed the 20th century into the "age of ...
Map, the United States in 1901.
A map of the United States in ...
Steamboats.
Although railroads and, increasingly, automobiles and trucks were becoming the primary means of transport, the steamboats continued to ply the ...
The first practical gasoline automobile.
Although the first practical gasoline automobile in the United States was this "horseless carriage" built by Charles and Frank Duryea in 1893, ...
The Langley "aerodrome."
The Wright brothers were not the only men experimenting with powered flight. This Langley flying machine, or "aerodrome" was built in 1902 by ...
The Wright 1903 airplane engine.
The Wright 1903 airplane engine. The Wrights were unable to find a light-weight engine which would produce the necessary power, so they built ...
World's first motion picture studio.
The world's first motion picture studio, the "Black Maria," constructed by Thomas A. Edison in 1893 in West Orange, New Jersey, was built on ...
Wright brothers demonstrate military aircraft.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The Wright brothers demonstrating a military version of their aircraft at Ft. Myer, Virginia, ...

The Progressive Era

McClure's Magazine .
Beginning in 1902, McClure's Magazine , under the leadership of its owner Samuel S. McClure, was the most prominent of the Progressive ...
" Steerage Passengers Arriving at New York, 1907."
" Steerage Passengers Arriving at New York, 1907," a photograph by Alfred Stieglitz. Though Stieglitz supported the modernist painters, his own ...
"4-year-old Mary,.shucks oysters."
Lewis Hine wrote, "4-year-old Mary, who shucks oysters (two pots a day). Tends the baby when not working. The boss said Mary will work as steady ...
"Bunk" Johnson & his Original Superior Orchestra.
African Americans were important originators of new directions in the evolution of American culture in the

early 20th century, particularly in ...

"Hell Hole," John Sloan, 1917.

"Hell Hole," John Sloan, 1917. Sloan's realism stands in contrast to abstract works of artists like Georgia O'Keefe, whose "Light Coming on the ...

A band in a "Negro Fair" in Texas.

Segregation affected every aspect of African-American life in the South. This band is playing in the parade of the separate "Negro Fair" at ...

A city park in Philadelphia, 1923

A city park in Philadelphia as it appeared in 1923. Part of the reform of cities in the Progressive era was advocacy of city planning, including ...

A hurricane in Galveston, Texas.

One of the first cities to experiment with new forms of city government was Galveston, Texas. In 1900, a hurricane had swept a tidal wave before ...

A lynching in Florida, 1928.

African Americans faced increasing violence, particularly in the South. Lynchings such as this one (in Florida, 1928) were made possible in part ...

A Pacific Electric interurban railway car.

A Pacific Electric interurban railway car in South Pasadena, California, around 1910. Transportation between U.S. cities was made easier by ...

A Rockefeller Sanitary Commission unit.

A Rockefeller Sanitary Commission unit. Some of the most lasting reforms of the Progressive movement were in the area of improved health care. ...

A sharecropper plows his field in 1901.

At the beginning of the 20th century, more than three-fourths of the African Americans still lived in rural areas of the South. This sharecropper ...

A woman typist in 1906.

A woman typist in 1906. Although Margaret Sanger believed constant pregnancy was a primary cause of female poverty and dependency, other ...

A woman worker in a New England cigar box factory.

A woman worker in a New England cigar box factory. Progressives became concerned that the long hours and poor wages earned by women factory ...

A young textile mill worker.

A young textile mill worker, probably in a New Hampshire mill, n.d. Photo by Lewis ...

A YWCA group in Washington, D.C.

A YWCA group in Washington, D.C. For women office workers, the Young Women's Christian Association often became a source for organization and ...

African-American couple in their Virginia home.

An African-American couple photographed in their Virginia home in 1900. The newspapers on the walls were pasted there to serve as ...

Alice Paul I (1885-1977).

Alice Paul (1885-1977), the organizer of the March 1913 parade, advocated a more militant approach to the campaign for votes for women than did ...

An immigrant family doing piecework.

An immigrant family doing piecework in a dirty, poorly lighted New York City tenement. Hine wrote that "Pauline 6 years old, works after school. ...

Battling ruptured gas line fires, San Francisco.

Soldiers at the Presidio attempted to use dynamite to blast firelines to prevent the spread of fires set by toppled stoves and spread by ruptured ...

Carrie Nation (1848-1911), on shipboard.

Carrie Nation (1848-1911) photographed on shipboard. A broad variety of reform movements in the Progressive era sought to make life better for ...

Cartoon, economic influence of Standard Oil.

This political cartoon, inspired by Ida Tarbell's exposé of the insidious extent of the political and economic influence of Standard Oil, shows ...

Coal mine "breaker boys," Ewen Breaker coal mine.

Coal mine "breaker boys" posed at the Ewen Breaker coal mine at South Pittston, Pennsylvania, January 1911. Photo by Lewis ...

Coffins in aftermath of Triangle Shirtwaist fire.

146 people, mostly women, died in the Triangle Shirtwaist fire. Labor organizer Rose Schneiderman, then 29 years old, told the city's leaders ...

Derricks in oil field near Tuft, in California.

Derricks in an oil field near Tuft, in Southern California. The advent of the gasoline-powered automobile, creating an increasing demand for oil, ...

Emma Goldman (1869-1940).

Emma Goldman (1869-1940). Although many of the women who sought protection for women workers were middle-class reformers, working women, also, ...

Entire immigrant families worked in fields.

Entire immigrant or migrant families worked in fields, harvesting perishable fruits and vegetables, often rising at four a.m. Hine's caption for ...

Finley Peter Dunne (1867-1936).

Not all writers of the Progressive era used realism to point the need for reform. The humorist Finley Peter Dunne (1867-1936), through his ...

Frank Norris (1870-1912).

Frank Norris (1870-1912) attacked the power of big business in America with his muckraking novels, The Octopus (1901) and The Pit (1903). ...

George Benjamin Luks (1867-1933).

George Benjamin Luks (1867-1933), like other realist painters, disdained artistic preoccupation with technique in favor of a passionate ...

George Wesley Bellows (1882-1925), self-portrait.

The visual arts also were transformed by the realism of the Progressive era. George Wesley Bellows (1882-1925), the subject of this ...

Governor Peter Norbeck (1870-1936) of SD.

Governor Peter Norbeck (1870-1936) of South Dakota signs his state's "bone dry law," February 21, 1917. In the 19th century opposition to alcohol ...

Harvard legal scholar Roscoe Pound (1870-1964).

Harvard legal scholar Roscoe Pound (1870-1964) was one of several thinkers who began to challenge a legal tradition that regarded the ...

Hiram W. Johnson (1866-1945).

The Progressive governor of California, Hiram W. Johnson (1866-1945), a San Francisco lawyer, was elected in 1910 on the promise of ending the ...

Ida M. Tarbell (1857-1944).

Ida M. Tarbell (1857-1944) became one of the leading "Muckrakers," challenging monopoly practices in American industry through a new Progressive ...

James Vardaman (1861-1930).

Progressive reform at the state level had a mixed record in the South. James K. Vardaman was elected governor (1903-1907) and later senator from ...

John Dewey (1859-1952).

John Dewey (1859-1952), an important American philosopher and educator, incorporated Progressive optimism into the transformation of American ...

Ladies' Tailors Union strikers, NYC, 1910.

Striking garment workers in New York City in 1910. Outrage over the Triangle fire also helped promote organizing efforts. Perhaps the most ...

Leo Frank.

Leo Frank. The racism that led to the lynchings had another dimension in anti-Semitism. The Leo Frank case illustrated the violence that underlay ...

Lillian D. Wald (1867-1940).

Like many women active in the Progressive era, Lillian D. Wald (1867-1940) took part in a number of social reform efforts. As a public health ...

Lincoln Steffens (1866-1966) .

Lincoln Steffens (1866-1966) was sent by McClure's to investigate corruption in politics in American cities; his articles, collected together ...

Louis Armstrong, with Marable's Capital Revue.

Louis Armstrong (1900-1971), shown here on the riverboat S.S. Capital in 1919 with Marable's Capital Revue, helped make the improvizational ...

Louis D. Brandeis (1856-1941) .

Louis D. Brandeis (1856-1941) carried the reasoning of Pound and Holmes one step further, arguing that judges must base their decisions on ...

March 3, 1913 suffragists parade, Washington, DC.

This March 3, 1913 parade of suffragists, held in Washington the day before the inauguration of Woodrow Wilson, created a national shock when ...

Margaret (Higgins) Sanger (1883-1966).

Margaret (Higgins) Sanger (1883-1966), whose mother bore eleven children, and who herself struggled with tuberculosis, bore three children within ...

Mexican-Americans on the Texas border.

African Americans were not the only minority to be ignored by the reformers of the Progressive movement. These rural Mexican-Americans, ...

Militia on State House grounds for race riot.

Militia camped on the State House grounds of Illinois to put down the race riot in Springfield, Illinois, in 1908 illustrates that violence ...

Most urban reform demanded was of city police.

An urban reform demanded most frequently by city dwellers was the reform and professionalization of city police forces. Here, one of New York ...

Mrs. Carrie Chapman Catt (1859-1947).

Mrs. Carrie Chapman Catt (1859-1947), a respected educator and long-time suffrage leader, became the president of the NAWSA in 1915 and led it ...

New San Francisco City Hall destroyed in 1906.

A natural disaster also ushered in an era of Progressive reform of city government in San Francisco. On April 18, 1906, earthquake shocks along ...

Not all artists of Progressive era were realists.

Not all artists of the Progressive era were realists. A second school of distinctly American art, the Modernists,

arose around the "291" gallery ...

Opponents of womens suffrage also organized.
Opponents of suffrage for women also organized nationally. This headquarters of the National Association Opposed to Woman Suffrage was in ...

Patient in outdoor tuberculosis camp, Ottawa, IL.
A patient in an outdoor tuberculosis camp in Ottawa, Illinois. Another endemic disease to which health reformers turned their attention was ...

Paul Laurence Dunbar (1872-1906).
Paul Laurence Dunbar (1872-1906). African-American writers participated in the growth of indigenous American literature in the early 20th ...

Postal Telegraph messengers in Indianapolis 1908.
Postal Telegraph messengers in Indianapolis, Indiana, August 1908. Reformers were concerned that newsboys and messenger boys were often employed ...

Progressive historian Charles A. Beard.
Progressive historian Charles A. Beard (1874-1948) helped to provide an intellectual climate of support for Pound, Holmes, and Brandeis. In 1913 ...

Progressive leader Father John A. Ryan.
The Catholic church, too, produced important Progressive leaders such as Father John A. Ryan, who sought to prevent the exploitation of working ...

Representative Jeanette Rankin (1880-1973).
Jeanette Rankin (1880-1973), who in 1916 was the first woman to be elected to Congress, introduced the 19th Amendment on the floor of the House ...

Robert La Follette at his desk in 1906.
The best known Progressive reformer at the state level was Robert Marion La Follette (1855-1925) of Wisconsin, shown here at his desk in 1906. ...

Rural one-room sod school house, Decatur, Kansas.
Schoolhouses such as this Decatur, Kansas, rural one-room sod school were replaced by consolidated school districts and graded classes as John ...

Search for bodies after Triangle Shirtwaist Fire.
Despite attempts at Progressive legislation in behalf of working women, working conditions for many remained grim. In March 1911 a fire broke out ...

Teenage boy worked in factory for two years.
This 15-year-old Millville, New Jersey, boy had worked in a glass factory for two years, including some night work. November 1909 photo by Lewis ...

The Galveston waterfront.
The Galveston waterfront. When Galveston's elected city government was unable to deal effectively with the disaster, the state legislature ...

The Hogg-Swayne Tract in the Spindletop Oil field.
The Hogg-Swayne Tract in the Spindletop Oil field near Beaumont, Texas in 1903. James S. Hogg (1851-1906) was a former governor of Texas. The ...

The Supreme Court in 1904.
The Supreme Court in 1904, from left to right, front: Justices Henry B. Brown, Oliver Wendell Holmes, John M. Harlan, Rufus W. Peckham, Chief ...

Theodore Dreiser (1871-1945).
Theodore Dreiser (1871-1945). Sinclair's descriptions of the meat packing industry were part of a larger movement in American literature toward ...

Thomas Loftin Johnson (1854-1911).
Thomas Loftin Johnson (1854-1911), a Progressive mayor of Cleveland, Ohio, from 1901 to 1909, rejected the notion that ordinary working-class ...

Upton Sinclair (1878-1968), an ardent Socialist.
Upton Sinclair (1878-1968), an ardent Socialist, used fiction to work for industrial reform. His novel The Jungle (1906) argued passionately ...

W.E.B. Du Bois (1868-1963).
William Edward Burghardt Du Bois (1868-1963) openly broke with the public accommodationist stance of Booker T. Washington (see F 207) in 1903 ...

Walter Rauschenbusch (1861-1918).
Walter Rauschenbusch (1861-1918), a leader of the "social Gospel" movement, was one of the voices that challenged the ideas of "laissez-faire" ...

William Christopher Handy (1893-1958).
Ragtime and jazz were not the only kinds of music to originate in segregated African-American clubs and communities, and then spread to become ...

Woman's suffrage headquarters in Cleveland, Ohio.
A woman's suffrage headquarters in Cleveland, Ohio, during the referendum campaign of 1912 to determine whether women should have the right to ...

Women at first convention of Women's Trade Union.
A group of women at the first convention of the National Women's Trade Union League in Richmond, Virginia, in 1907. After the failure of the ...

Young cigarmakers in Englehardt & Company factory.
Young cigarmakers in the Englehardt & Company factory at Tampa, Florida, January 1909. Lewis Hine wrote, "Three boys looked under 14. Work was ...

World War I

"The Cornerstone.".
Industrial mobilization required the rationing of all essential raw materials for use in war industry. The fuel administration shut down ...

19th Amendment goes to states for ratification.
The 19th Amendment (see G 85) goes to the states for ratification on May 19, 1919, as Speaker of the House of Representatives Frederick H. ...

369th Infantry Regiment marches up Fifth Avenue.
The 369th Infantry Regiment marches up Fifth Avenue in New York, February 18, 1919, at the end of the ...

A "Second Liberty Loan" poster.
A "Second Liberty Loan" poster. The Wilson administration used a variety of strategies to fund the enormous cost of the war. In part it was ...

A private says goodbye to his family.
Saying goodbye to his family in 1917, Pvt. T. P. Loughlin of the 69th Regular Infantry prepares to leave for the Western ...

A U.S. Army influenza ward in France.
A U.S. Army influenza ward in France. The winter of 1917-1918 also saw the outbreak of a severe influenza epidemic. Many of the troops carried ...

A unit of the Women's Defense League.
A unit of the Women's Defense League drills in its camp at Washington, D.C. Although some in the women's suffrage movement like Alice Paul ...

A woman welder in 1918.
A woman welder in 1918. The beginning of war in Europe in 1914 abruptly cut off the U.S.'s supply of immigrant laborers, and the draft in 1917 ...

A World War I navy recruiting poster.
A World War I navy recruiting poster, drawn by Howard Chandler ...

Actor Douglas Fairbanks, Sr., addresses a crowd.
Hollywood actor Douglas Fairbanks, Sr., addresses a crowd at the sub-treasury building in New York City in April 1918, urging them to buy bonds ...

African-American women making mattress springs.
African-American women making mattress springs, n.d. African Americans had been moving from the rural South into the industrial North since the ...

Alexander Mitchell Palmer (1872-1936).
Alexander Mitchell Palmer (1872-1936), Wilson's attorney general, was convinced that Bolshevik supporters of the international Communist ...

An American Red Cross nurse in uniform.
An American Red Cross nurse in uniform. At first military officials refused to give women appointments in the army medical corps; nevertheless, ...

An Emergency Fleet Corporation poster.
An Emergency Fleet Corporation poster. To provide transport for the men of the American Expeditionary Force, and of their supplies and those ...

British troops on front line, Somme area 1916.
By the time the American troops arrived in substantial numbers in the spring of 1918, British and French units had endured more than three years ...

Cavalry unit parades, preparartion for deployment.
Preparation for war involved training in both old and new methods of warfare. Here a cavalry unit parades in preparation for deployment to the ...

Crowd surrounds Wilson's automobile in Paris.
A crowd surrounds Wilson's automobile outside a church in Paris in January of 1919. Wilson mistakenly interpreted his welcome to mean that the ...

Crowds of people celebrate armistice.
As the news of the armistice reached the cities of America, thousands of people crowded into the streets in jubilant celebration. This scene on ...

Fourth plenary session of Paris Peace Conference.
The fourth plenary session of the Paris Peace Conference. The Treaty of Versailles, worked out in secret sessions in which Wilson was forced to ...

French children watch 26th U.S. Division pass.
French children watch as men of the 26th U.S. Division pass through the village of Soulosse on the way to the front. April 1918 Signal Corps ...

General John J. "Black Jack" Pershing.
General John J. "Black Jack" Pershing (1860-1949) was placed in command of the American Expeditionary Force. After graduating from West Point, ...

Henry Cabot Lodge (1850-1924).
Henry Cabot Lodge (1850-1924), a lawyer, historian, and Republican U.S. senator from Massachusetts. President Wilson did not entirely represent ...

Members of the Women's Radio Corps.
Members of the Women's Radio Corps, photographed in Washington in ...

Members, 369th U.S. Infantry Regiment going home.
Members of the 369th U.S. Infantry Regiment en route home. Just as women used their participation in the

war effort to fight for their rights, ...

Men of U.S. 33rd Division in front-line trench.
Men of the U.S. 33rd Division in a front-line trench in the Meuse valley, September 1918. Nearly 900,000 American troops joined with 135,000 ...

Mexican-American workers picking cantaloupes .
Mexican-American workers picking cantaloupes in the Imperial Valley of California. In the Southwest and West, the demand for farm laborers led to ...

New York City men wait to register for draft.
New York City men waiting their turns to register for the draft, 1917. Despite widespread fears that a draft would face opposition as it had in ...

Non-commissioned officers, 28th Keystone Division.
Non-commissioned officers of the 28th Keystone Division are being trained in the use of the bayonet by a British officer at Camp Hancock. So ...

Participants at Versailles, the "Council of Four."
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A brief film clip showing the participants at Versailles, the "Council of Four," and Congress' ...

President Wilson asks for a declaration of war.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): President Wilson asks for a declaration of war April 2, ...

Senator William Borah (1865-1940).
Senator William Borah (1865-1940), a Republican from Idaho, joined forces with Henry Cabot Lodge to oppose the League and the Treaty. Lodge ...

Sergeant Alvin York (1887-1964).
Sergeant Alvin York (1887-1964) poses on the hill where he captured 132 German soldiers on October 8, 1918. A Tennessean, York received praise ...

Soldiers celebrating mustering out at Fort Dix.
These soldiers celebrating their mustering out at Fort Dix, New Jersey, were only a few of the two million men returning to the work force in the ...

Soldiers docking at Hoboken, New Jersey.
While the peace negotiations and the debate over the treaty proceeded, the U.S. rapidly dismantled its war-making machinery. The army was ...

St. Mihiel and the Argonne offensive.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): U.S. troops and tanks in action at St. Mihiel and in the Argonne ...

The "Council of Four" of Paris Peace Conference.
The "Council of Four" of the Paris Peace Conference: right to left, David Lloyd George of England, Vittorio Orlando of Italy, Georges Clemenceau ...

The Boston police strike.
The most frightening of the strikes, in the eyes of many, was that of the Boston police. They walked out in 1919 over demands for higher pay in ...

The Curtiss JN 4-D "Jenny" biplane.
Airplanes were extensively used in military actions for the first time during WWI, and the U.S. preparation for this war included the manufacture ...

The deportation of IWW strikers, July 1917.
The deportation of IWW strikers, July 1917. War mobilization led union leaders like Samuel Gompers to seek a balance between the need for ...

The first day of the Meuse-Argonne offensive.
Tanks and U.S. soldiers in the first day of the Meuse-Argonne offensive, September 26, 1918. The development of tanks was one of the important ...

U.S. 27th Infantry Division parading in New York.
The U.S. 27th Infantry Division passing under the Arch of Triumph in New York City's Madison Square in March 1919. In the excitement of the ...

U.S. artillerymen celebrating the Armistice.
U.S. artillerymen celebrating the Armistice in France on November 11, 1918. The war ended abruptly on that day. The German high command had ...

U.S. motorized truck.
In marked contrast to the cavalry unit, this U.S. motorized truck unit moves through Neuville, France, on the western front in ...

U.S. troops embarked for France, 1917.
U. S. troops embarked for France, 1917. In the fall of that year, after the Bolshevik Revolution, Russia made a separate peace with Germany, ...

Volunteers in Brooklyn, NY, recruiting office.
Volunteers in a Brooklyn, New York, recruiting office in June 1917. When Wilson asked Congress to declare war, the country was not on a wartime ...

Wagons stuck in mud during St. Mihiel advance.
During the advance in the St. Mihiel salient, September 12-16, 1918, American mule-drawn ammunition wagons are stuck in the mud. In the summer ...

Wilson delivering his War Message.
Wilson delivering his War Message. The final break with Germany came in the wake of two incidents. The Germans announced early in 1917 that they ...

Wilson in Los Angeles, 1919.

Wilson in Los Angeles, 1919. Hoping to win support for the treaty by appealing directly to the people, Wilson set off on a cross-country speaking ...

Wilson in Paris.

U.S. President Woodrow Wilson and French President Raymond Poincaré greet crowds in a Paris street as they leave the railway station after ...

Wilson reads terms of Armistice to Congress, 1918.

Wilson reads the terms of the Armistice agreement to the Congress, November 11, ...

Women farmers plowing community war gardens, 1918.

Toledo, Ohio, women farmers plowing community war gardens in May 1918. To harvest the wartime crops, women were recruited into a "Women's Land ...

World War I airplanes.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): World War I ...

WWI poster urges children's help in agriculture.

A wartime poster urging school children to help in agriculture. The war brought many changes at home. To mobilize public opinion, in May of 1917 ...

Section H: The Twenties and the Great Depression, 1920-1940

Video Overview: 20s, Great Depression, 1920-1940.

A brief video Overview of the history of the Roaring Twenties and the Great Depression, from 1920 to 1940. Transcript: The two decades between ...

Franklin D. Roosevelt and the New Deal

"Old Reliable."

This Clifford Berryman 1938 cartoon titled "Old Reliable" broadly caricatured FDR's shift to Keynesian economics: "This is one rabbit that never ...

A biplane (silent).

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A biplane ...

A Douglas DC-3, commercial airliner.

A Douglas DC-3. Amelia Earhart's accomplishments helped to make commercial air travel seem safe for men and women alike, and promoted the growth ...

A farm wife using her washing machine.

A farm wife using her washing machine. The REA was instrumental in transforming the lives of farm families; bringing electricity to the ...

A marginal farm at Widtsoe, Utah.

A marginal farm at Widtsoe, Utah, photographed for the FSA in April 1936 by Dorothea ...

A National Recovery Administration (NRA) poster.

A National Recovery Administration (NRA) poster, urging Americans to stimulate the economy by making purchases. The NRA "Blue Eagle" symbol of ...

A Navajo hogan at Datil, New Mexico, 1940.

A Navajo hogan at Datil, New Mexico, 1940. Not all Indian tribes fully agreed with Collier's policies, which indeed sometimes were in conflict ...

A WPA tent theater in San Bernardino, California.

A WPA tent theater in San Bernardino, California, February 1937. The WPA sponsored programs in the arts that provided employment to out-of-work ...

African-American men with a load of furniture.

After banking recovery and industrial recovery, and some provision for direct and immediate relief of those without work and in danger of ...

Alfred M. Landon (1887-1987).

Alfred M. Landon (1887-1987), the Republican candidate who opposed FDR in ...

An AAA exhibit.

An AAA exhibit. The solution to the agriculture problem devised by Roosevelt and his advisors shared similar assumptions with those behind the ...

An arc welder reinforces concrete conduits.

An arc welder reinforces concrete conduits for the water system that Public Works Administration funds helped the city of San Francisco build ...

An etching by Edward Hopper.

An etching by Edward Hopper (1882-1967). An artist born in New York, Hopper portrayed an America in the 1930s of loneliness and alienation. The ...

An RCA 1929 floor model radio.

Millions of Americans tuned in their radios to hear FDR on radios like this one, an RCA 1929 floor model. The then new national broadcasting ...

Anti-prohibition activist

Miss Elizabeth Thompson, a member of "The Crusaders," a national organization formed to overthrow prohibition. Active, organized objection (and ...

Building sewage disposal tank in Yakima, WA.

Building a sewage disposal tank in Yakima, Washington. In 1935, with 10 million workers still unemployed, Roosevelt and Congress created the ...

Cartoon, FDR's 1937 Court-packing proposal.

A 1937 Clifford Berryman cartoon about FDR's Court-packing proposal. Although the New Deal created a number of successful programs, a ...

Cattleman's daughter drawing a pack train.

A western cattleman's daughter working on a drawing of a pack train. The Federal Arts Program encouraged the teaching of drawing to school ...

Child of an African-American tenant farmer.
In the rural South the problem was not drought but worn-out soil, and an economic system that kept sharecroppers and tenant farmers perennially ...

Crowd of depositors stands outside the Union Bank.
A crowd of depositors stands outside the Union Bank in New York in April 1933, waiting for it to open its doors. The largest and soundest of the ...

Drought refugees fled to other regions.
Drought refugees, often with little more than their car or truck and a few items of clothing and housewares, fled to other regions, where they ...

Eleanor Roosevelt (1884-1962).
Probably the most important of FDR's advisors was his wife, Anna Eleanor Roosevelt (1884-1962), photographed here in 1933. Shy and retiring as a ...

Eleanor Roosevelt supports FDR's shift to left.
Eleanor Roosevelt was an important supporter of FDR's shift to the left. She worked tirelessly to bring to his attention the plight of those who ...

Enrollees in an African-American CCC camp .
Enrollees in an African-American CCC camp at Cabin John, Maryland, learn woodworking and building techniques from their instructor. The enrollees ...

Father of a Farm Security Administration client.
The father of a Farm Security Administration client sitting on the front porch of his cabin in New Madrid County, Missouri. A second important ...

FDR as president.
FDR as president. The combination of attacks from men like Coughlin and Long with increasing hostility from the wealthy and the business ...

FDR signing New Deal legislation.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): FDR signing New Deal legislation on farm mortgages, Social Security, and pro-labor ...

FDR signs the Social Security Act.
President Franklin D. Roosevelt signing the Social Security Act into law on August 14, 1935. The new law, which was passed with strong support ...

FDR speaks to the nation in a "Fireside Chat."
FDR speaks to the nation in a "Fireside Chat." The banking crisis was the most serious one facing the new president. As lines of customers stood ...

FDR's "The only thing... fear itself..." speech.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): in FDR's inaugural address, we hear him say that "The only thing we have to fear is fear itself ...

Frances Perkins (1882-1965).
Frances Perkins (1882-1965), appointed by FDR as secretary of labor in 1933, was the first female cabinet member in the United States. A ...

Franklin Delano Roosevelt (1882-1945).
Franklin Delano Roosevelt (1882-1945) campaigning for the presidency in New Albany, Indiana, October 1932. Roosevelt had been the vice ...

Frederick Lewis Allen.
In 1933, Frederick Lewis Allen published a nostalgic yet critical history, Only Yesterday: An Informal History of the 1920s , which, while it ...

FSA migrant workers' camp at Farmersville, CA.
An FSA migrant workers' camp at Farmersville, California. It was not unionization, which was opposed effectively and sometimes brutally by ...

General Hugh S. Johnson (1882-1942).
General Hugh S. Johnson (1882-1942) had helped to mobilize industry during WWI, and it was to him that Roosevelt turned to mobilize industry ...

Generators in powerhouse at TVA's Pickwick Dam.
Generators in the powerhouse at TVA's Pickwick Dam in Tennessee. A far-reaching program passed by Congress during the Hundred Days was the ...

Glenn Martin China Clipper .
The Glenn Martin China Clipper flies over San Francisco's then uncompleted Golden Gate Bridge en route to Manila in 1936. The Clipper , a ...

Greta Garbo and John Barrymore.
Greta Garbo and John Barrymore. Much of the popular culture of the 1930s was designed to help Americans escape the dreariness of their daily ...

Harold LeClaire Ickes (1874-1952).
Harold LeClaire Ickes (1874-1952), a Republican with sympathetic ideas about conservation, became Roosevelt's secretary of the interior from 1933 ...

Harry L. Hopkins (1890-1946).
Harry L. Hopkins (1890-1946), a trusted friend, was chosen by FDR to head up the programs designed to provide immediate relief during the first ...

Huey Pierce Long (1893-1935).
Huey Pierce Long (1893-1935) was another challenger of Roosevelt's programs. A former governor of

Louisiana, and a U.S. senator since 1931 who ...

Igor Sikorsky flies first man-carrying helicopter.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Igor Sikorsky successfully flies the world's first man-carrying helicopter, in 1939, followed by ...

James A. Farley (1888-1976).

James A. Farley (1888-1976). Roosevelt was a practical politician rather than a theorist. He surrounded himself with good advisors, tried the ...

James Cleveland "Jesse" Owens (1913-1981).

James Cleveland "Jesse" Owens (1913-1981) was another remarkable sports star of the 1930s. Born in Alabama, at Ohio State University he began ...

John Maynard Keynes (1883-1946).

John Maynard Keynes (1883-1946), an English economist and monetary expert, offered a set of alternative economic theories to Morgenthau's, ...

John Roderigo Dos Passos (1896-1970).

John Roderigo Dos Passos (1896-1970) combined naturalist and stream-of-consciousness techniques to forge a new and unique literary style. Using ...

John Steinbeck (1902-1968).

John Steinbeck (1902-1968), whose 1939 novel The Grapes of Wrath won the Pulitzer prize for literature, more than any other writer symbolized ...

Map: electoral votes, 1936 election.

A map showing the electoral vote in the election of 1936. Franklin D. Roosevelt's new polices emphasizing relief and the programs that benefited ...

Marian Anderson at the Lincoln Memorial.

Marian Anderson (1902-1993) at the Lincoln Memorial. One of Eleanor Roosevelt's most important contributions was her opposition to discrimination ...

Mary McCleod Bethune (1875-1955).

Mary McCleod Bethune (1875-1955) was appointed in 1935 by FDR to a federal National Advisory Committee to the National Youth Administration as a ...

Mexican-American workers on strike in CA, 1933.

Mexican-American workers on strike in California, 1933. For them, as for other minority agricultural workers, the Depression brought increased ...

Migrant worker camp in California.

Migrant worker camps like this pea workers' camp in California, photographed by Dorothea Lange in February 1936, caused one of the complaints ...

New road under construction in Menard County, TX.

A new road under construction in Menard County, Texas, March 1940, as a WPA project. The WPA was administered by federal employees, but organized ...

Open battle between police and striking Teamsters.

An open battle between police and striking Teamsters, armed with pipes, in the streets of Minneapolis, June ...

Rev. Charles E. Coughlin (1891-1979).

Rev. Charles E. Coughlin (1891-1979), the Detroit "Radio Priest." During the First New Deal, Roosevelt had initially moved cautiously, being ...

Rexford G. Tugwell (1891-1979).

Rexford G. Tugwell (1891-1979), the undersecretary of agriculture, was part of a group of informal advisors known as the "Brain Trust," whose ...

Richard Wright (1908-1960).

Richard Wright (1908-1960) illustrates the impact of the New Deal arts programs on African-American writers. On welfare during the Depression, ...

Roosevelt's home at Hyde Park, New York.

Roosevelt's home at Hyde Park, New York. The son of wealthy descendants of the old Dutch colonial aristocracy, and a distant cousin of Theodore ...

Scenes of dust bowl refugeess, seeking work.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Motion picture scenes of dust bowl refugees fleeing their homes, seeking ...

Service projects of WPA.

Service projects of WPA embraced a wide range of activities that created dignified work for every kind of worker. Every state had a WPA Writers ...

State unemployment line in San Francisco, 1938.

A state unemployment line in San Francisco in January 1938, when men lined up around the block to receive from $6 to $15 a week. Roosevelt made a ...

Strike preceding the "Memorial Day Massacre."

A scene from the strike involved in Chicago's "Memorial Day Massacre." Steel workers also used the Wagner Act to support unionization. The United ...

Strikers interrupted by 200 deputy sheriffs.

A Cambridge, Pennsylvania, confrontation in November 1933 in which 200 deputy sheriffs broke up a line of picketing strikers. The Wagner Act was ...

The arrival of Amelia Earhart (1897-1937).

The arrival of Amelia Earhart (1897-1937) in Oakland, California, after her 1935 solo flight from Hawaii. She was another American heroine of the ...

The dirigible Akron .

The dirigible Akron . Not all aircraft advances in the 1930s were in heavier-than-air planes. The dirigible, first developed in 1900, was a huge ...

The drought conditions that began in the 1920s.

The drought conditions that began in the 1920s and persisted into the 1930s worsened an already serious problem. In large sections of the West, ...

The headquarters of an REA cooperative.

The headquarters of an REA cooperative. One of the most significant programs of the Second New Deal for farmers in the South and West was the ...

The inauguration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt.

The inauguration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt as the 31st president, March 3, 1933 . Even as FDR raised his hand to take the oath of office, the ...

The Tygart CCC camp in West Virginia.

The Tygart CCC camp in West Virginia. One of the most successful of the First New Deal programs was the Civilian Conservation Corps (CCC). ...

Thomas Hart Benton (1889-1975).

Thomas Hart Benton (1889-1975), a "regionalist" painter born in Missouri, represented another artistic approach to American life in the 1930s. ...

Three million Americans abandoned their farms.

Other, more innovative, programs such as the Resettlement Administration were aimed at providing relief for the poorest farmers; nevertheless, ...

WPA projects encouraged folk arts and crafts.

Other WPA projects encouraged the preservation of folk arts and crafts. This Hispanic-American woman weaving a rag rug was part of a WPA weaving ...

Young LBJ shakes hands with FDR.

A young Lyndon Baines Johnson (1908-1973) shakes hands with FDR. Part of Roosevelt's political coalition of 1936 and afterward was concentrated ...

Life in the 1920s

"Babe" Ruth hits a ball and starts his run.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): "Babe" Ruth hits a ball and starts his ...

"African Phantasy: Awakening," by Winold Reiss.

"African Phantasy: Awakening," by Winold Reiss, illustrates the celebration of and pride in African origins that permeated the artistic ...

"Babe" Ruth (1895-1948).

George Herman "Babe" Ruth (1895-1948), photographed in 1921 in his New York Yankees uniform. Baseball reached its golden age as a spectator sport ...

"Billy" Sunday (1863-1935).

William Ashley "Billy" Sunday (1863-1935), a baseball player turned evangelist, had achieved popularity for his religious meetings before WWI, ...

"Duke" Ellington (1899-1974).

Edward Kennedy "Duke" Ellington (1899-1974) formed a band in 1918, and by the 1920s had received local Harlem notice at the Cotton Club for his ...

"The Brown Madonna."

"The Brown Madonna," published in Alain Locke, The New Negro: An Interpretation , above. The poetry, prose, and art of the Harlem Renaissance ...

1920 Chinese residents of San Francisco.

A series of laws, beginning with a literary test for immigrants in 1917, and culminating in the National Origins Quota Act of 1924, wrote the ...

1920's golfer Robert Tyre Bobby Jones, Jr.

Not all sports were for spectators; a growing number of American men and women in the 1920s turned to the individual sport of golf in their ...

1925 Buick ad.

By the mid-1920s, the average American middle-class family was declining in size, and the removal of the family to the suburbs created new ...

A "model kitchen" in 1920.

The "flapper image" and the increasing number of women in the workplace did not diminish the traditional role of women as homemakers and mothers. ...

A 1924 Freed-Eisemann radio receiver.

This 1924 Freed-Eisemann radio receiver, with a separate loud-speaker, illustrates the way in which many Americans would have heard the radio ...

A 1925 Chevrolet advertisement.

Middle-class buyers were also targeted by advertising, as in this 1925 Chevrolet advertisement. Between 1920 and 1930, automobile ownership in ...

A 1925 magazine advertisement for Hollywood, FL.

A 1925 magazine advertisement for Hollywood, Florida. Florida experienced the most frenzied of the real estate speculation booms. Blind ...

A 1925 soap ad.

Advertisers took advantage of the focus on personal appearance with campaigns tied to appeals for women to become "desirable." Sex, and the ...

A beauty pageant.

With a new emphasis on a public show of feminine beauty, "beauty pageants" became a route for some women to public recognition. These young ...

A cigarette ad from a 1925 magazine.
A cigarette ad from a 1925 magazine. The social values of both men and women changed in the 1920s, with a breakdown of some of the old divisions ...

A filling station at Brewster, New York, in 1921.
A filling station at Brewster, New York, in 1921. Increased automobile travel brought a demand for more "filling stations" to dispense ...

A Mississippi KKK initiation, 1923.
A Mississippi KKK initiation, 1923. A reactivated Ku Klux Klan was responsible for some of the violence against African Americans and immigrants ...

A mob of whites in New Albany, Mississippi.
A mob of whites in New Albany, Mississippi, posed with its captive, timber cutter J. P. Ivy (top center, see arrow), just before the mob burned ...

A steelworker on the Empire State building, 1930.
A steelworker on the Empire State building, 1930. Built in New York City between 33rd and 34th Streets, and completed at 102 stories in 1931, the ...

A Union Pacific streamliner.
In an eventually abortive effort to compete for passengers with automobiles and airplanes, the railroads introduced streamlined trains capable of ...

A. Philip Randolph (1889-1979).
Asa Philip Randolph (1889-1979) did not live in Harlem, but he also represented changes for African Americans in the 1920s that resulted from the ...

Ad for a Lincoln touring car, 1923.
Although Henry Ford put inexpensive automobiles within reach of the average buyer (see G 9-10), expensive models continued to have an increasing ...

Advent of "talking" pictures.
The advent of "talking" pictures transformed the motion picture industry. The first projection machine capable of playing recorded sound was this ...

Aimee Semple McPherson (1890-1944).
Aimee Semple McPherson (1890-1944) combined the moral, religious message of Billy Sunday with flamboyant show-business presentations of motion ...

Airplane & automobile caught transporting liquor.
An airplane and automobile captured near San Diego for transporting liquor. What sparked much of the lawlessness of the 1920s was the 18th ...

Al Capone (1899-1947).
Alphonse Capone (1899-1947) was certainly an American celebrity of the 1920s. Born in Naples, Italy, he came to New York, where as a youth he was ...

Alice Hamilton (1869-1970).
Despite the "flapper" image of women of the 1920s, many women made important contributions in much more serious pursuits. Alice Hamilton ...

Amos and Andy.
Amos (Freeman F. Gosden, 1899-1982) at left, and Andy (Charles Correll, 1890-1972) at right, became the stars of radio's most popular program at ...

Camp life at Camp Baldy in California.
Camp life at Camp Baldy in California. Automobiles gave Americans mobility for leisure activities; camping, vacations at nearby beaches, even ...

Car related property booms in CA and FL.
The areas most affected by the real estate booms associated with the automobile were Florida and California. This Anaheim, California, street ...

Charles Lindbergh (1902-1974).
The greatest hero of the 1920s was not a motion picture star, a radio personality, a sports figure, or an evangelist, but a shy aviator whose ...

Charles Lindbergh loading air mail.
By the mid-1920s, cities linked by highways were also linked by air. Charles A. Lindbergh (1902-1975) is shown here loading air mail for the ...

Charles Lindbergh's take off; ticker tape parade.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Charles Lindbergh's take off; ticker tape parade; closeup of ...

Chart of major sources of U.S. immigrants in 1921.
A chart of the major sources of U.S. immigrants in 1921. As middle-class and white-collar workers left older city neighborhoods to live in nearby ...

Chicago's Tribune Tower, 1930.
Chicago's Tribune Tower, 1930. Cities in the 1920s not only grew outward with the advent of the automobile, they also grew upward. The ...

Claude McKay (1890-1948).
Claude McKay (1890-1948), born in the West Indies, signaled the beginning of the Harlem Renaissance movement in 1922 when he published Harlem ...

College & professional football also were popular.
College and professional football also enjoyed continued popularity as spectator sports. Harold Edward "Red" Grange (1903-1991) thrilled ...

Countee Cullen (1903-1946).
Countee Cullen (1903-1946) was born in New York City, and published two books of verse, Color (1925) and Copper Sun (1927), elegant yet ...
Cover, True Story magazine, 1922.
The feminine ideal of the late 19th century had been marriage and motherhood. In the 1920s, although most young working women planned eventually ...
D.W. Griffith (1875-1948), the director.
David Lewelyn Wark Griffith (1875-1948) helped to bring the motion picture from a simple curiosity to a major entertainment form through his ...
Director "Duckboards" Butler.
On leave from the U.S. Marine Corps to head up the Philadelphia "Public Safety" campaign against illegal alcohol, Director "Duckboards" Butler ...
Edna St. Vincent Millay (1892-1950).
Edna St. Vincent Millay (1892-1950) was one of the best known of American women poets of the 1920s, perhaps known as well for her unorthodox and ...
Educator and author Alain Leroy Locke (1886-1954).
Educator and author Alain Leroy Locke (1886-1954), a member of the Harlem Renaissance, wrote of Harlem that it "has the same role to play for the ...
Ernest Hemingway (1889-1961).
Ernest Hemingway (1889-1961) was a spokesman for the "lost generation" of American writers of the mid-20th century. As an expatriate in post-WWI ...
Ezra Pound (1885-1972).
Ezra Pound (1885-1972), another expatriate post-WWI American, moved restlessly from England to Italy, founding the "Imagist" school of American ...
F. Scott Fitzgerald (1896-1940).
Francis Scott Key Fitzgerald (1896-1940) wrote novels that captured and celebrated the "smart" and restless behavior of the 1920s generation. He ...
Federal agents seize a still.
Not all the liquor in the flourishing American "bootlegging" trade crossed the border; much of it was manufactured domestically by enterprising ...
Hair curling, 1920's.
The new standards of feminine beauty were part of the consumer packaging of the 1920s. The elaborate waved or curled hair styles of the new woman ...
Henry Louis Mencken (1880-1956).
Henry Louis Mencken (1880-1956) began his literary career as a journalist at the Baltimore Sun in 1906, but by the 1920s was widely recognized ...
Incomes of working women gave them freedom.
Whether working in factory, school, store, or office, the incomes of working women gave them liberties they had not previously had. They could ...
James Mercer Langston Hughes (1902-1967).
James Mercer Langston Hughes (1902-1967), born in Joplin, Missouri, became known as the "poet laureate of Harlem." His first, and possibly best ...
James Weldon Johnson (1871-1938).
James Weldon Johnson (1871-1938) was one of the founders of the Harlem Renaissance. A Florida-born lawyer, he founded and was secretary of the ...
John Dillinger (1902-1934).
Equally as notorious as Capone, John Dillinger (1902-1934) and his gang terrorized the Midwest with a series of bank robberies and murders. The ...
John Marin's "Lobster Fishermen" (detail).
Detail of a John Marin print, "Lobster Fishermen." John Marin (1870-1953), a leading artist of the 1920s was, with Georgia O'Keeffe (See G ...
John Thomas Scopes (1900-1970).
John Thomas Scopes (1900-1970), the science teacher in the public school system in Dayton, Tennessee, who was arrested and tried in July 1925 for ...
Klan's 1926 parade down Pennsylvania Avenue.
The Klan began to decline in political importance shortly before this massive 1926 parade down Pennsylvania Avenue in Washington, D.C. The Grand ...
Ku Klux Klan members in a midnight ritual in 1922.
A part of the nearly 30,000 Ku Klux Klan members from Chicago and northern Illinois who took part in a midnight ritual in 1922. The KKK ...
Main Street in Brawley, California, ca. 1915.
Main Street in Brawley, California, about 1915. The growth of automobile transportation increased the size of cities, and created a new urban ...
Map, the United States in 1920.
A map of the United States in ...
Marcus Garvey (1887-1940).
Marcus Garvey (1887-1940), a Jamaican-born African nationalist, represented another side of the Harlem intellectual ferment. Originally inspired ...
Maud May Wood Park (1871-1955).
Maud May Wood Park (1871-1955). With the adoption of the 19th Amendment giving women the right to vote

in August of 1920, the organizers of the ...

Mexican-American grape pickers near Guasti, CA.

Mexican-American grape pickers near Guasti, California, in the 1920s. Earlier attempts at immigration restriction had failed because ...

One of the first commercial radio stations, 1920.

Two young men operate the transmitter of one of the first commercial radio stations, station WWJ in Detroit, Michigan, which went on the air in ...

Paving section of National Highway in 1919.

Paving a section of the National Highway in Durham County, North Carolina, 1919. In the aftermath of WWI, as automobile ownership multiplied, ...

Robert Frost (1874-1963).

Robert Frost (1874-1963) was one of the most popular poets of the 1920s, winning Pulitzer prizes for his poetry in 1924 and 1931, as well as in ...

Rudolph Valentino (1895-1926).

If Clara Bow was the star women wanted to imitate, Rudolph Valentino (1895-1926) was the swashbuckling hero whose attention they wanted to ...

Sacco and Vanzetti.

To many Americans, Nicola Sacco and Bartolomeo Vanzetti, shown here in court in 1921, represented the dangers posed by such unrestricted ...

San Francisco business district in 1927.

The San Francisco, California, business district in ...

Sidewalks and suburban streets of Montclair, NJ.

Sidewalks and quiet suburban streets of Montclair, New Jersey. The automobile, and the construction of roads, bridges and tunnels, paved the way ...

Sinclair Lewis (1885-1951).

Sinclair Lewis (1885-1951) was a serious novelist who combined social criticism, sparkling wit, and apt if damning characterizations of ...

The first U.S. airliner the "Tin Goose."

The first U.S. airliner which came into wide use was the "Tin Goose," the Ford Trimotor, first built in 1925. These airplanes carried 11 ...

The Roxy Theater, New York, 1927.

If the radio was the star of home entertainment, the motion picture theatre was the leading source of entertainment outside the home. Every town ...

The Scopes trial in July 1925.

Principals in the Scopes trial in July 1925, which symbolized the painful 1920s conflict between rural, religious, conservative, and small-town ...

Vehicles in the Holland Tunnel, 1927.

Vehicles in the Holland Tunnel, 1927, the year of the tunnel's completion. Seven years in construction, at a cost of $50 million, it linked New ...

William Faulkner (1897-1962) .

While Lewis wrote of the bankruptcy of small towns, and Fitzgerald of the life of New York's jazz-age youth, William Faulkner (1897-1962) focused ...

Women in 1920s worked in sex-stereotyped jobs.

Most of the 10 million women in the work force in the 1920s worked in sex-stereotyped jobs where few men worked, such as teaching and nursing. ...

Women workers in the 1920s.

Women workers in the 1920s. Although the return of the American Expeditionary Force closed off a lot of the employment opportunities that WWI had ...

The Diplomacy of the 1930s and the Beginnings of World War II

Abyssinian (Ethiopian) infantry, 1936.

Abyssinian (Ethiopian) infantry, 1936. While Hitler rearmed Germany, Italy under Mussolini launched an attack against Ethiopia as the first ...

Adolph Hitler (1889-1945).

Adolph Hitler (1889-1945) speaking at the Nazi Party Congress in Nuremberg, 1935. The Depression that brought New Deal experimentation and social ...

Benito Mussolini (1883-1945).

Benito Mussolini (1883-1945) addresses the Fascisti in the historic Roman Coliseum in the 1930s. A former socialist, Mussolini emerged as a ...

Cartoon, Roosevelt's third term campaign.

A July 1940 Clifford Berryman cartoon concerning Roosevelt's campaign for a third term. The "destroyer-bases" deal became one of the issues in ...

Charles A. Lindbergh and Hermann Goering.

Charles A. Lindbergh with Hermann Goering. The widespread isolationist sentiment was best illustrated by the existence of a powerful lobbying ...

Congress authorized a "lend-lease" program, 1941.

Shortly after FDR's third inauguration in 1941, at FDR's urging Congress dropped all pretense of neutrality and authorized a "lend-lease" program ...

Firemen in a bomb-damaged street in London.

Firemen in a bomb-damaged street in London after a Saturday night raid. The fighter pilots of the Royal Air

Force put up a determined defense, ...

German invaders in Norway, April 1940.
German invaders in Norway, April 1940. For several months the American opponents of assistance to her former allies had labeled the war threat in ...

German troops advancing into Poland.
German troops advancing into Poland. Freed from the threat of invasion at his back by Russian troops, Hitler moved swiftly to invade Poland on ...

Germans almost trap British & French troops.
So swift was the German strike across Europe that 300,000 British and French troops were nearly trapped at the English Channel town of Dunkirk. ...

Hitler at Nuremberg; invasion of Poland, war.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Hitler at Nuremberg; Germany rearms; the invasion of Poland, and the war ...

Marines in Haiti evacuate the Haitian capital.
The last battalion of the U.S. Marines stationed in Haiti evacuates the Haitian capital, August 1934. During his first administration, Roosevelt ...

On June 14, 1940, France surrendered.
On June 14, 1940, France surrendered, and the German Wehrmacht marched into Paris, organizing a pro-German puppet government at ...

Roosevelt condemned invasions of Ethiopia & China.
Convinced that Americans needed to act to prevent the aggression of Hitler, Mussolini, and the Japanese, Roosevelt made a speech in October of ...

Roosevelt's "Good Neighbor Policy."
Roosevelt's determination to mend fences with western hemisphere nations became known as his "Good Neighbor Policy." He cemented that ...

Senator Gerald P. Nye (1892-1971).
Senator Gerald P. Nye (1892-1971). The American response to this growing unrest in Europe was one of growing isolationism, despite Roosevelt's ...

Senator Robert A. Taft, prominent isolationist.
As events in Europe unfolded, a number of prominent American isolationists continued to hamper Roosevelt's attempts to provide aid to the ...

Signing German/Russian non-aggression pact, 1939.
Signing the German/Russian non-aggression pact, August 1939. The inability of either the U.S. or the European democracies to stop Hitler and ...

St. Paul's in London during the Blitz.
St. Paul's in London during the Blitz, 1940. With Europe firmly under Nazi control, Hitler prepared for an invasion across the English Channel by ...

Survivors of the gunboat U.S.S. Panay .
Survivors of the gunboat U.S.S. Panay leaving the gunboat as she was sinking. The Panay , stationed in the Yangtze River in China, was bombed ...

Terrified baby after Japanese attack on Shanghai.
A terrified baby after a 1937 Japanese air attack on Shanghai. In the Far East, Japan became increasingly aggressive after what she perceived as ...

The signing in Berlin of the Tripartite Pact.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): In September, 1940, the signing in Berlin of the Tripartite Pact, creating the Axis and providing ...

Wendell Willkie (1892-1944).
Roosevelt's opponent in the 1940 election was not the isolationist Republican Robert A. Taft, but a business man and former Democrat, Wendell ...

World War I 4-stacker destroyers at Philadelphia.
World War I 4-stacker destroyers at Philadelphia. In 1939, Roosevelt had pushed through Congress a modification of the Neutrality Acts that ...

The Great Depression

A "squatter" in Chicago, May 1930.
A "squatter" in Chicago, May 1930. Many of those who were hungry were also homeless; men without jobs often had to leave their families, and they ...

A communist demonstration at the White House.
A communist demonstration at the White House. The illusion of prosperity was destroyed in the stock market crash. Although President Hoover ...

A soup kitchen set up by Al Capone.
By the fall of 1930, nearly four and a half million people were unemployed, and soup kitchens, such as this one on State Street in Chicago set up ...

A soup line in New York City.
As the depression worsened, private charitable efforts to deal with the economic distress were unable to cope with the size of the problem of ...

An Iowa farm foreclosure sale in the early 1930s.
An Iowa farm foreclosure sale in the early 1930s. As farm income declined, increasing numbers of farms were foreclosed on by the banks which held ...

Drought-stricken Arkansas corn.

Drought-stricken Arkansas corn. Yet the prosperity of the late 1920s was constructed on very shaky agricultural foundations. Despite the increase ...

Efforts by Red Cross workers to feed children.
Private charitable efforts to relieve some of the distress of the early years of the depression included efforts by Red Cross workers to feed ...

General MacArthur directs Bonus Army evacuation.
General Douglas MacArthur (in uniform) directs the U.S. Army in evacuation of the Bonus Army ...

MacArthur ordered burning of veteran's camp.
When the veterans were gone, chased out by tear gas to join the ranks of the unemployed who were wandering the nation's railroads and highways, ...

Men without jobs roam country, looking for work.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Men without jobs roam the country, looking for work. They build "Hoovervilles." Scenes of soup ...

Stock market collapse; scenes of unemployed.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The stock market collapse; scenes of unemployed ...

The New York Times headline of Oct. 25, 1929.
The New York Times headline of October 25, 1929. The crisis reached the economic centers of the nation in the great "stock market crash" of ...

The Bonus Army camp in Washington D.C.
The Bonus Army camp in Washington D.C. In the spring of 1932, 15,000 veterans of WWI came to Washington to try to persuade Congress to pass a ...

Unemployed marchers at the Capitol, 1932.
Unemployed marchers at the Capitol, 1932. Hoover at first insisted that charities could solve the problems of unemployment relief, and that ...

Unemployed war veteran.
Unemployed men and women resorted to a variety of individual tactics to support themselves and their families. Many families doubled up, young ...

Veterans of the "Bonus Army" confront police.
Veterans of the "Bonus Army" confront police. MacArthur's troops used tear gas and fixed bayonets to drive the men who resisted them out of "Camp ...

Women collect petitions for repeal of prohibition.
Chicago women collect petitions for the repeal of prohibition, November 1930. The contrast of the expenditure of national funds to enforce an ...

The Politics of the Twenties

"Teapot Dome" principals.
"Teapot Dome" principals. The most infamous scandal of the Harding Administration, known as the "Teapot Dome," involved payment of $360,000 in ...

A brief film clip showing Calvin Coolidge.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A brief film clip showing Calvin Coolidge, emphasizing his "spend less and do less" ...

Alfred E. Smith (1873-1944).
The Democratic nominee for president in 1928, Alfred E. Smith (1873-1944, shown here at right) illustrated the growing power of the Democratic ...

Building Owens Valley Aqueduct, Dead Man's Canyon.
Building the Owens Valley Aqueduct in Dead Man's Canyon, California. In the early 1900s the Los Angeles city fathers were concerned about their ...

Calvin Coolidge (1872-1933) as vice president.
Calvin Coolidge (1872-1933) as vice president. By the time the revelations that led to Fall's conviction became known, Harding had become ...

Cartoon, Calvin Coolidge, August 1928.
When (as this August 1928 cartoon indicates) Calvin Coolidge announced that he did not intend to run for another term as president, the ...

Cartoon, Calvin Coolidge's conservative approach.
This cartoon by Clifford Berryman pokes fun at Calvin Coolidge's conservative approach to federal ...

Charles Evans Hughes (1862-1948).
Charles Evans Hughes (1862-1948), an associate justice of the U.S. Supreme Court, became Harding's secretary of state, and was responsible for ...

Coolidge, the 30th president.
Coolidge, the 30th president, ran for office in 1924 in his own right. He is shown here at his first meeting with his vice presidential ...

First Lady Grace Anna Coolidge, (1879-1957).
First Lady Grace Anna Coolidge, (1879-1957), photographed by Harris & Ewing in March 1925. Her husband was a New Englander who admired the ...

Harding's Attorney General resigned in scandal.
Harding's remaining appointments and administration were less successful. Although Secretary of the Treasury Andrew Mellon and Secretary of ...

Herbert Clark Hoover (1874-1964).
Herbert Clark Hoover (1874-1964) was one of the most successful of Coolidge's appointments, as secretary of commerce. An Iowa engineer, he had ...

Herbert Hoover becomes President.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Herbert Hoover becomes ...
Hoover Dam.
Hoover Dam. It was not begun until 1931 nor completed until 1936, but the origins of this dam, which was known as Boulder Dam from 1933 to 1947, ...
Irrigated potato field in the Central Valley, CA.
An irrigated potato field in the Central Valley of California, showing the agricultural impact in the 1940s of water made available for ...
Map: electoral vote, 1928 election.
A map showing the electoral vote in the election of 1928 (states in red voted Republican, green voted Democratic). Although the Republicans won ...
Marines in Nicaraugua, 1927.
U.S. Marines arriving in Nicaragua, 1927. Secretary Hughes also attempted to improve relations with Latin America, initiating the beginnings of a ...
Scenes of the high life of the 1920s.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Scenes of the high life of the ...
Sec. of State Kellogg & Foreign Minister Briand.
U.S. Secretary of State Frank B. Kellogg (1856-1937, right) and French Foreign Minister Aristide Briand (1862-1932, left) spearheaded the effort ...
The trading floor of the Chicago Board of Trade.
The trading floor of the Chicago Board of Trade. Trading in agricultural futures at the Chicago Board of Trade was no exception to the seeming ...
The World Disarmament Conference of 1921.
The World Disarmament Conference of 1921 was held in the headquarters of the Daughters of the American Revolution in Washington, D.C. Agreed upon ...
Traders on floor, New York Stock Exchange.
Traders on the floor of the New York Stock Exchange. Between 1926 and early 1929, the value of stocks traded on the New York Stock Exchange rose ...
Wall Street in New York City, 1924.
Wall Street in New York City, 1924. The Republican victory was in part a response to the continued prosperity of the 1920s, and the overwhelming ...
Warren G. Harding (1865-1923) .
Warren G. Harding (1865-1923) making a recording to be used in his successful 1920 Republican campaign to become the 29th president of the United ...

Section I: World War II and the Beginning of the Cold War, 1941-1960

Video Overview: WWII, Beginning of the Cold War.
A brief video Overview of the World War II and the beginning of the Cold War, from 1941 to 1960. Transcript: The attack on Pearl Harbor brought ...

Post-WWII American Life

75% of Harvard freshman in 1946 were veterans.
The GI Bill of rights spurred the first substantial expansion of higher education by promising returning veterans a chance to attend college. ...
A mother and son in their kitchen.
A mother and son in their kitchen. The postwar phenomenon of women in the work place in growing numbers, however, was countered by widespread ...
A polio victim.
One of the most frightening threats to children's health in the postwar period was that of poliomyelitis, or polio, which caused paralysis and ...
A very early computer.
A very early computer. In the postwar period, the cold war competition for military and technological superiority spurred major government ...
Alfred E. Kinsey (1894-1956).
Alfred E. Kinsey (1894-1956). Not all medical research funded in the 1940s and 1950s was as eagerly received as the Salk vaccine. Pioneering ...
Bob Hope (b. 1903).
Television also brought to the tiny screen in individual living rooms entertainers and entertainment formats such as the variety show that had ...
Buyers wait to inspect ($7,900) 2-bedroom home.
Prospective buyers wait to inspect a popular-priced ($7,900) 2-bedroom home in a Long Island, New York, development in 1949. Many veterans took ...
Dr. Benjamin Spock.
Dr. Benjamin Spock was one of the most influential supporters of new ideas of child nurture which created the image of the ideal mother as one ...
Dr. Jonas Salk (b. 1914).
Dr. Jonas Salk (b. 1914) working in his laboratory at the University of Pittsburgh, where he developed the Salk polio vaccine. Postwar prosperity ...
Elvis Presley (1935-1977).
Elvis Presley (1935-1977), an indifferent guitarist with a pleasant baritone voice, was the great pioneer white singer of rock and roll music. He ...

Elvis Presley (silent).
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Elvis Presley ...
Families watch television together in 1950's.
American family life centered around television in two ways in the 1950s: families gathered together to watch television for entertainment. 1957 ...
First NBC studio in Rockefeller Plaza New York.
Radio was challenged in the late 1940s by a new medium of information and entertainment: television. It had existed before the war, but in the ...
Grade school children doing atomic bomb drill.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A brief film clip showing elementary school children learning to get under their desks in the ...
Gregory Peck doing a radio play.
Doing a radio play in 1949, motion picture star Gregory Peck (b. 1916) works with Kay Brinker in a nearly bare studio to create scenes which can ...
Home bomb shelter, Garden City, Long Island, 1955.
A home bomb shelter which was demonstrated in Garden City, Long Island, in 1955. As cold war fears escalated, many suburbanites during the ...
Jack Roosevelt "Jackie" Robinson (1919-1972).
Jack Roosevelt "Jackie" Robinson (1919-1972). Some sports, such as baseball, declined in relative importance in the 1950s as a public ...
NBC's Radio City studios in Hollywood, California.
NBC's Radio City studios in Hollywood, California. During the war, radio continued to be an important source of information and entertainment. ...
New classroom building at the University of Miami.
A new classroom building constructed at the University of Miami in Coral Gables, Florida, in 1948. Returning veterans changed college campuses in ...
New freeway construction.
New freeway construction. For many veterans, ordinary life meant not only higher education, but the achievement of the dream of home ownership. ...
Photo of the University of Oklahoma outer campus.
Higher education also changed its social and educational patterns. Campuses constructed married student housing to accommodate students with ...
Television's popularity helped close theaters.
Television had a strong impact on motion pictures. This Detroit, Michigan, theater was one of a growing number closed in 1951. Critics ascribed ...
The puppet "Howdy Doody" and cast of characters.
A substantial part of television programming was specifically designed for children. The puppet "Howdy Doody," and the cast of human-costumed ...
Univac I.
Univac I. The move from electromechanical computational ability to electronic memory was one of the technological miracles of the mid-20th ...
Woman operates mortise machine.
A woman operating a mortise machine in a wood-joiner shop in 1943. During the war, in response to an intensive propaganda campaign, many women ...
Workers in a typewriter plant.
Workers in a typewriter plant. After the war, despite pressures to withdraw from the workplace, some women who had gone to work during the war ...
Young men attending 1950s family living class.
Young men attending a 1950s Denver high school class in family living. The period after WWII experienced a "baby boom" of unprecedented ...

The Cold War at Home

Alger Hiss (b. 1904).
Alger Hiss (b. 1904), served in the Department of State from 1936 until 1947. In 1948 Whittaker Chambers (1901-1961) confessed to being a courier ...
Department of Defense Cold War propaganda film.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A Department of Defense propaganda film concerning a non-existent U.S.S.R. recreation of an ...
Ethel and Julius Rosenberg.
Ethel and Julius Rosenberg. Domestic anti-communist hysteria was fed by international events. When the Soviets exploded an atomic bomb in August ...
First test of a hydrogen bomb, fall 1952.
The goal of the AEC/DOD research program was the development of a hydrogen, or thermonuclear bomb, many times more powerful than the 1945 atomic ...
Hoover testifies at HUAC.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): FBI Director J. Edgar Hoover testifies before HUAC concerning Communists in the United ...
J. Edgar Hoover (1895-1972).
J. Edgar Hoover (1895-1972). Truman countered sensationalist Republican campaigns from HUAC with anti-communist programs of his own. He ...

Senator Joseph R. McCarthy (1909-1957).
Republican Senator Joseph R. McCarthy of Wisconsin (1909-1957), raised the anti-communist fever to such a high-pitched campaign of demagoguery ...
Troops observe an A-bomb explosion.
Troops observe an A-bomb explosion. The Soviet possession of atomic power, revelations by Klaus Fuchs that Manhattan project scientists had ...
Truman awards Admiral Sidney Souers (1892-1973).
President Truman awards the Distinguished Service Medal to Admiral Sidney Souers (1892-1973), the first director of the Central Intelligence ...

The Eisenhower Years

Adlai E. Stevenson (1900-1965).
Adlai E. Stevenson (1900-1965), the 1956 Democratic nominee for president. Despite his unsuccessful bid against Eisenhower in 1952, former ...
An Eisenhower/McCarthy cartoon.
An Eisenhower/McCarthy cartoon. At the beginning of his administration, the largest problems Eisenhower faced were those of Korea, and the ...
British tanks depart from Egypt after Suez crisis.
British tanks rolling through a Port Said street as they depart from Egypt at the conclusion of the Suez crisis. The independence of Israel in ...
Demonstrations forced local districts to comply.
African-American parents and their community, however, were unwilling to allow their victory to be ignored. Demonstrations, such as this one in ...
Eisenhower & Governor Earl Warren, July 13, 1953.
Eisenhower and Governor Earl Warren, July 13, 1953. Although he did not intend to do so, Eisenhower presided over an epochal period of advances ...
Eisenhower and Nixon.
Dwight D. Eisenhower and Richard M. Nixon at the end of the Republican convention in Chicago, July 1952. Eisenhower, who had refused to run for ...
Eisenhower creates Interstate Highway System 1954.
Eisenhower signs the act creating the Interstate Highway System, May 6, 1954. As important in some ways as the appointment of Earl Warren to the ...
Eisenhower playing golf at Newport, Rhode Island.
Eisenhower playing golf at Newport, Rhode Island, August 30, 1958. The 34th president, "Ike", was educated at West Point, became the hero of WWII ...
Eisenhower with Secretary of State John Dulles.
Eisenhower with his secretary of state, John Foster Dulles (1888-1959). Dulles became known for a policy of "brinksmanship," an expressed ...
Eisenhower's statement, Echo 1 satellite.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): President Eisenhower's statement concerning Echo I , a communications experiment using a ...
Fidel Castro (b. 1926).
Fidel Castro (b. 1926) in the mountains of Cuba, 1957. In the western hemisphere, nationalist or peasant rebellions and anti-American sentiment ...
Film footage showing Sputnik .
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Film footage showing Sputnik ...
Hawaiian Constitutional Convention in Honolulu.
The Hawaiian Constitutional Convention, meeting in Honolulu in April, 1950. Hawaii had been seeking statehood since the 1920s, but did not ...
Intersection, U.S. Route 29 & Maryland Route 175.
The intersection of U.S. Route 29 and Maryland Route 175 illustrates the impact of federal support for roadbuilding on suburban growth. Modern ...
Iranian paints anti-American graffiti on wall.
An Iranian paints anti-American graffiti on a Teheran wall, July 1955. Acting through the CIA, in 1953 the U.S. had arranged the overthrow of a ...
M-8 armored cars near Teheran.
Although the anti-American and anti-shah sentiments would explode into an Iranian revolution in 1979, the presence of tens of thousands of ...
Mao Zedung meets with Ho Chi Minh, Beijing, 1959.
Chinese Communist leader Mao Zedung meets with North Vietnamese President Ho Chi Minh in Beijing, 1959. Eisenhower and Dulles found southeast ...
Nikita Khruschev & Nicolai Bulganin.
Communist party leader Nikita Khruschev (1894-1971) and Soviet premier Nicolai Bulganin (1895-1975). Josef Stalin died in 1953 after ruling the ...
Oveta Culp Hobby (b. 1905).
Oveta Culp Hobby (1905-1995). To coordinate some of these programs, Eisenhower, and a Republican Congress, established the Department of Health, ...
Prototype of first four engine jetliner July 1954.
By the mid-1950s, air travel was made both faster and more affordable by the introduction of commercial jet liners. This prototype of America's ...

Signing of the Alaska Statehood Act, July 7, 1958.
Principals at the signing of the Alaska Statehood Act, July 7, 1958. During Eisenhower's administration, two non-contiguous territories to the 48 ...
The Lockheed Constellation .
The Lockheed Constellation , a postwar airliner with a 310-mph speed and a coast-to-coast range. The means of long-distance transportation of ...
The Supreme Court Building in Washington.
The Supreme Court Building in Washington. On May 1, 1954, the new chief justice read the unanimous ruling of the Supreme Court in a combined ...
Thurgood Marshall argued the Brown case.
The lawyer who argued the Brown case for the NAACP, Thurgood Marshall (1908-1992) would eventually become a Supreme Court justice himself, ...
University students burn desegregation literature.
University of Alabama students burn desegregation literature. The Supreme Court decision clearly applied to public higher education as well as to ...

The Entry into WWII and the Transformation of American Life

"To Hell with Hitler" badges at 1941 inauguration.
A vendor selling badges reading "To Hell with Hitler" at FDR's 1941 inauguration. Unlike the months before WWI, Americans in 1941 had little ...
A poster asking for farm workers.
A poster asking for farm workers. Victory gardens helped to prevent food shortages; so too did America's farmers, who increased production by a ...
A ship burning during attack on Pearl Harbor.
Thick smoke rolls out of a burning ship during the attack on Pearl Harbor. Eight U.S. battleships were disabled in the attack, and more than 2300 ...
African-American worker manufactures casings.
This African-American worker manufactures casings for 105mm shells at the Budd wheel plant in Detroit, Michigan, January 1943. Despite ...
Albert Einstein (1879-1955).
Albert Einstein (1879-1955), a German-born American scientist, photographed in 1931. Winning the war meant mobilization not only of industry, ...
Alleged zoot suit rioters.
Alleged zoot suit rioters leave a Los Angeles jail to make a court appearance, June 1943. Mexican-Americans faced hostility in many western ...
Americans of Japanese ancestry being relocated.
Los Angeles evacuees of Japanese ancestry boarding trains for Manzanar, California, 250 miles away, to be housed in a relocation center. When ...
Bob Hope and Frances Langford entertain troops.
Comedian Bob Hope and Frances Langford entertain American troops at a U.S. naval station, March 1944. The USO (United Services Organization) sent ...
Boeing Aircraft Company plant in Seattle.
The Boeing Aircraft Company plant at Seattle, Washington, where wartime production of Flying Fortress heavy bombers brought thousands of workers ...
Building a medium tank.
Building a medium tank. The automobile industry was the first test of Roosevelt's policy of using the assurance of continued high profits to ...
Czech coal miners in a Hazleton, PA, mine.
The war gave labor unions a boost by protecting gains made during the 1930s, and union membership rose by nearly five million during the war. ...
Donald M. Nelson (1888-1959) chairman of WPB.
Donald M. Nelson (1888-1959). American participation in WWII transformed the nation permanently, bringing it at last out of the economic ...
Dr. John Kenneth Galbraith (b. 1908)
Dr. John Kenneth Galbraith (b. 1908) photographed during WWII when he was assistant administrator of the Office of Price Administration. The war ...
Former waitress works on building of Liberty ship.
A former waitress works on the construction of a Liberty ship . African-American women as well as men benefited from new job opportunities, even ...
Hanford Atomic Plant in Richland, Washington.
At the top-secret Hanford Atomic Plant in Richland, Washington, nearly 45,000 employees worked around the clock with production reactors, ...
Housing for workers at aircraft plant in Hartford.
This trailer camp in East Hartford, Connecticut, provided housing for workers at the Pratt and Whitney aircraft engine plant in Hartford. The ...
J. Robert Oppenheimer (1904-1967).
The brilliant physicist Robert J. Oppenheimer (1904-1967) directed operations at Los Alamos, New Mexico, where a team of scientists worked ...
James Byrnes of Office of Economic Stabilization.
Roosevelt appointed James S. Byrnes (1879-1972) a former senator from South Carolina, to head the Office

of Economic Stabilization. A moderate ...

Japanese Ambassador Admiral Kichisaburo Nomura.
Japanese Ambassador Admiral Kichisaburo Nomura (1877-1964) meeting with Secretary of State Cordell Hull (1871-1955) late in the fall of 1941. As ...

Japanese Ambassador Nomura & Special Envoy Kurusu.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): On November 20, 1941, Japanese Ambassador Nomura and Special Envoy Saburo Kurusu are shown as ...

Japanese bomber attacking "battleship row."
A Japanese torpedo bomber attacking "battleship row" at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, on December 7, 1941. Captured Japanese ...

Japanese-American soldiers fire at German snipers.
Japanese-American soldiers fire mortar shells at German snipers in the hills of the Montenerro area of Italy, August 1944. Ironically, some of ...

Lockheed aircraft plant employed 23,500 workers.
This Lockheed aircraft plant in southern California employed 10,000 nighttime and 13,500 daytime workers. The economic growth of the "sun belt" ...

Map, the United States in 1941.
A map of the United States in ...

Motion picture industry role in war effort.
As in WWI, the motion picture industry played an important role in providing symbols for American unity and in publicizing home front war ...

Noon mess line at camp for Japanese-Americans.
The noon mess line at the Manzanar, California, relocation camp for Japanese U.S. citizens. The relocation camps closely resembled ...

Nursery for workers at bomber plant in Maryland.
For many women, inadequate child care made it difficult to go to work. To attract desperately needed war workers, some industries, such as the ...

On July 16, 1945, first atomic bomb was detonated.
On July 16, 1945, the team of Los Alamos scientists successfully detonated this first atomic bomb at Alamogordo, New ...

Pearl Harbor film footage.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Dramatic film footage of damage suffered by the U.S Navy at Pearl Harbor, December 7, ...

Rationed tires.
Rationed tires. The beginning of WWII and the capture of the rubber plantations in Indonesia by the Japanese led to particularly critical ...

Red Cross worker pours a drink for a soldier.
A Red Cross worker pours a drink for a soldier ready to embark at the Port of New York. War mobilization offered ordinary citizens who were ...

Roosevelt opening first selective service lottery.
Roosevelt personally opening the first selective service lottery, October 15, 1940. Even before his election, FDR began preparations for American ...

Roosevelt, Churchill, U.S.S. Augusta.
Roosevelt and Churchill on the U.S.S. Augusta. The Lend-Lease and "destroyers for bases" deals with Great Britain had laid the groundwork for ...

Sign in a Japanese-American grocery.
The attack on Pearl Harbor left Japanese-Americans, long the targets of resentment and racial discrimination on the west coast, particularly ...

Students pose with jeeps their war bonds paid for.
Students at the Randall Junior High School in Washington, D.C., pose with the two jeeps that their war bond campaign paid for. To help pay the ...

The line at a rationing board.
The line at a rationing board. Although per capita income nearly doubled during the war, from $573 to $1,074, Americans were unable to spend ...

The Los Alamos National Laboratory, New Mexico.
The Los Alamos National Laboratory, New Mexico, where the atomic bomb was ...

The original atomic pile.
The original atomic pile. The Manhattan Project involved scientists from around the world, but some of the most important early experiments took ...

The wreckage of the Naval Air Station in Hawaii.
The wreckage of the Naval Air Station in Hawaii following the Japanese attack on December 7, 1941. American diplomatic and military experts knew ...

Victory gardeners at work in Forest Hills, NY.
Victory gardeners at work in Forest Hills, New York. As part of the war effort, households were urged to grow their own food in "Victory ...

Walter White (1893-1955).
Walter White (1893-1955), executive secretary of the NAACP, and labor organizer Asa Philip Randolph (see H 31) were determined that wartime labor ...

Woman brazing an automobile casting in Buffalo.
A woman brazing an automobile casting in Buffalo, New York, April 1943. More than five million women joined

the labor force during the war, often ...

Workman reads about the Pearl Harbor attack.

A workman in Shasta County, California, reads about the Pearl Harbor attack. Americans awoke on Sunday morning to the news of the disaster at ...

The Korean War

A M.A.S.H. unit.

A Mobile Army Surgical Hospital (M.A.S.H.) during an operation, 20 miles from the front lines in Korea, August 1952. While diplomats disagreed, ...

A Navy AD-3 bomber drops bomb on Korean bridge.

A Navy AD-3 bomber pulls out of a dive after dropping a 2,000- pound bomb on the Korean side of a bridge crossing the Yalu River into Manchuria, ...

American and one North Korean guard at P'anmunjom.

Two American guards and a North Korean guard at P'anmunjom, 1970. An armistice, not a peace treaty, was signed on July 27, 1953. Coming only ...

Chinese "volunteers" capture U.S. tanks.

Chinese "volunteers" capture U.S. tanks, a painting by Chinese Communist artist Li Hua. MacArthur and others had assured Truman that the Chinese ...

Dramatic combat footage made during Korean War.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Dramatic combat footage made during the Korean ...

Eisenhower announces armistice in Korea, 1953

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): President Eisenhower announces the armistice in Korea, July ...

General MacArthur and General Omar Bradley.

General Douglas MacArthur, commander-in-chief of the UN command, and General Omar Bradley, chairman of the U.S. Joint Chiefs of Staff, at the ...

Map of southernmost advance, North Korean forces.

A map of Korea, showing the southernmost advance of North Korean forces, northernmost advance of UN forces, and the July 1953 truce ...

Royal Australian Air Force members on alert.

Members of No. 77 Squadron, Royal Australian Air Force, at a 1953 early morning alert in Kimpo, South Korea. The American Congress never declared ...

Soldiers advance under cover fire from aviators.

Soldiers advancing under covering fire from Marine aviators in Korea. On June 30, Truman ordered MacArthur's forces stationed in Japan to Korea ...

The Inchon invasion, September 1950.

The Inchon invasion. After a brief stalemate, in September 1950 MacArthur executed a bold and risky maneuver, dividing his army and landing a ...

The P'anmunjom peace negotiations, November 1951.

The P'anmunjom peace negotiations, November 1951. Formal peace talks began in July of that year, but dragged on as both sides attempted to gain ...

U.N. Security Council meets on Korea, June 1950.

The U.N. Security Council meets on Korea, June 1950. The peacetime defensive posture defined in NSC 68 was tested in the divided country of ...

United Nations forces cross the 38th parallel.

United Nations forces cross the 38th parallel as they withdraw from Pyongyang, the North Korean capital. Though MacArthur called on Truman to ...

The Postwar World

Queen Mary arrives with troops from Europe.

The British liner Queen Mary arrives in New York harbor, June 20, 1945, with thousands of troops from Europe. With 12 million soldiers in ...

Berliners watch a Berlin Airlift C-54 in flight.

Berliners watch a Berlin Airlift C-54 in flight. The Truman Doctrine, and the policy of containment, were tested in Europe in the summer of 1948. ...

Bernard Baruch (1870-1965).

Bernard Baruch (1870-1965) was the author of the "Baruch Plan" offered by the UN Atomic Energy Commission to which he was the U.S. ...

Crew unloads tons of flour during Berlin airlift.

A crew in Berlin unloads 25 tons of flour from one of the first flights bringing food and other necessities to Berlin. Only recently scorned as ...

David Ben-Gurion proclaims Israel's independence.

David Ben-Gurion proclaims Israel's independence, May 15, 1948. Containment proposed, in effect, that the U.S. maintain a global presence, and ...

Desegregated unit fighting in Korea in 1950.

A desegregated army, such as this unit fighting in Korea in 1950, was the result of one of Truman's actions. As early as 1946, Truman had ...

Emperor Bao Dai and Premier Huu Tran Van.

Emperor Bao Dai (center) and Premier Huu Tran Van (left). In 1949, the French promised limited independence to South Vietnam, and made Bao Dai ...

French family inspects tractor furnished by U.S.

A rural family in France inspects a tractor furnished by the U.S. Economic Cooperation Administration under Marshall Plan aid, ca. 1950. The ...

George C. Marshall (1880-1959).
George C. Marshall (1880-1959) was Truman's secretary of state from 1947 to 1949. The Truman Doctrine promised American aid in case of military ...

Greek soldiers in action against guerrillas, 1947.
Greek soldiers in action against their guerrilla opponents in 1947. The growing U.S.-U.S.S.R. hostility was labeled a "cold war" because it ...

Ho Chi Minh with Georges Bidault.
Ho Chi Minh (1890-1969), with Georges Bidault (1899-1983). Containment was also tested by civil war in Southeast Asia. During WWII, a Japanese ...

John L. Lewis (1880-1969).
John L. Lewis (1880-1969), president of the United Mine Workers, was one of the most vocal spokesmen for labor interests as postwar pressures ...

Mao Zedong (Mao Tse-Tung, 1893-1976).
Mao Zedong (Mao Tse-Tung, 1893-1976), chairman of the Chinese Communist Party, proclaims the establishment of the People's Republic of China in ...

Map: electoral vote, 1948 election.
A map showing the electoral vote of 1948. Not only did Truman win the presidency, with 57 percent of the electoral vote, but the Democrats also ...

Nationalist Chinese soldiers retreat.
Nationalist Chinese soldiers retreat before Communist forces near Shanghai, May 1949. Containment implied a world-wide commitment to block ...

OAS headquarters in Washington.
OAS headquarters in Washington. In the western hemisphere, American activism led to the creation of the Rio Pact military alliance with Latin ...

President Truman presiding over 1948 NSC meeting.
President Truman presiding over a 1948 meeting of the NSC. The fall of China led to the creation of one of the most important documents of the ...

Rocket scientist/inventor Robert H. Goddard.
Rocket scientist/inventor Robert H. Goddard with an early experimental rocket, ca. 1925. With the failure of the Baruch Plan, and the threat of ...

Secretary of State Acheson with Senator Connolly.
Secretary of State Dean G. Acheson (1893-1971), shown here with Senator Tom Connolly, chair of the Senate Foreign Relations Committee, attempted ...

Senator Herman E. Talmadge (b. 1913).
Senator Herman E. Talmadge (b. 1913). Truman regarded his election victory as a mandate for change, and announced in early 1949 that he would ...

Strom Thurmond (b. 1902).
Strom Thurmond (b. 1902), then the governor of South Carolina, was nominated as a presidential candidate in 1948 by the Dixiecrats, the States ...

The first U.S successful firing V-2 rocket.
The first successful U.S. firing of a V-2 rocket. The Germans had made significant advances in rocket technology before and during WWII, using ...

The Truman family.
The Truman family: daughter Margaret, wife Bess, and President Harry. At the beginning of his term, the newly elected president moved to ...

The UN Charter Conference in San Francisco.
The UN Charter Conference in San Francisco. At Yalta, the Big Three agreed to call a meeting of the United Nations in San Francisco in April 1945 ...

Thomas E. Dewey (1902-1971).
Thomas E. Dewey (1902-1971) campaigning for the presidency, 1948. Despite the successes of the Marshall Plan and the Berlin Airlift, by 1948 the ...

Troops on their way home.
Even before the war in the Pacific was over, the U.S. began the process of troop demobilization in Europe. These happy veterans headed for ...

Truman also faced a liberal challenger in 1948.
Truman also faced a liberal challenger in 1948. Roosevelt's wartime vice president, Henry Wallace (b. 1919) had served from 1944 until 1946 as ...

Truman signing the NATO treaty.
Truman signing the NATO treaty. As his Fair Deal foundered under Congressional opposition, Truman increasingly turned his attention to foreign ...

Truman wins in 1948, despite contrary headline.
Truman traveled more than 30,000 miles appealing to American voters to support his domestic and international policies, then went to bed early on ...

U.S. military aid.
Under the NATO umbrella, the U.S. began supplementing Marshall Plan economic aid with military aid. This medium tank being sent to France in May ...

Winston Churchill making "Iron Curtain" speech.
Winston Churchill making his "Iron Curtain" speech. The end-of-the-war conferences at Yalta and Potsdam

and the creation of the UN were based ...

The War Abroad

Allies moved inland after heavy fighting.
After two weeks of heavy fighting, the Allies began to move inland. These infantry soldiers with truckloads of equipment are leaving the town of ...

Enola Gay after dropping first atomic bomb.
The Enola Gay lands at a Mariana Island base after dropping the first atomic bomb on Hiroshima. Truman learned of the bomb and its capabilities ...

Enola Gay pilot describes bomb explosion.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The Enola Gay takes off; the pilot describes the approach to Hiroshima; the bomb explodes. Then ...

Yorktown receives a direct hit.
The aircraft carrier Yorktown receives a direct hit during the naval battle of Midway. The Japanese needed control of the sea to keep their ...

A B-17 damaged by a German rocket, July 1943.
A B-17 damaged by a German rocket, July 1943. The saturation bombing policy exacted a deadly price from the Allies: more than 158,000 Allied ...

A depth charge said to have sunk German submarine.
U.S. Coast Guardsmen aboard the cutter Spencer watch a depth charge explosion, said to have sunk the German submarine U-175 in April 1943. ...

A formation of WACS in Italy, 1945.
A formation of WACS in Italy, 1945. Citizen soldiers of WWII included women as well as men. Women took part in every military duty except that of ...

A stacked-down echelon of P-51 Mustang fighters.
A stacked-down echelon of P-51 Mustang fighters heads home from a successful escort mission over Europe. The Mustangs were the first fighters ...

A U.S. soldier in Cologne, 1945.
A U.S. soldier stands amid the ruins of the city and cathedral of Cologne, Germany, in 1945. Instead of demoralizing the Germans, saturation ...

Admiral Chester Nimitz (1885-1966).
Admiral Chester Nimitz (1885-1966) plots a series of naval carrier raids against Tokyo in February 1945. His carriers stayed off Japan for ...

Aerial view of the landing operations on Okinawa.
An aerial view of the landing operations on Okinawa in the Pacific, April 4, 1945, three days after the initial American assault. Okinawa was one ...

African-American recruits in training.
African-American recruits in training at the Great Lakes, Illinois, Naval Training Center. Nearly a million African-Americans were part of the ...

African-American troops of the 92nd Division.
African-American troops of the 92nd Division march past a burned-out German Mark VI tank to cross the Arno River, nearly 200 miles north of Rome, ...

African-Americans parade; African-American fliers.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): African-American troops parade in WWII; African-American fliers are shown, in the famed 99th ...

American and Russian troops at Torgau, Germany.
American and Russian troops at Torgau, Germany. Within two weeks of FDR's death, on April 25, Russian and American forces met at Torgau, some 60 ...

American army trucks cross Rhine close to Berlin.
By the end of March, the Americans had moved a large army closer to Berlin. Here, army trucks cross the Alexander Patch Heavy Pontoon Bridge ...

American army, Philippines surrenders to Japanese.
In May of 1942, the American army in the Philippines under General Jonathan Wainwright was forced to surrender to Japanese forces at Corregidor. ...

American GI looks at Adolph Hitler's burning home.
On May 4, 1945, an American GI looks up at the burning home of Adolph Hitler, on a hilltop overlooking the city of Berchtesgaden, where the ...

American Guadalcanal land offensive, Aug. 1942.
At Guadalcanal, not too far from the Coral Sea, in August 1942 American forces began a land offensive to push the Japanese back northward to ...

American infantrymen & armor pass dead German.
American infantrymen and armor move past a dead German as they approach Fontainebleau, on the way to Paris. By August, Allied troops had ...

American troops go ashore at beachhead in France.
American troops go ashore at a beachhead in France, June 6, l944. At some of the beaches, the Allied landings were almost uncontested, but ...

An infantry soldier receives blood plasma.
An infantry soldier, Private Roy W. Humphrey, receives blood plasma after he was wounded in the August 1943 Allied invasion of Sicily. Despite ...

Army reinforcements disembarking on Saipan.

Army reinforcements disembarking from LST's (Landing Ship, Tank) on Saipan in the Mariana Islands form a graceful curve as they wade across a ...

B-17 "Flying Fortress" bomber mission over Europe.
B-17 "Flying Fortress" bombers in a mission over Europe. Daylight bombing, favored by the Americans, provided better precision but was more ...

B-24 Bomber formation after raid on Ploesti.
A formation of B-24 "Liberator" bombers leaves Ploesti, Rumania, after one of the massive raids on the Ploesti oil refineries in May 1944. These ...

B-24 Bomber production at Ford plant, Feb. 1943.
B-24 "Liberator" bomber production at the Willow Run Ford plant, February 1943. The productive capacity of the American aircraft industry helped ...

Benjamin O. Davis, Jr (b. 1912).
Benjamin O. Davis, Jr. (b. 1912). In spite of discrimination and segregation, African Americans made significant gains in the military. In the ...

Bomb damage in Tokyo, 1945.
Bomb damage in Tokyo, 1945. American B-29 bombers began regular bombing attacks against Japan in November 1944, shortly after the capture of ...

Casualties and destruction after battle of Tarawa.
The aftermath of casualties and destruction following the battle for Tarawa, a three-mile-long island in the Gilbert Islands near the equator, in ...

Celebration of V-J Day in New York's Times Square.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The celebration of V-J day in New York City's Times ...

Chinese resistance was hampered by civil war.
China's ability to resist was hampered by an internal civil war. Roosevelt believed that Jiang Jieshi (Chiang Kai-Shek, 1887-1975)), commander of ...

Column of Axis prisoners in African desert, 1942.
A column of Axis prisoners in the African desert, 1942. The British had been fighting desperately against General Irwin Rommel's Panzer divisions ...

Combat footage of a direct hit by kamikaze .
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Actual combat footage of a direct hit by a kamikaze ...

Concentration camp ovens with human remains.
Ovens in a German concentration camp containing human remains. The American diplomatic and humanitarian response to the desperate plight of ...

Crew of Bunker Hill fights fires from attack.
The crew of the carrier Bunker Hill battles the fires caused by a May 11, 1945 kamikaze attack. In the closing months of the war the Japanese ...

Curtiss C-46 returns from "over the Hump."
A Curtiss C-46 freighter returns from China, "over the Hump." China was the principal U.S. ally in the Pacific War; she had been fighting the ...

Dramatic film footage of the D-Day invasion.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Dramatic film footage of the D-Day ...

Emperor Hirohito acceptance of the surrender.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Emperor Hirohito indicates his acceptance of the surrender and the end of World War ...

FDR and Churchill met in Casablanca, 1943.
While the outcome in Africa was still uncertain, American President Franklin D. Roosevelt and British Prime Minister Winston Churchill met in ...

FDR speaks in final phase of reelection campaign.
FDR speaking at Bridgeport, Connecticut, November 4, 1944, in the final phase of his reelection campaign. Roosevelt became during the war a ...

FDR's funeral cortege.
Franklin D. Roosevelt's funeral cortege. Before the Allies could reach Berlin, Roosevelt died suddenly on April 12, 1945 of a massive cerebral ...

Fifth Division Marines under fire on Iwo Jima.
Fifth Division Marines under fire on the beach at Iwo Jima, February 19, 1945. With MacArthur establishing control in the Philippines, in ...

For many at Buchenwald liberation came too late.
For many Jews at Buchenwald, however, liberation of the camp came too late. These American soldiers look into a truck containing about 40 bodies ...

Formal Japanese surrender ceremonies.
The formal Japanese surrender ceremonies took place aboard the U.S.S. Missouri in Tokyo Bay on September 2, 1945. Fleet Admiral Chester Nimitz ...

General officials sign the surrender documents.
General Admiral Von Friedeburg and Col. General Gustaf Jodl of the German delegation sign the articles of unconditional surrender to the Allies ...

Generals Patton and Eisenhower, Tunisia, 1943.
Generals George S. Patton (1885-1945) and Dwight D. Eisenhower (1890-1969) at Patton's headquarters in Tunisia, March 16, 1943. The Allied ...

Germany surrendered unconditionally, May 7, 1945.
Germany surrendered unconditionally to the Allies on May 7, 1945. On July 4, General Omar Bradley (1893-

1981), acting commander of the U.S. ...

Harry S. Truman inaugurated as vice president.
Harry S. Truman (1884-1972) being inaugurated as vice president. Within the Democratic party, opposition to New Deal liberalism led to the ...

Harry S. Truman is sworn in as 31st President.
A shocked and somber Harry S. Truman was sworn in as the 31st President. Roosevelt had kept Truman largely in the dark about diplomatic and ...

Hiroshima, Japan, after atomic bomb blast.
The ruins of Hiroshima, Japan, after the atomic bomb blast on August 6 that killed close to 100,000 people. Concrete structures (such as the ...

January 1, 1946 session of Nuremberg trials.
The January 1, 1946 session of the Nuremberg War Crimes trials. The determination to punish the Nazi German leaders for the concentration camps ...

Japanese military leaders tried for war crime.
Like the Germans, the Japanese military leaders were tried for war crimes, before the International Military Tribunal for the Far East, in trials ...

LCI with troops awaits assault signal on D-Day.
In England, an LCI (Landing Craft, Infantry) with American troops and equipment aboard awaits the signal for the assault against the European ...

Lt. General Joseph Stillwell (1883-1946).
The commander of the Allied forces in China, Lt. General Joseph W. "Vinegar Joe" Stilwell (1883-1946), was incensed by Jiang's refusal to ...

MacArthur and Hirohito.
MacArthur and Hirohito. The occupation of Japan was directed by General Douglas MacArthur, who was appointed Supreme Commander for the Allies, ...

MacArthur on Leyte.
MacArthur on Leyte. While Nimitz and the Navy and Marines were island-hopping westward from Hawaii through the Central Pacific, General Douglas ...

Marine wounded in the recapture of Guam.
The American Island of Guam at the southern edge of the Mariana Islands, which had been captured by the Japanese on December 13, 1941, was the ...

Marines in a burning Saipan village.
Marines in a burning Saipan village. The Americans first landed on Saipan on June 15; before the island fell to the Americans on July 9, 27,000 ...

Navajo Indians serving in a Marine radio unit.
Navajo Indians serving in a Marine radio unit in a Marshall Islands campaign. They were used for radio communications because the Japanese could ...

Panorama of D-Day invasion across English Channel.
A panorama of the D-Day invasion across the English Channel, June 6, 1944, along the Normandy coast near Cherbourg, France. More than 2,000 ...

Parisians celebrate Victory in Europe day.
A crowd of happy, cheering, flag-waving Parisians gathers in front of the famous Paris Opera House to celebrate Victory in Europe day, May 8, ...

Pope Pius XII (1876-1958).
Pope Pius XII (1876-1958), pictured at the Vatican, greets Allied soldiers who helped to liberate Rome on June 4, ...

Prayer service in England before air strike.
By early 1942 planes were arriving in Great Britain, from which the air attacks were to be launched. In this photograph Captain M. S. Ragan, a ...

President Harry Truman hails surrender of Germany.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): President Harry Truman reads a statement hailing the surrender of Germany and the end of the war ...

Principals of the Yalta Conference.
Principals of the Yalta Conference. After the American election, Allied leaders once again met to determine postwar strategy. Meeting in the ...

Roosevelt, Churchill and Stalin at Yalta.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A brief film clip showing Roosevelt, Churchill and Stalin at ...

Roosevelt, Stalin, and Churchill at Teheran.
In Teheran, still and motion picture photographers record the historic meeting of President Roosevelt, Marshal Stalin, and Prime Minister ...

Shells explode near a U.S. cruiser.
Shells from the French battleship Jean Bart explode near a U.S. cruiser (at left, making smoke) off Casablanca, Morocco, November 8, 1942. The ...

Soldiers study war map Pacific-Asiatic theaters.
U.S. soldiers studying a war map of the Pacific-Asiatic theaters in 1944. While Allied leaders concentrated on wartime strategy and postwar goals ...

The "Big Three" meeting at Potsdam.
In July 1945, President Truman met for the first time with the other leaders of the "Big Three" at Potsdam, Germany, to finalize plans for the ...

The carrier Princeton burning.

The carrier Princeton burning. To oppose the American invasion of the Philippines, the Japanese sent a fleet into Leyte Gulf, and a fierce ...

The Doolittle raid, April 1942.

The Doolittle raid, April 1942. As American troops in the Philippines fought a losing battle against Japanese invaders, a single incident helped ...

The dropping of the atomic bomb on Nagasaki.

Three days later, on August 9, when Japan still had not surrendered, Truman authorized the dropping of a second atomic bomb on the Japanese city ...

The Dumbarton Oaks conference concerning the U.N.

While Allied military leaders planned and executed "Operation Overlord," the D-Day invasion, Allied political leaders were planning the creation ...

The ruins of Darmstadt, Germany.

The ruins of Darmstadt, Germany. The saturation bombing strategy was both more damaging and less effective than its supporters had predicted. ...

U.S. infantrymen in Belgium.

U.S. infantrymen move through the snow-covered Krinkhelter Woods in Belgium in December 1944. After the American election had been decided, the ...

U.S. plane covers troops in the Marshall Islands.

The next group of islands on the way to Japan were the Marshall Islands, scattered across the Central Pacific south of the U.S. possession of ...

U.S. soldiers and prisoners in Buchenwald.

U.S. soldiers in the Buchenwald concentration camp on April 18, 1945 move among the minority of prisoners who were physically able to leave the ...

U.S. troops cross the Rhine.

U.S. troops and equipment at the Remagen bridge over the Rhine River on March 11, 1945. After Yalta, events moved rapidly in Europe. The Rhine ...

U.S. troops disembark at Salerno.

U.S. troops disembark at Salerno, Italy, 200 miles south of Rome, on September 9, 1943, having encountered strong German opposition. The ...

Willie and Joe.

Willie and Joe. Mobilization for war meant, most of all, the recruitment , training and embarkation for Europe, Africa, or the Pacific of 16 ...

WWII planes fly from aircraft carrier (silent).

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): World War II torpedo bombers take off from an aircraft carrier ...

Section J: Contemporary America, 1960 to the Beginning of the New

Video Overview: Contemporary America.

A brief video Overview of the history of Contemporary America, from 1960 to the beginning of the New Millennium. Transcript: The election of ...

Lyndon Johnson's America

The Feminine Mystique .

Betty Friedan's The Feminine Mystique , published in 1963. Betty Friedan, a former University of California at Berkeley graduate student turned ...

A map of Vietnam.

A map of ...

A U.S. B-52 takes off for Vietnam.

A U.S. B-52 bomber takes off from the Marianas islands for the 4,800-mile round trip to bomb North Vietnam. To enlarge American troop strength in ...

African Americans voting.

African Americans voting. The Selma to Montgomery march vividly dramatized the stubborn denial to them in parts of the nation of the most basic ...

Arizona Republican Barry Goldwater (b. 1909).

Johnson's principal opponent in 1964 was the conservative Arizona Republican Barry Goldwater (b. 1909) Labelling their candidate "a choice, not ...

Beatles in NYC crowd, February 1964 (silent).

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A brief film clip of the Beatles in a New York City crowd, February 1964. NOTE: The audio for ...

Cavalry Division on search and destroy mission.

The men in this photograph, from the 7th Cavalry Division, are on a search and destroy mission in the An Lao Valley in South Vietnam in May 1967. ...

Chief Justice administers oath of office to LBJ.

Chief Justice Earl Warren administering the oath of office to President Lyndon B. Johnson. Johnson won a landslide victory over both Wallace and ...

Dean Rusk & Henry Cabot Lodge meeting in Hawaii.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Dean Rusk and Henry Cabot Lodge arrive in Hawaii for a 1964 Vietnam War policy ...

Film footage on the Vietnam War.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Film footage on the Vietnam War. Gen. William Westmoreland; a mention of the Tonkin Gulf ...

Folk singer Joan Baez (b. 1941).
Joan Baez (b. 1941), a folk singer who began her career singing lyrics of protest against social injustice, became an important pacifist ...
General William Westmoreland (b. 1914).
General William Westmoreland (b. 1914), the American military commander in Vietnam 1964-1968, with LBJ during the latter's visit to Vietnam in ...
Governor George C. Wallace (b. 1919).
The other candidate in the election of 1964 was Governor George C. Wallace of Alabama (b. 1919). Wallace had blocked the doors of Alabama schools ...
Hubert Humphrey (1911-1978).
Hubert Humphrey (1911-1978) accepting the nomination of the Democratic Party for the presidency, August 29, 1968. He endorsed a platform plank in ...
Johnson explains American policy on Vietnam.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Part of a 1964 speech by President Lyndon Johnson in which he seeks to justify American policy by ...
LBJ and Vietnam war opponent Sen. Wayne Morse.
LBJ and Vietnam war opponent Sen. Wayne Morse (1900-1974) in the White House. Not all who opposed the war were students and folk singers. Long ...
LBJ announcing he would not run for presidency.
LBJ announcing that he would not run for the presidency again. As the criticism of Johnson's handling of the war mounted in Congress and the ...
Lyndon B. Johnson campaigning in New England.
Lyndon B. Johnson campaigning in New England, September 28, 1964. In that year, LBJ had an opportunity to win the presidency in his own right. ...
Lyndon Johnson and Robert McNamara.
Lyndon Johnson and Robert McNamara (b. 1916), who served as secretary of defense, first for John F. Kennedy, and then for Lyndon B. Johnson. In ...
Lyndon Johnson signing Civil Rights Act 1964.
Lyndon Baines Johnson (1908-1973) signing the Civil Rights Act, July 1964. Placed on the presidential ticket in 1960 to bring balance to the ...
Marshals remove protester from march on Pentagon.
Federal marshals remove a protester during the march on the Pentagon, October 22, 1967. President Johnson mobilized more than 10,000 troops, ...
Operation Ranch Hand.
The six different kinds of herbicides used in Operation Ranch Hand were shipped to Vietnam in 55-gallon drums; more than 19 million gallons were ...
Pentagon protest against Vietnam War.
Protestors line the Pentagon's mall entrance during a demonstration against the Vietnam war. Opposition to the Vietnam war had been relatively ...
Sky troopers land at Song Rem from a helicopter.
Helicopters played a key role in the Vietnam War, allowing rapid deployment of troops and supplies to isolated areas. Here, skytroopers of the ...
Smoke over Saigon during the Tet offensive.
Smoke over Saigon during the Tet offensive, January-February 1968. As the war grew in scale, Johnson became increasingly defensive and evasive ...
Thurgood Marshall (1908-1993).
Thurgood Marshall (1908-1993) as an associate justice of the Supreme Court. Johnson's actions as president in behalf of civil rights for African ...
Transport planes spray defoliation chemicals.
Another strategy based on American scientific technology was that of defoliation. Herbicides (chemicals that kill plants) were sprayed on the ...
Undersecretary of state George Ball.
Undersecretary of state George Ball (1909-1994). Before Johnson's presidency, most Americans were only dimly aware of the war in Vietnam, ...
USAF HH-3 helicopter crewman fires into jungle.
During a patrol over South Vietnam in 1968, a USAF HH-3 helicopter crewman fires into the jungle below. In substantial areas of the country, the ...
Watts riots with an earlier Kennedy speech.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Motion picture footage of the August 1965 Watts riots: burning buildings, troops patrolling, ...

Reagan, The First President Bush and the Republican Ascendancy of the 1980s

1988 Republican Presidential Candidates.
The Republican ticket in 1988 paired Reagan's vice president George Herbert Walker Bush (b. 1924), a former Congressman, CIA head and experienced ...
A graph showing the burgeoning national debt.
A graph showing the burgeoning national debt. The economic problems of the savings and loan and banking industries helped to expand even more a ...
A motion picture summary of the Gulf War.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A motion picture summary of the Gulf ...

A pro-Gulf War counter-demonstration, Jan. 1991.
A pro-Gulf War force in a counter-demonstration against those who opposed the war in Lafayette Park, January 19, 1991. Despite a close vote in ...
A troubled S&L.
The Perpetual Bank in Washington, one of many savings and loan institutions taken over by the government in its cleanup of the savings and loan ...
A woman cadet officer at the U.S. Naval Academy.
A woman cadet officer at the U.S. Naval Academy with her classmates in 1984. Despite a general lack of support for the advancement of women's ...
American military patrol on duty near Beirut.
An American military patrol on duty near the Beirut, Lebanon, airport in February 1983. A more serious threat to the American military erupted in ...
Bethlehem Steel's closed plant at Lackawanna, NY.
Bethlehem Steel's closed plant at Lackawanna, New York. Although Reagan's economic policies seemed to be working in some ways, since high ...
Dedication of Vietnam War Memorial in Washington.
With the dedication of the Vietnam War Memorial in Washington, D.C. in 1982, it seemed that the divisions of the Vietnam War era were finally ...
Dramatic footage of a space shuttle blastoff.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Dramatic footage of a space shuttle ...
Ex-Congresswoman Geraldine Ferraro (b. 1935).
Ex-Congresswoman Geraldine Ferraro (b. 1935). In 1984, for the first time, a woman was one of the two candidates on the presidential ticket for a ...
Governor Michael Dukakis.
The Democratic party hoped to capitalize on the loss of faith in the Reagan administration's programs (although not in Reagan himself) in the ...
Gulf War prompted demonstrations.
The Gulf War prompted demonstrations reminiscent of the Vietnam War. These antiwar demonstrators paraded in Lafayette Park across Pennsylvania ...
Hostages released upon Reagan's inauguration,
On the day of Reagan's inauguration, the Iranians released the American hostages they had held for 444 days. One of Reagan's first public actions ...
Japanese automated automobile plant.
American laborers also lost ground to the rising efficiency of Japanese automated factories such as this one. In the 1980s and 1990s, American ...
Part of President George Bush's inaugural address.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A part of President George Bush's inaugural address in which he advocates putting Vietnam behind ...
President Bush opens Madrid Peace Conference.
President Bush opens the Madrid Peace Conference, October 30, 1991. In the aftermath of the Gulf War, Bush sought to take an active role in ...
President Reagan signs the tax cut bill.
President Reagan had promised to cut taxes in the belief that, by increasing the prosperity of the "supply side" of the economy, recovery would ...
Reagan emphasizing importance of space shuttle.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A part of a July 4, 1982 speech by President Ronald Reagan emphasizing the importance of the ...
Remains of Beirut Marine battalion barracks.
An aerial view of the remains of the Beirut U.S. Marine battalion headquarters and barracks. In October 1983 a terrorist attack destroyed the ...
Ronald Reagan (b. 1911).
Ronald Reagan (b. 1911). The public's dissatisfaction with President Carter as an outsider unable to deal with Congress and negotiate solutions ...
Ronald Reagan and Mikhail Gorbachev.
Ronald Reagan and Mikhail Gorbachev (b. 1931). It was clear in 1984 that the Democratic challengers could not unseat the popular Ronald Reagan. ...
Sally Ride and others.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): A brief film showing the shuttle climbing after takeoff; Sally Ride and others in the astronauts' ...
Sally Ride became one of first women astronauts.
The space program was also opened up to women astronauts. Sally Ride (b. 1951) became one of the "thirty-five new guys" recruited into the 1978 ...
Soldiers in the Gulf War.
U.S. soldiers in the Gulf War. Even as the cold war ended, however, the U.S. faced a new confrontation in the Middle East. In August of 1990, ...
The Challenger exploded right after launch.
The space program also suffered a major setback during Reagan's second administration when the space shuttle Challenger exploded right after ...
The U.S. invasion of Panama.
The U.S. invasion of Panama. Reagan had opposed Jimmy Carter's treaty agreeing to the return of the

Panama Canal Zone to Panama in the year 2000, ...

U.S. 82nd Airborne Division passes Granadians.
Soldiers of the U.S. 82nd Airborne Division pass a group of Granadians while on patrol in their country. The Carter administration's failure to ...

Wilma Rudolph won 3 gold medals at 1960 olympics.
In sports, women began to break through as major professional money winners. As early as 1960, an African-American woman, track star Wilma ...

The 1990s and the Beginning of the New Millennium

Viking 2 view of Mars.
This boulder-strewn field of red rocks reaches to the horizon nearly two miles from where the Viking 2 spacecraft rests on the Utopian Plain of ...

Voyager 1 view of Saturn's rings.
A view of Saturn's rings. Voyager 1 flew by Saturn on November 12, 1980 at a range of 444,000 miles, allowing observers for the first time a ...

1990s space instruments detect Universe origins.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): 1990s space instruments detect evidence of the origins of the ...

A laptop computer.
A laptop computer. The world facing these and other problems also has powerful technological tools it can harness for help in solving them. The ...

A woman injecting heroin.
A woman injecting heroin. The growing use of drugs in America's cities, and the spread of the drug culture to younger people, has created both ...

Air travel.
Air travel, once a luxury for the few, has increasingly become available for the many, helped by the development of jumbo jets such as the Boeing ...

An AIDS poster.
An AIDS poster. Drug use is one of the contributing factors to another threat of the late 20th century: the growing and worldwide epidemic of ...

Anti-crack graffiti on a New York City wall.
Anti-crack graffiti on a New York City wall. The increase in drug use and its impact on children in inner cities is both a sign of and a result ...

Chart, governors shift 1994.
This chart shows the numbers of Democratic and Republican state governors who have been elected since 1970, and the shift to a majority of ...

Chart, Republican shift 1994.
This chart shows the recent history of the control of the House of Representatives by the Democrats, and the shift from Democratic to Republican ...

Chart, Senate shift 1994.
This chart shows the recent history of the Democratic control of the U.S. Senate, and the shift from Democratic to Republican control in the ...

George Walker Bush, 43rd U.S. President.
George Walker Bush, the 43rd President of the U.S., was born July 6, 1946 in New Haven, Connecticut. His father, George Herbert Walker Bush, had ...

Hillary Rodham Clinton and President Clinton.
Hillary Rodham Clinton and President Clinton. When William J. Clinton became president in January 1993 he faced many problems, but was able to ...

Men & women in Maryland unemployment office 1992.
Men and women awaiting their turns in a Maryland unemployment office in January 1992. A recession stemming from the stock market crash and the ...

Osama bin Laden.
Osama bin Mohammed bin Laden, the 17th son of the wealthiest construction businessman in Saudi Arabia, was said to have received more than $250 ...

President Clinton and House Speaker Gingrich.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): President Clinton and House Speaker ...

Secretary of State Colin Powell.
Colin L. Powell was born in Harlem, New York, in 1937, the son of Jamaican immigrants. He grew up in the South Bronx. In 1958 he received a ...

Senator Robert Dole (R-KS).
Former Senator Robert J. Dole (R., KS, b. 1923) was a county attorney, a state legislator, a member of the House of Representatives, the chairman ...

Speaker of the House Newt Gingrich (R-GA).
Speaker of the House Newt Gingrich (R., GA). Newton Leroy “Newt” Gingrich was born in 1943 in Harrisburg, Pennsylvania. After graduating from ...

The "butterfly ballot" and "hanging chads."
The "butterfly ballot" and "hanging chads" (red arrows). The election of 2000 was was the only election in modern times to be contested, and it ...

The "Contract With America."
The Contract with America was the keystone of the successful Republican campaign to take over Congress in

1994. This “agenda for national ...

The health care debate.

The health care debate. President Clinton, with Democratic majorities in Congress and the Senate, chose as his major legislative initiative a ...

The Oklahoma City bombing.

A closeup view of the aftermath of the Oklahoma City bombing. A homemade bomb in a truck blew open this federal office building in Oklahoma City ...

The Rabin/ Arafat accords, 9/13/94.

Israeli prime minister Yitzhak Rabin (1922-1995) and Yasser Arafat (b. 1929), head of the Palestine Liberation Organization, shake hands to show ...

The Senate Impeachment trial of Bill Clinton.

The Constitution states that the President (and other officers) "shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, ...

The World Trade Center attack, 9-11-2001.

Terrorists carried out the most destructive attacks on the U.S. in its history September 11th, 2001, when four hijacked airliners crashed into ...

U.S. Vice President Richard Cheney.

Richard Bruce Cheney was born January 30, 1941 in Lincoln, Nebraska, where his father had been an employee of the U.S. Department of ...

Vermont Senator James Jeffords, Independent.

Senator James Jeffords of Vermont altered the political landscape dramatically when he announced his decision to change his party affiliation ...

The Aftermath of Watergate: Domestic and International Politics Under Ford and

A map of Israel and neighboring states.

A map of Israel and neighboring states. Carter achieved both an early triumph in diplomatic negotiations about this region, in his attempt to ...

A map of the Caribbean region.

A map of the Caribbean region. Carter regarded one of his most important successes as the improvement of relations in Latin ...

Anwar Sadat, Jimmy Carter, and Menachem Begin.

Presidents Anwar Sadat of Egypt (1918-1981) and Jimmy Carter of the U.S., and Prime Minister Menachem Begin of Israel (1913-1992), sign the Camp ...

Carter after signing of Panama Canal Treaty.

Carter and representatives of other nations after the signing of the Panama Canal Treaty, July 6, 1978. The treaty promised that America would ...

Carter, Begin & Sadat after signing of Accords.

Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Color film footage showing Carter, Begin and Sadat after the signing of the ...

Election of 1976 gave Carter a narrow victory.

The election of 1976 gave Carter a narrow victory over Ford. To illustrate their commitment to unostentatious living and their identity with the ...

Ex-governor Jerry Apodaca (b. 1930).

Ex-governor Jerry Apodaca (b. 1930). Dramatic changes marked the eleven brief years between the time when vice president Lyndon Johnson became ...

Governor Raul H. Castro (b. 1916).

Arizona also elected a Mexican-American to be its chief executive in 1975 when it chose former ambassador to El Salvador and Bolivia Raul H. ...

James Earl (Jimmy) Carter, Jr.

James Earl (Jimmy) Carter, Jr., campaigning in 1976. Although generally regarded as honest and untainted by the scandals of the Nixon ...

President Carter with Rev. Martin Luther King, Sr.

President Jimmy Carter with the Rev. Martin Luther King, Sr., father of the slain civil rights leader. Carter portrayed himself throughout the ...

Shah Mohammed Reza Pahlavi (1919-1980).

The Camp David Accords were a genuine breakthrough in Middle East diplomacy, but events in Iran dominated most of Carter's presidency. Since the ...

The Kennedy Years

A Soviet missile base in Cuba.

A Soviet missile base in Cuba. After the Bay of Pigs, the Soviet Union became Cuba's principal ally, sending missiles and other military supplies ...

A street scene in the mining town of Lansford, PA.

A street scene in the mining town of Lansford, Pennsylvania, photographed by Jack Delano in August of 1940 would have changed little by the ...

American & Vietnamese officers at Vietnamese base,

American and Vietnamese officers confer at a Vietnamese jungle patrol base in April 1961. Kennedy and Rusk followed a similar policy of exporting ...

Author Michael Harrington (1928-1969).

Author Michael Harrington (1928-1969), in an influential 1962 book The Other America , called the attention of Kennedy and others to the ...

Casket bearing Kennedy's body taken from Capitol.
At Kennedy's funeral, the casket bearing his body is taken from the Capitol, where it had lain in state, in preparation for the solemn parade by ...
Castro descends from tank at Bay of Pigs, 1961
Castro (at right) descends from a tank at the Bay of Pigs, April 17-19, 1961. The Eisenhower administration had begun training anti-Castro Cubans ...
Contrasts business prosperity & urban poverty.
This alley in West Dallas, Texas, contrasted the high-rise prosperity of a thriving downtown business sector with the conditions of the urban ...
Eleanor Roosevelt support benefited Kennedy.
Kennedy also benefited from the support of Eleanor Roosevelt, shown here as she opened the Kennedy campaign headquarters in New York City. ...
Family watches a debate between Kennedy and Nixon.
Photographer Don Phelan and his family watch a debate between Kennedy and Nixon, September 26, 1960. Nominated by the Democrats as their ...
Fatal shots hit President Kennedy, Nov. 22, 1963.
On November 22, 1963, President Kennedy and his wife Jacqueline were in Texas to mend political fences within the splintered Texas Democratic ...
Fidel Castro enters Havana, January 8, 1959.
Fidel Castro enters Havana, January 8, 1959. The Alliance for Progress was in part an attempt to shore up the economies and ensure orderly social ...
Film footage concerning the Cuban missile crisis.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Film footage concerning the Cuban missile ...
Governor George Wallace blocks university doorway.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Governor George Wallace stands in the doorway of the university. Attorney General Katzenbach ...
John F. Kennedy, youngest American president.
John F. Kennedy became, at 43, the youngest American president and its first Catholic one, when he was sworn in as the 35th president on January ...
John F. Kennedy's coffin being lowered into grave.
John F. Kennedy's flag-draped coffin is lowered into the grave, November 24, 1963, at Arlington National ...
John Glenn in spacecraft, on first orbit of earth.
John Glenn in the spacecraft, on his first orbit of the earth, February 20, ...
Kennedy announces The Alliance for Progress.
Shortly after creating the Peace Corps, Kennedy announced a more extensive plan for bringing American aid to the Western hemisphere. The Alliance ...
Kennedy assassination film footage.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Film footage on the Kennedy assassination: the grassy knoll; the textbook warehouse window; ...
Kennedy brothers as Congressional investigators.
The Kennedy brothers as Congressional investigators. John Kennedy, the son of the powerful and wealthy Boston Irish political figure Joseph P. ...
Kennedy's speech announcing goal of going to moon.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): President John F. Kennedy's May 25, 1961, speech announcing the goal of going to the ...
Largest of civil rights marches, Aug. 28, 1963.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Scenes of the quarter of a million Americans in the largest of all civil rights marches, August ...
Lee Harvey Oswald (1939-1963).
The man who had fired the shots at Kennedy was Lee Harvey Oswald (1939-1963), a Cuban sympathizer who had spent time in the Soviet Union. Two ...
Lyndon B. Johnson is sworn in.
A stunned and sober Lyndon B. Johnson, with his wife Lady Bird looking on at his left and a blood-spattered Jacqueline Kennedy to his right, is ...
Map, the United States in 1960.
A map of the United States in ...
Map: electoral vote, 1960 election.
A map showing the electoral votes in the election of 1960. The election was a close one, with the Democrats keeping control of most of the South ...
Marine Special Forces unit patrolls isolated area.
A Marine Special Forces unit patrolling an isolated area of South Vietnam in June 1964. Kennedy's and Rusk's policies of "flexible response" ...
Mercury-Atlas 6 rocket blasts off.
The Mercury-Atlas 6 rocket carrying John H. Glenn Jr. (b. 1921) into space blasts off from Cape Canaveral, Florida. One aspect of U.S. technology ...
Multitude of marchers around the reflecting pool.
The multitude of marchers gathered around the reflecting pool on August 28 was the largest protest march yet held in the U.S. capital. Despite ...
Non-violent civil rights demonstrations; 1960s
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): Motion picture footage about the non-violent civil rights

demonstrations of the early 1960s, with ...

NY had large groups of Puerto Rican Americans.
Many of the poor who were crowded into urban ghettoes were non-whites: African Americans, Mexican-Americans, Puerto Ricans, and Native Americans ...

President John F. Kennedy in his rocking chair.
President John F. Kennedy in his rocking chair. Despite the optimism of his supporters, Kennedy faced formidable challenges both at home and ...

Puerto Rican migrant workers on fruit farm.
Migrant workers also represented an important segment of the poor whose plight Kennedy's "New Frontier" economic programs promised to address. ...

Randolph and Rustin among marchers in Washington.
Outrage at the growing violence in the South led Kennedy to propose federal legislation that would outlaw discrimination in elections and in ...

Tenant farm in Johnson County, North Carolina.
Though thousands of African Americans had migrated northward to wartime jobs during the 1940s, many others remained behind in tenant farms like ...

The Kennedy funeral party.
The John F. Kennedy funeral party leaving the White House on November 24, 1963. To the shocked and grieving nation, the dignity with which the ...

The three Kennedy brothers.
The three Kennedy brothers. By the summer of 1963, the Kennedy administration was ready to stand behind Rustin, Randolph, and King in their ...

Thousands came to Kennedy's inaugural parade.
Despite the bitter cold, thousands of Americans lined Pennsylvania Avenue to cheer the passing of the torch to a new generation. Kennedy's young ...

Unemployment compensation office; Newark, NJ.
An unemployment compensation office in Newark, New Jersey. Slow economic growth and an accompanying rise in unemployment were two of the most ...

The Nixon Administration

Air Force One arrives at Beijing, Feb. 1972.
The President's airplane, Air Force One , arrives at Beijing (then called Peking in the American press) on February 21, 1972. The renewed ...

Air Force experimental jet (silent).
Video sequence (silent, on side two of the videodisc): Air Force experimental rocket ...

Apollo 11 moon mission.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The Apollo 11 moon mission: the liftoff, approach to and landing on the moon, and the astronauts ...

Apollo/Saturn 204 suffers internal fire.
The road to the successful moon mission of 1969 was not always smooth. In January 1967 this Apollo/Saturn 204 spacecraft suffered an internal ...

Armstrong and Aldrin on moon’s surface.
Armstrong and Aldrin descended from the command module Columbia to the moon's surface in this lunar lander during the Apollo 11 mission. On ...

CH-47 helicopter lifting a 105 mm howitzer.
This CH-47 "Chinook" helicopter lifting a 105 mm howitzer was taking part in the evacuation of a "fire support base," part of the withdrawal of ...

Earth as it appears from space.
This dramatic photograph of the earth as it appears from space was made during the last lunar landing mission in the Apollo series (Apollo 17). ...

Gloria Steinem (b. 1934).
Gloria Steinem (b. 1934) in a Washington press conference, January 12, 1972. Steinem and others began publishing Ms . magazine in 1971, the ...

Henry Kissinger (b. 1923).
As his principal foreign policy advisor, Nixon turned to the German-born Henry A. Kissinger (b. 1923), a Harvard-trained expert on international ...

In Beijing, Nixon met with Chairman Mao Ze Dung.
While in Beijing, Nixon met with Chairman Mao Ze Dung, as recorded in this February 29, 1972 ...

Jerry and Betty Ford arrive at the White House.
Jerry and Betty Ford arrive at the White House. In October of 1973, while the Watergate scandal was unwinding, vice president Spiro Agnew (see J ...

Kissinger en route to Paris negotiations.
In this photograph, Henry Kissinger is shown in a discussion aboard Air Force One en route to Paris on January 20 to attend the negotiations ...

Lunar module Eagle returns to Columbia .
The lunar module Eagle , its legs and landing stage left on the moon, returns to the Columbia command module during the Apollo 11 mission. The ...

Map: Electoral and popular votes, 1968 election.
A map showing the electoral vote in the election of 1968. The Nixon-Agnew ticket won a strong victory (56.1 percent) in the electoral college, ...

Nixon and party tour the Great Wall of China.
Nixon's China visit was recorded in minute detail by television and newspaper cameramen. Here, he and his party tour the Great Wall of China. ...
Nixon announced the ceasefire on television.
Nixon appeared on television January 23, 1973, to announce the ceasefire. The agreement ended nearly 12 years of warfare in which 58,000 ...
Nixon meets with USSR Chairman Leonid Brezhnev.
Richard Nixon meets with USSR Chairman Leonid Brezhnev (1906-1982) in Moscow, May ...
Nixon's aircraft arrives in Moscow, May 22, 1972.
Nixon's aircraft arrives in Moscow, May 22, 1972. Nixon's reestablishment of friendly exchanges with China also led to a lessening of tensions ...
Nixon's farewell to the White House staff.
The investigation into Watergate, the resulting House of Representatives vote to impeach him, the likelihood of a Senate vote to impeach, and the ...
Nixon's vice presidential candidate Spiro Agnew.
Nixon chose as his vice presidential candidate Spiro Theodore Agnew (b. 1918), the Republican governor of Maryland. Agnew was an outspoken critic ...
President Nixon's "withdraw with honor" TV speech.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): President Richard M. Nixon's "withdraw with honor" TV ...
President Richard M. Nixon's inaugural address.
President Richard M. Nixon delivering his inaugural address, January 20, 1969. Nixon's presidency witnessed both some of the most significant ...
Saturn 204 fire slows moon program.
The Saturn 204 fire slowed but did not stop the moon program. On July 16, 1969 Apollo 11 lifted off of the launch pad at Cape Kennedy, carrying ...
Scenes of B-52s dropping bombs.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): scenes of B-52s dropping bombs. Narrator talks about Cambodia bombing, the costs of the war in ...
Senator Sam Ervin (1896-1985).
Senator Sam Ervin (1896-1985). However, as the months went by it became increasingly evident that the Watergate break-in was a very serious ...
Space program's success owed to Wernher von Braun.
The space program which had begun under Kennedy came to dramatic fruition in the Nixon years. Part of the success of that program was due to the ...
The American flag on the moon's surface.
The American flag on the moon's surface, the clear footprints of the astronauts, and the awkward space suits of Armstrong and Aldrin became part ...
The Apollo-Soyuz Test Project.
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The Apollo-Soyuz Test ...
The crisis that destroyed Nixon as president.
The second crisis, and the one that destroyed Nixon as president, grew out of a burglary that had taken place during the election campaign. Five ...
The first walk in space (silent).
Video sequence (on side two of the videodisc): The first walk in space, made by astronaut Ed ...
The Supreme Court building in Washington.
The Supreme Court building in Washington. The issue that plunged the women's rights movement into the greatest controversy was that of abortion, ...
Triumphant Nixon after SALT I meeting in Moscow.
A triumphant Nixon returned to the U.S. after his historic meeting in Moscow to announce to a joint session of the U.S. Congress the signing of ...

Western Civilization

Albert Schweitzer discusses his work, 1960.
Audio recording (image is Albert Schweitzer in French Equatorial Africa): Albert Schweitzer discusses his life work and philosophy (in French), ...
Announcing the Marshall Plan, 1947.
Audio recording (image is Marshall): George Marshall announces the Marshall Plan for European Recovery, June 5, 1947: (AUDIO START) "It is ...
Austrians cheer Hitler, March 14, 1938.
Audio recording (image is Austrians greeting Hitler): Austrians cheer Hitler (in German), March 14, 1938. The English translation: (AUDIO ...
Campaign speech before British election of 1929.
Audio recording (image is Stanley Baldwin, Conservative prime minister): Part of a Stanley Baldwin campaign speech before the special election, ...
Churchill's first speech as Prime Minister, 1940.
Audio recording (image is Winston Churchill): Part of Churchill's first speech as Prime Minister, in May of 1940: (AUDIO START) "Having received ...
David Ben-Gurion on establishing Israel, 1947.
Audio recording (image is Jewish refugees arriving at Tel Aviv harbor, 1948): David Ben-Gurion presents the

case for establishing Israel, in ...

DeGaulle thanks U.S. for wartime help, 1945.
Audio recording (image is Charles de Gaulle): Charles DeGaulle thanked Americans for their wartime help on August 22, 1945: (AUDIO START) "On ...

Edward VIII gives up England's throne, 1936.
Audio recording (image is Edward VIII's instrument of abdication): Part of the abdication speech of Edward VIII, December 11, 1936: (AUDIO ...

Emperor Franz Josef's voice, 1900.
Audio recording (image is Francis Joseph I, Austrian Emperor): In 1900, the voice of Emperor Franz Josef of Austria was captured by a then-new ...

Eyewitness report on Madrid under seige, 1938.
Audio recording (image is a Spanish Civil War poster, 1937): An eyewitness description of Madrid under seige by fascists in March of 1938: ...

FDR's address on the need for "lend-lease," 1940.
Audio recording (image is Lend-Lease goods from U.S. in England): FDR's address on the need for "lend-lease," December 29, 1940: (AUDIO START) ...

Gen. Eisenhower's D-Day radio broadcast to Europe.
Audio recording (image is Normandy beach after landing on June 6, 1944): General Eisenhower made a radio broadcast on D-Day: (AUDIO START) ...

Gen. Montgomery speaks to troops before D-Day.
Audio recording (image is British Field Marshal Bernard L. Montgomery): General Montgomery speaking to troops just before the D-Day invasion: ...

General Jodl's remarks at German surrender, 1945.
Audio recording (image is Germany surrendering, May 7, 1945): General Jodl's remarks after the signing of the surrender, May 7, 1945 (in German). ...

German Chancellor speaks on Germany in 1932.
Audio recording (image is Captain Franz von Papen): German Chancellor Franz Von Papen speaking on the political and economic situation in ...

German national anthem at French surrender, 1940.
Audio recording (image is Hitler, elated over the capitulation of France): (AUDIO START) An on-site recording of the German national anthem ...

Goebbels rallies a book-burning crowd, May, 1933.
Audio recording (image is Nazis burning "un-German" books): Goebbels rallies a crowd at a book-burning, May 10, 1933 (in German). Here is an ...

Hitler claims Austria, March 15, 1938.
Audio recording (image is swearing allegiance to Hitler in Vienna): Hitler proclaims Austria part of the German Reich, March 15, 1938 (in ...

Hitler declares war on Poland.
Audio recording (image is Hitler calling for war against Poland): Hitler adresses the Reichstag and declares war on Poland. Here is an English ...

Hitler speaking in 1933.
Audio recording (image is Himmler, Lutze, Hess, Hitler saluting followers, 1934): Hitler speaking in 1933 (in German). Here is an English ...

Jesse Owen's comments on 1936 Berlin Olympics.
Audio recording (image is Jesse Owens in 1936 Olympic Games at Berlin): Some of Jesse Owen's comments on his return from the 1936 Berlin ...

King George V speaks, May 6, 1935.
Audio recording (image is England's George V): King George V speaks at the Silver Jubilee, May 6, 1935: (AUDIO START) "To the children, I would ...

King George VI speaks V-E Day, May 8, 1945.
Audio recording (image is the British royal family and Churchill): King George VI on V-E Day, May 8, 1945: (AUDIO START) "Today we give thanks ...

Leon Trotsky speaking in 1938.
Audio recording (image is Leon Trotsky): Leon Trotsky speaking in 1938: (AUDIO START) "Dear friends, we are not a party as other parties. Our ...

Nazis enter their pleas at Nuremberg, 1945.
Audio recording (image is top Nazi leaders on trial at Nuremberg): Some of the major Nazi war crime defendants enter their pleas at Nuremberg, ...

Opening of the Nuremberg war crimes trials, 1945.
Audio recording (image is top Nazi leaders on trial at Nuremberg): Part of Supreme Court Justice Allied Prosecutor Robert Jackson's opening ...

Premier addresses France on Sudeten crisis, 1938.
Audio recording (image is French Premier Eduard Daladier): Premier Daladier addressing France on September 28, 1938, during the Sudeten crisis ...

Prime Minister announces war with Germany, 1939.
Audio recording (image is Hitler calling for war against Poland): Prime Minister Chamberlain announces war with Germany, September 3, 1939: ...

Radio Warsaw plays Chopin while under seige, 1939.
Audio recording (image is Warsaw citizens as Germans enter the city): (AUDIO START) In an act of defiance, Radio Warsaw plays Chopin's Polonaise ...

Report from Nuremburg on Goering's suicide.
Audio recording (image is Goering at the Nuremberg war crimes trial): Part of a press pool report from Nuremburg on Goering's suicide: (AUDIO ...
Rudyard Kipling speaks on English defense, 1935.
Audio recording (image is Rudyard Kipling): Rudyard Kipling speaks against England's lack of proper defense, speaking at a dinner of the Royal ...
Schmeling talks about Joe Louis, June 1936.
Audio recording (image is Max Schmeling training for fight with Joe Louis): Max Schmeling talks about knocking out Joe Louis, June 1936: (AUDIO ...
Sigmund Freud, speaking in 1938.
Audio recording (image is Sigmund Freud): Sigmund Freud, speaking in 1938: (AUDIO START) "...a new science, psychoanalysis, a part of ...
Sounds of a 1940 air raid on London.
Audio recording (image is the London underground, used as air raid shelter): (AUDIO START) Sounds of a 1940 air raid on London. (AUDIO END) ...
Sounds recorded at the battle of Warsaw.
Audio recording (image is Warsaw citizens as Germans enter the city): (AUDIO START) Sounds recorded at the battle of Warsaw. (AUDIO END) ...
Stalin speaks to Russian people, V-J Day, 1945.
Audio recording (image is Joseph Stalin): The English translation of Josef Stalin's broadcast to the Russian people on V-J Day, 1945: (AUDIO ...
Statement on Poland's defense, May 16, 1941.
Audio recording (image is Paderewski, pianist, composer, Polish President): Ignance Jan Paderewski discusses Poland and the importance of ...
Statement on the Berlin Airlift, 1948.
Audio recording (image is Berlin people watching a USAF C-54 in flight): General Clay, spokesman for the U.S. Air Force, is interviewed in June, ...
Truman discusses decisions made at Potsdam, 1945.
Audio recording (image is Stalin, Truman, Churchill at the Potsdam Conference): President Truman discusses decisions regarding Poland made at ...
U.S. Ambassador speaks on the Berlin blockade.
Audio recording (image is one of first flights in the Berlin airlift, 1948): The American Ambassador to the U.N. speaks about the Berlin ...
Wilson's sad statement on the League of Nations.
Audio recording (image is President Wilson in Paris): Woodrow Wilson expresses his sadness and anger at the failure of the League of Nations and ...
Winston Churchill speaks on V-E Day, May 8, 1945.
Audio recording (image is the British royal family and Churchill): Winston Churchill speaks on V-E Day, May 8, 1945: (AUDIO START) "The German ...

Section A: Early Middle Eastern Civilizations to 500 B.C.

Overview: Middle Eastern Civilizations to 500 B.C.
A brief video Overview of the history of early Middle Eastern civilizations to 500 B.C. Transcript: Our human ancestors without a written ...

Ancient Egypt

A topographical map of Egypt and nearby areas.
A topographical map of ancient Egypt, the Sinai Peninsula, and the Red Sea. Ancient Egypt was effectively isolated from other civilizations by ...
Map: The ancient Egyptian civilization.
A map of the ancient Egyptian civilization. The Nile valley supplied abundant food to those who lived there, while the mountains and desert on ...

Ancient Egypt in Decline,1070-1030 B.C./Wars to Control Palestine

A closeup of King Taharqo's wife.
A closeup of King Taharqo's wife. This figure was at the foot of the statue of the pharaoh in the Great Court of the Temple of ...
Cartouches representing captured Hebrew cities.
A section of the cartouches representing Hebrew cities captured by Pharaoh Sheshonk I (940-919 B.C.). This relief is in the Temple of Amun at ...
Goddess of the Theban Nome with captured cities.
The goddess of the Theban Nome, holding cords binding five rows of cartouches representing captured Hebrew ...
Hebrews captured by Sheshonk I.
Hebrews captured by Pharaoh Sheshonk I (22nd dynasty , ca. 940 B.C.). These two figures are part of the larger relief of captives presented to ...
Relief about military campaigns of Sheshonk I.
A relief about the military campaigns of Pharaoh Sheshonk I. This carving is from the Triumphal Procession of Sheshonk I (940-919 B.C.), a ...
Statue of King Taharqo in the Great Court.
A defaced statue of King Taharqo (25th dynasty , 688-663 B.C.). Taharqo attempted to defend Syria and

Palestine against the expanding power of ...

Burial Practices in Ancient Egypt

A pathway in the Valley of the Queens.
A pathway leading to several tombs in the Valley of the Queens, near Thebes. In the background loom the almost-sheer mountains surrounding the ...

A wall-painting in the Valley of the Queens.
A wall-painting from a tomb in the Valley of the Queens, near Thebes. In this painting, the king stands embracing his departed wife for one last ...

The Valley of the Kings near Thebes.
The Valley of the Tombs of the Kings near Thebes, the ancient capital of Upper Egypt. This famous valley contains the rock-hewn tombs of ...

Thebes seen from the Nile.
Thebes, here seen from the Nile River, was the capital of Upper Egypt.. The area in front of the hills is where the queens, princes and nobles ...

Daily Life in Ancient Egypt

A brick factory near Thebes, Egypt.
A brick factory near Thebes on the banks of the Nile River in ...

A confined heifer nursing a calf.
On an ancient Egyptian farm, a confined heifer is nursing a calf that is tied to its leg. From a relief in the mastaba of Governor Ti at ...

A pile of sun-dried bricks near Thebes, Egypt.
A pile of sun-dried bricks near Thebes. Straw continues to be an important ingredient in Egyptian brick manufacture, just as it was during the ...

A traditional Egyptian artist carving alabaster.
An Egyptian artisan carving vessels of oriental alabaster, also known as marble, using ancient methods. The ancient Egyptians made bowls, ...

Agriculture in the Nile River Delta.
Agriculture in the Nile River Delta. Over the course of centuries the waters of the Nile have created a rich agricultural region in the Nile ...

An ancient Egyptian ship.
An ancient Egyptian ship. Governor Ti (see also A 66) is seated in the bow of a ship on the way to inspect some of his estates in the Nile ...

An Egyptian man plowing and a woman sowing seed.
An Egyptian man plowing and a woman sowing ...

An irrigation pump on an Egyptian farm near Luxor.
An irrigation pump on an Egyptian farm near Luxor. Similar means of moving water were employed in ancient ...

Ancient Egyptian medical instruments.
Ancient Egyptian medical instruments. Among these instruments are knives, pincers, scissors, spoons, a saw, various bowls, and a balance. The ...

Egyptian nobleman hunts hippopotamuses.
An Egyptian nobleman hunts hippopotamuses in the Nile. In ancient Egypt the hunt was a major source of diversion for members of the nobility and ...

Fishing in the Nile.
Fishing in the Nile. Fish from the river provided an important source of food for the ancient Egyptians. These fishermen are using a woven reed ...

Hieroglyphs: the sun-disk and a bird.
Hieroglyphs: the sun-disk and a bird. The round disk represents the Sun "Re" (or Ra) and the bird signifies "Son of." The ancient Egyptians ...

Oarsmen on an Egyptian ship.
The oarsmen on Governor Ti's ship. Relief in the mastaba of Governor Ti at ...

Papyrus plants growing in the Nile Delta.
Papyrus plants growing in a channel of the Nile Delta in Egypt. Papyrus (cyperus papyrus,) a member of the sedge family, was important in the ...

Reconstruction of villa of Old Kingdom noble.
A reconstruction of the villa and garden of an Egyptian noble of the Old Kingdom (ca. 2664-2155 B.C.). The houses of Egyptian nobles were made ...

Scribes and messengers of an Egyptian noble.
The scribes and messengers of an Egyptian noble. The scribes write on papyrus with styluses; to their right are three messengers who sit ready ...

The face of an Egyptian scribe in Cairo Museum.
The face of an ancient Egyptian scribe, in the Cairo Museum. Scribes formed an elite in the ancient Egyptian civilization. A trained scribe did ...

The Red and the Black Land.
The Red and the Black Land. A clear line of demarcation between the arable Black Land and the sterile Red Land of the desert has for time ...

The Rosetta Stone, key to the hieroglyphic texts.
The Rosetta Stone. Carved on this ancient Egyptian stone are inscriptions that resulted in the deciphering and understanding of hieroglyphics . ...

The sun-disk "Re" and the Scarab.
The sun-disk "Re" and the scarab. In the language of the ancient Egyptians, the scarab symbolized the verb "to become/to remain." This ...
The wall of a village near Thebes, Egypt.
The wall of a village near Thebes, Egypt, shows the continuity of life on the Nile over the course of centuries. Building patterns have remained ...
Three Egyptian feluccas sailing the Nile River.
Three Egyptian feluccas sailing on the Nile River near Aswan. These boats are very similar to those used by the ancient Egyptians to carry ...
Ti and two helmsmen on one of his ships.
Governor Ti and two helmsmen on one of his ships. Because of their importance in his daily journey from the upper to the nether world, the ...
Traditional irrigation on an Egyptian farm.
Traditional irrigation as used today on an Egyptian farm near Luxor, with the Nile in the ...
Waterfowl and fish along the Nile.
Waterfowl and fish along the Nile. These birds appear to be ducks and geese. Relief in the mastaba of Governor Ti at ...

Necessities for the Afterlife

Carvings on the back of King Tutankhamen's chair.
Carvings on the back of King Tutankhamen's chair. Tutankhamen died at the age of eighteen after a very brief reign, from 1358 to 1350 B.C. ...
Entrances to tombs of Rameses VI and Tutankhamen.
Entrances to the tombs of Rameses VI and Tutankhamen (foreground) in the Valley of the Kings in ...
Model boat with oarsmen from Egyptian tomb.
A model boat with six oarsmen and two passengers from an Egyptian tomb of the New Kingdom, ca. 1500 ...

Preparing a Mummy

An Egyptian mummy from ca. 1000 B.C.
An Egyptian mummy from the 21st dynasty , ca 1000 ...
A statuette of a cat.
An Egyptian statuette of a cat. Animals sacred to certain gods, such as bulls, cats, and ibises, were often ...
An Egyptian mummy with amulets in the wrapping.
An Egyptian mummy with amulets at various points in the wrapping. 21st dynasty , ca. 1000 ...
Canopic jars from an Egyptian tomb.
Canopic jars from an Egyptian tomb. Part of the ancient Egyptian mummification process required removal and preservation of the body's internal ...
Exterior view of an Egyptian mummy case.
An exterior view of an inner Egyptian mummy case lid of the 21st dynasty , ca. 1000 B.C. During the burial process, the body was wrapped and ...
Hieroglyphics on a mummy cartonnage section.
Hieroglyphics on a mummy cartonnage section. The term "hieroglyphics," referring to the Egyptian script that employed picture-like symbols, ...
Scarabs from an Egyptian mummy.
Scarabs from an Egyptian mummy of the 21st dynasty , ca. 1000 B.C. The scarab, or scarabeaus , was a representation of the sun-god Re, and a ...
The head of a mummy.
The head of a mummy from the 21st dynasty , ca. 1000 ...
The inside of an Egyptian mummy case.
Inside the bottom half of an Egyptian mummy's inner casing. The large figure represents Hathor, the protecting goddess of the Theban necropolis ...
The upper half of an Egyptian mummy case.
The upper exterior of an Egyptian mummy case lid from the 21st dynasty , ca. 1000 ...

The Karnak Temple in Thebes, 2000-221 B.C.

A carved granite column in Hall of Thutmose III.
The top of one of the two granite columns used to support the roof of the Hall of Thutmose III. The decorative theme of these columns celebrated ...
An aisle in the Great Hypostyle Hall.
Looking down an aisle between huge columns in the Great Hypostyle Hall of the Temple of Amun at Karnak. The Great Hypostyle Hall was built by ...
An upper elevation in the Great Hypostyle Hall.
The columns and an upper window of the Great Hypostyle Hall of the Temple of Amun. In this hall the two center rows of columns were higher than ...
Avenue of Rams leading to Temple of Amun.
The Avenue of Rams leading to Pylon I of the Great Temple of Amun at Karnak. Pharaoh Rameses II (r. 1290 to 1223), flanked the ceremonial road ...
Closeup of the head of a ram.
The head of a ram, from the avenue leading to the Great Temple of ...
Entry to the Great Hypostyle Hall.
The entry to the Great Hypostyle Hall of the Temple of Amun at Karnak. The Great Hypostyle Hall, with its papyriform (an imitation of papyrus) ...

Hieroglyphs painted in the Great Hypostyle Hall.
Hieroglyphs painted beneath a beam within the Great Hypostyle Hall of the Temple of Amun. The ancient Egyptians decorated many parts of their ...
Osiris with "ankh" symbols.
A statue of Osiris in the Colonnade of Thutmose I in the Temple of Amun at Karnak. Osiris has his arms crossed, and he holds in each of his ...
Overview of the Temple of Khons at Karnak, Egypt.
An overview of the Temple of Khons at Karnak, Egypt. This monumental temple was built by Rameses III. Khons was the moon-god, the son of Amun ...
Panoramic view of the Temple of Amun at Karnak.
A panoramic view of the Great Temple of Amun at Karnak. Beginning in the 12th dynasty (ca. 1991-1786 B.C.), the Egyptian kings deposited booty ...
Pylon I of the Great Temple of Amun at Karnak.
Pylon I of the Great Temple of Amun at Karnak, Egypt. The first temple foundations here were laid by monarchs of the 12th dynasty , ca. 1991 to ...
Statue of Amun in Hall of Thutmose III.
The restored colossal statue of Amun in the Hall of Thutmose III (18th dynasty , r. 1490 to 1436 B.C.) in the Temple of Amun at Karnak. To the ...
The Great Court of the Temple of Amun at Karnak.
The Great Court of the Temple of Amun at Karnak. This court was built by rulers of the 22nd dynasty (940 to 730 B.C.) and measures 276 by 338 ...
The Great Festal Temple of Thutmose III.
Three aisles between columns in the Great Festal Temple of Thutmose III in the Temple of Amun at Karnak. The roof of this building remains ...
The head of Amun in the Hall of Thutmose III.
The head of the colossal statue of Amun in the Hall of Thutmose III (18th dynasty , 1490-1436) in the Temple of Amun at Karnak. The face is ...
The obelisk erected by Queen Hatshepsut.
The obelisk erected by Queen Hatshepsut in the Colonnade of Thutmose I, between Pylon IV and Pylon V in the Temple of Amun at Karnak. This pink ...
View through the gate of the Temple of Khons.
A view through the gate of the Temple of Khons at ...

The Middle and New Kingdoms, 2052-1075 B.C.

A village in Punt.
A village in Punt. A beehive hut reached by a ladder (center) is built over the water, which is represented by zigzag lines interspersed with ...
Amenhotep III at the Colossi of Memnon, Thebes.
The Colossi of Memnon at Thebes, Egypt. These statues of the 18th dynasty pharaoh Amenhotep III (r. 1397-1360 B.C.) originally stood in front ...
Detail showing the cartouche of Rameses II.
The cartouche seal held by Rameses II in his statue at Memphis, Egypt. A cartouche was an oval figure enclosing characters identifying its ...
Detail showing the face of Rameses II.
The carved face of Rameses II (ca. 1290-1223 B.C.), from the colossal statue of him which once stood in the Temple of Ptah at Memphis, Egypt. ...
Graffiti on one of the Colossi of Memnon.
Graffiti carved on the shin and calf of one the Colossi of Memnon at Thebes. Many of these inscriptions are in Greek and date from the Roman ...
Hatshepsut's trading expedition to Punt.
The Expedition to Punt, a relief series on the wall of the Temple of Hatshepsut at Deir-el-Bahari, Egypt. This relief records a trading ...
Seti I, the son of Rameses I (r. 1303-1290 B.C.)
Pharaoh Seti I, who ruled Egypt from 1303-1290 B.C. He was the son of Rameses I and is known for recovering Palestine, which formed part of ...
The Egyptian envoy and his entourage at Punt.
The Egyptian envoy and his entourage arrive at Punt. This image is from the reliefs in the Temple of Hatshepsut at ...
The Egyptian goddess Hathor.
The Egyptian goddess Hathor. Hathor was the deity of the sky, of joy, and of love, who was identified by the Greeks as Aphrodite. She was ...
The funerary Temple of Queen Hatshepsut.
The funerary Temple of Hatshepsut at Deir-el-Bahari, Egypt. Queen Markare Hatshepsut (18th dynasty , 1489-1469 B.C.) was the half-sister of ...
The god Amun-Re sits before a table of offerings.
The god Amun-Re sits before a table of offerings. Stone carvers working for subsequent kings used the god Amun to replace the original figure of ...
Thutmose III and his wife.
Thutmose III (r.1490-1436 B.C.) and his wife. This carving is a relief on one of the granite columns used to support the roof of his Hall of ...

The Old Kingdom, 2664-2155 B.C.

A painted relief of Governor Ti.
: A painted relief of Governor Ti carved in stone in his mastaba at Saqqara. The stylistic conventions of ancient Egyptian art were fully ...

Closeup of the stone blocks of Cheops' Pyramid.
: A closeup of the massive stone blocks of King Cheops' pyramid. A person standing beside one of the blocks provides scale. According to the ...

Female dancers entertain Governor Ti.
: Female dancers entertain Governor Ti at court. The Egyptians believed that funerary persons and items could accompany the dead person on his or ...

Governor Ti's staff of office.
: Governor Ti's staff of office. A staff, similar to the one held by the king, symbolized the authority that the governor wielded in the name of ...

Male servants bring food to a nobleman's meal.
: Male servants bring food for the nobleman's meal. These servants use yokes to carry jars of liquid, and baskets. Among the delicacies are a ...

Preparation of food for a nobleman's table.
: The preparation of food for a nobleman's table. Servants are grinding grain at top left; at top right a breeder with a drop of milk on his ...

Pyramid of Chephren and Great Sphinx, Giza.
: The pyramid of Chephren and the Great Sphinx, at Giza, Egypt. From the earliest period of Egyptian history, it was customary to represent the ...

Slavery in ancient Egypt.
: Slavery in ancient Egypt. Slavery was a reality of life for a large part of ancient Egypt's population. Even common people who were nominally ...

The face of the sphinx at Giza.
: The face of the sphinx at Giza. The face is thirteen feet wide; its features are believed to be those of Pharaoh Chephren (Khafre), who also ...

The Great Pyramid of Cheops at Giza, Egypt.
: The Great Pyramid of King Cheops or Khufu (4th dynasty , ca. 2650 B.C.) at Giza, Egypt. The length of each side is 746 feet, and the height is ...

The Great Sphinx at Giza, Egypt.
: The Great Sphinx at Giza, Egypt. This sphinx represented for the ancient Egyptians an embodiment of Re (or Ra), the sun god, who stood guard ...

The mastaba of Governor Ti at Saqqara, Egypt.
: The mastaba of Governor Ti (2494 to 2345 B.C.) at Saqqara, Egypt. A mastaba is an ancient Egyptian tomb having a rectangular base, sloping ...

The pyramid of Chephren at Giza, Egypt.
: The pyramid of King Chephren at Giza, Egypt. Chephren (of the 4th dynasty) ruled Egypt for approximately 25 years during the Old Kingdom ...

The pyramids at Giza, Egypt.
: The pyramids at Giza, Egypt. The pyramids were erected as tombs for Egyptian pharaohs of the Old Kingdom (ca. 2664 to 2155 B.C.). A total of ...

The step pyramid of Djoser at Saqqara, Egypt.
: The step pyramid of Djoser at Saqqara, Egypt. King Djoser (3rd dynasty) established Memphis as the permanent capital of Egypt during the Old ...

Three female servants carry food in baskets.
: Three female servants carry food in baskets on their heads to a nobleman's meal. The triangular shapes in the baskets are loaves of bread, which ...

Two sides of the step pyramid of Djoser.
: Two sides of the step pyramid of Djoser at Saqqara. The use of stone marked an important development in Egyptian building concepts: building for ...

The Ptolemaic Period

An exterior wall of the Temple of Horus at Edfu.
: An exterior wall of the Temple of Horus at Edfu. The relief carvings on this wall carried on a tradition of monumental decoration begun by ...

Courtyard of the Temple of Horus at Edfu, Egypt.
: The courtyard of the Temple of Horus at Edfu, Egypt. Horus was a sky-god in the shape of a man with a hawk’s head. He was associated with the ...

Horus conversing with King Ptolemy XII.
: Horus conversing with King Ptolemy XII (80-51 B.C.). This relief carving is from the façade of the Temple of Horus at ...

King Ptolemy XII striking down his foes.
: King Ptolemy XII (b. ca.51-d. ca. 47 B.C.) striking down his foes. This relief carving is from the façade of the Ptolemaic Temple of Horus at ...

The Pharos (lighthouse) of Alexandria, 280 B.C.
: The Pharos of Alexandria. This prototype of all lighthouses was one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. It was built on the island of ...

The Temple of Kom Ombo, Egypt.

The pronaos (vestibule) of the Great Temple at Kom Ombo, Egypt. This temple was dedicated to the crocodile-god Sobk and falcon-god Horus and was ...

The Temple at Abu Simbel

The Great Temple at Abu Simbel, Egypt.
The Great Temple at Abu Simbel, Egypt. It was built by Rameses II (1290 to 1223 B.C.), the best-known and longest-reigning of Egypt's rulers. ...

The Temple of Hathor at Abu Simbel.
The Temple of Hathor at Abu Simbel. At the top of these columns, the head and face of the goddess Hathor has been carved as a decoration. Photo ...

The Temple of Hathor at Abu Simbel.
The Temple of Hathor at Abu Simbel. This relatively small temple was built by Pharaoh Rameses II (1290 to 1223 B.C.) for his wife ...

The Temple of Amun at Luxor, 1567 to 1320 B.C.

A sphinx along the avenue at Luxor.
A sphinx along the avenue at Luxor. Once a year, the priests of Amun and the king would make a festal procession with the gods from Luxor to the ...

Columns from the temple of Amun at Luxor.
Clustered papyrus bud columns from Amenhotep III's court in the temple of Amun at Luxor. It was constructed during the 18th dynasty , 1570 to ...

Overview of the Temple of Amun at Luxor.
The Temple of Amun at Luxor. This temple dates back to the time of the New Kingdom (1570-1075 B.C.) and was built by Amenhotep III of the 18th ...

Rameses II, from the temple at Luxor.
A detail of a statue of Rameses II from the temple at Luxor. The prosperous and long reign of Rameses II ("the Great," 1290-1223 B.C.) marked ...

Statues between the columns at Luxor.
Statues between the columns of the temple at Luxor. This temple was built by Amenhotep III (r. 1397 to 1360 B.C.) and is much smaller and less ...

The avenue of sphinxes at the Temple of Luxor.
The avenue of sphinxes at the Temple of Luxor, built by Amenhotep III. At the far end of the avenue is the entrance to the Court of Amenhotep ...

The Court of Amenhotep III in the temple at Luxor.
The Court of Amenhotep III in the temple at Luxor. At the far end of this court is a colonnade leading to the Court of Rameses II. These ...

The sacred boat of Amun.
The sacred boat of Amun in the temple at Luxor. Every year the priests of Amun carried this boat, which contained a statue of the god, on a ...

The Valley of the Kings

Prayer to Osiris from the Book of the Dead.
The Prayer to Osiris from the Egyptian Book of the Dead, on papyrus. The man pleads with Osiris to forgive his ...

A painting representing the night sky.
A painting representing the night sky. Yellow stars float in a dark blue field on the ceiling of Rameses I's tomb in the Valley of the ...

A wall painting of the Book of the Dead.
A wall painting from the Book of the Dead. At center the deceased pharaoh (right) stands opposite to Maat, the goddess of truth, whose emblem ...

An antechamber in the tomb of Rameses I.
An antechamber in the tomb of Rameses I (r. 1304-1303 B.C.) in the Valley of the Kings. The pharaoh Amenhotep I (r. ca. 1545-1525 B.C.) stands ...

An Egyptian king journeys to the afterlife.
An Egyptian king journeys to the afterlife. The sacred boat makes its nocturnal journey in sequential panels representing various events ...

Detail of a sacred boat from a tomb ceiling.
A sacred boat: a god stands at the center of his boat while on the nocturnal journey. The god Re was depicted as a ram-headed deity atop the ...

Hieroglyphics in the Book of the Dead.
Hieroglyphics in the Book of the Dead. There were actually three Books of the Dead, containing all of the information essential to the ...

The sacred boat of Osiris.
The sacred boat of Osiris, a painting in a Valley of the Kings tomb. The pharaohs believed that in the after-life they would be absorbed by the ...

The sarcophagus room of Rameses I.
The sarcophagus room of Rameses I. The red granite sarcophagus, center, is covered with hieroglyphs painted yellow. In this chamber the ...

Early Human Development

A bison painting from the Altamira caves.
Another bison painting from the Altamira caves. The purpose of these paintings is unclear; the caves may

have been places of worship, and the ...

A drawing of a Stone Age axe.

A drawing of a Stone Age axe. This type of axe dated from the Neolithic Age, between 5000 and 4000 ...

A map of early human archaeological sites.

Early human archaeological sites. Archaeological discoveries have traced the origin of the human species to West Africa. From there early ...

A Minajora megalithic temple, Malta, ca. 3000 B.C.

A ca. 3000 B.C. Minajora temple constructed of megaliths on the island of Malta. ...

A prehistoric settlement in France.

A painting of a prehistoric settlement in the area of what is now Carcassonne, ...

A trail of prehistoric footprints.

A trail of footprints 3½ million years old found by Mary Leakey at Laetoli, Tanzania. Some of the oldest hominid evidence found in Africa, these ...

An Egyptian prehistoric wall painting.

A prehistoric Egyptian wall painting. It was painted in watercolor on a wall dating from the predynastic era and depicts the conquest of Egypt ...

Bison painting from caves at Altamira, Spain.

A prehistoric bison painting from the caves at Altamira, Spain. This image was found in the Painted Hall, a 300-yard deep limestone cave. This ...

Stonehenge.

Stonehenge, a closer view. The site of Stonehenge was revered; even before the megaliths were erected, the site was a center of ritual activity ...

Stonehenge.

Stonehenge. This complex of megaliths (which means large stones of ancient construction) was assembled 4000 years ago on the Salisbury plain in ...

The Avebury Circle in England.

The Avebury Circle in England. This Neolithic monument of concentric earthworks and stone megaliths was constructed between 2450 and 2200 B.C. ...

The standing stones of Callanish, Scotland.

The standing stones of Callanish. These megaliths were assembled on the island of Lewis in the Outer Hebrides of Scotland. Photo by Henry ...

Three reconstructed human busts.

The reconstructed busts of the three prehistoric humans shown in the preceding image. From left to right: Homo erectus, Neanderthal, and ...

Three reconstructed human skulls.

The reconstructed skulls of three prehistoric humans. From left to right: Homo erectus, Neanderthal, and Cro-Magnon. Homo erectus (formerly ...

Hebrew History

The Exodus

Aaron, the first Jewish High Priest.

A sculpture of Aaron, the first Jewish high priest. Aaron is shown wearing a high priestly cap and breastplate, and he holds a censer in his ...

Moses holding the Tablet of the Commandments.

A sculptured Moses holding the stone tablet with the Ten Commandments. There is scarcely a more important subject than this in Jewish and Muslim ...

Mt. Sinai, where Moses received Ten Commandments.

Mount Sinai, where Moses received the Ten Commandments. In the foreground here is the Monastery of St. Catherine, with Mount Sinai rising in the ...

Site of Hebrew camp near Mount Sinai.

The area of the Hebrew camp during the Exodus, near Mount Sinai in the Sinai desert in ...

St. Catherine's Monastery.

St. Catherine's Monastery. This Christian monastery, one of the oldest in the world, is dedicated to a fourth-century Egyptian Christian who was ...

The "burning bush," at the foot of Mt. Sinai.

The biblical "burning bush" within the walls of St. Catherine's Monastery at the foot of Mt. Sinai, Egypt. According to tradition this bush grew ...

The Ark of the Covenant, a relief in Capernaum.

The Ark of the Covenant, a relief in Capernaum, Israel. After bringing down the tablets containing the Ten Commandments, Moses put them in this ...

The Springs of Moses in the Sinai desert.

The Ayun Musa ("Springs of Moses") in the Sinai desert. This oasis lies inland from Suez Gulf on the traditional route of the Hebrews' ...

The Hebrews Settle in Palestine

A reconstruction of Solomon's temple, Jerusalem.

A reconstruction of Solomon's temple in Jerusalem. King Solomon ruled Israel between 970 and 930 B.C. He perfected the work of organizing the ...

Gihon Spring, water supply of ancient Jerusalem.

The Gihon Spring, the water supply of the ancient city of Jerusalem. The spring is outside of the city walls, which citizens had to leave to get ...

Hezekiah's tunnel to the Gihon Spring.
Hezekiah's tunnel to the Gihon Spring. This watercourse was hewn for almost 350 yards through solid stone at the direction of King Hezekiah to ...
Kidron Valley and the Old City of Jerusalem.
The Kidron Valley and the Old City of Jerusalem. King David captured Jerusalem about 1000 B.C. and made it his capital. When the Hebrew nation ...
Map: 10c B.C. kingdoms of Israel and Judah.
The kingdoms of Israel and Judah in the 10th century B.C. Around 1200 B.C. the Hebrews settled the land of Canaan, living under the rule of the ...
The "Tomb of Absalom" in the Valley of Jehosaphat.
The "Tomb of Absalom" in the Valley of Jehosaphat, just outside Jerusalem. According to biblical accounts, Absalom led a revolt against his ...
The House of Ahiel, a typical Jerusalem residence.
Ruins of the House of Ahiel, a typical Jerusalem residence of the Israelite Period, 7th to 6th centuries B.C. Note how this house has been built ...
The south side of Temple Mount in Jerusalem.
Excavations on the south side of Temple Mount in Jerusalem, Israel. Buildings at this site date from the time of King Solomon, around 1000 B.C., ...
The Tomb of King David on Mt. Zion in Jerusalem.
The tomb of King David on Mt. Zion in Jerusalem. David ruled as king of the Hebrews from ca. 1012 to ca. 970 B.C. and became one of the greatest ...
The valley of Armageddon from Megiddo.
The valley of Armageddon seen from the site of the ancient city of Megiddo. Megiddo occupied an important strategic position, dominating a pass ...

The Period of the Patriarchs

A seated Canaanite man, carved from basalt.
A seated Canaanite man carved from basalt, unearthed in the excavations at Tel Hazor, Israel. Archeological excavations have revealed that the ...
Ancient Canaanite artifacts found at Hazor.
Ancient Canaanite artifacts found at Hazor, Israel. During excavations of the Hazor Tel, these basalt objects were found in the Holy of Holies ...
Mount Ararat, the landing place of Noah’s Ark.
Mount Ararat, at 16,945 feet the highest mountain in Turkey, is said to be the mountain where Noah’s Ark landed. The Biblical character Noah was ...
One of the cenotaphs in the Machpelah Mosque.
One of the cenotaphs of the patriarchs in the Machpelah Mosque in Hebron, Israel. A cenotaph is a monument to a deceased person whose body is ...
Ruins of King Solomon's buildings at Hazor.
The ruins of King Solomon's buildings at Hazor, Israel. The doubled square in the foreground was the city gate. Hazor derived great importance ...
The Machpelah Mosque in Hebron, Israel.
The Machpelah Mosque in Hebron, Israel. This mosque is built over the entrance to the Cave of Machpelah, believed by Arabs and Jews to be the ...
The open cistern pit at Hazor, Israel.
The open cistern pit at Hazor, Israel. This pit leads to a well that has been in use since the early Canaanite period and is typical of the ...
This is a title, which may be selected for a show.
Hebrew History The Period of the Patriarchs This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

In Other Lands

A reconstruction of Lantian Man’s skull.
From China, a reconstruction of Lantian Man's skull. The remains of the fully human Homo erectus, who lived from 1½ million to 250,000 years ...
Archaeologists uncovering a Neolithic settlement.
Chinese archaeologists and workers uncovering a Hemudu Neolithic settlement dated around 5000 B.C., located along the lower reaches of the ...
Figures from the Hemudu culture
Bone plowheads (above) and the clay figure of a pig (below), of the Hemudu culture in China. The Hemudu people, who lived in marshy sites along ...
Longshan/Xia period pottery
Chinese Longshan/Xia period white pottery of the gui type, from about 2000 B.C. This hollow-legged vessel, which was used to boil water, was ...
Pyramids of Kush.
The stone pyramids of Kush at Meröwe in the Sudan. The kingdom of Kush arose along the Nile in northeastern Sudan in the early 2nd millenium ...
Shang bone recording lunar eclipse
A Chinese Shang oracle bone inscription reporting a lunar eclipse (left); and a reconstruction of another one recording a nova, both in the ...
Stones with Confucius’ writings

Stones inscribed with the reputed writings of Confucius, at the Temple of Confucius in Beijing. The only reliable source of Confucius' ...

The excavations at Mohenjodaro, Pakistan.

A general view of the excavations at Mohenjodaro, Pakistan. Harappa and Mohenjodaro were the two centers of the Indus Valley civilization, about ...

This is a title, which may be selected for a show.

In Other Lands This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

Tortoise shell with pictographs, Shang dynasty.

A tortoise shell with incised pictographs, of the Chinese Shang period. The Shang, traditionally dated 1776-1122 or 1523-1027 B.C., has been ...

Introduction

A map of Europe and the ancient Near East.

A simulated view of the world from space, with a map of Europe and the ancient Near East. The ancient Near East provides an introduction to ...

Mesopotamian Civilizations

A map of Mesopotamia and the ancient Near East.

A map of Mesopotamia and the ancient Near East. Mesopotamia means "between the rivers," the Tigris and the Euphrates. Because the alluvial ...

Map of Near Eastern civilizations.

A topographical map of Near Eastern civilizations. This harsh land became the center of the first civilizations, about 3200 to 3000 B.C. Around ...

Neo-Babylonian (Chaldean)

A brick-relief of a gazelle from a Babylon wall.

A brick relief of a gazelle in a wall at Babylon. The Neo-Babylonians excelled in the manufacture of glazed brick decoration. The Babylonian ...

Hammurabi receives laws from Shamash.

The Babylonian king Hammurabi receives the laws from the sun-god Shamash. The reign of Hammurabi, from 1711 to 1669 B.C., was the first golden ...

Reconstruction of a Chaldean Ziggurat.

A reconstruction of a Chaldean Ziggurat (temple). The Chaldeans, or Neo-Babylonians, who ruled until 539 B.C., were the last of the Babylonian ...

Ruins of Nebuchadnezzar's palace in Babylon.

Ruins of the palace of Nebuchadnezzar II in Babylon. In 586 B.C. Nebuchadnezzar destroyed Jerusalem, carrying many of the survivors away into ...

The ancient city of Ctesiphon.

Ruins of the ancient city of Ctesiphon, in what is now central Iraq, on the Tigris River southeast of Baghdad. It was the residence of Parthian ...

The Hanging Gardens of Babylon, a drawing.

A modern artist’s conception of the Hanging Gardens of Babylon at Nebuchadnezzar’s palace. The gardens may have been built by the king for his ...

Persia

Bodyguard of an ancient Persian king, ca. 400 B.C.

The bodyguard of an ancient Persian king, a frieze on the walls of the Three Verandas of the Audience Hall (Apadana) of Darius at the ca. 400 ...

The Persian empire of Darius I

A map of the Persian empire of Darius I. He was noted for his administrative reforms, his toleration of various religions and cultures, and his ...

The Assyrians

A human-headed winged bull from Khorsabad.

A human-headed winged bull found in Sargon II’s Palace at Khorsabad. This statue was one of a pair of ca. 710 B.C. stone sentries that guarded ...

A marble relief of Ashurnasirpal II of Assyria.

A marble relief of Ashurnasirpal II, king of the Assyrians from 884 to 859 B.C. He extended the frontiers of his empire to the Mediterranean in ...

An Assyrian king flanked by two winged deities.

An Assyrian king flanked by two winged deities, who are anointing him with sacred cones. In the early years of the Assyrian nation the rulers ...

An Assyrian king, probably Ashurnasirpal II.

A statue of an Assyrian king, probably Ashurnasirpal II. It was found in one of the small temples in his palace at Calah ...

An Assyrian votive statue.

An Assyrian votive statue. Votive statues similar to this were placed in temple sanctuaries throughout Mesopotamia near the image of the main ...

Ashurbanipal kills a wounded lion with his sword.

Ashurbanipal kills a wounded lion with his sword. This relief panel and the others of the "Lion Hunt" series display the best features of ...

Ashurbanipal pursues two lions in his chariot.

Ashurbanipal pursues two lions in his chariot while his charioteers fight a lion that is attacking from the rear.

From the ca. 645 B.C. Lion ...

Ashurbanipal, the Assyrian king, on horseback.
Ashurbanipal, the Assyrian king, on horseback with a spear. Ashurbanipal (668 to 627 B.C.), the grandson of Sennacherib II, was Assyria's last ...

Assyrian beaters return home from the lion hunt.
Assyrian beaters and dogs returning home from the lion hunt. Beaters and dogs were used to drive wild game toward the hunters. The figures in ...

Assyrian hunters with a gazelle.
Assyrian hunters with a gazelle, a marble relief from the palace of Sargon II at Khorsabad. ...

Assyrian siege warfare.
Assyrian siege warfare. The Assyrian military genius was most apparent when the Assyrians laid siege to a fortified place. Their armies ...

Captured slaves work in an Assyrian quarry.
Captured slaves work in a quarry under heavy guard by the Assyrian army. The Assyrians used captives as laborers when building siege works and ...

Cooking scenes in Ashurbanipal's military camp.
Cooking scenes in Ashurbanipal's military camp, ca. 865 B.C. From a relief originally in the North West Palace at ...

Detail of a dying lion, pierced by many arrows.
Detail of a dying lion, pierced by many of Ashurbanipal's arrows and spitting up blood. From the ca. 645 B.C. Lion Hunt relief, originally in ...

Reconstruction, Sargon II's palace at Khorsabad.
A reconstruction of the palace of Sargon II at the new Assyrian capital, Khorsabad. Sargon II ruled Assyria from 722 to 705 B.C. Under him, ...

Sennacherib II lays siege to Lachish.
Sennacherib II, king of the Assyrians, lays siege to Lachish, a fortress city of ancient Judah in Palestine. Sennacherib, the son of Sargon II, ...

The Assyrian kings Sargon II and Sennacherib.
The Assyrian kings Sargon II and Sennacherib II. Sargon II (left) stands facing his son and successor, Prince Sennacherib. Sargon II reigned ...

Tiglath-Pilesar III in his processional chariot.
Tiglath-Pilesar III in his processional chariot. He ruled Assyria from 745 to 727 B.C. In 733-732 B.C. Tiglath-Pilesar III conquered Philistia, ...

The Sumerian, Babylonian, and Hittite Civilizations

A statuette of a Hittite warrior.
A statuette of a Hittite warrior. Around 1600 B.C., the warlike Hittites and their allies forced the collapse of the Babylonian kingdom and the ...

A Sumerian cuneiform tablet from Ur III.
A Sumerian cuneiform tablet from the city of Lagash, 2112-2004 B.C., from the Ur III period. This tablet contains calculations of the area of ...

Gilgamesh and Enkidu.
Gilgamesh and Enkidu. Gilgamesh was the heroic protagonist of a Babylonian epic. Part human and part divine, he served as priest-king at Uruk, ...

Map, early Middle Eastern and African empires.
A map of ancient Middle Eastern and African empires: Mycenae-Crete, Babylon, Hittite, Egypt, Phoenicia, and ...

Section B: Greek and Hellenistic Civilizations, 200 B.C. - 31 B.C.

Overview: Greek, Hellenistic Civs, 200 - 31 B.C.
A brief video Overview of the history of Greek and Hellenistic Civilizations, from 200 B.C. to 31 B.C. Transcript: Here the first European ...

Archaic Greece

A battle scene from ancient Greece.
A battle scene from ancient Greece. Giants fight against the Olympic gods and goddesses in a battle known as the Giganomachy, depicted in the ...

A bronze helmet of the 6th or 5th century B.C.
A bronze helmet of the 6th or 5th century B.C. It has a three-line inscription in Greek on the left cheek guard. The dedication of helmets in ...

A ceramic goblet from Troy.
A drawing of a ceramic goblet found at Troy. It is the cup of royalty described by Homer in his epic poem about the destruction of Troy by the ...

A distant view of Lindos, on the island of Rhodes.
Lindos, on the island of Rhodes. In antiquity, Lindos was the most important city on Rhodes. After the establishment of the city of Rhodes, the ...

A Greek Kore of the Archaic period.
A Greek Kore, the standing young female statue of the Archaic period. The stance is rigid and the form is stylized, but some softness can be ...

A replica of the Trojan horse.
A replica of the Trojan horse. According to the Iliad, after ten years of war the Greeks became frustrated by

their failure to conquer Troy. ...

Aeneas and Hector fight Menelaus and Ajax.
The Trojan heroes Aeneas and Hector fight against the Greeks Menelaus and Ajax during the Trojan War. In Homer's Iliad, Hector, the crown ...

Gods sympathetic to Troy watch a battle.
Gods sympathetic to Troy watch a battle between the Trojans and Greeks during the Trojan War. Included here are the gods Aries, Aphrodite, ...

Map: Greek, Phoenician and Etruscan colonization.
A map of Greek, Phoenician and Etruscan colonization. With limited space and resources at home, the Greeks and Phoenicians sent out colonists to ...

Map: The ancient Greek civilization.
A map showing the extent of the ancient Greek civilization. Between the 8th and 5th centuries B.C., the Greek city-states established their ...

Map: the Persian Wars, 490-479 B.C.
A map of the Persian Wars, 490-479 B.C. Greek cities on the Aegean coast attempted to free themselves from Persian control by calling on the ...

Menelaus, the king of Sparta.
Menelaus, the king of Sparta who was a character in the Iliad and Odyssey. Menelaus was the brother of Agamemnon, the king of Mycenae, and ...

Odysseus (Ulysses), the Greek Trojan War hero.
Odysseus (Ulysses), the Greek hero of the Trojan War. According to Homer, Odysseus was a Mycenaean king who ruled the island of Ithaca. When ...

Periander, the Tyrant of Corinth.
Periander, the Tyrant of Corinth (r. 625-585 B.C.). Under Periander's leadership Corinth reached the height of its prosperity and power; arts ...

Pericles of Athens, 498-429 B.C.
Pericles of Athens. He gave his name to the most flourishing period of Greek culture, the 5th century B.C. Born about 498 B.C., Pericles ...

Persian soldiers.
Persian soldiers. The one at right carries a bow on his shoulder; the one at left has his bow in a case at his side. The two central figures ...

Remains of the Temple of Athena at Lindos.
Remains of the small 5th-century B.C. Temple of Athena at ...

Ruins of east tower of Troy.
Remains of the east tower of Troy. The square in the left foreground is the base of the east tower of the ancient city, ca. 1800 to 1275 B.C. ...

Seventeen Corinthian-style bronze helmets.
Seventeen Corinthian-style bronze helmets, 6th-5th centuries ...

The back side of a bronze Greek shield.
The back side of a bronze Greek shield, 6th-5th centuries B.C. To the left is a ...

The front side of a bronze Greek shield.
The front side of a bronze Greek shield, 6th-5th centuries B.C. On either side are ...

The Lechaeon Road in Corinth.
The Lechaeon Road in Corinth. The city-state of Corinth was the maritime and commercial center of Greece, holding a dominant trade position as ...

The Peloponnesian War, 431-404 B.C.
A map of the Peloponnesian War, 431-404 B.C. From their beginnings, the Greek city-states had tenaciously protected their individual ...

The poet Homer, ca. 800 B.C.
The poet Homer, ca. 800 B.C. Homer, who tradition holds was blind, wrote two epic poems. The Iliad is about the ca. 1260 B.C. conflict ...

The protected harbor of Lindos on Rhodes.
The protected harbor of Lindos on the island of Rhodes. The apostle Paul is believed to have stayed here on his way to Jerusalem after his third ...

View of the Dardanelles from the site of Troy.
A view of the Dardanelles (the ancient Hellespont) from the site of Troy, across the Simois plain. Troy's control over the waterway between the ...

Athletic Competition at Olympia

Apoxyomenos, a statue by Lysippos.
Apoxyomenos the Athlete by Lysippos, ca. 320 B.C. This work depicts an athlete returning from a practice session at the palaestra. The ...

Discobolus by Myron, ca. 460 B.C.
Discobolus by Myron, ca. 460 B.C. The discus throw was one of the athletic events held at the Olympiad and other festivals. The discus was ...

A Greek athlete preparing for a pole vault.
A Greek athlete preparing for a pole vault. ...

A jockey on horseback.
A jockey on horseback. Horse-racing was also one of the events of athletic games and religious festivals in the Greek ...

A mosaic showing the start of a chariot race.

In this mosaic, a charioteer and his team of horses prepare to start a race. The charioteer wears heavily padded clothing, and the chariot is ...

Four ephebi at play, ca. 510 B.C.
Four ephebi at play, ca. 510 B.C. In this marble relief the central figures are playing a ball game with curved sticks resembling modern field ...

Four ephebi with their two fighting dogs.
Four ephebi with their two fighting dogs, a relief ca. 510 B.C. In ancient Greece, an ephebus was a youth who was just entering manhood, or ...

Harnessing a chariot, a vase image.
Harnessing a chariot, an image on a Greek ...

Ruins of the Gymnasium of Olympia.
Ruins of the Gymnasium of Olympia, 2nd century B.C. Athletes used the inner courtyard for running, throwing the javelin, and throwing the ...

Strigils, ca. 5th-4th centuries B.C.
Strigils, ca. 5th-4th centuries B.C. Strigils were bronze instruments that Greco-Roman athletes used to scrape dust and sweat from their bodies ...

The entrance to the Stadium of Olympia.
The entrance to the Stadium of Olympia, 5th-4th centuries B.C. The stadium was the site of foot and horse races at the Olympic ...

The Palaistra of Olympia, 3rd century B.C.
The Palaistra of Olympia, 3rd century B.C. The palaistra was a wrestling school. It had living quarters and various training areas. This ...

The Stadium of Olympia.
The playing field of the Stadium of Olympia, 5th-4th centuries B.C. The distance from the starting point to the finish line was 210 yards, or ...

Victory in the chariot race, a mosaic.
Victory in the chariot race, a 3rd century Sicilian mosaic. The victorious athlete is greeted by a trumpeter and an official who is about to ...

Classical Greek Architecture

A statue of Nike used as an acroterion.
A statue of Nike, the ancient Greek goddess of victory, used as an acroterion. An acroterion was an ornamental block that supported statuary ...

Central aisle of Temple of Hera II, Paestum.
The central aisle of the of the Doric Temple of Hera II at Paestum, Italy, ca. 475 B.C. Massive fluted columns rise from the ground and support ...

Doric column capitals in the Temple of Hera II.
Doric column capitals in the ca. 460 B.C. Temple of Hera II at Paestum, Italy. The vertical grooves above the capitals (triglyphs) and the small ...

Remains of the Temple of Apollo at Corinth.
The remains of the Temple of Apollo at Corinth. Apollo was the Greek god of light, healing, music, poetry, prophecy, and manly beauty. He ...

The Doric Temple of Concord at Agrigento.
The ca. 450 B.C. Doric Temple of Concord at Agrigento, Sicily, one of the best preserved Doric structures still in existence. This temple ...

The Temple of Hera II at Paestum, Italy.
The Temple of Hera II at Paestum, Italy, ca. 460 B.C. This temple, formerly dedicated to Neptune/Poseidon, is one of the best-preserved Greek ...

Factors that United the Greeks: the Sanctuaries of Apollo

A narrow, curved residential street in Delos.
A narrow, curved residential street in Delos. The crooked and narrow streets of the ancient Greek cities usually resulted from the fact that ...

A view on the island of Delos.
A view on the island of Delos, Greece, which was considered sacred as the birthplace of Apollo. According to the myth, his mother Leto, who was ...

Athena as the goddess of war.
Athena as the goddess of war. The citizens of Delphi worshipped Athena as Athena Pronaia, because they believed that she guarded the Temple of ...

Outer columns of the Temple of Apollo at Didyma.
The fluted outer columns of the Temple of Apollo at Didyma. The column bases vary in shape and decoration, a sculptural development during the ...

Remains of the Stadium of Delphi.
Remains of the Stadium of Delphi, 4th century B.C. At the height of its fame during Greece's Golden Age, Delphi was the site of the Pythian ...

Ruins of the Temple of Apollo at Didyma.
Ruins of the Temple of Apollo at Didyma, dating from the 3rd-2nd centuries B.C. Didyma was the site of another important oracle of Apollo in ...

The Athenian Treasury at Delphi.
The Athenian Treasury at Delphi, 490-489 B.C. The Greek city of Delphi functioned as an international center where many Greek city-states ...

The Castalian Spring at Delphi.
The Castalian Spring at Delphi. Those who wished to consult the oracle at this spring first sacrificed a sheep, goat, or other animal. If the ...
The elegant marble peristyle of a home in Delos.
The elegant marble peristyle of a home in Delos, dating to the 3rd-2nd century B.C. The presence of a peristyle, a columned entry courtyard, is ...
The façade of the Athenian Treasury at Delphi.
The façade of the Athenian Treasury at Delphi, 490-489 B.C. The Athenian treasury, constructed in marble in the Doric style, was built in the ...
The inner court of the Temple of Apollo, Didyma.
The inner court of the Temple of Apollo. This courtyard originally contained a small building connected with the oracle. Its foundations can be ...
The Sacred Way at Delphi.
The Sacred Way leading to the Sanctuary of Apollo at Delphi, 5th-4th centuries B.C. This was a processional street, used during festivals, that ...
The Sanctuary of Athena at Delphi.
The Sanctuary of Athena at Delphi, 6th-5th centuries B.C. From left to right: the 480-470 B.C. Treasury of the Doric Order; the 530 B.C. Aeolian ...
The Temple of Apollo at Delphi.
The Temple of Apollo at Delphi, 5th-4th centuries B.C. Apollo was the Greek god of light, healing, music, poetry, prophecy, and manly beauty. ...
The Terrace of the Lions in Delos.
The Terrace of the Lions in Delos. These lions in Naxian marble were erected facing the sacred lake in Delos during the 7th century B.C., ...
The Theater of Delphi, 4th century B.C.
The Theater of Delphi, 4th century B.C. The dramatic arts achieved a high degree of sophistication in the Greek culture, and were an important ...

Gods, Goddesses, Mythology

Apollo Sauroktonos by Praxiteles.
Apollo Sauroktonos, a Roman copy of a Greek bronze statue by Praxiteles, ca. 350 B.C. Apollo was the Greek god of light, healing, music, ...
Dionysius by Praxiteles.
The head of Dionysius, a marble Roman copy of a 4th century B.C. statue by Praxiteles. According to Greek mythology, Dionysius, called by the ...
Hermes with Dionysius, by Praxiteles.
The upper portion of the statue of Hermes with the infant Dionysius, by Praxiteles, ca. 340 B.C. Zeus gave the infant Dionysius to Hermes, who ...
A black marble statue of Poseidon.
A black marble statue of Poseidon from the 4th century B.C. In ancient Greek mythology and religion, Poseidon was the ruler of the seas and ...
A Kouros from Athens, ca. 525 B.C.
A Kouros from Athens, ca. 525 B.C. In ancient Greece, a Kouros was a statue that stood as a funerary monument, usually in the courtyard of a ...
A laughing satyr carved in red marble.
A laughing satyr carved in red marble. Satyrs were mythological woodland deities who attended Dionysius. They were often represented as part ...
A relief in shell showing the birth of Aphrodite.
A 2nd century A.D. relief in shell showing the birth of Aphrodite. According to legend, Aphrodite, the daughter of Zeus and Dione, sprang from ...
A statue of Athena from the Golden Age.
A statue of Athena from the Golden Age, 525 B.C. This statue is thought to have stood in the pediment of a previous temple that stood on the ...
A statue of Oceanus the Titan.
A 1st century B.C. statue of Oceanus the Titan. In Greco-Roman mythology, Oceanus was the son of Uranus (the sky) and Gaea (the earth) and the ...
A statue of the Minotaur, 5th century B.C.
A statue of a Minotaur, 5th century B.C. The Minotaur was a savage creature with the body of a bull, the upper torso of a man, and the head of a ...
A young smiling centaur.
A young smiling centaur. Centaurs were mythical creatures, half horse and half man, who followed the satyrs in the train of Dionysius. ...
Aphrodite's birthplace at Kouklia on Cyprus.
Aphrodite's birthplace. This headland near Kouklia on the island of Cyprus was believed to be the place where Aphrodite sprang from the sea ...
Ariadne awaiting Theseus.
Ariadne awaiting Theseus. Ariadne, here in repose on the lid of a marble sarcophagus, was the Cretan princess who helped Theseus kill the ...
Cupid and Psyche.
Cupid and Psyche, 3rd-2nd centuries B.C. Cupid, also known as Eros, was the god of love and the son of Hermes (Mercury) and Aphrodite. The ...

Stele of Mika and Dion, 430 B.C.
Stele of Mika and Dion, 430 B.C. Mika is seated and holds a mirror in one hand. With her other hand Mika clasps the hand of Dion, who stands ...
The Aphrodite of Cnidos by Praxiteles.
The Aphrodite of Cnidos by Praxiteles, 4th century B.C. The original of this statue was worshipped in the Sanctuary of Aphrodite on the island ...
The face of Athena Promachos by Phidias.
The face of Athena Promachos by Phidias, 5th century B.C. The Athena Promachos was the cult statue of the goddess that stood in the cella (the ...
The head of Medusa.
The head of Medusa, one of three vicious underworld monsters called Gorgons. They were creatures with living snakes for hair and features so ...
The Hegesgo stele, 5th century B.C.
The Hegesgo stele, 5th century B.C. This stele shows an Athenian woman seated at right, while another woman stands holding an open jewelry box. ...
The muse Polyhymnia by Philiscus of Rhodes.
The muse Polyhymnia, by Philiscus of Rhodes, 3rd century B.C. In Greek mythology, the nine Muses were the patron-goddesses of the arts. They ...
The Sphinx of the Naxians, found at Delphi.
The Sphinx of the Naxians, found at Delphi, ca. 560 B.C. The sphinx was a beast with the body of a lion and the upper part of a woman. In ...
The Three Graces, a relief.
The Three Graces, sometimes called the Charities, were goddesses who enhanced the enjoyment of life and personified beauty and charm. Their ...
The torment of Iksion, king of Ieselya.
The torment of Iksion, the king of Ieselya. This 2nd century A.D. marble relief is a fine example of the horrors of divine retribution in ...
Torso and head of Zeus/Poseidon bronze statue.
The torso and head of a 5th-century B.C. bronze statue of Zeus/Poseidon. Zeus was the chief god of the Olympian pantheon in Greek religion or ...

Greek Cultural Leaders

The Athenian playwright Menander.
Menander (ca. 343-291 B.C.) was an Athenian playwright who is known to have written more than 100 comedies in a new style, most of them having ...
The Cynic philosopher Diogenes.
The Cynic philosopher Diogenes of Sinope (412-323 B.C.) was fascinated by Antisthenes' teachings and became an austere ascetic. His ...
The Greek philosopher Antisthenes.
Antisthenes (444-371 B.C.) was a Greek philosopher, a student of Socrates, and the founder of the Cynic school. The Cynics believed and taught ...
The Greek sage Bias.
Bias was a 6th-century B.C. Greek sage, born at Priene in Ionia, who was called one of the seven wise men of the world. Among his teachings was ...
The Greek tragic playwright Sophocles.
The Greek tragic playwright, Sophocles (ca.496-406 B.C.) ranked, with his contemporaries Aeschylus and Euripides, as one of the greatest ...
The lyric poet Posidippus.
Posidippus of Samos, ca. 250 B.C. Posidippus was a lyric poet of the Hellenistic era, and several of his epigrams have survived on buildings on ...
The orator Demosthenes.
Demosthenes (384-322 B.C.) was the son of a rich Athenian arms manufacturer and is considered the greatest of the ancient Greek orators. He ...
The philosopher and mathematician Pythagoras.
Pythagoras was a 6th century B.C. Greek philosopher and mathematician who was born in Samos and traveled widely in search of knowledge. Inspired ...
The philosopher Epicurus.
Epicurus (ca.341-270 B.C.) was a Greek philosopher who taught that pleasure, discovered through virtue, was the highest good. He postulated that ...
The philosopher Plato.
Plato (ca. 427-347 B.C.) was a Greek philosopher who developed theories of universal archetypes and utopian governments. His philosophy ...
The philosopher Socrates.
Socrates (469-399 B.C.). One of the most important figures in western philosophy, Socrates was an Athenian stonemason who developed what is now ...
The tragic playwright Euripides.
Euripides (ca. 484-406 B.C.) was a Greek tragic playwright who ranked with Sophocles and Aeschylus as the three greatest dramatists of the ...

Medicine and Health Treatments

A doctor from classical antiquity examines a boy.

A doctor from classical antiquity examines a boy. Greek and Hellenistic medicine was fairly advanced, although much of its learning did not ...

Central courtyard of the Asclepium at Pergamum.
The central courtyard of the Asclepium. A massive earthquake destroyed the Pergamum complex between 253 and 260 A.D., and the buildings were ...

Hellenistic apothecaries making drugs.
Hellenistic apothecaries at work making drugs. Hellenistic physicians had a thorough understanding of the use of those medicines which were ...

Inside the main passageway of the Sanatorium.
Inside the main passageway of the Sanatorium of the Asclepium at Pergamum. Rooms opening onto this passageway were dedicated to a variety of ...

Passageway from Pergamum treatment center.
The passageway from the treatment center of the Asclepium at Pergamum. This vaulted subterranean passageway, 250 feet long with spaced openings ...

The Asclepium of Pergamum, Turkey.
The remains of the Asclepium of Pergamum, Turkey. From the 4th century B.C. to the 2nd century A.D., this was one of the most famous therapeutic ...

The colonnaded way in Pergamum's Asclepium.
The colonnaded way in Pergamum's Asclepium, 2nd century A.D. Just as the famous cult centers of the Greco-Hellenistic world attracted pilgrims ...

The physician Hippocrates.
The Greek physician Hippocrates (ca. 460-ca. 377 B.C.), who is generally considered to be the father of medicine. The "Hippocratic Oath," ...

The Sanatorium of the Asclepium at Pergamum.
The Sanatorium of the Asclepium at Pergamum, Turkey. ca. 150 A.D. The Asclepium offered a holistic approach to mental and physical health by ...

The Temple of Zeus

A drawing of Olympia.
A drawing of Olympia. It was not a city; Olympia was merely a sacred area dedicated to Zeus, the supreme deity in the Greek pantheon. It ...

Courtyard of workshop of Phidias at Olympia.
The courtyard of the Workshop of Phidias at Olympia, ca. 460 B.C. Phidias was considered the greatest Greek sculptor. Because of his well-known ...

Drums of toppled columns at the Temple of Zeus.
Drums of toppled columns at the Temple of Zeus at Olympia. Because of the prominence of the Olympic Games, the temple complex at Olympia became ...

Interior of workshop of Phidias at Olympia.
Ruins of the interior of Phidias' workshop at Olympia. Sculpture tools, terra cotta molds, and a cup bearing the name of Phidias were found ...

The Temple of Zeus at Olympia.
The Temple of Zeus at Olympia, ca. 470-456 B.C. Sacrifices were made in this temple on the third day of the Festival of Zeus, which accompanied ...

The Theater as a Teacher of Tradition

A luxury bench in the Theater of Aspendos.
A luxury bench in the Theater of Aspendos. Reserved for presiding dignitaries, these benches provided greater comfort than the standard seats, ...

A river god from the Dionysian frieze, Perge.
A river god from the Dionysian frieze at the 3rd-2nd century theater of Perge, Turkey. Dionysius, the son of Zeus and Semele, was the god of ...

Four theater masks carved in relief.
Four theater masks carved in relief on a theater wall. This kind of decoration was found on the stage walls and entry gates of virtually every ...

Interior of Theater of Aspendos skene.
The interior of the stage building, or skene, of the Theater of Aspendos. The skene served multiple purposes: it provided actors with an ...

Part of the theater of Perge, Turkey.
A part of the theater, the stadium and the center of the city of Perge, Turkey, dating from the 3rd-2nd centuries B.C. The dramatic arts ...

Row letters in the Roman theater at Pergamum.
In the general seating of the Roman theater at Pergamum, Turkey, these Greek letters carved into the ends of the rows of seats matched those on ...

The 161-180 A.D. Theater of Aspendos, Turkey.
The cavea of the Theater of Aspendos, Turkey. This was the most magnificent and is the best preserved theater to survive from the classical ...

The central promenade of the Theater of Aspendos.
The central promenade of the Theater of Aspendos. This gallery at the top of the tiered seating offered audience members a space to stroll or to ...

The diazoma of the Theater of Aspendos.
The diazoma of the Theater of Aspendos. The "diazoma" in the classical theater divided the lower tiers of

seats from the upper, and it also ...

The infant Dionysius is bathed, Perge.

The infant Dionysius is bathed by the nymphs, a relief from the Dionysian frieze at ...

The promenade in the Theater of Aspendos.

The interior of the promenade of the Theater of Aspendos. The gallery offered to members of the audience an enclosed space where they could ...

The Theater of the Asclepion at Epidaurus.

The 3rd-2nd centuries B.C. Theater of the Asclepion at Epidaurus. This 6,000-seat theater was on an artificial earth fill. In the 2nd century ...

Athens: Source of Unity and Disunity

The Athenian Agora

A Greek sandal and bootmaker's shop.

A Greek sandal and bootmaker's shop. The craftsman, with a circular knife in his hand, is at left. In the center a woman is being fitted. The ...

Greek potter painting a vase.

A Greek potter painting a vase. Athena, the goddess of handicrafts, is going to crown him. The spear and helmet show her also as the goddess of ...

The Areopagus, a small hill in Athens.

The Areopagus, a small hill west of the Acropolis which rises above the agora of Athens. An aristocratic council (which acted as a senate and ...

The Athenian agora and the stoa of Attalos.

The Athenian agora and the stoa of Attalos. Agora is the Greek name for an open space where the citizens carried on business, religious and ...

The cella of the Temple of Hephaestus.

The cella of the 450 B.C. Temple of Hephaestus and Athena. The cella in ancient temples was the principal chamber or interior space where the ...

The entrance to the agora of Athens.

The entrance to the agora of Athens. Agora is the Greek name for any open space surrounded by public buildings. In Athens, the agora served ...

The interior of the stoa of Attalos.

The interior of the stoa or portico of Attalos in the agora of Athens. Originally, this space would have been filled with the stalls of ...

The pronaos of the Temple of Hephaestus.

The pronaos of the Temple of Hephaestus and Athena, ca. 450 B.C. The pronaos in ancient temples was an open vestibule which acted as an ...

The stoa of Attalos with the Acropolis.

The rebuilt stoa of Attalos, with the Athenian Acropolis in the background. Originally built around 150 B.C. by Attalos II, King of Pergamum ...

The Temple of Hephaestus and Athena.

The ca. 450 B.C. Temple of Hephaestus and Athena in Athens. Hephaestus, known as Vulcan in the Roman mythology, was the Greek god of fire, ...

The Tower of the Winds at Athens.

The 1st century B.C. Tower of the Winds at Athens was designed by an astronomer to serve as a weather vane, a water-clock, and a sundial. ...

The Panathenaic Procession: the Worship of Athena

The cavalcade of riders in the procession.

The cavalcade of riders in the Panathenaic Procession, from the north frieze of the Parthenon’s ...

The Erechtheum on the Acropolis, Athens.

The Erechtheum on the Athens Acropolis , 421-409 B.C. This Ionic-style temple with its distinctive porch with the caryatid maidens was ...

The frieze of the Parthenon's cella.

A part of the frieze of the Parthenon's cella, 447-438 B.C. Designed by the sculptor Phidias, this frieze stretched for more than 500 feet ...

The Ionic portico of the temple of Athena Nike.

The Ionic portico of the temple of Athena Nike, 449-421 ...

The presentation of gifts to Athena.

The presentation of gifts to Athena, from the east frieze of the Parthenon's cella. Left to right: two acolytes (attendants) present stools to ...

The temple of Athena Nike, on the Acropolis.

The temple of Athena Nike, 449-421 B.C. This small Ionic-style marble temple, 23 feet high by 27 feet wide, was built on the Acropolis at ...

The Theater of Dionysius at Athens.

The 342-346 B.C. Theater of Dionysius on the southern slope of the Athenian Acropolis . This theater was directly associated with the religious ...

The Parthenon

A metope on the south façade of the Parthenon.

A metope on the south façade of the Parthenon. This is the westernmost metope, a square space in Doric frieze composition. This metope is ...

The Athenian Acropolis.
The Athenian Acropolis. Every Greek city had an "acropolis," an elevated place which was ringed with strong fortifications, and on which temples ...
The cella of the Parthenon of Athens.
The cella of the Parthenon of Athens. The cella was the chamber of a Greek temple in which the cult statue of the building's god was located. ...
The façade of the Parthenon.
The façade of the Parthenon. The Parthenon was designed by Ictinus and Callicrates under the direction of the master architect and sculptor ...
The Parthenon of Athens.
The Parthenon of Athens. Properly called by the ancient Greeks "the Temple of Athena Polias," the Parthenon was built between 447 and 432 B.C., ...
This is a title, which may be selected for a show.
Athens The Parthenon This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

In Other Lands

A stone obelisk at Axum in Ethiopia.
A stone obelisk at Axum (or Aksum) In northern Ethiopia. The Semitic kingdom of Axum reached the height of its power in the 4th century A.D. ...
An Isibutai tomb near Nara, Japan.
In Japan, an Isibutai tomb at Asuka near Nara. The history of Japan before the 6th century A.D. is fragmentary. Much of it is based on Chinese ...
An Olmec "head," ca. 900 B.C.
From Central America, an Olmec "head," ca. 900 B.C. The Olmec civilization ("the people of the 'gum tree'") was the first to appear in ...
Carving on Temple of Quetzalcoatl, Teotihuacán.
A frontal detail of the Temple of Quetzalcoatl at Teotihuacán, Mexico. The bas-reliefs of this temple depict two important gods of the people of ...
Emperor Babur of India.
The Indian Emperor Babur (1483-1530), the founder of the great Mughal dynasty , was descended from both Genghis Khan and Timur. At the age of ...
Map, diffusion of iron technology in Africa.
A map showing the diffusion of iron technology in Africa. Iron working, developed by the Hittites of Anatolia by 1200 B.C., had reached the Nok ...
Map: Asoka's 3rd century B.C. Empire in India.
A map of Emperor Asoka's 3rd century B.C. empire in India. He held not only central India and the regions northwest of the Indus, but most of ...
Part of the Mayan Tablet of the Cross.
A part of the Mayan Tablet of the Cross, at Palenque, Chiapas, Mexico, which tells the legend of the birth of the mother of the Palenqua Triad ...
The 4th century B.C. Chinese author Sunzi.
The Chinese author Sunzi (Sun Tzu, or Sun Wu, ca. 4th century B.C.), who wrote the Sunzi Bingfa (The Art of War) , a remarkable treatise which ...
The Chinese philosopher Laozi.
The Chinese philosopher Laozi (Lao-tzu). Laozi is the chief figure associated with early Daoism (Taoism), a major philosophy which emerged in ...

The First European Civilizations

The Minoan Civilization

A covered passageway of the Knossos palace.
A covered passageway in the Knossos palace. The peaceful temperament and maritime character of Minoan civilization enabled the Cretan culture to ...
A dolphin fresco in the queen's dressing chamber.
A fresco of dolphins and fish in the queen's dressing chamber at ...
A frescoed balcony in the Knossos palace.
A room in the Knossos palace. The remains of three other major Minoan palace-cities, at Phaistos, Mallia, and Zakros, as well as a scattering of ...
A Minoan pithos, ca. 1700 B.C.
A Minoan pithos, ca. 1700 B.C. The Minoans used these pithoi (large earthenware jars) to store wine, olive oil, and grain. This highly ...
Map of the Minoan and Mycenaean civilizations.
A map of the Minoan and Mycenaean civilizations. Non-Greek-speaking people settled around 2800 B.C. on the island of Crete. This was the first ...
Minoan snake goddesses.
Minoan snake goddesses. The snake goddesses have become a symbol of the Minoan civilization. This pair was found in the temple at Knossos, and ...
One of several large storage magazines at Knossos.
One of several large storage magazines at the Knossos ...
Terra cotta drainage pipe at Phaistos.
A terra cotta drainage pipe found at the Phaistos palace. The Minoans had highly developed water and sewage systems in their palace ...

The "partridge fresco" in the Minoan palace.
The "partridge fresco," from the Minoan palace at Knossos. The painting was in the palace's caravansary pavilion, an area used for dining. ...
The central figure in the 'Lily Prince' fresco.
The central figure in the "Lily Prince" fresco, which adorns a corridor in the palace of Minos at Knossos. The lily was a sacred Minoan flower, ...
The heads of three Minoan women.
The heads of three Minoan women, a fresco from the palace at ...
The Minoan palace at Phaistos, Crete.
Ruins of the Minoan palace at Phaistos, Crete, ca. 1800 to 1600 B.C. Phaistos was another of the major palace-states of the Minoan civilization ...
The palace of Minos at Knossos, Crete.
The portico over the north entrance of the palace of Minos at Knossos, Crete. An ancient city on the island of Crete, Knossos was the economic ...
The Phaistos disc.
The Phaistos disc. Made of clay and about 6 inches in diameter, this disc contains an as yet undeciphered pictographic script related to Minoan ...
The throne room of the Knossos palace.
The throne room of the Knossos palace. On the walls of the throne room is a fresco of griffins. The palace at Knossos was seized and, after 50 ...

The Mycenaean Civilization

A circular burial ground at Mycenae.
A circular burial ground at Mycenae. This area was used as a royal burial place during the 16th century B.C. Six major shaft tombs and a number ...
Buildings outside the walls of Mycenae.
Ruins of buildings outside the walls of Mycenae, and a view of the Argive plain below the citadel. By 1000 B.C., the Mycenaean civilization had ...
Entrance to a beehive tomb at Mycenae.
The entrance to one of the tholos (beehive) tombs at Mycenae. These tombs date from the 15th century B.C. onwards, and were built for members of ...
The Acropolis of Mycenae.
The Acropolis of Mycenae. Most of the Greek city-states were founded near an acropolis, an isolated hill that could be fortified against the ...
The Lion Gate of Mycenae.
The Lion Gate of Mycenae. Two lions ten feet tall face each other, separated by a pillar over the massive lintel of the gate. This is the ...
The site of the city of Mycenae, Greece.
The site of the city of Mycenae, Greece. Situated on a small hill flanked by two precipitous mountains, Mycenae dominated the countryside and ...

The Hellenistic Civilization

Alexander the Great and Philip V

Alexander the Great.
Alexander the Great (356-323 B.C.) came to the throne of Macedon in 336 B.C., after his father Philip's conquest of Greece. Alexander created a ...
Map, the empire of Alexander the Great.
A map showing the extent of the Hellenistic empire of Alexander the Great, 323 ...
Philip V, King of Macedon from 221 to 179 B.C.
Philip V, the King of Macedon from 220 to 179 B.C., was an ambitious, imperialistic ruler who fought several wars against Rome. His First ...

Hellenistic Sculpture

Spinario, a late Hellenistic bronze statue.
The late Hellenistic bronze statue called Spinario, 1st century B.C. The statue is also known as Fedele Capitolino (The Faithful One) ...
The Belvedere Apollo.
The Belvedere Apollo , ca. 130 A.D. Apollo was the Greek god of light, healing, music, poetry, prophecy, and manly beauty. He replaced the ...
An old woman of the Hellenistic era.
A statue of an old woman of the Hellenistic era, 2nd century ...
Detail of the head and shoulders of Laocoön.
The head and shoulders of ...
Head and shoulders of girl protecting dove.
The head and shoulders of a Hellenistic girl protecting a dove from a snake, 3rd-2nd centuries ...
The face of The Dying Gaul.
The face of The Dying Gaul, a masterpiece of Hellenistic sculpture from the late 3rd century B.C. This is a Roman copy of an original bronze ...
The sculpture group Laocoön.
The sculpture group Laocoön, which was executed between 175 and 150 B.C. by the Rhodian sculptors Hagesandros, Polydoros, and Athenodoros. ...

Urban Life in the Hellenistic World: Ephesus

A cult statue of the Ephesian Artemis.
A 1st century B.C. cult statue of the Ephesian Artemis. Artemis, or Diana, was the goddess of the hunt and the twin sister of the Olympian ...

A pavement stone advertising the way to a brothel.
A pavement stone advertising the way to a brothel in Ephesus. Footprints pointed in the direction of the brothel, while the torso of a woman in ...

A residential quarter of Ephesus, Turkey.
Ruins of a residential quarter in Ephesus, 4th to 5th century A.D. Situated on the lower slopes of Mount Coressus, these luxurious Roman homes ...

A street across from the Library of Celsus.
A street across from the Library of Celsus in Ephesus. This street led to such public services as baths, the public toilets, and a ...

A view toward the stage of the theater, Ephesus.
A view toward the stage of the theater of Ephesus. It was in this theater that the silversmiths of Ephesus protested against the Christian ...

Pipes of the sewage system in Ephesus, Turkey.
Pipes of the sewage system in ...

The Colonnaded (Kuretes) Street at Ephesus.
The Colonnaded Street at Ephesus, Turkey. This broad avenue was also called the Street of the Kuretes, after an order of pagan priests. The ...

The entrance to a brothel in ancient Ephesus.
The remains of the entrance to a brothel in ancient Ephesus. In the Greco-Roman world there were no laws prohibiting prostitution, which was ...

The great theater at Ephesus, Turkey.
The great theater at Ephesus, early 3rd century B.C. This theater was the largest in Asia Minor and could seat 25,000 persons. The original ...

The Hercules Gate, Street of the Kuretes, Ephesus.
The Hercules Gate at the upper end of the Street of Kuretes in Ephesus, Turkey. The Hercules Gate was the farthest point on the street where ...

The Library of Celsus at Ephesus.
The Library of Celsus at Ephesus. This structure was erected around 110 A.D. by the Roman consul G. Julius Aquila as a funerary monument for his ...

The marble street in Ephesus, Turkey.
The marble street in Ephesus, Turkey. This section of the main street of Ephesus was paved by a wealthy citizen named Eutropius in the 5th ...

The Odeon of Ephesus.
The Odeon of Ephesus, Turkey, 1st century A.D. This multi-purpose Roman building was used as a bouleuterion (a council chamber) as well as a ...

The precincts of the Temple of Artemis at Ephesus.
The precincts of the Temple of Artemis at Ephesus, Turkey. Because of the popularity of the Artemis cult, pilgrims traveled from all over the ...

The public toilets of Ephesus, Turkey.
The public toilets of Ephesus, Turkey, ca. 1st century A.D. These toilets were open to all citizens, male and female, who used them at the same ...

The road joining the town and harbor of Ephesus.
The road connecting the town and harbor of Ephesus, Turkey. Ephesus was one of the most prosperous cities in ancient Ionia, as the ...

The Temple of Hadrian at Ephesus, Turkey.
The façade of the porch of the Temple of Hadrian at Ephesus, 2nd century A.D. This small temple on the Street of the Kuretes was built in the ...

Urban Life in the Hellenistic World: Perge in Turkey

A tablet in the courtyard of Plancia Magna.
A tablet in the courtyard of Plancia Magna, inside the gates of Perge, Turkey, 120-122 A.D. Plancia Magna, a prominent woman during the Roman ...

The colonnaded main street of Perge, Turkey.
Remains of the colonnaded main street of Perge. Shops were along both sides of this street, which had a raised sidewalk above the level of the ...

The Hellenistic gates of Perge, Turkey.
The Hellenistic gates of Perge in Pamphilia, Turkey, dating from the 3rd century B.C. Perge was another city which held as its most sacred deity ...

Section C: Roman Civilization and the Origins of Christianity, 31 B.C. - 700

Overview: Rome, Christianity, 31 B.C. - 700 A.D.
A brief video Overview of the history of Roman Civilization and the origins of Christianity, from 31 B.C. to 700 A.D. Transcript: The Roman ...

Before Rome: the Etruscans

A Roman bridge built on Etruscan foundations.
A Roman bridge built on Etruscan foundations near Vulci, Italy. The Etruscans were a loose confederation of

city-states that flourished from the ...

Three Etruscan vases.

Three Etruscan vases. The Etruscans were known for their distinctive works of art, including finely decorated pottery such as this. Culturally, ...

Byzantium, 565-1000

Byzantium's Last Claim on the West: Ravenna, Italy

Byzantine mosaic from Salonika, Greece.

A 4th-century Byzantine mosaic in the rotunda of the apse of St. George's church, Salonika, ...

Interior of the church of St. Alexander, Fiesole.

The interior of the church of St. Alexander in Fiesole, Italy, built by Theodoric the Great, King of the Ostrogoths, in the early 6th century ...

Mosaic of Jesus in Arian Baptistry at Ravenna.

The mosaic of Jesus in the dome of the Arian Baptistry at Ravenna. The Arians were a sect of the Christian church whose beliefs were declared ...

The church of San Vitale at Ravenna, Italy.

The Byzantine church of San Vitale at Ravenna, Italy, ca. 547 A. D. This church was a symbol of Byzantine construction, and of Byzantine ...

Tomb of Theodoric the Great at Ravenna, Italy.

The tomb of Theodoric the Great at Ravenna, Italy. Theodoric (471-526 A.D.) was the king of the Ostrogoths (one of the two great Germanic ...

Triptych, Virgin and Child with two saints.

A Byzantine triptych depicting the Virgin and Child with two saints. A triptych is a folding icon that has three ...

Constantinople

A view into the cupola of the Hagia Sophia.

A view into the cupola of the Hagia Sophia at Constantinople. Hagia Sophia means "Holy ...

An interior view of Hagia Sophia, Constantinople.

An interior view of Hagia Sophia at Constantinople. Despite five damaging earthquakes between 553 and 986 A.D., Hagia Sophia remains to this day ...

Emperor Justinian I, who reigned 527-565 .A.D.

Justinian I, who reigned 527-565 A.D., was the last Roman emperor and the first Byzantine emperor. He is best-known for his codification of the ...

Section of the walls of Constantinople.

A section of the ancient walls of Constantinople in ...

The court of Emperor Justinian.

The court of Emperor Justinian, a mosaic of 548 A.D. in the church of San Vitale at Ravenna. In the center, Justinian wears the crown and the ...

The court of Empress Theodora.

A ca. 547 mosaic of the Empress Theodora and her attendants, in the church of San Vitale. Theodora was the wife of the Byzantine Emperor ...

The Hagia Sophia in Constantinople.

The Hagia Sophia in Constantinople, now Istanbul. This masterpiece of Byzantine art was built on the site of churches which dated from the time ...

In Other Lands

A man in a yoga position.

In India, a man in a yoga position. One of the six systems of Hindu philosophy, this school of thought believed (and believes) that perfect ...

An Ajanta Cave 1 painting of a Bodhisattva.

An Ajanta Cave 1 painting of a Bodhisattva. This painting belongs to the Gupta period, about the 6th century A.D. The dominant theme of these ...

Gautama Buddha with devotees.

Gautama Buddha with devotees, a stone sculpture from Taxila, about the 3rd century A.D. Guatama, also called Siddhartha ("he who has ...

Han dynasty artifacts.

Artifacts recovered from imperial tomb grounds of the Han. The Mao Tomb Garden, located in the Weibei highlands of Shanxi province, holds the ...

Han period bamboo writing tablets.

Bamboo writing tablets of the Han period. Chinese books evolved directly from such tablets connected by thongs and used like modern paged books, ...

Pottery of the southern Peru Nazca culture.

Pottery of the Nazca culture from southern Peru. While the Moche people developed their civilization on the northern coast of Peru, the Nazca ...

Qin Shi Huangdi, the first Emperor of China.

Qin Shi Huangdi (Ch'in Shih Huang-ti), China's "First Emperor," whose state of Qin managed to unify China in 221 B.C. Qin strength derived from ...

The mathematician Zhang Heng.

Zhang Heng (Chang Heng), a brilliant mathematician, astronomer, and geographer of the Eastern Han. Zhang, who lived from 78-139 A.D., is ...

Woodcut, woman winding silk strands on a reel.

A Chinese woodcut showing a woman winding strands of silk from cocoons on a reel. The making of silk was extremely labor-intensive; the masses ...

The Final Daysof the Roman Empire in the West: Germanic Invasions

A map of the invasion of the Germanic tribes.
A map of the invasion of Germanic tribes into the northwestern part of the Roman Empire, 4th and 5th centuries A.D. The tribes had settled ...

A map of the invasions of the Huns and Goths.
A map of the invasions of the Huns and Goths into the Roman Empire in the 4th-5th centuries. Political chaos in northern China caused the Huns ...

Early German tribesmen going into battle.
Early German tribesmen going into battle. In the first century A.D., numerous clashes occurred between various types of Germanic people and the ...

Map of the barbarian kingdoms, ca. 500 A.D.
A map of the barbarian kingdoms, ca. 500 A.D. The map shows the basic areas of settlement. Although it would be many more centuries before the ...

Map, Germanic tribes along north Roman frontier.
A map of the Germanic tribes along the northern frontier of the Roman Empire. Long before the Romans had conquered the territory in the north, ...

Movable huts used by the early Germans.
A modern artist's conception of the way the movable huts used by the early Germans may have ...

Rebellious Germans forced to execute their own.
Rebellious Germans are forced by Rome to execute their own people. Under Marcus Aurelius, who reigned 161-180 A.D., Rome succeeded in defeating ...

Romans victorious over barbarians.
Romans victorious over barbarians. For a long time the Roman army was able to repulse the frequent invasions of barbarian tribes from the north ...
This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like ...

The Roman Empire, 31 B.C. to 500

An Imperial City, Pompeii: A Private Home in Pompeii

A wall painting in the House of Vettii.
A wall painting in the House of the Vettii. Roman homeowners of the Imperial age typically covered the interior walls of their houses with ...

A wall painting of "The Fall of Icarus."
A wall painting of "The Fall of Icarus" in the House of Vettii in Pompeii. This was a common theme for wall murals in Pompeii and throughout the ...

Peristyle in the House of Vettii at Pompeii.
The peristyle at the House of Vettii. This colonnaded walkway surrounded the villa's central garden. The social life of Roman households ...

The atrium of the House of Vettii at Pompeii.
The atrium of the House of Vettii at Pompeii. The House of Vettii was built between 62 and 79 A.D., and was almost perfectly preserved when ...

The garden at House of Vettii in Pompeii.
The garden at the House of Vettii. The fountain in the shape of a household entryway, at the right, is the dominant feature of this garden. ...

The larium of the House of Vettii in Pompeii.
The larium of the House of Vettii. A larium was a household shrine for the special gods and ancestors of the family. The figure here is a ...

An Imperial City, Pompeii: Public Services

"The destruction of Pompeii," a painting.
"The Destruction of Pompeii," a painting. Pompeii was a Roman city of the Imperial Age on the Bay of Naples, five miles from volcanic Mount ...

A bakery in Pompeii.
Ruins of a bakery in Pompeii. The oven is on the left, and the mills stand in a row at right. The mill consisted of two stones, between which ...

A counter top in a shop in Pompeii.
A counter top in a shop in Pompeii. The holes may have held charcoal heaters for foods on ...

A street in Pompeii with sidewalks.
A street in Pompeii with sidewalks for pedestrian traffic. In the center is a raised stepping stone which pedestrians could use to traverse the ...

A view of apartment buildings in Pompeii, Italy.
A view of apartment buildings in Pompeii. The remains indicate apartment complexes rising up to six stories high. Mt. Vesuvius is in the ...

Amphorae in the Pompeii archaeological storehouse.
Amphorae in the archaeological storehouse at Pompeii. These large earthenware jars were used to store grain, oil, wine, and other commodities ...

The calidarium of a bath at Pompeii.
The calidarium of a bath at Pompeii. The calidarium, which means "hot room," had floors and walls heated by vents and flues between the wall and ...

The Via dell'Abondanza, Pompeii.
Stores on the Via dell'Abondanza, the main shopping street of ...

Athletics

A mosaic of female Roman athletes.
A mosaic of eight female Roman athletes. This 3rd century A.D. mosaic covered a floor in the Piazza Armerina, the hunting villa of the Emperor ...
The great amphitheater at Pompeii.
The great amphitheater at ...
The palestra of Pompeii.
The palestra of Pompeii. In Roman cities the palestra was the center for athletic training, wrestling, javelin throwing, swordsmanship, ...
Three female Roman athletes.
Three female Roman athletes. These women athletes are lifting weights, throwing the discus, and ...

Provinces of the Empire: England (Anglia)

A floor mosaic in a Roman villa at Lullingstone.
A floor mosaic in a Roman villa at Lullingstone, England. The mosaic attests to the high quality of life achieved by the citizens of Roman ...
Box-tile vaulting at Bath, England.
Box-tile vaulting at Bath, England. These hollow square clay pipes were used by the Romans to insulate and heat their ...
Foundations of the barracks building at Chesters.
Foundations of the 2nd century A.D. barracks building of the Roman garrison at Chesters, Northumberland, ...
Hadrian's Wall, a Roman fortification in Britain.
Hadrian's Wall, a Roman fortification in northern Britain. Completed by the Emperor Hadrian about 127 A.D., it extended 73 miles from Scotland ...
Model of Roman fort along Hadrian's Wall.
A model of a typical Roman fort along Hadrian's Wall in England. The wall had small forts spaced at one-mile intervals, with signal towers ...
Ruins of a Roman villa in Lullingstone, England.
Ruins of the 2nd century A.D. Roman villa at Lullingstone, Kent, England, showing the walls of what are called the Cult Rooms at the northern end ...
The Great Bath at Bath, England.
The Roman bath at Bath, Somerset, England. The Romans developed the planning of bath buildings to a degree unknown before. At Bath, which had ...
The north end of the Roman bathhouse at Chesters.
Ruins of the north end of the 2nd century A.D. Roman bath house at Chesters, England. In every part of the Empire, the Romans created frontier ...

Provinces of the Empire: Gaul (Gallia)

An interior view of the Roman theater at Orange.
An interior view of the Roman theater at Orange, France, showing the stage and proscenium from the cavea (auditorium). The stage and stage ...
Interior of the water channel of the Pont du Gard.
The interior water channel of the Pont du Gard aqueduct near Nîmes, ...
The Maison Carrée, a Roman temple in Nîmes.
The Maison Carrée, a Roman temple in Nîmes, France. After its conquest by Julius Caesar, Gaul became an important province of the Roman Empire. ...
The Pont du Gard, a Roman aqueduct near Nîmes.
The Pont du Gard, a Roman aqueduct near Nîmes, France. Aqueducts like this enabled the water to cross ravines and valleys or to reach elevated ...
The Pont du Gard.
A closer view of the Pont du Gard aqueduct near Nîmes, ...
The Roman amphitheater at Nîmes, France.
The Roman amphitheater at Nîmes, France. The best-preserved of the Roman amphitheaters in France, it dates from the 1st or 2nd century A.D. ...
The Roman triumphal arch at Orange, France.
This Roman triumphal arch at Orange, France, was constructed to commemorate the founding in 25 A.D. of Orange, a settlement for Roman military ...

Provinces of the Empire: Petra and Palmyra

A Nabataean tomb at Maidan Salik.
A Nabataean tomb at Madain Salik, Saudi Arabia. The Hellenistic influence is evident in the pilasters and the pediment, above which stands an ...
Carved cliff tombs at Madain Salik, Saudi Arabia.
Carved cliff tombs at Madain Salik, in present-day Saudi Arabia. These are the tombs of wealthy Nabataean merchants, who controlled the caravan ...
The amphitheater at Palmyra, Syria.
The Roman amphitheater at Palmyra, Syria. From a caravan oasis in the Syrian desert, Palmyra grew to become an international trading center by ...

The Nabatean city of Petra in Wadi Musa.
Houses cut into the rock in the Nabatean city of Petra, in Wadi Musa, Jordan. Petra was the capital city of the Nabateans, who controlled the ...
The Treasury of the Nabataeans in Petra.
The Treasury of the Nabataeans in Petra. This imposing façade, carved in the face of a cliff, is a testament to the vitality and wealth of the ...

Provinces of the Empire: Spain

Foundations and floor mosaics of Itálica house.
The foundations and floor mosaics of a house at Itálica, Spain. Mosaics were a typical means of finishing the floors of a Roman house. Floor ...
The Decumanus Maximus of Itálica, Spain.
The Decumanus Maximus of Itálica, Spain. Every Roman city had a street known as the Decumanus Maximus, the city's main street. Surviving ...
The Roman aqueduct at Tarragona, Spain.
The Roman aqueduct at Tarragona, Spain. Although the Romans borrowed heavily from the Greeks in the area of art, they made original ...
The Roman aqueduct that bisects Segovia, Spain.
The Roman aqueduct that bisects Segovia, Spain. Aqueducts were built for many cities by the Romans to supply them with fresh water. The first ...
The sewer of Itálica as it exits under the wall.
The sewer of Itálica as it exited from under the city wall. During the Napoleonic Wars of the early 19th century, the French Marshal Sault ...

Provinces of the Empire: Syria: Baalbek

An interior wall of the Temple of Astarte.
An interior wall of the Temple of Astarte in the Roman Sanctuary of Jupiter at Baalbek, ...
Panorama of Sanctuary of Jupiter, Baalbek.
A panoramic view from the temple steps of the Sanctuary of Jupiter, Baalbek. The Romans built a unique two story forum at Baalbek; the lower ...
Six columns of the Temple of Jupiter at Baalbek.
Six columns of the Temple of Jupiter at Baalbek in ...
Stairs leading up to the sanctuary at Baalbek.
Stairs leading up to the Roman Sanctuary of Jupiter at Baalbek, Lebanon. Baalbek, a Roman colony called Heliopolis, was the site of an oracle of ...
The exedra in the Sanctuary of Jupiter, Baalbek.
The exedra in the Roman Sanctuary of Jupiter at Baalbek, Lebanon. An exedra is a semicircular portico that was used by the ancient Greeks and ...
The peristyle of the Temple of Astarte, Baalbek.
The peristyle of the Temple of Astarte in the Sanctuary of Jupiter at Baalbek, Lebanon. In classical architecture the peristyle was a series of ...
The Temple of Astarte at Baalbek.
The Temple of Astarte in the Roman Sanctuary at Baalbek, Lebanon. Astarte was the Semitic goddess of fertility and love, and was the most ...

Public Entertainment

A model of the Circus Maximus in Rome.
A model of the Circus Maximus as it was during the Imperial ...
African animals to be taken to Colosseum.
A 3rd century A.D. mosaic picturing African animals which are being taken to Rome for Colosseum entertainments. This mosaic is from the Piazza ...
Business and residential section of Herculaneum.
Ruins of a business and residential section of Herculaneum, Italy. Herculaneum was a popular resort town for wealthy Romans near Pompeii that ...
Structural elements of the Colosseum at Rome.
Structural elements of the Colosseum at Rome. This view shows the intersecting arches that supported the seats in the ...
The arena and seats of the Roman Colosseum.
The arena and seats of the Roman Colosseum. The amphitheater had a wooden floor, which served as the roof for extensive underground structures ...
The Circus Maximus in Rome.
The Circus Maximus in Rome. This was the location for chariot racing in Rome during the Imperial ...
The Roman Colosseum.
The Roman Colosseum. This structure was officially called the Flavian Amphitheater, and was built between 75 and 80 A.D. under the emperors ...
The Theater of Marcellus in Rome, Italy.
The Theater of Marcellus in Rome, built between 49 B.C. and 13 A.D. Begun by Julius Caesar and completed by Augustus, this theater was dedicated ...

Religions: Christianity

A model of the 2nd Temple in Jerusalem.
A model of the Second Temple in Jerusalem. Herod the Great rebuilt that temple as much to glorify himself as

to please the Jews. Non-Jews were ...

A model of the Roman Fortress Antonia.

A model of the Roman fortress Antonia, beside the Second Temple in Jerusalem. The relationship between the Romans and Jews was never easy. This ...

An overview of present-day Jerusalem.

An overview of present-day Jerusalem, a city holy to Jews, Christians, and Moslems. The large mosque at the right is the Dome of the Rock, built ...

The royal courtyard of the 2nd Temple.

A model of the royal courtyard of the Second Temple in Jerusalem. This courtyard was part of the reconstruction of the Jewish Temple carried out ...

Religions: Early Christianity, 30-300 A.D.

A Christian floor mosaic at Hinton-St.-Mary.

An early Christian floor mosaic at Hinton-St.-Mary in Dorset, England, 4th century A.D. At the center of the mosaic is a picture of Jesus. ...

A hall in the Catacomb of St. Domatilla, Rome.

A burial-niche-lined hallway in the Catacomb of St. Domatilla, Rome. The practice of burial in underground cemeteries is believed to have been ...

An altar inside Mary's house in Ephesus.

An altar inside Mary's house in Ephesus. The present building belonged to a 5th century Byzantine monastery, and since the 19th century has been ...

An icon of Saints Peter and Paul.

An icon (sacred image) of Saints Peter and Paul, made according to a very early tradition. Peter and Paul were the most prominent leaders of the ...

Biblical scene from Ethiopian Coptic manuscript.

A Biblical scene from an ancient Ethiopian Coptic manuscript. The Coptic, Armenian, and Jacobite churches split off from the Catholic Church in ...

Christian mosaic in a home at Ostia Antica.

A Christian mosaic in a private home in Ostia Antica, Italy. The chalice with a fish signified that this was the home of a Christian family. ...

Early Christian baptism by immersion.

Early Christian baptism by immersion, shown on a Roman funerary stele from the 5th century ...

Early Christian symbols from the catacombs, Rome.

Early Christian symbols from the Catacomb of St. Callisto. The fish was a secret sign used by early Christians. Named after Pope St. Calixtus, ...

Interior of Christian cave church at Antioch.

The interior of the early Christian cave church at Antioch. The Gospel or "good news" about Jesus was at first transmitted by word of mouth, but ...

Remains of the church of St. John in Ephesus.

The remains of the nave of the church of St. John in Ephesus. The Apostle Paul spent more time in Ephesus than in any other city of the ...

The baptismal font in the church of St. John.

The baptismal font in the church of St. John, Ephesus. It is clear from these ruins that the early Christians in Ephesus practiced baptism by ...

The baptistry in the church of St. John, Ephesus.

The baptistry in the church of St. John, Ephesus. As evidenced by this large room, early Christian baptism was intended to be a public ...

The Coptic Church of Abu Sarga at Cairo.

The Coptic Church of Abu Sarga (St. Sergius) at Cairo, Egypt. This Coptic church is squeezed in among old houses and meandering alleys, with its ...

The early Christian cave church at Antioch.

The early Christian cave church at Antioch. This city in Roman Syria was one of the first places to which Christianity spread after its origin ...

The house of Jesus' mother Mary in Ephesus.

An exterior view of the house in Ephesus that tradition holds belonged to Mary, the mother of Jesus of ...

Religions: Jesus of Nazareth

A fresco depicting the crucifixion of Christ.

A fresco depicting the crucifixion of Christ. The popularity of Jesus became a threat to the authority of the Jewish leaders. He was betrayed ...

An overview of Capernaum on the Sea of Galilee.

An overview of Capernaum on the Sea of Galilee. According to the Christian Gospels, Capernaum was the center of Jesus' activity during his three ...

Remains of the synagogue of Capernaum in Galilee.

Remains of the synagogue of Capernaum in Galilee. Jesus taught and performed several miracles in this ...

Ruins of houses of Saint Peter and neighbor.

Ruins of the houses of Saint Peter and a neighbor in ...

The Adoration of the Magi.

The Adoration of the Magi. According to the Christian Gospels, several Magi traveled from Babylonia to present gifts to the infant Jesus. ...

The resurrection of Jesus, a carved roundel.

The resurrection of Jesus, a carved French oak roundel, ca. 1890 A.D. According to Christian belief, Jesus rose physically from the dead after ...

The site of the Sermon on the Mount.

The site of the Sermon on the Mount and of some of Jesus' ...

Religions: Mithraism, a Mystery Religion

Mithras killing the bull, 2nd century A.D.

Mithras killing the bull, 2nd century A.D. In this sculpture group, Mithras is poised to cut the throat of the bull as a part of the baptism ...

The interior of the Mithraic Temple at Ostia.

The interior of the Mithraic Temple at Ostia Antica, Italy. Members of the Mithras cult met here to perform their secret rites. The cult had ...

The Temple of Mithras at Ostia Antica, Italy.

The Temple of Mithras at Ostia Antica, Italy. Mithraism was one of several popular mystery religions that emerged from the eastern Mediterranean ...

Religions: The State Religion

A bronze statue of Jupiter with a club.

A bronze statue of Jupiter with a club, 4th-3rd century B.C. Jupiter (known to the Greeks as Zeus) was the supreme deity in the classical ...

A marble statue of Mercury, 2nd century A.D.

A 2nd-century A.D. marble statue of Mercury. The Roman god Mercury (known to the Greeks as Hermes) was the messenger of the gods, the leader of ...

A Medusa head from the Roman Empire period.

A Medusa head from the Roman Empire period. Medusa was one of three Gorgons in Greek mythology. Gorgons were underworld monsters represented as ...

A statue of Hercules from the 2nd century A.D.

A statue of Hercules from the 2nd century A.D. Hercules (the Greek Heracles) was the son of Jupiter (Zeus) and a Greek hero who successfully ...

An interior view of the Pantheon at Rome.

An interior view of the Pantheon at Rome, Italy. It was named the "Pantheon" because it was dedicated to all of the gods of the pagan religion. ...

The god Cupid drinking and dancing.

The god Cupid drinking and dancing. Cupid (the Greek Eros) was the son of Venus (Aphrodite). Often characterized as a winged archer, Cupid, at ...

The Pantheon in Rome, Italy.

The Pantheon in Rome. A temple dedicated to all the gods, this building is considered one of the greatest design achievements of Roman ...

The Temple of Vesta, on the banks of the Tiber.

The Temple of Vesta, the Roman goddess of the hearth, in Rome. The worship of Vesta took place not in a large temple, but in this modest round ...

The Dacian Wars, 85-180 A.D.

A battle between the Romans and Dacians.

A battle between the Romans and Dacians during Trajan's second war, 105-106 A.D. The Dacians inhabited what is now called Romania on the eastern ...

A marble map showing the Roman Empire in 117 A.D.

A marble map showing the Roman Empire in 117 ...

Aurelius exhorts troops and makes sacrifices.

The Emperor Marcus Aurelius exhorts his troops (left) and makes sacrifices to the Roman gods (right) during his wars on the Danube frontier, ...

Prisoners taken during the Dacian War of 105-106.

Prisoners taken by Trajan during the Dacian War of 105-106. These bas-reliefs, on the triumphal Arch of Constantine in Rome, were taken from ...

The Emperors and Their Families, 31 B.C. to 180 A.D

A bust of Emperor Hadrian.

Hadrian (Publius Aelius Hadrianus) who reigned from 117 to 138 A.D., was devoted to the legal and judicial issues of the empire. He was ...

A bust of the Emperor Lucius Verus.

The Emperor Lucius Verus, who reigned as co-emperor from 161 to 169 A.D. Adopted first by Hadrian and then by Antoninous Pius, Verus was ...

A bust of the Emperor Tiberius.

A bust of the Emperor Tiberius, who reigned 14 to 37 A.D. An efficient, tenacious administrator and general, Tiberius was nevertheless a ...

A bust of the Emperor Vespasian.

Vespasian, who reigned from 69 to 79 A.D., was the first emperor of the Flavian House. He was neither a brilliant politician nor a perceptive ...

A marble map showing the Roman Empire, 14 A.D.

A marble map showing the borders of the Roman Empire at the end of Augustus' reign in 14 A.D. At the death of Augustus, the Roman Empire ...

A relief of the Julio-Claudian family.

A relief of the Julio-Claudian family. Four members of the Julio-Claudian dynasty are shown: Augustus, Livia, Agrippa, and Marcellus. ...

A Roman vase from Hadrian's villa at Tivoli.

A Roman vase from Hadrian's villa at Tivoli, Italy. Originally a 2nd-century A.D. piece, it was reconstructed from surviving fragments by ...

Antinous, the favorite youth of Hadrian.

Antinous, the favorite youth of Hadrian. This young man was extremely popular throughout the Roman Empire because of the active promotion of his ...

Antoninus Pius, Roman emperor from 138 to 161 A.D.

Antoninus Pius, the emperor from 138 to 161 A.D., was aptly characterized by the title "Pius" conferred upon him. In Latin, pius means devoted ...

Caesar Augustus (63 B.C.-14 A.D.).

Caesar Augustus (63 B.C.-14 A.D.) Caius Julius Caesar Octavianus was the grand-nephew and adopted heir of Julius Caesar; as Octavian, he was ...

Expansion, Roman Empire, Augustus to Hadrian.

A map of the expansion of the Roman Empire from Augustus to Hadrian, 31 B.C. to 138 A.D. Between 268 and 31 B.C., all of the land that ...

Faustina, the wife of Marcus Aurelius.

Faustina, the wife of Marcus Aurelius. He was heavily criticized for choosing his son Commodus to follow him as emperor, instead of selecting ...

Marcus Aurelius, Roman emperor 161-180 A.D.

Marcus Aurelius, the Roman emperor from 161 to 180 A.D. Although a brilliant Stoic philosopher and a pacifist, Aurelius was compelled to be a ...

Mark Antony.

The Roman statesman and soldier Mark Antony (Antonius Marcus, ca. 83-30 B.C.) was a commander in Julius Caesar's war against Pompey; and then ...

Sacrifice to Diana by the emperor.

A sacrifice to Diana by the emperor as high priest. This is a roundel from the time of Hadrian on the south side of Constantine's Arch in Rome. ...

The Emperor Claudius, who reigned 41 to 54 A.D.

The Emperor Claudius, who reigned from 41 to 54 A.D. The scholarly, crippled Claudius came to power at the age of 51, following the ...

The Emperor Domitian, who reigned 81 to 96 A.D.

The Emperor Domitian, who reigned from 81 to 96 A.D. Titus Flavius Domitianus Augustus was the second son of the Emperor Vespasian, and the last ...

The Emperor Nero, who reigned 54 to 68 A.D.

The Emperor Nero, who reigned from 54 to 68 A.D. Like his uncle Caligula before him, Nero had little talent or interest in the exhaustive tasks ...

The Emperor Titus, who reigned 79 to 81 A.D.

The Emperor Titus (Titus Flavius Sabinus Vespasianus), who reigned from 79 to 81 A.D., was the first son of the Emperor Vespasian. After ...

Trajan, who reigned from 98 to 117 A.D.

Trajan (Marcius Ulpius Trajanus), who reigned as emperor from 98 to 117 A.D., exemplified the strengths and flaws of the more exceptional Roman ...

The Forum: Heart of the Empire

A Roman basilica.

A Roman basilica, the design of an early Christian ...

A Vestal Virgin.

A statue of a Vestal Virgin. Vesta was the Roman goddess of the hearth who presided over the central altar of family, city, tribe, and race. ...

An artist's reconstruction of the Roman Forum.

An artist's reconstruction of the Roman Forum, looking east. The Forum was the city's chief public square, and served as a market and meeting ...

Ruins of the Roman Forum, looking east.

Ruins of the Roman Forum, looking east. The three columns in the background are the remains of the Temple of Castor and Pollux on Capitoline ...

The Basilica of Maxentius and Constantine, Rome.

The Basilica of Maxentius and Constantine in Rome, Italy. It was begun by Emperor Maxentius (308-312 A.D.) and completed by Constantine, who ...

The north side of Palatine Hill, Rome.

The north side of Palatine Hill in Rome. The Palatine is one of Rome's seven hills, the site of its oldest settlement, and according to legend ...

The Temple of Vesta in the Roman Forum.

Remains of the Temple of Vesta in the Roman Forum. A temple first stood here from the early days of the Republic. Over the course of ten ...

Trajan's Forum and markets in Rome, Italy.

Remains of Trajan's Forum and markets in Rome. Designed by Apollodorus of Damascus in the early 2nd century A.D., these structures were famed ...

The Jewish Wars, 66-73 A.D.

A detail from Titus's Arch showing the Menorah.
A detail from Titus's Arch showing the menorah being taken as booty from the Holy of Holies in the Second Jewish Temple in Jerusalem. The ...
A topographical map of Masada.
A topographical map of Masada, near the Dead Sea. Masada was originally a fortress and palace, and the king of Judea, Herod the Great (ca. 73-4 ...
An overview of the Qumran site near the Dead Sea.
An overview of the Qumran site. Qumran, located on the northwest side of the Dead Sea, was the home of an ancient Jewish sect called the ...
Ruined buildings of the Essene community.
Ruined buildings of the Essene community at Qumran. The Essenes were a religious community devoted to the study of Jewish law and tradition. ...
Ruins of the north fortifications at Masada.
Ruins of the north fortifications at Masada. Part of the Roman siege ramp is visible at the ...
Ruins of the synagogue of Gamla.
Ruins of the synagogue of Gamla. Motivated by religious fervor and national pride, the Jews fought bitterly to the end. The Romans finally ...
Site of Gamla, first major Jewish Revolt battle.
The ruins at Gamla, the site of the first major battle of the Jewish Revolt, which lasted from 66 to 73 A.D. The Emperor Vespasian was almost ...
The Arch of Titus, in Rome.
The Arch of Titus, in Rome, which was erected by the Emperor Domitian to commemorate the conquest and destruction of Jerusalem in 70 ...
The entrance to one of the caves at Qumran.
The entrance to one of the caves at Qumran. A two-thousand-year-old copy of the Book of Isaiah was found among The Dead Sea Scrolls in one ...
The Roman siege ramp at Masada.
The Roman siege ramp at Masada. The ramp stretches into the distance as it descends from left to ...
The site of the Roman camps, viewed from Masada.
The site of the Roman camps, and the Dead Sea, viewed from the heights of ...

The Later Roman Empire, 180-337: The Emperors

A bust of Emperor Septimus Severus.
Roman Emperor Septimus Severus, who reigned from 193 to 211 A.D. He had been a senator and a general, and was declared emperor by his legions ...
Bust of Trebonianus Gallus, reigned 251-253.
The Roman Emperor Trebonianus Gallus, who reigned 251-253 A.D. Gallus was one of the many "barracks emperors" who rose to power in the chronic ...
Claudius II Gothicus, who reigned 268-270 A.D.
The Emperor Claudius II Gothicus, who reigned 268-270 A.D. Although the Roman Empire continued to be divided under the "barracks emperors," ...
Julia Domna, wife of Septimus Severus.
Julia Domna, the wife of Septimus Severus. She came from a prominent priestly family in Syria and was the mother of the emperors Caracalla and ...
The Emperor Caracalla, reigned 211-217 A.D.
The Emperor Caracalla, who reigned 211-217 A.D. After his father Septimus Severus gave him joint rule of the Roman Empire with his brother Geta, ...
The Roman Emperor Commodus, ruled 180-192 A.D.
The Roman Emperor Marcus Commodus Antonius, who ruled 180-192 A.D., was one of the two sons of Emperor Marcus Aurelius. He was made joint senior ...

The Later Roman Empire, 180-337: The Empire Divided: the Tetrarchy and Constantine

A statue of Helena, the mother of Constantine.
A statue of Helena, the mother of Constantine the Great and the wife of the Emperor Constantius I Chlorus, who reigned in 305-306 ...
Constantine the Great, who reigned 306-337 A.D.
Constantine the Great, who reigned from 306 to 337 A.D. Constantine became emperor of the West after defeating Maxentius at the Battle of the ...
Constantine's Arch beside the Colosseum in Rome.
Constantine’s Arch beside the Colosseum in Rome. Among the Emperor Constantine’s many achievements were the extension of legal rights and ...
Mausoleum of Emperor Galerius, ruled 305-311.
The mausoleum of Emperor Galerius, who ruled from 305 to 311 A.D. While he was caesar, he established Thessaloniki as his capital in the east. ...
Subdivision of Roman Empire into four prefectures.
A map of the Roman Empire’s four subdivisions, called prefectures. Besides the division of the empire into east and west, Diocletian subdivided ...
The division of the Roman Empire under Diocletian.
A map of the division of the Roman Empire under Emperor Diocletian. After decades of civil war, Diocletian became the sole emperor in 284. ...
The Emperor Constantius II, reigned 337-361 A.D.

The Roman Emperor Constantius II, who reigned from 337 to 361 A.D. He was the third son of Constantine the Great and ruled as joint-emperor with ...

The Tetrarchy, 284-305 A.D.

A statue representing the Tetrarchy. The Emperor Diocletian, who reigned 284-305 A.D., brought the period of the barracks emperors to an end and ...

The Roman Legions and Their Armament

A memorial stele to Ares, a Roman soldier.

A memorial stele to Ares, a Roman soldier, 160-180 A.D. There are two images carved in high relief, which seem to be a mirror image of Ares. ...

A model of the Roman log bridge over the Rhine.

A model of part of the Roman log bridge over the Rhine built by Julius Caesar. Roman armies were adept at constructing bridges, siege works, and ...

A Roman ballista.

A Roman ballista, a machine for hurling stones and bolts of iron (which often were heated red hot before being fired). It consisted of the great ...

Roman ships and rowers from Trajan's column.

Roman ships and rowers, a detail from the Emperor Trajan's column in ...

Roman soldiers engaged in construction.

Roman soldiers engaged in construction projects. When not training or fighting in battle, Roman soldiers customarily were put to work on ...

The Roman Republic, 509-31 B.C.

A City of the Republic: Ostia Antica: Export-Import Trade

A shipper trading with Narbo in Gaul.

In the Street of Merchants, a mosaic sign for a shipper trading with Narbo in Gaul. During the Empire period, through this port came the grain ...

The business sign (mosaic) of an ivory merchant.

The business sign (mosaic) of an ivory merchant in the Street of Merchants in Ostia Antica, Italy. This company was based in Sabrata, a port on ...

The business sign of a transfer shipping company.

The business sign (mosaic) of a transfer shipping company in the Street of Merchants at Ostia Antica. All merchandise had to be transferred from ...

The entrance to a large warehouse in Ostia.

The entrance to a large warehouse in Ostia Antica. Erected in the 2nd century A.D. by two rich freedmen named Epagathiana et Epaphroditiana, ...

A City of the Republic: Ostia Antica: Neighborhood Living

A restaurant on the Via di Diana in Ostia Antica.

A restaurant on the Via di Diana (Street of Diana) in Ostia Antica. This restaurant had a thermopolium, a "fast food" counter open to ...

A tenement block in Ostia Antica.

An insula, or tenement block, in Ostia Antica. In Roman cities the moderately well-off lived on the ground level, while persons of lesser ...

A wine tavern in Ostia Antica, Italy.

A wine tavern in Ostia Antica, Italy. Designed for the quick service of beverages, this bar was owned by one Fortunatus, according to a pavement ...

An interior view of a restaurant in Ostia Antica.

An interior view of a restaurant on the Via di Diana in Ostia Antica. This restaurant, called a popina, and was built in the 3rd century A.D. ...

Remains of a firehouse in Ostia Antica.

Remains of a neighborhood firehouse in Ostia Antica. The Roman government recognized the danger of fire in its cities and instituted regular ...

Stalls along a market street in Ostia Antica.

Stalls along a market street in Ostia Antica. These shops were occupied by small retailers who catered to the everyday needs of the populace. ...

The advertisement mosaic for Fortunatus' bar.

The advertisement mosaic for Fortunatus' bar in Ostia Antica. His bar was situated at the junction of the Decumanus Maximus (the main east-west ...

The broad stairway of a tenement in Ostia Antica.

The broad stairway of a tenement in Ostia Antica. This stairway demonstrates the Roman talent for intricate and decorative brick work. Some of ...

The ground level hallway of a tenement.

The ground-level hallway of a tenement in Ostia Antica. This hallway reveals an expert use of arch and groin vaulting that provided support for ...

A City of the Republic: Ostia Antica: Public Facilities

A bull is led to be sacrificed.

A bull is led to be sacrificed. This mosaic is from the chapel of the imperial court, in the Roman port of Ostia ...

A cutaway model of a Roman bath house.

A cutaway model of a Roman bath house. Baths were intended to be leisurely escapes from everyday tensions, and were taken in several stages: ...

A mausoleum outside Ostia Antica, Italy.
A mausoleum outside Ostia Antica. Columbaria for urns (such as this one for the ash remains of entire families) and cemeteries for inhumations ...
Public toilets in Ostia, Italy.
Public toilets in Ostia, Italy. The toilets were open to all citizens, male and female, who used them at the same time. There was no ...
Street of the Tombs, Ostia Antica.
The Street of the Tombs in Ostia Antica. It was outside of the city walls since Roman custom did not permit burial within the city. For that ...
Terra cotta heating conduits for the baths.
Terra cotta heating conduits for the baths at Ostia, Italy. These conduits provided radiant heating through the walls and floors for the ...
The Decumanus Maximus and the theater, Ostia.
The Decumanus Maximus and the theater in Ostia Antica. This façade outside the theater of Ostia Antica reveals superb brick work and a good ...
The Forum and its temple in Ostia Antica, Italy.
The Forum and its temple in Ostia Antica, Italy. Each Roman city had a forum that served as its civil and religious center, and each forum had a ...
The Hot Room of the Baths of the Drivers at Ostia.
The Hot Room of Baths of the Drivers at Ostia, Italy. The walls of this brick structure were finished in ...
The Porta Romana gate of Ostia Antica, Italy.
The Porta Romana entrance into Ostia Antica, Italy. Ostia was the major port of ancient Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber River. It was ...
The west side of the Great Baths of the Forum.
The west side of the Great Baths of the Forum in Ostia Antica. Baths were places of cleansing and socializing among Roman citizens. On this ...

Civil War and the End of the Roman Republic, 133 to 131 B.C.

Cicero (106-43 B.C.).
The Roman statesman and lawyer Cicero (106-43 B.C.) was the most remarkable orator of his time, and a respected philosopher during the Late ...
Julius Caesar (102-44 B.C.).
Julius Caesar (102-44 B.C.) After service in the Roman army in Asia Minor, Caius Julius Caesar returned to Rome in 78 B.C. to begin his ...
Julius Caesar's fleet vs. the Alexandrian fleet.
Julius Caesar's fleet vs. Cleopatra's Alexandrian fleet in 48 B.C. This battle was fought when Julius Caesar sent a fleet and an army to secure ...

The Punic Wars, 264-202 B.C.

A map of the Carthaginian empire, 264 B.C.
A map of the Carthaginian empire in 264 B.C. Carthage was a powerful trading state founded by the Phoenicians around the 8th century B.C. Its ...
A marble map showing Roman expansion by 146 B.C.
A marble map showing Roman expansion to 146 B.C. After Carthage was destroyed in the Third Punic War (149-146 B.C.), Rome ruled over an empire ...
Excavations at Carthage.
Excavations at Carthage in Tunisia. A thriving commercial center founded by the Phoenicians, Carthage was the trading capital of the western ...
Map: The Second Punic War, 221-201 B.C.
A map of the Second Punic War, 221-201 B.C. In its first war with the Phoenician (Punic) city of Carthage in 264-241, Rome became involved in a ...
Roman fortifications on the acropolis of Saguntum.
Second century B.C. Roman fortifications on the Acropolis of Saguntum, Spain. This site has been occupied by various armies from the ...

The Roman People

"Cato and Portia," 1st century B.C.
"Cato and Portia," 1st century B.C. Marcus Porcius, Cato the Elder (234-149 B.C.), was a Roman statesman and soldier. He was from a prominent ...
A bronze she-wolf nursing Rome's founders.
A she-wolf nursing Rome's founders, Romulus and Remus. In the Roman myth, the god Mars fathered the twins Romulus and Remus and left them to ...
A Roman sacrifice.
A Roman sacrifice. In Roman society, sacrifices were performed to assure success in any important matter: war, a bountiful harvest, or ...
A view of the Roman Forum from Palatine Hill.
A view of the Roman Forum from Palatine Hill toward the Capitoline. The three columns together in the left foreground are the remains of the ...
Archimedes.
Archimedes (287?-212 B.C.) was a Sicilian mathematician who made his major contribution in geometry. He also invented the water screw and ...
Map: Rome’s major roads.

A map of Rome's major roads: the Via Appia, Rome to Tarentum, green line; Via Cassia to Verona, blue; and Via Flaminia to Fanum Fortunae, ...

Marble busts of seven Roman men.

Marble busts of seven Roman men. Lacking photography, wealthy Romans turned to stone to preserve their appearance for their posterity. Roman ...

The features and hair styles of three Roman women.

The features and hair styles of three Roman women. Fashion was a major component of the Roman society. Styles of clothes and hair went through ...

The interior of a Roman library.

A reconstruction of the interior of the Roman library in Emperor Hadrian's villa. Libraries date from very early times and were known in ancient ...

The mistress of a Roman household and servants.

The mistress of a Roman household and her servants. A wealthy Roman household could be extensive, containing several generations of the family, ...

The poet Virgil.

Virgil (Pueblos Vergilius Maro, 70-19 B.C.) was the greatest Roman poet. He studied rhetoric and philosophy, and became one of the endowed court ...

The Rostrum of the Roman Forum.

The Rostrum of the Roman Forum. A rostrum was a platform for public speaking. From this platform, Antony gave his eulogy for Julius Caesar, ...

The Via Appia (Appian Way) just outside Rome.

The Via Appia (Appian Way) just outside Rome. During the period of the Republic, 509 to 27 B.C., the Romans developed the design and engineering ...

The Spread of Christianity

Eastern Monasticism: Cappadocia, in Turkey

A hermitage and chapel at Cappadocia, Turkey.

A hermitage and chapel at Cappadocia in ...

An overview of the valley of Cappadocia, Turkey.

An overview of the valley of Cappadocia in Turkey. Cappadocia was the ancient name for a mountainous region of central Turkey, between the ...

Byzantine monastery's chapel, Cappadocia, Turkey.

The restored interior of a Byzantine monastery's chapel at Cappadocia in ...

Exterior of ruined monastic cave at Cappadocia.

The exterior of a ruined monastic cave at Cappadocia in ...

Ruined church in cliff, Cappadocia, Turkey.

A ruined church exposed in a cliff at Cappadocia in Turkey. Monks and hermits carved cells, homes, and churches in the soft stone of these ...

Eastern Monasticism: Egypt

The Temptation of St. Anthony.

The Temptation of St. Anthony. He served as a model to countless thousands of monastic Christians long after his death. This is a ca. 1130 ...

An Icon of St. Anthony of the Desert.

An icon of St. Anthony of the Desert. Anthony, a religious hermit in Egypt, was one of the founders of early Christian monasticism. He sold all ...

Monks in the Monastery of St. Macarios.

Figures of monks in the Monastery of St. Macarios. Asceticism and a secluded life in the desert became very popular among Christians during the ...

The Monastery of St. Catherine.

The Monastery of St. Catherine in Sinai, Egypt. Tradition holds that St. Catherine was a 4th century A.D. Christian martyr during the reign of ...

The Later Roman Empire, 180-337: The Empire Divided: the Tetrarchy and Constantine

Map, spread of Christianity to 12th century.

A map showing the spread of Christianity to the 12th century. The first Christians, although few in numbers and subjected to frequent ...

One of the gates of Nicaea in Turkey.

One of the gates of Nicaea, Turkey. The Emperor Constantine called for a Council of the Church which he convened in his palace here in 381 A.D. ...

Pope Damasus I, who reigned 366-384 A.D.

Pope Damasus I, who reigned 366-384 A.D. He came to power after a violent struggle with another candidate, the deacon Ursinus, Damasus hired a ...

Pope Silvester, who ruled 314-335 A.D.

Pope Silvester, who ruled 314-335 A.D. The Bishop of Rome, also known as the pope, was the early head of the Roman Catholic faith. The ...

Remains of the interior of Hagia Sophia, Nicaea.

Remains of the interior of the Cathedral of Hagia Sophia, at Nicaea. The name of this cathedral is similar to that of the more famous Hagia ...

The Byzantine Cathedral of Hagia Sophia.

Remains of the Byzantine Cathedral of Hagia Sophia at Nicaea, 5th-6th centuries A.D. This church structure

was the direct result of imperial ...

The Council of Constantine.

The Council of Constantine. After much debate, the Council condemned Arianism as a heresy and drew up an orthodox statement called the Nicene ...

Section D: The Foundations of Europe, 700 -1200

Overview: The Foundations of Europe, 700 -1200.

A brief video Overview of the history of the foundations of Europe, from 700 to 1200. Transcript: The migration of Germanic tribes in the fifth ...

Anglo-Saxon England, 500-1066

England: the Formation of a Kingdom

Alfred the Great (849-900?).

Alfred the Great (849-900?). King of Wessex (and eventually most of England) from 871 to 900?. Alfred spent much of his reign fighting against ...

Map, Anglo-Saxon Heptarchy, England, 7th century.

A map of the 7th-century Anglo-Saxon Heptarchy in England. Beginning in the 5th century, by crossing the North Sea the Anglo-Saxon tribes had ...

Mortuary chest of Canute the Great.

The mortuary chest of Canute the Great (?994-1035). Canute was King of England from 1016 to 1035, King of Denmark from 1018 to 1035, and Norway ...

Mortuary chest of King Egbert (d. 839 A.D.).

The mortuary chest of King Egbert (d. 839 A.D.) After spending much of his youth in exile at Charlemagne's court, Egbert returned in 802 to ...

This is a title, which may be selected for a show.

Anglo-Saxon England England: the Formation of a Kingdom This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

King Arthur: the Last of the Britons

"King Arthur's Round Table" in Winchester Palace.

King Arthur's Round Table. Though traditionally attributed to King Arthur, this table was probably built by King Edward III in the 14th century. ...

A model of Glastonbury Abbey.

A model of Glastonbury Abbey as it was during the High Middle ...

Glastonbury Tor, associated with King Arthur.

Glastonbury Tor, the site of an ancient hill fort in England associated with King Arthur. A plaque in nearby Glastonbury Abbey attests that in ...

The Great Hall of Winchester Palace.

The Great Hall of Winchester Palace. For centuries Winchester had been the Anglo-Saxon and Norman capital of England, but after the 12th ...

Tintagel Castle in Cornwall, England.

Ruins of Tintagel Castle in Cornwall, England. This castle, built in the 12th and 13th centuries, is on the site where tradition says King ...

Tintagel Island.

Tintagel Island. Tradition holds that this island was King Arthur's birthplace, around the 4th-5th century A.D. The medieval legend of Arthur ...

William's Conquest of England in 1066

An illustration from the Book of Hours.

Part of a page from the Book of Hours. This book, popular in the Middle Ages, was known in England as a "primer." It contained religious items ...

Domesday Book of William the Conqueror.

A page from the Domesday Book, 1086. The Domesday Book, compiled under the direction of William I the Conqueror of England, was a survey of the ...

The tomb of Henry II.

The tomb of Henry II (1133-1189) in the Fontevrault Abbey, Anjou, France. Henry II Plantagenet, who ruled from 1133 to 1189, was the greatest of ...

In Other Lands

Dancing Shiva, a Dravidian bronze.

From India, Dancing Shiva, a Dravidian bronze of about 12th century A.D. This was the period of the powerful Chola dynasty (846-1246 A.D.), ...

A Tale of Genji scroll.

A Tale of Genji scroll from Japan's Heian era. Brilliance and elegance in color, dress, hair and general style are well illustrated in this ...

A Torii at the Isukushima Shrine on Miyajima Isle.

A Torii at the Isukushima Shrine on Miyajima Island. The Japanese indigenous religion is called Shinto, or the way of the gods. These gods or ...

An Islamic doctor visiting a patient.

Detail from a page from Ibn Sina's Canon of Medicine showing a doctor visiting a patient and prescribing remedies. Known as Avicenna in the ...

Empress Wu Zhao.

Empress Wu, or Wu Zhao was the only woman ruler in Chinese history. Wu Zhao (627?-705), whose early career included a stint as a member of a ...

Final examinations in the presence of the emperor.

In China, a mid-9th-century final examination in the presence of the emperor. The complicated and centralized Tang administration depended upon ...

Minamoto Yoritomo, a shogun.

Minamoto Yoritomo, a shogun. The period in Japan from 1185 to 1333, the Kamakura Period, saw the establishment of a military dictatorship known ...

Prester John.

Prester John, a mythical Christian priest and king who according to myth ruled over an empire in Asia or Africa. His legend dates from the 12th ...

Prince Shotoku Taishi and his two sons.

The Japanese Prince Shotoku Taishi and his two sons. Many aspects of Chinese culture were consciously adopted by the Japanese, such as ...

Ruins of a Buddhist temple in Sri Lanka.

Ruins of a Buddhist temple entrance in the medieval capital of Polonnaruwa, Sri Lanka, dating to about the 9th-12th century. Polonnaruwa and ...

The Great Buddha of the Todaiji Temple at Nara.

In Japan, the Daibutsu (Great Buddha) of the Todaiji Temple at Nara. This statue of the Buddha is housed in what is said to be the largest ...

The Heiji civil war in Japan, 12th century.

The 12th-century Heiji (or Heike) civil war in Japan. The Heian period in Japan ended in bloody civil strife as warriors outside the Court ...

Islam

Islam Spreads its Message and its Rule

A map of the expansion of Islam, 622-673.

A map of the expansion of Islam, 622-733. Mohammed, the founder of Islam, preached a message of one God who drew all people together in a united ...

An overview of the city of Istanbul, Turkey.

An overview of the city of Istanbul, Turkey. In the foreground are buildings in Taxim; next is the Golden Horn; and next is the city of ...

Gibraltar viewed from the Straits.

Gibraltar viewed from the Straits. In A.D. 711, Islamic Berber tribes crossed the 20 miles from North Africa, occupied Gibraltar (Arabic for ...

The Mosque of Isabey in Seljuk, Turkey.

The Mosque of Isabey in Seljuk (Ephesus), Turkey. This mosque was erected between 1309 and 1425 by the family of the Emirs of Aydin, although an ...

The Rumeli Hisari Castle on the Bosphorus.

The Rumeli Hisari Castle on the Bosphorus, near Istanbul, Turkey. In 1452, prior to the 1453 Turkish siege of Constantinople, Sultan Mehmed II ...

The tomb of the Persian poet and mystic Rumi.

The turbe or tomb of the Persian poet and mystic Rumi (Mevlana Cela Ed-din Rumi) at Konya, Turkey. This building was originally called the ...

The Teaching and Practice of Islam

A Bedouin father and son in Saudi Arabia.

A Bedouin father and son in Saudi Arabia. Bedouins, who comprise about 10% of the country's population, are a nomadic people whose livelihood is ...

A house painted showing a pilgrimage to Mecca.

A mural painted on a house showing the family's pilgrimage to Mecca. All Muslims who can possibly afford it are required to make a pilgrimage to ...

A Koranic school in Cairo.

A Koranic school in Cairo in the late 19th century. Literacy has been highly prized throughout the Islamic world. The educational system was ...

A page from the Koran (or Qu'ran)..

A page from the Koran (or Qu'ran) copied in Turkey in 1545. Considered by Muslims to be the direct revelation from Allah as given to Muhammad ...

A Saudi Arabian boy reads the Koran.

A Saudi Arabian boy in traditional costume reads the Koran, the sacred book of Islam. Especially gifted students would continue their studies at ...

A Western artist's portrayal of Mohammed.

A Western artist's portrayal of Muhammad, the founder of Islam. Muhammad lived from about 570 to 632 A.D., establishing a new community in ...

An old town in central Saudi Arabia.

An old town in central Saudi Arabia. During the middle ages the people of Arabia who lived in cities built them in this fashion, using mud ...

Muslims at one of their daily prayers.

Muslims performing one of their five daily prayers. Five times a day, when the call to prayer goes out from the mosque, Muslims turn toward ...

Pilgrims arriving at Mecca.

Pilgrims arriving at Mecca to perform the hajj . One of the five basic duties or pillars of Islam, the pilgrimage has drawn Muslims from around ...

Pilgrims en route to Mecca.

Pilgrims en route to Mecca. This is a European artist's portrayal of the annual celebration surrounding the departure of a group of pilgrims to ...

Pilgrims encamped at Mecca, 1889.

Muslim pilgrims (hajjis) encamped in tents at Mecca in 1889. This rare early photograph shows the scene at Mecca as hundreds of thousands of ...

Ritual purification before entering a mosque.

Islamic ritual purification. Several men wash themselves at a fountain in the courtyard of the Great Mosque of Damascus. This is part of a ...

Shi'ite mosque and tombs.

This aerial photograph of the mosque and tombs of the 7th and 9th Shi'ite Imams on the outskirts of Baghdad shows the ornate architecture of the ...

Shoes removed before entering Mosque of Omar.

Shoes which have been removed by worshipers before entering the Mosque of Omar in Jerusalem. Traditionally, the desert Arabs remove their shoes ...

The Great Mosque at Mecca.

The Great Mosque at Mecca, Saudi Arabia. Mecca was the home of Muhammad (ca. 570-632), the prophet of Islam. Driven from his native city in ...

The Great Mosque at Medina, Saudi Arabia.

The Great Mosque at Medina, Saudi Arabia. When Muhammad, the founder of Islam, was driven from Mecca in 619 he fled to Medina, which accepted ...

The Mosque of Omar in Jerusalem.

The Mosque of Omar in Jerusalem. This mosque, called the Dome of the Rock, is the third most holy site in the Islamic religion. According to ...

The Shi'ite city of Qom, ca. 1700.

The Shi'ite city of Qom, as it may have appeared around 1700. In the Muslim religion there are two basic groups: the Sunni Muslims, which are ...

Whirling dervishes.

A group of adepts of the Mevlevi Sufi order performing whirling dances to create a state of spiritual ecstasy. This Sufi order at Konya, Turkey, ...

Islamic Spain, 711-1492

Cordoba: Cultural Center of Europe

A Moorish water wheel, 10th century.

A 10th-century Moorish water wheel. This is similar to a water wheel that would have been used in the Molino de la Albolafia at Córdoba. The ...

Cathedral within the Mezquita of Córdoba.

The Cathedral in the Mezquita of Córdoba, Spain. Once called the "Kaaba of the West," this structure was originally built as the "Great Friday ...

Entrance to Patio de los Naranjos.

The entrance to the Patio de los Naranjos (Oranges) in the Mezquita of Córdoba, Spain, ca. 8th century. Large courtyards shaded by trees were ...

Map: Muslim Spain and the reconquista.

A map of Muslim Spain and the reconquista (the Christian reconquest of Spain), 711-1492. An Islamic army crossed the Straits of Gibraltar in ...

Moorish arches in the wall of the Mezquita.

Moorish arches in the wall adjacent to the "Puerta de las Palmas" on the north side of the Mezquita, Córdoba, ...

Moorish decoration above the Mezquita entrance.

Moorish decoration above the main entrance to the Mezquita of Córdoba, Spain. The people of Córdoba built mosques unequaled in the Islamic ...

Muhammed al Gafeo ("the Oculist") of Córdoba.

Muhammed al Gafeo ("the Oculist"), of Córdoba, Spain. The contribution made to operations on eyes and the fitting of glasses by this man is ...

The city of Córdoba, Spain.

The city of Córdoba, Spain. From 756 to 1031, Córdoba was the seat of an emirate (i.e., having an emir as the ruler) comprising most of Moorish ...

The Molino de la Albolafia near Córdoba.

The Molino de la Albolafia near Córdoba, Spain. Originally built as part of an Almohad palace that projected over the Guadalquivir River, the ...

From Mosque to Cathedral

Moorish decoration on the Giralda Tower.

Twelfth century Moorish decoration on the Giralda ...

The Cathedral of Burgos, Spain.

The 13th-16th centuries Cathedral of Burgos, Spain. The Bishop of Burgos, an Englishman, had brought drawings of Gothic cathedrals from ...

The interior of the Cathedral of Seville.
The interior of the Cathedral of Seville, Spain. This cathedral is one of the few which have five aisles, and was the last of the Gothic ...
The Patio de los Naranjos (Oranges), Seville.
A view from the top of the Giralda Tower of the Patio de los Naranjos (Oranges) from the original mosque of Seville, Spain. At left is the north ...
This is a title, which may be selected for a show.
Islamic Spain From Mosque to Cathedral This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

Islamic Seville

Decoration of the Patio of the Alcázar of Seville.
Decoration on an arch and the walls of the Patio of the Alcázar of Seville, ...
The Giralda Tower of the Cathedral of Seville.
The Giralda Tower of the Cathedral of Seville, Spain. Originally this was the minaret of the mosque in Seville. This tower rises to a height of ...
The palace and gardens of the Alcázar of Seville.
The Alcázar of Seville, Spain. The Alcázar, or Citadel, of Seville is a fortified palace which includes elaborate, extended living quarters for ...
The Patio del León of the Alcázar of Seville.
The Patio del León of the Alcázar of Seville, Spain. Note the Islamic geometric pattern of the marble pavement. To the right is the Casa del ...

The Alhambra in Granada

An exterior view of the Court of Lions.
An exterior view of the Court of Lions at the Alhambra. Mohammed V built this court as a place of quiet repose and escape from the troubles of ...
Arches in the Court of Lions.
Arches in the Court of Lions, embellished with Arabic script and geometric designs. The Muslim religion prohibited the picturing of human and ...
Court of the Myrtles at the Alhambra, Granada.
The Court of the Myrtles at the Alhambra of Granada, Spain. Two fountains, one at either end, fill a reflecting pool that is flanked by two ...
The Court of Lions at the Alhambra of Granada.
The Court of Lions at the Alhambra of Granada. The Alhambra, palace of the rulers of Granada, is the best example of the vital civilization that ...
Tower and walls of the Alcazaba in Granada.
The tower and walls of the Alcazaba in Granada, Spain. This Moorish citadel, situated at the western extremity of the Alhambra, was the last ...

The Reconquest

Abbott Isebuto, a companion of El Cid.
Abbott Sisebuto, who ruled the monastery of Saint Peter in Cardeña, near Burgos, from 1056 to 1086. When El Cid was first banished by King ...
Abengalbón, the Moorish ally of El Cid.
Abengalbón, the Moorish emir of Molina who allied himself with El Cid during the latter's first exile. In the poem, Abengalbón helped to punish ...
Alvar Fañez, a knight companion of El Cid.
Alvar Fañez, who according to the poem was the chief lieutenant of El Cid. He had a distinguished military career, and his name appears in ...
Doña Jimena Díaz, wife of El Cid.
Doña Jimena Díaz, the wife of El Cid, was a granddaughter of King Alfonso V of León (ca. 994-1027) and was given in marriage to El Cid in 1074 by ...
Jerónimo, the bishop of Valencia under El Cid.
Jerónimo, the bishop of Valencia under El Cid. Jerónimo de Périgord was a Cluniac monk from France who went to Spain to help reform the Roman ...
Martin Atoleñez, a companion of El Cid.
Martin Atoleñez, companion of El Cid. In the poem about the Cid, the knight Martin Atoleñez brought supplies to the Cid and his men after King ...
Rodrigo Díaz, El Cid Campeador (ca. 1040-1099).
Rodrigo Díaz de Vivar, famous as El Cid Campeador (ca. 1040-1099), a granite statue in Burgos, Spain. The poem of El Cid ranks with the Song of ...
The iron-bound wood chest of El Cid.
The iron-bound wood chest of El Cid. According to the poem, when he needed a loan of 600 marks El Cid filled the chest with sand and pledged to ...
The medieval castle of Burgos, Spain.
The medieval castle of Burgos, Spain. Burgos was an important city of the Kingdom of León until around 950, when it became an independent ...
The town of Avila.
Avila, a fortified medieval town, was a keystone in the Spanish reconquesta, the drive to expel the Moors from the Spanish peninsula. Since ...

Toledo: Muslim, Jewish and Christian

A menorah in the Sinagoga del Tránsito, Toledo.
A menorah, a seven-branched candle holder, in an alcove of the Sinagoga del Tránsito at Toledo. During its period of Moorish domination, Toledo ...

Arches inside Mosque of Santo Cristo de la Luz.
Moorish arches inside the Mosque of Santo Cristo de la Luz in Toledo. This church-turned-mosque-turned-church has the shape of a square ...

Central courtyard of the Alcázar of Toledo.
The 16th century central courtyard of the Alcázar of Toledo. In the center is a statue of Emperor Charles V of Spain, copied from an original by ...

Jews appealing to Ferdinand and Isabella.
Jews appealing to Ferdinand and Isabella against their deportation. The Jews, along with the Moors, represented a significant minority of ...

The Alcázar of Toledo.
The Alcázar of Toledo, Spain. Since Roman times, a fortress has been located on this site. After capturing Toledo from the Moors, King Alfonso ...

The city of Toledo, Spain.
The city of Toledo, Spain. Situated within an arc of the River Tagus that surrounds the older part of the city on three sides, Toledo has had a ...

The Mosque of Santo Cristo de la Luz at Toledo.
The Mosque of Santo Cristo de la Luz at Toledo, dating to about 987-999. This building was originally a Visigothic church that was converted by ...

The old city of Toledo.
The old city of Toledo. This was the most important city in north-central Spain during the Middle Ages, and was a metal-working center ...

The Puente de Alcántara in Toledo, Spain.
The Puente de Alcántara in Toledo. This bridge, built between 1259 and 1484, replaced an earlier Moorish bridge, which in turn replaced a Roman ...

Life in the Middle Ages

A Medieval City

Rognosa Tower of Palazzo del Podestà..
The Rognosa Tower of the Palazzo del Podestà in San Gimignano, Italy. The podestà in medieval Italian city-states was an elected executive who ...

The main street of San Gimignano.
The main street of San Gimignano. In this medieval town, even the main streets are narrow and crooked. With the fall of the Roman Empire, the ...

The medieval town of San Gimignano, Italy.
The medieval town of San Gimignano, Italy. Many small hill towns flourished as independent states in Italy during the Middle Ages. These ...

The Piazza della Cisterna in San Gimignano, Italy.
The Piazza della Cisterna of San Gimignano, Italy, from above. Near the center of this square is the town well, where citizens would bring their ...

The Porta di San Giovanni, San Gimignano.
The Porta di San Giovanni, the gate leading into the city of San Gimignano, Italy. The gates of medieval towns and cities were closed at night, ...

The Towers of San Gimignano.
The Towers of San Gimignano, Italy. Towers such as these were constructed as defensible keeps by feuding noble families and guild factions in ...

Farming

A 13th century peasant butchering a pig.
A 13th century peasant butchering a pig. The animal carcass is tied up by its feet over a basin that collects the blood, while the peasant ...

A flock of sheep at Segovia, Spain.
A flock of sheep in a street outside the city wall of Segovia, Spain. Wool was the major fiber used in the manufacture of clothes in Europe ...

An oast house in England.
An oast house in England. This building was used as a kiln to dry and store hops, a necessary ingredient in the beer-brewing process. Hops is a ...

Burgundy farmland, Vézelay.
Farmlands just outside Vézelay, France. The division of land into irregular strips for cultivation was a widespread practice in the Middle Ages. ...

Cutting grain in the Middle Ages.
Cutting grain in the Middle Ages. Women are doing the work with hand sickles, short-handled, hooked blades which had been known since antiquity. ...

Harrowing a field in the Middle Ages.
Harrowing a field in the Middle Ages. The man at the left is throwing stones at the birds, which were attracted by the turned soil and when ...

Medieval wine crushing press at St. Emilion.

A medieval wine-crushing press in St. Emilion, ...

Relief, peasant carrying pig carcass.

A relief showing a 13th century peasant carrying a pig carcass. During the Middle Ages there was often such a shortage of food for large ...

Stacking sheaves of grain.

Stacking sheaves of grain. In the Middle Ages, most agricultural work in Europe was done by the serfs, peasants in an intermediate position ...

Threshing grain.

Two men threshing grain, using flails to remove the grain from the straw. After threshing, the grain was winnowed, usually by throwing it up in ...

Life on a Medieval Manor: The Nobility

A nobleman with a falcon.

A nobleman hawking. Hawking (hunting by using trained hawks or other birds of prey) was a very popular sport among both male and female members ...

English costumes in 1480.

English costumes in 1480 (left to right) a judge, gentleman, lady of rank, courtier, and a lady of ...

Life on a Medieval Manor: The Village

"The Village Fête."

"The Village Fête." This ca. 1500 engraving is probably a depiction of the celebration held at the end of the harvest, and traditionally ...

A detail from "The Village Fête."

A detail from "The Village Fête," probably a ca. 1500 depiction of the celebration held at the end of the ...

A manorial church in Iffly, England.

A manorial church in Iffly on Thames, England, ca. 1170. This view bears witness to the prevalence of the Norman (Romanesque) style at all ...

Budge Cottage in Buckland, Devonshire, England.

Budge Cottage and its outbuildings in Buckland, Devonshire, England. As in a preceding image, the buildings have thatched roofs. The property ...

Detail from "The Village Fête."

Another detail from "The Village Fête," probably a ca. 1500 depiction of the celebration held at the end of the ...

Life on a medieval manor.

Life on a medieval manor. Patterns of manorial life remained very stable during most of the Middle Ages. Though details vary, the basic ...

Moral Instruction for the Illiterate

Lust and Despair presented fearsomely.

Lust and Despair presented fearsomely. They are on a column capital in the Basilica of St. Mary Magdalene of Vézelay, France. Besides stories ...

Presenting Christian beliefs visually.

Teaching about End-Time, a high relief over the entrance to a church in Autun. Faced with the illiteracy of the vast majority of its members, ...

Showing the punishment for those of evil life.

Showing the punishment for those of evil life, from Autun Cathedral. This section of the tympanum depicts the damned, whose sins have been ...

Showing the reward for those of good life.

A message of eternal reward for the saved, from the tympanum of Salieu Cathedral, France. In this section of a tympanum, the saved stand on the ...

Teaching the importance of prayer.

Teaching the importance of prayer through the lives of saints, ca. 1130. In the Middle Ages saints were held up as role models to all. This ...

Teaching the virtue of obedience.

Teaching the virtue of obedience from the story of Balaam, a capital with a scriptural message in the Basilica of St. Mary Magdalene, at Vézelay, ...

Medieval Monasteries

The Benedictines on the Continent

Monte Cassino Abbey, from a 1775 lithograph.

The plan of the Monte Cassino Abbey. Monte Cassino, located about 70 miles southeast of Rome, was founded in 529 by St. Benedict. It was here ...

Pope Gregory I, ruled 590-604.

Pope Gregory I (540?-604) presided over the Roman Catholic church from 590 until his death in 604. Once an Italian noble, Gregory had retired to ...

St. Benedict founds Monte Cassino.

St. Benedict founds the monastery of Monte Cassino. His great achievement was to establish a way of life that was orderly and practical for ...

The Celts in Ireland

A painting of the Monastery of Kells in Ireland.

A painting of the Monastery of Kells in Ireland. This monastery was founded by Saint Columba about 550 A.D. and was an important center of ...

A two-storied oratory at Glendaloch monastery.
A two-storied oratory or place of prayer at Glendaloch monastery, Ireland. St. Kevin, son of the royal house of Leinster, left home to live a ...
Cashel Rock political-religious center, Ireland.
The monastery and ruined cathedral on Cashel Rock, Ireland. Cashel was the ancient capital of the Kings of Munster and is one of the most sacred ...
Cashel Rock, Ireland.
Another view of the ruined cathedral at Cashel Rock, Ireland, showing the cone-topped round tower common to Celtic monasteries from around 900 to ...
Celtic scrollwork from Cashel Cathedral, Ireland.
Celtic scrollwork from Cashel Cathedral, Ireland. This decorative style was made famous in the illustrated manuscripts of the Celtic monks, most ...
Detail of the circle on Patrick and Columba cross.
Detail of the circle on the Patrick and Columba ...
The abbot's stone hall at the Kells Monastery.
The abbot's stone hall at the Monastery of Kells in Ireland. Viking invaders plundered the monastery of Kells four times between 920 and 1019. ...
The Celtic cross of Patrick and Columba.
The Celtic cross of Patrick and Columba. St. Patrick (385-461 A.D.) was the missionary who converted the Irish to Christianity. Tradition says ...
The circle from McLean's cross on Iona.
The circle on McLean's cross on the Isle of Iona in the Inner Hebrides of Scotland. The Celtic high crosses, fashioned in Britain and Ireland ...
The Iona monastery, seen from the sea.
The Iona monastery (the larger building) seen from the sea. St. Columba (ca. 521-597) established a monastery on the Isle of Iona in 563 which ...

The Reform Movement in the 10th and 11th Centuries

Benedictine monastery of Montserrat, Catalonia.
The Benedictine monastery of Montserrat ("sawtooth mountain") in Catalonia, Spain. In the 9th century, Benedictine monks from Ripoli established ...
Church in Carthusian monastery at Miraflores.
The church in the Carthusian monastery at Miraflores, near Burgos, Spain, which illustrates the rigid class stratifications of those times. In ...
Monks seated in choir stalls.
Monks seated in choir stalls. A bishop, at right, reads from a missal (prayer book). Note the bishop's staff, or crosier. It was shaped like a ...
Pope Innocent III.
Pope Innocent III was 37 years old when he came to the papal throne in 1198, one of the youngest and ablest popes ever. He was a brilliant ...
The Cluny Abbey's lands.
Lands of the Cluny Abbey in Burgundy. In 910, Duke William of Aquitaine granted the monks of Cluny land tenure free of any feudal obligations, ...
The round tower of the Cluny Abbey.
The round tower of the Cluny Abbey. After Duke William of Aquitane granted land to the monks free of feudal obligations, they had the right to ...

Pilgrims and Crusades

A pilgrim.
A pilgrim. Pilgrims are persons who journey to distant places for devotional purposes. Pilgrimages reached their greatest vogue during the ...
The medieval town of Vézelay, France.
The medieval town of Vézelay, France, 9th-13th century. Vézelay played a central role in the religious events of the Early Middle Ages. In the ...

The First Crusade, 1096-1099

An arched street in the Crusader town of Caesarea.
A vaulted street and adjacent buildings from the Crusader period in Caesarea, ...
Crusader fortifications in Caesarea, Palestine.
Crusader fortifications in Caesarea, Palestine. Caesarea was an ancient seaport on the coast of Palestine, originally built by Herod the Great. ...
Jerusalem in the Middle Ages.
Jerusalem, the destination of the Crusades, in the Middle Ages. It is pictured as being like any other European walled city, except that the ...
Mamurize Castle, at Anamur, Turkey.
Mamurize Castle at Anamur, Turkey. This crusader castle was built about 1230 on the ruins of an ancient Roman fort on Turkey's southern coast. ...
Map: Crusader States, 12th-13th centuries.
A map of the Crusader States in the 12th-13th centuries. The Fourth Crusade was diverted by the Venetians to attack Byzantium (later ...
Map: Route of 1st Crusade, 1096-1099.
The route of the First Crusade, 1096-1099. The "Holy Land," places associated with the origin and

development of Christianity, had been a part ...

Mounted crusaders in armor.

Crusaders marching in armor, depicted in stained glass. Detail of the south window in the Sainte Chapelle, Paris, ...

The Krak des Chevaliers.

The Krak des Chevaliers. The Krak (castle) was the most formidable of the crusaders' castles built in Palestine. It was garrisoned by knights ...

The Second and Later Crusades

A crossbowman cocks his weapon.

A crossbowman cocks his weapon. Crossbows were an improvement over longbows because the arrows or "bolts" could be aimed more accurately, and ...

An interior view of the Templars' Church.

An interior view of the Templars' Church in London. The effigies on the floor mark the tombs of the Knights Templar who were buried in the ...

Attack on town of Africa by English and French.

The assault on the town of Africa by English and French crusaders. This town in North Africa was situated about 70 miles from Tunis. The idea ...

Courtyard of the Hospital of the Knights, Rhodes.

The courtyard of the Hospital of the Knights at Rhodes. The order of St. John's Hospitallers had grown out of an 11th-century pilgrims' ...

Crusaders in pursuit of Turks, 13th century.

Crusaders in pursuit of Turks, a 13th-century stained glass panel in the Sainte Chapelle, Paris. Louis IX, the king of France 1226-1270, had ...

Panorama of Rhodes from the harbor.

The city of Rhodes, from the harbor. During the 15th and 16th centuries, the Knights of the Order of St. John built a series of masterpieces of ...

Rhodes at the time of the Crusades.

Rhodes at the time of the Crusades. Rhodes had been an important center of the Hellenistic civilization, and in the Middle Ages the island ...

St. Louis buries the bones of the crusaders.

St. Louis buries the bones of the crusaders. Louis IX was one of the most successful and revered monarchs in French history. He reigned from ...

St. Louis embarks on the Seventh Crusade.

St. Louis embarks on the Seventh Crusade. King Louis IX of France (1214-1270) campaigned in Egypt and Palestine from 1248 to 1254, and in ...

St. Louis renders justice.

St. Louis renders justice. One of his responsibilities as king was to judge miscreants and defaulters (note the three hanged men at left). King ...

The 13th-century Templars' Church in London.

The 13th-century Templars' Church in London, England. The Templars were an international religious-military order whose members took monastic ...

The capture of a tower by crusader ships in 1228.

The capture of a tower near Damietta, Egypt, by Crusader ships. This siege took place during the Sixth Crusade (1228-1229), which was led by the ...

Protected Living in an Age of Conflict: The Medieval Castle

The First Christian Churches

A Roman temple in Assisi, Italy.

A Roman temple in Assisi, Italy. When the Roman Empire declined in the West, people continued to live in the Roman towns. As Christianity grew, ...

Cutaway perspective drawing of Roman basilica.

A cutaway perspective drawing of a Roman basilica. ...

Floor plan of a Roman basilica with apse.

A drawing of a floor plan for a Roman basilica with an apse (the semicircular area). This is a modification of a plan for a temple of Mithras ...

Interior of St. Demetrius, Thessaloniki, Greece.

The interior of St. Demetrius in Thessaloniki, Greece. As with all Roman basilicas, this Christian church has a nave, two side aisles and an ...

The Church of Santa Sabina, Rome.

The interior of the Church of Santa Sabina in Rome, dating from 422-432 A.D. This 5th-century basilica was built on the site of a house and kept ...

Construction Elements

A Romanesque arch in Durham Cathedral.

A Romanesque arch in Durham Cathedral, England, 11th-15th centuries. The arch is decorated with the "hounds tooth" motif. Dr. Samuel Johnson ...

An example of a Romanesque nave.

An example of a Romanesque nave. The nave is the central part of the church. This nave is in the Church of San Lorenzo in Orvieto, ...

An example of groined vaulting.

An example of groined vaulting. A groin is the curved edge at the junction of two vaults. These groin vaults with barrel arches are in the Abbey ...

An example of Norman architecture: Durham.

The Norman Cathedral of Durham, England, 11th-15th centuries. Begun 24 years after the Norman Conquest, this is the finest example of Norman ...

An example of the cruciform floor plan.

An example of the cruciform floor plan in church construction. "Cruciform" means cross-shaped. This is a Romanesque church in Cologne, ...

The nave of Durham Cathedral.

The nave of Durham Cathedral, with its extraordinarily advanced engineering. Although the arcade arches are round and the clerestory tiny, the ...

The Romanesque use of the round arch.

The Romanesque use of the round arch. These arches form three Norman bays in the 1381-1412 A.D. Gloucester Cathedral in England. "Norman" is ...

The Foundations of a New Civilization

Charlemagne, Emperor of the First Europe, 500-1000

"Charlemagne's throne" in Aachen Cathedral.

"Charlemagne's throne," 8th century. Located in the Carolingian chapel at Aachen (Aix-la-Chapelle), this throne of plain marble slabs has ...

A map of the Frankish kingdom, 768.

A map of the Frankish kingdom in 768. The ultimate collapse of the Western Roman Empire was precipitated by the Germanic invasions of the 5th, ...

A Merovingian manor house.

A Merovingian manor house. Built during the 457-751 Merovingian dynasty in Gaul (modern France), the house includes a great court at lower ...

An image of Charlemagne.

Another image of Charlemagne. Although limited, Charlemagne's patronage of education produced a Renaissance in Frankish scholarship which helped ...

Clovis, King of the Franks (466?-511).

Clovis, King of the Franks. Clovis (ca. 466-511), who became king in 481, was the greatest ruler of the Merovingian dynasty in Gaul. He ...

Map: Charlemagne's Empire, 800.

A map of Charlemagne's empire in 800. The ultimate collapse of the Western Roman Empire was precipitated by the Germanic invasions of the 5th, ...

The Carolingian chapel in Aachen.

The 8th century Carolingian chapel at Aachen (Aix-la-Chapelle). Charlemagne's desire to imitate the glories of the Roman Empire is manifest in ...

The Palace Chapel of Charlemagne at Aachen.

The Palace Chapel of Charlemagne at Aachen, Germany. This chapel is one of the few remaining examples of Carolingian architecture, the bridge ...

The Disintegration of Charlemagne's Empire and the Foundations of France and Germany

A Runestone in Sweden.

A Runestone in Sweden containing a greeting from the Viking Age. Runes are ancient characters that were used in Anglo-Saxon, Scandinavian, and ...

A Viking ship, from about 1000 A.D.

The Oeseberg Viking ship, ca. 800-1030 A.D. This actual Viking ship was unearthed in Norway in 1904. Although it was a burial ship, intended to ...

Map: 9th-century Muslim and Magyar invasions.

A map of the 9th-century Muslim and Magyar invasions of Europe. Just when the fury of the Viking attacks was subsiding, new raids came from the ...

Map: Charlemagne's Empire divided, 843.

A map of Charlemagne's empire as divided by the 843 A.D. Treaty of Verdun. Charlemagne's only son Louis inherited the empire. Louis had three ...

Otto I, King of Germany, 936-973.

Otto the Great (912-973) reigned as King of Germany and as Holy Roman Emperor between 936 and 973. Considered one of the dominant rulers in the ...

The Gero Crucifix , 9th century.

The Gero Crucifix , ca. 975-1000. This Ottonian crucifix marks a major change from the Byzantine gentle, other-worldliness to a realistic ...

Viking invasions in the 9th century.

A map of the Viking invasions of Europe in the 9th century. The Viking, Muslim and Magyar invasions were a major threat to the "First Europe" of ...

The Medieval Castle

Castles in Germany, Spain and France

14th-century mortar in the Alcázar of Segovia.

A 14th-century mortar in the Alcázar (Castle) of Segovia, Spain. The introduction of gunpowder during the Middle Ages began a revolution in ...

A bedroom in the Château Langeais.

A medieval bedroom in the Château Langeais. The furnishings of this room are sparse and simple, and reflect the economic reality of the Middle ...

Château Langeais, a medieval French castle.

Château Langeais, a 15th-century French castle. Built by Louis XI to protect the road from Brittany up the Loire Valley, Langeais had long been ...

Harburg Castle on the Rhine River in Germany.

Harburg Castle on the Rhine River in Germany. The castle was built in the 12th century by the Hohenstaufen emperors of Germany and passed to the ...

Stone cannonballs in the Alcázar of Segovia.

Stone cannonballs in the Alcázar (Castle) of Segovia, Spain, dating from the 16th ...

The 14th-century castle in Segovia, Spain.

The 14th-century Muslim castle in Segovia, Spain. This castle is situated in the territory of Granada, which remained under Muslim rule until ...

The gatehouse of Harburg Castle, Germany.

The gatehouse of Harburg Castle in Germany. This view shows buildings crowded above and around the gatehouse; every square foot of available ...

The great hall of Château Langeais.

The great hall of Château Langeais. During the early Middle Ages the higher nobility enjoyed almost completely independent political power. ...

The Marienburg fortress at Würtzburg, Germany.

The Marienburg fortress at Würtzburg, Germany, dated around the 13th century, viewed from a bridge over the River Main. The "Festung Marienburg" ...

The portcullis of Harburg Castle, Germany.

Detail showing the 12th century portcullis of Harburg Castle, ...

Castles in Scotland and England

A model of Edinburgh Castle.

A model of Edinburgh Castle. This castle was difficult to attack because of its location on top of a steep hill. Over the centuries, castles ...

Bodiam Castle, Sussex.

Bodiam Castle in Sussex, England. Bodiam was a private castle built by royal license in a man-made lake on the southern coast of England in ...

The Great Hall of Conwy Castle, 1283 A.D.

Ruins of the Great Hall and Outer Bailey of the 1283 A.D. Conwy castle in Wales. To the left is the Great Hall, whose wooden ceiling was ...

The outer walls of Conwy Castle in Wales, 1283.

The towers and walls surrounding the main entry of the 1283 A.D. Conwy Castle in Wales. At the northwest corner stands the barbican leading into ...

The royal apartments of Edinburgh Castle.

A view up toward the royal apartments of Edinburgh Castle in Scotland. This site has been fortified at least since the 6th century A.D. From ...

Primary Need: Defensive Location

Cliffs below Stirling Castle, Scotland.

The steep cliffs of Stirling Castle, Scotland. Stirling made use of these great cliffs to dominate the Scottish plain ...

Eilean Donan Castle in Scotland.

Eilean Donan Castle, Scotland, ca. 1290. This castle has long served as a stronghold of the MacRaes as constables of the earls of Seaforth. In ...

The 13th-century castle of Chinon in France.

The castle of Chinon, a fortress built by Henry II of England (1133-1189) and his son Richard I (1157-1199) to protect their Angevin territories ...

The Design of the Fortifications

A drawing of a typical castle.

A drawing of a typical castle. The structure was surrounded by a moat, a ditch filled with water and crossed by a drawbridge which could be ...

A Middle Ages king giving orders to his builder.

A Middle Ages king giving orders to his builder. The workmen are using a plumb line, a square and compass, and a hoist (at lower center) worked ...

Caernarvon Castle in Wales.

Caernarvon Castle In Wales. Caernarvon had been fortified since prehistoric times; Iron Age, Roman, Celtic, and Norman ruins are present at this ...

Gate with portcullis in Tower of London.

A gate showing the pointed ends of a portcullis above an entrance into the Tower of London. The portcullis, an important mechanism of castle ...

Interior, Marten's Wall-Tower, Chepstow Castle.

An interior view of Marten's Tower in Chepstow Castle, Wales, 1270-1300. The bays are niches where archers would stand. Planks and beams for ...

The barbican gate of the Bishop's Palace, Wells.

The moat and barbican gate protecting the Bishop's Palace in Wells, England. Access to the palace grounds on this side could be made only ...

The drawbridge and gatehouse at Dover Castle.
The drawbridge and gatehouse into the inner bailey of Dover Castle in England. The drawbridge was one of the most important defensive features ...
The moat of the Bishop's Palace at Wells, England.
The moat (at left) of the Bishop's Palace at Wells, England. The moat, also called a fosse , was essentially a great ditch and an important ...
The outer bailey of Carcassonne.
The outer bailey of the walled city of Carcassonne, France. The outer bailey was the space between the outer and inner walls of a fortified ...
The Round Tower of Windsor Castle.
The Round Tower (keep) in Windsor Castle, England. Almost all castle construction began as a single tower, to which other defensive works were ...
The wall-walk in Conwy Castle, Wales.
The wall-walk in Conwy Castle, Wales. Soldiers of the castle garrison kept watch from these walkways and fought from them during an ...
Timber hoarding on a castle tower.
Timber hoarding on a castle tower. To protect soldiers on the walls from enemy missiles and the weather, timber hoards such as these were ...
Video sequence: Castles.
A video sequence concerning castles. Rivers provided a barrier, sometimes in addition to the moat, as castle builders tried to choose sites ...

The Tower of London

Edward I's palace in the Tower of London.
A drawing of Edward I's palace in the Tower of London, ca. 1300. King Edward I (1239-1307) carried on extensive rebuilding at the Tower after he ...
The chapel in the White Tower, London.
The Romanesque Chapel of St. John in the White Tower, London. Religious piety was so important during the Middle Ages that castles and houses ...
The inner bailey of the Tower of London.
The inner bailey of the Tower of London. In the foreground at left is a cordoned-off area containing the Tower's infamous execution block. One ...
The Tower of London, ca. 15th century.
The Tower of London, ca. 15th century. By that time, the original Keep (Tower) had been fortified with a water moat and outer and inner walls. ...
The Tower of London.
The Tower of London. The White Tower, William the Conqueror's Romanesque fortress, was begun just after the Battle of Hastings in 1066. Its ...
The west side of the Tower of London.
The west side of the Tower of London, England. The grassy area at center is the former moat, on the west side of the Tower. To the left are the ...

The Work of the Monasteries in Creating the Medieval Civilization

Section E: The Middle Ages in Full Blossom, 1200 - 1500

Overview: Middle Ages, 1200 - 1500.
A brief video Overview of the history of the Middle Ages in full blossom, during the period between 1200 and 1500. Transcript: The High Middle ...

In Other Lands

A bronze cannon dated 1332 A.D.
A bronze cannon dated 1332 A.D., believed to be the oldest yet discovered. The Chinese invention of gunpowder was associated with the ...
A map of the Mongol empire.
A map of the Mongol empire, the largest in territory in world history (its extent is marked here by the darker line). In contrast with their ...
Early Chinese astronomical instruments.
Astronomical instruments designed by Guo Shoujing. The large equatorial armillary sphere in the foreground was made by Nepalese craftsmen around ...
Genghis Khan.
Genghis Khan (also spelled Chinggis, Jenghiz, etc.), the founder of the Mongol empire, who lived around 1167-1227 A.D. Through military skill ...
Guo Shoujing, valuable aide to Khubilai Khan.
Guo Shoujing (Kuo Shou-ching, 1231-1316), astronomer, mathematician, engineer, and hydrographer. He had been introduced to Khubilai Khan in ...
Inca foundations at Cuzco, Peru.
Inca foundations at Cuzco, Peru. Andean Indians still use Inca techniques. In modern Cuzco, Inca foundations, with stones which have been ...
Japanese opposing a Mongol fleet.
Japanese opposing a Mongol fleet. After the Japanese beheaded two Mongol emissaries, the Mongols returned in 1281 with two invasion fleets ...
Japanese warriors fighting the Chinese.

Japanese warriors fighting the Chinese. In 1271, the Mongols under Khubilai Khan established the Yuan dynasty (1271-1368) in China. The ...

Khubilai Khan.

Khubilai Khan (1215-1294), the grandson of Genghis Khan, who completed the conquest of China and ruled concurrently from 1260 as the Great Khan ...

Movable type and printed page dated 1403.

From Korea, movable type and a printed page dated 1403. Two practical inventions of the Koryo dynasty were the 12th century use of a double ...

The Castle at Chichén Itzá.

The Castle at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico, ca. 11th century. Chichén Itzá, a Maya site in the Post-Classic Period, marks the emergence of the ...

The founding of Tenochtitlán.

The founding of Tenochtitlán, ca. 1369. This page depicts how the gods told the Aztecs to build their capital where they saw an eagle with a ...

Medieval Art

"The Marriage of the Virgin Mary," by Pacher.

The Marriage of the Virgin Mary, painted in 1495-1498 by Michael Pacher (1464?-1498). Colorful and elaborate altar pieces such as this were used ...

This is a title, which may be selected for a show.

Medieval Art This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

The Hundred Years' War, 1337-1453

Armor, Weapons and Military Costumes

A knight of medieval France.

A knight of medieval France. Knights originated in the Middle Ages as men who formed an elite cavalry. The ideals of knighthood involved ...

A medieval tournament.

A medieval tournament held near Calais. English knights challenged three French knights, who defended the lists for thirty days against all ...

A medieval tournament.

A medieval tournament. Two champions do battle, ...

A movable tower.

A movable tower, used to put armed men on top of the walls of a fortified place. The moat, at lower left, has been filled in with logs so the ...

A vassal swearing fealty.

A medieval vassal swearing fealty, the obligation to be faithful to a ...

Armor on display at Chateau Cheverny in France.

Medieval armor on display at the Château de Cheverny, France. In the years before guns became available, armor was good protection against ...

Jousting: Nicholas Clifford vs. John Boucmel.

Jousting: a combat between Nicholas Clifford and John Boucmel. As knights gradually dropped out of medieval armies at the end of the 13th ...

Men in armor with a battering ram.

Men in armor with a battering ram, trying to break open the door of a fortified ...

Military costumes of the 15th century.

Military costumes at the middle of the 15th century. At right, the full armor of a mounted knight. Center, the equipment of a dismounted ...

The knighting.

The knighting. A squire has done brave service in a battle, and a lord is granting him knighthood. A squire was a young man of noble birth who ...

France Against England

A Hanseatic merchant ship.

A Hanseatic merchant ...

A medieval galley.

A medieval galley. The oared galley was a popular design for Mediterranean ships from antiquity through the 17th century. 1472 ...

Jacob van Artevelde holding state in Ghent.

Jacob van Artevelde holding state in Ghent. Artevelde (ca. 1290-1345) was a statesman who led Flanders into the Hundred Years' War on the side ...

Joan of Arc (1412-1431).

Joan of Arc (1412-1431) from a painting by Jean Auguste Dominique Ingres. She was not really from Arc; apparently her name was Jeanne D'arc, and ...

Map: England in France in the 100 Years' War.

A map showing (in blue) the French territory held by England in 1429, and (red) the additional Burgundian area held in 1477, in the Hundred ...

Merchant ships carrying soldiers.

Merchant ships carrying ...

Naval battle near the Meuse, July 4, 1351.

The battle between the English and Dutch fleets on the Meuse River on July 4, 1351. The English fleet had

defeated the Dutch at Veere in May of ...

Proclamation of the renewal of a truce.

The proclamation of the renewal of a truce between France and England. During the Hundred Years' War there were long periods of peace, many ...

Signing a treaty in the Hundred Years' War.

Signing a treaty between France and England. France, revitalized by Joan of Arc, was eventually able to drive the English from all of France ...

Spanish vs. Pembroke's fleet off La Rochelle.

The Earl of Pembroke's ships attacked by the Spanish off La Rochelle. During the Middle Ages, naval combat closely resembled land battles. The ...

The Battle of Poitiers, 1356.

The Battle of Poitiers. Edward the Black Prince, the son of Edward III of England, was trapped and cornered in this 1356 battle by John II of ...

The Battle of Rustheque.

The battle of Rustheque during the Hundred Years' War. The Hundred Years' War lasted 116 years, from 1337 to 1453, but it actually was part of a ...

The Duke of Burgundy and his army.

The Duke of Burgundy and his army. During the Middle Ages the duchy of Burgundy, though nominally a fief of France, was virtually an independent ...

The taking of Dudenarde.

The taking of Dudenarde by Francis Atremen. This siege was one of many undertaken during the Hundred Years' War before the use of cannon became ...

The Kings of Europe

A detail of the Magna Carta.

A detail of the Magna Carta, the "Great Charter." The important principle established by the Magna Carta is that legal procedures apply to ...

A royal banquet in the Middle Ages.

A royal banquet in the Middle Ages. The artist has given crowns to everyone except the servant, probably indicating that they were nobles. The ...

Edward III of England.

Edward III (1312-1377) was king of England from 1327 until his death. He was the son of Edward II and Queen Isabella of France. Isabella and ...

Eleanor of Aquitaine and Richard the Lion-Heart.

Funerary effigies of Eleanor of Aquitaine (1122-1204) and Richard the Lion-Heart (1157-1199). Eleanor, the Duchess of Aquitaine, was the queen ...

French Crown Lands, 1180-1314

A map of the French Crown Lands, 1180-1223. Following the Viking, Muslim and Magyar invasions of the 9th and 10th centuries, the central ...

John I, king of England.

John I (1164-1216), king of England from 1199 to 1216, is best known as the king who was forced to sign the Magna Carta. In his early active ...

Philip II of France.

Philip II (1165-1223) served as King of France from 1179 to 1223. Although he joined the third Crusade in 1190, he soon returned to attack the ...

Philip VI of France.

Philip VI of France (1293-1350) was the first king of the Valois dynasty , which reigned from his accession in 1328 to the death of Henry III in ...

The cloister courtyard of Fontevrault Abbey.

The Romanesque cloister courtyard of Fontevrault Abbey, early 12th century. Fontevrault Abbey was one of the religious establishments most ...

The Magna Carta, 1215.

The Magna Carta, 1215. The monarchy of King John of England was oppressive, and when he failed in his attempt to reconquer Normandy, his barons ...

The Kings of Europe in the 14th and 15th Centuries

14th and 15th Century Rulers: Spain and Portugal

Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain.

Isabella of Castile and Ferdinand II of Aragon (Ferdinand V of Spain). Their secret marriage in 1469 had important consequences. Castile was a ...

Royal Burial chapel of Aragon and Castile.

A royal coffin in the Abbey-Church of Las Huelgas Reales, Burgos. Many of the medieval royal family of Castile are buried in this nunnery. This ...

Sancho I of Portugal (r. 1185-1211).

Sancho I, who reigned as the second king of Portugal, from 1185 to 1211, was typical of the Portuguese and Spanish kings engaged in the ...

The burial chapel of Ferdinand and Isabella.

The Capilla Real in Granada, Spain, the burial place of Ferdinand of Aragon and Isabella of Castile-Leon. The Capilla Real commemorates their ...

This is a title, which may be selected for a show.

Kings of Europe 14th and 15th Century Rulers: Spain and Portugal This is a title, which may be selected to

add to a presentation just like any ...

England

Coronation of Edward III, 1326.
The coronation of Edward III (1312-1377) of England, on Christmas Day, 1326. He was the older son of Edward II and Isabella of France. He was ...

Edward III takes Berwick, Scotland.
Edward III takes Berwick, Scotland. Berwick was one of the Scottish castles that the British retained when they were forced out of Scotland. ...

Edward IV of England.
Edward IV of England (1442-1483) was king from 1461 to 1470 and 1471 to 1483. Edward was the eldest son of Richard, Duke of York, and claimed ...

Edward V of England.
Edward V of England (1470-1483, r. April-June 1483) is the subject of a tragic story. His father, Edward IV, died when Edward V was just 12 ...

Henry V of England.
Henry V of England (1387-1422), ruled 1413-1422. The oldest son of Henry IV, he fought in wars from 1402 to 1408, becoming constable of Dover ...

Henry VI of England.
Henry VI of England (1421-1471). In 1431, two years after he was crowned king of England, he was also crowned King of France. But after the ...

Isabella, queen of Edward II who ruled 1307-1327.
Isabella, the queen of Edward II (1284-1327), on her voyage to England with Sir John of Hainault. Isabella had been betrothed to Edward to ...

John Ball preaching, Peasants' Revolt, 1381.
John Ball preaching to the commoners during the Peasants' Revolt. John Ball emerged as one of the leaders of the English Peasants' Revolt, a ...

Richard III of England.
Richard III (1452-1485) was named Duke of Gloucester by his brother Edward IV in 1461. Richard went into exile with Edward, and played an ...

Robert Bruce defies Edward III.
Robert Bruce defies Edward III. Scottish hero Robert Bruce, Earl of Carrick in Scotland, had sworn fealty to Edward I of England, but he joined ...

The coronation of Henry IV, 1399.
The coronation of Henry IV (ruled 1399-1413) at Westminster Abbey. Henry of Bollingbroke, the son and heir of John of Gaunt, the Duke of ...

Westminster Abbey.
The 13th-century west front of Westminster Abbey in London. This church was the site of the 11th-century coronation of Edward the Confessor and ...

France

Charles VI of France and the Duke of Brittany.
The meeting of Charles VI of France and the Duke of Brittany at Tours. Charles VI (1368-1422), nicknamed Charles the Foolish, was a young boy ...

Funeral of Philip VI, king of France, 1328-1350 .
The funeral of Philip VI of Valois, king of France, 1328-1350. Philip VI began the Hundred Years' War when in 1337 he attempted to annex the ...

Louis XI of France.
Louis XI of France (1423-1483), who ruled from 1461 to 1483, was the son and successor of Charles VII. As the Dauphin (the heir to the throne), ...

Louis XII of France.
The greatest desire of Louis XII of France (1462-1515) was to obtain more land for his country. To this end he ended his first marriage in order ...

Map: Germany and Italy, 1250.
A map of Germany and Italy, 1250. After the destructive Magyar invasions, in the late 10th century Emperor Otto I laid the foundation of a more ...

Marriage of King Louis to daughter of King Peter.
The marriage of King Louis, son of the Duke of Anjou, to the daughter of King Peter of Aragon. Royal marriages were an important part of ...

The Battle of Gouda, 1304.
The victory of a French fleet under Admiral Raymond Grimaldi over a Flemish fleet in the Zierikkzee near the town of Gouda, Holland, August 11, ...

The Medieval City

A fortified city gate in Winchester, England.
A fortified city gate in Winchester, England. As in Rothenburg, the medieval gates were frequently used for residences, storage, or general ...

A gatehouse in the city wall of Rothenburg.
A gatehouse in the 13-14th centuries city wall of Rothenburg, Germany. The gatekeeper lived above the gate and collected toll fees from all who ...

A mid-15th-century French townhouse.
The townhouse of Jacques Coeur, at Bourges, France, mid-15th century. Jacques Coeur (ca. 1395-1456)

made a fortune as a merchant and as ...

A side view of Walmgate Bar, York, England.
A side view of Walmgate Bar, the barbican on the east wall of York, ...

A view into the courtyard of Walmgate Bar.
The courtyard of Walmgate Bar at York. After breaking through the outer gate, the attackers would have faced assaults from the walls on both ...

Aigues Mortes, France.
Aigues Mortes, France, was typical of the new towns built during the rapid population growth of the High Middle Ages. It is a planned city, laid ...

Interior of wall-walk at Rothenburg.
The interior of a wall-walk at Rothenburg, Germany. This wooden gallery protected the defenders from the weather and enemy missiles, allowing ...

Medieval houses along the Thames, London.
A model of medieval houses along the Thames River in London which were built around 1500. Commercial activity became the basis for the growth of ...

St. Swithin's chapel above a city gate.
The interior of St. Swithin's chapel above a city gate in Winchester, England. Swithin, who died in 820, was bishop of Winchester and the ...

The barbican of Walmgate Bar at York, England.
The barbican of the 12th-century Walmgate Bar, York, England. A barbican is a defended enclosure in front of, and giving additional protection ...

The medieval German walled city of Rothenburg.
The medieval German walled city of Rothenburg. During the Middle Ages, Rothenburg enjoyed prosperity due to its position on a major trade route. ...
The city of Würtzburg, Germany, seen from the Marienburg fortress. A large number of medieval cities owed their importance to strategic ...

Living Within the Walls: The City Center

"Shambles," the medieval center of York.
The "Shambles," the medieval center of York, England. In the late Middle Ages, when the northern counties became important producers of wool, ...

15th-century clock displays Ptolemaic universe.
A 15th-century medieval clock at Exeter, England. The earth is at the center of the dial at bottom; the moon revolves around it and turns on its ...

A detail showing 13th-century gabled rooftops.
A detail showing 13th-century gabled rooftops in medieval Rothenburg. Roofs were fairly steep to prevent the accumulation of snow and to insure ...

A French woman’s 15th-century headdress.
A French woman’s 15th-century ...

A late 14th-century public clock, Wells, England.
A late 14th-century public clock at Wells, England. Two quarter-jacks, dressed in full armor of the period, strike two bells with hammers that ...

A wall of the Morrell House in York, England.
A wall of the 15th-century Morrell House in York, England. This timber framed building has wattle-and-daub filled ...

Benskin's Fighting Cocks at St. Alban's, England.
Benskin's Fighting Cocks, which claims to be the oldest continuously operated public house in England. The building was originally a medieval ...

Half-timber building in Shrewsbury, England.
A half-timber building with overhang in Shrewsbury, England. Property owners were taxed on the square footage of the ground floor of their ...

Hammer-beam roof timbers at Durham, England.
Original timbers of the hammer-beam roof supports in the monks' dormitory near Durham Cathedral, England. This roof was built between between ...

Medieval row houses in Chester, England.
Medieval "rows," connected multi-storied residences, on Bridge Street in Chester, England. During the Middle Ages, these were the equivalent of ...

Shops on Butchers’ Row in Shrewsbury, England.
Brick and timber shops along Butchers' Row in Shrewsbury, England. During the Middle Ages, members of a trade or guild would typically occupy a ...

Wattle and daub construction, Vicars’ College.
A detail of exposed woven wattle in the wattle-and-daub walls of the 14th-century College of Vicars-Choral in Hereford, England. Wattle-and-daub ...

The Guilds

A 14th-century gold separation mill.
A 14th-century gold separation mill. The four water-powered stamps at right crushed the gold ore into a powder, which was then put into the ...

A medieval goldsmith’s shop.
A medieval goldsmith's shop. Jewelry and silver dishes are on the table and hanging from a rod. A gentleman is bargaining with the goldsmith. ...

The Collegio del Cambio in Perugia, Italy.
The Collegio del Cambio in Perugia, Italy. This building belonged to the Guild of Moneychangers, showing the great commercial activity which was ...
The crest of the coopers' guild, ca. 1450.
The crest of the coopers' guild, a detail of a stained-glass window of the Carmelite convent of Poppard, ca. 1450. Guilds were originally trade ...
The guild of swordmakers, Amiens Cathedral.
A medallion of the guild of swordmakers on the west portal of the Cathedral of Amiens, France, 13th-14th centuries. Guilds regularly contributed ...

The Mind of the Middle Ages

Books: on Paper and in Stone

The Last Judgment, Notre Dame, Paris.
A bas-relief of The Last Judgment, from the Cathedral of Notre Dame in Paris. The central portal in medieval cathedrals featured the story of ...
"Punishment of the Wrathful in Hell."
"Punishment of the Wrathful in Hell." By the late Middle Ages, an elaborate cosmology had been devised which included a careful definition of ...
A page from a 15th century "Book of Hours."
A page from an illuminated 15th century "Book of Hours." These books were prayer books, popular in the Middle Ages, which were known in England ...
A page from a block book.
A part of a page from the block book, "A Book of Canticles," published around 1450. Block books were books produced by engraving both text and ...
A page from Fust and Schuiffier's Second Psalter.
A part of a page from Fust and Schuiffier's Second Psalter, published in 1459. A psalter contained the psalms and sometimes included prayers ...
A vision of Dante's heaven.
A vision of Dante's heaven, from an 1868 London ...
Angel and devil from The Last Judgment.
Relief carvings of an angel and a devil in The Last Judgment, from the tympanum of the central portal of the Cathedral of Notre Dame, ...
Dante Alighieri, Italian poet and author.
Dante Alighieri (1265-1321), the Italian poet and author of The Divine Comedy, was born in Florence, where he became a third-class politician ...
Dante's Inferno.
Dante's Inferno, from a Florentine engraving of the 15th century. Dante's Divine Comedy pictured hell, the Inferno, as descending layers of ...
Medieval writing tables.
Medieval writing tables. Clerks used desks similar to these during the Middle Ages. The four authors shown here are the evangelists, who are ...
The Damned dragged into mouth of hell.
The damned dragged into the mouth of hell, from the Notre Dame cathedral in Paris. On the central portal, between the resurrection of the dead ...
The Dormition of Mary, bas-relief, Notre Dame.
The Dormition of the Virgin Mary, a bas-relief on the left portal of Notre Dame Cathedral, Paris. The Christian tradition was that when Mary ...

Combating Heresy in the Church

Destroying the remains of Wycliff.
Destroying the remains of Wycliff. John Wycliff (1320-1384) was an Oxford theologian who questioned certain Roman Catholic doctrines, such as ...
Emperor Wenceslaus, Charles VI combat Hussites.
Wenceslaus, the emperor of Germany, and Charles VI of France in council, probably in the cathedral of Reims, to devise a means of ending the ...
Jan Hus burned for heresy.
Jan Hus is burned for heresy at the Council of Constance. Hus (ca. 1370-1415) was a radical Bohemian religious reformer who wanted the Church to ...
Lippi's "Triumph of St. Thomas Aquinas," Rome.
Lippi's "Triumph of St. Thomas Aquinas" fresco in Rome. Between 1488 and 1492 Filippino Lippi created two colossal frescoes in the Carafa Chapel ...
St. Dominic, founder of the Dominican order.
St. Dominic (ca. 1170-1221), the founder of the Order of Friars Preachers or Black Friars, known as the Dominicans. After ordination to the ...

The Avignon Papacy, 1305-1378

A funerary effigy of Pope Benedict XII, Avignon.
A funerary effigy of Pope Benedict XII in the Vestry of St. Laurent's Tower in the Papal Palace at Avignon, France. Benedict XII, who ruled ...
A model of the Papal Palace in Avignon.
A model of the 14th-century Papal Palace in Avignon, France. This fortress-palace was built as the residence

of the popes in exile. Two major ...

The funerary effigy of the antipope Clement VII.
The funerary effigy of the antipope Clement VII in the Papal Palace at Avignon, France. Robert of Geneva, born in 1342, was closely related to ...

The funerary effigy of the antipope John XXIII.
The funerary effigy of the antipope John XXIII (1410-1415) in the cathedral at Avignon, France. John began his career as a soldier in the ...

The Great Chapel of Clement VI at Avignon.
The Great Chapel of Clement VI, built in 1352 in the Papal Palace at Avignon, France. While most of the popes at Avignon were morally upright, ...

The main entrance to the Papal Palace in Avignon.
The main entrance to the Papal Palace in Avignon, France. Because of the political power of the French king and the disorder caused by wars in ...

The Queen of Naples visits the Pope at Rome.
The Queen of Naples visits the Pope at Rome. The kingdom of Naples was deeply involved in the papal disputes of the 14th century. Pope Clement ...

The First Universities

Moses Maimonides, philosopher.
Moses Maimonides (1135-1204), of Córdoba, Spain, was a Jewish philosopher and celebrated scholar in many fields. After studying Aristotelian ...

The Church of the Sorbonne University, Paris.
The façade of the Church of the Sorbonne University in Paris, France. The medieval university in northern Europe had two major divisions. The ...

The courtyard of the Sorbonne in Paris, France.
The courtyard of the Sorbonne in Paris, France. The University of Paris was the first of its kind north of the Alps, and was founded not long ...

The First Universities: Curriculum - the Liberal Arts

A man's body, governed by the constellations.
The anatomy of a man's body, as governed by the twelve constellations. The physician could tell, by the alignment of the planets, when certain ...

A medieval organ.
A medieval organ. This organ was built in 1380 and may be the oldest one in Europe. It is on top of a 15th century balcony in the Old Cathedral ...

A sign of the Zodiac: Cancer and wheat harvest.
A sign of the Zodiac: Cancer and wheat harvest, on the Royal Porch of Chartres Cathedral in France. The signs of the zodiac were matched with ...

An English astrolabe, ca. 1325.
An English astrolabe, ca. 1325. The astrolabe was invented by the Arabs as an aid to navigation. It measured the angle between a star or the ...

Astrological signs in a university lecture hall.
Astrological signs adorning the apse of a lecture hall at the Colegio Maior of the University of Salamanca in Spain. These decorations show the ...

Dialectic and its model representative, Cicero.
Dialectic and its model representative, Cicero. These two figures are part of the instructive Royal Porch of Chartres Cathedral. The study of ...

How the planets reign in every hour.
How the planets reign in every hour. Pictured are astrological representations of Saturn, Jupiter, Mars and Sol. Not shown here are Venus, ...

Liberal arts represented on Chartres Cathedral.
The liberal arts represented on the 1195-1220 A.D. Chartres Cathedral in France. The ideal of the medieval cathedral was to bring together the ...

Medieval musical instruments.
Carvings of medieval musical instruments: a tambourine, hurdy-gurdy, lute, and guitar. These figures are on a portal of the Burgos ...

The organ in Wells Cathedral, England.
The organ in Wells Cathedral in England. This mass of organ pipes completely obscures the arches of the transept ...

The Ptolemaic conception of the universe.
The Ptolemaic conception of the universe. This 1513 view represented the earth as stationary in the center, with the sun, moon, planets, and ...

The First Universities: In Spain, Portugal and Germany

Mudéjar architecture, Colegio Mayor at Salamanca.
Mudéjar architecture of the Cloisters in the Colegio Mayor of the University of Salamanca, Spain. The Mudéjar style was a fusion of Roman and ...

A 16th-century lecture hall at Salamanca.
A 16th-century lecture hall in the University of Salamanca, Spain. At the far end of the room is an ornate lectern. At Salamanca the ...

A room in the university library at Coimbra.
A room in the library of the medieval University of ...

An academic building at Heidelberg.
An academic building at the University of Heidelberg. This university was the scene of Sigmund Romberg's charming and tuneful operetta, "The ...
Benches and student writing desks at Salamanca.
Benches and student writing desks of a 16th-century lecture hall in the University of Salamanca, Spain. These benches were a luxury in an age ...
Façade above doors of University of Salamanca.
The façade above the front doors of the University of ...
The medieval University of Heidelberg.
The medieval University of Heidelberg surrounded the cathedral in this "Old City." The university still exists in this area, although it is ...
The university city and castle of Heidelberg.
The university city and castle of Heidelberg, seen from the opposite side of the Neckar River. This university was founded by the Elector Rupert ...
The University of Coimbra, Portugal.
The University of Coimbra, the oldest university in Portugal. Founded in 1290 at Lisbon and transferred to Coimbra in 1537, this university ...
The university quarter of Salamanca, Spain.
The university quarter of Salamanca, Spain. In many European universities such as the one at Salamanca, there is no central campus. Instead, ...
The university town of Salamanca, Spain.
The university town of Salamanca, Spain. The Roman bridge in the foreground dates from the 2nd century A.D., while the "old" Romanesque ...

The First Universities: Oxford and Cambridge

A panoramic view of Oxford University, England.
A panoramic view of a part of Oxford University in England. From right to left: the new Bodleian Library, Blackwell's Bookstore, Trinity ...
Eton College, founded in 1440.
Eton College, the largest and most famous of the English "public" schools, was founded in 1440. Many of the country's leaders have been educated ...
King's College Chapel at Cambridge.
An exterior view of King's College Chapel at ...
Panoramic view of Cambridge University, England.
A panoramic view of Cambridge University, England. Cambridge is the second oldest (after Oxford) university in England. By the end of the 12th ...
The Duke of Gloucester Library, Oxford University.
The Library of Humphrey, the Duke of Gloucester, at Oxford University. A patron of English humanism , Humphrey donated a large part of his ...
The Examination Building at Oxford University.
Students outside the Examination Building at Oxford University. The university ultimately required students to wear academic robes to lectures, ...
The interior of King's College Chapel.
The interior of King's College Chapel at ...
The interior of the Trinity College dining hall.
The interior of the Trinity College dining hall at Cambridge. Members of the faculty and students ate together in this room (and still do). In ...
The Quadrangle of King's College, Cambridge.
The Quadrangle of King's College at Cambridge. There are 28 colleges at Cambridge, four of which are for women and three are graduate-level. ...
The River Cam at Cambridge University, England.
An 1870's view of the River Cam at Cambridge University. ...
The Sheldonian Theater at Oxford University.
The Sheldonian Theater at Oxford University, built in 1664-1668 by Christopher Wren. This theater fulfills the continuing need for the university ...
The Trinity College Quadrangle at Cambridge.
The Trinity College Quadrangle at Cambridge University, England. The original 1317 A.D. King's Hall and Michaelhouse were absorbed by Trinity ...
University College, Oxford, founded in 1249.
University College, Oxford University, founded in 1249, is the oldest of the Oxford colleges. This is how it appeared in 1675, when its ...

The Gothic Cathedral

Mont-St.-Michel.
Mont-St.-Michel a fort, a city, and an abbey founded in 966. An earlier monastery here had been abandoned during the Viking maraudings. The ...
Ribbed vaulting in Amiens Cathedral.
Ribbed vaulting and clerestory (upper) windows in the nave of Amiens Cathedral, France. The vault, composed of a series of pointed arches ...
The Abbey of St. Denis, from an 1871 lithograph.
The Abbey of St. Denis, Paris, from an 1871 lithograph. St. Denis is the oldest abbey in France, having been

founded by King Clovis in the early ...

The Cathedral of Paray-le-Monial.

The Cathedral of Paray-le-Monial, France. This is a good example of the Romanesque style which reached its fullness in the 13th century and ...

The east end of Le Mans Cathedral, France.

The east end of the Cathedral of St. Julien in Le Mans, France, showing its flying buttresses. A flying buttress was a detached arch or ...

The south side of Notre Dame de Paris.

The south side of the Cathedral of Notre Dame de Paris, built 1163-1345 A.D. Looking from the Left Bank, the immensity of this Gothic ...

The Gothic Cathedral: Embellishments

A gargoyle on the Cathedral of Notre Dame, Paris.

A gargoyle on the Cathedral of Notre Dame. This stone was carved so that it would become a useful part of the balustrade on the south tower, ...

A gargoyle on the Cathedral of Notre Dame, Paris.

A 13th-century gargoyle on the Cathedral of Notre Dame in Paris. According to legend, gargoyles were created to frighten goblins away from ...

A panoramic view of Salisbury Cathedral.

The Cathedral of the Blessed Virgin Mary in Salisbury, England. Begun in 1220, the church was consecrated 38 years later, an extraordinarily ...

A panoramic view of York Minster, England.

York Minster, the cathedral in York, England. This largest of English medieval cathedrals was built over the remains of the several previous ...

A window of Adam at Canterbury Cathedral.

A panel from a 13th-century window in Canterbury Cathedral, England, depicting Adam working "by the sweat of his brow" in punishment for his sin. ...

Interior of rose window in Notre Dame, Paris.

A rose window in Notre Dame Cathedral, Paris. This kind of circular, large stained glass panel was used throughout Europe on transepts and ...

One medallion, Tree of Jesse window, York.

The Tree of Jesse window at York Minster in England, which depicts the genealogy of Jesus according to the Gospel of Matthew. This window ...

The façade of Reims Cathedral, France.

The façade of Reims Cathedral. One of the great Gothic churches of 13th century France, Reims is an exuberant blend of style and function. ...

The west front of Chartres Cathedral, France.

The west front of the Cathedral of Notre Dame in Chartres, France. Chartres was one of the first three Gothic churches built, its ...

The Gothic Cathedral: Interior

An interior elevation in Amiens Cathedral.

An interior elevation in 13th-14th centuries Amiens Cathedral showing the nave arches, clerestory, and aisle vaulting. The pointed arches, ...

Ceiling vaulting in Amiens Cathedral.

The nave of Amiens Cathedral in France. This view captures the feeling desired by the Abbé Suger in 1136. It is a good example of the use of ...

Cross arches of Wells Cathedral, England.

Cross arches of Wells Cathedral, in England. These famous cross arches were inserted in 1338 to support the weight of the tall central tower. ...

The interior of the nave of Amiens Cathedral.

The interior of Amiens Cathedral, looking down the nave toward the east end. On the left is the pulpit, and behind it the choir screen. This ...

Three bays of the vaulting in Bath Abbey.

The three westernmost bays of the 16th-century fan vaults in the nave of Bath Abbey, in England. During the later Gothic design period the ...

The Gothic Cathedral: Italian Gothic Cathedrals

An exterior view of the Cathedral of Milan.

The Gothic Cathedral of Santa Maria Nascenti in Milan, Italy (built 1386-1813). This building comes closer to the International Gothic style ...

An interior view of Milan Cathedral, Italy.

An interior view of Milan Cathedral. The altar area is at the far end of the aisle. In the foreground are the intricate patterns of the inlaid ...

An overview of Orvieto Cathedral, Italy.

An overview of the Duomo (Cathedral) of Orvieto, Italy, 1310-1330. The Italians basically remained attached to the architectural designs of ...

The crossing of the Cathedral of Milan, Italy.

The North Transept and crossing tower of the Cathedral of Milan, Italy. Gothic beasts, spires, towers, and spiraling staircases cover the ...

The Damned, from Orvieto's Last Judgment.

The Damned, from the Last Judgment bas-relief at Orvieto Cathedral, ...

The Saved, from Orvieto's Last Judgment.
The Saved from the Last Judgment bas-relief on the façade of the 1210-1330 Orvieto Cathedral in Italy. This is one of ten sections that ...
This is a title, which may be selected for a show.
The Mind of the Middle Ages The Gothic Cathedral Italian Gothic Cathedrals This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just ...

The Law

A judicial duel in medieval France.
A medieval judicial duel, an illustration from the Coutumes of Normandy. When a plaintiff's accusations were denied by the defendant, the case ...
A medieval court with a woman judge.
A French medieval court with a woman judge. Twelve men meet with the judge to decide a case. Decisions made by a panel of twelve men are ...
Court officials visit the room of a sick man.
Court officials visit the room of a sick man. This illustration from the Coutumes of Normandy shows the procedure which was followed when a ...
Execution by hanging.
Execution by hanging, an illustration from the Coutumes of Normandy. Hanging was the typical method of executing a convict who was a commoner. ...
Homage to the king of France.
Homage to the king of France, an illustration from the Coutumes of Normandy. One of the twelve witnesses to this ritual homage wears a love ...
The Coutumes of Normandy.
An illustration from the medieval-era Coutumes of Normandy. The Coutumes were an early body of French law which became a primary source of ...
The resolution of a property dispute.
The resolution of a property dispute, an illustration from the Coutumes of Normandy. Two groups of men convene in a field outside of a city's ...

The Pilgrimage: Piety, Travel, Commerce

Canterbury

Canterbury Cathedral, pilgrimage destination.
A view of Canterbury Cathedral, a famous pilgrimage destination, through Christ Church Gate. Construction of the present cathedral began in ...
Geoffrey Chaucer (1343-1400).
Geoffrey Chaucer (1343-1400). Chaucer was medieval England's greatest poet, and his Canterbury Tales remain a vivid evocation of the age. ...
The Miller, from the Canterbury Tales.
The Miller, one of the characters in the Canterbury ...
The place of Thomas Becket's murder.
The place of Thomas Becket's murder. Thomas Becket (1118-1170), the Archbishop of Canterbury, was murdered in Canterbury Cathedral on December ...

Fascination With Relics

"The head of St. John the Baptist," in Rome.
"The head of St. John the Baptist" in the Church of San Silvestro in Capite, ...
"The head of St. John the Baptist," Munich.
"The head of St. John the Baptist," on display in the Palace of the Dukes of Wittelsbach at Munich, Germany. During the Middle Ages, personal ...
"The right arm of St. John the Baptist."
"The right hand and forearm of St. John the Baptist," in a gilded reliquarium on display at the Topkapi Palace in ...
A gold-covered reliquary in Cologne Cathedral.
A gold-covered reliquary in the Cathedral of Cologne, Germany. This spectacular shrine was built by Nicholas of Verdun, the greatest goldsmith ...
Louis IX's chapel for relics of the Crucifixion.
The Sainte Chapelle in Paris, France, 1245-1248. King Louis IX (St. Louis) had this chapel built to display relics associated with the death of ...

Pilgrimage Destinations in the Holy Land

A medieval fresco of Jesus entering Jerusalem.
A medieval fresco of Jesus entering Jerusalem on Palm Sunday. The most famous medieval Christian pilgrimage goal was Jerusalem, and the most ...
Shrine in Church of the Nativity at Bethlehem.
The shrine in the Church of the Nativity which is supposed to be the exact spot of Jesus' ...
The burial place of Jesus.
Tradition holds that this was the burial place of Jesus, in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, ...
The Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem.
The Church of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem (the building with the two domes). This church was built during

the Crusades, incorporating a ...

Pilgrims in Europe

Pilgrims leaving an English town.
Twelfth-century pilgrims leaving an English town. In the Middle Ages, a pilgrim was a person who made a journey to a sacred place as an act of ...

Pilgrims on the way to Compostella.
Pilgrims on the way to Compostella. Pilgrimages were one of the few ways in which people of the lower classes could legally travel beyond their ...

The Poor, the Sick, and the Dying

Death and Burial

Last rites at death bed of the Virgin Mary.
Last rites at the death bed of the Virgin Mary. Paintings like this reminded the viewer that death should be accompanied by the rites of the ...

The effigies of Alexander Lord Denton and family.
The tomb of Alexander Lord Denton and his family, in Hereford Cathedral, England. On top are the alabaster effigies of Lord Denton (d. 1577), ...

The Gothic tomb of Bishop Bronescombe.
The ornate Gothic tomb of Bishop Bronescombe (d. 1280) in Exeter Cathedral, England. Burial in medieval England took place in various places. ...

The Practice of Medicine

A 14th-century operation on the liver.
An operation on the liver, in the 14th century. Because physicians in the Middle Ages had no understanding of infection, operations of any kind ...

Detail of a lepers' banquet, 15th century.
A detail of a 15th-century lepers' ...

Lepers' banquet at Nuremberg, 15th century.
A lepers' banquet at Nuremberg, 15th century. Lepers were allowed to enter the city on certain holidays and for some religious occasions. ...

Monastery and basilica of St. Francis, Assisi.
The monastery and basilica of St. Francis, Assisi. St. Francis died on October 3, 1226, and was formally recognized as a saint within two years. ...

Physicians examining a leper.
Physicians examining a leper, 1540. Until leprosy's virtual disappearance from Europe in the late 15th century, lepers were generally confined ...

St. Francis of Assisi receives the stigmata.
St. Francis of Assisi (1181-1226) receives the stigmata. This illustrates the miracle of the stigmatization of St. Francis, which took place on ...

The Hôtel Dieu, a medieval hospital in Paris.
The Hôtel Dieu, a medieval hospital in Paris, was one of many "Hôtel Dieus" established in France in the 15th century. The influence of monastic ...

The monastery and town of Assisi.
The Franciscan monastery and town of Assisi, Italy. This monastery dates from the 12th century; its buildings stand in front of the town, high ...

The porch on second floor of Alcala Hospital.
The porch on the second floor of the hospital at Alcala, Spain. Since the 15th century, the sick have received care in this place. While a ...

Woman with venereal disease, 15th century.
A 15th-century woman with venereal disease is examined by a physician, and a man is treated. In the late 15th century, Europe was swept by a ...

Two Impregnable Walled Cities at Avilla and Carcassonne

A 12th-century timber hoarding.
A 12th-century timber hoarding on the outer wall of Carcassonne. A hoarding was a structure supported on corbels (brackets) in front of the ...

Approaches to the Aude Gatehouse, Carcassonne.
Approaches to the Aude Gatehouse of Carcassonne, France. Since the gates were usually the weakest point in the walls, they were frequently ...

Barbican of the Narbonnaise Gate, Carcassonne.
The 13th-century barbican (defensive outpost) of the Narbonnaise Gate in the walls of Carcassonne, France. Carcassonne had two walls, the ...

Carcassonne during the medieval period.
An artist's rendering of Carcassonne during the medieval period, 12th-13th centuries. Carcassonne had been a major stronghold of the Albigensian ...

The 13th-century northwest walls of Carcassonne.
The 13th-century northwest walls of Carcassonne, France. To the left is the Château (castle) at the top of a rise; to the right in the ...

The lists between the two walls of Carcassonne.
The lists between the two walls of medieval Carcassonne. The large towers at center are the Narbonnaise Gate. Lists were used for jousting ...

The walled city of Carcassonne in France.
The walled city of Carcassonne in France. This artist's rendering of Carcassonne before settlement shows the strategic importance of the ...
Towers of the Narbonnaise Gate, Carcassonne.
The twin flanking towers of the 13th century Narbonnaise Gate at Carcassonne. The vertical slits in the tower walls were for archers. The ..

Section F: The Italian Renaissance, 1300 - 1550

Overview: The Italian Renaissance, 1300 - 1550.
A brief video Overview of the history of the Italian Renaissance, from 1300 to 1550. Transcript: The Renaissance was Italian and Florence was ...

A Beginning in Florence

Marietta Strozzi, by Settignano.
Marietta Strozzi, carved by Desiderio da Settignano. The Strozzi were a Florentine merchant banking family second in prominence only to the ...
A flagstone-paved alley in Florence.
A typical narrow flagstone-paved street in ...
A narrow flagstone-paved street in Florence.
A narrow flagstone-paved street in Florence. In spite of changes made throughout the centuries, most of the streets in the central area of the ...
A panorama of Florence viewed from north.
A panorama of Florence viewed from the north. The Renaissance began in Florence, and an understanding of its buildings, streets, and museums ...
Florence's old center viewed from Giotto's tower.
The Piazza (Square) della Republica of Florence, viewed from Giotto's tower. During and before the Renaissance, this was the center of Florentine ...
Interior of Church of Santa Croce, Florence.
The interior of the 1294-1443 Church of Santa Croce in Florence. At the center is the high altar. This image shows how the Italian gothic ...
Map, Italian city-states in the Renaissance.
A map of the Italian city-states in the Renaissance, 1494. While northern Europe and southern Italy maintained the feudal system, the Italian ...
Renaissance Florence in a Ghirlandaio fresco.
A scene in the Life of Mary, by Domenico Ghirlandaio in the church of Santa Maria Novella, dated 1485-1490. Although the subject is religious, ...
Scenes of Renaissance Florence by Ghirlandaio.
A scene in the Life of Mary, by Domenico Ghirlandaio in the church of Santa Maria Novella, dated 1485-1490. This is just one of an extensive ...
The district and church of Santa Croce, Florence.
The district and church of Santa Croce viewed from Giotto's Tower in Florence. The poet Dante Alighieri and artist Michelangelo lived in this ...
The loggia of the Mercato Nuovo in Florence.
The loggia of the Mercato Nuovo in Florence. Citizens and tourists today still do business where Florentines have traded for centuries. This ...
The Palazzo Strozzi in Florence.
The 1489 Palazzo Strozzi in Florence. The banker Filippo Strozzi, an indispensable adviser to Lorenzo the Magnificent, commissioned Benedetto da ...
The piazza and church of Santa Croce, Florence.
The Piazza di Santa Croce and the west façade of the Church of Santa Croce in Florence. In the Middle Ages, the citizens gathered here to vote ...

Civic Pride in the Italian Renaissance

Adapting Roman Architecture

Ceiling of San Lorenzo, Florence.
Looking up at the coffered ceiling in the nave of the Church of San Lorenzo in Florence. Coffered ceilings (with decorative recessed panels) ...
San Lorenzo, interior.
Looking west in the nave of the Church of San Lorenzo in Florence. Balance and proportion following mathematical rules, in keeping with the ...
San Lorenzo, panorama from Giotto's tower.
The 1419-1469 Church of San Lorenzo in Florence, Italy, which was built on the site of two earlier churches. The commune and Giovanni de' Medici ...
The nave of San Lorenzo.
The south side of the nave in the church of San Lorenzo. The rules of balance and order are shown with this rational mixture of squares, ...

Adapting Roman Sculpture

Francesco Sasetti, marble bust by Rossellino.
Francesco Sasetti, a marble portrait bust by Antonio Rossellino. This donor of the frescoes in Santa Trìnita was Lorenzo de' Medici's manager ...

Gattamelata (ca. 1450) by Donatello.
Gattamelata (ca. 1450) by Donatello (ca. 1386-1466). Gattamelata, whose real name was Erasmo da Narni (1370-1443), was a famous condittiere , ...
Piero de' Medici by Mino da Fiesole, 1453.
A marble portrait bust of Piero de' Medici by Mino da Fiesole, 1453. With this commission Mino (ca. 1431-1484) carved what possibly was the ...
Brutus, by Michelangelo.
A ca. 1540 portrait bust of Brutus, by Michelangelo. Some believed that Michelangelo chose as his subject Brutus, who killed the tyrant Caesar, ...
San Miniato, upper portion of façade.
The upper part of the façade of the Basilica of San Miniato al Monte. This 12th-century church, with its clear mathematical and geometrical ...

The Beautification of Churches

St. George by Donatello, 1416.
St. George , a marble statue by Donatello, 1416. Appropriately, the Armorer's Guild had the saint who killed a dragon as their patron. They ...
Francesco Sassetti, patron of Ghirlandaio.
Francesco Sassetti, the commissioner of the Ghirlandaio frescoes in the Sassetti Chapel. These frescoes, based on the life of St. Francis of ...
Ghirlandaio, The Adoration of the Shepherds.
The Adoration of the Shepherds, a panel of the Ghirlandaio frescoes in the Sassetti Chapel of the Church of Santa ...
Nera Corsi, wife of Francesco Sassetti.
Nera Corsi, the wife of Francesco ...
The Orsanmichele, Florence.
The 1337 church of Orsanmichele in Florence. The present building was begun in 1337 and finished in 1404 with the addition to two floors in ...

The Beautification of Public Places

Judith and Holofernes by Donatello.
Judith and Holofernes by Donatello (Donato di Betto Bardi, ca 1386-1466). Donatello, who was born and died in Florence, was the greatest of ...
Perseus Displaying the Head of Medusa.
Perseus Displaying the Head of Medusa by Benvenuto Cellini, a work which was commissioned by Cosimo de' Medici in 1545. Perseus, the son of ...
A modern copy of "David."
A modern copy of Michelangelo's "David" in the Palazzo Vecchio in Florence. In 1501 the city commissioned Michelangelo to carve a statue that ...
The Loggia, Piazza della Signoria, Florence.
The Loggia della Signoria, also known as the Loggia dei Lanzi (1376-1382) in Florence, Italy. The purpose of the spacious loggia was to add ...

Distinguishing Marks of the Italian Renaissance

A City-State

City heralds of Florence in procession.
City heralds of Florence in procession. Contemporary Florence continues many of the symbols from the Renaissance, the days of its greatest ...
Donatello's Marzocco, the emblem of Florence.
The Marzocco, a lion displaying Florence's coat of arms, carved by Donatello in 1420. The flood of 1333 swept away the statue of Mars which had ...
Map, Italian city-states in the Renaissance, 1494.
A repeat of the map of Italian city-states in the Renaissance. An important feature of the Renaissance was the development of strong and ...
The Piazza della Signoria in Florence.
The Piazza della Signoria (government), the Palazzo Vecchio and the Loggia della Signoria in Florence. In the 13th and 14th centuries the ...

Commerce Creates an Upper Middle Class

Renaissance women in fresco by Ghirlandaio.
Renaissance women in a fresco by Domenico Ghirlandaio. The scene is the Visitation (Mary goes to visit her cousin Elizabeth, who is pregnant ...
The central span of the Ponte Vecchio, Florence.
The central span of the Ponte Vecchio ("Old Bridge"), over the Arno River. The gold and silversmiths enlarged their shops by building them out ...
The Ponte Vecchio and other bridges over the Arno.
Bridges over the Arno River in Florence. In the foreground is the Ponte Vecchio, the first one built, followed by Ponte Santa Trinita ...
Wealthy merchants, a fresco by Ghirlandaio.
Florentine leaders in a 1486-1490 fresco by Domenico Ghirlandaio. Ghirlandaio (1448-1494) painted only religious subjects, and this set of ...

Liberal Education

Music with Orpheus , relief by Andrea Pisano.
Music with Orpheus , a relief by Andrea Pisano, is one of a series on human history designed by Giotto for the cathedral's campanile. Besides ...
Painter at work, a relief by Andrea Pisano.
Painter at work , a relief by Andrea Pisano, one of a series showing the professionals working in the liberal arts, which were considered the ...
Sculptor at work , a relief by Andrea Pisano.
Sculptor at work , a relief by Andrea ...
Teacher and students by Andrea Pisano.
Teacher and students by Andrea Pisano (1273-1348). Giotto planned for the cathedral's campanile to have an extensive set of relief panels on ...
"School of Athens," by Raphael.
Raphael's "School of Athens," in the Papal Apartments, The Vatican. He chose to use his contemporaries as models for this depiction of famous ...
The Library of San Marco, Florence.
The library of the Convent of San Marco in Florence, Italy, 1444. Cosimo de' Medici called on his architect, Michelozzo di Bartolomeo ...

Religious Structures

Savonarola by Stefano Galletti.
Savonarola, the Dominican friar and reformer, a statue by Stefano Galletii. Girolamo Savonarola (1452-1498) spent the first twenty years of ...
Savanarola's San Marco convent, Florence.
The cloister courtyard of the Convent of San Marco in Florence, built ca. 1437. During the Renaissance, most of the people felt an obligation to ...
Sculptors working on a replacement column.
Sculptors at work in 1995 on a replacement column for the Duomo in Florence. Old structures need regular maintenance and repair. The workshop ...
The campanile of the Duomo by Giotto.
The 1334-1359 campanile of the Duomo (cathedral), designed by Giotto (di Bondone, 1267-1337). Where the French Gothic demanded towers as part ...
The façade of Florence's cathedral.
The façade of Santa Maria del Fiore, the cathedral of Florence. Arnolfo di Cambio began this building in 1296, and after input from many other ...

The Revival of Roman Ideals: Humanism and Individualism

A little boy, portrait bust by Settignano.
A portrait bust of a little boy by Desiderio da Settignano (ca. 1430-1464). Settingnano was known for his happy and charming busts of women and ...
A Young Boy by Andrea della Robbia.
Portrait bust of A Young Boy by Andrea della Robbia, 1475-80. This idealized portrait of a fanciullo is thought to be a portrait of Piero ...
Pietro Aretino , portrait bust by Sansovino.
A bronze bust of Pietro Aretino (1492-1557). Aretino was an Italian vernacular writer of, among other things, political and clerical gossip ...
The Nativity, detail, Giovanni della Robbia.
The central panel of The Nativity, by Giovanni della ...
A portrait bust of Benvenuto Cellini.
A 1900 portrait bust of Benvenuto Cellini by Raffaello Romanelli. Cellini (1500-1571) was a goldsmith, sculptor and author who worked in ...
A self-portrait of Ghirlandaio.
A self-portrait of Domenico Ghirlandaio and his brother David, ca. 1487. Domenico (1449-1494) is the second of the four figures on the right, ...
Portraits of four humanists by Ghirlandaio.
Portraits of four humanists by Domenico Ghirlandaio of Florence. In the church of Santa Maria Novella, Ghirlandaio (1449-1494) painted "Scenes ...
Signature panel, The Nativity, della Robbia.
The signature panel of The Nativity, an altarpiece by Giovanni della Robbia, 1521. Illustrative of Renaissance individualism is this panel on ...

Florence Leads the Way

No Challenge Too Great: the Dome

A capstan used in constructing the dome.
A capstan or winch used in the construction of Brunelleschi's dome. A bar was inserted in the square hole, and ropes were wound around the spool ...
A windlass used in the construction of the dome.
A windlass used in the construction of Brunelleschi's ...
Four sets of small compound pulleys.
Five sets of small compound pulleys used during the construction of Brunelleschi's ...
The architect Filippo Brunelleschi.

Filippo Brunelleschi (1377-1446). Brunelleschi was the first great architect of the Italian Renaissance. Among his major works were the great ...

The Duomo, Florence.

A distant view of the Duomo (Santa Maria del Fiore) of Florence. Many churches have been located where the present one stands. In 1294 the city ...

Tongs used to hoist blocks of stone.

Tongs used to hoist blocks of stone during the construction of Brunelleschi's ...

Two large compound pulleys.

Two large compound pulleys used during the construction of Brunelleschi's ...

Two sets of dividers and a mason's square.

Two sets of dividers and a mason's square. These tools were used by the workers who built Brunelleschi's great ribbed dome over the transept ...

The Change Made Visual

Singing Children, by Luca della Robbia.

Singing Children by Luca della Robbia, from his 1431-1438 Choir Gallery, that once was over the entrance to the sacristy in the Cathedral of ...

St. Bernard of Siena, by Vecchietta.

Saint Bernard of Siena, a painted wooden statue by Lorenzo di Pietro, known as il Vecchietta. Renaissance artists strove for realism in ...

The Nativity, by Giovanni della Robbia.

The Nativity , a glazed terra cotta altarpiece by Giovanni della Robbia, 1521. Luca della Robbia had developed the process of using vitreous ...

"St. Peter and two saints," a French fresco.

"St. Peter and two saints," a fresco in Baucaire, France. Prior to the Renaissance, painting was two-dimensional, rigid and other-worldly. St. ...

"The Coronation of Mary," by Filippo Lippi .

"The Coronation of Mary," a High Renaissance style painting by Filippo Lippi (1406-1469). Painting in the Renaissance became three-dimensional, ...

Five apostles on a Chartres doorjamb.

Five apostles flanking the central portal of the medieval Chartres cathedral, France, early 13th century. The three figures from the right are ...

Ghirlandaio, "John the Baptist named."

"John the Baptist named," a fresco by Domenico Ghirlandaio in the Church of Santa Maria Novella, Florence, 1485-1490. The scene is based on a ...

The Gates of Paradise

A closeup of Moses.

A closeup of Moses, from Ghiberti’s east doors of the Florence ...

Abraham and the Sacrifice of Isaac.

Abraham and the Sacrifice of Isaac, from Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence ...

David and Goliath.

David slays Goliath, from Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence ...

Joseph sold into slavery by his brothers.

Joseph sold into slavery by his brothers, from Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence ...

Moses receiving the Law.

Moses receiving the Law, from Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence ...

Six Ghiberti panels on the Florence baptistery.

Six panels of Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence baptistery with Old Testament themes. Top row, left, the Explusion of Adam and Eve from the ...

Solomon and the Queen of Sheba.

Solomon and the Queen of Sheba, from Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence ...

The Cain and Abel panel of Ghiberti's east doors

The Cain and Abel panel of Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence baptistery. A baptistery is a building in which the Christian rite of baptism, ...

The Creation panel of Ghiberti's east doors.

The Creation panel of Ghiberti's east doors of the Florence baptistery. This shows the creation of Adam (left) and Eve (center) and the Fall of ...

The east side of the Baptistery in Florence.

The east side of the Baptistery in Florence, with the Gates of Paradise visible. The commission for the east doors was awarded to Lorenzo ...

The Merchant Aristocracy

Death of Francesca Tornabuoni, Verrochio.

A relief with scenes of mortality during the Renaissance, The Death of Francesca Pitti Tornabuoni, by Verrocchio. Francesca, a member of a ...

Giuliano de' Medici, marble portrait bust.

Giuliano de' Medici, a marble portrait bust by an unknown artist. Giuliano (1453-1478), the younger brother of Lorenzo the Magnificent, was ...

The Death of Francesca Tornabuoni , mourning.

In this left panel, several midwives present a newborn infant to the father and other male relatives, who were not allowed into the birthing ...

"The Virgin Mary Visits her Cousin."
"The Virgin Mary Visits her Cousin St. Anne," by Domenico Ghirlandaio, 1486-1490, in Santa Maria ...
Florence. Palazzo Medici.
The Palazzo Medici in Florence, designed by Michelozzo di Bartolomeo (1396-1472). Built at the order of Cosimo the Elder about 1444, it was the ...
Francesca Pitti, donor of frescos by Ghirlandaio.
Francesca Pitti, the wife of Giovanni Tornabuoni, the donors of the frescoes by ...
Giovanni de' Medici, by Mino da Fiesole.
Giovanni di Cosimo de' Medici, by Mino da Fiesole. Giovanni (1422-1463) was the son of Cosimo, the man who established the Medici as the de ...
Giovanni delle Bande Nere (de' Medici)
Giovanni delle Bande Nere, by Baccio Bandinelli, 1540. Giovanni de' Medici (1498-1526), called Giovanni delle Bande Nere [of the Black Bands], ...
Michelangelo's stairway into Laurentian Library.
The stairway into the Laurentian Library in Florence, designed by Michelangelo in 1558-1559. The collection of libraries of manuscripts from the ...
Palazzo Davanzati, merchant's home and business.
The early 14th-century Palazzo Davanzati in Florence is a magnificent example of a seignorial residence in the city. Built by the Davanzati ...
The Great Hall in the Palazzo Davanzati.
The Great Hall in the Palazzo Davanzati. Florentine museums have provided suitable 15th-century furnishings for the ...
The light well in the Palazzo Davanzati.
Looking down through the light well in the Palazzo Davanzati in ...
The Palazzo Medici courtyard.
The courtyard of the Palazzo Medici, showing medallions attributed to Bertoldo di Giovanni (1420-1491). The Medici patronage of artists, among ...
The west façade of the Pitti Palace in Florence.
The west façade of the Pitti Palace in Florence. Around 1547, the wealthy merchant Luca Pitti commissioned a palace to be built, possibly ...
Vault over the entrance of the Laurentian Library.
The ceiling of the vestibule of the Laurentian Library, designed by Michelangelo. His design incorporated columns built into the walls rather ...

The Painting Friar: Fra Angelico

"The Annunciation," a fresco by Fra Angelico.
"The Annunciation," a fresco by Fra Angelico and his school, in the east dormitory of the Convent of San Marco in ...
"The Nativity," by the school of Fra Angelico.
"The Nativity," a fresco by the school of Fra Angelico in the east dormitory of the Convent of San ...
St. Dominic by Fra Angelico, Convent of San Marco.
In the Convent of San Marco in Florence, the fresco by Fra Angelico of St. Dominic looking up at Christ on the ...

The Return to Roman Architecture

A roundel of St. John in the Pazzi Chapel.
A ceramic roundel of St. John by Luca della Robbia, in the nave of the Pazzi Chapel, Florence, ...
A statue of the architect Andrea Palladio.
A statue of the architect Andrea di Pietro Palladio (1508-1580) in Vicenza, Italy. Palladio was born in Vicenza and was trained as a stonemason ...
Children's Hospital, built by Brunelleschi.
The portico of the Children's Hospital, built by Benedetto Brunelleschi in Florence. The harmonious balance and the use of Roman arches in this ...
Palladio's basilica in Vicenza.
Palladio's basilica in Vicenza, dating from 1549. This is one of Palladio's better-known masterpieces. It has galleries with Doric and Ionic ...
Pazzi Chapel by Brunelleschi.
The Pazzi Chapel in Florence, Italy, 1442-1446. Andrea de' Pazzi commissioned Brunelleschi to design and build a chapel in the cloisters of ...
The altar and walls of the Pazzi Chapel.
The altar and walls seen from the doorway of the Pazzi Chapel in Florence. In this interior, Brunelleschi continued the patterns of the outside: ...
The cupola ceiling of the Pazzi Chapel.
The cupola ceiling of the Pazzi Chapel in Florence, Italy, 1442-1446. At the four corners are polychromed roundels of the four Evangelists, ...
The interior of Palladio's basilica in Vicenza.
The interior of Palladio's basilica in ...
The portico of the Pazzi Chapel.
The portico of the Pazzi Chapel in Florence, Italy. 1442-1446. A chapter house was a separate or attached building used as a meeting place for ...

In Other Lands

A No drama.
A Japanese No drama. This type of drama grew out of the folk dances and plays which were performed at Shinto religious festivals. Extremely ...
A page from an Aztec tribute roll.
A page from Aztec Emperor Moctezuma's Tribute Roll, the Codex Mendoza . Under King Ahuítzotl, the Aztecs extended their rule south to the ...
An astrolabe.
An astrolabe. This instrument, developed in the Middle East, was used to make precise measurements of latitude. It was important in astronomy ...
An early Muslim sickroom scene.
A sickroom scene from Ibn Sina's Canon of Medicine . Muslim physicians were active in the advancement of surgical techniques, and were among ...
Hall of Supreme Harmony, Forbidden City, Beijing.
The Hall of Supreme Harmony in the Forbidden City, in Beijing. In 1415 the Yongle emperor ordered that his new capital be built "in harmony with ...
Ishak Palace at Dogubeyazit near Ararat, Turkey.
The Ishak Pasha Palace at Dogubeyazit near Mount Ararat in Turkey, built in the 17th century. Mount Ararat, in the distance, is the legendary ...
Kinkakuji (Golden Pavilion) at Kyoto, Japan.
The Golden Pavilion at Kyoto, Japan. Constructed under the shogunate of Yoshimitsu in the mid-14th century, the Golden Pavilion was intended to ...
Map-Rise of the Ottoman Empire, 1300-1566.
A map of the rise of the Ottoman Empire, 1300-1566. This Muslim empire was founded ca. 1300 by Sultan Osman I (1259-1326), originating in Asia ...
Mehmet II, conqueror of Istanbul.
Mehmet II, the conqueror of Istanbul. The Ottomans tried to occupy Constantinople, the Byzantine capital, more than once by the mid-15th ...
Stone garden at Ryoanji Temple, Kyoto.
The stone garden at Ryoanji Temple, Kyoto, Japan. The influence of Zen Buddhism is clearly at work in this garden, believed to have been designed ...
The ball court at Chichén Itzá.
The ball court at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico. Most sites in Mesoamerica had their own ball courts, but this one is the largest in the region, ...
Timur (Tamerlane).
Timur (also known as Tamerlane, ca. 1336-1405) created a vast but short-lived empire in southwest Asia at the end of the 14th century. Timur was ...
Walls of Beijing, ca. 1900 A.D.
The walls of Beijing, photographed ca. 1900 A.D. As early as the 8th century B.C., there was a town on this location. Around 1415, the Yongle ...

The Pioneers of Change: The Later Renaissance, 1500-1575

16th-century pulpit in St. Stephen's, Vienna.
An early 16th-century pulpit in St. Stephen's Cathedral, Vienna, Austria. The sculptor, Anton Pilgram, came to Vienna in 1511, working as a ...

Other Islands

A craftsman at work in a Murano glass factory.
A craftsman at work in a Murano glass factory. The Venetian glass artist is fashioning a goblet using traditional tools that date back to the ...
Island of Murano, center of glass industry.
The island of Murano, center of the Venetian glass industry since the 13th century. Burano, another island in the Venetian lagoon, was and ...
The island of San Giorgio Maggiore from San Marco.
The island of San Giorgio Maggiore, seen from the Mola San Marco in Venice. This church, which dominates the island, was designed by Andrea ...

Other Renaissance Cities

Milan and Genoa

A map of Genoese trade routes in the Renaissance.
A map of Genoese trade routes in the time of the Renaissance. Italy was in a prime position to capitalize on the very lucrative international ...
A tower of the Sforza Castle in Milan, Italy.
A tower of the Sforza Castle in Milan. This stronghold was built by Francesco Sforza between 1451 and 1466, and it served as the principal ...
Coat of Arms, Francesco Sforza, Duke of Milan.
The coat of Arms of Francesco Sforza (1401-1466), the Duke of Milan. He was one of the foremost examples of a condottiere (mercenary general) ...
Gate leading to Ducal Court of Sforza Castle.
The gate leading from the Piazza d'Armi to the Corte Ducale, the inner courtyard of the Sforza Castle in ...
Lodovico Sforza, the Duke of Milan.
Lodovico Sforza (1451-1508), the Duke of Milan. Nicknamed il Moro, either because he was dark or

because his second name was Mauro, Lodovico ...

Milan, ca. 1600.

Milan, ca. 1600. When rebuilt in the 12th century, it assumed the circular plan which was characteristic of medieval cities. Milan was an ...

Siena

A distant view of the Cathedral of Siena.

A distant view of the Cathedral of Siena. The cathedral, constructed 1196-1215, is dedicated to the Assumption of the Virgin Mary, and is the ...

City Hall and Mangia Tower, Siena.

The City Hall and Mangia Tower, in Siena, Italy. During the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, Siena was a major commercial (merchant-banking) ...

The 13th-century Palazzo Salimbeni in Siena.

The façade of the 13th-century Palazzo Salimbeni in Siena, showing the distinctive ornamentation of buildings in Siena. Today, this building is ...

The Palazzo Sansedoni, dating from 1339, Siena.

The Palazzo Sansedoni, dating from 1339, in the Piazza del Campo Siena, Italy. This is one of three Renaissance buildings of the Campo that ...

The southeast side of the Cathedral of Siena.

The southeast side of the Cathedral of ...

Urbino

A distant view of the city of Urbino, Italy.

A distant view of the city of Urbino, Italy. The city was ruled by the Montefeltro family from 1100 until 1508. Its Duke Federico da ...

Baptista Sforza, the Duchess of Urbino.

Baptista Sforza (1444-1490), the Duchess of Urbino. Baptista became the wife of Federigo da Montefeltro in 1472. She was instrumental in making ...

Federigo II da Montefeltro, the Duke of Urbino.

Federigo II da Montefeltro (1444-1482), the Duke of Urbino. Federigo was created duke by Pope Sixtus IV in 1474. In this life-size marble ...

Guidobaldo da Montefeltro (ruled 1482-1508).

Guidobaldo I, the Duke of Montefeltro (ruled 1482-1508) as a youth. Guidobaldo was the son of Federigo of Montefeltro and Battista Sforza. ...

The courtyard of the Palazzo Ducale in Urbino.

The courtyard (Cortino d'Onore) in the Palazzo Ducale, the ducal palace, of Urbino. The ordered columns, the controlled decoration, and the ...

Political Realism: Machiavelli

Cesare Borgia and Niccolò Machiavelli.

"Cesare Borgia and Niccolò Machiavelli in Conversation," an 1899 painting by Faraffini. Borgia (ca. 1475-1507), a son of Pope Alexander VI, was ...

Dining room, Machiavelli's house in exile.

The dining room of Machiavelli's house in Sant' Andrea in Percussina. In exile, Machiavelli began an extremely productive period in his life. ...

Machiavelli's bedroom/study, the desk.

Machiavelli's desk in his bedroom/study. Machiavelli wrote that "at night I enter my study, clothe myself in courtly robes, join heroes of the ...

Machiavelli's villa in exile.

The exterior of Machiavelli's villa in Sant' Andrea in Percussina. When the Medici regained control of Florence in 1512, Machiavelli was exiled ...

Niccolò Machiavelli.

Niccolò Machiavelli (1469-1527), artist unknown. A Florentine diplomat and political theorist, Machiavelli was among the outstanding figures of ...

Renaissance Painters and Sculptors

The Pioneers of Change

"Christ between Peter and St. James Minor."

"Christ between St. Peter and St. James Minor," by Giovanni Cimabue (Cenni di Peppi, or Pepo, ca. 1240-1302), a painting on wood in three ...

The "Madonna in Maesto," by Giotto de Bondone.

The "Madonna in Maesto," a polychrome altarpiece by Giotto de Bondone. Painting was never as highly developed in the Middle Ages as other forms ...

The Pioneers of Change: The Early Renaissance, 1350-1450

A young boy, by Antonio Rossellino .

A young boy, by Antonio Rossellino. Rossellino (1427-1479) and his brother Bernardo (1409-1464) were Florentine sculptors who flourished at ...

Faith, a marble statue by Mino da Fiesole.

Faith, a marble statue by Mino da Fiesole (1429-1484). Da Fiesole was a Florentine sculptor who had a successful career, primarily as a ...

John the Baptist, by Donatello.

John the Baptist, a marble statue by Donatello (1386-1466). Donatello, considered the greatest sculptor of his time, was one of the pioneers ...

Madonna and Child by Ghiberti.
Madonna and Child , a terra cotta statue by Lorenzo Ghiberti (1378-1455). Photographed in the National Gallery of ...

Madonna of the Rose Bower, by della Robbia.
The Madonna of the Rose Bower, by Luca della Robbia, a 15th century glazed terra cotta altarpiece. Luca della Robbia (1400-1482) was a major ...

The Madonna of Humility, by della Quercia.
The Madonna of Humility, a sculpture of the Virgin Mary seated on the ground with the infant Jesus. This piece is marble with traces of gilt, ...

A ca. 1400 painting by Gentile da Fabriano.
A ca. 1400 painting by Gentile da Fabriano. Da Fabriano, active between 1390 and his death in 1427, was one of the greatest masters of the ...

A framed terra cotta relief by Luca della Robbia.
A framed terra cotta relief by Luca della Robbia. The subject is the Madonna and Child, but this piece is interesting because of its gilt-wood ...

A roundel from the della Robbia shops.
A 15th century roundel with floral decoration in the style of the Della Robbia shops. Roundels such as this decorate numerous public buildings ...

A self-portrait by Lorenzo Ghiberti.
A self-portrait by Lorenzo Ghiberti (1378-1455). Ghiberti was the most successful bronze sculptor during the early Renaissance in Florence, ...

A wood statue of Mary Magdalene by Donatello.
A wood statue of Mary Magdalene by Donatello (ca. 1386-1466). Donatello conceived of a Mary Magdalene worn and without beauty after years of ...

Bust of a young woman by Desiderio da Settignano.
A bust of a young Florentine woman by Desiderio da Settignano. Photographed in the National Gallery of ...

Duccio, Madonna and Child with Angels.
The Madonna and Child with Angels. Gray sandstone surrounds this marble low-relief by Agostino di Duccio (1418-1481). This was probably an ...

John the Baptist, statue by Francis da Sangallo.
John the Baptist, a marble statue by Francesco da Sangallo (ca. 1430-1464). Little is known of da Sangallo other than that he came from a ...

Musicians in Singing Gallery.
A relief panel of musicians with tambourines from the Singing Gallery by Luca della Robbia. Two such galleries were commissioned, one by Luca ...

The face of Donatello's bronze David.
The face and shoulders of Donatello's bronze David. Donatello (1386-1466) was born Donato di Niccolo de Betto Bardi, and was considered the ...

The faces of a mother and child by Donatello.
The faces of a Florentine mother and child, by Donatello. Though the composition is that of a Madonna and Child, Renaissance artists typically ...

The head of a young boy, by da Settignano.
The head of a young Florentine boy, by Desiderio da Settignano (ca. 1428-1464). He was a contemporary and follower of Donatello's style, ...

The Pioneers of Change: The High Renaissance, 1450-1500

Alexander the Great by Verrocchio.
Alexander the Great, a marble relief by Andrea del Verrocchio, (1435-1488), one of the major artists of the Italian Renaissance. Most of his ...

Lady with a Nosegay, a bust by Verrocchio.
Lady with a Nosegay, a portrait bust by Verrochio of a woman holding a flower. In an age when photography did not exist, marble busts such as ...

The Adoration of the Christ Child by Rustici.
The Adoration of the Christ Child, a glazed terra cotta roundel by Giovanni Francesco Rustici (1474-1554). Rustici was a Florentine artist who ...

The Madonna of Humility, Andrea della Robbia.
A glazed terra cotta relief called The Madonna of Humility, by Andrea della Robbia (1434-1525). Andrea was the son and heir of Luca della ...

"The Pietà" (ca. 1470) of Giovanni Bellini.
"The Pietà," painted 1470-1471 by Giovanni Bellini for the Church of San Francesco in Pesaro, Italy. Bellini (1430-1516) revolutionized Venetian ...

A bronze David, by Verrocchio.
A bronze statue of David, done in 1473 by Verocchio for the Villa of Careggi. Andrea del Cione del Verrocchio (1435-1488) was one of the major ...

A bust of Leonardo da Vinci at Clos Luce, France.
A bust of Leonardo da Vinci (1452-1519) at Clos Luce, France. Leonardo, the illegitimate son of a Florentine notary, was the ultimate example of ...

A marble portrait bust by Antonio del Pollaiuolo.
A marble portrait bust by Antonio del Pollaiuolo (1429-1498). Antonio and his brother Piero carried on a

prosperous sculpting and painting ...

A terra cotta relief, Do not touch me.
Do not touch me, a 1525-1530 glazed terra cotta relief by Santi Viviani, known as Buglioni. This panel is an excellent example of the fine ...

Lippi, "The Triumph of St. Thomas Aquinas."
"The Triumph of St. Thomas Aquinas" by Fillipino Lippi (1457-1504). Fillipino Lippi was the son of Filippo Lippi and an important artist in his ...

Sketches of flying machines by Leonardo da Vinci.
Flying machines and parts thereof, sketches from Leonardo da Vinci's notebooks. In the history of flight, Leonardo must be classed as a thinker ...

The hall of Leonardo da Vinci's final residence.
The Great Hall in Leonardo da Vinci's château of Clos Luce in the Loire Valley, France. It is said that Leonardo took the Mona Lisa with him ...

The movement of birds, by Leonardo da Vinci.
The movement of birds in the air, from the notebooks of Leonardo da Vinci (1452-1519). Leonardo, who had a marvelous skill in drawing, made ...

The Pioneers of Change: The Later Renaissance, 1500-1575

Bacchus (1496) by Michelangelo.
Bacchus, a 1496 work by Michelangelo. Michelangelo Buonarroti (1475-1564), a native of Florence, was the foremost artist of the Italian ...

David, and an unfinished work.
Statues of David and an unfinished work by Michelangelo. The juxtaposition of the two demonstrates Michelangelo's definition of a sculptor: ...

Sinopia for fresco of a Madonna and Child.
Sinopia for a ca. 1415 fresco of a Madonna and Child from the Cappella Cerchi by Nicolo di Pietro Gerini of Florence. Fresco was a common form ...

The Palestrina Pietà (1550) by Michelangelo.
The Palestrina Pietà (1550) by Michelangelo. Originally this work was in the church of Santa Rosalia di Palestrina, Rome, until it was ...

"La Donna," called "Grave" by Raphael.
"La Donna," called "Grave" by Raphael. The position of the hands and the body in this 1506 painting show similarities to Leonardo da Vinci's ...

"Rest on the Flight into Egypt" by Barocci.
"Rest on the Flight into Egypt" by Federico Barocci (ca. 1528-1612). Barocci's career as a painter in Rome came to an abrupt end in 1563 when he ...

"St. George and the Dragon" by Paris Bordone.
"St. George and the Dragon" by Paris Bordone (1500-1571). Bordone was a Venetian painter whose reputation at the time rivaled that of his ...

"St. Helena" by Paolo Veronese.
"St. Helena," by Veronese (1520-1588). Born in Verona, Italy, as Paolo Caliari, Veronese succeeded Titian as the principal artist of 16th ...

"The Coronation of the Virgin," by Raphael.
"The Coronation of the Virgin," a 1503 painting by Raphael depicting the Virgin Mary being crowned in Heaven. It was commissioned by Maddalena ...

"The Foligno Madonna," by Raphael.
"The Foligno Madonna," by Raphael. This major work was painted by Raphael in 1511 or 1512. It was commissioned by the Papal Secretary ...

"The Madonna of Seggiolo," by Raphael.
"The Madonna of Seggiolo," painted around 1515 by Raphael. This was one of his most popular paintings of the Madonna and ...

"The Stoning of St. Stephen" by Georgio Vasari.
"The Stoning of St. Stephen," a painting from the Chapel of Pope Nicholas V by Giorgio Vasari (1511-1574). Vasari, a native of Arezzo, was a ...

"The Transfiguration of Christ" by Raphael.
"The Transfiguration of Christ," a 1517 painting by Raphael. Cardinal Giulio de' Medici commissioned Raphael to do this work for the cathedral ...

A detail of "The Foligno Madonna."
A detail of "The Foligno Madonna," by ...

A detail of 'The Madonna dei Frari,' by Titian.
A detail of 'The Madonna dei Frari," by Titian. Portrayed are Saints Sebastian, Francis, Anthony of Padua, Peter, Nicholas, and Catherine of ...

Face of the satyr, Bacchus, by Michelangelo.
Detail of the face of the satyr from Bacchus by Michelangelo. During the High Renaissance, secular subjects increasingly replaced religious ...

Michelangelo's David.
The statue David, by Michelangelo, in the Florence Academy. This monumental High Renaissance statue, 18 feet tall, was designed to be placed ...

Michelangelo's earliest Pietá.
Michelangelo's Pietá in St. Peter's Basilica, 1499. This is the earliest of several Pietás carved by Michelangelo. Tender and moving, it ...

One of the quarry pits at Carrara, Italy.
One of the quarry pits at Carrara, Italy. Fine white marble has been cut from this mountain since at least the period of the Roman Republic. ...
The Pietà del Duomo by Michelangelo.
The Pietà del Duomo by Michelangelo, ca. 1550. Nicodemus (a self-portrait) and Mary Magdalene lower the body of Jesus down from the cross and ...
The Pitti Tondo (ca. 1505) by Michelangelo.
The Pitti Tondo by Michelangelo. This ca. 1505 marble roundel is a good example of Michelangelo's ability to draw facial expression and ...
The apostles, from "The Coronation of the Virgin."
A closeup view of the apostles in "The Coronation of the Virgin," by Raphael. In this lower zone of the painting, the apostles gather around the ...
The face of Michelangelo's David.
The face of Michelangelo's David. Michelangelo was commissioned to carve David when he was only 26, after he had spent several years in Rome ...
The hand of Michelangelo's David.
The hand of Michelangelo's David ...
The head of Apollo/David by Michelangelo.
Detail showing the head of Apollo/David by Michelangelo Buonarroti. He carved this statue between 1530 and 1532 after Florence had lost its ...
The head of a prisoner, by Michelangelo.
The head of a Cross-leg Prisoner , by Michelangelo. This is one of four statues begun by the artist between 1527 and 1528. In their unfinished ...
The head of Mary from Michelangelo's Pietá.
A copy of the head of Mary from the Michelangelo's Pietá. He received this commission in 1498 and it was completed around 1500. This, his ...
The lower scene in Raphael's "Transfiguration."
The lower scene of the "Transfiguration of Christ" by Raphael. A possessed boy is the center of attention; all are looking at him and pointing ...
The upper scene in Raphael's "Transfiguration."
The upper scene from the "Transfiguration of Christ" by Raphael. Christ, flanked by Moses and Elijah, hovers over the apostles Peter, James and ...

Renaissance Theater and Music

A musical group with brass wind instruments.
A musical group with brass wind instruments. This marble sculpture group was done by Benedetto da Maiano ...
A stage backdrop for the street theater in Venice.
A stage backdrop for the street theater in Venice. The scene on the backdrop shows that the play about to be performed is Goldoni's Servant of ...
A woman playing a lute.
A woman playing a lute. The lute was a stringed instrument much used in European music from the Middle Ages to the 18th century. ...
Angel with a hurdy-gurdy, by Andrea Orcagna.
An angel playing a hurdy-gurdy, sculpture by Andrea Orcagna (active 1343-1368). A hurdy-gurdy was a stringed musical instrument played by ...
The stage and seating of a street theater.
The stage and seating of a street theater in Venice. The Commedia dell' arte began as improvisations on the streets in Bergamo, a city in ...
Three music-making angels by Orcagna.
Three music-making angels playing a harp, a bagpipe-like instrument and a drum, carved by Andrea Orcagna (1344-1368). Photographed in the ...

The Papal States

Rome and Tivoli

An engraved plan of the Tivoli Gardens.
An engraved plan of the Tivoli Gardens, on the grounds of the Villa d'Este. The villa was originally a Benedictine convent; it was confiscated ...
Michelangelo's interior of Baths of Diocletian.
Michelangelo's interior for the Baths of Diocletian, now the Church of Santa Maria degli ...
Mme. Lucrezia, one of Rome's "talking statues."
Madame Lucrezia, one of Rome's four "talking statues." Unknown persons would post satirical comments, usually of a political nature, at each of ...
The Baths of Diocletian, rebuilt by Michelangelo.
The Baths of Diocletian, first built in 305 A.D. and rebuilt by Michelangelo between 1563 and 1566 as the Church of Santa Maria degli Angeli in ...
The fish pools at Tivoli Gardens.
The fish pools and fountains at Tivoli ...
The Organ Fountain at Tivoli Gardens.
The Organ Fountain at Tivoli Gardens, designed by the French architect Claude Vernard. A water-powered organ hidden behind this façade played ...

The Palazzo di Venezia in Rome.
The Palazzo di Venezia (Palace of Venice) in Rome. Because of its widespread commercial interests, Venice was one of the first Italian states to ...
The Piazza del Campidoglio by Michelangelo.
The Piazza del Campidoglio by Michelangelo, viewed from the Senate stairs. Michelangelo's design for the piazza consisted of an oval at the ...
The Piazza del Campidoglio, Rome.
The Piazza del Campidoglio on the Capitoline Hill. The smallest of Rome's seven hills, it was the most important since it was the ancient ...

St. Peter's Basilica and Square

Bramante's Tempietto in Rome, 1502.
Bramante's Tempietto in Rome, 1502. The designer of St. Peter's Basilica, Donato di Angelo Bramante (ca. 1444-1514), left Milan in 1499 because ...
Michelangelo's dome over St. Peter's Basilica.
Michelangelo's dome over St. Peter's Basilica. In 1547 Michelangelo succeeded three other architects in the building of the new St. Peter's. He ...
St. Peter's, 19th-century engraving.
St. Peter's Basilica and St. Peter's Square in Rome, a 19th-century engraving by Domenico ...
St. Peter's Square seen from the basilica dome.
Bernini's Colonnades, St. Peter's Square (the oval area), and the Via della Conciliazione from the dome of St. Peter's Basilica. In the ...
St. Peter's Square, designed by Maderno.
The façade of St. Peter's Basilica viewed from the Piazza, designed by Carlo Maderno in the years 1607 to 1614. Since the building of the ...
The ceiling of the nave of St. Peter's Basilica.
The ceiling of the nave of St. Peter's Basilica, looking up and ...
The construction of St. Peter's Basilica.
The construction of St. Peter's Basilica, shown in a wall decoration in the Vatican Museums. In 1506 Donato Bramante won a commission from Pope ...
The high altar of St. Peter's Basilica.
The high altar of St. Peter's Basilica. The baldacchino, a huge bronze canopy over the altar, was inaugurated in 1663 after ten years of work by ...
The Holy Spirit window in St. Peter's Basilica.
The Holy Spirit window over the Chair of St. Peter in St. Peter's Basilica. Bernini created this display over what tradition said was a chair ...
The interior of Michelangelo's dome, St. Peter's.
The interior of Michelangelo's dome over St. Peter's Basilica. The mosaic decoration, not Michelangelo's design, took from 1589 to 1612 to ...
The south transept of St. Peter's Basilica.
The south transept of St. Peter's Basilica, seen from a walkway inside Michelangelo's ...
Transept and part of drum of St. Peter's dome.
The interior of a transept and part of the drum of the dome of St. Peter's ...

The Vatican

A distant view of Vatican City.
A distant view of Vatican City. During the Renaissance, the popes extensively expanded and rebuilt their palaces, churches, and offices in the ...
An aerial view of the buildings in Vatican City.
An aerial view of the buildings in Vatican City. Vatican City, which has been a sovereign nation since 1870, has its own train station, shown at ...
Pope Alexander VI, who ruled 1492-1503.
Pope Alexander VI, who ruled 1492-1503. Roderigo Borgia (1431-1503), the nephew of a Pope Calixtus III and the father of Cesare Borgia, was made ...
Pope Julius II, Renaissance prince, arts patron.
Pope Julius II, a Renaissance prince and patron of the arts (r. 1503-1513). During his papacy Rome became one of Europe's most beautiful ...
Pope Sixtus IV and Platina, a fresco by Melozzo.
Pope Sixtus IV and Platina by Melozzo da Forli, 1477. Sixtus IV, who ruled 1471-1484, joined the Franciscan order at an early age, became the ...
The Sistine Chapel and the Apostolic Palace.
The Sistine Chapel and the Apostolic Palace, seen from the dome of St. Peter's Basilica. In the foreground is the Sistine Chapel, built by Pope ...
Two of the Swiss Guards at the papal apartments.
Two of the Swiss Guards at the papal apartments. The uniforms were designed by Michelangelo at the request of the "Warrior Pope," Julius ...

The Plague

A 16th-century plague scene.
A 16th-century plague scene. Human and animal corpses litter the floor, while a man dies in bed. The bubonic variety of the plague caused ...
A plague victim with physicians, 15th century.

A 15th-century plague victim with three physicians. This patient apparently suffers from the bubonic variety, as he points to the buboe on his ...

A plague victim, 15th century.
A 15th-century plague victim. The "black death" was one of the most notorious diseases of all time. Outbreaks of the disease affected ...

Execution of men accused of spreading plague.
The execution of men accused of spreading the plague, in Milan, Italy. The onset of the plague often evoked scapegoating, which involved the ...

Map: The spread of the plague, 1347-1350.
A map showing the rapid spread of the black plague in the years 1347, 1348, 1349 and 1350. Epidemic disease had not ravished Europe since the ...

Physician in plague-protecting costume.
A physician in costume to protect himself from the plague. Theories of contagion did not include the idea of bacteria, but protective clothing ...

Roman plague cart carries away dead and dying.
A plague cart carrying away the dead and dying in Rome, 1657. The dead were hauled away regularly to common graves outside the city limits. ...

The abandoned nave of the Cathedral of Siena.
The abandoned nave of the Cathedral of Siena, Italy. Work on this project stopped because of the terrible number of deaths during the great ...

Venice: the City on Water

Buildings on Pilings, Streets of Water

A gondolier on a small canal in Venice.
A gondolier on a small canal in Venice. In the twentieth century, motor-powered water buses have significantly reduced the number of gondolas in ...

Buildings along Riva degli Schiavoni on pilings.
Buildings along the Riva degli Schiavoni on pilings. Throughout Venice's history, buildings in the city have been built on wooden pilings driven ...

Customs House and entrance to the Grand Canal.
The Customs House and the entrance to the Grand Canal in Venice. The Venetian government strictly controlled prices, and imposed limits on the ...

Gondolas in Venice, 1609.
Gondolas on a Venice canal, 1609. From the earliest times, the gondola has been the principal means of transportation in Venice. Gondolas carry ...

Luxurious palaces along the Grand Canal, Venice
Luxurious palaces along the Grand Canal north of the Rialto Bridge in Venice. These are a mark of the wealth that Venice enjoyed at the time ...

Pointed logs ready for pile driving in Venice.
Pointed logs ready for pile driving in ...

The Ca' d' Oro from across the Grand Canal.
The 15th-century Ca' d' Oro seen from across the Grand Canal. This palazzo (palace) is a foremost example of Venetian architecture, a blend of ...

The Grand Canal, Rialto Bridge in distance.
The Grand Canal in Venice as it passes through the Rialto district. The Rialto was the commercial and economic center of the Venetian Republic. ...

Ships and Military

A close image of Colleone the Conditiore.
A closer image of Colleone the Condottiere. After the Peace of Lodi in 1454, as an inducement to keep him in its service the Republic of Venice ...

Docks and galley sheds in the Arsenal of Venice.
Docks and galley sheds in the Arsenal of Venice. To the left are some of the covered dry docks built in the 15th century to replace the original ...

The canal leading into the Arsenal of Venice.
The canal leading into the Arsenal of Venice. Venetian commercial dominance rested upon the strength of its navy. This naval base was the ...

The Colleone Monument by Verocchio in Venice.
The Colleone Monument by Andrea Verocchio in Venice. Bartolomeo Colleone (1400-1475) was a condottiere, a mercenary general, who faithfully ...

The Commercial Center

A synagogue in Venice.
This Venetian synagogue has been in use since the 16th ...

Map: Venetian Renaissance trade routes.
A map of the extension of Venetian trade routes in the time of the Renaissance. Like Genoa, Venice had a natural connection with the sea; in ...

Merchants' stalls on the Rialto Bridge, Venice.
Merchants' stalls on the Rialto Bridge. As with the Ponte Vecchio in Florence, the Rialto Bridge is occupied by merchants who specialize in ...

The 14th-century fish market on the Grand Canal.

The 14th-century fish market hall and offices on the Grand Canal of Venice. Fish, which could be preserved by soaking in salt brine, formed an ...

The Campo San Giacomo di Rialto.

The Campo San Giacomo di Rialto in Venice. Most of the important business of Venetian international commerce took place in this relatively small ...

The east side of the Rialto Bridge, Venice.

The east side of the Rialto Bridge. The construction of this large stone bridge was not an easy feat in an era when all work was done by hand. ...

The entrance to the Ghetto Vecchio of Venice.

The entrance to the Ghetto Vecchio of Venice, viewed from a pathway along the Canale di Cannaregio. For three centuries, from 1516 to 1797, this ...

The Erberia, a market on the Grand Canal.

The Erberia, a produce market opening onto the Grand Canal of Venice. During the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, this was a wholesale market ...

The Fontego dei Tedeschi, Venice.

The Fontego dei Tedeschi was the most important of the trading centers which, beginning in the 13th century, were leased by the Venetian ...

The interior of the synagogue in Venice.

The interior of the 16th-century synagogue in ...

The Palazzo dei Camerlenghi, Venice.

The Palazzo dei Camerlenghi, at the north end of the Rialto Bridge on the Grand Canal in Venice, which housed the Office of State Finance. This ...

The Political, Religious and Social Center

A denunciation slot at the Doge's Palace.

A denunciation slot at the Doge's Palace. The mouths in the masks were slots where any citizen could denounce suspected criminals by inserting ...

Central dome of St. Mark's Basilica, Venice.

Mosaics in the central dome of St. Mark's Basilica, Venice. The domes and the walls are covered with mosaics. The gold background signifies ...

Doge Niccolo Marcello by Titian.

Doge Niccolo Marcello, who ruled 1473-1474. The doge, while embodying the prestige and authority of the Venetian state, was little more than the ...

Four scenes of Noah and the Ark, mosaic, Venice.

Four scenes of Noah and the Ark, a mosaic in St. Mark's Basilica, Venice, 13th ...

Mosaics on the façade of St. Mark's.

Mosaics on the façade of St. Mark's in Venice. The central theme in this mosaic is the interring of St. Mark's body in the Basilica. According ...

The courtyard of the Doge's Palace in Venice.

The central courtyard of the Doge's Palace in ...

The façade and domes of St. Mark's, Venice.

St. Mark's Cathedral, Venice. Four central domes, roofed with gilded copper sheeting, rise above the four arms of a Greek-cross floor plan. ...

The façade of the Doge's Palace.

The façade of the Doge's Palace. This building is filled with richly decorated offices and audience halls which were used by the various ...

The five domes of St. Mark's, Venice.

The lead-covered domes and roof of St. Mark's Basilica, Venice. To the right is the Doge's Palace, which connected to the Basilica. Lead was a ...

The Grand Stairway of the Doge's Palace.

The Grand Stairway of the Doge's Palace, Venice. This monumental stairway, designed by Antonio Rizzi (1484-1501), was only used on the most ...

The Library of St. Mark, Venice, by Sansovino.

The Library of Saint Mark, Venice, designed by the architect Jacopo Tatti Sansovino (ca. 1486-1570). This library contains over 750,000 books, ...

The Porta della Carta of the Doge's Palace.

The Porta della Carta of the Doge's Palace in Venice. This ceremonial gateway leading to the courtyard of the Doge's Palace was built between ...

Section G: The Reformation, 1517 - 1600

Overview: The Reformation, 1517 - 1600.

A brief video Overview of the history of the Reformation, from 1517 to 1600. Transcript: France became a major power in the sixteenth century ...

Denmark, Russia and the Turks

Christian II of Denmark (1481-1559).

Christian II (1481-1559) was the king of Denmark and Norway from 1513 to 1523, and of Sweden from 1520 until 1523. He incurred the hatred of the ...

Mohammed II, Sultan of the Turks, 1451 to 1481.

Mohammed II, Sultan of the Turks from 1451 to 1481. By the second half of the 15th century, the Christian Byzantine empire consisted only of the ...

The Suleyman Mosque in Istanbul.
The Suleyman Mosque in Istanbul. At the height of the Ottoman Turkish Empire's power in the 16th century, Sultan Suleyman the Magnificent ...
The Topkapi Palace in Istanbul, Turkey.
The Topkapi Palace in Istanbul, Turkey. Mohammed II began the construction of this palace in 1462, and it remained the principal palace of the ...

In Other Lands

A Japanese expedition against Korea.
A Japanese expedition against Korea. Toyotomi Hideyoshi developed grandiose plans for the conquest of China after he completed the unification ...
A Japanese scholar writing.
A Japanese scholar writing. The interest in Neo-Confucianism eventually produced a Japanese school of research and thought which led to renewed ...
A tea ceremony.
A Japanese tea ceremony. Introduced by Chinese Zen monks in the 13th century, the object of the tea ceremony is to foster harmony, reverence, ...
A West African forge for the production of iron.
A West African forge for the production of iron from iron ore. This form of technology, using a simple bellows and forced draft process, was ...
A Zen monk giving a lesson in calligraphy.
In Japan, a Zen monk giving a lesson in calligraphy. The influence of Zen reached its apex in the 16th century. It was simple and austere, and ...
Akbar, the third Mughal emperor of India.
Akbar (1542-1605). The third and most famous Mughal emperor of India, he can be considered one of the great figures of world history. He ...
Ancient Ethiopian crowns.
Ancient Ethiopian crowns, illustrating the wealth and power of the Amhara rulers. This intricate brass casting was the work of skilled ...
Map: Akbar's empire.
A map of Akbar's empire (in pink), which encompassed the area from the Himalayas to the Vindhya mountains. Akbar was an outstanding civil ...
The Japanese regent Toyotomi Hideyoshi.
Toyotomi Hideyoshi. The second stage of Japan’s consolidation was accomplished by Hideyoshi, who had been a vassal and leading general of Oda ...
The Japanese warlord Oda Nobunaga.
The Japanese warlord Oda Nobunaga. In the later part of the 16th century, three warlords or daimyo (literally, great name) defeated their ...

Renaissance Warfare

The Great Harry, 1553.
The Great Harry, 1553. The Royal Navy as a permanent institution took shape under King Henry VIII, who built a British naval base at ...
A 16th-century army encampment.
A 16th-century army ...
A fencing room at Leiden University, Netherlands.
A fencing room at Leiden University, the Netherlands. Skill in fencing became necessary for self-defense against brigands and in duels. In the ...
A foot soldier, known as a landsknecht.
A foot soldier, known as a landsknecht , preparing to fire a musket, ca. 1600. It was about this time that musketeers were introduced into ...
A galleon of the Elizabethan era.
A two-masted galleon of the Elizabethan era, late 16th century. This was the first type of sailing ship which was used primarily in warfare. A ...
A warship of Queen Elizabeth’s time.
A warship of Queen Elizabeth’s ...
French vessels vs. Flemish barges, 1555.
In this August 1555 battle of the Hapsburg-Valois war, 18 small French vessels from Dieppe engaged 23 great Flemish hoys (barges). The battle ...
Hapsburg pike formations and supply wagons.
A detail of Hapsburg troops, showing pike and musket formations and supply ...
Hapsburg troops near Neuhofen, Austria, 1591.
Hapsburg troops mass outside Neuhofen, Austria, in 1591. The invention of gunpowder altered the course of warfare; for the first time, infantry ...
Part of the Hapsburg army at St. Quentin.
A part of the Hapsburg army at the Battle of St. Quentin. This battle was fought between Spanish King Philip II’s army and a French army in ...
The Battle of Lepanto, 1571.
The Battle of Lepanto, 1571. The combined fleet of the Holy League, including King Philip's Spain, Venice, and the Pope, all under the command ...
The siege of a fortress.

The siege of a fortress. Siege warfare and its counterpart, fortification, developed rapidly after 1100. By the end of the Middle Ages, new ...

Three ranks of Spanish cavalry at St. Quentin.

Detail of three ranks of Spanish cavalry from the Battle of St. Quentin. English forces under the Earl of Pembroke arrived too late for the ...

The Age of Discovery

Medicine

Melancholia I, , one of the four dispositions.

Melancholia I, , one of the four dispositions (the others were sanguine, choleric, and phlegmatic) which were believed to be caused by the ...

15th-century surgical instruments.

Fifteenth-century surgical instruments. Most surgical instruments of this era were as frightening as the operations were unsanitary and painful. ...

A 1543 illustration of posterior muscles.

An illustration by an unknown artist of posterior muscles from Vesalius' De Humani Corporis Fabrica (Basel, ...

A 15th-century apothecary's shop.

A 15th-century apothecary's shop. The forerunners of the modern pharmacist, these shops, dating from early Roman times, sold herbals for ...

A 16th-century hospital.

An illustration from the title-page of Paracelsus' 1565 Opus Chirurgicum, depicting a Renaissance hospital. More and more physicians at this ...

A family being "cupped" after a bath.

A family being "cupped" after a bath, ca. 1568. Cupping was practiced by the Egyptians, Greeks, and Romans for centuries. The purpose of ...

A leg amputation in the 16th century.

A leg amputation in the 16th century. The primary attributes of a good surgeon were skill, speed and strength. The patient was usually ...

A man applies leeches to lose weight.

A man applies leeches to lose weight. Leeches were used to bleed people as an alternative to phlebotomy (opening a vein). As with phlebotomy, ...

A man being bled from the arm.

A man being bled from the arm. Although the Hippocratic corpus (body of information) was not very enthusiastic about the procedure, bleeding was ...

Anatomical dissection, 1543.

Anatomical dissection, from Vesalius' De Humani Corporis Fabrica (Basel, 1543). It was Vesalius who first began to bring the physician back ...

Childbirth in the 16th century.

Childbirth in the 16th century. Midwives through the ages have been called upon to deliver children, perform abortions, provide customers with ...

Doctors of Salerno dining, 16th century.

Sixteenth-century doctors of Salerno dining, with patients in the background. The medical school of Salerno, on the Italian coast south of ...

Dr. Ambroise Paré, 1517-1590.

Dr. Ambroise Paré (1517-1590) was a French surgeon who was largely responsible for the revival of French surgery in the Renaissance. During his ...

Removing a worm from a man's body.

Removing a worm from a man's body. Nematodes, or roundworm parasites, have plagued humankind through the centuries. Depending on the type of ...

Skeleton, from De Humani Corporis Fabrica.

The torso of a skeleton, from Andreas Vesalius' De Humani Corporis Fabrica . Vesalius (1514-1564) published this, the first modern anatomical ...

Surgical procedures, 1550.

A clinical scene showing several surgical procedures, 1550. Some of the operations shown include couching for cataracts (far left); trepanning, ...

The barber-surgeon.

The barber-surgeon, who "makes salves for wounds and broken limbs, cures syphilis, operates for cataract, pulls teeth, cuts hair and bleeds ...

The gout.

The gout is an extremely painful condition whose main cause is an excessive amount of uric acid in the blood that produces a gradual deposition ...

Two men compounding remedies.

Two men compounding remedies; this one is "theriac." Theriac was a generally non-specific concoction which contained as many as 57 different ...

Portugal

A map of Magellan's voyage around the world.

A 1544 map of Magellan's voyage around the world. Magellan was killed in the Philippines in 1521, but his immense navigational feat was ...

An astrolabe.

An astrolabe. This instrument, developed in the Middle East, was used to make precise measurements of latitude. It was important in astronomy ...

John III, King of Portugal, r. 1521-1557.
John III (the Fortunate), the King of Portugal (1502 to 1557). During the reign of John III, from 1521 to 1557, the Portuguese empire reached ...

Magellan battles the inhabitants of Mactan, 1521.
Magellan and his men battle the inhabitants of Mactan in the Philippines. Ferdinand Magellan reached the Philippine Islands in March 1521. He ...

Map, Portuguese voyages around the African Cape.
A map showing the voyages of the Portuguese navigators Bartholomeu Dias and Vasco da Gama around the African Cape in the late 15th century. The ...

Portuguese baptize King of the Congo, 1489.
The baptism of the King of the Congo in 1489 by the Portuguese. The Portuguese discovered the kingdom of the Congo, a West African state, in ...

Ptolemy's map of northern Africa, 1507.
Detail from a Ptolemy map of Northern Africa. Claudius Ptolemaeus (ca. 90-168 A.D.) was an Alexandrian astronomer, mathematician and geographer ...

Sailors with navigation instruments, 1557.
A 1557 woodcut showing European sailors using instruments of navigation to calculate their latitude. The sailor at the left employs a cross ...

Templars rotunda of 12th c. Portuguese convent.
The 12th century Templars Rotunda of the Convent of Christ at Tomar, Portugal. The Templars' wealth paid the costs of a large part of the ...

The Portuguese Prince Henry the Navigator.
The Portuguese Prince Henry the Navigator (1394-1460) was an important patron of new naval technology and of exploration. In 1416 he established ...

Vasco da Gama.
Vasco da Gama (ca. 1460-1524). With the help of a Muslim navigator, this Portuguese mariner was the first European to sail around Africa to ...

Science and Education

A page from the Gutenberg Bible, ca. 1453.
A page from the Gutenberg (Mazarin) Bible, the first great book printed in the Western world. It was printed in Mainz, Germany, between 1450 and ...

A print shop, about 1600.
A print shop, about 1600. The master printer is at the right. On the far left, men prepare type by consulting the sheets hanging in front of ...

A reconstruction of Gutenberg's printing press.
A reconstruction of Gutenberg's printing press. Johann Gutenberg (ca. 1400-1468), of Mainz, Germany, is commonly given credit for developing ...

A sundial.
A sundial. Probably the earliest time-measuring device, sundials date from about 3500 B.C. In its simplest form the sundial consisted of a ...

An alchemist in his laboratory.
An alchemist in his laboratory. The alchemists' original goal was to turn base metals into gold. Their function evolved over time and they ...

An equatorial armillary.
An equatorial armillary. The armillary sphere was an ancient astronomical instrument, designed by Tyco Brahe, which consisted of a skeleton ...

Copernicus's sun-centered universe.
A diagram of Nicholas Copernicus's heliocentric (sun-centered) universe. In his great 1543 work, De revolutionibus orbis coelestium, published ...

Don Quixote and his squire Sancho Panza.
Don Quixote and his squire Sancho Panza. Don Quixote de la Mancha was the greatest work of Miguel de Cervantes (1547-1616). When first ...

Francisco Ximénes de Cisneros (1436-1517).
Francisco Ximenes (Jiménez) de Cisneros (1436-1517), was a Spanish prelate, statesman and Renaissance scholar, and the founder of the University ...

François Rabelais (1494-1553), satirist.
François Rabelais (1494-1553), a former monk, published satires on the foibles of society in his Pantagruel , 1532, and Gargantua , 1534. His ...

Miguel de Cervantes (1547-1616).
Miguel de Cervantes (1547-1616), the author of Don Quixote de la Mancha, brought Spanish literature into the Renaissance. Little is known of ...

Montaigne, embodiment of Renaissance thought.
Michel de Montaigne (1533-1592) was the foremost embodiment of Renaissance thought in France. In his Essays , the finest models of this genre, ...

Part of title page from The Ship of Fools.
A part of the title page from The Ship of Fools , published by Sebastian Brant in Germany in 1494. It was perhaps the last embodiment in ...

The 17th century library of Leiden University.

The 17th-century library of Leiden University, in the Netherlands. The medieval custom of keeping books chained to desks has been retained. The ...

The Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe (1546-1601).

The Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe, (1546-1601). His contributions were in the area of observation rather than theory. In his observatory at ...

The University of Alcalá, Spain.

The University of Alcalá de Henares, Spain. Cardinal Francisco Ximenes de Cisneros founded this university in 1508, and it quickly grew to have ...

Spain

A reproduction of Columbus's Santa Maria .

A full-scale replica of Columbus's flagship, the Santa Maria, in Barcelona harbor, Spain. The Santa Maria was the largest of the three ships ...

Christopher Columbus (1451-1506).

Christopher Columbus (1451-1506), who commanded the first European voyage to reach the Americas in the 15th century. Born in Genoa, the son of a ...

Columbus battles the captain of one of his ships.

In the course of an unsuccessful mutiny, Columbus battles the captain of one of his ships. Columbus established a colony on Hispaniola (now ...

Map: Columbus's voyages to America.

A map of Columbus's voyages of exploration to America. In all, he made three more voyages. On his second, in 1493-1496, 17 ships and 1500 ...

Map: European north Atlantic crossings to 1587.

A map of European North Atlantic crossings to 1587. One of the consequences of the Spanish claims to extensive areas of South and Central ...

The Casa de Contratación, Seville, Spain.

The Casa de Contratación in the Alcazar of Seville, Spain. This casa, also known as the Casa del Almirante, was founded by Queen Isabella in ...

Two of Columbus' three ships.

Two of Columbus' three ships. He set sail in August 1492 and reached San Salvador in the Bahamas two months later. He made three subsequent ...

The Conquistadors

Hernando Cortéz (1485-1547).

Hernando Cortéz (1485-1547), the Spanish conqueror of Mexico. A veteran of a previous expedition to Cuba, in 1519 he headed an expedition to ...

Hernando de Soto discovers the Mississippi.

Hernando de Soto (ca. 1500-1542) discovers the Mississippi. Part of Florida was explored in 1528 by Panfilo de Narváez, the Spanish governor of ...

Juan Ponce de León (ca. 1460-1521).

Juan Ponce de León (ca. 1460-1521), accompanied Columbus on his second voyage to America, and served as Spanish governor of Puerto Rico from 1509 ...

New ruler of Mexico surrenders to Cortéz.

The new ruler of Mexico surrenders to Cortéz. The Spaniards captured Mexico City in 1521. Here, new ruler (who succeeded Montezuma) is escorted ...

Spaniards and allies besiege Mexico City.

The Spaniards and their allies (left) besiege Mexico City. In their attack on the Aztec capital, the Spaniards enlisted as allies the ...

Tenochtitlán (Mexico City), capital of the Aztecs.

Mexico City (Tenochtitlán), the capital of the Aztec empire. It stood on an island on Lake Texcaco, now the center of the city. The Spaniards ...

The city of Manila, in the Philippines.

The city of Manila, in the Philippines. Once the Spanish discovered Central America, it was relatively easy for them to sail west across the ...

Vasco Nuñez de Balboa, (1475-1519).

Vasco Nuñez de Balboa (1475-1519), the Spanish governor of Panama. He crossed the Isthmus in 1513 and became the first European to see the ...

The English and French

A 1570 world map by Ortelius of Antwerp.

This 1570 world map by Abraham Ortelius (1527-1598) of Antwerp does not show the continent of Australia but notes, "Terra Australis ...

A 1581 map of the world as seen by Europeans.

A map of the world as seen by Europeans in 1581. By this time there had been some penetration of the North American continent. The ...

Buckland Abbey, residence of Sir Francis Drake.

Buckland Abbey, the residence of Sir Francis Drake. Begun in 1278, the abbey underwent major alterations in the 16th and 17th centuries when it ...

Fort Caroline, French settlement in Florida.

Fort Caroline, a 16th-century French settlement in Florida. The Spaniards left the east coast of Florida

uncolonized and undefended. In 1562 ...

John and Sebastian Cabot, explorers.
John and Sebastian Cabot landing in North America. John Cabot (1425?-ca. 1498) and his son Sebastian (ca. 1476-1557) were Italian mariners who ...

Sir Francis Drake.
Sir Francis Drake (1540-1596), one of the most feared English "sea dogs," spent most of his lifetime in marauding expeditions against the ...

The arrival of the English in Virginia, 1584.
The arrival of the English in Virginia, 1584. The first attempts by the English to found colonies in America were made in 1584 and 1587 on ...

The French battle native Floridians, 16th century.
The French battle the natives of Florida in the 16th century. At first the Indians were friendly toward the settlers, but relations deteriorated ...

The Great Hall of Buckland Abbey.
The Great Hall of Buckland Abbey. The Great Hall is the most significant of Sir Richard Grenville's alterations to the abbey buildings which he ...

The Life of the People

16th-century blacksmiths.
Sixteenth-century blacksmiths. The smith wrought and repaired all sorts of iron implements, including the tools of the farmer and artisan. In ...

A 16th-century joiner.
A 16th-century joiner. The craft of the joiner developed in Europe about the 11th century, when carpenters learned more sophisticated means of ...

A 16th-century tailor shop.
A 16th-century tailor shop. The master (foreground), cuts the cloth, while his assistants stitch it. Tailors made garments of silk and satin ...

A 16th-century toothpuller at a market.
A 16th-century toothpuller at a market. This is a rather placid scene in view of the fact that traveling toothpullers often presented dancers ...

A cartoon about the French game laws.
Long Live the King! Long Live the Nation! On the right, the French peasant of the old regime is weighed down by the burden of the clergy and ...

A peddler.
A peddler. The itinerant merchant was one of the few sources from whom people in rural areas could obtain small manufactured articles. His ...

A public room of the Lygon Arms Inn.
A public room of the Lygon Arms Inn. Local tradesmen met in this "pub" or tavern to exchange news, talk politics, and play ...

A shoemaker, 16th century.
A shoemaker, 16th century. The shoes he made resembled slippers, with the uppers and soles fashioned from the same kind of leather and stitched ...

Building a 16th-century church.
Building a 16th-century church. The wheelbarrow, scaffolding, and cranes give this project a modern ...

Hunting in the 16th century.
A deer hunting party. In the 16th century, hunting was a sport reserved for kings and nobles. The aristocratic huntsmen's practice of ...

Illustration of a Renaissance crane.
An illustration of a crane, from De Re Metallica, by Agricola (Georg Bauer). The gear and pulley arrangement gave the man leverage with which ...

Saltmaking in the 16th century.
Saltmaking in the 16th century. Brine from a well is poured into a cask and carried by porters to a shed where it is transferred to a large ...

Smelting iron ore in the 16th century.
Smelting iron ore in the 16th century. The master stands before the hearth. He sprinkles ore mixed with lime on the crucible. The ore is ...

The "water question."
The "water question." Despite the pleas of people like Thomas More, the punishments for crimes continued to be inhumane in the 16th century. If ...

The Lygon Arms, an inn at Broadway, England.
The Lygon Arms, a 15th and 16th-century inn at Broadway, England. Public houses such as this performed a wide social function during the ...

The manufacture of coins in 16th-century England.
The manufacture of coins in 16th-century England, during the reign of Henry VIII. The man at center beats a sheet of solid metal into the ...

The sale of eyeglasses at a market.
The sale of eyeglasses at a market, ca. 1600. The first corroborated mention of the use of spectacles is found in the 13th century. Among the ...

The Continental Reformation

Calvinism and Religious Wars

Anne de Bourg defends Protestant cause, 1559.
Anne de Bourg, standing at lower center, a member of the Parlement of Paris, defends the Protestant cause before the king, at upper right, and ...
Château Amboise, site of the conspiracy in 1560.
The Château Amboise, on the banks of the Loire River in France, which was used as a royal residence in the 15th and 16th centuries. It was here ...
Gaspard de Coligny, Admiral of France (1519-1572).
Gaspard de Coligny, Admiral of France (1519-1572). As one of the principal French Protestant leaders, Coligny commanded the Huguenots during ...
Iron railing at Amboise used to hang conspirators.
The iron railing of the balcony from which many of those captured during the 1560 Conspiracy of Amboise were ...
John Calvin, the Genevan reformer.
John Calvin (1509-1564) was a French theologian during the Reformation, a spokesman for the Protestant movement, a proponent of the theory of ...
John Knox (ca. 1515-1572).
The Scottish reformer John Knox (ca. 1515-1572). Originally a Roman Catholic priest, by 1545 Knox had attached himself to the reformer George ...
The assassination of Henry, Duke of Guise, 1588.
The assassination of Henry, the Duke of Guise. The Guises were a family of nobles who supported the French state in its struggle against the ...
The massacre of the Huguenots at Cahors, 1561.
The massacre of the Huguenots at Cahors, 1561. The efforts to contain Protestantism in France began under Francis I and continued under his ...

Martin Luther

Major figures of the continental Reformation.
Major figures of the continental Reformation. Front row, left to right: Philip Melanchthon, Martin Luther, John Hus. Middle row: John Calvin, ...

The Counter-Reformation

The Dutch Wars

"Image of the true Catholiche Church of Christ."
The "Image of the true Catholiche Church of Christ." English Protestants watched the bishops of Rome degenerate from the pious martyrs of the ...
A communion service in a Dutch Reformed church.
A communion service in a Reformed church of the United Provinces. Like all Protestants, the Dutch rejected the Roman Catholic belief that Christ ...
A relief force arrives in Leiden.
A relief force of ships, led by William of Orange, arrives by flood water in 1574 to drive off the Spanish army in Leiden, the Netherlands. The ...
The Duke of Alva persecutes Protestants.
The Duke of Alva persecutes the Protestants of the Netherlands. Philip II of Spain continued his father's policy of rooting out the Protestant ...
The Spanish execute Protestants in Haarlem, 1573.
The Spanish execute Protestants in Haarlem, 1573. Despite the Duke of Alva's repression of the Protestant revolt in the Low Countries in 1568, ...
Victory of Dutch over Spanish in Zuyder Zee, 1573.
The victory of the Dutch over the Spanish in the Zuyder Zee, 1573. After the death of Emperor Charles V, the harsh regime of Philip II opposing ...
William of Orange-Nassau (1533-1584).
William of Orange-Nassau (1533-1584). As one of the first peers of the Spanish Netherlands, William served King Philip II of Spain during the ...

The End of the French Religious Wars

Henry IV of France (1553-1610).
Henry IV of France (1553-1610) reigned from 1589 until his death. He had enlisted the aid of the Protestant Henry of Navarre in the religious ...
The assassination of Henry IV, 1610.
The assassination of Henry IV. In 1610 King Henry IV was murdered by a Catholic fanatic, Ravaillac, who feared that the king was plotting ...
The execution of the regicide Ravaillac.
The execution of the regicide Ravaillac, who assassinated Henry IV. He is being drawn by ...

The Jesuits

An auto-da-fe, public burning of heretics.
An auto-da-fe , or public burning of heretics by the Spanish Inquisition. The Holy Office of the Inquisition was a religious tribunal ...
Father Matteo Ricci, Jesuit missionary in China.
Father Matteo Ricci, S.J. (left) and one of his Chinese mandarin converts, Li Paulus. Ricci was a pioneer Jesuit missionary in China. He ...
Francis Xavier by Anthony Van Dyke.

St. Francis Xavier (1506-1552) was one of the first six followers of Ignatius of Loyola when Ignatius founded the Society of Jesus. At the ...

Ignatius of Loyola, founder of the Jesuits.
Ignatius of Loyola (1491-1556), the founder of the Society of Jesus (the Jesuits). Born into the Spanish nobility, Ignatius was wounded in the ...

The cave beneath the Church of St. Ignatius.
The cave beneath the Church of St. Ignatius at Manresa, ...

The Church of St. Ignatius at Manresa, Spain.
Under this Church of St. Ignatius at Manresa, Spain, is a cave in which Ignatius of Loyola spent nine months after his conversion. During this ...

The Council of Trent (1545-1563).
The Council of Trent (1545-1563). The Church council requested by both sides in the Reformation controversy was belatedly called by Pope Paul ...

The persecution of the Protestants by the pope.
The persecution of Protestants by the pope. The pope is shown slaying sheep that are held by a monk. In the background heretics burn at the ...

The English Reformation

Henry VIII and His Wives

Anne of Cleves, the fourth wife of Henry VIII.
Anne of Cleves (1515-1557), the fourth wife of King Henry VIII of England. Anne was a pawn in the diplomatic feuds of the Reformation, and her ...

Catherine Howard, fifth wife of Henry VIII.
Catherine Howard (ca. 1521-1542), the fifth wife of Henry VIII of England. Catherine had not been brought up well, and had a reputation for ...

Catherine of Aragon, the first wife of Henry VIII.
Catherine of Aragon (1485-1536), the first wife of King Henry VIII of England and the mother of Mary I ("Bloody Mary"). She originally had been ...

Catherine Parr, sixth wife of Henry VIII.
Catherine Parr (ca. 1512-1548), the sixth and last wife of Henry VIII, was the daughter of Sir Thomas Parr, the controller of Henry's household, ...

Elizabeth of York (1465-1503).
Elizabeth of York (1465-1503), the wife of Henry VII of England. Elizabeth was the daughter of Edward IV and Elizabeth Woodville; as a pawn ...

Henry VIII of England (1491-1547).
Henry VIII of England (1491-1547). His reign, from 1509 until his death, marked the start of the Reformation in England. Henry's desire for a ...

Jane Seymour, third wife of Henry VIII.
Jane Seymour (ca. 1509-1537), the third wife of Henry VIII of England. Like Ann Boleyn, she had been a lady-in-waiting to Catherine of Aragon, a ...

Richard Fox, the Bishop of Winchester.
Richard Fox, the Bishop of Winchester (ca. 1446-1528), a statue in Winchester. Fox may be considered a typical ecclesiastical figure of the ...

The Age of Elizabeth

British ships destroying Spanish ships.
The vanguard of the British fleet attacks the Spaniards, July 29, 1588. Although these battles were a victory for the English, their ...

Elizabeth I of England (1533-1603).
Elizabeth I of England (1533-1603). The reign of Elizabeth from 1558 to 1603 has been called the greatest era in English history. Under ...

Elizabeth I receives news that she is queen, 1558.
Elizabeth I receives the news that she is queen, 1558. According to tradition, Princess Elizabeth received the news of the death of her ...

Longleat, a 16th-century country house.
Longleat, the seat of the Marquis of Bath. During the 16th century, members of the English country nobility abandoned castles and began building ...

The Spanish Armada vs. English fleet, July 1588.
The Spanish Armada vs. the English fleet, July 28-29, 1588. The Spaniards were hampered by orders to rendezvous with Spanish forces in the ...

The Spanish Armada, 1588.
The Spanish Armada. In response to the raids of English privateers on Spanish shipping, and in retaliation for the English support of Protestant ...

William Cecil, Lord Burghley.
William Cecil, Lord Burghley (1520-1598) served for forty years as the chief adviser to Elizabeth I, first as her secretary, then as Lord ...

The Church of England

A 16th-century dinner table at Hampton Court.
A 16th-century dinner table at Hampton Court Palace. Fish (with their heads still on) are on the plates on the table at left, garnished with ...

A 16th-century kitchen at Hampton Court.
A 16th-century kitchen at Hampton Court Palace. A total of fifty similar kitchens provided two meals a day for Henry VIII and 800 of his ...
Cardinal Wolsey (ca. 1475-1530) in procession.
Cardinal Wolsey going in procession to Westminster Hall. Thomas Wolsey (ca. 1475-1530), who was named Chancellor of England in 1515, dominated ...
Hampton Court Palace, London.
A part of Hampton Court Palace at London. This is Anne Boleyn's Gate, leading into the second court built by Cardinal Wolsey to house Henry ...
One of the monasteries dissolved by Henry VIII.
The Gothic west façade of Tintern Abbey in Wales, one of the monasteries dissolved by Henry VIII. Most of this abbey's buildings were ...
Sir Thomas More (1478-1535).
Sir Thomas More (1478-1535). A distinguished humanist and man of letters, he served in various official capacities under Henry VIII, most ...
The embarkation of Henry VIII to meet Francis I.
The embarkation of Henry VIII to meet Francis I. In an attempt to enlist the aid of Henry VIII against the Holy Roman Emperor Charles V, King ...
The Great Hall of Henry VIII at Hampton Court.
Henry VIII's Great Hall at Hampton Court, built ca. 1532. This is one of the few secular buildings of the 16th century Tudor Gothic style to ...
Thomas Cranmer at the Traitors' Gate, 1553.
Thomas Cranmer at the Traitors' Gate, 1553. Cranmer, the Archbishop of Canterbury under Henry VIII and Edward VI, declared null and void Henry's ...
Thomas Howard, 3rd Duke of Norfolk.
Thomas Howard, the 3rd Duke of Norfolk. Having been members of the peerage since 1483, the Howard family of Norfolk controlled some of the ...

Tudors and Stuarts

Edward VI of England.
Edward VI (1537-1553), the son of Henry VIII and Jane Seymour, came to the throne at the age of nine, having been raised as an extreme ...
Holyrood Palace, Edinburgh, Scotland.
Holyrood Palace in Edinburgh, where Mary Stuart lived for six years. This palace was begun by James IV of Scotland adjacent to an abbey, and ...
King James V of Scotland (1512-1542).
King James V of Scotland (1512-1542) was an infant at the time of his father's death. He grew up amid the struggle of pro-French and pro-English ...
Mary I of England (1516-1558).
Queen Mary I (Mary Tudor, 1516-1558). The daughter of Henry VIII and Catherine of Aragon, Mary spent her childhood in near-exile from her father ...
Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots (1542-1587).
Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots (1542-1587). Mary was the daughter of James V of Scotland and Mary of Guise. She became queen of Scotland in ...
Mary Tudor and her husband, Philip II of Spain.
Queen Mary I (Mary Tudor) and her husband, Philip II of Spain, whom she married in 1556. The match was unpopular with the largely Protestant ...

William Shakespeare

A performance of one of Shakespeare's plays.
A performance of one of Shakespeare's plays in the time of Queen ...
Anne Hathaway's House, Stratford-on-Avon.
Anne Hathaway's birthplace and home. She was born here in 1556 and continued to live here until her marriage to William Shakespeare in 1582. ...
Guild Hall and school at Stratford-on-Avon.
Guild Hall and Grammar School at Stratford-on-Avon. The Guild Hall was used at times for strolling players. In early England, theater companies ...
Shakespeare's mother's home at Stratford-on-Avon.
The home of Mary Arden, the mother of William Shakespeare, in Wilmcote near Stratford-on-Avon, England. In 1557 John Shakespeare, William's ...
The birthplace of Shakespeare.
The birthplace of William Shakespeare on Henley Street, Stratford-on-Avon, England. On April 23, 1564, Mary Arden Shakespeare gave birth to her ...
The parish church of the Shakespeare family.
The parish church of the Shakespeare family. William Shakespeare was baptized here, and he was buried here, at the Trinity Parish Church in ...

The French Renaissance

This is a title, which may be selected for a show.
The French Renaissance This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

Chateau Fontainebleau

A courtyard of Fontainebleau.
A courtyard of the château Fontainebleau. Napoleon at one time imprisoned Pope Pius VII at Fontainebleau, and American general Dwight D. ...
Château Fontainebleau, France.
The Château Fontainebleau, which was a home to French monarchs, to emperors, and to royal visitors such as James II and Peter the Great. Located ...
Diana of Poitiers, mistress of Henry II.
Diana of Poitiers, the mistress of Henry II, depicted as the goddess Diana from Greek mythology, a painting on the wall of the château ...
The Escalier du Fer-à-Cheval, Fontainebleau.
The Escalier du Fer-à-Cheval, Fontainebleau. This was the main entrance to the château Fontainebleau, and it was intended to awe the arriving ...
The grand ballroom of Fontainebleau.
The grand ballroom of the château ...

Paris

The 16th-century Hôtel de Ville of Paris.
The Hôtel de Ville (the city hall) of Paris. The construction of this building was begun under Francis I and completed toward the end of the ...
The Colonnade (east front) of the Louvre, Paris.
The 17th-century Colonnade (east front) of the Louvre. The addition of this wing during the reign of Louis XIV completed the four-sided Cour ...
The Cour Carrée of the Louvre, Paris.
The Cour Carrée (Square Court) of the Louvre, Paris. In 1546, the architect Pierre Lescot started work on the Cour Carrée, but its sponsor ...
The Louvre of Philip Augustus in Paris.
The Louvre of Philip Augustus (1165-1223) in Paris. This palace, much smaller than the present Louvre, was also a fortress. In 1527, King ...
The plan of the Louvre, a 17th-century engraving.
The present plan of the Louvre, a 17th-century engraving. In the 18th century, the idea of nationalizing the magnificent royal art collection in ...

The French Chateaus

A detail showing part of the Chambord façade.
A part of the façade of the Château de ...
A kitchen in Chenonceaux.
A kitchen in the Château de Chenonceaux. Compared with the royal apartments, the service areas of the châteaux are quite ...
Cooking utensils at Chenonceaux.
Cooking utensils on the kitchen wall in the Château de ...
The Blue Bedroom of Chenonceaux.
The Blue Bedroom of the Château de Chenonceaux. French royalty of the 16th century lived with almost no personal privacy; court business ...
The Château de Chambord.
The Château de Chambord. The 440-room Chambord, designed by an Italian architect and begun in 1519 for Francis I, is the largest of the Loire ...
The Château de Chenonceaux.
The Château de Chenonceaux. This château was built between 1513 and 1521 as a private residence by Thomas Bohier, who was collector of taxes ...
The double spiral staircase of Chambord.
The double spiral staircase of the Château de Chambord. This staircase contains two spirals that are superimposed but do not meet. A person ...
The façade of Chambord in the 16th century.
The façade of the Château de Chambord as it was in the 16th century, from a painting of the ...
The formal gardens at Château Villandry.
The formal gardens at Château Villandry. The box hedges and terraces of this gardens are in the best 16th century French style, arranged to ...
The great hall of Chambord.
The great hall of the Château de Chambord. Tapestries covered the walls around an immense fireplace that provided heat for the room. The ...

The Valois Kings, 1515-1589

Francis I of France (1494-1547).
Francis I, King of France (1494-1547), a painting by van Cleve. When Francis I came to the throne in 1515, the English had been expelled from ...
The Parlement of Orléans, 1561.
The Parlement of Orléans in 1561. In the old regime, the parlements of France were courts of law. One of their functions was to register the ...

The German Hapsburgs: Charles V

Coronation of Ferdinand I of Naples.
The coronation of King Ferdinand I of Naples (1423-1494). This Ferdinand, who ruled 1458-1494, was the

illegitimate son of King Alfonso I "the ...

Ferdinand and Isabella.

With Hapsburg help, Ferdinand V was able to capture Naples in 1504. After Isabella's death in 1504, he kept control of Castile by acting as ...

Ferdinand V of Aragón, husband of Isabella.

Ferdinand V of Aragón, the husband of Isabella of Castile-León, inherited the throne of Sicily in 1468 and became joint ruler with Isabella as ...

Jews appeal to Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain.

The Jews meet with Ferdinand V and Isabella of Spain to appeal their deportation order. The Jews, along with the Moors, represented a ...

Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, King of Germany.

Maximilian I (1459-1519), was Holy Roman Emperor and King of Germany from 1493 to 1519. His reign was dominated by a continual struggle to ...

The family of Holy Roman Emperor Charles V.

The family of Holy Roman Emperor Charles V. He is shown kneeling in prayer beside his wife Elizabeth, their daughter Elizabeth, and his sisters ...

The Holy Roman Emperor Charles V.

A bronze bust of the Holy Roman Emperor Charles V (1500-1558). As Charles I of Spain from 1516 to 1555 and as Charles V, the Holy Roman Emperor ...

The Holy Roman Emperor Ferdinand I.

The Holy Roman Emperor Ferdinand I (1503-1564). He was the younger brother of Charles V, who in 1521 appointed him to rule Germany. In 1555, ...

The Reformation

On the Eve of the Reformation

A magician surrounded by scenes of witchcraft.

A magician surrounded by scenes of witchcraft. At first, the Church forbade belief in witches. Then, perhaps partly as a result of the dualist ...

A witch, or Lady Fate.

A witch, or Lady Fate, holds a spindle in one hand and a broom of spindles in the other. In England, witchcraft trials were most numerous in the ...

Exorcism by a clergyman before an altar.

A demon is exorcised by a clergyman before an altar. Exorcism was a formal rite of the Church by which evil spirits were cast out of the bodies ...

Guillaume Budé, French scholar.

Guillaume Budé (1467-1540), was a French humanist, theologian and educator who held several diplomatic posts under the French kings Louis XII and ...

The Papacy

Pope Adrian VI, r. 1522-1523.

Pope Adrian VI (1459-1523, r. 1522-1523) was the only Dutch pope and the last of the early non-Italian pontiffs. He had been vice-chancellor of ...

Pope Clement VII, r. 1523-1534.

Pope Clement VII (Giulio de' Médici, 1478-1534, r. 1523-1534). When Clement VII temporized over the issue of English King Henry VIII's divorce ...

Pope Julius III, r. 1550-1555.

A Vicenzo Danti statue of Pope Julius III. He ruled from 1550 to 1555, having been elected as a compromise candidate between the pro-French and ...

The Spanish Hapsburgs: Philip II

El Escorial, the palace-monastery of Philip II.

El Escorial, the palace-monastery of Philip II of Spain. Philip II began to build this complex as the administrative center of his government ...

King Philip II of Spain, portrait by Titian.

King Philip II of Spain (1527-1598), a portrait by Titian. When the Holy Roman Emperor Charles V retired to a monastery in 1556, he left the ...

The austere west façade of El Escorial.

The austere west façade of El Escorial in Spain. Philip II built the Escorial in part to commemorate his victory over the French at St. Quentin ...

The Baroque retable in the church of El Escorial.

The very ornate Baroque retable (decorative structure) rising behind the high altar in the church the El Escorial, Spain. This retable, which ...

The bedroom of King Philip II in Escorial.

The bedroom of King Philip II in the palace of El Escorial, Spain. The furnishings of this room would have been more suited to a common ...

The family of King Philip II of Spain.

King Philip II of Spain (1527-1598) and his family. Philip II kneels in prayer beside three of his four wives and his son Don Carlos. Mary ...

The pantheon of Spanish kings at El Escorial.

The pantheon of Spanish kings at El Escorial, Spain. These sarcophagi hold the remains of (from top to bottom) Holy Roman Emperor Charles V, ...

The study of King Philip II in El Escorial.
The private study of King Philip II in the palace of El Escorial, ...
The throne of Philip II in El Escorial.
The throne of Philip II of Spain, a fairly simple campaign chair, in the palace of El ...
The throne-room of Philip II in El Escorial.
The throne-room of King Philip II in the palace of El ...

Section H: The Beginnings of the Nation State, 1600 - 1715

Overview: 1600-1715, Nation State Beginnings.
A brief video Overview of the history of the beginnings of the Nation State, from 1600 to 1715. Transcript: Absolute monarchs like France's ...

Baroque Art

"Self portrait," by Peter Paul Rubens.
"Self portrait," by Peter Paul Rubens (1577-1640). Having received a solid classical education and having mastered the major European languages, ...
"The Burial of Christ," by Caravaggio.
"The Burial of Christ," a 1604 painting by Michelangelo Caravaggio (1573-1610). Caravaggio (not to be confused with the more famous Michelangelo ...
Christ Driving the Traders from the Temple.
"Christ Driving the Traders from the Temple," by El Greco (Domenikos Theotocopoulos), ca. 1600. Born in Crete, which was then under Venetian ...
The courtyard of El Greco's house in Spain.
The courtyard of El Greco's 14th-16th-century house in Toledo, Spain. Samuel Levi, the Jewish Treasurer of King Pedro I of Castile-León, lived ...

Colonization

A 1657 French map of Florida.
A 1657 French map of La Floride in America. Until the beginning of the 18th century the French did not establish a permanent settlement in the ...
A Dutch assault on the city of Quemoy, 1663-1664.
A Dutch assault on the city of Quemoy, China, 1663-1664. In the late 17th century, the Dutch replaced the Portuguese as masters of the China ...
Batavia (now Jakarta), on the island of Java.
The entrance and harbor of Batavia (now Jakarta), on the island of Java, ca. 1665. Batavia was settled by the Dutch in 1619 and established as ...
Champlain attacks an Iroquois fortified town.
Samuel de Champlain, assisted by the Huron Indians, attacks an Iroquois fortified town, 1609. Champlain (1567-1635) was the chief founder of New ...
Champlain's 1612 map of New France.
Champlain's 1612 map of the interior of New France. A cartographer, Champlain explored the interior of North America for more than 30 years. By ...
Champlain's château at Quebec.
Champlain's château at Quebec. Champlain's first colony was abandoned, and it was not until 1608 that France established a permanent settlement ...
Dutch take the Island of Mannar, off Ceylon.
The Dutch take the Island of Mannar, off Ceylon, from the Portuguese in 1658. This action was part of a 1657-1661 war with Portugal originating ...
Entry of the Dutch into Cochin, India, 1663.
The triumphal entry of the Dutch into Cochin, India, after they captured it from the Portuguese in 1663. Cochin, on India's Malabar coast, had ...
Map: Colonial Atlantic trade routes.
Colonial Atlantic Ocean trade routes. Historians used to write of a "triangular trade" between Europe, Africa, and North America involving ...
Sir Walter Raleigh.
Sir Walter Raleigh was a favorite of Queen Elizabeth, an influential courtier, a poet, and the holder of vast Irish estates. He was knighted in ...
The Americas as depicted by the English in 1670.
A detail of a world map, showing the Americas as depicted by the English in 1670. By this time, Europeans were familiar with the territory from ...
The city of Surat on the west coast of India.
The city of Surat on the west coast of India. The British East India Company set up a trading post at Surat in 1612 as part of their challenge ...
The Dutch settlement at Batavia.
The Dutch settlement at Batavia, Java, ca. 1665. The influence of Dutch architecture is evident. The city, the result of a conscious effort to ...
The Dutch torture and kill Portuguese enemies.
The Dutch torture and kill some of their Portuguese enemies. European rivalry for the East Indies trade produced enmity so intense that it often ...
The English fort at Bombay, India, 1672.
The English fort at Bombay, India, 1672. The Portuguese took this city in 1534, and made it one of their

many trading stations along the west ...

The French Fort Caroline in Florida.

The French Fort Caroline on the St. Johns River in Florida. In 1564, the members of a second French expedition to Florida constructed this fort ...

The King of the Congo receives Dutch ambassador.

In Africa, the King of the Congo receives the Dutch ambassador in 1642. The power and splendor of this early West African kingdom was shown when ...

Daily Life of the People

17th-century townhouses in Magdeburg.

Seventeenth-century townhouses in Magdeburg, an old Hanseatic city in Germany. Note the bell-gables and the beam-like device for hoisting ...

A 17th-century English farmhouse.

An English farmhouse of the 17th century. Although the towns had grown, the England of that century was still primarily ...

A 17th-century school for boys.

A 17th-century school for boys. In this school, discipline seems not too strict, for while some pupils are engrossed in their lessons, others ...

A 17th-century sedan chair.

A 17th-century sedan chair. The sedan chair was an enclosed portable chair, designed to accommodate a single passenger, which was carried on ...

A family of 17th-century beggars.

A family of 17th-century beggars. Among the laboring poor, begging was frequently resorted to when the family's wage did not suffice. Usually ...

A peasant's two-wheeled cart, 17th century.

This 17th-century peasant's two-wheeled cart was light enough to be drawn by a single horse. The wheels represent an advance over the ones in ...

A witch, with bats and other creatures.

A witch, attended by bats and other netherworld creatures, stirs a cauldron. Some of the practices commonly attributed to witches, such as ...

Almshouse in Stamford, England.

A 17th-century almshouse in Stamford, England. An almshouse was a subsidized residence to house and feed the aged and handicapped. During the ...

Fire fighting in Nuremberg, 1658.

Fire-fighting in Nuremberg, 1658. When buildings were made of wood and roofs of thatch, fire was one of a city's greatest dangers. This is one ...

Gentleman's attire, 17th-century France.

The dress of a gentleman in 17th-century France, worn while paying calls on his ...

Paris in 1607.

Paris in 1607. With about 300,000 inhabitants, Paris was the largest city in the West. In the center, on the Ile St. Louis, can be seen Notre ...

Stocks on the Commons of Lower Slaughter, England.

Stocks used for punishment of criminals on the Commons of Lower Slaughter, England. A person sentenced to the stocks would have his or her neck ...

The King's Head Inn in Chester, England.

The sign of the King's Head Inn in Chester, England. The portrait on the sign is of England's King Charles I. Innkeepers often named their ...

The pillory at Charing Cross, London, 1811.

The pillory at Charing Cross, London, 1811. Charing Cross was chosen as the site of this instrument of public punishment, "probably on account ...

England, 1603-1714

Charles I, 1625-1649; Commonwealth Replaces Monarch

Charles I of England and Henrietta of France.

King Charles I of England (1600-1649) and his wife Henrietta of France. Charles, who reigned from 1625 to 1649, was even more intransigent and ...

Oliver Cromwell dissolves the Long Parliament.

Oliver Cromwell dissolves the Long Parliament in 1653. The Long Parliament was the name given to the session which had been called by Charles I ...

The battle of Naseby, 1645.

The battle of Naseby, 1645. In this decisive battle of the English civil war, fought in Northamptonshire, Charles I and his Cavaliers were ...

The chaos resulting from Charles I's execution.

A 1682 allegorical depiction of the chaos resulting from Charles I's execution. The beheading of the king scandalized many of the English ...

The execution of Charles I, 1649.

The execution of Charles I, 1649. Charles I was beheaded outside the Banqueting House, on London's Whitehall on January 30, 1649. His last ...

The trial of Charles I, 1648.

The trial of Charles I, 1648. The tide of the English civil war turned decisively in favor of Parliamentary forces in 1644-1645, and Charles was ...

Thomas Wentworth, who was sentenced to death.
Thomas Wentworth, the Earl of Strafford (1593-1641), who was sentenced to death by the English Parliament in 1641. When Charles had trouble ...

Divine Right Monarch: James I, 1603-1625

An altarpiece at Somerset House, by Inigo Jones.
An altarpiece at Somerset House, designed by Inigo Jones (1573-1652). Jones was the chief architect for James I and Charles I of England. He ...
James I, the first Stuart king of England.
James I (1566-1625). The first Stuart king of England, James I, who was also Scotland's James VI, held the British throne from 1603 to 1625. ...
London in 1620, with the original London Bridge.
London in 1620, showing the original London Bridge. Points of interest are the Bow Church (top left), St. Lorentz (steeple, upper left center) ...
The sword of Henry, Prince of Wales, 1611.
The sword of Henry, Prince of Wales. ca. 1611. This prince, the older brother of England's Charles I, died before the death of his father, King ...

Great Britain's Gift to a Military Hero: Marlborough's Blenheim Palace

Blenheim Palace at Woodstock in Oxfordshire.
Blenheim Palace, built between 1705 and 1722 at Woodstock in Oxfordshire, England. In 1704 the royal manor of Woodstock was given to John ...
John Churchill, the 1st Duke of Marlborough.
John Churchill, the 1st Duke of Marlborough (1650-1722) was an English general and statesman, and was widely regarded as one of the greatest ...
The formal dining room in Blenheim Palace.
The Saloon, or formal dining room, in Blenheim ...
The Great Hall, or entry hall, of Blenheim Palace.
The Great Hall, or entry hall, of Blenheim Palace. Like the façade, the interior of Blenheim Palace is heavy, and includes gigantic staircases ...
The Green Writing-Room in Blenheim Palace.
The Green Writing-Room in Blenheim Palace. The tapestry here shows John, the first Duke of Marlborough, at the height of his triumph. He ...
The lake and Grand Bridge at Blenheim Palace.
The lake and Grand Bridge at Blenheim Palace, England, built in 1708 to 1710. The park surrounding Blenheim Palace was altered to resemble the ...
The Long Library of Blenheim Palace.
The Long Library of Blenheim Palace. Books were so expensive that only royalty or the nobility could actually own a library. Also, in an era ...
The rear façade of Blenheim Palace.
The rear façade and a portion of the water terraces of Blenheim Palace. During the 16th and 17th centuries, peers of the realm were expected to ...
The third State Room of Blenheim Palace.
The third State Room of Blenheim Palace. A focal point of this room is the tapestry which shows the Duke of Marlborough victorious in 1708 at ...

The Last of the Stuarts: James II, Mary, Anne

James II burns the order to convene Parliament.
King James II throws the order to convene a free Parliament into the fire, and flees. James II (1633-1701, r. 1685-1688), alienated Parliament ...
Mary II of England.
Mary II (1662-1694), queen of England, Scotland, and Ireland. Facing certain defeat by William of Orange, her father James II fled to France ...
Queen Anne of England.
Queen Anne of England (1665-1714, r. 1702-1714) was the sister of Queen Mary and the last of the Stuart monarchs, for none of her numerous ...
The Bank of England, founded in 1694.
The Bank of England, granted a royal charter in 1694. William Peterson, a wealthy London merchant, first proposed the idea of a national bank. ...
The Bank of Scotland money chest.
The Bank of Scotland's 17th-century money chest. This ancient strong-box was used to hold the reserves of the bank during a time when paper ...
Vatican monument to the Stuart pretenders.
A funerary monument commemorating James III, the last Stuart Pretender to the English throne. James II and his sons continued to claim the ...

The Restoration of a Limited Monarchy: Charles II, 1660-1665

Frontispiece of Leviathan, by Thomas Hobbes.
The frontispiece of Leviathan, by Thomas Hobbes, 1651. Leviathan was a justification for absolutism (the exercise of unrestricted power by a ...
Interior of St. Mary-le-Bow, London.
An interior view of the nave and north aisle of the Church of St. Mary-le-Bow, London, which was designed by

Christopher Wren. Great damage was ...

The apse within St. Paul's Cathedral, London.

The interior of the apse of the St. Paul's Cathedral in London. The apse (a semicircular end) serves as the focal point of the building and the ...

The Great Fire of London, 1666.

The Great Fire of London, 1666. The fire broke out on September 2, raged for five days, and did more damage than all the bombs that fell on ...

The new St. Paul's Cathedral, London.

The New St. Paul's Cathedral in London. Christopher Wren (1632-1723) was commissioned to rebuild St. Paul's, as well as 51 parish churches, ...

The Royal Naval College at Greenwich, England.

The Royal Naval College at Greenwich, England. Originally a 15th-century royal palace, it had been a favorite residence of Henry VII, the ...

The coronation of Charles II, 1661.

The coronation of Charles II in Westminster Abbey, 1661. Political confusion followed the death of Oliver Cromwell in 1658 and his son's ...

In Other Lands

Seppuku, or warrior ritual suicide.

The ceremony of seppuku or warrior ritual suicide, known more commonly to the West as hara-kiri . The Song Neo-Confucianism of the 12th ...

A Korean painting of a Sodang.

A Korean painting of a Sodang , by Kim Hong-do (b. 1745). The Confucian bureaucracy dominated the life of Korea's Yi society. A person achieved ...

A map of the Qing empire.

A map of the Qing empire showing Chinese territories (pink), tribute states (orange), and China's general sphere of influence (within dotted ...

Aurangzeb, the last Mughal emperor of India.

Aurangzeb, the last great Mughal emperor of India, was the son of Shah Jahan. During his reign, his father's policy of religious toleration was ...

Emperor Aurangzeb takes Shah Jahan prisoner.

The Indian emperor Aurangzeb (r. 1659-1707) takes Shah Janan prisoner. The third son of Shah Jahan, Aurangzeb became a ruler by murdering his ...

Nagoya Castle.

Nagoya Castle. The Japanese period from 1600 to 1868 is known as the Tokugawa Period. Tokugawa Ieyasu, the final unifier of Japan, was granted ...

Slaves working in a Brazilian sugar mill.

Slaves working in a Brazilian sugar mill, ca. 1625. By 1550, sugar had become Brazil's major export. Its cultivation brought prosperity to ...

Snowscape painted by Kim Myong-guk, 17th century.

This snowscape was painted by Kim Myong-guk, a 17th century Korean scholar-painter who visited Japan twice when he accompanied Yi dynasty ...

The Beijing Observatory.

The Beijing Observatory with its Qing period instruments. This observatory, located on a city wall watchtower in the southeast corner of ...

The Dutch capture East Indiamen ships, 1796.

The British capture Dutch East Indiamen ships, 1796. In 1796 the British took over control of South Africa from the Dutch, who had been there ...

The Qianlong emperor.

The Qianlong (Ch'ien-lung) emperor (1711-1799, reigned 1736-1796), who presided over one of the most glorious periods in Chinese imperial ...

The Red Fort in Delhi.

The Red Fort, one of India's most important historical monuments, at Delhi. Shah Jahan officially transferred his capital from Agra and built ...

Tokugawa Ieyasu, third and final unifier of Japan.

Tokugawa Ieyasu, the third and final unifier of Japan after centuries of disunity. Ieyasu had been a daimyo and vassal to both Oda Nobunaga ...

Literature and Music

A Stradivarius violin.

The Ward Stradivarius, a violin in the collection of the Music and Performing Arts Division of the Library of Congress. Stradivarius is believed ...

An illustration from Pilgrim's Progress.

Christian Dreaming, from a 1794 edition of Pilgrim's Progress. Its author, John Bunyan (1628-1688), was the greatest literary figure ...

Antonio Stradivarius at work.

Antonio Stradivarius at work, an 1888 artist's version. Stradivarius experimented with the design of string instruments, and with the help of ...

Antonio Stradivarius.

Antonio Stradivarius (1644-1737), the master violin maker of Cremona, ...

Characters in the Red Bull Playhouse, London.

Comic characters in the Red Bull Playhouse, London, 1672. During the rule of the Puritans in the mid-17th century, all drama was prohibited. ...

Henry Purcell (ca.1659-1695).

Henry Purcell (ca.1659-1695). An English composer of opera, songs, church and chamber music, Purcell was organist at Westminster Abbey from 1679 ...

John Locke, philosopher and political theorist.

John Locke (1632-1704) was an English philosopher and political theorist. In his Essay Concerning Human Understanding (1690), which dealt with ...

John Milton (1608-1674).

John Milton (1608-1674) was the blind poet of the Puritan Revolution who preached that free and godly men had a moral duty to rebel when monarchs ...

Molière (Jean-Baptiste Poquelin, 1622-1673).

Molière (Jean-Baptiste Poquelin, 1622-1673). Along with Pierre Corneille and Jean Racine, he formed a triad that represented the flowering of ...

The composer Claudio Monteverdi.

Claudio Monteverdi (1567-1643). The Italian Monteverdi was the first great composer in the history of opera. Among other achievements, he was ...

Science and Technology

"The Flying Ship," 1709.

"The Flying Ship." This is an artist's conception of the Passarola, an airship launched by Bartholemeu Lomenco de Gusmao in Lisbon in 1709. De ...

"The Man in the Moon," by Francis Godwin, 1638.

"The Man in the Moon," a fanciful illustration by Francis Godwin (1562-1633). Published in 1638, this was an early example of what would become ...

A water clock.

A water clock. The water clock (or "clepsydra") was the first time-measuring device that worked independently of astronomical phenomena. It may ...

A water mill.

A water mill for grinding grain. This is an example of the type of water-driven mill which was in operation at least from the early 16th ...

An early microscope.

An early microscope. Anton van Leeuwenhoek discovered and described fairly accurately the blood's red corpuscles, and he uncovered a whole new ...

Anton van Leeuwenhoek (1632- 1723).

Anton van Leeuwenhoek (1632-1723) was a lens grinder born in Delft, Holland, who knew no Latin or Greek, could not read the classical texts, and ...

Details on moon’s surface observed by Galileo.

Irregularities on the surface of the moon as observed by Galileo in 1609. He was the first to use the telescope on astronomical bodies, and ...

Johann Kepler's (1570-1630) music of the spheres.

Johann Kepler's music of the spheres. Kepler (1570-1630) followed the ancient Pythagorean tradition which held that numbers constituted the ...

Otto von Guericke.

Otto von Guericke (1602-1686) was a German physicist and engineer, born in Magdeburg, who improved a water pump so that it could exhaust air from ...

Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727).

Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727). An English physicist and mathematician, he was possibly the greatest scientist of all time. He formulated the ...

Some sunspots observed by Galileo in 1607-1608.

Some of the sunspots observed by Galileo in 1607-1608. Galileo (1564-1642) was a complete scientist, being an analytical thinker, ...

The great names of astronomy.

The great names of astronomy. Left to right: Tycho Brahe (1546-1601), the Dutch astronomer whose precise observations paved the way for future ...

The Royal Greenwich Observatory, built 1676.

The Royal Greenwich Observatory, built near London by King Charles II in 1676. It was designed after plans completed by Christopher Wren. ...

Von Guericke’s experiment with vacuum pump.

Otto von Guericke’s famous experiment with the vacuum pump, at Ratisbon in 1654, when he demonstrated the strength of a vacuum by proving that a ...

William Harvey (1578-1657), British physician.

William Harvey (1578-1657) was the early British physician who is widely considered to have laid the foundation for modern medicine. As a ...

Spain and the Low Countries

A scene of daily life on the canals of Amsterdam.

A scene of daily life on the canals of Amsterdam, Netherlands. The canals have served as the roads of the Netherlands, and a central part of ...

A 17th-century Dutch warship.

A 17th-century Dutch warship. The United Provinces were masters of the carrying trade in the 17th century,

transporting their own goods and ...

A detail of a Flemish town, 16th century.
A detail of a Flemish town, 16th century. The narrow buildings, some with step-gables and others with steeply pitched roofs, are characteristic ...

A Dutch windmill at Vollendam, Holland.
A Dutch windmill at Vollendam, Netherlands. Windmills were used in Europe after the 12th century to grind grain, power sawmills and, especially ...

Cambrai, Flanders, ca. 1600.
Cambrai, in Flanders, ca. 1600. Its prosperity was well advanced as early as the 11th century as the result of the success of its linen ...

Córdoba, Spain, ca. 1600.
Córdoba, Spain, ca. 1600. Settled successively by the Phoenicians, Carthaginians, and Romans, Córdoba, in southern Spain, was taken by the Moors ...

Façades of merchant houses along a canal in Ghent.
Façades of Guild houses along a canal in Ghent. The prosperity of the towns in Flanders began in the Middle Ages and continued into the 17th and ...

Philip III of Spain (1578-1621).
Philip III of Spain (1578-1621), an equestrian monument in Madrid's Plaza Major. The early Stuart kings of England developed cordial relations ...

Spanish royal carriage in procession.
A Spanish royal carriage in procession. The carriage and the outriders are in the French style of the 18th century, when the heirs to the ...

The old center of Bruges, Belgium.
The old center of Bruges, Belgium. Beginning in the Middle Ages, Bruges has been known for its wool weaving industry. Merchant houses and ...

The Royal Palace at Madrid.
The Royal Palace at Madrid. Begun by Philip V in 1738 under the direction of G. B. Sacchetti of Turin, the palace was completed in the reign of ...

Video sequence: Windmills.
A video sequence concerning windmills. Windmills were a medieval innovation. The first windmills appeared about ...

The Religions of the Times

Trompe l'Oeil ceiling in San' Ignazio.
The trompe l'Oeil ceiling of the Church of San' Ignazio in Rome, painted in 1685 by Padre Pozzo and depicting St. Ignatius of Loyola entering ...

17th-century French cartoon on Catholic dissent.
This 17th-century French cartoon points out the adverse effects of dissent within the Catholic Church. "While the pastors debate, the wolves ...

A silver Hanukkah menorah, 18th century.
A drawing of an 18th-century silver Hanukkah menorah. ...

An 18th-century anti-Semitic cartoon.
"A Nat," an 18th-century English anti-Semitic cartoon. The attainment of political and civil equality by the Jews of England was a slow process. ...

Baptism, 1645.
Baptism, 1645. Among the many sects that grew out of the ferment of the Reformation were the Anabaptists. They rejected infant baptism as a ...

Box-pews in St. Mary's Church at Whitby, England.
Box-pews in St. Mary's Church at Whitby, England. A sign indicates that this box-pew is reserved for parishioners too poor to tithe. Seating ...

Cornelius Jansen (1585-1638).
Cornelius Jansen (1585-1638). A teacher at the University of Louvain, he attracted attention by his views on predestination, which resembled ...

Cupola interior, St. Charles church, Vienna.
The interior of the oval cupola in the church of St. Charles Borromeo in Vienna, ...

Interior of San Andrea al Quirinale, Rome.
The oval interior of the church of San Andrea al Quirinale, Rome. The oval became one of the design elements that differentiated baroque ...

Interior of St. Mary's Church, Whitby, England.
The interior of the Protestant St. Mary's Church in Whitby, England. This view shows the back of the pulpit with an 18th-century gallery and ...

John Wesley, founder of Methodism.
John Wesley (1703-1791). The 18th century produced many religious movements, among them Methodism, founded by John Wesley. Wesley wanted to ...

John Wesley's new church in City Road, London.
John Wesley's new church in City Road, London, 1781. Methodism had a great appeal among the lower classes, since it helped to give them a sense ...

Puritan woman's dress in 17th-century England.
The dress of a Puritan woman in 17th-century ...

St. Paul's, Birmingham, England.

St. Paul's, Birmingham, England. This interior view is from the Gallery looking to the 18th century window behind the ...

The Blue Mosque, Istanbul, Turkey.

The "Blue Mosque" of Sultan Amet I in Istanbul, Turkey. It was designed by the architect Mehemed Aja and built between 1609 and 1616 A.D. The ...

The church of San Andrea al Quirinale, Rome.

The Roman Catholic church of San Andrea al Quirinale in Rome. This is a good example of the continuing evolution of baroque architecture during ...

The church of St. Charles Borromeo in Austria.

The Protestant church of St. Charles Borromeo in Vienna, Austria, built between 1716 and 1737. On the Karlsplatz, the church of St. Charles ...

The façade of Il Gesú in Rome.

The façade of Il Gesú in Rome. Both the interior and exterior of this Roman Catholic church set the patterns for the Baroque style which greatly ...

The Splendor of Absolute Monarchy: France

Louis XIII, 1610-1643

A second image of Cardinal Richelieu.

A second image of Cardinal Richelieu. In foreign affairs, under Richelieu's leadership France adopted an anti-Hapsburg stance and openly entered ...

Cardinal Richelieu.

Armand Jean du Plessis, Cardinal and Duc de Richelieu (1585-1642). At first favored by Marie de Medici, the mother of Louis XIII, Richelieu was ...

Louis XIII, King of France from 1610 to1643.

Louis XIII, the King of France from 1610 to 1643. His reign was dominated first by his mother, Maria de Medici, and then by the towering figure ...

The Château de Cheverny in the Loire Valley.

The Château de Cheverny in the Loire Valley, France, is conspicuous because it does not contain evident remnants of a medieval castle. While the ...

The siege of La Rochelle, 1627-1628.

The siege of La Rochelle, 1627-1628. During the reign of Louis XIII, the Huguenots (French Calvinist Protestants) became so strong as to be ...

Royal Opulence: Versailles and Paris

The chapel ceiling in the Palace of Versailles.

The chapel ceiling in the Palace of Versailles. The exquisite decoration of every portion of the building was meant to awe the populace while ...

The chapel in the Palace of Versailles.

The chapel in the Palace of Versailles, decorated in gold and white harmony. This masterpiece of the Mansart style was completed in 1710. Louis ...

The Garden Front of Versailles, 1668-1685.

The Garden Front of Versailles Palace, by the architects Le Vau and Jules Hardouin-Mansart, 1668-1685. Mansart (1646-1708), the grand-nephew of ...

The Hall of Mirrors in the Palace of Versailles.

The Hall of Mirrors in the Palace of Versailles. This famous room at Versailles was begun by Mansart in 1678 and decorated by Le Brun with ...

The Hôtel Des Invalides in Paris.

The Hôtel Des Invalides in Paris. Because of his concern for the soldiers wounded and disabled ("Les Invalides") in his many wars, Louis XIV had ...

The Palace of Versailles, built by Louis XIV.

The Palace of Versailles. Built by Louis XIV outside Paris, its sumptuous interior, acres of formal gardens, many fountains, and statues of ...

The Sun King Louis XIV, 1643-1714

Jules Cardinal Mazarin (1602-1661).

Jules Cardinal Mazarin (1602-1661). Cardinal Mazarin dominated the first part of the reign of Louis XIV, while the new king was still too young ...

Louis XIV of France, who ruled from 1643 to 1715.

Louis XIV of France (1638-1715). Louis, who inherited the throne at age five, reigned from 1643 but did not take the reins of government into ...

Wars in Europe, 1618-1714

Territorial Wars, 1648-1714

A cartoon lampooning Louis XIV's ambitions.

A part of a cartoon lampooning the ambitions of Louis XIV, "A Bridle for the French King, or an Emblem of the Present War." When Louis XIV's ...

A cartoon on Spain's 1678 loss of Ghent to France.

A cartoon on Spain's loss of Ghent to France in 1678. Commercial rivalry between the Dutch and the French was in part responsible for the ...

Dutch capture the British Royal Charles.

An action in the Second Anglo-Dutch War, 1665 to 1667. The Anglo-Dutch wars resulted from the British

passage of the Navigation Act in 1651, ...

Dutch squadron versus English, August 1652.
A naval battle between the English and Dutch squadrons in the English Channel off Plymouth, August 26, 1652, during the First Anglo-Dutch War. ...

Dutch vs. English, February 1653.
An engagement between the Dutch and English fleets off Portland and St. Albans Head, England, January 28, 1653. In general, the First ...

France and Austria battle the Turks, 1664.
France and Austria battle the Turks, 1664. In 1663, disturbances in Transylvania (a part of modern Romania), then a vassal-state of Turkey, led ...

Map: Europe in 1715.
A map of Europe in 1715. The French King Louis XIV waged wars to extend the boundaries of France to the northward. A much greater opportunity ...

Pope Clement IX, ruled 1600-1669.
Pope Clement IX (1600-1669). During his brief term as pontiff (1667-1669), Clement mediated the 1668 peace of Aix-la-Chapelle between Louis XIV ...

Signing of the Peace of Breda, 1667.
The signing of the Peace of Breda, 1667. At the end of the Second Anglo-Dutch War, Britain gave up its colony of Surinam while gaining Dutch New ...

Sobieski defeats the Turks at Vienna, 1683.
John III Sobieski of Poland defeats the Turks at Vienna, 1683. During the second half of the 17th century, a rejuvenated Turkey went on the ...

The Battle of La Hogue, May 1692.
The Battle of La Hogue. The League of Augsburg was formed by the Holy Roman Emperor, Spain, Sweden, and several German states and cities which ...

The Battle off Copenhagen, 1658.
The Battle off Copenhagen in the Swedish-Danish War, 1658. Dutch expansion brought inevitable clashes with other commercial and colonial powers, ...

The British capture Gibraltar, 1704.
The British capture Gibraltar in 1704, during the opening phase of the War of the Spanish Succession, known in America as Queen Anne's War. A ...

The Dutch in the Medway, 1667.
The Dutch in the Medway, 1667. Sea battles of this era sometimes devolved into confused hand-to-hand struggles between small boats of survivors ...

The French bombarding Genoa, 1684.
The French bombarding the Italian state of Genoa in 1684. The truce that had been concluded at Regensburg between France's Louis XIV and the ...

The Thirty Years' War, 1618-1648

A man is broken on the wheel.
During the Thirty Years' War, a man is broken on the wheel with repeated blows of a crowbar. For Germany, the war was one of the most ...

A pikeman, 1649.
A pikeman, 1649. New military tactics introduced after the Middle Ages involved huge masses of infantry, half of whom were armed with pikes, ...

Bavarians vs. French in the Thirty Years' War.
A detail of a 1645 battle between the Bavarians and the French during the Thirty Years' War. The last 13 years of the war were the most ...

Gustavus II Adolphus (1594-1632).
A memorial plaque to Gustavus II Adolphus (1594-1632), who ruled Sweden from 1611 to 1632. He led the Protestant forces against the Hapsburgs in ...

Initiation of the Thirty Years' War (1618-1648).
The Thirty Years' War, initiated by the Defenestration of Prague in May 1618. A group of Protestant Czech nobles, indignant about their ...

Map: Europe after the Thirty Years' War, 1648.
A map of Europe after the Thirty Years' War, 1648. The Protestant Reformation had destroyed the concept of one religion in Europe, but since not ...

The assassination of Wallenstein.
The assassination of Wallenstein. Albrecht von Wallenstein, the Duke of Friedland (1583-1634) was the military leader of the Hapsburg imperial ...

The Battle of the Dardanelles, 1646.
The 1646 Battle of the Dardanelles, in the Candian War. Although the Republic of Venice at that time was declining in power and mainly devoting ...

The capture of Magdeburg, May 20, 1631.
The capture of Magdeburg by the Catholic forces under John Tserklaes, Count von Tilly, in May 1631. The troops perpetrated a terrible massacre ...

The scene of a peasant revolt in 1626.
The scene of a peasant revolt in 1626. From spring to winter in 1626, the peasants of Upper Austria rose in rebellion against the empire and ...

The siege of Leipzig, 1642.
The siege of Leipzig in the Thirty Years' War: The forces of Protestantism, represented by the Swedes,

besieged the city in 1642 and succeeded ...

The siege of Tarragona, 1644.

The siege of Tarragona, 1644. War between France and Spain sprang up during the Thirty Years' War and continued for eleven years after the ...

The Thirty Years' War: the final phase.

The French (and final) phase of the Thirty Years' War. When France entered the war in 1635 on the side of the Protestants, the religious aspect ...

Section I: The Enlightenment, French Revolution and Napoleon, 1715 -

Overview: French Revolution, Napoleon, 1715-1815

A brief video Overview of the history of the Enlightenment, the French Revolution, and Napoleon from 1715 to 1815. Transcript: Europe's ...

City Life, 1700s to Early 1800s

"Cock-fighting" William Hogarth, 1759.

"Cock-fighting," a 1759 engraving by William Hogarth. Cock-fighting was a popular and brutal sport of the 18th ...

"The Dance of the Korgsmáran."

"The Dance of the Korgsmáran," a Czech villagers' dance. Painting by Peter De ...

A 17th-century rat-killer.

A cartoon of a 17th-century rat-killer. Many early cities had more rats than people, and particularly in view of the danger they posed because ...

A broom seller in 18th-century Paris.

A broom seller in 18th-century Paris. In the pre-industrial era, such casual street occupations were common among the laboring classes in the ...

A lottery in Guildhall, 1739.

The drawing of a lottery in Guildhall, London, 1739. Lotteries have long been used as a means of gambling, of raising money and of promoting ...

A phaeton, late 18th century.

A phaeton, late 18th century. The phaeton was a four-wheeled carriage with a folding top. Phaetons were usually driven by their owners, but ...

An 18th-century "horseless carriage."

An 18th-century "horseless carriage." It was really a quadricycle, a vehicle not uncommon in the period. The footman at the back propelled it ...

Astley's Amphitheater, a London circus, 1811.

Astley's Amphitheater, a London circus, 1811. The circus in its modern form was created by Philip Astley (1742-1814), who discovered that if he ...

Card players.

Card players. In societies without public libraries, TV or radios, games were important sources of recreation for people of all classes. ...

English women's coiffure styles in 1774.

"Folly of 1774." Exaggerated coiffures were popular among the upper classes in this ...

English women's coiffure styles in 1784.

"A Side Box at the Opera." Fantastic styles in coiffure were popular in England in ...

Market at Frankfurt, Germany, 18th century.

The marketplace at Frankfurt, Germany, 18th century. Central marketplaces such as this have been a feature of European cities for centuries. ...

Wigs worn in 18th-century France.

An assortment of the different wigs worn in 18th-century France. The priests' wigs (two at top left) have the tonsure (the part of the head left ...

Women in a London herb market, 1779.

Women in a London herb market, 1779. In the absence of refrigeration, herbs were very useful in concealing undesirable flavors and aromas, and ...

European Conflicts Overseas

Africa, India, the Pacific

An English family in India.

An English family in India at their dinner table, attended by two servants. A "punkah," a large hinged fan constantly kept in motion by a ...

Lord Cornwallis, governor-general of India.

Lord Charles Cornwallis receiving as hostages the sons of Tippu Sultan, the ruler of Mysore. Cornwallis, the Governor-General of India ...

Map: British India, early 19th century.

A map of British India and the major Indian states. This map primarily shows (in yellow) the major Indian princely states which remained ...

Relief of Gibraltar by Admiral Lord Howe, 1782.

The relief of Gibraltar by Admiral Lord Howe, 1782. The British position in the War of American Independence was made more difficult by the ...

Robert Clive, promoter of British power in India.

Robert Clive (1725-1774) was one of the most aggressive promoters of British power in India. He served as a soldier with the English East India ...

Sandwich Islands people offer gifts to James Cook.
The people of the Sandwich Islands offer gifts to James Cook. Cook (1728-1779) was a British explorer who covered more of the earth's surface ...
Warren Hastings, first India governor-general.
Warren Hastings (1732-1818) was the first and most famous governor-general of British India. It was his strong leadership that made the idea of ...

The Americas

Bonhomme Richard vs. H.M.S. Serapis.
This naval battle between the American ship Bonhomme Richard , under the command of John Paul Jones, and the H.M.S. Serapis off the coast of ...
"Great Britain Mutilated," 1783.
"Great Britain Mutilated," 1783. When its North American colonies became independent in 1783, Britain lost its most valuable colonial ...
"The Seven Years' War," a cartoon.
"The Seven Years' War." An anti-French cartoon engraved by William Hogarth in 1756. The accompanying poem expresses England's fear of the ...
A map of the U.S. under the peace of 1783.
The United States of America according to the peace of 1783. The peace treaty was generous to the Americans. In it the British recognized ...
Americans vs. British at Lexington.
The first battles of the American war for independence were fought at Lexington and Concord, Massachusetts, on April 19, 1775. British troops ...
European powers' claims in America before 1754.
A map showing the European claims on territory in America before ...
French vs. British fleets off Yorktown, 1781.
The French and British fleets do battle off Yorktown in 1781. To avenge its defeat by Britain in the Seven Years' War, France entered into a ...
Map, European claims, North America after 1763.
A map of European claims in North America after ...
Simón Bolivar (1783-1830).
Simón Bolivar (1783-1830) "the Liberator," the national hero of Venezuela, Ecuador, Colombia, Peru and Bolivia, was born in Caracas and educated ...
The Battle of New Orleans, 1815
The Battle of New Orleans, at the end of the U.S./British War of 1812. The British had attempted to prevent American merchants from sending ...
The British surrender at Yorktown, 1781.
The British army surrenders at Yorktown, 1781. In that year, the British general Cornwallis had grudgingly obeyed an order to establish a post ...
The English take Morro Castle in Havana, 1762.
The English take Morro Castle in Havana, Cuba, July 1762. The British navy became very proficient at transporting and landing large armies over ...
The Seven Years' War: the English take Quebec.
The Seven Years' War: the taking of Quebec by the English in 1759. The Seven Years' War (1756-1763) continued the struggle between Austria and ...
Thomas Paine (1737-1809).
Thomas Paine (1737-1809). Born in England, Paine migrated to America in 1774, and two years later published his fiery Common Sense, an appeal ...

The Slave Trade

"Noble Savages" in the Americas.
"Noble Savages" of the Americas. The Europeans' experiences with the people of North America helped inspire the idea that there was a "natural" ...
A kneeling slave in chains.
A kneeling slave in chains. This symbol was based on a cameo by Josiah Wedgwood, which bore the inscription, "Am I not a man and a brother?" It ...
European factories on the west coast of Africa.
European trading "factories" on the west coast of Africa (the slave coast) in the 18th century. These compounds were used by the European ...
Slave ship dumping slaves while being chased.
A slave ship dumping its cargo of slaves while being chased by a British man-o'war. Parliament committed Britain to eliminate the slave trade ...
Slaves in the British slave ship Brookes.
The stowage of slaves in the British slave ship Brookes under the regulated slave trade act of 1788. This arrangement was similar to the model ...

French Porcelain and Furniture, 1700s to Early 1800s

An artisan hand-paints a dish at Limoges.
An artisan hand-paints a dish at the Limoges porcelain works in France. European monarchs had long wanted to learn the secret of Chinese ...

Great Britain, 1714-1820

"Canvassing for Votes" by William Hogarth, 1757.
"Canvassing for Votes," a 1757 engraving by William Hogarth satirizing election-day practices in 18th century England. The right to elect ...
"Pittander on his War-Horse."
"Pittander on his War-Horse." When England entered the war against revolutionary France in 1793, prime minister William Pitt was confident of ...
"The British Butcher."
"The British Butcher." While the corn laws (regulating the trade in corn) were still in effect in England, bread was costly, since its ...
A satire on Pitt's suppression of dissent.
This 1798 cartoon, "A Physical Lecture," satirizes the severity with which Pitt suppressed dissent, especially among the lower classes. At age ...
Edmund Burke (1729-1797).
Edmund Burke (1729-1797). For most of his political career, Burke was allied with the Whigs. Elected to Parliament in 1765, he was an outspoken ...
English King George III (1738-1820).
King George III of England (1738-1820). Beginning one of the longest reigns of any British monarch, from 1760 to 1820, George ascended the ...
George Canning (1770-1827).
George Canning (1770-1827) was a British statesman who was influential in military affairs during the wars against Napoleon. In 1822 he ...
John Wilkes, critic of George III's ministers.
John Wilkes (1727-1797) was an ambitious member of Parliament, the Lord Mayor of London, and a sharp-tongued journalist whose writing excited ...
King George I of England (r.1714-1727).
King George I of England (1660-1727) was born in Germany and ruled Britain from 1714 to 1727, after the English Parliament awarded him the crown ...
Lord Frederick North (1732-1792).
Lord Frederick North (1732-1792) was Prime Minister of England under King George III from 1770 to 1782. The disastrous war with the North ...
Mary Wollstonecraft (1759-1797).
Mary Wollstonecraft (1759-1797) an Anglo-Irish feminist. Born in London, Wollstonecraft was a teacher and an influential member of the radical ...
Sir Robert Walpole (1676-1745).
Sir Robert Walpole, the first Earl of Oxford (1676-1745). Usually considered the first prime minister of England, Walpole first achieved ...
The House of Commons in session.
The House of Commons in session. In the first part of the 18th century, the authority of Parliament increased, and men like Robert Walpole ...
The Tower of London in the 18th century.
The Tower of London in the 18th century. The Tower is a complex of buildings begun by William the Conqueror in 1078, shortly after his invasion. ...
Viscount Robert Stewart Castlereagh.
Viscount Robert Stewart Castlereagh (1769-1822). As secretary of war from 1805 to 1809, Castlereagh was responsible for coordinating British ...
William Pitt the Elder (1708-1778).
William Pitt the Elder (1708-1778), eventually Lord Chatham, entered Parliament in 1735 and led the opposition against Robert Walpole and the ...

Georgian London

Billingsgate Market in London, 1811.
Billingsgate Market in London, 1811. This market, on the north bank of the Thames River between London Bridge and the Tower, was the center for ...
Covent Garden, London, 1749.
Covent Garden, London, 1749. Covent Garden was a city square surrounded by arcaded row houses, a church, and a garden, which was built from 1631 ...
Leadenhall Market, London, 1811.
Leadenhall Market, London, 1811. Leadenhall dates from about the 14th century, when poultry and fish stalls were set up here. Over the years, ...
Street lighting in London, 1807.
Street lighting on Duke (now Duchy) Street, London, 1807. The ancient system of lighting the streets with oil, lamp by lamp, was at that time ...
The London Post Office, 1811.
The London Post Office, 1811. The postal system of England dates from the age of Henry VIII, when a regular service for official use was set up ...
The lord mayor's banquet in London's Guildhall.
London's Guildhall on the occasion of the annual lord mayor's banquet, 1761. The Guildhall was the center of the municipal government. Here ...
The Old Bailey, 1811.
A witness is being questioned in the Old Bailey, 1811. This is London's ancient court for criminal offenses. For the poor, penalties for even ...

Toll gates on a London turnpike, 1792.
Toll gates on the Hyde Park turnpike, London, 1792. Begun in the 17th century, the English system of toll roads was instituted to provide funds ...
Vauxhall Gardens, London, 1811.
Vauxhall Gardens, London, 1811. The scarcity of open spaces in the city explained the popularity of outdoor pleasure gardens. They were ...

The Aristocratic Life in England

Castle Howard in Yorkshire, England.
Castle Howard, an immense classical-style palace in Yorkshire, England, dated around ...
The Royal Crescent in Bath, England, 1775.
The Royal Crescent in Bath, England. The architects and town planners John Wood the Elder and John Wood the Younger made lasting impressions on ...

In Other Lands

A Chinese woman with bound feet.
A Chinese woman with bound feet. The exact origins of footbinding are obscure; it may have begun among dancers at the imperial court. However, ...
A mandarin in Saigon, South Vietnam.
A mandarin in Saigon, South Vietnam, n.d. The term mandarin was used to describe a high official of imperial China. Vietnam was conquered by ...
Buddhist monks with food-gathering bowls.
Burmese Buddhist monks with bowls used for collecting food from devotees. Burma is one of the most thoroughly Buddhist countries in the world. ...
The bound foot of a Chinese woman.
The bound foot of a Chinese woman. Footbinding involved considerable pain, and not infrequently death through infection, for the young girls who ...
The Kanxi (K'ang-hsi) Emperor (1654-1722).
China's Kangxi (K'ang-hsi) emperor (1654-1722), under whose 61-year reign the Qing dynasty was firmly established, was one of the greatest ...

Industry and Mining, 1700s to Early 1800s

A joiner's workshop, 18th century.
An 18th-century joiner's workshop, where fine woodwork was made. The worker at lower right uses the ripsaw, while another (right center) uses ...
A scutch mill, late 18th century.
A late 18th-century scutch mill. Scutching was one of the steps followed in preparing flax to be made into linen. It removed all the remaining ...
A wheelwright's shop, 18th century.
A wheelwright's shop, 18th century. At left, a worker makes openings for the spokes in the wheel sections. In the center, a worker hammers ...
A woman spinning on a Jersey wheel.
A woman spinning on a Jersey wheel. She turns the wheel with her right hand, and with her left spins the yarn on her lap into thread wound onto ...
Agriculture in 18th-century France.
Agriculture in 18th-century France. In terms of land tenure and farm Implements, French agriculture was backward when compared with that of ...
An 18th century cooper.
An 18th century cooper or barrel maker. Since wooden barrels or casks were needed to transport goods of all sorts, there were many coopers. ...
An 18th-century cutler's shop.
An 18th-century cutler's shop. Cutlers made and sold knives, scissors, razors, and surgical instruments. At left, a worker grinds and polishes ...
An 18th-century shoemaker's shop.
An 18th-century shoemaker's shop. The process had changed little from the Middle Ages. At right, the master cordwainer measures a customer's ...
Glassmaking, 18th century.
Glassmaking, 18th century. The process of making glass remained unmechanized until the late 19th century. These workers are making a goblet. ...
Grinding grain in a brewery, 18th century.
Grinding grain in a brewery, from an 18th century engraving. Brewing had once been a domestic industry, with women making the beer, ale, and ...
Making candles in 18th-century London.
Making candles in 18th-century London. The worker rotates the frame and dips each candle in the kettle of hot wax, repeating the process to ...
Preparation of hemp for rope or thread.
The preparation of hemp to be spun into rope or thread. The two workers at right pull the fibers through carding combs to separate them and make ...
Stone masonry, 18th century.
Stone masonry at an 18th-century construction site. At left center, workers put mortar in the joints. In the foreground, a "free mason" marks a ...
Weaving carpets, Paris, 18th century.

Weaving low-tuft carpets on the looms at the Gobelins tapestry works in Paris, 18th century. The Royal Manufactory of Gobelins was established ...

Women employed at a glassworks, 18th century.

Women employed at a glassworks, 18th century. In glassmaking, as in other trades, women frequently performed minor, auxiliary functions. These ...

Women examining silkworm eggs.

Women examining silkworm eggs. Silkworms spin cocoons of fine thread, which is woven into silk cloth. Raising the silkworms is a tedious ...

Introduction

Catherine the Great (1729-1796) and her family.

Catherine the Great (1729-1796) and her family. Catherine was determined to westernize and modernize Russia, and to extend its frontiers. She ...

Costumes of Russian Boyars in the 17th century.

Typical costumes of Russian Boyars in the 17th century. The fact that Catherine the Great had usurped the throne led her to depend on the ...

Frederick the Great invades Silesia in 1740.

Frederick the Great of Prussia invades Silesia in 1740. This began a struggle for mastery of Germany between Prussia and Austria that would last ...

Frederick the Great, King of Prussia 1740-1786.

Frederick the Great (1712-1786) was King of Prussia from 1740 to 1786. As a young man, his affinity for literature and music led his father to ...

Joseph II, German king and Holy Roman Emperor.

Joseph II of Austria (1741-1790). He was King of Austria beginning in 1764, and Holy Roman Emperor beginning in 1765. Perhaps more than any ...

King Frederick Wilhelm I of Prussia.

King Frederick Wilhelm I of Prussia (1688-1740). Frederick William, who ruled from 1713 to 1740, has been called the "father of Prussian ...

Maria Theresa of Austria (1717-1780).

Maria Theresa of Austria (1717-1780). Her father, the Emperor Charles VI, had decreed that a woman might succeed to the throne, and he had ...

Patriarch Nikon (1605-1681) and his clergy.

The 17th-century Russian patriarch Nikon (1605-1681) and his clergy. Like other patriarchs of the era, Nikon was ambitious for secular power. A ...

Peter the Great of Russia (1672-1725).

Peter the Great of Russia (1672-1725), whose reign began in 1682, was the first Russian ruler to travel to Europe, and was best known for his ...

Pope Benedict XIV (1675-1758).

Pope Benedict XIV (1675-1758, r. 1740-1758) was a serious, learned, and charming pope who was greatly influenced by the Enlightenment and was a ...

Schönbrunn, a Hapsburg palace in Vienna.

Schönbrunn, a palace in Vienna, was the favorite residence of the Austrian Hapsburgs, especially Maria Theresa. Here her daughter Marie ...

The first partition of Poland, 1772.

The first partition of Poland, 1772. In the Middle Ages, Poland was a large kingdom. Partly because of its unworkable Parliament, Poland fell ...

This is a title, which may be selected for a show.

(No Abstract)

Literature, 1700s to Early 1800s

A view of Dryburgh Abbey.

A view of Dryburgh Abbey and the surrounding Scottish countryside from Sir Walter Scott's vista point. Scott frequently came to this place to ...

Dr. Samuel Johnson.

Dr. Samuel Johnson (1709-1784) was a successful author and literary critic who rose from poverty and obscurity through his contributions to ...

Friedrich von Schiller (1759-1805).

Friedrich von Schiller (1759-1805). Schiller, one of the greatest of German literary figures, defiantly celebrated individual feeling and ...

From Swift's The Battle of the Books, 1739.

The frontispiece of Jonathan Swift's The Battle of the Books, 1739. The quarrel of the ancients and the moderns was the name given to the ...

Gulliver is attacked by the Lilliputians, 1726.

Gulliver is attacked by the Lilliputians. The Travels of Gulliver, written by Jonathan Swift (1665-1745), is one of the greatest satires in ...

Johann Wolfgang von Goethe (1749-1832).

Johann Wolfgang von Goethe (1749-1832). Acknowledged in his own lifetime as a literary and intellectual giant, he spent most of his productive ...

Percy Bysshe Shelley (1792-1822).

Percy Bysshe Shelley (1792-1822) was an English Romantic poet. A controversial figure, Shelley was expelled from Oxford on a charge of atheism, ...

Rydal Mount, William Wordsworth's home.
Rydal Mount, William Wordsworth's last home in England's Lake District. He moved here in 1813 where he continued his writing until his death ...
Samuel Richardson (1689-1761).
Samuel Richardson (1689-1761). Along with Henry Fielding, Richardson can be considered the creator of the modern novel. His two best-known ...
Samuel Taylor Coleridge (1772-1834).
Samuel Taylor Coleridge (1772-1834). One of the English Romantic poets, Coleridge's best-known work is The Rime of the Ancient Mariner. This ...
Sir Walter Scott (1771-1832).
Sir Walter Scott (1771-1832). A Scottish writer of the Romantic period, Scott was the most notable of those few writers who built a reputation ...
The Scottish poet Robert Burns.
Robert Burns (1759-1796) was a Scottish poet whose Poems, Chiefly in the Scottish Dialect, became an immediate success. Among his more famous ...
William Wordsworth (1770-1850).
William Wordsworth (1770-1850). Along with his friend Samuel Taylor Coleridge, Wordsworth introduced Romanticism to England. Known for his ...

Music and Painting, 1700s to Early 1800s

Franz Joseph Haydn (1732-1809).
Franz Joseph Haydn (1732-1809). An Austrian composer and one of the great masters of classical music, he was a close friend of Mozart, and their ...
George Frideric Handel (1685-1759).
George Frideric Handel (1685-1759) was an English composer who had been born in Germany. Some of his celebrated compositions include his Water ...
Johann Sebastian Bach (1685-1750).
Johann Sebastian Bach (1685-1750). A German composer and organist, he brought the era of Baroque music to its culmination. Born into a gifted ...
Ludwig von Beethoven (1770-1827).
Ludwig von Beethoven (1770-1827). Considered by many to be the greatest composer of all time, his genius was recognized even by his ...
This is a title, which may be selected for a show.
The Napoleonic Era, 1799-1815 Music and Painting This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...
Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart (1756-1791).
Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart (1756-1791) was a child prodigy who developed into an enormously gifted composer and was arguably the greatest genius of ...

Science, 1700s to Early 1800s

A camera obscura, forerunner of the camera.
A camera obscura, the forerunner of the modern camera. The origin of this device dates back to antiquity. It consisted of a darkened room or ...
A magic lantern man, 18th century.
A magic lantern man of the 18th century. ...
Antoine Lavoisier (1743-1794), French chemist.
Antoine Laurent Lavoisier (1743-1794). A French chemist who is widely regarded as the father of modern chemistry, Lavoisier showed in 1788 that ...
Laboratory in Switzerland, 1720.
A chemical laboratory at the University of Altdorf, Switzerland, 1720. This was about the time when chemistry was beginning to become a science ...
Sir William Herschel, astronomer (1738-1822).
Sir William Herschel (1738-1822). An English astronomer born in Hanover, Germany, Herschel became skilled at building large reflecting ...
Sir William Herschel’s reflecting telescope.
Sir William Herschel's 40-foot reflecting telescope, ca. 1773. This telescope cost £4,000. It was mounted on rollers, but it proved difficult ...
The interior of an English chemical laboratory.
The interior of an English chemical laboratory as it existed in 1748. The early origins of chemistry related to ancient technology such as soap ...
The magic lantern, lighted by a candle.
The magic lantern projected a series of images onto a screen through a glass or vellum lens, using a candle as a light source. The projection of ...
The Swedish botanist Carolus Linnaeus (1707-1778).
Carolus Linnaeus (1707-1778). A Swedish botanist also known as Carl von Linne, Linnaeus devoted his life to the study of natural history. He ...

Sickness and Treatment, 1700s to Early 1800s

A man with dry-cupping bells on his buttocks.
A man with dry-cupping bells on his buttocks. The purpose of cupping was to draw impurities to the skin and out of the body by creating a ...

A woman with leeches in a jar.
A woman with leeches in a jar. Leeches were used to bleed people, as an alternative to phlebotomy (opening a vein). As with phlebotomy, the ...
Acupuncture points for kidney disease.
Meridian and acupuncture points for treatment of kidney disease by acupuncture, 17th century. This ancient Chinese practice is based on the ...
An etching ridiculing the practice of hypnosis.
Metallic Tractors, ridiculing the practice of hypnosis. With the advent of the mesmerism (hypnosis or auto-suggestion) craze in the 18th ...
Baptism administered by a midwife.
Baptism administered by a midwife. Midwives were, and are, women trained to assist other women in childbirth. Before the advent of modern ...
Bedlam in the 18th century.
Bedlam in the 18th century. This was the name given to the Bethlehem Royal Hospital for the insane, the first of its kind in England. It was ...
Syphilis victims being treated.
Syphilis victims shown being treated by several methods including mercury fumigation. Different stages of the illness are depicted. In the ...
Treatment by "animal magnetism."
Animal Magnetism. Mesmerism, or treatment by animal magnetism, was invented by Franz Anton Mesmer (1734-1815), a medical student in Vienna who ...
Treatment with an enema syringe, 17th century.
Treatment with a clyster or enema syringe, 17th century. This ancient remedy was used to flush the bowels and to inject herbal concoctions to ...

Stately Manors in England and Scotland, 1700s to Early 1800s

A pair of Derby porcelain vases, ca. 1760.
A pair of Derby porcelain vases, ca. 1760. Although they are a pair, each has its own floral and geometric pattern. This style of porcelain was ...
A pair of Wedgwood jasperware vases, ca. 1900.
A pair of Wedgwood blue jasperware vases, made around 1900. Josiah Wedgwood (1730-1795) was an English potter who began to improve pottery ...
Copper pots and pans in a Georgian kitchen.
Copper pots and pans in the kitchen of a Georgian town-house. Beside the copper vessels are earthenware, pewter, and wooden service pieces. The ...
The dining room of a Georgian town-house.
The dining room of a Georgian town-house on Charlotte Square in Edinburgh. Furnishings and colors are from the 18th century. The blue tableware ...
The Dining Room of Culzean Castle.
The Dining Room of Culzean Castle. The color is 18th century, the table is early 19th century, the chairs are Chippendale, and the table service ...
The kitchen of a Georgian town-house.
The kitchen of a Georgian town-house on Charlotte Square in Edinburgh. The open range fire was used for boiling, roasting, and grilling meats ...
The Oval Stairway of Culzean Castle.
The Oval Stairway of Culzean Castle. Robert Adam designed this light and open oval staircase to join two refurbished parts of the 16th-century ...
The Rod Room of the House of Dun.
The Rod Room of the House of Dun. Hunting and fishing were important aspects of country life, both for recreation and as a source of ...
The Spode factory at Stoke-on-Trent.
The Spode pottery and porcelain factory at Stoke-on-Trent, England. About 1770, the English potter Josiah Spode I (1733-1796) started a pottery ...

The Enlightenment

A cartoon about a Freemason.
A cartoon of a Freemason. The desire for a form of belief that was simpler, more rational, and more in tune with secular thought provided a ...
Adam Smith (1723-1790).
Adam Smith (1723-1790). His Wealth of Nations , published in 1776, is generally considered to be the foundation of modern economic theory. ...
Baruch Spinoza (1632-1677), Dutch philosopher.
Baruch Spinoza (1632-1677). A Dutch Jewish philosopher and lens grinder by trade, Spinoza carried the Deism of his era to its logical conclusion ...
Immanuel Kant (1724-1804).
One of the great pioneers of modern philosophy, Immanuel Kant (1724-1804) was born and lived in Königsburg, Not until well into middle age, in ...
Jean Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778).
Jean Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778). A Swiss-French philosopher and political theorist born in Geneva, he was one of the great figures of the ...
Johann Gottfried von Herder.

Johann Gottfried von Herder (1744-1803) was an influential German philosopher, critic, and clergyman. He was one of the first German thinkers to ...

Johann Gottlieb Fichte.

Johann Gottlieb Fichte (1762-1814). A German philosopher and leader of liberal nationalism, Fichte became a hero to the revolutionaries of 1848. ...

The Baron de Montesquieu (1689-1755).

Charles Louis de Secondat, Baron de Montesquieu (1689-1755) is best known for his Spirit of the Laws , 1748, in which he challenged the ...

The first lecture on Experimental Philosophy.

The first lecture in Experimental Philosophy, which took place in London in 1748. According to Enlightenment thinkers, experience and reason ...

The Mohawk Indian chief Joseph Brant.

The Mohawk Indian chief Joseph Brant, or Thayendanegea (1742-1807). The Europeans' experiences with the people of North America helped to ...

The French Revolution

The Kings and the Extravagant Life

Honoré Gabriel Riquetti, Comte de Mirabeau.

Honoré Gabriel Riquetti, Comte de Mirabeau (1749-1791) was a spokesman for the Third Estate (the commoners) in the early part of the Revolution. ...

John Law, of the "Mississippi Bubble."

The Scottish financier and speculator John Law, who set up the company which led to the "Mississippi Bubble." He had founded the Banque Royale ...

Louis XV of France (1710-1774).

Louis XV of France (1710-1774) was the great-grandson of Louis XIV. The first seven years of his reign, which began in 1715, were dominated by ...

Part of the "Hamlet," built by Marie Antoinette.

One of the ten buildings in the "Hamlet," built by Marie Antoinette on the grounds of Versailles. Here she escaped from the rigid formality of ...

The Limited Monarchy, 1789-1792

Assignats , currency during French Revolution.

French revolutionary assignats were paper currency issued during the French Revolution. They were backed by confiscated crown and church ...

"Aristocracy Crushed."

"Aristocracy Crushed." This cartoon celebrates Louis XVI as the liberator of the French people. The king was held in esteem, and few ...

"France Receives the Three Orders."

"France Receives the Three Orders." An allegorical depiction of France receiving the three orders of society: clergy, nobility, and third ...

"The English Constitution."

"The English Constitution." This French cartoon depicts the advantages of the French people, freed by the Revolution, over the English. William ...

"The Third Estate Awakens."

"The Third Estate Awakens." This 1789 French political cartoon symbolizes the sudden awakening of political consciousness on the part of the ...

A cartoon about suspensive and absolute vetoes.

"The suspensive veto outweighs the absolute veto." During the French Revolution, some of the moderates in the French National Assembly wished to ...

Cannons carried up Montmartre hill.

Cannons carried up Montmartre hill. The dismissal of Jacques Necker in July 1789 caused Parisians to fear that the Revolution would be ...

Paris guarded by the people.

Paris guarded by the people. In July 1789, the popular minister of finance, Jacques Necker, was dismissed, and Paris was surrounded by the ...

The "Civil Constitution of the Clergy," 1790.

The "Civil Constitution of the Clergy," 1790. This was an attempt by the French Revolution to reform the secular clergy by placing the Church ...

The Marquis de Lafayette (1757-1834).

The Marquis de Lafayette (1757-1834). During the American Revolution, as a young man he fought on the side of the colonists. In the French ...

The taking of the Bastille, July 14, 1789.

The taking of the Bastille, July 14, 1789. Built in the 14th century, the Bastille first served as a fortress guarding one of the city gates. ...

Women fetch Louis XVI from Versailles.

The women of les Halles, Paris's central food market, fetch Louis XVI from Versailles. A crisis was precipitated when the king refused to sign ...

The Reign of Terror, the Directory, War, 1793-1799

A British cartoon on the French Directory.

"The French Mahomet," a British cartoon on the French Directory. The Directory was corrupt and torn by

internal struggles, and was overthrown in ...

A petition to a revolutionary committee.
A man presents a petition to a revolutionary committee, about 1793. Organized by the sans-culottes, revolutionary committees became numerous ...

A revolutionary committee in 1793.
A revolutionary committee in 1793. Organized by the sans-culottes (small-time Paris shopkeepers, craftsmen and others who were politically ...

Capture of Malta by the French from British, 1798.
The capture of Malta by the French from the British, 1798. French armies under General Napoleon Bonaparte captured Malta as a part of a ...

Fouquier-Thinville is judged by a tribunal, 1795.
Fouquier-Thinville is judged by the revolutionary tribunal, 1795. Antoine Quentin Fouquier-Thinville (1746-1795) was the public accuser of the ...

Lord Howe defeats the French, June 1, 1794.
Lord Howe defeats the French on the "Glorious 1st of June," 1794. This aquatint commemorates the victory by British Admiral Richard Howe over ...

Marie Antoinette led to her execution.
Marie Antoinette, the "Widow Capet," awaits her execution. When her connivance with her Austrian countrymen to subvert the French Revolution was ...

Maximilian Robespierre (1758-1794).
Maximilian Robespierre (1758-1794) was a lawyer from Artois and a student of Rousseau who became a powerful force in the Jacobin Club (the ...

Pacification of counter-revolutionary Vendée.
The pacification of the counter-revolutionary Vendée. In 1796, the three-year counter-revolutionary revolt of the Vendée, in western France, ...

The attack on the National Convention.
The attack on the National Convention, October 1795. In August 1795 the Convention formulated a constitution which established a government ...

The Battle of the Nile, August 1798.
The Battle of the Nile. In July 1798 a French force under General Napoleon Bonaparte had landed at Alexandria, Egypt, and occupied Cairo. That ...

The execution of Louis XVI, 1793.
The execution of Louis XVI. The proclamation of the Republic in September 1792 meant the end of the monarchy in France. The king was ...

The Second Revolution: The Republic, 1792-1793

Georges Jacques Danton (1759-1794).
Georges Jacques Danton (1759-1794). A lawyer and political organizer who had risen rapidly in the Jacobin Club through his involvement in the ...

Louis Capet arrives in Paris from Varennes.
The arrival of Louis Capet (Louis XVI) in Paris after his return from Varennes. Arrested in his attempt to flee from France, the king was ...

The birth of the First Republic, 1792.
The birth of the First Republic, 1792. On August 10, 1792, the Tuileries Palace, the royal residence, was invaded, the king was suspended from ...

The flight to Varennes.
The flight to Varennes. On June 20, 1791, Louis XVI and his family attempted to flee from France. The royal family managed to escape the ...

The September massacres, 1792.
The September massacres, 1792. Fear of the enemies of the Revolution both at home and abroad led the Paris Commune to imprison relatives of ...

The Napoleonic Era, 1799-1815

Napoleon Comes to Power

"Liberty à la Française!" an 1803 British cartoon.
"Liberty à la Française!" This British cartoon of 1803 contrasts liberty under Napoleon liberty with that of England. King George III is ...

A map of the Louisiana Purchase area.
A map of the Louisiana Purchase area. Napoleon's dreams of an American empire were destroyed when his army failed to put down rebels in the ...

Napoleon crowns himself Emperor of the French.
Napoleon crowns himself Emperor of the French. After he proclaimed himself emperor in 1804, Napoleon took part in this ceremony at the Cathedral ...

Napoleon I, emperor from 1804 to 1814.
Napoleon I, (1769-1821), Emperor of the French from 1804 to 1814. Napoleon Bonaparte, born in Corsica in 1769, became a military officer in the ...

Napoleon presented with "loaves" of beet sugar.
The Minister of the Interior presents Napoleon with "loaves" of beet sugar. During the Napoleonic wars, the French found their cane sugar supply ...

Pope Pius VII (1740-1823).
Pius VII, 1740-1823. Pius (Barnaba Chiaramont) served as pope from 1800 to 1823 and had significant

conflicts with Napoleon. In 1801 he was ...

Napoleon's Final Years

"A Side Dish for the City of London."
"A Side Dish for the City of London." John Bull, in a stein of beer, celebrates the defeat of Napoleon at Waterloo on June 18, 1815. The battle ...

"The Press of the Allies," 1814.
"The Press of the Allies." In 1813, the European powers formed a coalition that finally halted French expansion. In this Dutch cartoon, the ...

A cartoon on French treatment of women, 1814.
"A Late Mode of Respecting the Persons of Defenseless Females in Conquered Countries." The French were at first welcomed as liberators in ...

Arthur Wellesley, Duke of Wellington.
Arthur Wellesley, Duke of Wellington (1762-1852). One of the most famous of British military leaders, Wellington commanded the British forces in ...

Napoleon's tomb at Les Invalides.
Napoleon's tomb in the church of Les Invalides, Paris, France. The body of Napoleon was exhumed at St. Helena and brought by boat to Cherbourg, ...

Paris celebrates the fall of Napoleon in 1814.
Paris celebrates the fall of Napoleon in 1814. The people don fleurs-de-lys, and wave white flags, symbols of the restored Bourbon dynasty ...

The island of St. Helena.
The island of St. Helena, Napoleon's final place of exile. After the Treaty of Paris in 1814, Napoleon was exiled to the Island of Elba, off the ...

The Napoleonic Wars: War on Land

"And There is No Remedy," by Goya, 1807.
"And There is No Remedy," a visual commentary by Francisco Goya on the devastating effects of the French invasion of Spain. In 1807, a French ...

"Liberty arousing the Continental Powers," 1808.
"Liberty arousing the Continental Powers." The continental nations are depicted awakened to the danger of Napoleon by Spain's heroic resistance ...

"Napoleon's secret strategy."
A fanciful image of "Napoleon's secret strategy." This is an imaginary view of the means he planned to use for the invasion. The English defend ...

"The Monkey at Bay."
"The Monkey at Bay." When in 1805 Napoleon declared himself King of Italy and annexed Genoa to France, a Third Coalition (Britain, Austria, ...

"Why?" by Francisco Goya, 1807
In this engraving, "Why?" by Francisco Goya, French troops strangle a Spaniard by pushing his shoulders and pulling his legs. At first Goya had ...

1804 British cartoon lampoons unpreparedness.
This British cartoon of about 1804 lampoons the country's lack of military preparedness against an attack by Napoleon's fleet and army, which, ...

French cavalry in the Russian campaign.
French cavalry in the Russian campaign. On the left is a Chasseur à Cheval and on the right a Carabiniere . Napoleon's decision to invade ...

French preparing for a 1803 invasion of England.
French troops preparing for the invasion of England in 1803. In that year, England and France were again at war, and Napoleon increased the ...

King Ferdinand VII of Spain (r.1808-1833).
Ferdinand VII (1784-1833) the King of Spain from 1808 to 1833) was imprisoned in France by Napoleon I during the Peninsular War. His death ...

Map: Napoleon's empire at its height, 1812.
A map of Napoleon's empire at its height, 1812. In just 12 years, Napoleon extended the boundaries of France and, as this map shows, brought ...

Napoleon and Tsar Alexander on Nieman River, 1807.
Napoleon and Tsar Alexander I confer on a raft in the River Nieman prior to signing the Peace of Tilsit in 1807. That treaty, signed by France, ...

Napoleon invades Russia, 1812.
A cartoon about Napoleon's invasion of Russia in 1812. In this Russian cartoon, the tsar, in the garb of a Russian peasant, reveals the true ...

Napoleon's retreat from Russia, 1812.
Napoleon's retreat from Russia, 1812. With his planned winter quarters burned down, Napoleon was forced to retreat. After enduring the harsh ...

The conflagration of Moscow, September 15, 1812.
The conflagration of Moscow, September 15, 1812. When Napoleon's forces had fought their way through to Moscow and entered the city on September ...

The Portuguese royal family leaving Lisbon, 1807.
The Portuguese royal family leaving Lisbon, 1807. After learning of French plans to invade Portugal, the British supplied passage for the ...

The Napoleonic Wars: War on the Sea

Victory breaks Franco-Spanish line.
H.M.S. Victory breaks the Franco-Spanish line, 1805. Though numerically inferior to the combined Franco-Spanish fleet, British Admiral Nelson ...

Victory returns, mourning Nelson's death .
H.M.S. Victory returns to Portsmouth, England, after the battle of Trafalgar, flying a black ensign mourning the death of Admiral Nelson. ...

Admiral Horatio Nelson (1758-1805).
Admiral Horatio Nelson (1758-1805) in the cabin of his flagship, the Victory. Nelson inflicted stunning defeats on the French navy during the ...

The Constitution vs. the Guerriere.
U.S.S. Constitution defeats H.M.S. Guerriere, August 1812. When war broke out between the U.S. and Britain during the Napoleonic Wars, the ...

The Battle of Lake Erie, September 1813.
Oliver Hazard Perry: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." During the War of 1812, faced with a British blockade of its Atlantic coast, ...

Section J: Industrial, Political and Social Revolutions, 1815 - 1850

Overview: Industrial, Social Revolution, 1815-1850
A brief video Overview of the history of industrial, political and social revolutions from 1815 to 1850. Transcript: After defeating Napoleon, ...

England Abolishes Slavery

A British corvette interdicts a slaver, 1820's.
A Royal Navy 32-gun corvette interdicts the French slave ship L'Atrevida , off the coast of Africa during the 1820's. The British government ...

An 1826 pro-slavery cartoon.
"John Bull taking a clear view of the Negro slavery question," an 1826 pro-slavery cartoon by George Cruikshank. Abolitionists (center) are ...

Slaves in the British colony of Jamaica.
A group of slaves in the British colony of Jamaica. During the early decades of the 19th century, the issue of slavery became a central ...

William Wilberforce (1759-1833).
William Wilberforce (1759-1833) led the movement in the House of Commons which abolished the slave trade in the British West Indies in 1807. He ...

In Other Lands

A room in an opium factory in India.
Some idea of the huge volume of opium imported to China is conveyed by this picture of the stacking room in the East India Company's opium ...

A Russian military post on the border of China.
A Russian military post on the border of China, around 1871. Two decades of Russian advance in the Amur River region were capped by the 1860 ...

An Abyssinian king's castle.
The Old King's Castle at Gondar in the highlands of Ethiopia. These impressive ruins stand as monuments to the power and wealth of the ...

An Easter banquet in Abyssinia.
The Easter banquet at Ankobar, in the Shoa region of Abyssinia, in the mid-19th century. The king is seated on a throne in the alcove on the ...

Loading Chinese tea for export.
Loading tea for export from China. After the use of tea began to spread during the Tang dynasty , the internal and external tea trade became an ...

Mexico achieves independence.
Agustín de Iturbide (1783-1824). In November 1820, Agustín de Iturbide, the Mexican royalist army officer who had captured Morelos, was ordered ...

Priest who began Mexican independence movement.
Father Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla (1753-1811), who began the Mexican independence movement. Father Hidalgo, a creole priest in New Spain strongly ...

The Abyssinian Court of Justice.
The Court of Justice of the King of Shoa, ruler of one of three autonomous Abyssinian kingdoms in the early 19th century. The judges listened to ...

The Buenos Aires harbor around 1820.
The Buenos Aires harbor, ca. 1820. Although the interior provinces of Argentina were politically tied to Buenos Aires, their economic interests ...

Introduction

"The phoenix rises from its ashes," 1815.
"The phoenix rises from its ashes." The 1815 restoration of the Bourbon dynasty in France meant regression from the principles of the ...

A member of the French Carbonari, 1820.
A member of the French Carbonari. In the 1820s, secret societies whose aim was radical reform or revolution

sprang up all over Europe. The most ...

Alexander I of Russia (1801-1825).
Alexander I of Russia (1801-1825). During the first part of his reign, Tsar Alexander I was thought to be a liberal and a reformer. Like other ...

Charles Maurice de Talleyrand Périgord, 1815.
Charles Maurice de Talleyrand Périgord (1754-1838). For a brief time, Talleyrand was a courtier under Louis XVI, but when the Revolution broke ...

Louis XVIII of France, who ruled 1814-1824.
Louis XVIII of France, who reigned from 1814 to 1824. The brother of the guillotined Louis XVI, he had fled from revolutionary France but was ...

Map: Europe after the Congress of Vienna.
A map of Europe after the Congress of Vienna, 1815. After Napoleon's defeat, the mood of the European countries at Vienna was conservative; the ...

Map: peoples under the Hapsburg monarchy.
A map showing the locations of the various peoples under the Hapsburg monarchy. This mix of nationalities was the result of the dynastic system; ...

Naval battle in Greek struggle for independence.
A naval battle during the Greek struggle for independence from Ottoman rule in 1821. Following the consolidation of Ottoman rule in the 16th ...

Prince Clemens von Metternich (1773-1859).
Prince Clemens von Metternich (1773-1859). As Chancellor of Austria, he guided his country's foreign and domestic policy for almost 40 years. ...

The battle at Navarino, October 20, 1827.
The sea battle at Navarino, October 20, 1827. The European powers supported the Greek nationalist revolution from Turkey. When the sultan of ...

The Congress of Vienna, 1814-1815.
The Congress of Vienna met from September 1814 to June 1815 to decide the fate of Europe after the Napoleonic wars. France, restored to the ...

The poet George Gordon, Lord Byron (1788-1824).
George Gordon, Lord Byron, (1788-1824). Like many other European romantics, poet Lord Byron was fired with enthusiasm by the revolt of the ...

Liberalism: Liberty and Equality

Agrarian Society: Landless Laborers

"Literary Leisure," ridiculing the working class.
"Literary Leisure," an 1830 cartoon ridiculing the aspirations of the working class. The worker, a shoemaker, says, "Three o'clock! well as I ...

A cartoon opposing the English game laws.
"The Game Laws, or the Sacrifice of the Peasant to the Hare." A peasant is executed for violating the English game laws. Since the Norman ...

Cartoon justifying agricultural workers' sabotage.
A cartoon suggesting that the poverty of the agricultural laborer (note the empty cupboard) fully justified his acts of sabotage. Agricultural ...

Cartoon on the 1830 British agricultural revolts.
A cartoon on the British agricultural revolts of 1830. The Schoolmaster (probably former prime minister Earl Grey) reads a note from Captain ...

Cartoon, Peel refuses to help farm laborers.
In this cartoon, Prime Minister Sir Robert Peel (1788-1850) says to the farm laborer and his family, "I'm sorry, my good man, but I can do ...

Value of a farm worker less than that of a hog.
Labels in this cartoon show that the value of an English farm laborer, £212, compared unfavorably with that of a prize hog, £313. By the ...

Agrarian Society: Vast Estates Owned by Few

A 19th-century English plow.
A 19th-century English plow. The double blades at the front are mold-boards, curved pieces of wood that turn over the soil. This plowshare is ...

Apple harvest in early 19th-century England.
A scene from the apple harvest in early 19th century England. The apples are picked by hand and loaded into baskets and large sacks. The sacks ...

English farm land, showing small fields.
English farm land, showing the open-field system of small land parcels separated by boundaries. This system prevailed before the enclosure ...

Mowing grass.
Mowing grass. These English farm workers use the scythe, whose long handle and blade allowed them to work in an upright position, rather than ...

The threshing process, 18th century.
The threshing process, 18th century. Threshing involved beating out the grain from the wheat stalks by repeated strikes with the flail. At ...

The England of George IV and William IV

19th-century cannon at Culzean Castle, Scotland.
An early 19th-century cannon at Culzean Castle, Scotland. This light cannon is mounted in a carriage designed to be towed by horses. The ...
Bombardment of Algiers by Lord Exmouth, 1816.
The bombardment of Algiers by Lord Exmouth in 1816. During the early years of the 19th century, the Ottoman Turkish dependencies on the North ...
British ships destroy Chinese war junks, 1841.
British ships destroy Chinese war junks during the First Opium War, 1841. The British sought to open the Chinese market to their manufactured ...
Cartoon, public support for Caroline of Brunswick.
"John Bull's Trump," a cartoon about public support for Caroline of Brunswick. In 1795, the future George IV married Caroline, but within a year ...
George IV of England (1762-1830).
George IV of England (1762-1830) reigned as regent for the insane George III from 1811 to 1820, and then in his own right until 1830. George IV ...
Hong Kong nursemaids for British children.
Chinese nursemaids for British children in Hong Kong. One result of the First Opium War (1839-1844) was the cession by China of the island of ...
Prince Albert, consort of Queen Victoria.
Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha (1819-1861), Prince Consort of Queen Victoria of England. Queen Victoria followed a series of self-indulgent, ...
The Royal Stock Exchange in London, England.
The Royal Stock Exchange in London. In the 19th century, the joint stock company became the most important means of amassing capital for English ...
William IV of England, r. 1830-1837.
William IV (1765-1837), King of Great Britain and Ireland from 1830 to 1837, was the third son of George III and was succeeded by his niece ...

The Irish Question

"Absolutism for Apostasy," 1829.
"Absolutism for Apostasy." In 1829 Britain passed the Catholic Emancipation Act, largely to avert civil war in Ireland. In this cartoon the ...
A cartoon about Irish absentee landlords.
"Irish Affairs: the Absentee." Ireland was a land of poverty and bitterness, since much of the income of the Irish peasants went to absentee ...
A cartoon about the Catholic Emancipation bill.
"John Bull and the Doctor." George IV is the gouty patient, and Wellington, his prime minister, is the doctor. Wellington's remedy is the ...
A cartoon portraying the Irish as dull and stupid.
This 1806 English cartoon reflects the then-prevailing English view of the Irish as dull and stupid. The prospective English employer says to ...
Daniel O'Connell.
Daniel O'Connell (1775-1847). An Irish political leader, in 1823 he founded the Catholic Association, whose pressure led to the Catholic ...
English landlords evict Irish cottagers.
English landlords evict Irish cottagers from their homes. Many of the landlords of Ireland were absentee Englishmen. Because of the potato ...
Irish carry their dead during the 1847 famine.
The Irish carry their dead to be buried during the famine of 1847. In 1846 conditions in Ireland were exacerbated by the failure of the potato ...
Robert Peel as "The Modern Sisyphus."
"The Modern Sisyphus." The movement led by Irishman Daniel O'Connell to repeal the Act of Union with England was checked in 1843 when military ...
Starving Irish children in 1847 potato famine.
A starving boy and girl of Cahera, Ireland, depicted during the potato famine of 1847. So many people died or emigrated during the famine that ...

The Liberal Political Reform Movement in England

"Worker presents Russell the Great Charter."
The English worker presents Prime Minister John Russell with the Great Charter. The Chartist Movement, a demand for popular sovereignty , arose ...
A cartoon criticizing opponents of reform.
"The No-Reform Protest." The Reform Act of 1832 enfranchised Britain's middle class, but left the lower classes without the vote despite their ...
A cartoon on the repeal of the Corn Laws.
"The Seven League Boots, or the Death of Giant Monopoly." The Corn Laws were protective tariffs that prevented the importation of cheap grain ...
An 1819 lampoon of those fearing reform.
"Smoak Jack." This British cartoon of 1819 lampoons the fears of those who opposed the movement for the reform of Parliament. Smoak Jack is ...

John Russell and Richard Cobden separate.
John Russell and Richard Cobden go their separate ways. When prime minister John Lord Russell formed his ministry in 1846, he asked Richard ...
Parliament buildings, London, land side.
A view of the Parliament buildings in London from across Parliament Square. In this rarely seen view are, left to right, The Clock Tower, the ...
Peel's Cheap Bread Shop.
Peel's Cheap Bread Shop. The repeal of the Corn Laws in 1846 meant cheaper bread for the working class. Another important figure in Corn Law ...
The chamber of the House of Lords.
The chamber of the House of Lords. England's peers of the realm, who came from the highest ranks of the aristocracy , sat with the bishops as ...
The Parliament buildings, London.
The Houses of Parliament in London, seen from across the Thames River. Reform Acts were passed by the Parliament beginning in 1832, when the ...

Literature, Theater and Society

Charles Dickens (1812-1870).
Charles Dickens (1812-1870). Perhaps the most popular of all English novelists, Dickens won fame even in his own day for his rambling, often ...
Charlotte Brontë (1816-1855).
Charlotte Brontë (1816-1855), the eldest of the three Brontë sisters (the others were Emily and Anne), who were English novelists and poets. ...
Dickens' Eight Bells Inn.
The "Eight Bells Inn" in Hatfield, England, reputed to be the one referred to by Charles Dickens in Oliver Twist . This was the "small public ...
Edmund Kean, premier English actor.
Edmund Kean (ca. 1789-1833) was an actor who held the foremost place on the English stage until 1825. He revolutionized acting styles by ...
George Sand (1804-1876), French feminist novelist.
George Sand, the pseudonym of Amandine Aurore Lucie Dupin, Baronne Dudevant (1804-1876). This French feminist novelist was famed for wearing ...
Heinrich Heine, a German romantic poet.
Heinrich Heine (1797-1856), the German romantic poet and supporter of the French Revolution. Heine left Germany to live in Paris, where he ...
Illustration by William Blake.
When the Morning Stars Sang Together, an illustration by William Blake for the 1825 Ilustrations of the Book of Job. Blake (1757-1827) was a ...
Illustration from Dickens' Oliver Twist .
"Oliver Asking for More," an illustration from Charles Dickens' Oliver Twist 1836. Dickens' work represented the increasing attention paid in ...
Surrey Theater in London, ca. 1828.
Surrey Theater in London, ca. 1828. Seating in the theater was segregated by social class. There were separate entrances for patrons occupying ...
The French novelist Honoré de Balzac.
The French novelist Honoré de Balzac (1799-1850). A native of Tours, he suffered ten years of privation and hard work in Paris before the ...

Science

A baby's head is examined by a phrenologist.
A mother has her baby's head examined by a phrenologist. Founded by the German F. J. Gall (1758-1828), the pseudo-science of phrenology ...
A demonstration of the Foucault pendulum.
A demonstration of the Foucault pendulum. It was invented by J. B. L. Foucault (1819-1868), a physicist who devoted most of his research to the ...
A Prescription for Scolding Wives.
"Living Made Easy, or A Prescription for Scolding Wives." A humorous view of the use of nitrous oxide (laughing gas), which was used for ...
An "antimaniacal device."
A "circulating swing," considered to be an "antimaniacal device." Through its sometimes violently fast motion, it was believed to be of value in ...
Balloon flight, Paris, December 1783.
The balloon flight of Jacques Charles and Jean Robert from the Tuileries Gardens in Paris, December 1783. These men repeated the Montgolfier ...
Cranioscopy, 19th century.
Cranioscopy, the system of Franz-Joseph Gall, early, 19th century. Pictured is a cranial "map" illustrating Gall's phrenological system. Gall's ...
George Simon Ohm (1789-1845), British physicist.
George Simon Ohm (1789-1845) was a physicist who held professorships at the Universities of Cologne and Munich. He postulated of a theory of ...
James Prescott Joule, British scientist.

James Prescott Joule (1818-1889). Joule was a British scientist who showed that heat is a form of energy, and established the mechanical ...

Jenner's remedy for smallpox.

"The Cow Pock: the Wonderful Effects of the New Inoculation!" is a whimsical view of Jenner's remedy for smallpox. English physician Edward ...

Louis-Joseph Daguerre, inventor of photography.

Louis-Joseph Daguerre (1789-1851), the inventor of the first practical process of photography. Daguerre sold his invention to the French ...

Montgolfier's balloon descends, 1783.

Montgolfier's balloon descends at Gonesse, France, in 1783, and frightens the inhabitants. Thinking it was a monster that had fallen from the ...

Reception after the Robert brothers' flight, 1784.

The reception of the Robert brothers, Jean and Nicholas, after a flight made in ...

Robert Brown (1773-1858), British botanist.

The British botanist Robert Brown (1773-1858). Born in Scotland, Robert Brown was educated at Aberdeen and Edinburgh. In 1801, Brown traveled ...

The Argand Lamp.

The Argand Lamp. Invented by Pierre Aime Argand (1750-1803), this lamp had a hollow chimney with a hollow wick through which air passed, ...

The first balloon flight undertaken for science.

Joseph-Louis Gay-Lussac (1778-1850) and Jean-Baptiste Biot (1774-1862) in the first balloon flight undertaken for scientific purposes, 1804. ...

The first manned balloon flight, November 1783.

The first manned balloon flight: the Montgolfier balloon ascending in Paris in November 1783. This hot-air balloon was developed by Frenchmen ...

Water pollution in London, 1818.

Water pollution in London, ca. 1818: "Monster Soup, commonly called Thames Water." One of the more unpleasant but important aspects of advances ...

The Industrial Revolution

Classes in the Cities: The Poor

"Beer Street," by William Hogarth, 1751.

"Beer Street," by William Hogarth, 1751. Hogarth (1697-1764) contrasted the positive effects of beer drinking with the evils of gin. Beer was ...

"Gin Lane," by William Hogarth, 1751.

"Gin Lane," by William Hogarth, 1751. The words over the arch at lower left read "Drunk for a penny, dead drunk for twopence." In early 18th ...

"The Bottle," a series by George Cruikshank.

"The Bottle" was a series of drawings made by George Cruikshank in 1848 on the evils of drink. In this plate, the husband and wife, totally ...

A cartoon pleading for unadulterated beer.

"Public Justice," a plea for unadulterated beer. It was the national drink of England, called the second necessity of life. Social reformers, ...

A prisoner at crank labor.

A cell with a prisoner at crank labor in the Surrey House of Correction, London, ca. 1862. Crank labor was used to punish prisoners who had ...

A water-engine at Cold-Bath Fields' Prison.

A water-engine at Cold-Bath Fields' Prison. The House of Correction in Cold-Bath Fields, Middlesex, England, was constructed in 1796 and became ...

A workhouse.

A workhouse in St. James Parish, Westminster, London, ca. 1811. The English Poor Law of 1601 provided for workhouses where the able-bodied ...

Cartoon ridiculing the ideas of Proudhon.

"Property," a cartoon ridiculing the ideas of Pierre Joseph Proudhon. An anarchist, Proudhon (1809-1865), who argued that property was theft, ...

Cockfighting in London, 1821.

Cockfighting in London, 1821. Many amusements in 19th century cities were brutal and inhumane, including dog-fighting and rat-killing as well ...

Owen's plan for an Indiana model community.

Robert Owen's plan for a model community at New Harmony, Indiana, U.S.A. Owen (1771-1858), the owner of a mill in Manchester, England, believed ...

Prisoners' treadmill, Bixton House of Correction.

Prisoners at the Bixton House of Correction are put to work on a treadmill to impose discipline. Houses of Correction were established in ...

The Pass-Room at Bridewell Prison, London, 1811.

The Pass-Room at Bridewell Prison, London, 1811. Bridewell was established as an experiment in carrying out the provision of the Poor Law that ...

Classes in the Cities: The Urban Upper Class

"The Toilet of a Modern Belle: Inflating a Lady."

"The Toilet of a Modern Belle: Inflating a Lady." This British cartoon of 1829 ridicules the exaggerated style of

women's dress in the ...

An omnibus, mid-19th century.

An omnibus, mid-19th century. The omnibus was the first public mass transportation vehicle, a public conveyance that accommodated at least 19 ...

Bathing at Brighton Beach, 1836.

Bathing at Brighton Beach, 1836. Less than 50 miles from London, Brighton Beach was established as a health resort in the 1750s, and became a ...

Serving counter of Paris outdoor café, ca. 1820.

The serving counter of Au Bon Air, an outdoor café in Paris, ca. 1820. The café (the word for coffee in French) has flourished in Europe since ...

The "Drasine" or hobby horse bicycle, 1816.

The "Drasine" or hobby horse bicycle. This earliest form of the bicycle was invented by a German, Karl von Drais, in 1816. Two wheels were ...

The hansom cab, mid-19th century.

The hansom cab, mid-19th century. This was a two-wheeled, closed carriage that was often used as a public carrier (that is, it was available for ...

Townhouses in London's Regent's Park district.

Townhouses in London's Regent's Park district, in the city's fashionable West End, built ca. 1820. In these houses, built for the upper middle ...

Women's fashions in London, 1816.

Women's fashions in London, 1816: morning and evening costumes. This was the elegant, relatively simple style popularized during the French ...

Women's fashions in London, 1828.

Women's fashions in London, 1828: evening dress and carriage costumes. After the Napoleonic wars, fashion reacted against the simplicity of the ...

Coal Mining and Iron Work

A fired French miner and his family leaving.

A coal miner and his family in the Pas-de-Calais leave the mine after he was fired by the company. The Calais Gas Company which owned the mine ...

An explosion in a coal mine, 1867.

An explosion in a coal mine, 1867. This was the scene at the Ferndale Colliery, in Glamorganshire, South Wales, after an explosion that killed ...

Coal being loaded into cars, 1835.

Coal being loaded into cars, 1835. Note that the cars run on rails. At first these were drawn by horses along wooden rails, but later the rails ...

First cast iron bridge, Ironbridge, England, 1789.

The first bridge made of cast iron, built at Ironbridge, England, in ...

Forging wrought iron, 18th century.

Forging wrought iron, 18th century. At right the smith turns the "half-bloom" on the anvil, and it is struck by the large hammer which is ...

Iron mining in the 18th century.

Iron mining in the 18th century. A miner splits a boulder that contains ore, while another carries ore in a wheelbarrow to the hoist. On the ...

Miners descending a shaft.

Miners descending a shaft, ca. 1884. By this time, miners were carried to and from the mine by steam-powered mechanisms. Steam was successfully ...

Mining in the 18th century.

Mining in the 18th century. The windlass (left and right) was still used to hoist baskets of ore up the shafts. A later device was the ...

Steam power applied to mining, 1835.

Steam power applied to mining, 1835. The miners descend into the pit in the tub (center) that is suspended from a chain and rope. It is worked ...

Steps in making charcoal, 18th century.

Steps in making charcoal, 18th century. Before the introduction of coke, charcoal was the fuel used to smelt iron ore. It was produced by ...

The workshop of a master iron maker, 18th century.

The workshop of a master 18th-century iron maker. Three journeymen smiths at center work a piece of iron. At right, another stokes the furnace. ...

Cotton, Textiles

A spinning jenny.

A spinning jenny. John Kay's flying shuttle loom so much increased the speed of weavers that the threads could not be supplied fast enough by ...

Arkwright's spinning machine, patented 1769.

Sir Richard Arkwright's spinning machine, the water frame, patented in 1769. Perhaps the most significant invention of the Industrial ...

Calico printing in Lancashire.

Calico printing in Lancashire, ca. 1835. The printing was accomplished by a series of cylinders, a process that replaced the old method of ...

Carding, roving, and drawing cotton.

Carding, roving, and drawing cotton at the Swainson, Birley and Company mill near Preston, England, ca. 1835. These operations, which prepared ...

Cotton factories in Manchester.
Cotton factories in Manchester, ca. 1835. The center of British cotton manufacturing in the early 19th century was Lancashire, and Manchester ...

Hand-loom weaver, Germany, early 19th century.
A German hand-loom weaver, early 19th century. Hand-loom weaving changed little over the course of centuries, and persisted in some countries ...

Making cards for the Jacquard loom.
Making cards for the Jacquard loom, ca. 1847. This loom was an automatic device for weaving patterns in cloth. The perforations in the cards ...

Orrell cotton factory in Stockport, England.
The Orrell cotton factory in Stockport, England, conducted both spinning and weaving operations. Steam was supplied by boilers, which for safety ...

Power-loom weaving.
Power-loom weaving, ca. 1833. The mechanization of weaving occurred far later than that of spinning. The first power loom was patented in ...

Samuel Crompton's "mule," 1779.
The "mule," invented by Samuel Crompton (1753-1827), was a spinning machine so called because it combined the merits of the spinning jenny (a ...

Sir Richard Arkwright.
Sir Richard Arkwright (1732-1792), originally a barber by trade, may rightly be called the father of the Industrial Revolution. Sensing the ...

The flying shuttle loom, 1733.
The flying shuttle loom. Invented in 1733 by John Kay, it sped up the weaving process by placing the shuttle (the device that carried the ...

Factories and the Industrial Landscape

A compositor at work, 1847.
A compositor at work, 1847. In the upper case are capital letters; in the lower case, small ones (hence the modern terms "upper case" and "lower ...

An 18th-century printing press.
An 18th-century printing press. The composing stick, for measuring and justifying type, is at the ...

An industrial landscape in 1833.
An industrial landscape in 1833, showing the Swainson and Birley Company near Preston, Lancashire. Large steam-powered mills began to crowd the ...

Boy preparing tobacco in cigarmaking, 1847.
A boy preparing tobacco leaves in cigarmaking, 1847. The boy strips the stems from the tobacco leaf, which is then cut and rolled by an adult ...

Boys in the Anglee paper mill, 18th century.
Young boys at work in the Anglee paper mill, south of Paris, 18th century. These boys are employed in the preparation of rags that are used to ...

Implements used by a compositor, 1847.
Implements used by a compositor or typesetter, 1847. The wooden frame, called a "chase," was used to enclose a completed page of type and hold ...

Stockport, Lancashire, 1836.
Stockport, Lancashire, 1836. The cities of no other country in the world had such an industrialized aspect so early in the 19th century as those ...

Women cigarmakers in Paris, 1852.
Women cigarmakers in Paris, 1852. They were paid not by the hour or day, but by the ...

Women make brushes in a steam-powered factory.
Women workers make brushes in a factory operation, using machines powered by steam, ca. 1884. With the advent of water and steam power, many ...

Women workers in a paper mill, 18th century.
Women workers in a French paper mill, 18th century. Women were employed not in the actual process of making the paper, but in auxiliary ...

The Exploitation of Workers

Asylum in Lambeth parish, Surrey, 1811.
The dining hall of the Asylum or House of Refuge in Lambeth parish, Surrey, 1811. This institution, founded in 1758, was a sanctuary for ...

Attack on the New Union Work house, 1842.
An attack on the New Union Work house at Stockport, 1842. The 1840s were a period of severe unemployment in many parts of Britain. In this ...

Cartoon, exploitation of British coal miners.
"Capital and Labour," a cartoon on the exploitation of the British coal miners. The early 19th century was the era of unregulated capitalism. ...

Factory children attend a Sunday school.
Factory children attend a Sunday school built by the enlightened factory owner. This illustration is from Frances Trollope's 1840 Life and ...

Girls haul coal up ladders in a mine.
Girls haul coal up ladders in a mine. They carry the coal in baskets attached to their heads by leather bands. Sometimes the bands broke, and ...
Putter dragging a car filled with coal, 1843.
A "putter" or "trolley boy" dragging a car filled with coal through a tunnel in a Scottish mine about 1843. Child labor was used because of the ...

Transportation: Steam

"Puffing Billy," by William Hedley, 1804.
"Puffing Billy," by William Hedley (1779-1843), pictured in 1832. This first British railway locomotive, constructed in 1804, was used to pull ...
A 19th-century English steam locomotive.
A 19th-century English steam locomotive on display at Bridgenorth, England. During the late 19th and early 20th centuries, railroads became the ...
A Newcomen atmospheric steam engine.
A Newcomen atmospheric steam engine. Invented in 1698 by ironmonger Thomas Newcomen (1663-1729), these engines were produced beginning in 1712 ...
An early steam tractor.
An early steam tractor. Englishmen Thomas Newcomen and James Watt developed early steam engines for use in mines and factories. But it was a ...
George Stephenson's famous "Rocket" of 1829.
George Stephenson's famous "Rocket" of 1829. The era of the railroad began in 1830 with the opening of the line from Liverpool to Manchester. ...
James Watt (1736-1819), British inventor.
James Watt (1736-1819). The inventions of James Watt, a Glasgow instrument maker, helped make Great Britain the world's first modern industrial ...
The Railway Juggernaut of 1845.
The Railway Juggernaut of 1845. The success of England's Liverpool-Manchester railroad line led to the organization of many British railroad ...

Water Transportation

A suspension bridge over the Thames, 1828.
A suspension bridge over the Thames at Hammersmith, 1828. Suspension bridges, in which the roadways were suspended from cables or chains over ...
An 18th-century canal in Birmingham, England.
An 18th-century canal in Birmingham, England. Canals had the advantage that very little power (often a single horse) was required to move heavy ...
An early British steamship, 1815.
An early British steamship. The first British passenger steamer was the Comet, launched in the Firth of Clyde in 1812, five years after the ...
Bargemen on the Thames River, London.
Workers on the silent highway: bargemen on the Thames River at London. Especially before the era of the railroad, transportation depended ...
Canal locks In the 18th century.
Canal locks in the 18th century. A lock is a chamber in a canal, with gates at either end, to raise or lower vessels to a different water level. ...
Canal traffic in London, 1828.
Canal traffic in London, 1828. With its extensive coastline and many harbors, England for a long time had relied mainly on coastal shipping for ...
The canal locks in Birmingham.
The canal locks in Birmingham, ...
The first Frankfurt steamboat, 1844.
The first Frankfurt steamboat at the Mäuseturm in the Rhine near Bingen. It came to Frankfurt in 1828 and for a time served Frankfurt and Mainz ...
The Mainz market ship, early 19th century.
The Mainz market ship, early 19th century. The market ship was towed by animals and made regular runs carrying goods, people and news on the ...
The Thames tunnel, London, 1847.
A view in the Thames tunnel in London, 1847. Begun in 1825 by Sir Marc Isambard Brunel (1769-1849), it was the first tunnel dug under the ...

Work on the Eve of the Industrial Revolution

A "modern" potter's wheel, 1847.
A "modern" potter's wheel, 1847. The potter worked with the clay on the wheel, which was turned by his assistant at ...
A family of woodcutters in Normandy, 1847.
A family of woodcutters in Normandy, 1847. Wood was the basic fuel for domestic use, and peasants could supplement their incomes by auxiliary ...
A furrier/skinner in Germany.
A furrier/skinner in Germany. In the European climate, fur coats were in much demand. One result of this was that it helped to establish ...
A German saddle-maker.

A German saddle-maker, one of the skilled trades required by the use of horses for transportation. Other resultant trades were wheelwrights, ...

A needle grinder or pointer.

A needle grinder or pointer. The worker sat behind a small grindstone that revolved rapidly, and placed the wires that would be made into ...

A peasant thatching a roof in Normandy, 1847.

A peasant thatching a roof in Normandy, 1847. The abundance of straw that resulted from threshing made thatched roofs common in rural areas. ...

A tailor and his apprentices, early 19th century.

A tailor and his apprentices in the early 19th century. The master cuts the cloth and his assistants stitch it. On the right a man is making ...

A watch and clock repairman in Berlin.

A watch and clock repairman in Berlin. ...

A woman milking a cow.

A woman milking a cow in early 19th-century England. In this romanticized scene, a peasant woman milks a cow while another woman waits for a ...

Breaking flax.

Breaking flax, ca. 1847, one of the steps in preparing flax for weaving into linen. When the flax plant was harvested, seeds were removed and ...

Harvesting grapes at Médoc, near Bordeaux.

Harvesting grapes at Médoc, near Bordeaux. The Bordeaux region was a center of viticulture since the early Christian era, and became a leading ...

Hatters making felt hats at a "kettle," 1847.

A hatters' "kettle," and workers making felt hats, 1847. The kettle is a cauldron, heated by a fire, which contained an acid used to treat the ...

Sack women on London Bridge, 1847.

Sack women on the London Bridge, 1847. These workers are from Bermondsey, in the city's East End. They made the bags used by the wool, grain, ...

Traditional costume of a Breton peasant woman.

The traditional costume of a Breton peasant woman. The old province of Brittany (Bretagne), on France's northwest coast, retains a distinctive ...

Traditional costume of a Norman peasant woman.

The traditional costume of a Norman peasant woman. The persistence of peasant customs into the 20th century, including the retention of local ...

Video sequence: Wheelwright, a traditional craft.

A video sequence concerning a wheelwright, performing his traditional craft. This English wheelwright carried on his trade in the ancient ...

Windows in homes of silk weavers, Spitalfields.

Windows in the homes of silk weavers, Spitalfields, ca. 1847. Silk weaving had been carried on in this part of London since the 17th century. ...

The Liberal Political Revolutions, 1830-1848

Conservative Victory in France: Louis Bonaparte, President, 1848

"Napoleonic Ideas."

"Napoleonic Ideas." Louis Bonaparte (1808-1873), a nephew of the French emperor, assumed the role of pretender after the death of Napoleon's ...

"The Votes of December 10."

"The Votes of December 10." In the campaign for the presidency of the Second Republic, held December 10, 1848, there were contenders ...

"Trying to strangle universal suffrage."

The Lilliputians try to strangle universal suffrage while it sleeps. In 1850, a new electoral law in France abolished universal suffrage by ...

Cartoon, French Republic contemplating suicide.

"The Young Republic of France Contemplating Suicide." On December 10, 1848, Louis Bonaparte was elected President of France by a large majority. ...

De Falloux, minister in cabinet of Odilon Barrot.

Count Frédéric de Falloux (1811-1886) was Minister of Public Instruction in the cabinet of Odilon Barrot during the presidency of Louis ...

Parisians recognize the threat from the Right.

"A New May 15th." Parisian workers who had participated in the left-wing insurgency of May 15, 1848, against the National Assembly, begin to ...

The 45-centime surtax.

The 45-centime surtax. In order to eliminate the deficit, the government of the Second Republic imposed a 45-centime surtax on every franc paid ...

Thiers tries to destroy the monster of socialism.

"The Hydra of Socialism. You Beat Them Down in Vain; They Always Grow Back." Adolphe Thiers (1797-1877) tries to destroy the hydra-headed ...

Victor Hugo, political activist, poet, novelist.

Victor Hugo (1802-1885) was a political activist as well as a poet and novelist. Originally a member of the Party of Order in the French ...

France: From Monarchy to the Second Republic

"Put Out!" King Louis-Philippe is extinguished.
"Put Out!" A French revolutionary of 1848 extinguishes a candle in the form of King Louis-Philippe, and puts an end to the July ...

A barricade on the Boulevard Montmartre in 1848.
A barricade on the Boulevard Montmartre in 1848. On February 23, the king's troops killed 40 to 50 people. That night, barricades were set up ...

A demonstration during the Revolution of 1848.
A demonstration at Paris's Hôtel de Ville during the Revolution of 1848. As the banners indicate, the revolutionaries were interested not only ...

A National Workshop.
A National Workshop in 1848. Democratic socialist Louis Blanc conceived of the idea of producers' cooperatives to solve the unemployment problem ...

Cartoon, enemies attack French Second Republic.
"Soap Bubbles." The many enemies of the French Second Republic, legitimists, imperialists, and Orleanists, attack her with seemingly harmless ...

Cartoon, involved worker returns home drunk.
"Friends of Disorder." A French working man, having attended a meeting of his political club, returns home drunk to his angry spouse. The scene ...

Cartoon, socialists try to add to constitution.
"Legislative Cuisine." After the Revolution of 1848, the conservative French National Assembly drafted a moderate constitution for the Second ...

Cartoon, uninvolved worker returns to happy home.
"Friends of Order." This and the next cartoon present a hostile view of the results of involvement in political clubs for the French workers. A ...

Duchess of Orléans presents Count to deputies.
The Duchess of Orléans presents the Count of Paris to the Chamber of Deputies. Louis-Philippe abdicated in 1848 in favor of his nine-year old ...

French workers vs. English competitors.
The idea of " fraternité " challenged: French workers try to drive their English competitors out of the country. One of the ideals of the ...

Lamartine speaks from the Hôtel de Ville, Paris.
Lamartine addresses the people from the Hôtel de Ville (the city hall) in Paris. When the Paris masses rejected the regency for Louis-Philippe's ...

Parisians burn the throne, 1848.
During the Revolution of 1848, the people of Paris burn the throne of the Tuileries Palace. As it grew more and more repressive, the July ...

Parisians march into the Assembly, May 15, 1848.
The people of Paris march into the National Assembly on May 15, 1848. Elections held after the February Revolution of 1848 returned a majority ...

The June Days of 1848 in Paris.
The June Days of 1848 in Paris. The government's announcement that the National Workshops would be closed caused the workers of Paris to rise in ...

The Labor Commission in the Luxembourg Palace.
The Labor Commission in the Luxembourg Palace. The Revolution of 1848 in France was precipitated in part by the severe unemployment that was ...

Germany and Prussia

"Royalty in Distress."
"Royalty in Distress." Worried conversation among the leaders of Europe threatened by the revolutions of 1848. Left to right: Ferdinand I of ...

"Three Pillars of Austro-Croatian Civilization."
"The Three Pillars of Austro-Croatian Civilization." Insurrection broke out all over the Hapsburg domains in 1848: in Austria, Hungary, and ...

A barricade in the Breiten-Strasse, Berlin, 1848.
A barricade in the Breiten-Strasse, Berlin, 1848. In March 1848, news of the revolution in Vienna reached Berlin, the capital of Prussia, and ...

German revolutionaries drive out reactionaries.
"A German Court Ball, 1848." German revolutionaries drive out the reactionaries during the Revolution of 1848. The figure at left is ...

Louis Kossuth (1802-1894).
Louis Kossuth (1802-1894) led the Hungarian Revolution of 1848 against Austria, and he became president of the independent Hungarian republic. ...

Pius IX wields club of liberty against despotism.
Pope Pius IX (1792-1878) wields the club of rational liberty against despotism. During the early part of his pontificate, Pius IX favored the ...

Prussian revolutionary sweeps away privilege.
A Prussian revolutionary of 1848 sweeps away the symbols of royalty and aristocratic ...

Revolutionaries storm the Berlin Arsenal, 1848.
Prussian revolutionaries storm the Arsenal in Berlin in search of weapons during the short-lived Revolution of

...

Royalty trembles before appearance of Liberty.
The crowned heads of Europe tremble before the apparition of a sea monster, Liberty, during the revolutions of 1848. The February Revolution in ...

The German National Assembly, Frankfurt, 1848.
The German National Assembly in Paulskirche, Frankfurt, 1848. In May of that year the German states met in Frankfurt in an attempt to achieve ...

Louis Philippe, the Citizen King

"La Cruche," a cartoon lampooning Charles X.
"La Cruche," a cartoon lampooning Charles X of France, who came to the throne in 1824. As Comte d'Artois, he had led the counterrevolutionary ...

"Monsieur Guizot de la Guizotine."
"Monsieur Guizot de la Guizotine." During the Bourbon Restoration, François Guizot (1787-1874) was an active opponent of the reactionary ...

"The John-Bull Fight of Louis-Philippe."
"The John-Bull Fight of Louis-Philippe." The entente cordiale that had existed between France and England broke down in 1846 over the affair ...

"The Legislative Belly," by Honoré Daumier.
"The Legislative Belly," by Honoré Daumier. Under the July Monarchy, the legislative assembly was elected by a small percentage of the ...

A barricade in the French 1830 July Revolution.
A barricade built during the 1830 July Revolution in France. In July of that year the reactionary policies of Charles X climaxed with the ...

A caricature of Louis-Philippe as a pear.
Les Poires , the caricature of Louis-Philippe as a pear. The reign of Louis-Philippe became repressive almost immediately upon its ...

A cartoon about the creation of Belgium in 1830.
A cartoon about the creation of Belgium in 1830. In order to establish a buffer between France and Germany, the Congress of Vienna created a ...

Louis-Philippe rides into Paris, 1830.
Louis-Philippe rides into Paris during the Revolution of 1830. Some leaders of the July Revolution wanted to do away with the monarchy ...

Metternich and Francis II react to revolutions.
Clemens von Metternich and Emperor Francis II of Austria react to the revolutionary ferment of 1830. When the July Revolution broke out in ...

The French campaign in Algeria.
The French military campaign in Algeria soon after the 1830 conquest. The French remained in Algeria and went on to conquer the entire country. ...

The Parisian poor in 1831.
The Parisian poor in 1831. These people, with their tattered clothing, are intended as a living reproach to the high cost of Louis-Philippe's ...

The Rhine crisis of 1840.
The Rhine crisis of 1840. The French government under Adolphe Thiers, frustrated in its Middle Eastern ambitions, began to agitate for expansion ...

Troops join with revolutionaries.
Troops fraternize with the revolutionaries during the July Revolution of 1830 in France. One key to the success of the July Revolution was the ...

Section K: Colonialism, Nationalism, and Militarism, 1850 - 1914

Overview: Colonialism, Nationalism, 1850 - 1914.
A brief video Overview of the history of the period of colonialism, nationalism, and militarism in Europe from 1850 to 1914. Transcript: In the ...

Finance, Technology and Transportation

A boring machine in the Mont Cenis tunnel.
A boring machine at work in the Mont Cenis tunnel. This eight-mile-long tunnel, which linked the Paris-Lyons railway with north Italy, was the ...

A ship used in laying the Atlantic cable.
The stern of the H.M.S. Agamemnon, one of the ships used for laying the Atlantic cable, pictured in ...

Atlantic cable ready for shipment, 1857.
Atlantic cable ready for shipment from East Greenwich, England, 1857. The attempt to link England and the United States by cable was begun in ...

The Corinthian Canal in Greece.
The Corinthian Canal in Greece. In ancient times mariners used to drag their ships across the isthmus of Corinth, and the idea of constructing a ...

The Forth Railway Bridge, Scotland.
The central spans of the Forth Railway Bridge, built across the Firth of Forth in Scotland between 1883 and 1890. Advances in engineering and ...

Threshing machine on Trans-Siberian Railroad.
An American threshing machine on a car of the Trans-Siberian Railroad. In the second half of the 19th

century, Siberia became an important and ...

Air Transportation

A man with a box kite in Germany.
A man with a box kite, in Germany, ca. 1897. The Chinese invented kites about 1000 B.C. and were believed to have built them large enough to ...

A Zeppelin dirigible airship Model Z2 in 1908.
An early Zeppelin dirigible airship Model Z2 on Lake Constance in Switzerland, ...

An early airplane designed by Arnold Coblitz.
An early airplane with flapping wings designed and built by a man named Arnold Coblitz. Apparently this was one of the many designs that did not ...

Control car of the Zeppelin Deutschland .
The under side and open-air control car of the German Zeppelin dirigible Deutschland , ca. ...

Crew of balloon L'Universe after failure.
The crew of the Tissandier balloon L'Universe after its catastrophic descent in 1875. The Tissandier brothers, Gaston and Albert, were French ...

Graf Ferdinand von Zeppelin
Graf (Count) Ferdinand von Zeppelin (1838-1917). In 1900 this former German army officer invented the rigid airships bearing his name. ...

Louis Bleriot at his plane's controls, 1909.
Louis Bleriot at the wheel of his XI monoplane, July 25, 1909. Moments after this photo was taken, Bleriot took off on his history-making first ...

Louis Blériot on his cross-Channel flight, 1909.
Louis Blériot on his first cross-Channel flight, July 25, 1909. The distance flown was about 24 miles, taking 38 minutes, at an altitude of 250 ...

Otto Lilienthal in one of his hanging gliders.
Otto Lilienthal in one of his hanging gliders, ca. 1895. The German aviation pioneer Otto Lilienthal (1848-1896) worked with gliders and was the ...

Santos Dumont's 14-bis airplane in flight.
The Brazilian aeronaut Alberto Santos Dumont's 14-bis airplane in flight at Paris, November 12, 1906. It had a 50-horsepower engine. Santos ...

The first powered flight.
The first powered flight of a heavier-than-air machine, at Kill Devil Hill, North Carolina, on December 17, 1903. Orville Wright (1871-1948), a ...

The French military dirigible " Republique ".
The French military dirigible " Republique " in 1907. Other nations were quick to follow Germany's lead and adopted the dirigible for military ...

The Tissandier-Wright airplane in France.
The Tissandier-Wright airplane flying in France. The Wrights spent considerable time in Europe, demonstrating their airplanes and licensing ...

Automobiles

A 1902 Mercedes Simplex.
A 1902 Mercedes Simplex, which is generally agreed to be a principal progenitor of the modern motor car. This car had a pressed steel frame, a ...

A Peugeot automobile built in 1892.
A Peugeot automobile built in 1892. The French also pioneered in the automobile industry. Armand Peugeot (1848-1915) built a gasoline-powered ...

A Peugeot automobile, built in 1906.
A Peugeot "Torpedo," built in 1906. It was powered by a four-cylinder, 12-horsepower engine, and was among the earliest autos to have a ...

Gottleib Daimler in motorized carriage, 1886.
Gottleib Daimler (1834-1900), the founder of one of the companies which became Mercedes-Benz, in an 1886 motorized carriage with his son driving. ...

Karl Benz driving a patent motor wagon, 1887.
Karl Benz (1844-1929), the founder of one of the companies which became Mercedes-Benz, driving a "patent motor-wagon," ca. 1887. In 1885 Benz, ...

Peugeot cars at Grand Prix, Lyons, France, 1914.
Peugeot racing cars at the Grand Prix race in Lyons, France, 1914. The invention of the automobile gave rise to a new sport when manufacturers ...

Nation Building, 1850-1871

Alliances of Nation-States

"The Game of the Day," a cartoon, 1879.
"The Game of the Day," a cartoon depicting the European diplomatic situation of 1879 as a tennis game. Bismarck asks Austrian foreign minister ...

Cartoon opposing French Republic pact with tsar.
"Loudly, Madame, at the top of your lungs; as if you were singing The Marseillaise !" French President Félix Faure tries to convince the ...

Hadol's comic map of Europe in 1871.
Hadol's comic map of Europe in 1871: England drowns itself in gin. France mourns for Alsace-Lorraine.

Portugal awaits annexation by Spain. ...

The Three Emperors' League.

The Three Emperors' League. Consisting of Prussia, Russia and Austria, this league was essentially a revival of the Holy Alliance, upholding ...

The Triple Alliance: Austria, Germany, Italy.

The Triple Alliance. Austria and Germany united in a defensive alliance in 1879, and were joined by Italy in 1882. In this cartoon, Bismarck ...

France: Napoleon III, 1852-1870

"Imperial flunkies."

"Imperial flunkies." A police spy gives a speech before a worker's club during the Second Empire. Especially in the 1860s, the empire meant ...

"The Empire Means Peace," by Honoré Daumier.

"The Empire Means Peace," by Honoré Daumier. Napoleon III's promise of peace was belied by the reality of war in the Crimea, Italy, Mexico, and ...

"The Empress Eugénie's new Abyssinian page."

"The Empress Eugénie's new Abyssinian page." The empress was said to have been partial to black ...

A cartoon about French premier Jules Ferry.

Ferry the Astrologer. In this cartoon Jules Ferry, the French premier 1880-1881 and 1883-1885, who has been too busy gazing at the moon, Tonkin ...

Emperor Maximilian of Mexico.

Emperor Maximilian of Mexico. Among the goals of Napoleon III's foreign policy was the establishment of a Catholic state in Latin America under ...

Execution of Emperor Maximilian of Mexico, 1867.

The execution of Emperor Maximilian of Mexico, 1867. The effort by the French to control Mexico ended when Mexican guerrillas under Benito ...

Napoleon III and Bismarck at Biarritz in 1865.

Napoleon III and Otto von Bismarck at Biarritz in 1865. Prussia's aggressiveness in foreign policy inspired Napoleon to seek compensation. In ...

Napoleon III at the Battle of Magenta, 1859.

Napoleon III at the Battle of Magenta, 1859. In 1859 Napoleon III, posing as a liberator, went to war to aid Italy in its struggle for ...

Napoleon III depicted as a vulture.

Napoleon III depicted as a vulture. The first half of the Second Empire was characterized by dictatorial rule, although one whose harshness was ...

Napoleon III flanked by two of his ministers.

Napoleon III, flanked by two of his ministers, Emile Ollivier (left) and Baron Georges Haussmann. Ollivier was a former Republican opponent in ...

Napoleon III, the French emperor 1852-1870.

Napoleon III (1808-1873), Emperor of the French from 1852 to 1870. A nephew of Napoleon I, he twice attempted to overthrow the July Monarchy by ...

Opening of the French Senate, 1852.

The opening session of the French Senate and Legislative Body, 1852. During the first part of the Second Empire, these bodies were virtually ...

State ball at Napoleon III's Tuileries Palace.

A state ball at the Tuileries Palace, the residence of Napoleon III and the Empress Eugénie. Throughout the Second Empire, dress balls at the ...

The Battle of Solferino, July 1859.

The Battle of Solferino, July 1859. This bloody encounter ended with Austrian withdrawal from the war against France and ...

Holland and Spain

Albert I of Belgium (1875-1934).

Albert I (1875-1934), king of the Belgians from 1909 to 1934, was the nephew of and successor to Leopold II and was succeeded by his son Leopold ...

Alfonso XII of Spain (1857-1885).

Alfonso XII (1857-1885) king of Spain from 1874 to 1885. This popular monarch consolidated governmental power, restrained republican political ...

Alfonso XIII of Spain and his Queen Victoria.

King Alfonso XIII of Spain (1886-1941) with his Queen Victoria. Alfonso reigned from his birth in 1886 until he was deposed in 1931; he then ...

Queen Wilhelmina (1880-1962).

Queen Wilhelmina (1880-1962), who ruled the Netherlands from 1890 to 1948. She inherited the throne at the age of ten and her mother acted as ...

Prussia and Germany, The Unification of Germanic Territories

"Bismarck content as colonial powers scramble."

In this cartoon, Bismarck sits content as the other world powers scramble for the spoils of colonial empires. Germany did not enter the race for ...

"Bismarck forces army budget on the Reichstag."

In this cartoon, Bismarck forces the Reichstag to swallow the army budget. The sabre-rattling of French General Georges Boulanger (pictured as ...

"Of One Mind (For Once!)."
With Pope Leo XIII, Bismarck tries to keep the forces of nihilism, democracy, and socialism outside of the door of the state. The year 1879 ...
Cartoon, ruthless means to gain German unity.
"German Unity." This is French political cartoonist Honoré Daumier's view of the ruthless means employed by Bismarck to obtain German unity. ...
Krupp's great gun.
Krupp's great gun. The Krupp family of Essen, Germany, had been munitions manufacturers since the 16th century. They expanded into mining, ...
Map: the unification of Germany, 1866-1871.
A map showing the stages of German unification, 1866-1871. The medieval Holy Roman Empire had nominally united the hundreds of independent ...
Otto von Bismarck.
Otto von Bismarck, 1815-1898. Nicknamed the Iron Chancellor, Bismarck was the premier of Prussia from 1862 to 1890 and chancellor of Germany ...
William I, Emperor of Germany, 1871-1888.
William I, King of Prussia 1861-1888, and the first emperor of modern Germany, 1871-1888. Although an arch-conservative, William I (1797-1888) ...
William II, Emperor of Germany 1888-1918.
William II (1859-1941) was Emperor of Germany from 1888 to 1918. When he became emperor he refused to cooperate with Bismarck's plans to reduce ...

Russia

"Nicholas II and his People."
"Nicholas II and his People." As a result of the Russian Revolution of 1905, Tsar Nicholas II (1868-1915) granted a constitution (the October ...
"Our Constitution; please do not breathe on it."
"Our Constitution; please do not breathe on it." A cartoon depicting the Russian Constitution of 1905 as a house of ...
A joiner's workshop, Russia, 1896.
A joiner's workshop, in the Urals region of Russia, 1896. In this period Russia was relatively backward in terms of industrialization, but the ...
A Russian priest in the Russo-Japanese War, 1905.
A Russian priest prays over the dead during the 1905 Russo-Japanese War. The stunning Japanese victory over a European power caused much concern ...
Alexander III, tsar from 1881 to 1894, and family.
Tsar Alexander III, who ruled from 1881 to 1894, and his family. An autocrat in every respect, Alexander strengthened the power of the police, ...
Cossacks slaughter people of Odessa, 1905.
Cossacks slaughter the people of Odessa during the Russian Revolution of 1905, which in part was sparked by Russia's poor showing in the ...
In Russia of Nicholas I, "the walls have ears."
A traveler, newly arrived in the Russia of Nicholas I, discovers that "the walls have ears". The autocratic policies of Tsar Nicholas I ...
Japanese bombard Port Arthur.
Japanese gunners bombard the Russian naval base at Port Arthur. Russia fared poorly in the ...
Russian battleship hit by Japanese fire.
A Russian battleship is hit by Japanese fire at Tsushima, 1905. Rivalry between Japan and Russia over influence in Korea and Manchuria led to ...
Russian nobles use serfs in a card game, 1854.
Russian nobles use their serfs as stakes in a card game, 1854. Serfs were persons in a condition of servitude to a noble, usually attached to ...
Russian peasants, about 1909-1915.
Russian peasants about 1909-1915. The emancipation of the serfs in 1861 failed to solve the peasants' problems. The decree required that they ...
Russian worker with his son and granddaughter.
Andrei Kalganov, a retired skilled worker, with his son and granddaughter. They are pictured in Zlatonist, a city in the Urals, about 1909-1915. ...
Russians arrive at Treaty Conference.
Russian delegates arrive at the Portsmouth Treaty Conference, August 5, 1905. U.S. President Theodore Roosevelt had invited Japan and Russia to ...
The Zlatonist Iron Works.
The Zlatonist Iron Works (founded in 1747) in the Ural Mountains, and a Russian Orthodox church. By 1750, Russia was producing more iron than ...

The Crimean War, 1853-1856

A portrait of Florence Nightingale.
A portrait of Florence Nightingale (1820-1910) by T. Cole. Her humanitarianism and sacrifice were rewarded when she returned to England, where ...
Allies at Sebastopol, Russian Crimean fortress.
The siege of Sebastopol during the Crimean War. Here an allied camp stands on the plateau before

Sebastopol (Sevastopol), the great Russian ...

British Foot Guards at Scutari, 1854.
British Foot Guards at Scutari in the Bosphorus, at the entrance to the Black Sea, 1854. Scutari was used by Britain and France as a marshaling ...

Charge of the Light Brigade, Battle of Balaklava.
The charge of the British Light Cavalry Brigade, at the Battle of Balaklava during the Crimean War. Among the most celebrated of all military ...

Florence Nightingale in her hospital at Scutari.
Florence Nightingale in her military hospital at Scutari during the Crimean War. Nightingale (1820-1910) organized a unit of 38 women nurses for ...

Fraternization during the Crimean War.
Fraternization of the British Horse Guards and the French Cent Gardes at Boulogne during the Crimean War. They drink to Queen Victoria's ...

French infantry lands at Gallipolli.
Landing of French infantry at Gallipolli, Turkey, during the Crimean War of 1853 to 1856. A dispute among France, Russia and Turkey over control ...

H.M. Steam Sloop Fury vs. Russian ships.
H.M. Steam Sloop Fury vs. Russian ships, March 28, 1854. This color lithograph depicts the first naval engagement of the British and French ...

Montenegrin soldiers in their native dress.
Montenegrin soldiers in their native dress, in the Crimean War. These soldiers were part of the Turkish army. Photograph by Roger ...

Roger Fenton's photographic van.
Roger Fenton's photographic van with one of his assistants. The first photographic record of warfare was made during the Crimean War by the ...

The Battle of Inkerman, in the Crimean War.
The Battle of Inkerman, in the Crimean War. A Russian attack at Inkerman in November 1854 inflicted such heavy losses on the British and French ...

Turkish fleet destroyed by Russians, 1853.
The destruction of the Turkish fleet by the Russians, 1853. This surprise attack by the Russians started the Crimean War when France and Britain ...

The Franco-Prussian War

Alsace-Lorraine: "You may take me..."
"You may take me, but I'll never be yours." Victorious in the war of 1870-1871, Prussia took Alsace and part of Lorraine from France. Revenge ...

Battle of Chevilly, Franco-Prussian War, 1870.
The battle of the Chevilly, during the Franco-Prussian War, September 1870. An altered telegram published by Bismarck had tricked Napoleon III ...

Cartoon about food crisis in Paris.
This cartoon takes a lighthearted view of the serious food crisis in Paris during the siege of the city by Prussia in the winter of 1870-1871. ...

Count Helmuth von Moltke (1800-1891).
Count Helmuth von Moltke (1800-1891) was named chief of the Prussian General Staff in 1858. He shaped the Prussian army into a formidable ...

Gambetta's balloon flight from Paris.
Leon Gambetta's balloon flight from Paris during the Franco-Prussian War. Gambetta (1838-1882) was the major figure in the provisional ...

Parisian cat and dog meat market in Paris, 1870.
A rat, cat, and dog meat market in Paris during the siege of 1870-1871. Even the animals in the zoo were eaten by the desperate ...

The Papal States and Roman Catholicism

John Henry Cardinal Newman (1801-1890).
John Henry Cardinal Newman (1801-1890). Ordained in 1824 in the Church of England, Newman became a founder of the Oxford Movement, which hoped ...

Pope Leo XIII (1810-1903).
Pope Leo XIII (1810-1903). Born Gioacchino Pecci, Leo XIII ruled as pope from 1878 to 1903. An able government administrator before the Papal ...

Pope Pius IX opens the Vatican Council in 1869.
Pope Pius IX (1792-1878) opens the Vatican Council in 1869. In the early years of his pontificate, which began in 1846, Pius was a liberal, but ...

Pope Pius X.
Pope Pius X. Born Giuseppe Sarto in 1835, Pius X served as pope from 1903 to 1914, and was canonized (made a saint) in 1954 by Pius XII. In ...

The Grotto at Lourdes.
The Grotto of Massabielle at Lourdes. In this cavern Bernadette Soubirous (1844-1879) claimed to have had eighteen appearances of the Virgin ...

The Unification of Italy

"Italian Politics."
"Italian Politics." Italian Prime Minister Francesco Crispi (1818-1901) is depicted in this 1888 cartoon as a

puppet controlled by Bismarck. ...

A victorious Garibaldi enters Naples.
A victorious Garibaldi enters Naples. In 1860, Garibaldi led a successful rebellion in Sicily against King Francis II, and then crossed the ...

Count Camillo di Cavour (1810-1861).
Count Camillo di Cavour (1810-1861). More than any other person, Cavour is credited with the unification of Italy. As prime minister of ...

Francis Joseph I, Austrian Emperor 1848-1916.
Francis Joseph I was Emperor of Austria from 1848 to 1916 and King of Hungary from 1867 to 1916. His long reign was marked by discontent among ...

Humbert I of Italy.
Humbert I of Italy, who ruled from 1878-1900, was the second ruler of the united Italy. Social turmoil continued to plague Italy after its ...

Hungarians vs. Austria in Italian liberation war.
Hungarian volunteers fighting for Austria against the French in the war for Italian liberation, ...

Map: the unification of Italy, 1859-1870.
A map showing the stages of the unification of Italy, 1859-1870. After the disintegration of the Western Roman Empire, the Italian peninsula ...

Neapolitan troops met by Garibaldi's forces.
The Neapolitan troops of King Francis II are surprised by Garibaldi's forces in a ravine in 1860. Francis II managed to hold out against ...

The people of Naples cast their ballots.
The people of Naples cast their ballots in favor of union with the north. After Garibaldi and his volunteers liberated the Kingdom of the Two ...

Victor Emmanuel II, King of Sardinia and Italy.
Victor Emmanuel II, King of Sardinia from 1849 to 1861, and King of Italy from 1861 to 1878. Under the leadership of his prime minister, Cavour, ...

National Socio-Political Revolutions

Edward VII, 1901-1910; Nobility and Commoners

A socialist addresses a London crowd in 1911.
A socialist addresses a group of people in London in 1911. The reforms of the Liberals failed to prevent a series of strikes in mines and ...

Blackleg driver is given a police escort, 1911.
A "blackleg" (or scab) wagon driver is given a police escort during the London transport workers' strike of 1911. The workers of England, ...

David Lloyd George, Member of Parliament.
David Lloyd George (1863-1945) was elected to Parliament from Wales in 1890. He was largely responsible for the program of social reforms ...

Edward VII of England, 1901-1910.
Edward VII of England (1841-1910) came to the throne in 1901 at the relatively advanced age of 60, after a life spent in almost complete ...

Edward VII poses in an automobile in 1902.
Edward VII poses in an automobile in 1902. As king, Edward was liberal in his sympathies, unlike his mother. During his reign, which lasted ...

The National Insurance Bill of 1911.
A cartoon about the National Insurance Bill of 1911. David Lloyd George and Winston Churchill sponsored this act, which insured the working ...

Video sequence: 1910 funeral of Edward VII.
A video sequence concerning the funeral of Edward VII. The passing of Britain's King Edward VII in 1910 marked the passing of an age, and his ...

Winston Churchill (1874-1965).
A young Winston Spencer Churchill (1874-1965). Winston S. Churchill was the grandson of the Duke of Marlborough, a fact that gave him access to ...

England, 1850-1901: Queen Victoria, Suffrage and Ireland

"A crucified Ireland cries out."
"A crucified Ireland cries out, 'Oh God, whom I have implored so long, is it possible that you are English?'" Toward the end of the 19th ...

"Dishing the Whigs."
"Dishing the Whigs." Benjamin Disraeli, the Tory leader, beat the liberal Whigs at their own game when he successfully sponsored the Reform Act ...

"Political Tailors."
"Political Tailors." Disraeli sews the garment, Reform Bill, while liberal Gladstone declares he is on strike. The bill, which passed with ...

A satire about the Prince of Wales' youth.
"Latest from America." "If you'll liquor up and sit down, I'll tell you all about my travels," says the young Prince of Wales to his father, ...

Benjamin Disraeli, British statesman and author.

The British statesman and author Benjamin Disraeli, (1804-1881), the 1st Earl of Beaconsfield. Disraeli, born Jewish, converted to Christianity ...

British cartoon ridiculing habits of Irish poor.

"The Gintleman that pays the rint," a British cartoon ridiculing the habits of the Irish poor. The tourist asks Pat, "Is it possible that you ...

Charles Stuart Parnell addresses a meeting.

Charles Stuart Parnell addresses a meeting. Parnell (1846-1891) united the advocates of land reform and Irish Home Rule. He was elected to ...

Prince Albert.

Albert (1819-1861), Prince Consort to Queen Victoria, was the youngest son of a German duke. He married his cousin, Queen Victoria, who was much ...

Queen Victoria, a photo made late in her reign.

Queen Victoria of England, a photo made late in her reign. Victoria (1819-1901) gave her name to an age, and during her reign from 1837 to 1901, ...

Sandringham House, a royal country residence.

Sandringham House, a 19th-century country residence of the British royal family. Sandringham was purchased in 1861 with its park and lands by ...

William Ewart Gladstone, Liberal Party leader.

William Ewart Gladstone (1809-1898) took over the reigns of the Liberal Party when Henry Palmerston died in 1856. He served as prime minister ...

France's Third Republic, 1870-1914: Monarchy or Republic?

"Emperor Boulanger I."

"Emperor Boulanger I." This cartoon lampoons the Napoleonic ambitions of General Georges Boulanger. (Brumaire refers to the coup of Louis ...

"France pulled toward republic and monarchy."

France is pulled in two directions at once, toward a republic and a monarchy. In 1873, Adolphe Thiers was replaced as President of the Third ...

"The Fourth Estate Arises."

"The Fourth Estate Arises." Georges Clemenceau, the leader of the Radical Party, tries to seize the May Day banner in order to lead and channel ...

"The Ideal of Certain Newspapers."

A cartoon, "The Ideal of Certain Newspapers." Honoré Daumier depicts Bismarck and the French National Assembly as a happy couple. The French ...

"The Temptation."

"The Temptation." Artist Alfred Le Petit uses the theme of the temptation of St. Anthony to illustrate the plight of Adolphe Thiers, the head of ...

Cartoon, Thiers as rural vote magician.

"The Trickster." Elections held in 1871,after the fall of the Second Empire, returned a heavily monarchist National Assembly. Its support ...

Marshal Patrice de MacMahon replaced Thiers.

Marshal Patrice de MacMahon crushes universal suffrage and ties Paris to an execution post. MacMahon (1808-1893) was named by the monarchist ...

Scandal about selling Legion of Honor medals.

A scandal about the sale of Legion of Honor medals, 1887. In 1887 it was revealed that French President Jules Grevy's son-in-law, Deputy Daniel ...

The pope recruits helpers to defend ignorance.

"Ignorance in Danger." In this cartoon, the pope recruits volunteers to defend ignorance. In the 1880s, anticlericalism (opposition to the ...

The Reactionary Committee.

The Reactionary Committee. The various royalist factions in France (Bonapartism, Orléanism, and Legitimism) have given birth to a sorry-looking ...

France's Third Republic, 1870-1914: The Dreyfus Affair and its Consequences

J'Accuse , by Emile Zola.

J'Accuse, by Emile Zola. This article appeared on page 1 of the January 13, 1898, issue of Georges Clemenceau's newspaper, L'Aurore . Its ...

"A Necessary Separation of church and state."

"A Necessary Separation of church and state." Starting in the 1880s, anticlericalism (opposition to the influence of the Church) was a major ...

Alfred Dreyfus and his family in 1894.

Alfred Dreyfus and his family in 1894. The Dreyfus affair reflected and exacerbated the deep schism in France between royalist, militarist, ...

Captain Alfred Dreyfus (second from right).

Captain Alfred Dreyfus (second from right). In 1894, Dreyfus (1859-1935) was convicted of treason on flimsy evidence, primarily because he was ...

Georges Clemenceau (1841-1929).

Georges Clemenceau (1841-1929). Known as "the Tiger" because of his aggressive style in politics, Clemenceau began his career as a physician. ...

Priests prepare to leave France in 1904.

Priests watch while their trunks are loaded on a cart as they prepare to leave France in 1904. Under the

leadership of Émile Combes, several ...

France's Third Republic, 1870-1914: The Paris Commune, 1871

Pétroleuses.
Pétroleuses. This was the name given to women accused of setting fires in Paris during the Commune of 1871. No evidence for their existence ...

"The Debacle."
"The Debacle." Of those Communards who were not shot or imprisoned, thousands were exiled to distant places. En route, about 3,000 died. For ...

A cartoon on the Paris Commune of 1871.
A cartoon on the Paris Commune of 1871. "I wish to be free. It is my right and I will defend it." One motive that lay behind establishment ...

Communard prisoners are shot.
Communard prisoners are shot in the Luxembourg gardens. In the fighting that took place during the Commune, 4,000 insurrectionists lost their ...

Fall of the Vendôme column, 1871.
The fall of the Vendôme column during the Paris Commune , 1871. Courbet, who organized the event, wanted to replace it with a monument to ...

Members of the Paris Commune.
Members of the Paris Commune. The people of Paris rose in rebellion in March 1871 to protest the peace with Germany, and the exclusion of the ...

Plea by the bronze men of the Vendôme column.
A cartoon showing a humble plea made by the bronze men of the Vendôme column. The column glorified Napoleon I, and the Communards wished to ...

The Hôtel de Ville of Paris in flames, 1871.
The Hôtel de Ville (the city hall) of Paris in flames, 1871. The government of Thiers suppressed the Paris Commune during one "Bloody Week" ...

The Basilica Sacre Coeur in Paris, France.
The Basilica Sacre Coeur in Paris, France (built 1876-1919, designed by Abadie.) After the disastrous Franco-Prussian War of 1870 and the ...

Théophile Ferré, Paris Commune member.
Théophile Ferré, a member of the Paris Commune . He served for a time as the Commune's public prosecutor, and won a reputation for militancy ...

Thiers extinguishes the light of press freedom.
Adolphe Thiers (1797-1877) extinguishes the light of freedom of the press. After the fall of France's Second Empire, Thiers served as President ...

Physical and Mental Illnesses

British physician Elizabeth Garrett Anderson.
A cartoon depicting the British physician Elizabeth Garrett Anderson (1836-1917). After failing to gain admittance to medical school because of ...

Chalets at Salpêtrière for women patients.
Chalets for women patients at the Salpêtrière mental institution, ca. 1852. The windows are without glass to prevent the inmates from harming ...

Dr. Robert Heinrich Herman Koch (1843-1910).
The German physician and bacteriologist Dr. Robert Heinrich Herman Koch (1843-1910) demonstrated that tuberculosis and anthrax are caused by ...

English bacteriologist Sir Ronald Ross.
The English bacteriologist Sir Ronald Ross (1857-1932), who won the 1902 Nobel Prize in physiology (medicine) for his discovery that malaria is ...

Lister carbolic spray as an antiseptic.
The use of Lister carbolic spray as an antiseptic. Following on the observations and experiences of Louis Pasteur, the writer/physician Oliver ...

Louis Pasteur in his laboratory, 1885.
Louis Pasteur in his laboratory, 1885. Pasteur (1822-1895) was the most significant figure in the development of bacteriology. His most ...

Patients at the Salpêtrière mental institution.
Patients at Salpêtrière, ca. 1857. Salpêtrière was one of France's most famous mental institutions. It became a symbol of the neglectful, ...

Paul Ehrlich (1854-1915), German bacteriologist.
Paul Ehrlich (1854-1915) was a German bacteriologist who pioneered in the fields of haematology, immunology, and chemotherapy, and discovered ...

Sigmund Freud (1856-1939).
Sigmund Freud (1856-1939), a Viennese physician, was the founder of psychoanalysis. Freud explained human behavior by positing unconscious ...

The English surgeon Joseph Lister (1827-1912).
The English surgeon Joseph Lister, 1st Baron Lister (1827-1912),who in 1865 founded modern antiseptic surgery. Lister used carbolic acid as an ...

The Hungarian physician Ignaz P. Semmelwiess.
Ignaz P. Semmelwiess (1818-1865) was a Hungarian physician who did pioneering work in the control of childbed fever, the often fatal infection of ...

The Russian psychologist Ivan Pavlov.
The Russian psychologist Ivan Pavlov (1849-1936). Pavlov's work concentrated on circulation and digestion. Beginning in 1902 he studied what ...

Supports of the Urban Revolution: Science

"Natural Selection," a caricature of Darwin.
"Natural Selection," a caricature of Charles Darwin (1809-1882). Darwin's theories proved highly controversial not only because they ...
Albert Einstein (1879-1955).
Albert Einstein (1879-1955). His elaboration in 1905 of the theory of relativity, of the equivalence of matter and energy, and his work on ...
Cartoon satirizing Darwin's theory.
The central part of a cartoon, "Man is but a Worm," satirizing Darwin's theory. Evolution proceeds counterclockwise from the upper left corner, ...
Ernest Lord Rutherford (1871-1937).
Ernest Lord Rutherford (1871-1937) was a noted English physicist who had been born in New Zealand. He discovered "alpha" and "beta" radiation ...
German scientist Heinrich Hertz (1857-1894).
The German scientist Heinrich Hertz (1857-1894) was a professor of physics at the University of Bonn, Germany. His work on electromagnetism led ...
Italian inventor Gugliemo Marconi (1874-1937).
Italian inventor Gugliemo Marconi (1874-1937). Born into a wealthy Bologna family, Marconi was the first entrepreneur of wireless telegraphy. ...
Lord Kelvin, heat and electricity pioneer.
Lord Kelvin (William Thomson, 1824-1907) was a British scientist who was recognized for his contributions in the fields of heat and electricity. ...
Louis Lumière, pioneer French cinematographer.
Louis Lumière (1864-1948) was a pioneer French cinematographer. Lumière, a trained physicist and the son of a photographer, invented a device ...
Marconi with his wireless telegraph.
Gugliemo Marconi demonstrating his wireless telegraph in England. In 1901, before Marconi was 30, he succeeded in sending wireless signals ...
Marie and Pierre Curie.
Marie Curie (1867-1934) with her husband Pierre (1859-1906) at the Radium Institute in Paris. Marie Curie's work with her husband Pierre Curie ...
Marie Curie (1867-1934).
Marie Curie. When her husband Pierre died in 1906, Marie was given the chair of physics that her husband had held at the Sorbonne. In 1911 she ...
The English naturalist Charles Darwin.
Charles Darwin (1809-1882), the English naturalist who proposed the theory of evolution. In his 1859 Origin of the Species Darwin hypothesized ...
The Observatory of Paris in 1849.
Looking through a telescope at the Observatory of Paris in 1849. This observatory was built between 1667 and 1672, and still exists ...
Thomas Henry Huxley (1825-1895).
Thomas Henry Huxley (1825-1895) was an English philosopher and proponent of Darwin's ideas. Huxley, Darwin's most vigorous defender, was unable ...
William Konrad von Roentgen (1845-1923).
William Konrad von Roentgen (1845-1923), a Bavarian, held positions in the physics departments of the universities of Strasbourg, Geissen, ...

Revolutions: Effects of Industrialization

Emigration

Emigrants on a ship, 1902.
Emigrants on a ship, 1902. From about 1871 to 1900, twenty-five million Europeans left the Europe for North and South America. They came ...
Farmhouse beside Trans-Siberian Railroad.
A farmhouse on the Trans-Siberian Railroad, ca 1909. Though the Czars used exile to Siberia as a punishment, they also made it available to ...
Italian emigrants bound for the U.S., 1905.
Italian emigrants bound for the U.S. 1905. In addition to the U.S., a sizable Italian community was established in ...
Poster for a transatlantic steamship voyage, 1873.
A part of an 1873 poster for a transatlantic steamship voyage. For centuries the Atlantic had been crossed by sail, but in 1827 the first ...
Prosperous farmhouse near Trans-Siberian Railroad.
The farmhouse of a prosperous exile in Siberia, location not given, ca. ...
Trans-Siberian Railroad immigrant train.
A second-class immigrant train at a trans-Siberian railway station, location not given, ca. ...

Peasants

"The Village Festival," English rural life.
"The Village Festival," a scene of English rural life in the late 19th ...
A small village on the Trans-Siberian railroad.
A small village on the Trans-Siberian ...
French peasants harrowing, 1906.
French peasants harrowing, 1906. The harrow leveled the ground and covered the seeds after they were sowed. These peasants were too poor to own ...
French wine-growers during the strike of 1907.
A demonstration by French wine-growers during the strike of 1907. The prewar years were an era of massive, militant strikes in France. In 1907, ...
Harvest home parade, England, 1863.
A harvest home parade at Swallow field, near Reading, England, 1863. The harvest home celebration was a festival held each year in thanksgiving ...
Russian peasant women doing laundry.
Russian peasant women do their laundry on a raft in a river, about ...
Russian peasants about 1909-1915.
Russian peasants enjoy balalaika music and tea from a samovar, about 1909-1915. The leather or thick felt boots worn by the man on the right ...
Russian village of Tokarevka, about 1909-1915.
The Russian village of Tokarevka, about 1909-1915. In pre-Revolutionary Russia, about 90 percent of the population lived in villages like this. ...
Video sequence: Fox hunt, ca. 1900.
A video sequence concerning fox hunting, a traditional activity of the upper class. In stark contrast to the lives of peasants and workers, many ...

Poor Working Conditions, Wages and Housing for Workers

"Over London by Rail," housing for the poor.
"Over London by Rail": housing for the poor, ca. 1872. The advent of rail transportation exacerbated the housing problem which had been ...
A pawnshop in Paris, ca. 1852.
A pawnshop in Paris, ca. 1852. The pawnshops, or monts-de-pieté , were long-established institutions in the life of the urban ...
A soup kitchen in London's East End, 1867.
A soup kitchen in London's East End, 1867. More than 1000 poor people were fed here each day. The distribution of food began at noon, but ...
Housing for the working class in Glasgow.
Housing for the working class in Glasgow, ca. 1870. In the 19th century, Glasgow, one of Britain's major industrial areas, had some of the worst ...
Men and boys leave the pits in Derbyshire, 1912.
Miners, men and boys, leaving the pits in Derbyshire after the proclamation of a coal strike in 1912. The coal miners of Britain struck for a ...
Middle-class charity.
Middle-class charity: the visit to the brickmaker's home. Especially after periods of discontent, such as Chartism, the Revolutions of 1848, and ...
Room of a military tailor and his family, 1863.
A room occupied by a military tailor and his family in the Bethnal Green district of London's East End, 1863. The entire family, including the ...
The poor in London's Whitechapel district.
The poor in London's Whitechapel district, ca. 1872. Whitechapel was one of the city's poorest and most densely populated areas. Facilities for ...
Workers' housing in Alsace, France, 1861.
Workers' housing in Mulhouse, a cotton textile center in Alsace, France, 1861. This "worker city" was built by the mill owner, and it contained ...
Working-class houses in coal-mining France.
Working-class houses at Bully-les-Mines, in the coal-mining area of France's Pas-de-Calais, ca. 1907. This was probably rental housing, since ...

Socialism and Marxism

Herbert Spencer, who founded "Social Darwinism."
Herbert Spencer (1820-1903) applied Darwinian principles of evolution to psychology, sociology, and ethics. The result, "Social Darwinism," ...
John Stuart Mill (1806-1873).
John Stuart Mill (1806-1873) was a civil servant, Member of Parliament, champion of women's rights, and the most important British philosopher of ...
Karl Marx (1818-1883).
Karl Marx (1818-1883) was the chief theorist of modern socialism and communism. He rejected Utopian solutions and formulated instead a ...
Socialist leader Jean Jaurès.
Jean Jaurès (1859-1914) was the undisputed leader of French socialism in the years before World War I. A member of the Chamber of Deputies, he ...

The first worker elected to Parliament.
Keir Hardie (1856-1915), the founder of the Independent Labor Party in 1893, was the first worker elected to Parliament. He served as the leader ...

Steel Factories

A steel plant in the Ural mountains, early 1900s.
The Martenovskaia open-hearth steel plant near Mount Blagodat, in the Ural mountains area of Russia, about 1909-1915. Although the vast majority ...
Essen, Germany, ca. 1600.
Essen, Germany, ca. 1600. The city was originally the site of a fort, and a convent founded in the 8th century. In this picture, the wall built ...
Essen, Germany, in 1911.
Essen, Germany, in 1911. The Krupp armament complex dominates the city's skyline. In this early 20th century drawing, pollution from the ...
Making steel by the Bessemer process.
Making steel by the Bessemer process. Englishman Henry Bessemer (1813-1898) developed a cheap and rapid process of making steel from pig iron in ...
Steelworks at Le Creusot, France.
Steelworks at Le Creusot, France, ca. 1884. In 1781, ironworks were set up here by a French nobleman, Baron de Wendel. The Le Creusot works ...
Steelworks in the Saar.
Steelworks in Germany's Saar, ca. 1884. Rich deposits of coal attracted iron and steel works that made the area one of the most important ...
The steelworks at Charleroi, Belgium, 1910.
The steelworks at Charleroi, Belgium, 1910. Situated in a coal-mining region, this city was an early locus of Belgium's industrial revolution, ...

Women's Rights

A cartoon, " 'Ark to the sound of war, luv."
A cartoon, " 'Ark to the sound of war, luv." The outbreak of World War I meant postponement of solutions to many social problems, including ...
Emmeline Pankhurst, suffrage leader, arrested.
Emmeline Pankhurst, leader of the women's suffrage movement in Britain, is arrested, 1913. Pankhurst (1858-1928) founded the Women's Social and ...
Frenchman fires his pregnant shop girl.
"To the happiness of women." A French employer fires his shop girl after learning that she is pregnant. "She's pregnant?" he asks. "You know ...
Ridiculing Mill's defense of women's rights.
"The Ladies' Advocate." This cartoon ridicules John Stuart Mill's defense of women's rights. Mill (1806-1873), a philosopher and liberal ...
Suffragists march in London, ca. 1912.
Suffragists march in London, ca. 1912. Between 1906 and 1914 the suffragists of England used tactics that belied their proper middle-class ...
The arrest of a suffragist in London, ca. 1913.
The arrest of a suffragist in London, ca. ...

The Arts

Art and Architecture

The Lovers , a sculpture group by Rodin.
The Lovers , a sculpture group by Auguste Rodin (1840-1917). Rodin was born in Paris and trained there and in Brussels. His sculpture reflects ...
"Ballet Scene," by Edgar Degas.
"Ballet Scene," by Edgar Degas, ca. 1907. Parisian Degas (1834-1917) was influenced by photography, and he rejected balanced compositions in ...
A Barcelona theater styled b y Gaudi.
The exterior of a theater in the style of Antoní Gaudí, Barcelona, ...
A mosaic from Gaudi's Barcelona theater.
Detail showing the colorful mosaic surrounding the ticket window of a theater in the style of Antoní Gaudí, Barcelona, ...
Detail of the sculpture from the Sagrada Familia.
Detail of the sculpture on the west façade of the Sagrada Familia Cathedral by Antoní ...
Gustave Courbet, self-portrait.
A self-portrait of Gustave Courbet (1819-1877), who was a leading figure in the realist school of painting. He was also a socialist active in ...
The Sagrada Familia by Antoní Gaudí.
The Cathedral of La Sagrada Familia in Barcelona, Spain, designed by Antoní Gaudí (1852-1926). Gaudí was a Spanish architect who became the most ...

Literature

An Aubrey Beardsley illustration for a Wilde play.
An Aubrey Beardsley illustration for Oscar Wilde's play, Salome , 1894. In his brief career, Beardsley (1872-1898) evolved a highly original ...

Bertrand Russell, British intellectual.
Bertrand Arthur William Russell, the 3rd Earl Russell (1872-1970), British philosopher, mathematician, and social reformer. After writing ...
Charles Baudelaire, major 19th century poet.
The French Symbolist poet Charles Baudelaire (1821-1867) was one of the major poets of the 19th century. His life was burdened by debts and ...
Count Lev Tolstoy, Russian novelist.
The Russian novelist Count Lev Tolstoy (1828-1910). After a somewhat turbulent and dissipated youth, Tolstoy adopted a philosophy and way of ...
Emile Zola, founder of naturalism.
Emile Zola (1840-1902) was the founder of naturalism in French literature. His work reflected the uncritical acceptance of scientific ...
Feodor Mikhailovich Dostoyevsky (or Dostoevsky).
The Russian novelist Feodor Mikhailovich Dostoyevsky (or Dostoevsky, 1821-1881). He had been involved in revolutionary activities and in 1849 ...
George Bernard Shaw (1856-1950).
The Irish playwright and social critic George Bernard Shaw (1856-1950). Shaw revolutionized the Victorian stage with dramas about ideas, and in ...
Norwegian dramatist Henrik Ibsen (1828-1906).
The Norwegian dramatist Henrik Ibsen (1828-1906) was probably the most influential figure in modern theater. He had originally trained in ...
The Irish poet and dramatist Oscar Wilde.
Oscar Wilde (1854-1900) was an Irish poet and dramatist who flaunted his life of sensual indulgence as part of the "art for art's sake" movement ...
Thomas Hardy (1840-1928).
The English poet and novelist Thomas Hardy (1840-1928) won popular and enduring acclaim with his novel Far from the Madding Crowd (1874). Other ...

Music and Theater

La Scala, the opera house in Milan, Italy.
Boxes for the audience in the Teattro alla Scala, the world's most famous opera house, built between 1776 and 1778 at Milan, Italy. An opera ...
Claude Achille Debussy (1862-1918).
The French composer Claude Achille Debussy (1862-1918) is best known for his tone poem Prelude to the Afternoon of a Faun. Debussy introduced ...
Giuseppe Verdi (1813-1901).
Giuseppe Verdi (1813-1901), an Italian operatic composer. He is famous his operas Rigoletto, Il Trovatore, La Traviata, La forza del destino, ...
Interior of the Bavarian State Opera House.
The boxes and audience seating of the Bavarian State Opera House in Munich, photographed in ...
Sarah Bernhardt (1844-1923).
Sarah Bernhardt (1844-1923). Her real name was Rosine Bernard. Having been born in Paris, "the divine Sarah," as Oscar Wilde called her, ...
The English actress Lillie Langtry.
Lillie Langtry (1853-1929), was an English society woman who took up acting after her husband had failed in business. Never considered a great ...
The Opera House in Paris, France.
A recent photograph of the Opera House in Paris, France. It has seats for 2200 people and was built in the style of Napoleon III between 1862 ...
The Royal Opera House, Covent Garden, London.
A modern view of the Royal Opera House on Bow Street in Covent Garden. This building is the principal location for operatic and ballet ...
The Vienna Opera House, built in 1869.
A recent photograph of the Vienna Opera House, built between 1861 and 1869. It was almost completely destroyed during World War II, but was ...

The New Imperialism

Africa

"Chamberlain's accomplice...," a cartoon.
"Chamberlain's accomplice will have spilled more blood in Africa than champagne in Kimberly." This French cartoon sees Cecil Rhodes and British ...
A company of Boer soldiers in 1901.
A company of Boer soldiers in 1901. War broke out between Britain and the Boer Republics in 1899, as a result of the Dutch Boers' efforts to ...
British Sudanese troops with a machine gun.
Sudanese troops, in the service of Britain, standing behind a Maxim gun in Nigeria. This rapid-firing machine gun was a crucial tool in the ...
Leopold II reigned in Belgium 1865-1909.
Leopold II (1835-1909) reigned in Belgium from 1865 to 1909. His rule of the Congo Free State from 1884 to

1908 was probably unmatched in ...

Louis Botha (1862-1919).
The Rt. Hon. Louis Botha (1862-1919) had served as a general in the Boer Army against the British in the Boer War. After the British conquered ...

Map: European partitions of Africa, 1914.
A map of the European partitions of Africa, ...

Miners in a gold mine at Johannesburg.
Miners cut a drift (an exploratory tunnel) in the Crown gold mine at Johannesburg, South Africa. Johannesburg was the chief city of industry and ...

Paul Kruger, Transvaal President 1883-1900.
Paul Kruger (1825-1904), the leader of the Boers and President of the Transvaal Republic from 1883 to 1900. Kruger was old enough to remember ...

Stanley and Livingstone in Africa in 1871.
The meeting of journalist Henry Stanley and missionary-explorer David Livingstone in Africa in 1871. Livingstone (1813-1873), a Scot, was the ...

The Conference of Berlin, 1884-1885.
The Conference of Berlin in 1884-1885. In November 1884, representatives of fourteen European countries and the U.S. met at Berlin to regulate ...

The diamond mine at Kimberley.
The great pit of the diamond mine at Kimberley. South Africa's "mineral revolution" began in 1867 with the discovery of diamonds near the ...

China and Japan

"The Yellow Peril."
"The Yellow Peril." In this drawing, personally designed by Kaiser William II, the forces of Western Christianity are about to descend in battle ...

Chinese tea merchants.
The trading agents or "factors" of the European countries were confined to a small area where they set up offices, residences, and warehouses ...

European "factories" in Canton, 1857.
European "factories" in Canton, China, in 1857. Canton, in southern China, was the entry-point of European penetration and the first Chinese ...

European fort during second Opium War, 1860.
The interior of a European fort, seen during the Second Opium War, 1860. At the end of the First Opium War the Chinese were forced to concede ...

French Zouaves in China, Boxer uprising, 1900.
French Zouaves in China during the Boxer uprising, 1900. France, like the other European powers, had obtained railway and mining privileges and ...

Indochina at the time of French conquest, 1883.
A scene in Indochina at the time of the French conquest, 1883. The French involvement in Indochina began with its missionaries in the 17th ...

Japanese vs. Chinese cavalry, 1894-1895.
A clash between Japanese and Chinese cavalry during the Sino-Japanese War of 1894-1895. Japanese trade and political competition with China in ...

King's Dragoon Guards in second Opium War.
The King's Dragoon Guards close in on Tartar cavalry near Peking, during the Second Opium War. With the capture of the capital, Peking, the ...

Map: European scramble for trading ports in China.
A map illustrating the European "scramble for concessions" in China at the close of the century. The small dots represent original treaty ports, ...

Nationalist Party founder Sun Yat-sen.
Sun Yat-sen (1866-1925), the founder of the Kuomintang or Chinese Nationalist Party. He had been educated in missionary and medical schools, but ...

Officers watch the advance on Peking, 1900.
American, British, and Russian officers watch the advance on Peking during the Boxer Rebellion, 1900. The Boxer uprising was a popularly-based ...

Protestant missionaries in Fuzhou.
American Protestant missionaries in Fuzhou, around 1890. Protestant missionaries followed their countries' traders and diplomats to China's ...

The Catholic cathedral in Shanghai, 1890.
The Catholic cathedral in Shanghai, as photographed around 1890. The relative success of Catholic proselytizing efforts compared to their ...

The Earl of Elgin lands at Jeddo (Tokyo), 1858.
The British Earl of Elgin lands at Jeddo (Tokyo), 1858. After the success of the Americans, Great Britain pressed for trading rights, and James ...

U.S. Commodore Perry in Japan.
U.S. Commodore Matthew Perry presents gifts for the Japanese emperor. Perry began a change in the previously isolated country of Japan with his ...

Egypt

"The Modern Civilization of Europe."

"The Modern Civilization of Europe." This Egyptian cartoon shows the destruction wrought in Morocco and Egypt by the French and British. ...

Building the Suez Canal at Kantara, 1869.
Building the Suez Canal at Kantara, 1869. Begun in 1859 by French engineer Ferdinand de Lesseps (1805-1894), the canal linked Europe to the Far ...

Cartoon about Ismail Pasha.
In this cartoon, Khedive Ismail (Ismail Pasha) of Egypt rides a donkey that is weighed down by insolvency and debt. He tries to convince the ...

The influence of the British and French in Egypt.
The influence of the British and French in Egypt. Khedive Ismail Pasha of Egypt (r. 1863-1879) encouraged a massive influx of Europeans into his ...

The opening of the Suez Canal in 1869.
The Te Deum is chanted at the opening of the Suez Canal in 1869. The canal was a triumph for the Second Empire of Napoleon III. Empress ...

Resources, Markets, Power

A 1911 political cartoon from Punch , London.
A 1911 political cartoon from Punch , London. "It's rock! I thought it was going to be paper!" The Kaiser stubs his toe on the entente ...

A battle in the first Balkan War.
In this first Balkan War battle, the Turks are defeating the Bulgarians. In the years before World War I, the Balkans were a locus of serious ...

A German view of British imperialism in 1915.
A German view of British imperialism in 1915. Britain is depicted as a colossus reaching from South Africa to India. The lack of a powerful ...

Anglo-German naval rivalry.
The British warship the Invincible , ca. 1908. In the years immediately before World War I, Great Britain and Germany engaged in a fierce race ...

The Dolmabaçe Palace in Istanbul, Turkey.
The Dolmabaçe Palace in Istanbul, Turkey. This palace, a statement of the luxury and wealth of the sultans, was built between 1843 and 1856 for ...

The Grand Reception Room of the Dolmabaçe.
The Grand Reception Room of the Dolmabaçe Palace in Istanbul, Turkey. This palace served as Kemal Atatürk's residence when in Constantinople. ...

The Grand Stairway of the Dolmabaçe Palace.
The Grand Stairway of the Dolmabaçe Palace in Istanbul, Turkey. Intended to surpass all other palaces in Europe, the Dolmabaçe's three stories ...

Video sequence: Sultan of Turkey, ca. 1912.
A video sequence concerning the Sultan of Turkey. The Sultan of Turkey was still a monarch of wealth and power in the years between the turn of ...

The British Empire

"The Rhodes Colossus."
"The Rhodes Colossus." This British cartoon illustrates the dream of imperialist Cecil Rhodes (1853-1902) to build a railroad from Cape Colony ...

A cartoon, "New Crowns for Old Ones."
"New Crowns for Old Ones!" British Prime Minister Benjamin Disraeli presents Queen Victoria with the title of Empress of India in 1876. ...

An Englishman in India dresses for his day.
An Englishman in India dresses for his day, attended by four servants. Because of the very low income levels of the Indian people, British ...

Britain takes over Burma in 1885.
Britain takes over Burma in 1885. After two wars fought in 1824 and 1852, the British annexed Lower Burma and made it a dependency of India. ...

Emperor Bahadur Shah II, restored by the sepoys.
Bahadur Shah II, the last Mughal Emperor of India. The rebellious Sepoys succeeded in restoring Bahadur Shah to the throne in the country's ...

Execution of mutineers by the British.
The execution of mutineers by the British at Peshawar, India. Reprisals by the British after the Sepoy uprising were far more numerous and ...

Lord & Lady Curzon at 1902 Delhi Durbar.
Lord and Lady Curzon at the 1902 Delhi Durbar (Assembly), held to announce the coronation of Edward VII of England. Ceremonial occasions such as ...

Storming of Delhi by British troops, 1857.
The storming of Delhi by British troops during the "Sepoy mutiny," 1857. The Sepoy mutiny was a revolt of Indian soldiers serving in the British ...

The Indian Supreme Court in Madras, ca. 1860.
The Supreme Court at Madras, ca. 1860. The British gradually reformed the Indian legal system, which had varied in different parts of the ...

U.S. distracted, John Bull buys cotton elsewhere.
With the Northern and Southern United States preoccupied by the their internal quarrel, John Bull buys his

cotton elsewhere. During the U.S. ...

U.S.S. Kearsage vs. C.S.S. Alabama .

U.S.S. Kearsage vs. C.S.S. Alabama , June 19, 1864. Because the U.S.'s southern states had been an important source of raw materials for ...

Video sequence: British India parade, ca. 1900.

A video sequence concerning parades during the British colonial rule of India. The pomp and ceremony of parades like this one were a prominent ...

The British Empire: India

Rudyard Kipling (1865-1936).

Rudyard Kipling (1865-1936), the poet of British imperialism. Born in Bombay, Kipling was educated in England but returned to live in India. In ...

The Urban Revolution

A bathroom, 1884.

An 1884 engraving of a bathroom. Evidently in an affluent household, the bathroom pictured here has running water heated by oil or kerosene ...

A coffeehouse in Copenhagen, 1854.

A coffeehouse in Copenhagen, 1854. The coffeehouses, like the cafés, are widely-accepted urban institutions. The English were the first to open ...

A late-Victorian bathroom in Chester, England.

A late-Victorian bathroom in Chester, England. By 1900, the indoor bathroom had become a common feature of new housing built for the prosperous ...

A Victorian era bathroom.

A closer view of a Victorian era bathroom, showing the variety of furnishings available from factories of the ...

An 1853 etching showing an Italian fruit vendor.

An 1853 etching showing an Italian fruit vendor. In most European cities, itinerant retailers such as this provided the necessities of life to ...

Earth Closet.

The British Sanitary Co.'s New and Improved Self Acting Earth Closet. This device was a relatively economical alternative to toilets using ...

Electric street lights in a German city, ca. 1884.

Electric street lights in a German city, ca. 1884. Although the invention of the incandescent gas mantle about this time had assured the use of ...

Kroll's beer garden in Berlin, 1904.

A family enjoying a leisurely hour at Kroll's beer garden in Berlin, ...

Postal wagons in Berlin, 1884.

Postal wagons in Berlin, 1884. The expansion of road-building and the introduction of the stagecoach in the 18th century speeded mail delivery. ...

The Crystal Palace, designed by Joseph Paxton.

The Crystal Palace, designed by Joseph Paxton. It was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851 held in London. The first of the world ...

Video sequence: Berlin, ca. 1905.

A video sequence concerning Berlin ca. 1905. In the early years of the new century, Berlin was a model of the modern European city in many ways. ...

Washstand for the "bachelor's bedroom suite."

A design for a washstand for the "bachelor's bedroom suite." Such devices were used for ablutions before the introduction of running water in ...

Paris

"Going to first Communion," Paris, ca. 1900-1914.

"Going to first Communion," Paris, ca. 1900-1914. Despite the progress of de-Christianization, the French populace generally continued to ...

A claque leader in mid-19th-century Paris.

A claque leader in mid 19th-century Paris. A common practice of actors or theater companies in the 19th century was to hire a group of people ...

A labor exchange at Paris's City Hall, 1869.

A labor exchange set up in the public square in front of Paris's Hôtel de Ville (City Hall), 1869. Workers in various building trades such as ...

A Paris bath man, 1907.

A Paris bath man, 1907. Limited indoor plumbing made his services ...

A poster from a ca. 1895 art exhibit in Paris.

A poster from a ca. 1895 art exhibit in Paris. The "Belle-Époque" era produced a great flowering of poster art that was part of a larger ...

A public scribe and his shop, 1852.

A public scribe and his shop, 1852. Scribes such as this one in Paris performed an invaluable service for the many illiterate people of Europe ...

A scene in the Bois de Boulogne, Paris, 1866.

A scene in the Bois de Boulogne, Paris, 1866. The Bois de Boulogne, on the city's western edge, was converted from a military installation to an ...

A view of Paris including the Louvre.

A view of Paris from the Eiffel tower. The River Seine separates on the right the massive Gare d'Orsay from

the expansive wings of the Louvre on ...

A view of the Eiffel Tower, late 20th century.
A late 20th-century view of the Eiffel Tower in ...

Ad, about 1895, for a popular French aperitif.
An advertisement, about 1895, for Quinquina Dubonnet, a popular French ...

An advertisement for a circus, about 1895.
An advertisement for a French circus, about ...

Court tennis played in Paris, mid 19th century.
Court tennis played in Paris, mid 19th century. Dating back to the 13th century, this was a popular sport of the aristocracy . Lawn (outdoor) ...

Dancing at the Prado, Paris, mid 19th century.
Dancing at the Prado in Paris, mid 19th ...

French women's fashions for 1867.
French women's fashions for 1867. The inspiration for this voluminous style was probably the French empress Eugénie, who was the arbiter of ...

Paris fashions for 1911.
Paris fashions for 1911, modeled at the Longchamps race course, the gathering place for the elegant ...

Paris women's fashions for 1890.
Paris women's fashions for 1890. Left to right: a faille wedding dress with leg-of-mutton sleeves; a "Louis XV" costume with redingote; and a ...

Paris's central food market, Les Halles, ca. 1852.
The Valley, a part of Les Halles, Paris's central food market, ca. 1852. From the 12th to the 20th century, Les Halles, which sprawled over ...

St. Martin Street, Paris, mid-19th century.
St. Martin Street, Paris, mid-19th century. A great thoroughfare running north from Notre Dame Cathedral, it was one of the streets rebuilt as ...

The Arc de Triomphe.
The Arc de Triomphe, seen from the Eiffel Tower, Paris. Constructed as a memorial to commemorate the victories of Napoleon I, the Arc de ...

The Eiffel Tower just after its completion.
The Eiffel Tower just after its completion, with the buildings of the Paris Exposition of 1889 beneath it. The tower is 984 feet high. At first ...

The Eiffel Tower, shown half completed.
The Eiffel Tower, shown half completed. Designed by engineer Alexandre Gustave Eiffel, it was built for the Paris Exposition of 1889, which ...

Video sequence: Eiffel Tower, 1900 and today.
A video sequence concerning the Eiffel Tower in 1900 and today. The tower designed by Alexandre Gustav Eiffel for the 1889 Paris Exposition was ...

Video sequence: Fashionable Parisian track, 1900.
A video sequence concerning high fashion at a Parisian racetrack at the turn of the century. This is the Auteiul racetrack outside Paris in ...

Urban Transportation

A steam omnibus of about 1900-1914.
A steam omnibus that ran between Paris and Berlin, about 1900-1914. Steam carriages had been in urban use since the 1830s. One London ...

An "underground street," Paris, mid-19th century.
An "underground street" in Paris, mid-19th century. It contained not only the city's sewers, but its water and gas pipes as well. Here, ...

An early 20th-century English double-decker bus.
An early 20th-century English double-decker ...

An electric trolley in Berlin, 1881.
An electric trolley in Berlin, 1881. As a means of short-distance conveyance in the city, the horse-drawn omnibus had been in use since the ...

An electrically-driven London tram, about 1915.
An electrically-driven London tram car, about 1915. This one appears to be powered through the rails rather than through overhead wires. The ...

Early 20th-century English gasoline "jitney."
An early 20th-century English petrol (gasoline) "jitney." The "jitney" was essentially a taxicab, although the driver might also carry small ...

Horse-drawn omnibuses on a London street.
Horse-drawn omnibuses on a London street, n.d. The omnibus was the first public mass transportation vehicle, for people who could not afford ...

The first safety-bicycle, 1888.
The first safety-bicycle. In 1885, Englishman James K. Starley placed cranks and pedals between the front and rear wheels, and added a chain ...

The velocipede or "boneshaker." 1861.
The velocipede or "boneshaker." In 1861, the Frenchman Ernest Michaux put cranks and pedals on the front-wheel axle of the hobby horse bicycle ...

Two British bicycle "belles," 1898.
Two British bicycle "belles," 1898. The bicycle brought romance to the young, and a degree of emancipation

for fashionable women. Bicycles ...

Victorian London

"Jack Black, Her Majesty's rat catcher."
"Jack Black, Her Majesty's rat catcher." Rats, which carried the bubonic plague, were still a serious threat to public health in the late 19th ...

A chimney-sweep in London, 1877.
A chimney-sweep in London, 1877. Coal was the most common fuel during the 19th century, and it was used to power ships, industrial steam plants, ...

A young London street sweeper, 1877.
A young London street sweeper, 1877. He might be a "crossing sweeper," who dusted the path of a lady or gentleman who wished to cross the ...

Advertisement for Pears, an English soap, 1902.
A 1902 advertisement for Pears, an English ...

Fleet Street in London, ca. 1900.
Fleet Street in London, ca. 1900. This street has been the traditional center of British journalism. Its newspaper offices and press rooms ...

Leadenhall Market in London, 1881.
Leadenhall Market in London, rebuilt in1881. This was a place where meat and game had been sold since the 14th century. Rebuilt in the ...

Piccadilly Circus in London, ca. 1914.
Piccadilly Circus, the theater and amusement center in West London, ca. ...

Rat-hunting in London, ca. 1852.
Rat-hunting in London, ca. 1852. Like "bear baiting" and cockfighting, rat-hunting was one of the more brutal sports of 19th century England. ...

The interior of Leadenhall Market, 1881.
The interior of Leadenhall Market, rebuilt in ...

The quality of drinking water in London, 1866.
"Death's Dispensary," a commentary on the quality of drinking water in London, 1866. Water was obtained one bucket at time from pumps in the ...

The St. Pancras Railway Station, London.
The St. Pancras Railway Station in London. The large central railway stations of late 19th-century Britain were more than a mere point of ...

Video sequence: London market, 1904.
A video sequence concerning a London market, Petticoat Lane, in 1904. One of London's longstanding markets, Petticoat Lane was established in the ...

Section L: World War I and the Russian Revolution, 1914 - 1920

Overview: WWI, Russian Revolution, 1914 - 1920.
A brief video Overview of the history of World War I and the Russian Revolution, from 1914 to 1920. Transcript: Before 1914 an emphasis on ...

Monarchs and Political Leaders

Arthur James Balfour (1848-1930).
Arthur James Balfour (1848-1930). Politically a conservative and socially an aristocrat, Balfour served as Prime Minister of England from 1901 ...

Captain Franz von Papen.
Captain Franz von Papen. In 1913, von Papen became military attaché to the German embassy in Washington. He was recalled in 1915 at the request ...

Emperor Charles I of Austria reigned 1916-1918.
Emperor Charles I of Austria (1887-1922), who reigned from 1916 to 1918. Charles was a grandnephew of Francis Joseph, and the last emperor of ...

Emperor William II greets troops, 1917.
Emperor William II of Germany and Crown Prince William greet troops arriving on the western front in 1917. The crown prince, the eldest of the ...

England's George V inspects troops in France.
King George V of England, who reigned from 1910 to 1936, inspects troops of the British Expeditionary Forces in France during World War ...

Francis Ferdinand and Austria's Francis Joseph.
Francis Ferdinand and Francis Joseph of Austria in Vienna, 1914. Francis Joseph (right) was Emperor of Austria-Hungary; Francis Ferdinand, ...

Francis Joseph I, Austrian Emperor.
Francis Joseph or Franz Joseph (1830-1916), Emperor of Austria from 1848 to 1916 and King of Hungary from 1867 to 1916. His long reign saw the ...

Grigori Eflmovich Rasputin (1872-1916).
Grigori Eflmovich Rasputin (1872-1916). This Russian monk with peasant roots gained a strong influence over the Tsarina Alexandra through his ...

Italian prime minister Antonio Salandra.
Antonio Salandra, the Prime Minister of Italy from 1911 to 1916. At the beginning of the war Salandra adopted a neutral position as a protest ...

Nicholas II of Russia and the Tsarina.

Nicholas II of Russia (1868-1918) and the Tsarina. Nicholas was passive and of limited intelligence, and as a result was dominated by his wife ...

Pope Benedict XV, 1854-1922.
Pope Benedict XV (1854-1922). His election as pope in 1914 was a result of the papal court's recognition that the Roman Catholic Church needed a ...

Royal families of England and Russia in 1910.
The royal families of England and Russia in 1910. Edward VII of England is in the center. Tsar Nicholas II is on his right, and at the right is ...

Socialist leader Thomas at a Citroen plant.
A back view of French Socialist leader Albert Thomas (1878-1932) speaking at the opening of an employees' lunchroom at a Citroen plant in 1917. ...

The Balfour Declaration.
The Balfour Declaration, a pledge of British support for the Zionists' wish for a national homeland in Palestine. One of the most important ...

The French statesman Raymond Poincaré.
The French statesman Raymond Poincaré (1860-1934) served as French president from 1913 to 1920 and as premier 1912-1913, 1922-1923, 1926-1929. ...

Video sequence: Nicholas II of Russia.
A video sequence concerning Czar Nicholas II. Russia's last czar, Nicholas II, was an ineffective ruler who tried to meet the demands of workers ...

Von Berchtold, Austrian foreign minister.
Leopold von Berchtold (1863-1942) was Foreign Minister of Austria. He directed foreign policy in the crucial month following the assassination ...

Von Bethmann-Hollweg, German Chancellor.
Theobald von Bethmann-Hollweg (1856-1921) became Chancellor of Germany in 1909. During World War I, he opposed unrestricted submarine warfare ...

Military Leaders

Field Marshal Sir Douglas Haig (1861-1928).
Field Marshal Sir Douglas Haig (1861-1928) was named Commander-in-Chief of the British forces in France in 1915. He is perhaps best remembered ...

General Joseph Gallieni (1849-1916).
General Joseph Gallieni (1849-1916) was credited with the victory at the Marne in September 1914, when the French succeeded in halting the German ...

George V of England visits France, April 1914.
King George V of England (center, with visored cap) visits France, April 1914. The entente between France and England would insure their mutual ...

Marshal Foch, with Joffre at the Marne in 1914.
Marshal Ferdinand Foch (1851-1929) with General Joseph Joffre and General Joseph Gallieni at the Marne in 1914. In 1917 Foch was named Chief of ...

Marshal Joffre and French ambassador Jusserand.
Marshal Joseph Joffre (left) and French ambassador to the U.S. Jules Jusserand. Joffre (1852-1931) was named commander-in-chief of the French ...

The Central Powers

General Erich von Falkenhayn.
General Erich von Falkenhayn (1861-1922). In 1914 he succeeded Moltke as Chief of the German General Staff, but he was replaced in 1916 by Field ...

General Helmuth von Moltke.
General Helmuth von Moltke (1848-1916) was the nephew of Prussian Field Marshal Helmuth von Moltke (1800-1891). He succeeded Alfred von ...

Hindenburg (left) and Ludendorff, ca. 1917.
German General Paul von Hindenburg (left) and General Erich Ludendorff, ca. 1917. With the kaiser's support, the military had pushed for the ...

Hindenburg, William II, and Ludendorff.
Field Marshal Paul von Hindenburg (left); Emperor William II (center); and General Erich Ludendorff confer in 1917. In 1916 Hindenburg ...

The Easter Uprising In Ireland

Countess Constance Georgine Markievicz.
Countess Constance Georgine Markievicz (1868?-1927). The daughter of an Anglo-Irish landlord, she was a member of the Sinn Fein and played a ...

Sinn Fein members in British Parliament, 1918.
Some of the Sinn Fein members who were elected to the British Parliament from Ireland in 1918. In the 1918 Irish elections, 73 out of the 77 ...

Video sequence: Dublin bombing, 1966.
A video sequence concerning ongoing Irish protest against Britain. The rebellion in Ireland spans generations. In 1966, unknown bombers ...

The Russian Revolution

"Long Live the Council of Workers..."
"Long Live the Council of Workers, and Soldiers' Deputies," a banner in Petrograd on May Day, 1917.

Soviets, or councils, had first appeared ...

A Red Army recruiting poster.
Have You Signed Up Yet? A Red Army recruiting poster during the civil war, ca. ...

Alexandr Kerenski in 1949 at the age of 69.
Alexandr Kerenski in 1949 at the age of 69. Until the end of his life Kerenski bitterly denounced the Bolsheviks, who overthrew ...

Barricades in Petrograd, February 1917.
Barricades on the Liteinyi Prospect at Petrograd during the February 1917 Russian Revolution. The revolution resulted from a long period of ...

Bolshevik soldiers in Moscow.
Bolshevik soldiers in front of the Hotel Metropole in Moscow. On November 7, 1917, the Moscow soviet voted to support the overthrow of the ...

Czech Legion on its way through Russia, 1918.
The "Czech Legion" on its way through Russia, 1918. During World War I, some 45,000 Czech troops fought on the side of Russia against Germany. ...

Kerenski, head of Russian provisional government.
Alexandr Fyodorovich Kerenski (1881-1970) became head of the Russian provisional government in 1917. After the February Revolution he became ...

Lenin (Vladimir Ilyich Ulyanov, 1870-1924).
Lenin (Vladimir Ilyich Ulyanov, 1870-1924), the founder of the Bolshevik Party, was a Marxist theoretician and the leading figure in the October ...

Lenin as a boy.
Lenin as a boy (ca. 1887). While still a young man, Vladimir Ilyich Ulyanov had become involved in political activity. In 1887 he was expelled ...

Lenin at Second Congress of Soviets in 1917.
A painting of Lenin addressing the Second Congress of Soviets in 1917. Joseph Stalin stands behind ...

Leon Trotsky (Lev Davidovich Bronstein).
Leon Trotsky (Lev Davidovich Bronstein, 1879-1940). During the 1905 Russian Revolution, Trotsky was president of the St. Petersburg soviet . ...

Nicholas II, interned in 1917, shovels snow.
Nicholas II shovels snow in the park at the imperial palace of Tsarskoe Selo, where he and his family were interned in 1917. After his ...

People to be deported by Germans from Finland.
Men and women about to be deported by the Germans from Hango, Finland, April 1918. Finland declared its independence from Russia in 1918, and ...

Petrograd street fighting, July 1917.
Street fighting in Petrograd during the "July days" of 1917. Petrograd was the decisive point of both 1917 revolutions. In March, insurgents ...

Red Army troops near the Kremlin in Moscow.
Red Army troops near the Kremlin in Moscow. Leon Trotsky organized the Red Army in February 1918 to fight the forces of counterrevolution, whose ...

Russians arrive to negotiate peace, 1918.
Russian delegates arrive for the second time at Brest-Litovsk to negotiate peace with Germany, January 1918. After the October Revolution in ...

Russians taken by Germans, spring of 1917.
Russian prisoners taken by the Germans in the spring of 1917. Discontent was widespread among the war-weary Russian troops by that year. The ...

Soviet banners.
Banners of the Bolshevik Party (on left) and the Council of Soldiers' and Workers' Deputies (right). After the February Revolution, the ...

Video sequence: Bolshevik prisoners of Czech Army.
A video sequence concerning the Czech Army's actions against the Bolsheviks. These are Bolshevik prisoners of the Czech Army in Siberia. All ...

Civil War in Russia

A suspected counterrevolutionary is arrested.
A man is arrested for suspected counterrevolutionary activities in Moscow, ca. December 1918. An attempt on Lenin's life in August of that year ...

Admiral Alexander Vasilyevich Kolchak.
Admiral Alexander Vasilyevich Kolchak (1874-1920) was the main leader of the White Russian forces in 1918 and 1919. He set up a ...

Americans in Siberia, April 1919.
American soldiers outside their tents in Siberia, April 1919. They were part of the Allied intervention against the Bolshevik Revolution. ...

Baron Peter Wrangel (1878-1928).
Baron Peter Wrangel (1878-1928). Wrangel led the Russian counterrevolutionary armies in the south and was successful for a time in the Crimea. ...

Headquarters, U.S. North Russian Forces.
Headquarters of the American North Russian Expeditionary Forces, at Archangel, Russia, on the White Sea. About 5,000 Americans landed in ...

Peace and Liberty in Soviet Russia.

Peace and Liberty in Soviet Russia. This anti-Bolshevik poster was printed by the forces of General Wrangel, about 1920. The figure is a ...

Starving Russian children in the Ukraine.

Starving Russian children at a Red Cross hospital in Stavropol, the Ukraine, ca. 1920. The Russians suffered not only from war, civil war, and ...

U.S. soldiers in north Russia, about 1919.

American soldiers in the trenches at Cleshova, in north Russia, about ...

World War I

America Enters the War

A convoy of American ships crosses the Atlantic.

A convoy of American ships crossing the Atlantic Ocean, bound for France. The entrance of the U.S. into the war opened up vast new resources for ...

American troops arrive in Brest, April 1918.

American troops arrive in Brest, April 1918. The first U.S. troops arrived in June 1917, and in the next 17 months more than two million ...

Americans in the St. Mihiel sector.

American infantrymen moving up to Mont Sec, in the St. Mihiel ...

An American ambulance train at Very, France.

An American ambulance train at Very, ...

As French leave, an American division takes over.

In the Toul sector, a French division moves out as an American division takes ...

British soldier instructs Americans, 1918.

A British soldier instructs Americans in the use of a machine gun, 1918. Most of the American troops were prepared for battle by six months of ...

French children wave to American troops.

French children wave to American troops as they march through the village of Soulouse on the way to the front, April ...

Video sequence: American troops head "over there."

A video sequence concerning rapid American mobilization for World War I. Germany expected that the U.S. would not be able to assemble an army ...

Video sequence: The Lusitania, sunk by German sub.

A video sequence concerning the sinking of the Lusitania. This is the British luxury liner Lusitania, leaving port on her last voyage in May ...

Woodrow Wilson delivering his War Message.

U.S. President Woodrow Wilson delivering his War Message. For nearly three years, Wilson had steadfastly opposed an American entrance into the ...

Battlefield Communications

Adolf Hitler as a World War I corporal.

Adolf Hitler, who served as a runner in World War I (front row, on left). When the war broke out, Hitler was in Munich, and although he was an ...

An Italian motorcycle unit in World War I.

An Italian motorcycle unit in World War ...

Carrier pigeons placed in a gas protection box.

Carrier pigeons in the service of the German army being placed in a gas protection box, ...

Germans set up a radio on the western front.

German soldiers set up a light radio station on the western front, ...

Repairing telephone lines during gas attack.

British soldiers repair telephone lines during a gas attack at the front in ...

Behind the Lines

A British postwoman.

A British postwoman. During World War I, women replaced men not only in munitions factories, but in non-war related jobs as ...

A German teacher teaches German to French pupils.

A German teacher instructs French pupils in the Champagne area occupied by the Germans, east of Paris. He is teaching them ...

A monoplane from an Oberursel Motor Works ad.

An illustration depicting a monoplane, from an advertisement by the Oberursel, Germany, Motor Works. The artist, Ludwig Hohlwein, was Germany's ...

An advertisement for German automobiles, 1917.

An advertisement for the Stoewer Works, a German automobile company, 1917. It built trucks and airplanes as well as ...

Boy workers in a German munitions factory.

Boy workers at lunch In a German munitions factory, about 1918. By that time, Germany had run out of manpower for the military and for wartime ...

British women work in carpentry shop in France.

British women work in a carpentry shop in France in ...

British women working for the U.S. in France.

British women working for the U.S. Quartermaster's Corps, in France, ...

French village town crier calls the townspeople.
The town crier in the village of St. Menehould, in the Argonne, calls the townspeople to attention with a drum roll, and then reads the latest ...
French women assemble American planes, 1918.
French women assemble American planes at Romorantin in July ...
French women employed by the U.S. army.
French women, employed by the U.S. army, sew and repair uniforms in Tours, France, ...
German women at work in a munitions factory.
German women at work in a munitions factory. They are probably making ...
Inside the Krupp munitions works, November 1914.
Inside the Krupp munitions works, November 1914. The Krupp works at Essen, in the Ruhr, played a major role in developing artillery for Germany ...
The British nurse and heroine Edith Cavell.
The British nurse and heroine Edith Cavell (1865-1915). She became a nurse in 1895, and the matron of the Berkendael Institute in Brussels in ...

Gallipoli and Italy

Australians encamped in Egypt, February 1915.
Australian soldiers encamped in Egypt, February 1915. Egypt served as a staging area for British operations in the Middle East, including the ...
Austrians advance, November 1917.
In Italy, Austrians advance following the Italian retreat in November 1917. General Erich Ludendorff hoped to stimulate Germany by a ...
The Turkish War Memorial at Gallipoli.
The Turkish War Memorial on the heights of Gallipoli near the Dardanelles Straits. Photo by Henry ...
Turkish artillery at Gallipoli.
A Turkish artillery battery at Gallipoli, November 17, 1915. Germany, though unable to send a large number of combat troops to Turkey, had been ...
Turkish soldiers at Gallipoli.
Turkish infantry soldiers on a hillside at Gallipoli, November 18, 1915. Note the German uniforms and ...
Turkish soldiers encamped at Gallipolli.
Turkish soldiers encamped at Gallipolli. (See also L ...
Winston Churchill.
Winston Churchill (1874-1965). As First Lord of the Admiralty between 1911 and 1915, he was largely responsible for the decision to undertake ...

Medical Services

A French doctor tends a wounded Britisher.
A French doctor, in the Somme and Ancre area, tends to a wounded British soldier in April 1918 while American soldiers stand ...
A German doctor with Bulgarian and German nurses.
A German doctor with Bulgarian and German nurses in a military ...
British ambulance pool at Proven, France, 1917.
The British ambulance motor pool at Proven, France (near Ypres, Belgium), ...
British medics tend a wounded German soldier.
British medics tend a wounded German soldier near Carnoy, in the Somme and Ancre area, July ...
Nurse and wounded French soldier, 1917.
A nurse and a wounded French soldier on the porch of a convalescent hospital near Le Touquet, ...
Wounded soldiers exercise in a Berlin hospital.
Recuperating soldiers exercise in the garden of a Berlin military hospital. Some of the men have missing limbs. The Germans suffered the ...

Remembrance of the Great War

French children decorate the graves of soldiers.
French children from the town of Letanne bring flowers to decorate the graves of soldiers buried in the American Expeditionary Force cemetery at ...
Siegfried Lorraine Sassoon (1886-1967).
Siegfried Lorraine Sassoon (1886-1967), an English poet and novelist who wrote of the brutality and wastefulness of World War I. Sassoon had ...
The American War Memorial at Aisne-Marne, France.
The War Memorial of the American military cemetery at Aisne-Marne, ...

Soldiers from the Colonies

A cavalryman from Morocco fights for France.
A cavalryman from Morocco fights for ...
ANZAC headquarters at Gallipolli.
A captured Turkish officer at the ANZAC (Australian and New Zealand Army Corps) headquarters at Gallipolli. In World War I, 329,000 Australians ...
Indian gun crew, Somme and Ancre area, 1916.
An Indian gun crew in the Somme and Ancre area, 1916. The major belligerents of World War I who had colonial empires depended on contingents of ...
N.Z. troops in the Somme and Ancre area.

Troops from New Zealand on the march in the Somme and Ancre area, 1916. Troops from all of the British Dominions were enlisted in the war ...

The 1918 Spring and Summer Offensive

A British first aid station near Cambrai, 1918.
A British first aid station near Cambrai, 1918. In the fall 1918 Allied counteroffensive, the British reached Cambrai on September 30. They ...

A British tank in action.
A British tank in action. Tanks were first used by the British at the Battle of the Somme in September 1916. The Germans did not begin to ...

British patrol just after Germans are driven out.
A British patrol in the Cambrai ruins, September 1918, on the morning the Germans were driven out. By September, the Germans were in full ...

British troops advance in Allied counterattack.
British Yorkshire troops move up to advanced positions during the Allied counterattack in the summer of ...

French refugees, spring 1918 German offensive.
French refugees flee from Merville, in the Ypres salient area, during the spring 1918 German ...

French soldiers with a tank, 1918.
French soldiers with a tank, possibly captured from the Germans, ...

French tanks, Americans support French troops.
French tanks and American troops move up to support French troops near Juvigny, during the final Allied counteroffensive in the west, October ...

German shock troops in a French town.
The advance of the second wave of German shock troops through the French town of Bailleul, near the Belgian border, during the Second Battle of ...

German soldier fallen in spring 1918 offensive.
The body of a German soldier who fell and died near Château-Thierry during the spring 1918 ...

German soldier lies dead at his machine gun.
A German soldier lies dead at his machine gun, at Bellicourt in the Aisne department, October 1918. Germany lost 1.8 million men killed in the ...

German troops in a truck on way to the front.
German troops on their way to the front by truck. Casualties resulting from this German offensive amounted to one million on each of the two ...

Germans help wounded comrades to U.S. first aid.
German soldiers help their wounded comrades to an American first aid station, October 1918. ...

Germans rest during an advance, 1918.
Germans rest during their advance to the town of Albert, 1918. In August 1918 the British attacked near Albert, in the Amiens salient. They met ...

Group of German prisoners behind the lines.
A group of German prisoners in a truck, behind the lines in French Lorraine. Toward the end of the war, some of the battle-weary German soldiers ...

Howitzer left by retreating Germans in France.
A five-inch Austrian howitzer left by the retreating Germans at Epieds, France. The Allies counterattacked after the German offensive, with the ...

Refugees liberated from German hands.
Refugees liberated from German hands by the U.S. capture of the St. Mihiel salient. This salient had protected the left flank of the German ...

Refugees returning to St. Mihiel, 1918.
Refugees returning to St. Mihiel stand before their devastated homes, October ...

Road used by Germans as trench mortar position.
A slightly sunken road used by the Germans as a trench mortar position, shown after its capture by the Americans in July 1918. The Allied Powers ...

Ruins of French town after German retreat, 1918.
The ruins of the French town of Château-Thierry after the German retreat in July ...

The second Battle of the Marne.
French troops during the German offensive in the Second Battle of the Marne. In March 1918, Field Marshal Paul von Hindenburg and General Erich ...

The Armistice

A woman returns to her town in November 1918.
This woman was among the first French civilians to return to her town, Amiens, early in November ...

French troops in an Alsace town after World War I.
French troops enter the town of Hagenau, in Alsace, after World War I. Part of the peace settlement included the return to France of the Alsace ...

German town crier reads U.S. regulations.
The town crier of Leuterod, Germany, reads regulations issued by the U.S. occupation forces. The first Allied troops entered defeated Germany on ...

Germans put to work repairing roads, 1919.
German soldiers captured by the Allies are put to work repairing roads in the Haute Marne in January 1919. This was after the armistice , but ...

Map: the Armistice lines in Europe, November 1918.

A map of the Armistice lines in November 1918. In the west, as a result of the trench warfare stalemate, there was hardly any loss or gain for ...

The German minister who signed the armistice.

Mathias Erzberger (1875-1921) was the German minister who signed the armistice declaration on November 11, 1918. When the German armies ...

Video sequence: WWI Armistice is celebrated.

A video sequence concerning the World War I Armistice. The Armistice was celebrated in the streets as the war ended abruptly on November 11, ...

The Dissolution of the Ottoman Empire

A British landing party moving vs. Arabs.

A British landing party in the Persian Gulf area moving against Arabs, February ...

A map showing the decline of the Ottoman Empire.

A map showing the decline of the Ottoman Empire between 1683 and ...

A Turkish infantry unit at rest.

A Turkish infantry unit at rest during World War I. The strengthening ties between the Ottoman Empire and Germany in the early 20th century ...

Armenian troops march through Baku, in Russia.

Armenian troops march through Baku, in Russia. Located on the western side of the Caspian Sea, the Turks could easily march north and attack ...

British Marshal Edmund H. H. Allenby.

British Field Marshal Edmund Henry Hynman Allenby, 1st Viscount Allenby (1861-1936). During World War I, troops under Allenby invaded Palestine ...

British mountain artillery near Salonika, Greece.

A British mule mountain artillery battery getting into position on the front at Salonika, ...

Col. T. E. Lawrence's house in Jordan.

Colonel T. E. Lawrence's house in Wadi Rum, Jordan. From this cave-house Lawrence carried out operations and negotiations connected with the ...

Field Marshal Allenby enters Jerusalem, 1917.

British Field Marshal Allenby just before he entered Jerusalem on foot, December 11, 1917. This marked the end of thirteen centuries of Muslim ...

General Abdul Kerim Pasha, Turkish commander.

General Abdul Kerim Pasha, the Turkish commander who played an important part in the offensive against Russia in the Caucasus. In the summer of ...

Lawrence of Arabia.

Colonel Thomas Edward Lawrence (1888-1935), the legendary and enigmatic "Lawrence of Arabia." When the British encouraged the Arabs to revolt ...

This is a title, which may be selected for a show.

World War I The Dissolution of the Ottoman Empire This is a title, which may be selected to add to a presentation just like any other ...

Turkish supply camels at the Egyptian front, 1917.

Turkish soldiers pack camels loaded with supplies for the front, 1917. In October 1914 Turkey entered the war on the side of the Central Powers ...

The First Months, 1914

"Heroes of Belgium, 1914."

A French poster reflects the outrage of the Allied powers, and much of the world, at the German attack on Belgium. The tiny Belgian army fought ...

Autos requisitioned in Paris.

Autos requisitioned in Paris. As the Germans advanced toward Paris in the first weeks of World War I, automobiles, buses, and taxicabs (the ...

German artillery, Champagne area, east of Paris.

German artillery in the Champagne area, east of Paris. The initial German advance into France was rapid and ...

King Albert I of Belgium.

King Albert I of Belgium (1875-1934). The European powers, including Germany, had agreed to respect the neutrality of Belgium. However, the ...

Map: the Western Front, 1914.

A map of the Western Front in 1914. The European system of alliances brought the European countries into the war a month after Archduke ...

The ruins of the cathedral at Ypres, Belgium.

The ruins of the cathedral at Ypres, Belgium. In the fall of 1914, the greatly outnumbered British, Belgians, and French stopped the German ...

The steel works at Longwy, France, 1914.

The steel works at Longwy, France. Longwy was an iron-mining and steel-producing town in French Lorraine near the Belgium Luxembourg border. ...

Video sequence: French cars take troops to front.

A video sequence concerning French automobiles being used to carry troops to battle. Early in World War I, French taxicabs and private ...

Video sequence: Invasion of Belgium.

A video sequence concerning Germany's invasion of Belgium. Germany ignored treaty agreements and

invaded Belgium in the early days of World War ...

The Stalemate: Trench Warfare

A quiet moment in the German trenches, 1915.
A quiet moment in the German trenches on the western front, June 1915. Much of the fighting on the western front consisted of trench warfare, ...

A Scottish Highlander takes a German prisoner.
A Scottish Highlander takes a German machine-gunner ...

British "Tommies" and German items.
Jubilant British "Tommies" show off prizes they took from temporarily vanquished Germans in ...

British battlefield in Belgium, September 1917.
A British battlefield near Zillebeke, Belgium, September ...

British trench soldiers in France wait to attack.
British soldiers in their trenches in the Ginchy-Cambrai area of France wait to attack, 1916. The Allies planned a major offensive in 1916, but ...

British troops in Flanders return for a rest.
British troops return for a rest after several days of fighting on the Flanders front in ...

Flanders battlefield during a 1917 campaign.
A scene on the Flanders battlefield during a 1917 campaign. Millions of animals were killed in the ...

French and American officers in France, 1918.
French and American officers at an American Independence Day dinner at Toul, in French Lorraine, July 4, ...

French town of Étam during Nivelle offensive.
The French town of Étam in rubble during the Nivelle offensive of 1917. Under the command of General Robert Nivelle, the French made a heroic ...

German officers in a cafe at Vouziers, France.
German officers in a cafe at Vouziers, France. At right is Hermann Goering, who became an air force hero during the war and a leader of Nazi ...

German prisoners in the Somme, 1916.
German prisoners have tea after their capture by the British in the Somme, July ...

German soldiers in winter barracks.
German soldiers in their winter barracks in the Vosges Mountains. The Vosges area of Alsace and Lorraine was the first part of the western front ...

German soldiers outfitted for action.
German soldiers fully outfitted for action in an assault ...

Scottish troops march in Somme and Ancre area.
Scottish troops march to the trenches on the Amiens Road, in the Somme and Ancre area, July 1916. The Battle of the Somme was fought by British ...

The "cliff dwellers" on the Meuse in France.
The "cliff dwellers," a makeshift military village behind the French lines on the Meuse River, in ...

The British front line at Thiepval Wood, 1916.
The British front line at Thiepval Wood, in the Somme and Ancre area, August 1916. To relieve some of the pressure on France at Verdun, the ...

Video sequence: Machine gun, German troops, WWI.
A video sequence concerning the use of the machine gun. The machine gun became part of the infantry in World War I. This film was made on the ...

Video sequence: Trench warfare, WWI.
A video sequence concerning trench warfare in World War I. World War I introduced modern extended trench warfare. Troops dug in and held on, ...

The Versailles Peace Treaty

"Long Live Wilson," a sign in Paris.
"Long Live Wilson." A sign on the Rue Royale in Paris greets the U.S. president on his arrival in Paris, December ...

David Lloyd George at Paris Peace Conference.
David Lloyd George at the Paris Peace Conference. As prime minister from 1916 to 1922, Lloyd George was Britain's principal representative at ...

Georges Clemenceau in retirement.
Georges Clemenceau in retirement. Clemenceau held office as French premier for the second time from 1917 to 1920. At the Paris Peace Conference ...

German delegates to the peace conference, 1919.
German delegates to the peace conference, 1919. The German Revolution of November 1918 brought the downfall of the monarchy and the creation of ...

Map: Europe after World War I, 1919-1926.
Europe after World War I, 1919-1926. Following the principle of "national self-determination ," many new countries were formed in the peace ...

Plenary session, Paris Conference, April 1919.
The fourth plenary (fully constituted) session of the Paris Peace Conference, April 1919. The first plenary session had been held in January. ...

The "Big Four" at the Paris Peace Conference.
The "Big Four" at the Paris Peace Conference: British Prime Minister David Lloyd George, Italian Premier Vittorio Orlando, French Premier ...

The Hall of Mirrors during the peace signing.
An interior view of the Hall of Mirrors at Versailles during the signing of the peace terms, June ...
The Italian premier in the peace preliminaries.
Premier Orlando of Italy leaves the Trianon Palace Hotel after the Germans were presented with the peace preliminaries in May of 1919. Orlando ...
U.S. President Wilson in Paris.
U.S. President Woodrow Wilson with French President Raymond Poincaré, in Paris, December 1918. Prior to the start of the Paris Peace Conference, ...
Video sequence: The "Big Four" at Versailles.
A video sequence concerning the leaders who were known as the "Big Four" at the Versailles Peace Conference at the end of World War I. The "Big ...
Yugoslav delegates to the Paris Peace Conference.
Principal Yugoslav delegates to the Paris Peace Conference, 1919. In an attempt to satisfy the nationalist aspirations of the Slavs, a new ...

The War at Sea

A German submarine on the high seas.
A German submarine on the high seas. Starting in 1915 the Germans had limited their submarine attacks, but in February 1917 they began a ...
A German U boat with a sinking English steamer.
The German submarine U-35 surfaces alongside the English steamer Parkgate , which has just been torpedoed and is about to ...
Admiral Sir John Jellicoe (1859-1935).
Admiral Sir John Jellicoe (1859-1935). As Commander-in-Chief of the British Grand Fleet in 1914-1916, Jellicoe led the British forces at the ...
Conning tower of a German submarine.
The conning tower of a German submarine. By the time America came into the war in April 1917 the British food stocks were dangerously low. The ...
German battleship at the Kaiser Works.
The German battleship Seydlitz in dry-dock at the Kaiser Works. On her way to attack towns on the British coast in April 1916, she hit a mine ...
German sailors load torpedoes into a submarine.
German sailors load torpedoes into a ...
German U-boat No. 10.
German U-boat No. 10. The term "U-boat" derives from the German word Unterseeboot . After the Battle of Jutland, the German navy realized that ...
Issuing "grog" to British sailors.
Issuing "grog," a ration of rum, to British sailors. Life in the British navy was hard, and the ships were largely unheated. This traditional ...
The German High Seas Fleet in the North Sea.
The German High Seas Fleet in the North Sea. In the first year and a half of the war there was little action at sea because Germany, with a ...
Video sequence: German submarines, World War I.
A video sequence concerning a German submarine action in World War I. In World War I, Germany expanded the use of submarine warfare far beyond ...

The War Begins

"The lamps are going out all over Europe..."
"The lamps are going out all over Europe. We shall not see them lit again in our lifetime." An illustration of the prophetic words of British ...
"Your Country Needs You."
"Your Country Needs You." This famous British recruiting poster of 1914 features the likeness of Field Marshal Horatio H. Kitchener (1850-1916), ...
British foreign secretary Sir Edward Grey.
British foreign secretary Sir Edward Grey (1851-1917). Tension just before the war was heightened by Grey's refusal to affirm England's ...
French President Poincaré visits Russia, 1914.
French President Raymond Poincaré visits Russia in July 1914. This state visit to France's ally took place almost a month after the ...
Map: alliances in World War I, 1914.
A map showing the alliances and World War I boundaries in Europe. A web of secret defensive alliances pitted the Allied Powers against the ...
Map: East Asia in WWI.
A map of East Asia in World War I. Japan entered World War I on the side of the Allied Powers, at the request of Great Britain. The Japanese ...

War in the Air

A "Taube" 2-seater aircraft.
The "Taube" 2-seater aircraft was used by Germany as an observation plane very early in World War I. This frail-looking machine was captured in ...
A British Sopwith "Camel" fighter.
A British Sopwith "Camel" fighter. This aircraft was noted for its maneuverability and excellent rate of climb,

but also for its vicious habits ...

A French Nieuport fighter.
A World War I French Nieuport fighter. Aircraft design advanced steadily during the war, with stronger and faster planes replacing earlier ...

A French Spad fighter airplane.
The French Spad was one of the best of the WWI fighters. It was initially powered by a 200-horsepower Hispano-Suiza engine, but later models had ...

Alfred Hildebrandt with the Goslar plane.
Alfred Hildebrandt with the Goslar plane, ca. 1918. Hildebrandt, an instructor in the Prussian Balloon Corps, was both an avid flyer and a ...

Baron Manfred Freiherr von Richthofen.
Baron Manfred Freiherr von Richthofen (1882-1918). "The Red Baron" failed his first flying test, but went on to become Germany's most celebrated ...

German anti-aircraft machine gun.
A German machine gun used as an anti-aircraft device. This scene is in 1917, near ...

German Fokker DR-1 triplane fighter aircraft.
The German Fokker DR-1 triplane fighter aircraft. This aircraft was well liked by German ace Manfred von Richthofen, who flew it while scoring ...

German plane brought down, Argonne, 1918.
A German plane is brought down on its nose in the Argonne, 1918. Despite the "Fokker menace," the Allied Powers maintained air superiority ...

Germans bombing British South African camp.
A bombing raid by German aviators on a British camp in South Africa in 1915. World War I was partly fought on African territory, as the European ...

Italian Caproni 3-engine triplane bomber.
An Italian Caproni three-engine triplane bomber of World War I vintage. Although it could lift only a small bomb load (440 pounds), this bomber ...

The inside of a French military airplane.
The inside of a French military airplane. These airplanes were relatively uncomplicated, having only the most basic controls and gauges, no ...

Wartime Propaganda

"Save the Wine for Our Soldiers."
"Save the Wine for Our Soldiers." A French poster, 1916. Poilu (hairy one) was the French equivalent of the British Tommy and the American ...

"Some...gallant boys...going back for a rest."
"Some of the gallant boys who have been through the hard fighting going back for a rest." This picture of British soldiers returning to England ...

"Subscribe to the 5 1/2% War Loan..."
"Subscribe to the 5 1/2% War Loan, and Pave the Way to Victory." A 1916 Russian war bond poster. Financing the war proved to be an expensive ...

"The Only Photo Our Boys Can Get of the Kaiser."
"The Only Photo Our Boys Can Get of the Kaiser." This illustration is humorous, but often the Germans were depicted by Allied propaganda as ...

A 1915 British recruiting poster.
More Men and Still More Men Required. A British recruiting poster, 1915. By the end of 1914, almost one million British men had enlisted. But ...

A French poster vs. profiteering.
The Real Victor. This French cartoon purports to be part of the campaign against war profiteering. It is anti-Semitic, depicting a Jewish ...

Filming behind the lines in Austria, 1918.
Filming the action behind the lines in Galicia, Austria, ...

French anti-German propaganda.
French anti-German propaganda. "In the town of Breton-Bazoche, Madame Z, despite her resistance, was violated in the presence of her three-year ...

German World War I propaganda flier.
A part of a German World War I propaganda flier dropped in neutral countries: "The first month of the German offensive in the West! 127,000 ...

Weapons of the Trenches

A French soldier with a trench mortar.
A French soldier with a trench mortar. This type of deadly short-range weapon was designed to be fired from the ...

A gas attack alarm.
A gas attack alarm. With no bell, this German soldier uses a frying pan as an alarm signal. This scene took place in the battle sector between ...

A gas warning poster.
A warning poster in Armentières, captured by the Germans in World War I: "DANGER---GAS! Armentières contaminated by mustard gas! Do not enter ...

A German dispatch rider wearing a gas mask, 1917.
A German dispatch rider wearing a gas mask, 1917. Toxic gas was first used by the Germans on the eastern

front early in 1915. At first, ...

A howitzer battery in the Argonne, 1917.

A howitzer battery in the Argonne, 1917. The wicker cases contain ...

British machine gunners in gas helmets, 1916.

British machine gunners in action wearing gas helmets, ...

British soldiers pull a field gun out of the mud.

British soldiers pull a field gun out of the mud, 1916. The low ground of Flanders often became an impassable sea of mud in which guns, tanks, ...

British troops with machine guns.

British troops on the Cambrai front with machine guns, ready for an attack. Some of them make a fire to prepare a hot ...

German searchlight transport going to the front.

A German searchlight transport on the way to the ...

German troops use chlorine gas, Flanders, 1917.

German troops assault Allied trenches with chlorine gas on the Flanders front in ...

Section M: Between the Wars, 1920 - 1939

Overview: Between the Wars, 1920 - 1939.

A brief video Overview of the period between the World Wars, from 1920 to 1939. Transcript: Revolution replaced the German monarchy with the ...

Arts and People

Author Gertrude Stein (1874-1946).

Author Gertrude Stein (1874-1946) studied medicine at Johns Hopkins University before settling in Paris, where she became a part of the highly ...

Chevalier, Ingrid Bergman, and Charles Boyer.

Maurice Chevalier, Ingrid Bergman and Charles Boyer in 1947. Bergman (1917-1982) was a Swedish-German film actress who began her career in 1935 ...

Ezra Pound (1885-1972).

Ezra Loomis Pound (1885-1972) was a prominent member of the expatriate American artistic and literary community that flourished in Europe during ...

Greta Garbo (1905-1990), Swedish film actress.

The Swedish film actress Greta Garbo (1905-1990). Her role in a 1923 Swedish film led to Hollywood and success on the American screen, where she ...

Josephine Baker, American performer in Paris.

Josephine Baker (1907-1975) was an American singer and dancer who made her career in variety revues on the Paris stage. She began at age 19, and ...

Max Schmeling training for fight with Joe Louis.

The German heavyweight boxer Max Schmeling in training before his bout with Joe Louis in 1936. Schmeling, "The Black Uhlan," won the German ...

Miss Paris of 1934 (left) and other contestants.

Miss Paris of 1934 (left) and other ...

Pablo Picasso at an exhibit of his pottery.

The Spanish artist Pablo Picasso (1881-1973) at a Paris exhibit of his pottery. Working in his Paris studio, he was the dominating figure in the ...

Paris fashions, 1923.

Paris fashions, ...

The composer Igor Fedorovich Stravinsky (1882-1971

Igor Fedorovich Stravinsky (1882-1971), the greatest and most versatile composer of the 20th century. He was born and trained in Russia, where ...

The French actor Maurice Chevalier and his wife.

The French actor Maurice Chevalier (1888-1972) and his wife Yvonne Vallée, photographed in 1929. While still in his teens, Chevalier sang and ...

The Russian composer Dmitri Shostakovich.

The Russian composer Dmitri Shostakovich (1906-1975). He composed his first work in 1925 and was very successful until the Communist government ...

Thomas Stearns Eliot, the English author and poet.

The poet and author Thomas Stearns (T. S.) Eliot (1888-1965) was born in the United States and was educated at Harvard University before ...

Germany's Weimar Republic

First Election, Inflation

1923 German poster protests French in the Ruhr.

Hands off the Ruhrland! A German poster protests French occupation of the Ruhr, 1923. France and Belgium remained there until 1925, when ...

Down with the Abortion Paragraphs, 1924.

Down with the Abortion Paragraphs, a lithograph by Käthe Kollwitz, 1924. The poster is a plea for repeal of the section of the German penal code ...

First cabinet session under new Chancellor, 1919.

The first cabinet session under Chancellor Philipp Scheidemann, 1919. The Weimar constitution introduced ministerial responsibility into ...

First votes cast by German women, January 1919.
German women vote for the first time in January 1919. Under the Weimar constitution, all men and women over the age of 2l had the right to ...
France occupies the Ruhr, 1923.
The French seize German coal as France occupies the Ruhr, 1923. When Germany refused to make its reparations payments in 1923, France and ...
German Communist Party election poster, 1924.
A German Communist Party (KPD) election poster in 1924 reads: "Women, Smash the Chains of Capitalism! Free Yourselves! Vote for the German ...
German miners' children during Ruhr strike.
During a strike in the Ruhr, children of German miners await the distribution of ...
Gustav Noske, first Weimar Minister of Defense.
Gustav Noske (1868-1946), the first minister of defense in the Weimar Republic. A member of the right-wing (Ebert) faction of the Social ...
Scheidemann, first Weimar Chancellor, 1918.
Philipp Scheidemann (1865-1939), the first chancellor of the Weimar Republic. A member of the right wing of the German Social Democratic Party, ...

Its Birth, 1918

Birth of the Weimar Republic, November 9, 1918.
The birth and proclamation of Germany's Weimar Republic. On November 9, 1918, the same day that the kaiser abdicated, the German Social ...
Friedrich Ebert, German right wing leader, 1918.
Friedrich Ebert (1841-1925), the leader of the German Social Democratic Party's right wing. When that party came to power after the revolution ...
German Reichstag, December 1918.
The German Reichstag in December 1918. Delegates representing soldiers, sailors and workers formed the first Assembly of the Weimar ...
German sailor leads protest, 1918 Revolution.
In the German Revolution of 1918, a sailor carrying a red flag leads a march on Berlin's Unter den Linden to the Reichstag building. Sailors ...
German workers/soldiers replace government, 1918.
Members of the Workers' and Soldiers' Council at the Brandenburg Gate in Berlin. In October and November 1918, the collapse of the German ...
Hugo Haase, leader of the Independent Socialists.
Hugo Haase (1863-1919), the leader of the Independent Socialists. He had headed the Social Democratic Party delegation in the Reichstag before ...
Revolutionaries during 1918 Berlin uprising.
German revolutionaries at their machine gun posts during the uprising of November 1918 in ...

The Failed Sparticist Revolution, January 1919

A Spartacist League meeting in Berlin.
A Spartacist League meeting in Berlin, ca. January 1919. The Spartacist League attracted a large following among German workers. In 1918 it was ...
Advertising the Spartacist League, 1919.
Spartacist League members in Berlin carry placards advertising their paper, The Republic, in January 1919. The placards say "For the ...
German soldiers fight Spartacists.
German soldiers fight Spartacists on the Belle-Alliance Platz, Berlin, January 1919.The Spartacist League attracted a large following among ...
Karl Liebknecht, Spartacist revolutionary.
Karl Liebknecht (1871-1919) was a German revolutionary socialist who with Rosa Luxembourg led the Left's opposition within the German Social ...
Rosa Luxembourg just before her assassination.
The Spartacist founder Rosa Luxembourg just before her death in 1919. She was assassinated by the government after the abortive Spartacist ...
Rosa Luxembourg, Spartacist founder, 1916
Rosa Luxembourg (1870-1919). Along with Karl Liebknecht, she led the Left's opposition within the German Social Democratic Party and was a ...
Spartacists' guns in Berlin, January 1919.
Spartacists at machine gun posts on the Zimmerstrasse in Berlin during the uprising of January ...

Nazi Germany

Anti-Semitism

A Jewish-owned store after a Nazi bombing.
A Jewish-owned store in Vienna after it was bombed by the Nazis. Well before the Anschluss of 1938, the Nazis had a considerable following in ...
A poster for the 1940 German film Jew Süss.
A poster for the 1940 German film Jew Süss ...
A poster for The Eternal Jew exhibition, 1937.
A poster for The Eternal Jew exhibition, Germany, ...

British Jews with petition to open Palestine.
British Jews circulate a petition to urge their government to open Palestine to persecuted Jews. After the Nazis took power in Germany in 1933, ...
German cartoon, "A Million Dead for Jewry."
A part of a German cartoon, "A Million Dead for Jewry." This cartoon, published in 1944 in Julius Streicher's Der Stürmer , suggests that ...
Hyde Park protest against German policies.
A meeting in London's Hyde Park to protest the anti-Jewish policies of the German government. It was held in April 1933, within weeks of ...
Jewish man forced to sweep a street in 1939.
This Jewish man was forced by the Nazis to sweep a street and push the sweeper's cart in 1939. Besides measures like the Nuremberg Laws, which ...
Londoners protest Nazi treatment of the Jews.
Londoners protest Nazi Germany's treatment of the Jews, ca. ...
One of 20,000 children who fled Vienna, 1938.
This young Jewish woman was one of 20,000 children who fled from Vienna in December 1938. She is pictured on her arrival in England, and may ...

Nazi Unity Through Propaganda

A painting of German peasants.
A painting of German peasants. The Nazis saw the peasant as the repository of age-old German customs and traditions, and in the words of ...
A poster of Hitler.
A Nazi poster, "One people, one country, one ...
A Storm Troopers' recruiting poster.
A Storm Troopers' recruiting poster suggesting that SA men had ...
A very young storm trooper.
A very young storm ...
An early photograph of Hitler in a Nazi uniform.
An early photograph of Hitler in a Nazi uniform, by Heinrich Hoffmann, who became Hitler's official photographer and was the only person allowed ...
German Girls' Organization in a military drill.
Members of the German Girls' Organization form ranks in a military drill. Though women did not join the armed services, the girls of the Bund ...
Germans...Do not buy from Jews! SA sign.
Germans! Defend Yourselves! Do not buy from Jews! A sign carried by SA men in Berlin, ca. ...
Hitler greets an admirer.
Hitler greets an ...
Hitler talks to Hitler Youth at 1937 rally.
Hitler talks to members of the Hitler Youth at the 1937 Nuremberg rally. At the party rallies, an entire day was devoted to the Hitler Youth. ...
In Safe Care, women as childbearers.
In Safe Care. This painting was part of the Exhibition of German Art held in Munich in 1937, 1938, 1941, and 1942. It exemplifies not only the ...
Joseph Goebbels, Nazi propaganda chief.
Joseph Goebbels (1897-1945) is known chiefly for his role as Nazi minister of propaganda. Goebbels had been named Nazi Gauleiter (district ...
Nazi Christmas toys in Berlin shops.
These Nazi toys were sold in Berlin shops during a Christmas ...
Our Leader, an adulatory portrait of Hitler.
Our Leader, one of the countless adulatory portraits in the vast Hitler iconography ...
Painting typifies Nazi cult of peasant, rural life
A German painting typifies the Nazi cult of the peasant and the ideal of rural folk ...
Students and Nazis burn "un-German" books.
German students and Nazis burn "un-German" books in Berlin, May 1933. Significant literary works, as well as pornography, were ...
The German Student Fights for the Führer ...
A 1930s German poster, "The German Student Fights for the Führer and the ...
The Reichschancellery in Berlin, by Albert Speer.
The new Reichschancellery (chancellor's office) in Berlin, designed by Albert Speer. Nazi architecture imitated classical forms, and tended ...
The Volkswagen, or "People's Car."
The Volkswagen, or "People's Car," was created in 1934 as part of the "Strength through Joy" movement in Germany. Hitler intended that every ...

The Early Life of Adolf Hitler

Adolf Hitler at age 16 in 1905.
Adolf Hitler at age 16 in 1905, a sketch made by F. Sturmberger, one of his schoolmates in Linz, Austria. Hitler himself aspired to be an ...
Eva Braun, mistress of Adolf Hitler.
Eva Braun (1911-1945), the mistress of Adolf Hitler, was the daughter of an artisan. She met Hitler while

working in Heinrich Hoffmann's ...

Hitler and Eva Braun in the Berghof.

Hitler and Eva Braun in the Berghof. Only in her company did Hitler seem happy and at ease. Here, he dozes after tea. They were married the ...

Hitler as a corporal in World War I.

Adolf Hitler, who served as a runner in World War I (front row, on left). When the war broke out, Hitler was in Munich, and although he was an ...

Hitler in Landsberg Prison in 1924.

Hitler in Landsberg Prison in 1924. The French occupation of the Ruhr in 1923 and the ensuing catastrophic inflation inspired Hitler with a plan ...

Hitler's father, Alois Schicklgruber Hitler.

Adolf Hitler's father, Alois Schicklgruber Hitler (1837-1903), was the illegitimate son of a peasant woman and a miller. Alois became a customs ...

The Mass Rallies

Hitler arrives at Nuremberg for Party Days.

Hitler arrives at Nuremberg for Party Days, ca. ...

Hitler reviews Nuremberg torchlight parade.

Robert Ley, Hitler, and Rudolf Hess review the torchlight parade at one of the Nuremberg rallies. Ley was head of the organizing committee for ...

Hitler speaks at Nuremberg, 1935.

Hitler speaks at Nuremberg, 1935. At the 1935 Party Congress, Hitler made several important policy announcements: the swastika was to be the ...

Hitler talks to some German soldiers at a rally.

Hitler talks to some German soldiers at a ...

Leaders in Nazi Party Congress, September 1934.

Leaders in the Nazi Party Congress, held at Nuremberg in September 1934. Saluting in Luitpold Stadium before the Memorial to the Dead and the ...

Leni Riefenstahl at a motion-picture camera.

Leni Riefenstahl at a motion-picture camera. Her best-known work was Triumph of the Will, a documentary of the 1934 Nazi Party meeting at ...

Nazi banners, 1935 Nuremberg Party Days.

Nazi banners fly over the stadium during the 1935 Party Days at ...

Nazi flags on Nuremberg streets, 1936.

Nazi flags are carried by marchers through the Nuremberg streets, 1936. Every detail of the proceedings at the Nazi rallies, down to the posture ...

The film director Leni Riefenstahl.

Leni Riefenstahl, who filmed the 1934 Nuremberg party rally. Riefenstahl, born in 1902, began her career as a dancer and actress, and directed ...

The Nazi Revolution: The Third Reich, 1930-1934

11th anniversary of Hitler's abortive 1923 putsch.

A celebration of the eleventh anniversary of Hitler's abortive 1923 "Beer Hall Putsch." The date, November 9, was a national holiday for the ...

A 1930 Social Democratic Party election poster.

The Social Democratic list against the Bourgeoisie and the Swastika, a German Social Democratic Party (SPD) election poster, ca. 1930. SPD ...

A Nazi rioter salutes when arrested, August 1932.

A Nazi rioter salutes as he is arrested. The incident took place on Aug. 30, 1932, during the opening session of the Reichstag ...

A scene in the German Reichstag, February 1932.

A scene in the German Reichstag , February 1932. The day's session opened with a speech by a deputy from the Social Democratic Party. During ...

Elect Our Best! Hindenburg poster, March 1932.

Elect Our Best! A campaign poster for Hindenburg, 1932. Field Marshal Paul von Hindenburg (1834-1934), a militarist, monarchist , nationalist, ...

Ernst Roehm, Storm Trooper leader, (1887-1934).

Ernst Roehm (1887-1934), the leader of the Storm Troopers (the SA). Roehm organized the Nazis' private army, which by the time Hitler came to ...

G. S. D. P.'s Reichsbanner meeting, Feb. 1933.

An outdoor meeting in Berlin of the Social Democratic Party's Reichsbanner, February 1933. The Reichsbanner, a veterans' group organized by the ...

German chancellor announces program, 1932.

German Chancellor Kurt von Schleicher announces his program over the radio, December 1932. Von Schleicher (1882-1934) had been Minister of War ...

Headquarters of the German Communist Party, 1931.

The Karl Liebknecht building in Berlin, headquarters of the German Communist Party. It was temporarily closed by the police following street ...

Himmler, Lutze, Hess, Hitler salute followers 1934

SS head Heinrich Himmler, SA Chief of Staff Viktor Lutze, Deputy Führer Rudolf Hess and Adolf Hitler salute their followers. Lutze was named ...

Hitler and Albert Speer.
Hitler and Albert Speer (1905-1981) the architect who became Inspector-General of Buildings for Berlin, and in 1942 was named Minister of ...
Hitler sworn in as chancellor, March 21, 1933 .
Hitler is sworn in as Chancellor of Germany at the Garrison Church in Potsdam, March 21, 1933. President Hindenburg, who is seated in front of ...
Rudolf Hess (1894-1987).
Rudolf Hess (1894-1987) was a member of the Nazi Old Guard, having participated in the Munich "beer hall putsch" of 1923 and having joined Hitler ...
SA and SS members sworn in as policemen.
Members of the SA (Sturmabteilung) known as Storm Troopers or Brownshirts, and the SS (Schutzstaffel), Hitler's bodyguards who were also ...
The leader of the German Nationalist Party.
Alfred Hugenberg (1865-1951), the leader of the German Nationalist Party, was a director of the Krupp armament works from 1909 to 1918. He was ...
The Reichstag fire, February 27, 1933.
The Reichstag fire, February 27, 1933. Less than a month after Hitler became chancellor, the Reichstag building was destroyed by fire. A ...
The Reichstag when Hitler took office.
The opening session of the Reichstag held on March 21, 1933, the day Hitler took the oath of office as Chancellor of Germany. Nazi deputies ...

Political and Social Turmoil in Central and Eastern Europe

A peasant from Montenegro in his native costume.
A peasant from Montenegro in his native costume. The welfare of the peasants, agrarian reform, was one of the biggest problems in Eastern Europe ...
A Soviet poster, about 1925, against capitalism.
A Soviet poster, about 1925, aimed against capitalism and the interests that allegedly served it: religion, the police, the espionage apparatus, ...
A woman judge in Turkey.
A woman judge holding court in Turkey, exemplifying the reforms in the rights of women instituted by Atatürk between 1924 and 1938. His reform ...
Bohemians at a soup kitchen, January 1919.
Bohemians line up in front of a soup kitchen, January 1919. After World War I, emergency aid to the devastated countries was readily given, but ...
Bolshevik soldiers in Russo-Polish War, 1920.
Bolshevik soldiers in the streets of Grajewo, Poland, during the Russo-Polish War, 1920. After World War I, a new Poland was reconstituted from ...
Finnish war orphans taught sewing by Red Cross.
Finnish war orphans are taught how to sew by the Red ...
Grigori Evseyevich Zinoviev (1883-1936).
A 1918 photograph of Grigori Evseyevich Zinoviev (1883-1936). Zinoviev joined the Bolshevik party when it was founded in 1903. In 1919 he ...
Hungarian refugees of the war.
These Hungarians, photographed in 1920, are war refugees ...
Joseph Stalin (1879-1953).
Joseph Stalin (1879-1953). Born Joseph Djugashvili, he spent his early years organizing for the Bolsheviks in his native Caucasus. After ...
Paderewski, pianist, composer, Polish President.
Ignace Jan Paderewski (1860-1941), pianist, composer, and President of Poland in 1919. One of the successor states of the Austro-Hungarian ...
Portrait of Mustapha Kemal (1881-1938) Atatürk.
A portrait of Mustapha Kemal (1881-1938), also known as Atatürk (Father of the Turks). Kemal was a hero in World War I as a result of the ...
Proclamation of Hungarian Soviet Republic.
The proclamation of the Hungarian Soviet Republic, March 1919. In the immediate post-World War I period, revolutions occurred in several ...
Shock-worker movement. Soviet success, 1930.
Shock-worker movement, and The successes of socialist construction of the U.S.S.R. unites its enemies in rabid anger against the world's first ...
The Mausoleum of Atatürk at Ankara, Turkey.
The Mausoleum of Atatürk at Ankara, Turkey. Atatürk's remains were interred here on November 10,1953, the tenth anniversary of his death. This ...

Postwar France

Riots, Strikes, Socialism

Bateliers strike at Pontoise, 1936.
Bateliers (canal workers) on strike at Pontoise, near Paris, in 1936. By June 1936, about two million workers were on strike all over France. ...
A demonstration in a French textile strike, 1930.
A demonstration during a textile strike in Roubaix, a city in France's industrial Nord (north), in 1930. The Nord

had been a stronghold of ...

A French anti-communist poster, 1930s.
A French anti-communist poster, 1930s. "French Worker, Here are the Communist Leaders." By depicting communists as sinister-looking foreigners, ...

A French headline: "300 Jews Rule the World."
A newspaper hawker sells the Libre Parole , with the headline: "300 Jews Rule the World." With the proliferation of the right-wing leagues in ...

Anti-socialist poster, 1936 French election.
The illustration from an anti-socialist poster printed for the 1936 French election campaign. It argues that the Popular Front and socialism ...

De la Rocque speaks at 1936 Social Party meeting.
Colonel François de la Rocque speaks at a meeting of the French Social Party in Paris in 1936. De la Rocque was head of the right-wing Croix de ...

Edouard Daladier (1884-1970), socialist premier.
Edouard Daladier (1884-1970). A Radical Socialist, he was first called to form a cabinet to deal with the Stavisky crisis in 1934, but ...

French anti-socialist, anti-communist cartoon.
A French anti-socialist and anti-communist cartoon, about 1939. "Marianne," the symbol of the French republic, is helpless in the face of her ...

Goodrich Tire plant strike in Paris suburb, 1937.
A strike at the Goodrich Tire plant at Colombes, a suburb of Paris, in 1937. Despite the agreement reached in June 1936 (the Matignon Accords), ...

Léon Blum , socialist statesman; premier, 1936-37.
Léon Blum (1872-1950) was a French Socialist statesman of Jewish ancestry who served as premier of France in the first Popular Front government ...

Paris' Stavisky riots of February 6, 1934.
A scene in Paris during the Stavisky riots of February 6, 1934. Serge Alexandre Stavisky (1886?-1934) was a swindler whose exploits implicated ...

Peasant home in the Haute Savoie, 1938.
A peasant home in Saint-Veran in the Haute Savoie, 1938. During the Depression in France, many unemployed industrial workers returned to their ...

Popular Front rally, Paris, July 14, 1935.
A Popular Front demonstration in Paris, July 14, 1935. The Stavisky riots awakened the Left in France to the threat from the Right. On July 14, ...

Symbols of Popular Front unity in France.
Symbols of Popular Front unity in France, ca. 1936. The patriotism as well as the unity of the Popular Front are symbolized by the flag and ...

Unemployed Parisian men wait for food.
During the Depression in Paris, unemployed men line up to await the distribution of food. The Depression was slow to hit France, and ...

Women strikers in Paris sing in the streets, 1935.
Women strikers in Paris, 1935, keep up their morale by singing in the streets. Their song is entitled "All Paris is Out of Work." Hundreds of ...

Postwar Great Britain

The British Empire

A 1933 confrontation between Arabs and Jews.
Police intervening between Arabs and Jews at Jaffa, Palestine, November 6, 1933, one of many confrontations in Palestine during the interwar ...

A reform benefit for Untouchables.
A benefit for untouchables. The miseries suffered by millions of untouchables in India were a major concern for Gandhi and many other social ...

Constitution Act, granting Dominions autonomy.
Queen Elizabeth II signs the Constitution Act. In 1931, the Parliament passed the Statute of Westminster, which granted full autonomy and legal ...

Gandhi during the Salt March.
Gandhi with followers during the 1930 Salt March protesting the government's salt monopoly. Gandhi had organized several campaigns (called " ...

Mohandas (Mahatma) Gandhi (1869-1948).
Mohandas (Mahatma) Gandhi (1869-1948) led the movement to free India from British rule. He had been educated in London in the law, and as an ...

Police raid Bombay Congress Party headquarters.
A 1930 police raid on the Bombay city headquarters of the Indian nationalist movement. The active participants in the nationalist movement were ...

Subhas Chandra Bose in Berlin, 1938.
Subhas Chandra Bose (ca. 1897-1945) in a 1938 Berlin press conference. He was an Indian Nationalist leader who called for complete Indian ...

Video sequence: Mohandas Gandhi.
A video sequence concerning Mohandas Gandhi, the London-educated Indian attorney who returned to his country to live simply and organize ...

Unemployment and Depression

A newspaper vendor in London, 1919.
A newspaper vendor in London, 1919. Then, as now, sensationalism was a characteristic feature of ...

A strike of the London butchers, 1936.
A strike of the London butchers, 1936. After the General Strike of 1926, the unions in Britain became dedicated to compromise rather than ...

Blackleg driver in General Strike of 1926.
During the General Strike of 1926 a blackleg (or scab) driver steers his bus out of the depot under police escort. The British government made ...

British prime minister David Lloyd-George.
David Lloyd-George, the 1st Earl Lloyd-George of Dwyfor (1863-1945). David Lloyd-George had been a forceful member of Parliament for the Labour ...

Edward VIII's instrument of abdication.
The main wording of Edward VIII's instrument of abdication : "I, Edward the Eighth, . . . do hereby declare My irrevocable determination to ...

Engineering students served as blackleg drivers.
Engineering students at the Finsburg Technical College serve as " blackleg " engineers and firemen on the railroad during the General Strike of ...

Hood of a blackleg bus is wired shut.
The hood of a " blackleg " bus is wired shut to prevent striking English transport workers from immobilizing it during the General Strike of ...

Housing for workers in Cork, Ireland, 1927.
Housing for workers in Cork, a seaport and manufacturing center on Ireland's southern coast, 1927. After World War I unemployment and poor ...

King Edward VIII of England (1894-1972).
King Edward VIII of England (1894-1972). In 1936, on the death of his father George V, Edward succeeded to the throne but reigned less than a ...

London police clear a square of strikers, 1926.
Mounted police in London clear a square where strikers gathered during the General Strike of 1926. The government policy of providing police and ...

Stanley Baldwin, Conservative prime minister.
Stanley Baldwin (1867-1947) was a wealthy industrialist and leader of the British Conservative Party in the interwar period. During his ...

The Duke and Duchess of Windsor arrive in Paris.
The Duke and Duchess of Windsor arrive in Paris, where they were married in June 1937. The former Edward VIII was compensated for the loss of ...

The economist John Maynard Keynes (1883-1946).
The economist John Maynard Keynes (1883-1946) became well known when, as a representative of Britain at the Versailles Peace Conference, he ...

The miners' strike in England, 1926.
Miners salute as they leave the pits following the declaration of a strike. The General Strike of 1926 began when the coal miners of Britain ...

Unemployed London men in Salvation Army line.
During the Depression, unemployed men line up in front of the Salvation Army office in London, ca. 1932. Unemployment in Britain rose from one ...

Unemployed served in the 1932 British Depression.
In the British Depression of 1932, hot tea and food are served to the unemployed at the Blackfriars Hotel in London by the Salvation ...

Postwar Italy

Introducing Fascism

Count Galeazzo Ciano, Italian foreign minister.
Count Galeazzo Ciano (1903-1944) Italian foreign minister, with his wife, Mussolini's daughter Edda, whom he married in 1930. From 1936 to 1943 ...

Fascist Italian Chamber of Deputies in 1936.
The Italian Chamber of Deputies in 1936, with all of its members in the uniforms of the Fascist party. After Mussolini took power in 1922, the ...

Italo Balbo and Mussolini at a festival in Rome.
Italo Balbo (at left) and Mussolini at an air festival in Rome. Italo Balbo (1896-1940) led the march on Rome in 1922 and built up the Italian ...

Italy, Papacy celebrate the Lateran Treaty.
Italy and the Papacy celebrate the first anniversary of the Lateran Treaty. Signed in 1929, the pact put an end to the stalemate which had been ...

Mussolini presides over Fascist Grand Council.
Mussolini presides over the Fascist Grand Council at the time of its 1937 decision to withdraw from the League of Nations. The Fascist Grand ...

Pope Pius XI, who ruled from 1922 to 1939.
Pope Pius XI (1857-1939) signed the 1929 Lateran Treaty with the government of united Italy that formally recognized the Vatican City as a ...

Mussolini's March on Rome

Benito Mussolini's Rome march, October 1922.
Benito Mussolini and some of his chief supporters shown during the March on Rome, October 1922. Italo Balbo, the future air minister, is on ...

Fascists enter Rome, October 1922.
The entry of the Fascist squads into Rome by the Porte del Popolo, October ...

Italian Fascists during the 1920 transit strike.
Italian Fascists organize alternate means of transportation during the transit strike of August 1920. Following World War I, Italy experienced a ...

Mussolini addresses followers in Colosseum.
Mussolini addresses his Fascist followers in the Roman ...

Mussolini in Milan during the March on Rome.
Mussolini in Milan during the March on Rome. Mussolini waited in Milan until King Victor Emmanuel capitulated and asked the Fascists to form a ...

Mussolini's march on Rome, 1922.
Mussolini's march on Rome, 1922. On October 27, 1922, Fascist groups in various parts of Italy took possession of key points, and 26,000 people ...

Victor Emmanuel at the Caligari railroad station.
King Victor Emmanuel salutes a guard of honor at the Caligari, Sardinia, railroad station. After he asked Mussolini to form a government, ...

Video sequence: Fascists enter Rome, October 1922.
A video sequence concerning Mussolini's triumphant entrance into Rome. Benito Mussolini addressed his followers after leading more than 25,000 ...

Propaganda and Expansion Into Africa

Abyssinian (Ethiopian) infantry, 1936.
Abyssinian (Ethiopian) infantry, 1936. Although many Ethiopian soldiers were better armed than these, they were no match for the mechanized ...

Buy Italian Products.
Buy Italian Products. This was part of the campaign to achieve economic self-sufficiency begun by Mussolini following the League of Nations ...

Hailie Selassie, the Ethiopian emperor.
Hailie Selassie (1891-1975), shown here with his family, was Emperor of Ethiopia from 1930 until his death. When Italy invaded Ethiopia in 1935, ...

Italian colonists salute Mussolini, 1938.
Italian colonists on their way to Libya give the raised arm salute to Mussolini as he watches their mass exodus, 1938. Besides land reclamation, ...

Milan celebrates conquest of Addis Ababa, 1936.
A crowd in Milan celebrates the Italian conquest of Addis Ababa, the capital of Ethiopia, in May 1936. This victory was the climax of the war. ...

Mussolini honors hero in war against Ethiopia.
Italian Premier Mussolini presents the medals won by General Magliocco, who died in the war against Ethiopia, to his son in ...

Mussolini places the first stone in Pomezia.
In 1938, Mussolini places the first stone in Pomezia, one of five towns built in the reclaimed Italian marshes. Mussolini's land reclamation ...

Plan submitted for Palace of Fascism in Italy.
One of the plans submitted for a Palace of Fascism in Italy, 1934. According to this grandiose plan (one of 104 submitted), the complex would ...

Video sequence: Italian invasion of Ethiopia.
A video sequence concerning the 1935 Italian invasion of Ethiopia. The invasion was a challenge to the League of Nations, which failed to act ...

Preventing Future Wars: International Organizations and Treaties

Aristide Briand, France's "apostle of peace."
Aristide Briand (1862-1932) was France's "apostle of peace" in the interwar years. A former socialist, Briand served as premier eleven times ...

Authors of the Kellogg-Briand Pact, 1928.
U.S. Secretary of State Frank B. Kellogg (left) and the French Foreign Minister, Aristide Briand. In 1928 a further attempt to foster world ...

Delegates to the Disarmament Conference.
Delegates to the Washington Naval Disarmament Conference, 1921-1922. Left to right: former French Premier Renée Viviani; French Ambassador to ...

Paul-Boncour and League of Nations, 1924-1932.
Joseph Paul-Boncour (1873-1972). Paul-Boncour was dedicated to the League of Nations, where he served as France's permanent delegate from 1924 ...

Signing the Locarno Treaty, 1925.
Signing the Locarno Treaty, 1925. By the terms of this treaty, Germany agreed to renounce all attempts to revise its western frontier and to ...

The League of Nations in session at Geneva.
The League of Nations in session at Geneva, ca. 1930. Presiding at this session is Auguste Zaleski, Foreign

Minister of Poland. On his right is ...

The Palace of Nations at Geneva, Switzerland.

The Palace of Nations at Geneva, Switzerland served as the headquarters and meeting place of the League of Nations. The League was founded at ...

World Disarmament Conference in session.

The 1921-1922 World Disarmament Conference in session in Washington. In the years following the war, the French based their foreign policy on ...

Science and Technology

1924 Freed-Eisemann radio receiver.

A 1924 Freed-Eisemann radio receiver. The earliest radio receivers were bulky and primitive, but they developed rapidly as radio quickly became ...

Hans Geiger (1882-1945).

Hans Geiger (1882-1945) a German physicist, moved to England, where he worked under Ernest Rutherford from 1906 to 1912. Geiger investigated ...

Niels Bohr (1885-1962).

Niels Bohr (1885-1962), a Danish physicist and pioneer researcher into atomic structure. Working with Ernest Rutherford at Cambridge University, ...

The first commercial radio station, August 1920.

Originating a broadcast in one of the first commercial radio station, August 1920. From such small beginnings, commercial radio quickly spread ...

The German physicist Werner Heisenberg.

Werner Heisenberg (1901-1976) was a German physicist and a founder of the Quantum Theory. Heisenberg's Uncertainty Principle states that it is ...

Spain: The Republican Revolution and Civil War, 1931-1939

A bombed streetcar in Barcelona, 1938.

A bombed streetcar in Barcelona, 1938. A bomb fell near this streetcar and caused all its passengers to be asphyxiated. Barcelona was the chief ...

Evacuate Madrid, Spanish Civil War poster, 1937.

Evacuate Madrid, lettering on a giant poster during the Spanish Civil War, 1937. Franco's forces tried to take the city in the winter of ...

Francisco Franco, fascist dictator of Spain.

Francisco Franco (1891-1975), the fascist dictator of Spain. Franco had been chief of the General Staff starting in 1934, and when the Popular ...

Madrid celebrates Spanish Republic in 1931.

A crowd in Madrid celebrates the proclamation of the Spanish republic in 1931. Pressure from middle-class liberals, anarcho-syndicalist miners ...

Nationalist propaganda poster: "Never."

A Nationalist propaganda poster reading "Never," which appeared during the Spanish Civil War. It depicts the Franco forces as defenders of the ...

Nationalist troops bivouac in the Pyrenees.

Franco's nationalist troops bivouac in the Pyrenees during the Spanish Civil War, July ...

Spanish Falangist at Nazi Party Congress, 1937.

A young Spanish Falangist among the Germans at the Nuremberg Party Congress in September 1937. At the 1937 Nuremberg Congress, called the Party ...

Spanish Republican army seeks refuge in France.

Pressed by Franco's Nationalists, the Republican army of Spain crosses the border to seek refuge in France. When Barcelona fell in January 1939, ...

Video sequence: Spanish Republic is born, 1931.

A video sequence concerning the declaration of the Spanish Republic. This was the crowd of celebrants in the streets of Madrid in 1931, as a ...

Video sequence: The Spanish Civil War.

A video sequence concerning the Spanish Civli War. General Franco rose against the Republican government of Spain. The Spanish Civil War cost ...

The March to World War II

1936: Hitler Ready for Conquest

French soldier with flag, German remilitarization.

During Germany's remilitarization of the Rhineland in March 1936, a French soldier in Mayence carries away his country's flag. After 1919, the ...

General Maurice-Gustave Gamelin (1872-1952).

General Maurice-Gustave Gamelin (1872-1952). As Chief of the French General Staff, Gamelin was not prepared to attack when Germany remilitarized ...

German poster attempts to stimulate race hatred.

Germany! Are you going to let this happen here? This German poster, which was printed during World War II, attempts to stimulate race hatred ...

Jesse Owens in 1936 Olympic Games at Berlin.

Jesse Owens (right) competing in the 1936 Olympic Games at Berlin. The racism of Hitler's Germany gave rise to a movement in the United States ...

Karl Hein, German gold-medal winner, 1936.
Karl Hein of Germany, the gold medal winner for the hammer throw in the 1936 ...
Video sequence: Jesse Owens, 1936 Berlin Olympics.
A video sequence concerning the 1936 Berlin Olympics and Jesse Owens. Hitler used the 1936 Olympic games as a showcase for the new Nazi Germany, ...

Appeasement Fails, 1938

A French cartoon on the Stalin-Hitler pact.
A French cartoon on the Stalin-Hitler pact: "So, you'll give us your roubles, yes?" Stalin embraces Goering and Hitler, who are depicted as ...
A German soldier checks the papers of a Czech.
A German soldier checks the papers of a Czech motorcyclist at the Sudeten border, October ...
Adolf Hitler and Benito Mussolini.
Adolf Hitler and Benito Mussolini. The Rome-Berlin Axis was sealed by an exchange of visits between the heads of state of Italy and Germany. ...
Axis rally in Tokyo, Japan 1937.
An Axis rally in Tokyo, 1937. In November 1936, Japan signed the Anti-Comintern pact with Germany, and in 1937 Italy was included in the pact. ...
Ciano reviews German troops.
Mussolini's son-in-law, Italian Foreign Minister Galeazzo Ciano, reviews German troops, ca. ...
French cartoon of Mussolini with a nose ring.
A French cartoon depicts an uneasy Mussolini with a swastika ring in his nose. The Pact of Steel of 1939 tied Italy's fortunes to those of ...
French Premier Eduard Daladier (1884-1970).
French Premier Eduard Daladier arrives in Munich in 1938. Hitler wanted to incorporate the Czechoslovakian Sudetenland into Germany because ...
German tanks roll through a Sudeten street.
German tanks roll through a Sudeten street. The Munich conference succeeded only in convincing Hitler to postpone his entry into Czechoslovakia ...
Hitler and Togo at Berchtesgaden, October 1938.
Hitler confers with Japanese Ambassador Togo at Berchtesgaden in October 1938. In 1936, Germany, Japan, and Italy joined informally in an ...
Map: Nazi Germany by September 1939.
A map showing the growth of Nazi Germany by September 1939. Once Hitler had firm control over a renewed Germany and had found that the other ...
Nazi women in Czechoslovakia greet Germans.
Nazi women of the German ethnic minority in Czechoslovakia greet the Germans as they march into Prague, March 1939. Hitler was not satisfied ...
Neville Chamberlain returns from Munich, 1938.
British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain (1869-1940) arrives home from Munich, where he had gone to discuss the Czech question. At the 1938 ...
The "Stalin-Hitler Pact."
The "Stalin-Hitler Pact." After being rebuffed by his attempts to form a containment policy with France and Britain against Germany, Stalin ...
Von Ribbentrop, Ciano, Hitler, Goering in Berlin.
Von Ribbentrop, Ciano, Hitler and Goering in Berlin, 1939. Rapprochement between Germany and Italy culminated in the signing of the "Pact of ...

The Anschluss, 1938

A ballot on the Anschluss with Austria.
A ballot for Hitler's plebiscite on the Anschluss with Austria. To gauge public reaction to the Anschluss , Hitler ordered a plebiscite to ...
Arthur von Seyss-Inquart (1892-1946).
Arthur von Seyss-Inquart (1892-1946) in Linz, Austria, March 1938. As a result of pressure from Hitler, Seyss-Inquart, the leader of the Nazis ...
Austrian Nazis sing the Horst Wessel song.
Austrian Nazis sing the Horst Wessel song under a banner that reads, "For an Austria without Schuschnigg," March 1938. The Austrian Nazis ...
Austrians greet Hitler.
Some happy Austrians, who then became citizens of the German Reich, greet Hitler with a sign, "Victory to the Chief" on his arrival in Vienna on ...
Children greet Hitler after the Anschluss.
Children of Berlin greet Hitler on his triumphal return from Austria after the Anschluss , March ...
Swearing oath of allegiance to Hitler in Vienna.
Swearing the oath of allegiance to Hitler in Vienna just after the 1938 Anschluss are Heinrich Himmler, head of the SS and the Gestapo , and ...
The Anschluss, 1938.
Before the Anschluss, Austrians read pro-Schuschnigg posters during the 1938 campaign for the plebiscite on union with Germany. ...
Vienna's City Square renamed after Adolf Hitler.
After the German takeover of Austria in March 1938, the name of the City Hall Square in Vienna is changed to

Adolf Hitler ...

Transportation

Air Transportation

A Caproni "Italia" transport, 1921.
A Caproni twin-engined "Italia" transport, photographed in 1921. This biplane carried ten passengers, and it was used to inaugurate airbus ...

A Douglas DC-3 passenger aircraft.
An American built Douglas DC-3 passenger aircraft, used by many European ...

A Junkers Ju. G 38 transport plane, 1930's.
The Junkers Ju G 38 transport plane, built in the 1930s, carried 34 passengers. This huge airplane, built by the pioneer builders of all-metal ...

A Vickers "Vimy" converted for passenger service.
A Vickers "Vimy" British World War I bomber converted for passenger service. It carried a pilot and six passengers, or 3000 pounds of freight, at ...

Charles Lindbergh beside his famous plane, 1927.
Charles Lindbergh beside his famous plane, The Spirit of St. Louis, in 1927. Lindbergh was the first person to fly nonstop across the Atlantic ...

The Graf Zeppelin over Germany, 1928.
The Graf Zeppelin , or LZ-127, was the first commercial dirigible built by Germany when the ban on airship construction was lifted after World ...

The Dutch-built Fokker Trimotor airplane.
The Dutch-built Fokker Trimotor was one of the most successful interwar civil transport aircraft. Aside from regular passenger service, it made ...

The huge Dornier DO-X flying boat in flight, 1929.
The huge Dornier DO-X flying boat in flight, 1929. This 55- ton aircraft carried 169 passengers on its first flight. Its twelve engines (six ...

The interior of a German passenger plane.
The interior of a German passenger plane, ca. 1931. The Germans pioneered commercial passenger flight with their Zeppelin airships in 1909. ...

The luxurious cabin of the Dornier DO-X.
The luxurious cabin of the Dornier DO-X. This airplane visited the U.S. in ...

The passenger cabin of the Vickers "Vimy."
The passenger cabin of the Vickers ...

The spacious salon of the British dirigible R-100
The amazingly spacious Grand Salon of the British dirigible R-100. That airship made one successful round trip to Canada in July 1930, but it ...

The tail planes of the dirigible R-100.
The huge tail planes of the British dirigible R-100. In October 1930 this aircraft's sister ship, the R-101, started out on a highly publicized ...

Automobiles

A 1921 Benz Type 6/18 PS Sportwagen.
A 1921 Benz Type 6/18 PS Sportwagen. The 1920s and 1930s saw the rapid advance of the automobile as a major means of transportation. This ...

A 1927 Austin Seven Swallow open two-seater.
A 1927 Austin Seven Swallow open two-seater. At a cost of £175, this was a very popular car in its day. Its manufacturer, the Swallow Sidecar ...

A 1934 Mercedes-Benz 500 K Cabriolet.
A 1934 Mercedes-Benz 500 K Cabriolet. This model's 8-cylinder engine developed 100 horsepower, but that would increase to 160 hp if the ...

Peugeot's 1938 model, the 202.
Peugeot's 1938 model, the 202. In the 1930s, Peugeot produced almost one-fourth of all French-made passenger cars. This model had a front-wheel ...

The BMW 3/15 Wartburg Roadster of 1930.
The BMW 3/15 Wartburg Roadster of 1930. A genuine sports car, this roadster came with a powerful high-compression engine, and it scored many ...

The BMW 328, 1936-40
The BMW 328 has been called the first modern sports car. This vehicle proved unbeatable in all international sports car races in its class, but ...

The Jaguar SS 100, manufactured in 1936.
The Jaguar SS 100, manufactured in 1936. This two-seater had a 105-horsepower engine, and it sold for £395. The SS-100 typifies the classic ...

The Luxury Transatlantic Liners

The Normandie, flagship of the French line
The Normandie, the flagship of the French line, won the transatlantic record on her maiden voyage in May 1935. She was 1027 feet long, with a ...

The Cunard liner Queen Mary in 1936
The Cunard liner Queen Mary, photographed in the New York Harbor in 1936. She was 1020 feet long, with a gross tonnage of 81,200. The Queen ...

The Italian Line's Conte di Savoia in 1933.
The Italian Line's Conte di Savoia made her first transatlantic run in November 1932, cruising at 27.5 knots, or about 31 mph. She was 860 ...
The North German Lloyd liner Bremen, 1929.
The North German Lloyd liner Bremen steaming up New York harbor after she won the transatlantic record on her July 1929 maiden voyage. She was ...

Section N: World War II, 1939 - 1945

Overview: .World War II, 1939 - 1945.
A brief video Overview of the history of World War II, from 1939 to 1945. Transcript: World War II began on September 1, 1939, when Hitler ...

Japan's Final Days

Albert Einstein (1879-1955).
Albert Einstein (1879-1955). His elaboration in 1905 of the theory of relativity, of the equivalence of matter and energy, and his work on ...
Bomb damage in Tokyo.
Bomb damage in Tokyo. Well before the atomic bombs were dropped, Japan had been devastated by conventional U.S. air attacks, and Japanese ...
Enrico Fermi at the controls.
Enrico Fermi at the control panel of the synchrocyclotron atom smasher at the University of Chicago. Fermi (1901-1954) was an Italian physicist ...
Hiroshima after the atomic explosion.
Hiroshima after the atomic explosion. It is estimated that at least 100,000 people died when the U.S. dropped a single atomic bomb on Hiroshima ...
Japanese Emperor Hirohito.
Japanese Emperor Hirohito (1901-1988) took action to force the surrender of Japan after the Nagasaki atomic blast. He had assumed the throne in ...
Japanese surrender on U.S.S. Missouri .
The surrender ceremony which ended the Pacific War, September 2, 1945, aboard the U.S.S. Missouri in Tokyo Bay. U.S. General Douglas MacArthur ...
Los Alamos National Laboratory, aerial view.
The Los Alamos National Laboratory in New Mexico. The effort to develop an atomic bomb was very much a joint British-U.S. effort, and several of ...
Stalin, Truman, Churchill at Potsdam Conference.
Stalin, Truman, and Churchill at the July 1945 Potsdam Conference. The Big Three met again in Potsdam to discuss postwar problems: Germany, ...
The first atomic explosion, July 16, 1945.
The dawn of the atomic age: the first atomic explosion, July 16, 1945, in the New Mexico desert. President Truman learned of the explosion ...
The original atomic pile.
The original atomic pile. The Manhattan Project involved scientists from around the world, but some of the most important early experiments took ...
Video sequence: The first atomic explosion.
A video sequence concerning the first atomic bomb explosion. The nuclear age was born here in the New Mexico desert. This film was made on the ...

The Battle of Britain

"Let us go forward together."
"Let us go forward together." These words, superimposed on the image of Prime Minister Churchill and symbols of British armed strength, were ...
"Never was so much owed by so many to so few."
"Never was so much owed by so many to so few." These words of Churchill were a tribute to the courage of Royal Air Force pilots during the ...
A German aircrew en route to bomb London.
German fliers en route to London for a bombing attack, November 1940. Once the Germans took control of France and Belgium, they could easily ...
A German Messerschmitt Me. 109 fighter airplane.
A German Messerschmitt Me. 109 fighter airplane. At the beginning of World War II, the Me. 109 was regarded as the finest fighter airplane in ...
A Heinkel He. 111 medium bomber.
A German Heinkel He. lll bomber. The lll was the medium bomber that the German air force relied on for much of the war, especially during the ...
A Plymouth milkman picks his way through rubble.
A milkman in Plymouth, a city in southwest England, picks his way through the rubble to make his ...
Air raid shelter pass used during the Blitz.
The principal part of an air raid shelter pass used during the Blitz in London in the winter of 1940-1941. Access to the air raid shelters was ...
British troops arrive at a London station.
British troops arrive at a London railroad station as children are leaving the city during the ...
British woman carpenter at a shop in England.

This British woman works as a carpenter at a shop in Northdown, Thanet, England, during World War ...

Family in the wreckage of their Liverpool home.
Sixty-eight-year-old Sarah Manson and her family sit in the wreckage of their Liverpool home after a bombing ...

Fireman helps homeless people over rubble.
A fireman helps homeless people over the rubble in Southampton after a raid in December 1940 had destroyed thousands of ...

How to Get Help after Air Raid Damage.
A part of a poster, "How to Get Help after Air Raid Damage." This poster was put up in Coventry, a British town that was destroyed by German ...

John Bull's War Aim.
John Bull's War Aim. As in World War I, propaganda depicted the German enemy as a subhuman ...

Lend-Lease: bacon from U.S. in England.
The Lend-Lease program: bacon from the U.S. is unloaded in England. In March 1941, passage of the Lend-Lease act ended the requirement of ...

London underground used as air raid shelter.
A London underground station used as an air raid shelter. These people are sleeping in the Elephant and Castle station in southeast ...

Observer scans London skies for German aircraft.
This observer stands on a roof-top to scan the London skies for German aircraft. St. Paul's Cathedral is in the ...

The German Focke-Wulf FW 190 fighter airplane.
The German Focke-Wulf FW 190 fighter airplane. In 1941, with German fighter supremacy being challenged by the British Spitfire, the Luftwaffe ...

Video sequence: The Blitz.
A video sequence concerning "the Blitz" and Britain's response. In 1940 Germany began an all-out assault on British coastal shipping. In ...

Winston Churchill (1874-1965).
A 1942 photograph of Sir Winston Churchill (1874-1965). From 1929 to 1939, during which time he held no ministerial office, Churchill ...

Woman welder in an English factory in 1943.
This woman, working as a welder in an English factory in 1943, makes engine boiler ...

Workers building bombers in England, 1939.
Workers building Blenheim bombers, somewhere in England, 1939. Before the war, British policy makers decided that a new fleet of heavy bombers ...

Wreckage near St. Paul's Cathedral.
Wreckage near St. Paul's Cathedral during the London Blitz. The historic cathedral suffered some damage, but survived the war largely ...

Britain Retaliates

A British Short Stirling 4-engine bomber, 1942
A British Short Stirling 4-engine bomber in flight, 1942. In response to the German bombing attacks on British cities and industrial centers, ...

Family lives in the only remaining room.
This woman and her two children live in the only room left inhabitable in their home in Rouen, France, which was heavily bombed during the war. ...

German woman searches through bombed house.
A German woman searches through the debris of a bombed house in Erfurwiler for the bodies of her children, following air attacks. The Germans ...

The city of Nuremberg, Germany, in ruins.
The city of Nuremberg, Germany, in ruins. If England suffered a great deal from German bombs, it returned the attacks in like measure. When ...

Women walk in the Essen ruins, May 1946.
Two women walk amid the ruins of Essen in May 1946. Essen, the site of the Krupp armament works, was one of a number of German cities that were ...

Wreckage of British bombers in Germany.
Wreckage of British bombers in Germany, n.d. The German air force and its anti-aircraft guns on the ground presented a formidable barrier to ...

The Beginning of the End

The End of the War in Europe

A map of Europe after World War II.
A map of Europe after World War II. Territory gained by the Soviet Union is shown in purple; territory lost by Germany in dark blue; and the ...

A sign asking for a united Berlin.
For a Free, United, Greater Berlin, a sign in postwar Berlin. Berlin lay in the Soviet occupation zone. The Allied Control Commission placed ...

Bormann, head of Nazi Party affairs after Hess.
Martin Bormann, head of Nazi Party affairs following the capture of Rudolf Hess in 1941. He grew immensely powerful by making himself ...

British royal family and Churchill.

The British royal family and Prime Minister Churchill and Princess Margaret Rose. Nineteen-year-old Princess Elizabeth wears the uniform of ...

Churchill, Eisenhower at London's Guild Hall.

Churchill and Eisenhower at London's Guild Hall, where the latter was given the "freedom of the city" in June 1945. As Supreme Commander of the ...

General Alfred Jodl en route to sign surrender.

German General Alfred Jodl in the car that took him to Allied headquarters at Rheims to sign the unconditional surrender of Germany, May 6, ...

Germany surrenders, May 7, 1945.

Germany surrenders. German Gen. Alfred Jodl, center, signs the unconditional surrender agreement at a schoolhouse in Rheims, France, May 7, ...

The Normandy Landings

"Thus it will be with the Fascist beast!"

"Thus it will be with the Fascist beast!" This 1945 Russian poster celebrates the union of the Allied powers, Britain, the U.S. and the USSR, ...

17-year-old member of French Resistance.

Lucien Schmidt, a 17-year-old member of the French Resistance, shown after the liberation of the town of Laval. The Cross of Lorraine on his arm ...

21-year-old in the Yugoslav People's Army.

Stana Tomashevitch, a 21-year-old partisan fighter in the Yugoslav People's Army of Liberation. A former teacher from Montenegro and a member of ...

A captured 13-year old Hitler Youth fighter.

This 13-year old boy was one of sixty Hitler Youth captured toward the end of the war. His group was fighting with pistols, machine guns, and ...

A captured V-1 launch site in France.

A damaged German V-1 flying-bomb launching site after its capture by Allied forces in France. 100,000 tons of bombs had been dropped on these ...

A German fortress on the "Atlantic Wall."

A fortress on the "Atlantic Wall" with a thick reinforced concrete roof to resist bombing and shelling. The Germans hoped to prevent an Allied ...

A German V-1 pilotless plane.

A week after the Normandy landings, the Germans began sending small pilotless planes loaded with explosives, called the "V-1" (Victory Weapon 1) ...

A map of the Allied march to Berlin.

A map of the Allied march to Berlin in 1944-1945. Once the Normandy beachhead had been secured, the Allies gradually pushed the Germans out of ...

A V-2 rocket in flight soon after launching.

A V-2 rocket in flight. Meanwhile, Colonel Walter Dornberger and his staff of scientists were developing the V-2 rocket, the first long-range ...

After the assassination attempt against Hitler.

Hitler's conference room after the attempt on his life, July 20, 1944. The "Generals' Plot" was the last and most nearly successful of several ...

Albert Speer In a captured U.S. Sherman tank.

Reichminster Albert Speer poses in a captured American "Sherman" tank. During the African and Italian campaigns, the Germans had been able to ...

Allies begin to move inland after D-Day landings.

After two weeks of heavy fighting, the Allies began to move inland. These infantry soldiers with truckloads of equipment are leaving the town of ...

Count von Wartenburg led to trial, 1944.

Count Peter Yorck von Wartenburg is led to trial for his part in the attempt to assassinate Hitler in 1944. In retaliation for the attempt on ...

Eisenhower before the D-Day invasion of Normandy.

The Supreme Commander of the Allied Expeditionary Forces, U.S. Gen. Dwight D. Eisenhower, talking to paratroopers in June 1944 just before the ...

Field Marshal Erwin Rommel inspecting troops.

Field Marshal Erwin Rommel (1891-1944) inspecting troops on the Channel coast in France. Hitler remained confident of Rommel's abilities and ...

Field Marshal von Runstedt (1875-1953).

Field Marshal Karl Rudolf Gerd von Runstedt (1875-1953) inspecting the fortifications of the Atlantic Wall in France. This German officer had ...

French women believed to be collaborators.

French women, believed to be collaborators, are marched through the streets of Paris before being turned over to the authorities. Their captors ...

Hitler with Keitel, Dönitz, Himmler, and Milch.

Adolf Hitler (1889-1945) greets Germany's top military leaders on his 55th birthday in 1944: Field Marshal Keitel (left), Admiral Dönitz, ...

Leipzig mayor and family who committed suicide.

The Lord Mayor of Leipzig and his wife and daughter committed suicide to escape the wrath of the Russian armies. They lay dead in his city hall ...

Marshal Tito in Yugoslavian headquarters, 1944.

Marshal Tito (1892-1980), who led the Yugoslav partisan forces during World War II, in his mountain headquarters, 1944. He had been a metal ...

Members of the French underground, August 1944.
Members of the French underground, August 1944. Their backs are to the camera to avoid ...

Molotov and Stalin confer at Yalta, February 1945.
Soviet Foreign Minister Molotov and Stalin confer at Yalta, February 1945. Behind them is deputy Foreign Minister Andrei Vishinsky. At this ...

Normandy beach after landing on June 6, 1944.
The scene on the Normandy beach after the Allied landing on June 6, 1944. It was the largest amphibious operation in the history of warfare. ...

Russian and U.S. soldiers meet at Elbe river.
The first Russian and American soldiers to meet at the Elbe river, Lieutenants Alexander Sylvashko and William Robertson, celebrate their ...

Sniper fire interrupts Paris victory parade.
People drop to the ground as bullets from stray German snipers interrupt the August 1944 Paris victory ...

The bombed-out ruins of Darmstadt, Germany.
The bombed-out ruins of Darmstadt, Germany. The Allied bombing strategy was both more damaging and less effective than its supporters had ...

The D-Day invasion across the English Channel.
A panorama of the D-Day invasion across the English Channel, June 6, 1944, along the Normandy coast near Cherbourg, France. To keep confusion to ...

The Peenemünde scientific team.
Some members of the scientific team from Peenemünde, the experimental laboratory on the Baltic where the V-1 and V-2 rockets were developed. ...

The Yalta Conference, February 1945.
Principals in the Yalta Conference, February 1945. The "Big Three," Churchill, Roosevelt and Stalin, met at Yalta in the Crimea to shape the ...

U.S. infantrymen approach Fontainebleau, France.
American infantry and armor moving past dead German soldiers as they approach Fontainebleau, France, near Paris, on August 23, 1944. While the ...

Video sequence: Allied advance after D-Day.
A video sequence concerning the Allied advance after D-Day. After D-Day, the war was fought village by village as the Allies attacked German ...

Video sequence: D-Day.
A video sequence concerning D-Day. The largest amphibious attack in the history of the world began on June 6, 1944. An armada of 4,000 ships ...

Video sequence: Last fighting for Paris liberation
A video sequence concerning the last fighting for the liberation of Paris. In the last days before liberation, Paris was the scene of isolated, ...

Video sequence: Marshal Tito at partisan camp.
A video sequence concerning Yogoslavian forces training to fight the Nazis. General Tito visits a Yugoslav partisan forces training camp in ...

The Eastern Front

Behind the Lines

A poster, "Death to the Fascist Serpent!"
A Soviet World War II poster, "Death to the Fascist ...

A poster, "Workers'-Peasants' Regime."
"Workers'-Peasants' Regime ... Such was Soviet Freedom!" This anti-Semitic, anti-communist poster, printed in Byelorussian, was circulated by ...

A Soviet World War II poster.
A Soviet World War II poster. "Comrades, Men of the Red Army and Navy, Commanding Officers, and Political Workers, Men and Women of the ...

A woman lathe operator in a Russian factory.
A woman lathe operator in a Russian factory, ca. 1942. ...

Russian factory workers buying war bonds.
Russian factory workers buying war ...

Russian nurses receive instructions.
Near the front, Russian nurses receive instructions from a Red Army ...

Russian peasants on a collective farm, 1942.
Russian peasants on a collective farm, 1942. As a result of Stalin's plans to increase agricultural production, most farms in Russia had been ...

Soviet girls in the guerrilla forces.
Soviet girls from a collective farm who had joined the guerrillas, ca. 1941. During World War II, Russian women served in every industry and in ...

Greece, Crete, Malta

A British destroyer defending a Malta convoy.
A British destroyer laying a smoke screen to defend a Malta convoy. German submarines and shore-based airplanes did their best to sink ships ...

A freighter in a Malta convoy under air attack.

A freighter in an Alexandria-to-Malta convoy under air attack. This convoy got through "with serious losses." British Official ...

A German panzer unit moves into Salonika, 1941.
A German panzer unit moves into Salonika, Greece, during the Balkan campaign of 1941. In less than two months the Germans conquered Yugoslavia ...

British troops landing in Malta, February 1942.
British troops landing in Malta, February 1942. Despite all of the air and submarine attacks, the island was held and reinforced by the British ...

Fort St. Elmo in Valletta on Malta.
Fort St. Elmo in Valletta on the island of Malta. After conquering Greece and capturing Crete in 1941, Germany hoped to sever the British lines ...

German bombs bursting on Valletta, Malta.
German bombs bursting on hard-pressed Valletta, Malta, June 1942. During the first 18 months of the war, Axis planes raided Malta on an average ...

German soldiers with a loaded burro in Crete.
German soldiers with a loaded burro in Crete. After the German victory on the Greek mainland, the island of Crete was the only Greek territory ...

H.M.S. Ark Royal sinking.
The British aircraft carrier H.M.S. Ark Royal heels over before sinking in the Atlantic ocean. The Ark Royal was returning to Britain after ...

Maltese people in shelter during German attack.
Maltese people in an air raid shelter during a German air raid. The peak month of German raids was in January 1942, when 263 air raids plastered ...

Oil tanks burning on the Salonika waterfront.
Oil tanks burning on the Salonika waterfront just before the German occupation. ...

Stalingrad and Leningrad; The German Retreat Begins

A burning Leningrad hospital, 1942.
A Leningrad hospital which had been set on fire by German bombs, ca. ...

A German rocket battery before Leningrad.
A German rocket battery before Leningrad. The German siege of Leningrad began in the winter of 1941-1942 and was not lifted until 1944. ...

German prisoners taken by Russians.
German prisoners taken by the Russians at Leningrad. ...

German Retreat Begins in Rostov-on-Don.
The German retreat begins at Rostov-on-Don. This Russian victory started a German retreat along a 1500-mile front in November, 1941. Here, Red ...

German soldiers during the assault on Stalingrad.
German soldiers in the trenches during the assault on Stalingrad, 1942-1943. The Germans reached Stalingrad in August 1942, and the assault on ...

Military car mired in Russian mud.
A Volkswagen military car mired in the Russian ...

Red Army Ski Troops Move To Front.
Red Army ski troops heading toward the front lines during the Russian winter. The German panzer divisions were increasingly paralyzed by the low ...

Red Army soldiers attacking a German outpost.
Red Army soldiers attacking a German outpost. From November 1942 on, the Germans were gradually driven back, and their retreat became general, ...

Ruins in Stalingrad, 1942.
Ruins caused by German bombing in Stalingrad, 1942. Finally, in January 1943 the Russians encircled the Germans on the approaches to Stalingrad, ...

Stalingrad, October 1942.
Stalingrad, October 1942. After their first Russian offensive failed in the winter of 1941, the Germans rebuilt their armies for a fresh assault ...

Winter on the Russian front.
Winter on the Russian front. On December 8, 1941, Hitler was forced by the harsh winter weather to suspend offensive operations against Russia, ...

Women digging an anti-tank ditch.
Leningrad women digging an anti-tank ditch, ca. 1942. More than a third of the city's three million inhabitants died in the course of this ...

Women making felt boots for the Russian Army.
Women workers in a Russian factory making felt boots (or possibly boot liners) for the Red Army. Warm boots such as these were typical of the ...

The Battle for Russia

A German Fieseler "Storch" [Stork] light plane.
A German Fieseler "Storch" [Stork] light plane lands on a Russian road. This plane had an amazing ability to land and take off from short and ...

An armored half-track of a German grenadier unit.
An armored half-track of a German grenadier unit beside a burning house on the Russian front. More efficient machinery and tactics gave the ...

General Guderian, German panzer commander.
General Heinz Guderian (1888-1954), a German armored division commander, at his division headquarters in Tolotschin, Russia, in 1941. It was ...
German He. 111 airplane bombing Russia.
A German He. (Heinkel) 111 airplane dropping bombs on the Russian front. Germany enjoyed air superiority over Russia during much of the war and ...
German troops advancing on the eastern front.
German grenadier troops advancing into Russia. In the early days of the campaign, the German gains were spectacular, but as the weeks went by ...
Red Army men defend Taganrog-Orel railway.
Red Army soldiers defending the Taganrog-Orel railway line, ca. 1942. U.S. Office of Emergency Management ...
Russian soldiers taken prisoner by Germans.
Russian soldiers who were taken prisoner by the Germans in 1941. German treatment of the Russians, civilians included, was particularly ...
Soviet Marshal Timoshenko (1895-1970).
Soviet Marshal Semyon K. Timoshenko (1895-1970) was unable to stop the German advance into Russia in 1942. He later served as People's Commissar ...
The German invasion of Russia, 1941.
The German invasion of Russia. In June 1941, Germany invaded her ally Russia's territory along a 2000-mile front. The German army assigned to ...
Vyacheslav M. Molotov (1890-1986).
Vyacheslav M. Molotov (1890-1986), one of the Old Bolsheviks, became the Russian People's Commissar of Foreign Affairs (Foreign Minister) in ...

The Holocaust

At Terezin, a Polish man about to be murdered.
At Terezin, a camp in Czechoslovakia, this Polish man is about to be murdered by an SS guard. In some cases, prisoners were forced to dig their ...
Bodies of Nazi concentration camp victims, 1945.
Bodies of Nazi concentration camp victims, 1945. Scenes of unparalleled ghastliness like this were common in the extermination camps liberated ...
Buildings on fire in the Warsaw ghetto, 1943.
Buildings on fire in the Warsaw ghetto, 1943. In retaliation for the Warsaw defenders' uprising in April 1943, Heinrich Himmler decided to ...
Civilians of Nuremberg ordered to carry bodies.
Civilians of Nuremberg, Germany, and nearby towns were ordered by Allied forces to carry the bodies of 120 victims of the SS to be properly ...
German soldiers forced to uncover mass grave.
German soldiers, prisoners of war, are put to work uncovering a mass grave at Camp No. 3 in Landsberg. This pit, one of several, held 1000 ...
Germans are forced to view dead bodies.
Citizens of Volary, Germany, are forced to view the dead bodies of 30 Jewish women who starved to death during a 300-mile forced march across ...
Irma Grese, in charge of death cells at Belsen.
Irma Grese, who was in charge of the death cells at the Belsen concentration camp. Of the 45 members of the staff of the Belsen concentration ...
One of the first freed from a concentration camp.
This prisoner, one of the first to be freed from Wobbelin, a concentration camp near Berlin, is overcome and bursts into ...
Orthodox Polish Jew has his beard shaved off.
After their victory, the Allies discovered the extent of the hideous Nazi attempt to exterminate the Jews and other social "undesirables" in an ...
Ovens in a German concentration camp.
Ovens in a German concentration camp. Some of the camps were used solely as extermination centers. More than six million people, mostly Jews ...
Prisoners in their bunks at Dachau.
Prisoners in their bunks at Dachau. The first concentration camps were opened in 1933 after Hitler came to power. In the early years they ...
U.S. soldier stands over bodies of two SS guards.
Near the end of the war, a U.S. soldier stands over the bodies of two SS concentration camp guards who were killed trying to escape from the ...
Video sequence: Remembrance of the Holocaust.
A video sequence concerning the Holocaust. Ruins remain to help us remember the concentration camps . The entrance sign says Arbeit Macht ...
Warsaw citizens' papers reviewed during revolt.
German soldiers examine the papers of Warsaw citizens during the revolt of the ghetto, ...
Warsaw defenders arrested by the Germans, 1943.
Some of the defenders of the Warsaw ghetto, arrested by the Germans in 1943. The defenders of Warsaw organized themselves into 20 platoon-sized ...

Warsaw Jews herded into ghetto.
Warsaw's Jews are herded into a ghetto. Early in the war, when the Polish city of Warsaw was occupied by the Germans, the city's 450,000 Jews ...
Women's ward at Belsen concentration camp.
The women's ward at the Belsen concentration camp in Lower Saxony. At the end of the war, the British found 60,000 people here, most of them ...

The Invasion of Italy

American troops in Rome, October 1945.
American troops in Rome, October 1945. By September 9 the toe, foot and heel of the Italian boot had been taken by the Allies, and 21 days after ...
German Field Marshal Albert Kesselring.
German Field Marshal Albert Kesselring (1885-1960) commanded the German armies defending Italy. He was acquitted of any wrongdoing at the ...
German grenadiers in Italy south of Rome.
German grenadiers in Italy, south of Rome. The Italian surrender did not by any means end Axis resistance in Italy, since the Germans continued ...
Pope Pius XII, who ruled from 1939 to 1958.
Pope Pius XII, who ruled from 1939 to 1958, served as pope during the difficult years of World War II and in the early postwar era. He had tried ...
The Casablanca Conference, 1943.
Churchill and Roosevelt at the Casablanca Conference. They met at Casablanca in French Morocco for 11 days of talks in January 1943. (Stalin, ...
U.S. Fifth Army crosses Po River in Italy.
As the Allies pursue retreating Germans into Bologna and northern Italy in May 1945, the U.S. Fifth Army crosses a pontoon bridge over the Po ...
U.S. General Mark Wayne Clark (1896-1984).
U.S. General Mark W. Clark (1896-1984). Active in World War II and in Korea, Clark was the overall American commander in ...

The U.S. Enters the War

A burning battleship at Pearl Harbor.
Thick smoke rolls out of a burning ship during the attack on Pearl Harbor. Eight U.S. battleships were disabled in the attack, and more than 2300 ...
A stacked echelon of P-51 "Mustang" fighters.
A stacked-down echelon of P-51 "Mustang" fighters heads home from a successful escort mission over Europe. The Mustangs were the first fighters ...
A wrecked American B-24 "Liberator" heavy bomber.
A wrecked American B-24 "Liberator" heavy bomber. The American air forces suffered huge losses during their daylight bombing raids over Germany ...
B-17 "Flying Fortress" bombers on a mission.
B-17 "Flying Fortress" bombers in a mission over Europe. Daylight bombing, favored by the Americans, provided better precision but was more ...
B-17s attack Berlin, February 1945.
During an air attack on Berlin in February 1945, B-17 "Flying Fortresses" of the USAAF release their bombs in unison. The smoke trails are from ...
B-24 "Liberator" bombers.
B-24 "Liberator" bombers of the U.S. Air Force leave Ploesti, Romania, after one of the massive raids on the Ploesti oil refineries in May 1944. ...
Coast Guard cutter depth-charging a U-boat
U.S. Coast Guardsmen aboard the cutter Spencer watch a depth charge explosion, said to have sunk the German submarine U-175 in April 1943. ...
Pearl Harbor during Japanese attack.
A Japanese torpedo bomber attacks "battleship row" at the U.S. Pearl Harbor naval base on December 7, 1941. The American forces in Hawaii were ...
RAF airfield turned over to the USAAF.
A Royal Air Force airfield in England is turned over to the U.S. Air Force in an official ceremony. The Union Jack is about to be lowered, to be ...
Roosevelt asking Congress to declare war on Japan.
U.S. President Franklin D. Roosevelt asking the Congress to declare war on Japan, which it did on December 8, 1941. Adhering to the Tripartite ...
The Bataan Death March.
Prisoners on the Bataan Death March. After the surrender, Filipino and American prisoners were forced to go on this infamous march, in the ...
The Cairo Conference, November 1943.
Chinese Generalissimo Chiang Kai-Shek, Franklin D. Roosevelt, Winston Churchill and Mme. Chiang at the Cairo Conference, November 1943. The ...
The Moscow Conference, 1942.
The Moscow Conference, 1942. At Stalin's request, Churchill went to Moscow in August 1942 for four days of talks to explain why the Allied ...
The surrender of the Philippine Islands, May 1942.

In May of 1942, the American army in the Philippines under General Jonathan Wainwright was forced to surrender to Japanese forces at ...

U.S. bomb hits German submarine.

A bomb from a U.S. Navy TBF aircraft strikes the German submarine U-185 in the Atlantic, July 1943. This plane was from the escort carrier ...

The War at Sea

A British destroyer laying a smoke screen.

A British destroyer laying a smoke screen. Destroyers were the primary defensive ships of the convoy escort and were armed with depth charges, ...

A British submarine arrives home.

The British submarine Thunderbolt arrives home after sinking two U-boats and five supply ships in the course of a year's operations. British ...

A Royal Navy corvette, the H.M.S. Hibiscus.

A Royal Navy corvette, the H.M.S. Hibiscus . Corvettes, much smaller than destroyers and much cheaper to build and man, became a key part of ...

A typical British cruiser, the H.M.S. Aurora.

A typical British cruiser, the H.M.S. Aurora , of 5270 tons. Armed with 6-inch guns, she carried a crew of 450. British Official ...

A U-boat tanker or "milch cow."

A U-boat tanker or "milch cow," used to refuel German submarines at sea, thereby giving them the opportunity to operate for much longer periods ...

Aboard the Suffolk in the Denmark Strait.

A gun crewman on the British cruiser Suffolk looks out at the icy waters of the Denmark Strait. In March 1941 the German battleship Bismarck ...

Atlantic convoy seen from a destroyer's bridge.

A small part of an Atlantic convoy seen from a destroyer's bridge. Losses of merchant ships in the Atlantic Ocean were very heavy until a ...

Biplanes prepare to take off vs. Bismarck.

Swordfish biplanes (nicknamed "Stringbags") prepare to take off from a British aircraft carrier to hit the Bismarck. She had been damaged, ...

The German World War II code machine Enigma .

The German World War II code machine Enigma . The sender turned rotors to set a series of numbers (this unit has three rotors, each of which ...

The sinking of the Graf Spee, 1939.

The sinking of the German battleship Graf Spee off the coast of South America near Montevideo, Uruguay. The Graf Spee was forced to take ...

The War Crimes Trials

General Tojo Hideki at the war crimes trial.

Japanese General Tojo Hideki at the Far East war crimes trial, January 1948. Japanese leaders were put on trial for war crimes, as were their ...

Goering at the Nuremberg war crimes trial.

Hermann Goering listens to the proceedings at the war crimes trial in Nuremberg, 1945-1946. He was the chief defendant among the 24 Nazis who ...

Hess in his cell at Nuremberg, November 1945.

Rudolf Hess (1894-1987), who had been Hitler's close friend and deputy, in his cell at Nuremberg, November 1945. Hess had been a prisoner since ...

Top Nazi leaders on trial at Nuremberg.

Top Nazi leaders on trial at the International War Crimes Tribunal, held at Nuremberg, 1945-1946. Goering, Ribbentrop, Keitel, Rosenberg, ...

The War in Europe

Blitzkreig in the West

A Belgian mother and children in the ruins.

A Belgian mother and her children visit the ruins of their home after the German ...

A German assault gun in action.

A German assault gun in action, 1940. ...

A German Junkers Ju. 52 trimotor airplane.

The German Junkers Ju. 52 trimotor airplane. In May 1940 elite German paratroopers, flown primarily in Ju. 52's, were dropped at key points in ...

British troops captured at Dunkirk, 1940.

British troops captured at Dunkirk, 1940. Some 150,000 troops remained behind after the evacuation and were taken prisoner by the ...

British troops retreat at Dunkirk, May 1940.

British troops retreat at Dunkirk, May 1940. After Poland fell in October 1939, Germany did not go on the offensive until spring of the ...

German invaders in Norway, April 1940.

German invaders in Norway, April 1940. After the Polish campaign ended in October 1939, Hitler's forces remained inactive until April 1940. ...

German troops on the Norwegian coast.

German grenadiers in a machine gun entrenchment on the Norwegian coast. Without warning, and using deception and subterfuge, the German sea and ...

Harold Lord Alexander (1891-1969).
British Field Marshal Harold Lord Alexander (1891-1969). Viscount Alexander commanded the British rearguard at Dunkirk in 1940 and was the last ...

Houses in Luxembourg destroyed, May 10, 1940.
Houses in Luxembourg destroyed during the first day of the German invasion, May 10, 1940. ...

Video sequence: The Dunkirk evacuation.
A video sequence concerning the Dunkirk evacuation. With the Allied force trapped on the French side of the Channel on May 26, 1940, a flotilla ...

France Surrenders

French surrender to Germany, June 22, 1940.
France surrenders to Germany at Compiègne, June 22, 1940. On June 16, 1940, the French cabinet voted to ask Germany for armistice terms. In ...

Hitler after defeating France in 1940.
Hitler returns in triumph to Germany after defeating France in ...

Hitler and Goering in Berlin, 1940.
Hitler and Goering in Berlin, 1940. Hermann Goering (1893-1946) was the second in command after Hitler. He had been an air ace in World War I, ...

Hitler elated over the capitulation of France.
Hitler shows his elation over the capitulation of France, at Compiègne, June 1940. The German tank and air campaigns had brought about the ...

The Wehrmacht in Paris, June 1940.
The Wehrmacht in Paris, June 1940. By the terms of the surrender, France was divided, with the northern two-thirds placed under German ...

Video sequence: French surrender, June 22, 1940.
A video sequence concerning France's surrender to Germany. Hitler demanded that the French be humiliated in defeat by surrendering to him in the ...

War refugees being fed by the Red Cross.
War refugees being fed by the Red ...

Hitler Consolidates His Gains

Diplomats in Tokyo celebrate Tripartite Pact.
Diplomats in Tokyo celebrate the signing of the Tripartite Pact, September 1940. Left to right: Yosuke Matsuoka, Japanese Foreign Minister; ...

Hitler and Franco meet, October 23, 1940.
Hitler and Franco meet at Hendaye on October 23, 1940. In late October 1940, Hitler journeyed to Hendaye on the Franco-Spanish border to try to ...

Signing of the Tripartite Pact, September 1940.
Italian Foreign Minister Galeazzo Ciano and German Foreign Minister Joachim von Ribbentrop pose in Berlin for the signing of the Tripartite Pact, ...

Norway and Poland

A French World War II poster.
A French World War II poster, ca. 1940: "Each bond is a blow against the enemy. Buy War ...

A German division moving Into Poland.
A German light division moving into Poland, 1939. Marches of up to 40 miles per day were common during the drive against a Polish army that had ...

A German PzKpfw IV medium tank going to the front.
A German PzKpfw IV medium tank en route to the front. The German "blitzkreig" (lightning war) was their new concept of an offensive using ...

German Junkers Ju. 87 "Stuka" in flight.
A slightly out-of-focus image of a German Junkers Ju. 87 "Stuka" dive bomber. These bombers, working together with tanks, made up the spearhead ...

German workers assemble airplanes.
German workers assemble airplanes at a factory in Halle, December 1939. At the start of the war, German armed strength exceeded that of any of ...

Hitler calls for war against Poland.
Adolf Hitler, addressing the Reichstag , calls for war against Poland. At 4:45 a.m. on September 1, 1939, German troops had crossed the border ...

Video sequence: The battle of Warsaw, 1939.
A video sequence concerning the battle of Warsaw. After weeks of fierce fighting in September 1939, the people of Warsaw were finally overcome ...

Warsaw citizens as Germans enter the city.
The people of Warsaw watching the German entry into their city. The last Polish fortress fell on October ...

The Resistance and Free French

A French Resistance poster.
A French Resistance poster. The words of Charles de Gaulle, "France has lost a battle! But France has not lost the war!" helped to rally the ...

Cartoon re: de Gaulle and Darlan's assassination.

My good friend General de Gaulle will need my services many times. A Vichyite cartoon implies that de Gaulle was responsible for the ...

Charles de Gaulle (1890-1970).

Charles de Gaulle (1890-1970). A graduate of Saint Cyr (the French equivalent of West Point), de Gaulle joined Pétain's regiment and fought at ...

French general Henri Giraud, 1943.

French General Henri H. Giraud (1879-1949) was captured by German tanks in 1940 and spent nearly two years in a prison camp. He escaped to ...

Infantryman honored by de Gaulle in 1942.

An infantryman from Brazzaville, in the French Congo, who was awarded the Cross of Liberation by General de Gaulle in 1942. One of de Gaulle's ...

The Vichy Government and Collaboration

Admiral Jean Darlan arrives to meet Hitler.

Admiral Jean Darlan arrives at Berchtesgaden to meet Hitler. Darlan (1881-1942) held several key posts in the Vichy government, including vice ...

Anti-Semitic French cartoon during occupation.

"We Jews are the eternally persecuted ones!" This anti-Semitic cartoon appeared in France during the German occupation and the Vichy regime. ...

Cartoon, Vichy regime above all parties.

To clothe the naked. In this cartoon, Vichy's National Revolution rejects the second-hand socialist coats offered her by (left to right): ...

Hitler meets Pétain, with Ribbentrop on right.

Hitler meets Pétain, with Ribbentrop on the right. After France surrendered, the Germans began to interpret the terms of the armistice to ...

Map: Hitler's empire, 1942.

A map of Hitler's empire in 1942. In only three years Hitler's armies had demonstrated the true meaning of blitzkrieg on the ...

Marshal Henri-Philippe Pétain (1856-1951).

Marshal Henri-Philippe Pétain (1856-1951) first achieved renown as the hero of Verdun during World War I. Pétain was a major influence in ...

Paul Reynaud, wartime premier of France.

Paul Reynaud, wartime premier of France. Reynaud (1878-1966) had served as minister of finance in the cabinet of Edouard Daladier, replacing him ...

Pierre Laval (1883-1945), French politician.

Pierre Laval (1883-1945) was French politician who began his career as a Socialist but became an Independent, serving as premier of France ...

War in Africa

A British tank passes a burning German tank.

A British cruiser tank passes a burning German tank in the Libyan desert, 1941. Through the summer of that year the British troops regrouped and ...

A column of Axis prisoners in the desert, 1942.

A column of Axis prisoners in the desert, 1942. The German troops were steadily pushed back through Libya, and eventually to the Mareth Line, a ...

Axis signs in Tobruk, 1942.

Axis signs in Tobruk, 1942. The Germans captured the town from the British, who later recaptured ...

British troops advance on Bardia, Libya.

World War II actions in North Africa began with an Italian invasion of Egypt from the Italian colony of Libya in September 1940. British forces ...

British troops in Palmyra, Syria.

British troops in the magnificent ruins at Palmyra, in eastern Syria, 1941. To protect their Middle and Near Eastern lifelines, the British ...

British troops in the Roman Forum at Palmyra.

British troops climbing out of their tracked personnel carrier to view the Roman Forum at Palmyra in Syria. During the desert campaigns of the ...

Field Marshal Bernard L. Montgomery.

Field Marshal Bernard L. Montgomery (1887-1955), the hero of El Alamein. As commander of the British 8th Army in Egypt in 1942, he drove through ...

Free French soldiers in North Africa.

Free French soldiers firing their howitzer in North Africa. After a token resistance, the French in North Africa joined in the struggle against ...

Free French troops parade in Tunis, May 1943.

Free French troops parade in newly occupied Tunis, May 1943. The British, Americans and French forced the remnants of the Afrika Korps into the ...

French ships shell U.S. cruiser off Casablanca.

Shells from the French battleship Jean Bart explode near a U.S. cruiser (left, making smoke) off Casablanca. On November 8, 1942, U.S. and ...

General Erwin Rommel in North Africa.

German General Erwin Rommel (189l-1944) in North Africa. In 1941, Rommel was placed at the head of a German/Italian tank unit in Libya, the ...

Map of the North African war area.
A map of the area in which the war in North Africa was fought, 1940-1943. ...
Retreating British troops in the desert.
Retreating British troops in the desert. As the seesaw war continued, the Afrika Korps, which had been substantially reinforced, launched a ...
South African infantry in the battle of Tobruk.
South African infantry during the battle of Tobruk. In the see-saw war of 1941 and 1942 Tobruk, a city on the northeast coast of Libya, was ...
The British 8th Army moves into Tunisia.
The British 8th Army moves into Tunisia. Lumbering up the hills near Salum in North Africa, truckloads of British soldiers move westwards into ...
The Casablanca Conference, 1943.
The Casablanca Conference, January 1943. The refusal of the U.S. to allow de Gaulle's forces to take part in the Allied landings in North Africa ...
The Union Jack is hoisted in Benghazi.
The Union Jack is hoisted in Benghazi, Libya, February 7, 1941. In a two-month campaign against the Italians, British General Archibald Wavell ...
U.S. artillerymen vs. Germans at Kasserine Pass.
U.S. artillerymen firing a 105mm howitzer against the Germans at Kasserine Pass in Tunisia, February 1943. Rommel, with reinforcements which had ...

War in Asia and the Pacific

Ancient & modern grading on the Stilwell Road.
Ancient and modern methods of grading on the Stilwell Road. Coolies with yokes and buckets work beside a Caterpillar bulldozer. Originally, the ...
Australians in action against the Japanese, 1943.
Australians in action against the Japanese in Papua, New Guinea, 1943. In World War II, 22,000 Australian troops became Japanese prisoners with ...
British & Indian troops on Imphal-Kohima Road
British troops from the north join up with an Indian division from the south on the Imphal-Kohima road. British troops had cleared this road and ...
British troops prepare to shell Japanese.
A British artillery battalion prepares to shell the Japanese on the Imphal-Kohima road. The second force for the reconquest of Burma was the ...
First convoy to cross Stilwell Road enters China.
The first convoy to traverse the Stilwell Road enters Paoshan, in Yunnan Province, ...
Flying Tigers of the Chinese Air Force.
Flying Tigers of the Chinese Air Force under American General Claire Chennault. Before the U.S. entered the second world war, the American ...
Gandhi after his release from internment in 1944.
Gandhi after his release from internment in 1944. During World War II, he proposed that India cooperate with Britain's war effort in return for ...
Generals Joseph Stilwell and Lewis Pick confer.
American General Joseph W. "Vinegar Joe" Stilwell confers with Brigadier General Lewis A. Pick (left), the American engineer in charge of the ...
Gurkha soldiers in at recapture of Prome, Burma.
Gurkha soldiers (from Nepal) of the British 14th Army in Prome, Burma at the time of its recapture by the Allies, May 22, 1945. The Allied ...
H.M.S. Prince of Wales in 1941.
The British battleship H.M.S. Prince of Wales, 1941. Soon after the Japanese fleet sailed for its attack on Pearl Harbor, another Japanese ...
Indian Sikh gunners in Singapore.
This group of Indian Sikh gunners in Singapore illustrates an element of British defense policy. Throughout the Second World War, British forces ...
Indian troops in Cyrenaica, North Africa.
Indian troops in Cyrenaica, North Africa, in World War II. During that war the Muslims in India who, under the leadership of Mohammed Ali ...
Japanese move to capture Burma, March 1942.
A Japanese drawing entitled "Start of Burma Campaign, Japanese Tanks Advancing 1942." From Thailand, the Japanese smashed their way into British ...
Lord Louis Mountbatten (1900-1979).
Lord Louis Mountbatten (1900-1979). Mountbatten, a close relative of the British royal family, was an admiral in the British Navy and served as ...
Map of the Japanese Empire, 1942 and 1945.
A map showing the Japanese Empire in 1942 and 1945. The farthest Japanese advance in World War II occurred during 1942 and is indicated on the ...
Mme. Chiang, Gandhi, Chiang, Nehru, April 1942.
Mme. Chiang (Soong Mei-ling), Mahatma Gandhi, Chiang Kai-shek, and Jawaharlal Nehru at a meeting in Calcutta, February 18, 1942. Chiang visited ...
The last days of Singapore, February 1942.

The last days of Singapore, February 1942. Smoke rising in the distance shows that the Japanese army had almost reached the causeway leading to ...

Video sequence: Lord Mountbatten and Gandhi.

A video sequence concerning Lord Louis Mountbatten and Gandhi. Lord Mountbatten invited Mohandas Gandhi to the Viceregal palace in New Delhi in ...

Section O: The Postwar Era: The New Global Civilization, 1945 on

Additional Maps

A map of India's strategic position, 1991.

A map of India's strategic position, ...

A political map of Africa, 1991.

A political map of Africa, ...

A political map of China and its neighbors.

A political map of China and its neighbors, late 20th ...

First Steps to a New World, 1945-1960

A view of the earth from space.

This dramatic photograph of the earth as it appears from space was made during the last lunar landing mission in the in the U.S. Apollo moon ...

French nuclear explosion at Mururoa Atoll, 1963.

A French nuclear explosion at Mururoa Atoll, 1963. After World War II the industrial nations of the world began a race to possess nuclear ...

Gundremmigen nuclear power plant, Germany.

The Gundremmigen nuclear power plant, located east of Ulm, Bavaria, in Germany. Nuclear reactors produce nearly half of the total electricity ...

New home for a Bikini island family, 1946.

A new home for a Bikini island family, built on Rongerik Atoll by the U.S. Navy. The islanders were evacuated from Bikini against their will; ...

The Chernobyl power plant in 1990.

The No. 4 reactor building of the Chernobyl power plant, photographed in 1990, showing the concrete "sarcophagus" (left) which was built to ...

U.S. hydrogen bomb explosion at Bikini.

A U.S. hydrogen bomb explosion in 1946 at Bikini atoll. At the end of World War II, the U. S. held a monopoly on nuclear weapons. However, ...

Video sequence: French nuclear bomb.

A video sequence concerning France's explosion of a nuclear bomb. In 1960 France became the fourth nuclear power, joining the U.S., the Soviet ...

Decolonization Continues

A group of British Royal Marines in Sarawak, 1964.

A group of British Royal Marines in Sarawak, 1964. The new Federation of Malaysia came into being with British support in September 1963. It ...

A soldier of the UN force in the Congo in 1960.

Two Congolese youths talk with a Swedish soldier of the UN force in the Congo in 1960. He was one of 623 Swedish troops who were brought in to ...

A Vietnamese boy waves his country's flag, 1946.

A young Vietnamese boy waves the flag of his country as he and the woman holding him greet Ho Chi Minh, President of Vietnam, on his arrival in ...

Algerian rebels, 1959.

Armed Algerian rebels carrying a wounded comrade in 1959. Beginning as a small band of guerrillas in 1954, the FLN gradually gained the support ...

American and Vietnamese officers confer, 1961.

American and Vietnamese officers confer at a Vietnamese jungle patrol base in April 1961. U.S. President Kennedy followed a policy of exporting ...

French flag marks Vietnam/China border, 1946.

During the 1946-1954 war in Indochina, French soldiers use their country's flag to mark the border between Vietnam and China. When talks between ...

French paratroopers cross a river in Vietnam.

French paratroopers crossing a river in Vietnam's Plain of Jars, n.d. By 1954, in spite of U.S. subsidies of around 80% of their costs, the ...

French vs. Algerians, 1955.

French authorities rounding up Algerian suspects during violent confrontations at Philippeville in August, 1955. A guerrilla struggle for ...

Greek soldiers vs. guerrillas, 1947.

Greek soldiers in action against their guerrilla opponents, 1947. One trouble spot in the "cold war" was Greece, where economic hardship fueled ...

Ho Chi Minh and French President Bidault, 1946.

Ho Chi Minh (1890-1969), President of North Vietnam, takes leave of French President Georges Bidault at the conclusion of their Paris talks in ...

Julius Nyerere of Tanzania.

Julius Nyerere (b. 1922) of Tanzania. Tanganyika, created in 1884 as German East Africa, was ruled from

the 16th century successively by the ...

Kwame Nkrumah, President of Ghana, 1960-1966.
Kwame Nkrumah (1909-1972), the President of Ghana from 1960 to 1966. The Republic of Ghana, on the west coast of Africa, was created from the ...

Mau Mau suspects held in Kenya, 1953.
Suspects in the Mau Mau rebellion in Kenya who are prisoners in the Thomson's Falls, Kenya, detention camp in 1953, with a temporary gallows in ...

Patrice Lumumba, Congo leader, 1960-1961.
Patrice Lumumba, the nationalist leader of the Belgian Congo (now Zaire) who was assassinated in 1961. When Belgium precipitously granted the ...

The French return to Vietnam after WWII, 1945.
The French return to Vietnam after World War II, November 1945. At the conclusion of the war, Vietnam was occupied by the British in the south ...

U.S. troop deployment by helicopter in Vietnam.
Helicopters played a key role in the Vietnam War, allowing rapid deployment of troops and supplies to isolated areas. Here, skytroopers of the ...

Decolonization: The State of Israel

A bombed Jewish village in Palestine, 1948.
A Jewish village in central Palestine which was bombed by Arab residents in June 1948. The Arabs who lived in Palestine furiously resisted the ...

A British regiment leaving Palestine.
The equipment of a British regiment in Palestine is loaded on a train bound for Egypt, April 1948. In December 1947 Britain announced that it ...

A Haganah training camp in Tel Aviv, May 1948.
Men and women at a Haganah training camp in Tel Aviv watch a demonstration showing how to fire a mortar, May 1948. The Haganah ("Jewish ...

A map of Israel and neighboring countries.
A map of Israel and the neighboring ...

Arabs oppose the Balfour Declaration.
Palestinian Arabs demonstrating against the Balfour Declaration at Jaffa. To Arabs, the 1917 Balfour Declaration lending British support to ...

At the signing of the Camp David Accords.
Presidents Anwar Sadat of Egypt (1918-1981), Jimmy Carter of the U.S., and Prime Minister Menachem Begin of Israel (1913-1992) at the signing of ...

Ben-Gurion reads charter of independence, 1948.
Prime Minister David Ben-Gurion (1886-1973) reads Israel's proclamation of independence, at Tel Aviv May 14, 1948. Ben-Gurion, a Polish Zionist, ...

British tanks at end of the Suez crisis.
British tanks rolling through a Port Said street as they depart from Egypt at the conclusion of the 1956 Suez crisis. Israel's Arab neighbors ...

Israeli military policeman with Arab prisoners.
An Israeli military policeman watches Arab prisoners at the Acre prison in June ...

Jewish refugees arrive at Tel Aviv harbor, 1948.
Jewish refugees arrive at Tel Aviv harbor from displaced persons camps on Cyprus in April 1948. The terrible sufferings of the Jews during ...

King David Hotel after 1946 bombing.
The ruins of the King David Hotel in Jerusalem after it was bombed by Zionist extremists on July 22, 1946, killing 91 people and wounding 45, ...

Palestinian refugees near Jerusalem, 1948.
An Arab mother and child are among the Palestinian refugees in the Ramallah area near Jerusalem. As a result of the proclamation of Palestine ...

Tents of newly-arrived Jewish immigrants.
Tents of newly arrived Jewish immigrants in Palestine around 1918. The Balfour Declaration, expressing support for a Jewish national home (see L ...

Video sequence: Israel founded, battles begin.
A video sequence concerning the establishment of Israel, and early conlict. In May 1948 the state of Israel came into being, and the first ...

Video sequence: Jewish refugees turned away.
A video sequence concerning Jewish refugees turned away from Israel. In the late 1940s, British authorities turned away shiploads of Jewish ...

Video sequence: Signing of the Camp David Accords.
A video sequence concerning the Camp David Accords. President Carter, Anwar Sadat of Egypt and Israeli Prime Minister Begin signed the Camp ...

Yasir Arafat, chairman of the PLO.
Yasir Arafat, chairman of the Palestine Liberation Organization. Born in Jerusalem in 1929, Arafat studied in Egypt, and after the Palestinian ...

Yitzhak Rabin, Israeli prime minister.
Israeli prime minister Yitzhak Rabin (1922-1995) and Yasser Arafat, head of the PLO, shake hands to show progress toward a peace agreement while ...

National Leaders in the West

British Prime Minister John Major.
British Prime Minister John Major (b. 1943). After 14 years as a banker, Major was elected to Parliament in 1979. Beginning in 1984, he served ...

Elizabeth II and Prince Philip.
Queen Elizabeth II of Great Britain (b. 1952) and her husband Prince Philip, the Duke of Edinburgh. Elizabeth, the daughter of George VI, was ...

Italian prime minister Gasperi and his wife.
The Italian statesman and prime minister Alcide de Gasperi (1881-1954) with his wife. He became a member of parliament in 1911 and was ...

Margaret Thatcher, prime minister 1979-1992.
Margaret Thatcher, Britain's first woman prime minister, was born in 1925, the daughter of a politically active grocer. After graduating from ...

Maurice Harold Macmillan (1894-1986).
Maurice Harold Macmillan (1894-1986). Having been educated at Eton and Oxford, Macmillan entered parliament in 1924 and gradually ascended ...

Pierre Mendès-France, Radical-Socialist.
Pierre Mendès-France, born in 1907, was the postwar leader of France's Radical-Socialist party. He had served in the Popular Front government ...

Sino-British declaration on Hong Kong.
Then British Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher and Chinese Premier Zhao Ziyang conclude a Sino-British "joint declaration on the question of Hong ...

Sir Anthony Eden (1895-1977).
Sir Anthony Eden (1895-1977), who succeeded Winston Churchill as British prime minister in 1955. During World War II he had served as foreign ...

The British royal family at Windsor Castle, 1946.
The British royal family at Windsor Castle, September 1946. Left to right: then Princess Elizabeth, now Elizabeth II; Queen Elizabeth, the Queen ...

Video sequence: British royal family, 1957.
A video sequence concerning the British royal family. Princess Elizabeth married Philip, the Duke of Edinburgh, in 1947, and became queen five ...

West German Chancellor Konrad Adenauer, 1949.
West German Chancellor Konrad Adenauer. As a young man Adenauer (1876-1963) was active in the conservative Center (Catholic) Party in his native ...

Rebuilding Europe; Toward European Unity

Antiwar students demonstrate at NATO meeting.
Students from the University of London demonstrating against war in front of the building where a meeting of the NATO council was being held in ...

Frankfurt's skyline shows postwar recovery.
Like other European cities, Frankfurt's skyline shows its postwar recovery. Rising from the devastation of World War II, Frankfurt has gained ...

French family receives Marshall plan tractor.
A rural family in France inspects a tractor furnished by the U.S. Economic Cooperation Administration under Marshall Plan aid, ca. 1950. The ...

George Marshall, author of European recovery plan.
Gen. George C. Marshall (1880-1959) was U.S. President Harry S. Truman's secretary of state from 1947 to 1949. The Truman Doctrine promised ...

Italian peasants march for land, September 1946.
Italian peasants march on Rome in September 1946 in a demonstration to demand possession of uncultivated land. One of the most pressing problems ...

The Marshall Plan, a Dutch poster 1947-1951.
The Marshall Plan, a Dutch poster. The Marshall Plan was the popular name for the U.S. government's program for European economic recovery after ...

The plenary NATO conference, Paris, 1949.
The plenary (i.e., full) conference of the military committee of NATO, held in Paris, November 1949. In April 1949, twelve nations (Canada, ...

The postwar skyline of London.
The postwar skyline of London, viewed from the cupola of St. Paul's cathedral, ...

U.S. President Truman signs NATO treaty.
U.S. President Harry S. Truman signs the treaty putting NATO in effect, August 24, 1949, in the presence of eight foreign ministers from NATO ...

Video sequence: Despite protests, British H-Bomb.
A video sequence concerning British nuclear bomb testing. Despite the strong nuclear disarmament movement, tests continued. This is Britain's ...

The Berlin Crisis

A man climbs aboard a Soviet tank in East Berlin.
During the 1953 East Berlin uprising, a young man climbs aboard a Soviet tank and throws stones into the viewing slits. For a while, East Berlin ...

A sentry post along the Berlin Wall, 1982.

A sentry post along the Berlin Wall in October 1982. Armed sentries in these towers were authorized to shoot Berliners who were trying to cross ...

Berlin divided, 1948.

A meeting between U.S. and Soviet officers concerning the administration of the divided Berlin. The city of Berlin emerged from World War II ...

Berlin people watch a USAF C-54 in flight.

Berlin people watch a U.S. Air Force C-54 in flight. The airlift supplied West Berliners only at a subsistence level. During the blockade, ...

Checkpoint Charlie, West Berlin, 1966.

Checkpoint Charlie in West Berlin, 1966. This border crossing, famous as the venue for the exchange of spies captured by both sides, came to ...

Khruschev and Kennedy, 1961.

Nikita S. Khrushchev and John F. Kennedy meet in Vienna in 1961. The two leaders held this "summit conference" at the height of the Cold War. ...

New construction on the Berlin Wall, 1965.

New construction on the Berlin Wall, March 1965. As the cold war continued, the wall was strengthened and extended. U.S. News and World Report ...

One of first flights in the Berlin airlift, 1948.

The Berlin airlift: crews unload 25 tons of flour from one of the first flights to West Berlin. The West responded to the Soviet blockade by ...

The Berlin airlift: fresh milk, 1948.

The Berlin airlift: fresh milk is unloaded from a U.S. Air Force transport plane at Tempelhof Airdrome in West Berlin. The airlift had to ...

The Berlin blockade, 1948-1949.

The Berlin blockade. In 1948 the U.S., British and French governments moved to unify their Berlin occupation zones for Marshall Plan aid, to ...

The Berlin Wall at Brandenburg Gate, 1961.

The Berlin Wall at the Brandenburg Gate. In order to stop a massive outflow of East Germans to the West, in 1961 the German Democratic Republic ...

The East Berlin uprising, 1953.

In the 1953 East Berlin uprising, Soviet police, backed by tanks, guard a street in East Berlin. On June 17, 1953, large-scale rebellions ...

Video sequence: Khruschev, Kennedy, Vienna 1961.

A video sequence concerning the Vienna meeting of Khruschev and Kennedy. In Vienna in 1961, Khrushchev gave Kennedy a six-month deadline for ...

Video sequence: Postwar Berlin, the new Cold War.

A video sequence concerning postwar Berlin. Berlin in 1946 had lost a third of its population, and millions faced the first postwar winter ...

Video sequence: The Berlin Wall.

A video sequence concerning the Berlin Wall. In the postwar years, great numbers of people fled from East Berlin, the part of the city under ...

Walter Ulbricht, Chairman of East Germany.

Walter Ulbricht, Chairman of the Council of State of the German Democratic Republic (East Germany). Among the founders of the German Communist ...

Wilhelm-Gedächtniskirche, Berlin WWII memorial.

Ruins of the Wilhelm-Gedächtniskircke in Berlin. Bombed by the British in November, 1943, this ruined Gothic church has been left as a reminder ...

The Eastern Bloc: Warsaw Pact Countries

Churchill's "Iron Curtain" speech, March 5, 1946.

Winston Churchill making his "Iron Curtain" speech. At the end of the war, the Western countries assumed that Allied cooperation would continue ...

Josip Tito of Yugoslavia.

Marshal Josip Tito (1892-1980) who had led the Yugoslav partisan forces during World War II, succeeded in liberating his country in 1944. The ...

Khrushchev and Bulganin at 1955 summit.

Khrushchev and Bulganin at a 1955 postwar "summit." Bulganin (1895-1975) had been mayor of Moscow and minister of defense under Stalin. After ...

Khrushchev with Kádár in Hungary, 1960.

Soviet Premier Nikita Khrushchev (1884-1971, at left) with Hungarian communist leader János Kádár (1912-1989), during a visit to the Hungarian ...

Soviet leader Leonid Brezhnev, 1964-1982.

Soviet leader Leonid Brezhnev (1906-1982) succeeded Nikita Khrushchev in 1964 as the communist party leader and effective head of state. Born of ...

The Czech communist leader Klement Gottwald.

The Czech communist leader Klement Gottwald (1896-1953). Before World War II, he had been secretary-general of the Czechoslovakian communist ...

Wladislaw Gomulka (1905-1982), Polish leader.

Polish communist leader Wladislaw Gomulka (1905-1982) was a trade union leader who in 1943 became secretary of the outlawed communist party. ...

The United Nations

Four secretaries-general of the United Nations.
Four secretaries-general of the United Nations. Left to right, Dag Hammarskjöld of Sweden, who served from 1953 to 1961; U Thant of Burma, ...

The Dumbarton Oaks meeting, 1944.
The Dumbarton Oaks meeting. This was a 1944 conference of American, British, Chinese and Soviet representatives in which the basis was ...

The International Court of Justice in session.
The International Court of Justice in session. A world court had been established under the Covenant of the League of Nations in 1921. The ...

The UN Charter Conference in San Francisco.
The United Nations Charter Conference in San Francisco, 1945. The UN was officially constituted in October of that year with the ratification of ...

The United Nations Security Council in session.
The United Nations Security Council in session. The principal body of the UN, the Security Council consists of eleven member states. Of these, ...

UN Secretary-General Hammarskjöld (left).
The then UN Secretary-General Dag Hammarskjöld (left) talks with José Maza of Chile at a UN meeting in 1955. Hammarskjöld (1905-1961), a former ...

UNICEF refugee children in Pakistan.
Afghan refugee children in Peshawar, Pakistan, n.d. One of the better-known UN agencies is the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), which ...

United Nations buildings on the East River, NY.
United Nations buildings on the East River, New York. The United Nations organization was an extension of the World War II alliance against the ...

Shaping the Future

A map of the breakup of the Soviet Union.
A map of the breakup of the Soviet Union. Powerful factions within the Soviet Union had for years demanded greater freedom from the central ...

Bill Clinton in Moscow, January 1994.
U.S. President Bill Clinton participating in a "town meeting" in Moscow on January 14, 1994. Clinton urged the Russian people to move ahead ...

Gorbachev with U.S. President Reagan, 1985.
Gorbachev with U.S. President Ronald Reagan. After a coup against him failed in 1991, Gorbachev helped to dismantle the Soviet Union by sharing ...

The World Trade Center attack, 9-11-2001.
Terrorists carried out the most destructive attacks on the U.S. in its history September 11th, 2001, when four hijacked airliners crashed into ...

Computers

A late 20th-century computer.
A late 20th-century computer. Decreasing production costs and ever increasing computing power have transformed the work patterns of individuals ...

A steel rolling-mill controlled by computers.
A steel rolling-mill controlled by computers in Sweden. Modern computers have made possible more efficient production facilities that are able ...

A very early computer, 1946.
A very early computer. The development of computers began as code-breaking machines cooperatively designed by the British and Americans during ...

An automated Japanese factory.
An automated, computer-controlled Japanese automobile factory. Japan’s production methods and fully automated factories have excited the ...

An Intel computer chip on a circuit board.
An Intel microprocessor chip on a circuit board, with a dime to provide scale. The ability of manufacturers to implant integrated electrical ...

UNIVAC I computer, 1951.
The UNIVAC I computer, a technological "miracle." In 1951 the UNIVAC (Universal Automatic Computer) became the first computer in the world to ...

Medicine and Health

A woman injecting heroin.
A woman injecting heroin. The growing use of drugs has created major international problems. Drug cartels, operating on an international basis, ...

Albert Schweitzer in French Equatorial Africa.
Albert Schweitzer in French Equatorial Africa (present-day Gabon), ca. 1950. Alsatian-born Schweitzer (1875-1965) was a physician, philosopher, ...

Counseling a drug addict in Stockholm, 1970s.
Counseling a 1970s Swedish drug ...

Dr. Jonas Salk, who developed the polio vaccine.
Dr. Jonas Salk (1914-1995) developed a killed-virus vaccine to cure poliomyelitis (polio). Polio had been a

major factor in child mortality and ...

Drug suspects questioned in Stockholm, 1970s.
Drug suspects being questioned in Stockholm, Sweden, in the 1970s. Narcotics such as cocaine, heroin and morphine are used for the sensations ...

Video sequence: Dr. Jonas Salk and polio vaccine.
A video sequence concerning Dr. salk and the polio vaccine. Dr. Jonas Salk announced the anti-polio vaccine in 1955, and an unprecedented ...

Toward Today's World: To 1960 and Beyond

Airplanes and Automobiles

A 1995 Jaguar XJ-6 Saloon.
A 1995 Jaguar XJ-6 Saloon. Redesigned in 1986, this car's styling has been adapted along evolutionary lines ever since, while Jaguar traditions ...

A BMW Series 3 sedan, 1990.
A BMW Series 3 sedan, introduced in 1990. The Series 3 sedans offered a five-speed automatic transmission and a centrally guided rear axle. ...

A British Bristol Freighter cargo airplane, 1946.
A Bristol Freighter, photographed in New York in 1946. With this postwar airplane the British aircraft industry hoped to establish a world ...

A DeHavilland Comet airliner, 1949.
A British DeHavilland Comet airliner over Hertfordshire, England. The Comet, the world's first jet airliner, was inaugurated in 1949, but its ...

A Mercedes-Benz 1994 C Klasse Sport Sedan.
A Mercedes-Benz 1994 C Klasse Sport Sedan. ...

A Volkswagen Bus Type II Caravelle, 1987.
A Volkswagen Bus Type II Caravelle. This roomy passenger vehicle, first manufactured in 1987, was also available as a camper with a sink and ...

An Airbus turbojet airliner in flight, 1974.
An Airbus turbojet airliner in flight. Its maker, Airbus Industrie, was founded because Europe's major aircraft manufacturers decided that ...

An El Al (Israel) Boeing 747 in flight.
An El Al (Israel) Boeing 747 in flight. The American-built Boeing 747 was first put into service in 1969. The 1995 Model 747-400 weighs 435 ...

The 1966 Jaguar Type E 2+2.
The 1966 Jaguar Type E had a top speed of 136 mph and was priced at £2,385. This car was targeted primarily at the American market, where the ...

The Anglo-French Concorde supersonic airliner.
The Anglo-French Concorde supersonic airplane, the only supersonic jetliner currently in service. While it is flying over the ocean, the ...

The BMW 1500, 1962-1972.
Manufactured from 1962 to 1972, the BMW 1500 was a modern midsize sedan with a four-cylinder in-line engine and front-wheel disc brakes. It was ...

The BMW Isetta, manufactured 1955-1962.
The BMW Isetta, manufactured from 1955 to 1962. The Isetta was referred to as a "motorcoupe," being a "bubble" car with a single door at the ...

The Volkswagen "Beetle," 1937.
The Volkswagen "Beetle," a German 4-passenger "peoples' car" designed by Dr. Ferdinand Porsche at the request of Adolph Hitler. Early versions ...

Asia: Wealth and Poverty

A rural irrigation device in China.
An irrigation device worked by three people, 1981. Although China's population is still 80% rural, the government's post-1949 drive toward ...

A wedding at the Meiji Shrine.
A wedding at the Meiji Shrine. Despite the destruction caused by the war and the subsequent economic and social changes, many cultural aspects ...

An overflowing container dock at Shanghai.
An overflowing container dock at the port of Shanghai, 1986. China's ambitious plans for economic modernization depend heavily upon the ...

Children and pigs on a Bangladesh street, 1973.
Children and pigs on a street in Bangladesh, 1973. Perhaps the poorest country in Asia, Bangladesh is afflicted with many of the very difficult ...

Elephants moving logs in the Mai Sai area.
Elephants bringing logs out of the forest in Thailand's Mai Sai area. The forests of Thailand are being largely destroyed by lumbering and by ...

Farming in Burma, 1983.
Oxen and a traditional plow are used to prepare a seed bed for rice in Burma, 1983. The Burmese economy is largely agricultural, rice being the ...

High rise buildings in Seoul, Korea.
High-rise buildings in Seoul, Korea. President Park Chung-hee (1917-1979) oversaw the "economic miracle" which made Korean industry famous ...

Homeless persons in Bombay, 1975.
Homeless persons in Bombay, 1975. An important goal of the government of independent India was the reduction of the widespread poverty in both ...
The Ginza in Tokyo.
The Ginza in Tokyo. Few areas in Japan have a greater international notoriety than the street and district known as the Ginza, which literally ...
The home of a wealthy family in Calcutta.
The home of a wealthy family in Calcutta. This palatial house is a good example of the marked contrast in the living standards of the rich and ...
The Hyundai shipyards in Korea.
The Hyundai shipyards at Ulsan, Korea. Among the most impressive economic accomplishments of the Korean people has been the fact that Korea has ...
The Tokyo skyline.
The Tokyo skyline. Tokyo has become one of the largest cities in the world, and it has the usual advantages and disadvantages of a great ...

Nations and Leaders

Anti-American graffiti in Tehran, 1955.
Anti-American graffiti being painted on a wall in Teheran in July 1955. American and British aid in overthrowing the Iranian nationalist prime ...
Dr. Mohammed Mossadegh, Iranian prime minister.
Dr. Mohammed Mossadegh, the Prime Minister of Iran, in a New York hospital while in the U.S. to defend Iran's oil nationalization before the UN ...
Gamal Nasser, president of Egypt 1956-1970.
Gamal Abdel Nasser (1918-1970), the first president of Egypt. This Egyptian army officer and political leader became the first president of the ...
Nelson Mandela and Frederick Willem de Klerk.
Following the 1990 release of African National Congress leader Nelson Mandela after 25 years in prison, he and the South African president, ...

Postwar Culture

A family watching television.
A family watching television in the 1950s. Throughout the world, in the postwar period television developed as the world's most popular medium ...
A H-bomb hairdo at the Coiffure and Fashions show.
The "H-bomb" hairdo, displayed by a model at the "Coiffure and Fashions" show. The postwar obsession about the possibility of nuclear ...
A modern sculpture by Henry Moore.
A modern sculpture by Henry Moore on display during the 1995 Biennale in Venice. In the work of English sculptor Henry Moore (1898-1986), the ...
A mural by Joán Miró in Barcelona.
A mural by Joán Miró (1893-1983) near the old cathedral in Barcelona. Miró was a Spanish surrealist painter whose work has been characterized as ...
Albert Camus (1913-1960).
The French existentialist writer Albert Camus (1913-1960), photographed in Paris in October 1957 when he had just won a Nobel prize for ...
Alfred Hitchcock sketches scenes.
Sir Alfred Hitchcock sketches scenes from a then-forthcoming motion picture. London-born Hitchcock (1899-1980) began his career as a British ...
Corbusier's Notre Dame Chapel at Ronchamp.
The Chapel of Notre Dame at Ronchamp, France, by Le Corbusier. Le Corbusier (Charles-Edouard Jeanneret-Gris, 1887-1965) was a major Swiss-born ...
Jean-Paul Sartre and Simone de Beauvoir.
Jean-Paul Sartre and Simone de Beauvoir. Sartre (1905-1980) was among the most influential western philosophers of the 20th century. A ...
Laurence Olivier, actor (1907-1989).
Laurence Kerr Olivier, Baron Olivier of Brighton (1907-1989). This great English actor, director and producer began his stage career in ...
Paris couturiers present creations, 1949-1950.
Paris couturiers present their latest creations for 1949-1950 at an auto show. As is frequently the case after a war, women's styles in clothing ...
Simone de Beauvoir.
Simone de Beauvoir (1908-1986) was Jean-Paul Sartre's lifelong companion, and her writing was closely associated with the existentialist movement ...
The Beatles in performance.
The Beatles in a 1964 U.S. performance. This British pop group, which was formed in 1960, made an immediate hit in Britain, and "Beatlemania" ...
The interior of Corbusier's chapel at Ronchamp.
The interior of Le Corbusier's chapel at Ronchamp, France. This church was constructed of concrete and stone between 1950 and ...
Video sequence: Beatles visit Buckingham Palace.

A video sequence concerning the Beatles. One way in which the Beatles were recognized as a social and economic phenomenon was their invitation ...

Yevgeny Yevtushenko (b. 1933), Russian poet.

Yevgeny Aleksandrovich Yevtushenko (b. 1933) is a poet who has helped to revive Russian lyric poetry. Like many of his country's authors, ...

Religious Reform

Pope Paul VI at Castel Gandolfo.

Pope Paul VI giving an address from the balcony in Castel Gandolfo in 1975. Born Giovanni Battista Montini, he ruled from 1963 to 1978. As ...

Science and Space

Man's first walk on the moon, 1969.

The culmination of the American space program was reached when on July 20, 1969 astronaut Neil Armstrong was the first man to set foot on the ...

Robert Goddard with an early liquid-fueled rocket.

Rocket scientist/inventor Robert H. Goddard (1882-1945) with an early liquid-fueled rocket. Goddard fired his first successful liquid-fueled ...

The Russian Mir space station in orbit, 1995.

Clouds over the ocean form the backdrop for this view of Russia's Mir space station, photographed in February 1995. The Mir ("peace") space ...

Video sequence: Sputnik.

A video sequence concerning Sputnik. Launched by the Russians, Sputnik greatly increased American Cold War ...

Video sequence: The "space race."

A video sequence concerning the "Space race" between the Soviet Union and the United States. In 1961 Russian Yuri Gagarin became the first man ...

The Popular Demand for Reform: Students in Paris and Beijing

A May Day demonstration in Paris, 1980.

A 1980 May Day demonstration in Paris. The tradition of May 1 as the workers' holiday, which dates back to 1889, is still celebrated throughout ...

The Struggle Continues, strike poster, 1968.

"The Struggle Continues," a poster from the Paris student-worker uprising of May-June 1968. In May of that year students at Paris's Nanterre ...

The Power of Oil

A drilling rig in eastern Saudi Arabia.

A drilling rig in eastern Saudi Arabia. The country's oil fields are located in the northeast, along the Persian Gulf. Saudi Arabia is at ...

A graphic map of world oil reserves.

A graphic map of world oil reserves, showing the importance of the Gulf reserves. Saudi Arabia's control of nearly a quarter of the world's ...

An offshore oil rig in the Arabian Gulf.

An offshore oil rig in the Arabian Gulf. Saudi Arabia's oil production constitutes more than 15% of the world's ...

Jiddah, Saudi Arabia's major Red Sea port.

The city of Jiddah, Saudi Arabia's major Red Sea port. It had more than a half million inhabitants in 1974. Oil revenues have allowed Saudi ...

Riyadh, the capital of Saudi Arabia.

Riyadh, the capital of Saudi Arabia. Not long ago a sleepy, mud-walled town, by 1974 Riyadh had grown into a city of about 660,000 people. Its ...

Supertankers loading at a Kuwait pier.

Supertankers loading at a Kuwait pier. The industrial centers of East Asia and Europe are heavily dependent on oil from the Persian Gulf, ...

The Iranian oil refinery at Abadan, Persian Gulf.

The Iranian oil refinery at Abadan in the Persian ...

Wars

A map of Korea and adjacent nations.

A map of Korea and adjacent nations. Initially, the UN forces drove the North back to the Chinese frontier, but China then entered the war and ...

An Afghan refugee in Pakistan, 1980.

An Afghan refugee in Pakistan, 1980. Faced with economic problems at home and an increasingly unpopular foreign war, the U.S.S.R. finally ...

British in Korean War have afternoon tea, 1951.

During the Korean War, soldiers of the 29th British Brigade gather for afternoon tea in a muddy field, 1951. An armistice was signed in 1953, ...

Chiang reviews troops on Formosa, 1952.

President Chiang Kai-shek reviews his troops on the island of Formosa, 1952. By 1950, Chiang's nationalist forces had been driven from the ...

Chinese children read about Stalin, 1953.

Chinese children read about Stalin. After Stalin's death in 1953, Mao's prestige grew, and he began to

criticize the Soviets for their ...

Fighting on Cyprus.
Fighting on Cyprus. Taking advantage of the confusion resulting from a 1974 military coup in Greece, a Turkish invasion led to the occupation of ...

Generalissimo Chiang Kai-shek (Jiang Jieshi).
Generalissimo Chiang Kai-shek (Jiang Jieshi), President of the Republic of China, 1945. Chiang Kai-shek (1887-1975) participated in the ...

Korean war: Canadian at first-aid station, 1951.
In the Korean War, a wounded Canadian rifleman is helped to a first-aid station, February 1951. The bulk of the military forces in Korea came ...

Makarios III, the first president of Cyprus.
Makarios III of Cyprus (1913-77), an Eastern Orthodox archbishop who served as the first president of Cyprus from 1960 to 1977. Cyprus, with a ...

Mao Tse-tung (Mao Zedong) in 1945.
Mao Tse-tung (Mao Zedong, 1893-1976) in 1945. Mao was one of the founders of the Chinese Communist Party in 1921 and was its leader in Hunan ...

Map of northeast Africa & Middle East, 1982.
A 1982 political map of northeast Africa and the Middle ...

Political map of Iran, Iraq and neighbors.
A political map showing the locations of Afghanistan, Iran, Iraq and neighboring ...

Refugees in a camp near Beirut.
Refugees living in tents in a camp near Beirut, n.d. Hundreds of thousands of Palestinians took refuge in Lebanon in the period after 1948, and ...

Ruins of Beirut residential neighborhood, 1982.
Ruins of a residential neighborhood in Beirut, August 1982. The once-prosperous city of Beirut became a shambles during years of internal strife ...

Syrian military forces in Lebanon in 1976.
Syrian military forces in Lebanon in l976. With the breakdown of order in Lebanon in 1975-1976, the Lebanese government invited Syria to send in ...

The Australian Air Force in South Korea.
Members of No. 77 Squadron, Royal Australian Air Force, at a 1953 early morning alert in Kimpo, South Korea. Australians provided substantial ...

U.S. soldiers in the Gulf War.
U.S. soldiers in the Gulf War. In August of 1990 Saddam Hussein of Iraq launched an invasion of the neighboring oil-rich state of Kuwait, but ...

UN peace-keeping observers in Cyprus, 1971.
UN peace-keeping observers on an armored personnel carrier on Cyprus in 1971. After several years of war between the Greek and Turkish Cypriots, ...

UN troops on the outskirts of Seoul, Korea.
In the 1950-1953 Korean War, UN troops fight on the outskirts of Seoul, Korea's capital, ca. 1951. In 1945, after World War II, Korea was ...

World History

Ambassador Bush on China admission to U.N.
Audio recording (image is the Taiwan Delegation leaving U.N. General Assembly): U.S. Ambassador to the U.N. George Bush states the U.S. position ...

Announcing the Marshall Plan, June 5, 1947.
Audio recording (image is Marshall and others): George Marshall announces the Marshall Plan for European Recovery, June 5, 1947: (AUDIO START) ...

Anwar Sadat speaks on Camp David Accords.
Audio recording (image is President Anwar Sadat of Egypt): Camp David Accords remarks by Anwar Sadat of Egypt: (AUDIO START) "The signing of ...

Arafat on revolution, speaking in Arabic, 1974.
Audio recording (image is Yasir Arafat): Yasser Arafat, speaking in Arabic in 1974 (English translation): (AUDIO START) "With the olive branch ...

Ben Gurion speaks about the creation of Israel.
Audio recording (image is David Ben-Gurion): David Ben Gurion speaks about the creation of Israel, March 6, 1948: (AUDIO START) "In the creation ...

Ben-Gurion case for establishing Israel, 1947.
Audio recording (image is David Ben-Gurion): David Ben-Gurion presents the case for establishing Israel, in London, February 6, 1947: (AUDIO ...

British Prime Minister on the Suez crisis.
Audio recording (image is a container ship on the Suez Canal): Prime Minister Eden explains the British motivation during the Suez crisis: ...

Broadcast on Bikini atomic bomb test in 1946.
Audio recording (image is the H-bomb explosion at Bikini atoll): Part of the official broadcast concerning the Bikini atomic bomb test in 1946: ...

Carlos Romulo on Philippine independence.
Audio recording (image is MacArthur at independence ceremonies, 1949): Philippine diplomat, educator and author Carlos Pena Romulo comments on ...

Chiang Kai-Shek speaks, Burma Road, 1945.
Audio recording (image is the mountainous Ledo Road): Here is the English translation of Chiang Kai-Shek, speaking in Chinese at the celebration ...
Cuban crisis: Moscow reports missile dismantling.
Audio recording (image is a Soviet missile base in Cuba): Radio Moscow reports the dismantling of missile sites: (AUDIO START) "This is Radio ...
Cuban crisis: US vs. Soviet Union at UN, 1962.
Audio recording (image is a Soviet missile base in Cuba): U.S. Ambassador Adlai Stevenson confronts the Soviet ambassador on missiles in Cuba, ...
Cuban refugee comments conditions, 1953.
Audio recording (image is Fidel Castro): Cuban refugee Dr. Carlos Evia comments on the conditions in Cuba in 1953: (AUDIO START) "The situation ...
Cyprus addresses the U.N., December 27, 1963.
Audio recording (image is U.S. military equipment arriving in Turkey, 1948): United Nations Ambassador Rossides of Cyprus addresses the Security ...
Dag Hammarskjold quotes Abraham Lincoln.
Audio recording (image is of four Secretaries-General of the United Nations): Dag Hammarskjold quotes Abraham Lincoln as he is sworn in as ...
Dr. Tryqve Lie speaks on hopes for the UN, 1946.
Audio recording (image is of four Secretaries-General of the United Nations): Dr. Tryqve Lie speaks on his hopes for the United Nations, March ...
Egyptian UN ambassador during 1967 war.
Audio recording (image is an Egyptian bridge across the Suez Canal): The Egyptian ambassador to the U.N. speaks at the start of "Ramadan War," as ...
Eisenhower speaks on the Korean War.
Audio recording (image is American and North Korean guards at P'anmunjom): Part of President Eisenhower's address on the Korean War: (AUDIO ...
Eleanor Roosevelt on Declaration of Human Rights.
Audio recording (image is the International Court of Justice in session): Eleanor Roosevelt speaking at a United Nations General Assembly session ...
Eva Perón's last radio broadcast to her country.
Audio recording (image is Evita Perón): Here is the English translation of Eva Perón's last radio broadcast to her country, shortly before she ...
Eyewitness account of Korean fighting, 1950.
Audio recording (image is Chinese "volunteers" capturing U.S. tanks): Eyewitness account of the 187th Regimental Combat Team's drop 20 miles ...
Eyewitness description, bombed-out Tokyo, 1945.
Audio recording (image is bomb damage in Tokyo): An eyewitness description of bombed-out Tokyo in 1945: (AUDIO START) "It looked like something ...
FDR addresses Congress after Pearl Harbor.
Audio recording (image is of Roosevelt asking Congress to declare war on Japan): Franklin Delano Roosevelt addresses Congress the day after the ...
FDR announces his "Good Neighbor Policy," 1933.
Audio recording (image is Roosevelt's inauguration): Franklin Delano Roosevelt announces his "Good Neighbor Policy," March 4, 1933: (AUDIO ...
FDR comments on Chiang Kai-Shek meeting, 1943.
Audio recording (image is Chiang Kai-shek, FDR, Churchill and Mme. Chiang): FDR comments on his 1943 meeting with Chiang Kai-Shek: (AUDIO START) ...
France, Vietnam establish formal relations, 1949.
Audio recording (image is Emperor Bao Dai and Premier Huu Tran Van): Emperor Bao Dai, speaking in French on March 8, 1949. Here is an English ...
Gen. MacArthur on the liberation of Seoul, 1950.
Audio recording (image is U.S.S. Missouri firing into North Korea): A part of General MacArthur's speech at the ceremony marking the liberation ...
Gen. MacArthur speaks, Japanese surrender, 1945.
Audio recording (image is the surrender ceremony which ended the Pacific War): General MacArthur speaks at the Japanese surrender ceremony, ...
Gen. MacArthur's instructions to Japanese, 1945.
Audio recording (image is of MacArthur and Hirohito): News bulletin on General MacArthur's instructions to the Japanese, August 15, 1945: (AUDIO ...
Gen. Montgomery addresses N. Africa troops, 1942.
Audio recording (image is General Montgomery): General Montgomery addresses his troops in North Africa, 1942: (AUDIO START) "Here we will stand ...
Goebbels opens anti-Semitic campaign, 1933.
Audio recording (image is Police intervening between Arabs and Jews at Jaffa): Goebbels at the opening of the official anti-Semitic campaign, ...
Golda Meir speaks about U.S. relations.
Audio recording (image is Golda Meir with Nixon): Golda Meir speaks about relations with the United States: (AUDIO START) "I'm confident that ...
Haile Selassie speaks on Italian invasion.

Audio recording (image is Emperor Haile Selassie): Haile Selassie addressed Ethiopia (in French) in September of 1935, after the Italian ...

Indira Gandhi on China admission to U.N.

Audio recording (image is the PRC takes its place in the United Nations): Indira Gandhi on the issue of China's admission to the United Nations: ...

Indira Ghandi speaks on Pakistan civil war, 1971.

Audio recording (image is Indira Gandhi meeting with Nixon): Indira Ghandi speaking about the civil war in Pakistan in 1971: (AUDIO START) "This ...

Israel is admitted to the UN.

Audio recording (image is U.N. Ambassador Ralph Bunche): Israel is admitted to the United nations by voice vote. (AUDIO START) "In favor of the ...

Javier Pérez de Cuéllar speaks on Aghanistan.

Audio recording (image is of four Secretaries-General of the United Nations): Javier Pérez de Cuéllar speaks on the situation in Aghanistan: ...

JFK talks about the Bay of Pigs, April 20, 1961.

Audio recording (image is Castro on a tank at the Bay of Pigs, 1961): President Kennedy talks about the Bay of Pigs, April 20, 1961: (AUDIO ...

King Hussein, 1960, at the United Nations.

Audio recording (image is King Hussein of Jordan meeting Vice-President Nixon): King Hussein, speaking in 1960 at the United Nations: (AUDIO ...

Kurt Waldheim speaks on Women's Year, 1975.

Audio recording (image is of four Secretaries-General of the United Nations): Kurt Waldheim opened the World Conference of the International ...

LBJ announces he is not seeking re-election, 1968.

Audio recording (image is Johnson announcing that he will not run): LBJ announces that he will not seek re-election, March 31, 1968: (AUDIO ...

LBJ speaks on the Tonkin Gulf situation, 1964.

Audio recording (image is Lyndon B. Johnson): Part of President Johnson's speech on the Tonkin Gulf situation, August 4, 1964: (AUDIO START) "As ...

Lord Halifax announces vote on UN Charter, 1945.

Audio recording (image is the United Nations Charter Conference, San Francisco): Lord Halifax announces the vote on the United Nations Charter, ...

MacArthur reflects on Philippine independence.

Audio recording (image is MacArthur at independence ceremonies, 1949): General Douglas MacArthur's reflections, on the day of Philippine ...

Mandela is sworn in as South Africa's President.

Audio recording (image is Mandela meeting with de Klerk): This is a recording of the very moment Nelson Mandela was sworn in as President of ...

Message from Nehru to new Republic of India, 1950.

Audio recording (image is Nehru with Dr. Rajendra Prasad): During the inaugural ceremonies of the Republic of India, on January 26, 1950, Dr. ...

Mohandas Gandhi discussing his spirituality, 1925.

Audio recording (image is Gandhi's body with mourners): Mohandas Gandhi discussing his spirituality, 1925: (AUDIO START) "It transcends the ...

Mohandas Gandhi explains his non-violence views.

Audio recording (image is Gandhi with Sarojini Naidu during the Salt March): Mohandas Gandhi explains his non-violence views as more than a ...

N. Zealand's Ambassador speaks on communism.

Audio recording (image is a ship of the New Zealand navy): New Zealand's Ambassador to the United States in the 1960s talks about the containment ...

Nazi war criminals, Nuremberg, November 21, 1945.

Audio recording (image is General Tojo Hideki at the war crimes trial, 1948): Some of the major Nazi war crime defendants enter their pleas at ...

Nehru in New York, 1960.

Audio recording (image is India's first prime minister, Jawaharlal Nehru): Nehru in New York, 1960: (AUDIO START) "Seated here in this ...

Nehru speaks on Asia, New Dehli, April 4, 1947.

Audio recording (image is of Nehru and Gandhi on a postage stamp): Nehru at a conference at New Dehli, April 4, 1947: (AUDIO START) "All over ...

Nelson Mandela speaks about apartheid, 1994.

Audio recording (image is Nelson Mandela and Walter Sisulu in prison): Nelson Mandela spoke about apartheid before the United Nations, October 3, ...

President Eisenhower on the action in Lebanon.

Audio recording (image is U.S. marines and a tank on the streets of Beirut): President Eisenhower addressed the United States and the world on ...

President Nixon announces the Vietnam cease-fire:

Audio recording (image is Richard M. Nixon): President Nixon announces the Vietnam cease-fire: (AUDIO START) "The following statement is being ...

President Nixon explains China initiative, 1971.

Audio recording (image is President Nixon meeting CCP Chairman Mao Zedong): President Nixon explains his

new China initiative in 1971: (AUDIO ...

President Truman speaks about Korea, June, 1950.
Audio recording (image is MacArthur and Truman): President Truman speaks about the situation in Korea in June of 1950: (AUDIO START) "On Sunday, ...

Prime Minister Begin speaks, Camp David Accords.
Audio recording (image is Anwar Sadat, Jimmy Carter, and Menachem Begin): Prime Minister Begin at the signing of the Camp David Accords: (AUDIO ...

Proclaiming the independence of Namibia, 1989.
Audio recording (image is of supporters of SWAPO, Windhoek, Namibia, 1978): Namibia held elections in 1989, electing an assembly to draw up an ...

Recording after Hiroshima blast.
Audio recording (image is Hiroshima after the atomic explosion): Father John Zimas, a Jesuit priest, was only four miles away from the city of ...

Recording during fighting on Okinawa, 1945.
Audio recording (image is U.S. marines blasting a cave on Okinawa, 1945): A recording made during fighting on Okinawa: (AUDIO START) ...

Recording during landing on Iwo Jima, 1945.
Audio recording (image is tanks approaching Iwo Jima): A recording made during the landing on Iwo Jima, February 20, 1945: (AUDIO START) ...

S. Korea ambassador speaks at U.N., 1950.
Audio recording (image is a meeting of United Nations Security Council, 1950): South Korean ambassador John Chang, speaking at the United Nations ...

S. Korean President Syngman Rhee speaks, 1950.
Audio recording (image is Syngman Rhee): South Korean President Syngman Rhee, speaking on October 20, 1950: (AUDIO START) "I am speaking to the ...

Shah of Iran's comments during U.S. visit.
Audio recording (image is Mohammed Reza Pahlavi, the Shah of Iran): Some of the Shah of Iran's comments during his visit to the United States: ...

Sounds of theBritish barrage at El Alamein.
Audio recording (image is of retreating British troops in the desert): (AUDIO START) An actual recording of the massive British artillery ...

Statement about India's population growth, 1974.
Audio recording (image is birth control class for women in a village, 1972): Dr. Karan Singh of India speaks about India's efforts to control ...

Sukarno addresses Asian-African Conference, 1955.
Audio recording (image is Achmed Sukarno, Indonesia's first president): Achmed Sukarno addresses the Asian-African Conference in Indonesia in ...

Tojo is sentenced, 1946.
Audio recording (image is General Tojo Hideki at the war crimes trial, 1948): Tojo is sentenced, 1946: (AUDIO START) "Accused Tojo Hideki, on ...

Truman fires MacArthur, April 11, 1951.
Audio recording (image is Hill 717 in Korea, April 11, 1951): Truman fires MacArthur, April 11, 1951: (AUDIO START) "I have thought long and ...

Truman speaks on the Japanese Peace Treaty.
Audio recording (image is Japanese representative signing the treaty of peace): President Truman, speaking at the opening of the San Francisco ...

U Thant speaks on the Congo crisis, 1961.
Audio recording (image is of four Secretaries-General of the United Nations): U Thant speaking on the Congo crisis, November 24, 1961: (AUDIO ...

U.N. vote on the partition of Palestine, 1947.
Audio recording (image is Jewish refugees arriving by boat at Haifa): The vote on the partition of Palestine at the United Nations Security ...

U.S. ping-pong captain on return from China, 1971.
Audio recording (image is the Chinese ping-pong players at a U.S. school): The captain of the U.S. ping-pong team, after the team's return from ...

UN Conference on the Law of the Sea, 1984.
Audio recording (image is the International Court of Justice in session): In 1984, the United Nations sponsored a Conference on the Law of the ...

UN sanctions are voted against Rhodesia.
Audio recording (image is U.N. Security Council voting for Rhodesia sanctions): United Nation sanctions are voted against Rhodesia: (AUDIO START) ...

UN Secretary-General on outbreak of Korean War.
Audio recording (image is a meeting of United Nations Security Council, 1950): The United Nations Secretary-General, Trygve Lie of Norway, ...

USS Pueblo Captain on capture by N. Koreans, 1968.
Audio recording (image is the U.S.S. Pueblo): The Captain of the USS Pueblo talks of the capture by North Koreans, 1968: (AUDIO START) "I was ...

African History

A global view of Africa.

A global view of Africa (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

Video Overview: The history of Africa.

A brief video Overview of the history of Africa, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: Some of man's earliest origins are found in ...

Africa and Europe to World War II

Ethiopian King Theodore II's "Sebastapol" mortar.

The enormous "Sebastapol" mortar manufactured by Ethiopian King Theodore II and used against the British in the hostilities of 1868. The weapon ...

"Dr. Livingstone, I presume."

"Dr. Livingstone, I presume." Henry M. Stanley's celebrated encounter with David Livingstone at Ujiji near Lake Tanganyika in 1871. Stanley's ...

"In the rubber coils of the Congo `Free' State."

"In the rubber coils of the Congo `Free' State," a 1906 British cartoon criticizing the abuses of Leopold II's rule of the Congo Free State. By ...

1557 sailors using instruments of navigation.

This 1557 woodcut shows European sailors using instruments of navigation to calculate their latitude. At the center is an astrolabe , an ...

1578 Portuguese map of central Africa.

Detail from a Portuguese map showing central Africa as known to the Portuguese in 1578, less than one century after Bartholomeu Dias' discovery ...

1830s European map of Africa.

By the 1830s, when this map was printed, Europeans pictured accurately the size and shape of Africa. But the outside world knew little about the ...

1st sugar sale, Durban, South Africa, 1856.

The first sale of sugar at Durban, South Africa, in 1856. From the 1400s, the expansion of the sugar frontier to the islands off northwest ...

A rural hospital in Kenya.

A rural hospital in Kenya. For the minority of Africans who gained access to modern medical care during the colonial period, improved health ...

A Sikh sergeant-major, late 19th century.

A Sikh sergeant-major of the British Central African contingent in the late 19th century. Immigrants from the Indian sub-continent helped staff ...

A slave ship dumping slaves while being chased.

A slave ship dumping its cargo of slaves while being chased by a British man-o'war. With Britain committed to the elimination of the African ...

A Uganda Railway bridge made with U.S. steel.

A bridge on the Uganda Railway made of American steel and erected under American direction. In interior regions reached by railway for the first ...

African defendant in a British court, West Africa.

An African defendant on trial in a British consular court in West Africa. Along with the imposition of colonial rule, Europeans brought new ...

African laborers carrying ivory and rubber.

African laborers, with a European overseer, carrying ivory and rubber to a river steamer at Basoka, Congo Free State, around the turn of the ...

Africans with John Speke on Nile exploration.

Africans, armed with rifles and spears, who accompanied John Speke on his exploration to reach the source of the Nile. Speke (1827-1864) was a ...

An African war canoe in the Uruwimi region.

An African war canoe in the Uruwimi region of the Congo basin. Cultural arrogance and ignorance led at times to fateful misunderstandings ...

Arab and Swahili slave traders.

Arab and Swahili slave traders, captured by British Central African forces at the end of the 19th century. Large areas of East and Central ...

Arabs, Swahilis in Zanzibar, early 20th century.

Arabs and Swahilis in Zanzibar in the early 20th century. For nearly a thousand years, Middle Eastern traders interacted with East African ...

Asante king Prempeh submits to British, 1896.

The submission of the Asante king, Prempeh, and the Queen Mother to British officers in 1896. This sketch depicts how dramatically relations ...

Baptism in the Kongo.

A baptismal ceremony in a Christian church in the Kongo during the early age of European expansion in Africa. The first Portuguese mission ...

Bartering for slaves.

Bartering for slaves. This is a European artist's depiction of the act of buying and selling slaves on the West African coast. Europeans were ...

Beira, Mozambique, prior to 1927.

The port at Beira, Mozambique, prior to 1927, showing the railway pier, loading crane and dock workers. Most parts of Africa lack good natural ...

Boats landing goods on the West African coast.

Surf boats landing goods on the West African coast. Generally lacking well-protected harbors, African and European merchants often had to load ...

British anti-slavery patrol .
A British anti-slavery patrol capturing a Spanish slave vessel on April 4, 1816. The growth of abolitionist forces in Britain at the end of the ...

British East Africa officials, Kikuyu leaders.
Officials of the British East Africa Company concluding treaties with Kikuyu leaders in Kenya. As British settlers established themselves in the ...

British steamer The Scourge shelling Accra.
The British steamer The Scourge shelling Accra on the West African coast in the mid-1850s. The ability of Europeans to impose their will on ...

British take power from the king of Ado, Nigeria.
From African sovereignty to European sovereignty: a British Colonial Secretary from Lagos formally takes over power from the king of Ado in ...

British troops vs. Benin forces, 1897.
British troops attacking Benin forces in 1897. This expedition, following an earlier ambush of a British column, led to the defeat of Benin, ...

Building a road during the early colonial era.
African laborers building a road during the early colonial era. With the coming of motorized transport, road networks were needed to get goods ...

Burning a slave establishment in Mozambique.
British seamen and marines burning a slave establishment in Mozambique in the mid-19th century. Harsh measures were used by the British to ...

Cloves drying in the sun at Zanzibar.
Cloves drying in the sun at Zanzibar. Zanzibar island, off the coast of East Africa, came under firm Omani control in the early 19th century. ...

Constructing a railway in central Africa in 1918.
African workers constructing a railway in central Africa in 1918. The idea of linking African regions by a grand network of railways inspired ...

David Livingstone (1813-1873).
David Livingstone (1813-1873), Scottish missionary and explorer in southern and central Africa. Beginning as a missionary in Botswana in the ...

Detail of Ptolemy map of Northern Africa.
Detail from a Ptolemy map of Northern Africa. Claudius Ptolemaeus (ca. 90-168 A.D.) was an Alexandrian astronomer, mathematician and geographer ...

Edward W. Blyden (1832-1911).
Edward W. Blyden (1832-1911). Of West Indian origin, Blyden settled in Liberia in 1851, playing a powerful intellectual role in West Africa for ...

Elmina castle on the African Gold Coast.
Elmina castle, founded on the West African Gold Coast in 1471. Elmina (or La Mina) became a major port for European trade with Africa. The 15th ...

European ivory merchant with ivory and porters.
A European ivory merchant with ivory and porters, in the Belgian Congo. The importance of ivory as an item of trade dates from ancient times, ...

Frederick Lugard.
Frederick Lugard, the British officer and administrator who first ruled over the protectorate of Northern Nigeria, and then the unified British ...

Gambia river steamer loading passengers.
A Gambia river steamer loading passengers during the colonial era. Steamboats such as this carried people and commodities on African rivers, ...

George Goldie, United African Company founder.
George Goldie, founder of the United African Company along the lower Niger River in the last part of the 19th century. This builder of a British ...

German bombing raid on British camp, 1915.
A bombing raid by German aviators on a British camp in South Africa in 1915. World War I was partly fought on African territory, as the European ...

German troops suppress Herero resistance.
German colonial troops fan out to suppress Herero resistance in South West Africa (now Namibia). The Herero were one of scores of African groups ...

Growing tobacco in Rhodesia, colonial era.
Growing tobacco in Rhodesia during the colonial era. Here a European overseer watches over African workers who are cultivating tobacco plants. ...

Heinrich Barth's camp near Bornu.
Heinrich Barth's camp near Bornu in the Lake Chad region of north-central Africa. Barth (1821-1865) was a German geographer who traveled in ...

Henry Morton Stanley (1847-1904).
Henry Morton Stanley (1847-1904), adventurer, writer and explorer of the African interior. Stanley was born in Wales and emigrated to the United ...

Hugh Clapperton (1788-1827), Scottish explorer.
Hugh Clapperton (1788-1827), a Scottish explorer who journeyed across the Sahara from Tripoli, visiting the

region of Lake Chad and northern ...

Implements used by slave traders.
Implements used by slave traders. These instruments reveal the suffering endured by Africans caught up in the Atlantic slave trade system. The ...

Jaja, a merchant prince of the Nigerian delta.
Jaja, a merchant prince of Opobo in the Nigerian delta, discussing trade with Europeans. As European merchants penetrated inland, aiming to ...

Joseph Jenkins Roberts (1809-1876).
Joseph Jenkins Roberts (1809-1876), as photographed by Mathew Brady. One of the most important political leaders of 19th century Liberia, ...

King Mutesa, Kabaka of Buganda.
King Mutesa, the Kabaka of Buganda, who ruled from 1856 to 1884. Mutesa maintained Buganda's power during three turbulent decades. He sought ...

King of the Kongo and European ambassadors.
The King of the Kongo giving audience to a delegation of European ambassadors around the mid-17th century. The early era of European-African ...

King's town, mission church in Bechuanaland.
The king's town and the mission church in 19th century Bechuanaland (Botswana), a scene typical of much of non-Muslim Africa by the late 19th ...

Leopold II, king of Belgium.
Leopold II, king of Belgium. By hiring Henry M. Stanley to gain treaty rights for him in the Congo Basin in 1879-1880, Leopold helped set off ...

Liberia College, Monrovia, in 1893.
The president, professors and students of Liberia College, Monrovia, in 1893. The college provided Western-style education, training the future ...

Livingstone's steam launch, Zambezi exploration.
The steam launch built for David Livingstone's explorations on the Zambezi River in the 1850s. The arrival of steamboats in Africa greatly ...

Luanda, Angola.
Luanda, Angola. Founded by the Portuguese in 1576, this coastal city became the main center of Portuguese settlement in Angola. A Dutch ...

Map, 1991 political map of Africa.
For comparison, a 1991 political map of ...

Map, Africa partitioned, 1914.
A map of Africa partitioned among European colonial powers in 1914. Within three decades after the Berlin Conference, which had established ...

Map, African resistance to European rule.
A map showing areas of violent resistance to European rule during the imperial era, 19th-20th ...

Map, voyages of Dias and da Gama.
A map showing the voyages of Portuguese navigators Bartholomeu Dias and Vasco da Gama around the African Cape in the late 15th century. A series ...

Missionary preparing to baptize African woman.
A European missionary preparing to baptize an African woman by immersion as a group of followers looks on. This scene took place in ...

Mungo Park (1771-1806), Scottish explorer.
Mungo Park (1771-1806), the Scottish explorer whose two journeys into the interior of West Africa at the end of the 18th century made him one of ...

Prayer service at mission school, Leopoldville.
A prayer service in front of a mission schoolhouse near Leopoldville (now Kinshasa), in the Congo Free State. This photograph from around the ...

Rene Caillé (1799-1837), French explorer.
Rene Caillé (1799-1837), the French explorer who became the first European to reach the fabled city of Timbuktu in 1828. Pretending to be a ...

Rubaga, capital of Buganda, in 1875.
Rubaga, the capital of Buganda, as pictured by an observer in 1875. The palace of the king, or Kabaka , lies at the top of the hill. This ...

Rural post office, 19th c. British Central Africa.
A rural post office in 19th century British Central Africa. The extension of information networks across Africa was an important accomplishment ...

Samuel Ajayi Crowther, Bishop of the Niger.
Samuel Ajayi Crowther (d. 1891), Bishop of the Niger and proponent of Western assimilation of Africans. Of Yoruba background, Crowther had ...

Slaves being taken across the Sahara Desert.
Chained slaves being taken across the Sahara Desert. Commerce across the Sahara had for centuries included slaves, who were eventually ...

Sudanese troops with Maxim gun, Nigeria.
Sudanese troops, in the service of Britain, standing behind a Maxim gun in Nigeria. This rapid-firing machine gun was a crucial tool in the ...

Swanzy's Trading Company in West Africa.
European managers and African workers in front of Swanzy's Trading Company in West Africa around the

turn of the century. A small number of ...

The capture of a slave dhow by the British.

The capture of a slave dhow by boats from a British ship off the west coast of Madagascar. Dhows dominated Indian Ocean trade for centuries, but ...

The Catholic mission in Bagamoto, Tanzania.

The Catholic mission in Bagamoto, Tanzania. The tower was built in 1872. Catholic missionaries competed along with a variety of Protestant ...

The Conference of Berlin in 1884-85.

The Conference of Berlin in 1884-85. In November 1884, representatives of fourteen European countries plus the United States met at Berlin to ...

The gunboat Herald on the Zambezi river.

The gunboat Herald on the Zambezi river. The arrival of the steamboat in West Africa in the 1840s, together with the use of quinine to ...

The king of Dahomey and his family.

The king of Dahomey and his family, exiled by the French from West Africa to Algeria in the 1890s. When the once-powerful state of Dahomey ...

The King of the Kongo receiving Europeans.

The King of the Kongo receiving a delegation of Europeans in the era of Portuguese expansion. Despite what appears to be a disparity in military ...

The port of Zanzibar around 1900.

The port of Zanzibar around 1900, showing the sultan's palace, government house, signal tower, and customs house. British resident advisors ...

The steamboat Stanley on the Congo River.

The sternwheeler steamboat Stanley on the Congo River. Steamboats began penetrating inland by river in the 1840s, giving Europeans increased ...

The train station at Dakar, Senegal.

The train station at Dakar, Senegal. The size of this station illustrates the importance of Dakar as the capital of French West Africa and as a ...

Throne room, palace of the sultan of Zanzibar.

The throne room of the palace of the sultan of Zanzibar. The opulence shown here illustrates the degree of wealth accumulated through a system ...

Tippu Tib (1830-1905), the Swahili merchant.

Tippu Tib (1830-1905), the Swahili merchant born in Zanzibar who controlled an extensive trading network into the interior of East Africa from ...

Two wives of Sultan Barghash of Zanzibar.

Two wives of Sultan Barghash of Zanzibar. By the time of the sultan's rule, the Omani state in East Africa was in decline, coming under ...

U.S. legation building, Monrovia, 1901.

The U.S. legation building at Monrovia, Liberia, in 1901. The United States showed little interest in Africa until recent times, with the ...

West African Frontier Force captures Yola.

The West African Frontier Force captures Yola, in northern Nigeria, in a night engagement on September 2, 1901. Much of the African continent ...

Workers at Catholic mission, Congo Free State.

An artist's version of workers hoeing the grounds of a Catholic mission in the Congo Free State around the turn of the century. The brick ...

History of Traditional Africa

16th century bronze head of a queen, Benin.

A bronze head of a queen mother from Benin, Nigeria, dating from the 16th century. This Benin bronze, although crafted with the same technical ...

A Bataka iron hoe from southern Africa.

A Bataka iron hoe from southern Africa. Using traditional iron-smelting technology, African craftsmen produced implements such as this for ...

A bronze bust of an Oni from Ife, Nigeria.

A bronze bust of an Oni from Ife, Nigeria, dating from the late 15th or early 16th century. This figure wears an elaborate headdress and body ...

A camel in the desert near Tuggurt, Algeria.

A camel in the desert near Tuggurt, Algeria. Merchants had crossed the Sahara using horses and chariots for centuries, but it was the ...

A caravan approaching Timbuktu.

A caravan approaching Timbuktu. The fabled city of Timbuktu was much reduced from its former splendor by the time the first Europeans visited it ...

A farmer irrigating plants in West Africa.

A farmer irrigating plants in West Africa. Even in areas lacking in rainfall, access to a regular supply of surface water or underground aquifer ...

A farmer plowing with oxen in West Africa.

A farmer plowing with oxen in West Africa. Indigenous and imported grain crops have been cultivated in the savannahs of West Africa for ...

A fisherman in a canoe on the Niger.

A fisherman in a dugout canoe on the Niger River, Mali. African societies living along rivers and around lakes have depended on fishing since ...

A Malinke griot with a harp-like instrument.
A Malinke griot of the Sudan with a harp-like instrument. The griots of West Africa were professional court historians who memorized and ...

A metallophone musical instrument.
A metallophone musical instrument, found throughout much of sub-Saharan Africa and believed to be an African invention. Known as a sansa in ...

A small workshop at Mogadishu, Somalia.
Spinning thread and weaving cloth in a small workshop at Mogadishu, Somalia. This type of textile industry, widespread across Africa in the 19th ...

A terracotta head from the Nok culture.
A terracotta head from the Nok Iron Age culture in ancient Nigeria. The Nok culture flourished on the Benue Plateau between about 500 B.C. and ...

A traditional African doctor treating a baby.
A traditional African doctor treating a sick baby. Traditional medical practitioners acted in both the spiritual and material worlds to restore ...

A victim of sleeping sickness.
An emaciated victim of sleeping sickness, also known as trypanosomiasis, during the last stage of the illness. The disease is spread by the ...

A West African iron forge.
A West African forge for the production of iron from iron ore. This form of technology, using a simple bellows and forced draft process, was ...

A West African king holding a gold nugget.
A West African king holding a gold nugget. This 1375 picture from a Catalan Atlas illustrates the importance of West Africa as a gold supplier ...

A woman bringing dried fish to market.
A woman bringing dried fish to market in a Niger River village. The Niger, along with the other great rivers of Africa, has served as a highway ...

An African statuette of a European man.
An African statuette of a European man. Portuguese navigators first reached the Gulf of Guinea in the 1470s, developing trade relations with ...

An agrarian scene in the highlands of Ethiopia.
An agrarian scene in the highlands of Ethiopia. This 19th century plate shows the rugged defensive terrain of northeast Africa and the ways in ...

An Asante cavalryman, 19th century.
An Asante cavalryman ready for combat in the early 19th century. The Asante army was a formidable threat to neighboring states; it kept the ...

An Ife bronze head from Nigeria.
An Ife bronze head from Nigeria. According to Yoruba tradition, Ife was the place where the gods descended to earth. Ife bronze art is unique ...

An ox cart transporting millet in Gambia.
An ox cart transporting newly harvested millet in Gambia, West Africa. In traditional Africa, farmers produced primarily for local consumption, ...

Ancient Ethiopian crowns.
Ancient Ethiopian crowns, illustrating the wealth and power of the Amhara rulers. This intricate brass casting was the work of skilled ...

Asante soldier with musket around 1820.
An Asante soldier with a flintlock musket around 1820. Gaining access to the latest European weaponry was a continuing theme in 19th century ...

Basoko workmen building a house.
Basoko workmen building a house in the Congo region, probably around the beginning of the 20th century. The men are tying the poles together ...

Biblical scene, Coptic manuscript.
A biblical scene from an Ethiopian Coptic manuscript. The Coptic Orthodox Church, an ancient Monophysite branch of Christianity, has millions of ...

Blacksmiths pounding smelted iron into a hoe.
Two blacksmiths pounding smelted iron into a hoe. This form of iron-working was utilized throughout Africa in producing agricultural implements ...

Bornu trumpeters sounding the Frum-Frums .
Bornu trumpeters sounding the Frum-Frums . Bornu was one of the most powerful and long-lasting kingdoms of the Sudan. Its well-organized ...

Bronze pot , 9th-10th century Nigeria.
A bronze roped pot on a stand from 9th-10th century Nigeria. Cast by the lost-wax method, many similar bronzes have been found in the Igbo-Ukwu ...

Date palms in a Saharan oasis.
Date palms in a Saharan oasis . What the camel was to nomadic society, the date palm was to oasis communities. Ideally suited for life in the ...

Dates being harvested.
Dates being harvested. Date palm cultivation in the arid zones of Africa required skill and much effort. Trees

had to be irrigated, fertilized, ...

Elaborate fish traps in central Africa.

Elaborate fish traps in central Africa. This 19th-century scene shows African fishermen chasing fish into traps. Fish were an essential part of ...

Footprints 3.5 million years old.

A trail of footprints 3.5 million years old found by Mary Leakey at Laetoli, Tanzania. Some of the oldest hominid evidence found in Africa, ...

Kanembu chief in Kanem-Bornu around 1850.

A Kanembu chief with attendants in Kanem-Bornu around 1850. The most well-known king of Bornu, Mai Idris Alooma, ruled during the last third of ...

Kumasi, Asante state capital, 19th century.

A view of Kumasi, the capital city of the Asante state, as it appeared in the 19th century through the eyes of a European ...

Kush pyramids.

The stone pyramids of Kush at Merowe in the Sudan. The kingdom of Kush arose along the Nile in northeastern Sudan in the early 2nd millennium ...

Map, Africa, diffusion of iron technology.

A map showing the diffusion of iron technology in Africa. Iron working, developed by the Hittites of Anatolia by 1200 B.C., had reached the Nok ...

Map, African language families.

A map of northern and central Africa showing the major language families. Africa's thousand languages fall into four major groupings, reflecting ...

Map, African settlement and environment.

This population-density map of Africa illustrates the relationships between human settlement and environmental conditions. Denser populations ...

Map, caravans, gold and salt mining, Ghana.

A map showing the major Saharan caravan routes and regions of gold and salt mining during the era of Ghana's ...

Map, great empires of the Western Sudan.

A map of the great empires of the Western Sudan. The empire of Mali is outlined in brown, Songhai in green, and Kanem-Bornu in red. The ...

Map, Timbuktu around 1890.

A map of the city of Timbuktu around 1890, showing the location of the Grand Mosque and other mosques . The maze-like layout of the streets is ...

Map, vegetation in Africa.

A map of Africa, showing the natural vegetation in the climatic zones extending north and south from the equator which are rough mirror images of ...

Mid-19th century market at Sokoto, Nigeria.

A mid-19th century scene of the market at Sokoto in northern ...

Mounted bodyguard of the Sultan of Bornu.

Armored mounted bodyguard of the Sultan of Bornu. Both soldier and mount are covered in chain armor. Among Mai Idris Alooma's many innovations ...

Oasis and canal in Algeria, around 1900.

An oasis path and irrigation canal in the town of Biskra, Algeria, around 1900. This rare color photograph shows a typical Saharan oasis ...

Obelisk at Axum in Ethiopia.

A stone obelisk at Axum (or Aksum) in northern Ethiopia. The Semitic kingdom of Axum reached the height of its power in the 4th century A.D. ...

Peeling bark from a tree for bark cloth.

An artist's version of peeling bark from a tree for the production of bark cloth in Uganda. The man is robed in cloth made from tree bark. [The ...

Replica of an Asante political stool.

Replica of an Asante political stool. The sacred symbol of the Asante state, the Golden Stool represented the soul of the Asante nation. A ...

The fort of Méré-Méré near Lake Tanganyika.

The fort of Méré-Méré near Lake Tanganyika (present-day Tanzania), displaying a formidable defensive enclosure to keep out animal and human ...

The King of Benin and his retinue, 1686.

The King of Benin and his retinue, as depicted in a 1686 print. At the head of the procession are chained leopards, symbols of the Benin state. ...

The King of Bornu around 1850.

The King of Bornu in royal procession arriving at one of his provincial residences around 1850. The kingdom of Kanem-Bornu had a continuous ...

The Niger inland delta in Mali, from space.

A view from space of the Niger inland delta in Mali. Flowing northeast from the mountains of Guinea/Sierra Leone, the Niger turns back south ...

The old mosque at Djenné, Mali, around 1890.

The old mosque at Djenné, Mali, as restored around 1890. Recent excavations have revealed fixed settlements at Djenné, in the Niger inland ...

The palace of the King of Asante, 19th century.

The palace of the Asantehene, or King of Asante (Ashanti), as it appeared in the 19th century. Kumasi, in present-day Ghana, was the capital of ...

The Sankore Mosque at Timbuktu, around 1890.
The Sankore Mosque at Timbuktu as it appeared around 1890. Following the Moroccan invasion of Songhai in 1590-91, commercial and intellectual ...

The yam festival among the Asante people.
A celebration marking the first day of the yam festival among the Asante people of the Gold Coast. As in other West African forest regions, the ...

Three hominid skulls from East Africa.
Three hominid skulls from East Africa, illustrating the physical evolution of human-like species during several million years. From right to ...

Timbuktu gold merchants, late 19th century.
Gold merchants at Timbuktu in the late 19th century, a scene common in West Africa for centuries. Gold powder and nuggets were carefully weighed ...

Wolof warriors, Senegambia region, West Africa.
Wolof warriors from the Senegambia region of West Africa. The Wolof are one of the major ethnic groups of ...

Zanzibar, late 19th century.
The fortress and town of Zanzibar, off the East African coast in the late 19th century. Following two centuries of Portuguese influence in the ...

Southern Africa to 1948

"Long Tom" cannon at Mafeking in 1900.
"Long Tom" cannon at Mafeking, South Africa in 1900. During the Boer War, the British army enjoyed clear technological superiority over the Boer ...

"The Rhodes colossus," from Cape Town to Cairo.
Cartoon, The Rhodes colossus; striding from Cape Town to Cairo . This Punch cartoon of 1892 captures well Cecil Rhodes' imperial ambitions, ...

A British South African Company camp in 1890.
A British South African Company camp in 1890. Seated on the left is Cecil Rhodes, who organized the company's expeditions into the interior, ...

A Khoikhoi kraal , or circular village.
A Khoikhoi kraal , or circular village, in southern Africa. In the foreground a family erects a thatched hut. Khoisan-speaking ancestors of ...

A Matabele attack on a British convoy in 1893.
A romanticized European depiction of a Matabele (or Ndebele) attack on a British South Africa Company convoy in 1893. Under increasing pressures ...

A meeting of the ICU at Durban in 1929.
A meeting of the Industrial and Commercial Union (ICU) at Durban in 1929. Despite their essential role in the South African industrial economy, ...

A South African steel plant around WWII.
A South African steel plant around the time of World War II. Despite the mining boom and rapid economic growth from the late 19th century, the ...

African mine workers in front of "tailings wheel."
African mine workers in front of the "tailings wheel" at a South African gold mine. Cheap African labor was crucial to the gold mining industry ...

African refugees during the Boer War.
African refugees and wagon during the Boer War, 1899-1902. Although not called upon to fight in large numbers, many Africans did experience the ...

African village surrounding a kraal .
A southern African village surrounding a central enclosure (kraal), used for keeping livestock. Although this scene dates from the 19th ...

African, Chinese, European gold workers.
African, Chinese and European workers in a gold mine in the early 20th century. Laborers for South African mines were drawn from the British and ...

Boer guerrilla fighters.
Boer guerrilla fighters. Despite being heavily outnumbered, Boer guerrillas fiercely resisted British forces from 1899 to 1902. They used the ...

British capture Dutch ships, 1796.
The British capture Dutch East Indiamen ships, 1796. In 1796 the British took over control of South Africa from the Dutch, who had been there ...

British destroy huts, 1906 Bambata rebellion.
British troops pulling down huts in Zululand, Natal, during the Bambata rebellion of 1906. Despite the defeat of mass tribal resistance in the ...

British settlers camped in the 1830s.
British settlers camped on the Great Fish River in the 1830s. Part of the "1820 Settler" influx, which had been promoted by the British ...

British troops during the Boer War of 1899-1902.
British troops disembark at Durban during the Boer War of 1899-1902. An explosive mixture of cultural resentment, economic rivalry, and policy ...

Building a railway in Rhodesia.
Building a railway in Rhodesia, part of Cecil Rhodes' grand scheme to exploit Africa's economic resources and to extend British influence. By ...

Cape Town marketplace, early 20th century.
Cape Town marketplace and City Hall, with Table Mountain in the background, in the early 20th century. With the granting of self-government ...

Cecil Rhodes (1853-1902), British imperialist.
Cecil Rhodes (1853-1902), a name synonymous with British imperialism in southern Africa. Born in Britain, Rhodes immigrated to South Africa, ...

Chief Signananda, sons, after trial for rebellion.
Chief Signananda and his sons after their trial for participating in the 1906 Bambata Zulu rebellion. Pressures on rural Africans increased ...

Chinese laborers at Durban, South Africa.
Chinese laborers at Durban, South Africa about 1904-1905. The demand for labor is an enduring theme in South African history, as this photograph ...

Coaling station for steamships, Cape Town.
A mid-19th century sketch of the coaling station for steamships at Cape Town, South Africa. Established by the Dutch in 1652 as a supply ...

Diamond miners at Kimberley.
Diamond miners at Kimberley. This early sketch illustrates how Africans as well as Europeans sought independent claims at Kimberley. Backed by ...

Europeans, Asians, Africans, white-owned estate.
Europeans, Asians and Africans in front of a wealthy white-owned estate in South Africa. This photograph, taken just before the turn of the ...

Gold mine, South African Witwatersrand, 1890.
Stamping machines at a gold mine on the South African Witwatersrand in 1890. The discovery of the world's largest gold field in the Transvaal in ...

Indentured Indian laborers cutting sugar cane.
Indentured Indian laborers cutting sugar cane in the Natal region of eastern South Africa. The rich soils and good rainfall in Natal were ideal ...

Jan Christian Smuts (1870-1950).
Jan Christian Smuts (1870-1950), who played a central role in South African politics during much of the first half of the 20th century. Of Boer ...

Jan van Riebeeck landing in 1652.
Jan van Riebeeck landing with a group of Dutch settlers at the Cape of Good Hope in 1652. The landing of settlers at the Cape of Good Hope ...

Moshoeshoe, Basuto people's leader, in 1833.
Moshoeshoe, leader of the Basuto people, as he was pictured in 1833. One of the ablest African state-builders of the 19th century, Moshoeshoe ...

National Convention, Durban, October 12, 1908.
Participants in the National Convention at Durban, South Africa on October 12, 1908. Following upon the revival of Afrikaner political strength ...

Paul Kruger and friends in 1898.
Paul Kruger and friends in 1898. Kruger (1825-1904) came to personify Boer nationalism and resistance against British domination. As a young ...

Sorting diamonds at Kimberley.
Sorting diamonds at Kimberley. The diamond industry led to an influx of labor and capital in the years after 1867. Gradually, smaller "stakes" ...

South Africa's "mineral revolution" begins.
South Africa's "mineral revolution" began in 1867 with the discovery of diamonds near the intersection of the Orange and Vaal rivers. This early ...

Surrender of Boer commandos to British.
The surrender of Boer commandos to British forces during the Boer War. Although disarmed at the time, as this sketch indicates, the Boers ...

The "Great Trek" of the Boers.
The "Great Trek" of the Boers. Following the annexation of the Cape in 1815, the British government introduced a series of measures raising the ...

The Cape Town railway station around 1882.
The Cape Town railway station around 1882. The discovery of diamonds in 1867, followed later by the discovery of gold in 1886, contributed ...

The first Anglo-Boer war of 1881.
Boer cavalrymen and laager during the first Anglo-Boer war of 1881. With the Zulus no longer a military threat after 1879, the Boers of the ...

The Jameson Raid of 1895.
The Jameson Raid of 1895. Viewing an independent Transvaal as an obstacle to the expansion of British hegemony in southern Africa, Cecil Rhodes, ...

The opening of the first railway in South Africa.
The opening of the first railway in South Africa at Durban in 1860. The construction of railroads facilitated commercial expansion in South ...

Wool bales for export at Durban, 1930s.

Wool bales prepared for export at Durban, South Africa, in the 1930s. From the mid-19th century, South African ranchers turned increasingly to ...

Zulus defeat the British at Isandhlwana.

Zulus defeat the British at the battle of Isandhlwana, January 22, 1879, as depicted by a European artist. Encircled by colonial territories ...

Sub-Saharan Africa After 1945

"Non-Whites Only" bus notice.

Signs such as this "Non-Whites Only" bus notice have become less common since the 1970s as the South African government has removed some of the ...

A helicopter spraying a West African stream.

A helicopter spraying a West African stream to control the black fly, carrier of onchocerciasis (river blindness). Some of the most fertile ...

A Malian villager gathering firewood.

A Malian villager returning from a trip to gather firewood in 1977. Man and nature have contributed to problems of desertification in Africa. ...

A Mozambican refugee camp in 1978.

A Mozambican refugee camp in 1978 composed of people fleeing the guerrilla war in Southern Rhodesia (Zimbabwe.) Refugees have been a major ...

A young courtship in Cape Town, South Africa.

A young courtship in Cape Town, South Africa. Until the mid-1980s, interracial marriage was illegal in South Africa. Governmental reforms ...

A Zairian family at home in Kinshasa.

A Zairian family at home in Kinshasa. Life in African cities for the middle class has much the same surface features of urban life elsewhere in ...

Alexandra, a Black township outside Johannesburg.

Alexandra, a Black township on the outskirts of Johannesburg. Urban Black workers have been required by law to live in such townships, provided ...

An adult literacy class in Ethiopia, 1983.

Women attending an adult literacy class in Ethiopia, 1983. Most African states devoted a large proportion of their budgets to education after ...

Biafran officials surrender, end civil war.

Surrendering Biafran officials are shown with Gen. Yakubu Gowan (c.), President of Nigeria, January 15, 1970, ending the three-year Nigerian ...

Children suck water from tap, Makulle, Ethiopia.

Children gathering to suck drops of water from a tap at a camp for drought victims in Makulle, northern Ethiopia. Ethiopia was struck by a ...

Downtown Nairobi in the late colonial period.

Delamere Avenue in downtown Nairobi in the late colonial period. By the 1940s, Nairobi had already become a major urban center in East Africa. ...

Dr. Kwame Nkrumah (1909-1972).

Dr. Kwame Nkrumah (1909-1972), leading African nationalist and the first president of Ghana. Born in what was then the Gold Coast, Nkrumah ...

French-speaking African heads of state meet.

The conference of French-speaking African heads of state in the Ivory Coast, 1961. An important legacy of European colonial rule was a new ...

Haile Selassie and Idi Amin Dada.

Two former political leaders from eastern Africa, Haile Selassie of Ethiopia on the left and Idi Amin Dada of Uganda, shaking hands at the 10th ...

Johannesburg.

Johannesburg, center of the world's largest gold-mining industry, has become the largest engineering and manufacturing center in Africa since its ...

Julius Nyerere, former president of Tanzania.

Julius Nyerere (b. 1922), African statesman and former president of Tanzania. Like other early leaders of independent Africa, Nyerere was ...

Kenneth Kaunda, President of Zambia 1963-1991.

Kenneth Kaunda, President of Zambia 1963-1991, addressing the United Nations General Assembly in 1985. Born in then Northern Rhodesia in 1924, ...

Kwame Nkrumah, first P.M. of Ghana.

Kwame Nkrumah, first Prime Minister of the Republic of Ghana, leading Independence Day celebrations, March 6, l957. Thus began the modern era of ...

Mandela meets with de Klerk.

Following Nelson Mandela's release, he and South African President Frederick Willem de Klerk had a series of meetings in preparation for ...

Map, a 1985 political map of southern Africa.

A 1985 political map of southern ...

Mau Mau suspects held prisoner.

Mau Mau suspects held prisoner at the Thomson's Falls detention camp in 1953, with a temporary gallows in the background. The radical disruption ...

Mauretanian village deserted by drought.

Drought has been a chronic problem along the Sahel margins of the Sahara Desert in the 1970s and 1980s. This Mauretanian village was deserted by ...

Milton Obote, Ugandan leader.
Milton Obote, Ugandan leader, at a meeting of the Organization of African Unity at Addis Ababa, May 25, 1963. From the Lango region of Uganda, ...

Nelson Mandela and Walter Sisulu in prison.
Nelson Mandela and Walter Sisulu in prison, 1975 or 1976. These two leaders of the African National Congress were given life sentences for ...

New arrivals, Crossroads Squatter Camp.
New arrivals at the Crossroads Squatter Camp near Cape Town. In an effort to be with their husbands working around Cape Town, women defied ...

Nigerian WHO researcher collects water samples.
A Nigerian World Health Organization researcher collecting water samples in the fight against malaria. This parasitic disease is transmitted to ...

Patrice Lumumba.
Patrice Lumumba, nationalist leader of the Belgian Congo (now Zaire) who was assassinated in 1961. When Belgium precipitously granted the Congo ...

President Senghor of Senegal at U.N.
President Leopold Senghor of Senegal being received by Secretary-General Kurt Waldheim at the United Nations in 1978. A leading African ...

Robert Mugabe, Prime Minister of Zimbabwe.
Robert Mugabe, the Prime Minister of Zimbabwe since 1980. Along with Joshua Nkomo, Mugabe led the guerrilla struggle against the Ian Smith ...

S. African policeman checks passbooks, 1963.
A South African policeman checking passbooks at Johannesburg in 1963. With the election of the Afrikaner-dominated Nationalist Party in 1948, an ...

Sisal growing in East Africa.
Sisal growing in East Africa. Used in making twine and rope, sisal has remained a major export crop in Tanzania since the colonial era. ...

Spraying an irrigation canal.
Spraying an irrigation canal to prevent the spread of schistosomiasis. This disease, also known as bilharziasis, is caused by flatworms which ...

Squatters being evicted near Nairobi, Kenya.
Squatters being evicted in a dawn raid on a suspected Mau Mau center near Nairobi, Kenya, in 1953. Security forces used alleged support for Mau ...

Steve Biko's grave, at King Williams Town.
Steve Biko's grave, at King Williams Town. The charismatic and brilliant leader of the "Black Consciousness" movement among young South African ...

Supervisor, Green Belt Movement, Kenyan nursery.
The supervisor of the Green Belt Movement at its Kenyan nursery. To begin restoring Kenya's depleting forest resources, the Kenyan National ...

Supporters of SWAPO, Windhoek, Namibia, 1978.
Supporters of SWAPO, the South West Africa Peoples' Organization, demand a UN-supervised election at a rally in Windhoek, Namibia, 1978. ...

The Kariba Dam in Zimbabwe under construction.
An aerial view of the Kariba Dam in Zimbabwe under construction. One of a number of large-scale projects designed to exploit Africa's vast ...

The Soweto demonstrations of 1976.
The Soweto demonstrations of 1976, the largest outbreak of violence in South Africa since the Sharpeville aftermath in 1960. On June 16, Soweto ...

Two women chopping wood in the Transkei.
Two women chopping wood in the Transkei, one of the "independent" homelands (formerly called "Bantustans" or "reserves"). Created by the Native ...

U.N. Secretary-General visits drought victims.
United Nations Secretary-General Javier Perez de Cuellar (in white shirt) visiting a camp for drought victims in Korem, Ethiopia, November 1984. ...

U.N. Security Council, Rhodesia sanctions.
A United Nations Security Council meeting in 1966, discussing the imposition of mandatory sanctions against the Ian Smith regime in Southern ...

UN forces arrive in Katanga, the Congo, 1960.
A Moroccan contingent of United Nations forces arrives in the Katanga region of the Congo, August 15, 1960. When fighting broke out among rival ...

Women and children in sandstorm in camp.
Women and children in a sandstorm at a refugee camp in Jijiga, Ethiopia. Suffering caused by natural disasters was aggravated by civil war in ...

Women picking cotton in the Sudan.
Women picking cotton in the Sudan in the mid-1970s. With the expansion of large-scale irrigation schemes in the Nile Valley, more and more land ...

Zimbabwian health worker discusses nutrition.
A Zimbabwian health worker giving a nutrition demonstration to women seated in the background. Most

independent African countries have devoted ...

Histories of Australia, New Zealand and Canada

Global view, Australia, New Zealand and Canada.
A global view of Australia, New Zealand and Canada (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

Video Overview: The history of Australia.
A brief video Overview of the history of Australia, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: Australia, last of the inhabited continents ...

History of Australia

Punch cartoon , about White Australia Policy.
A cartoon in Punch , June 2, 1888, about the White Australia Policy. Responding to Labor's complaints about the importation of thousands of ...

1570 world map, without Australia.
This 1570 world map by Abraham Ortelius (1527-98) of Antwerp does not show the continent of Australia but notes, "Terra Australis nondumcognita" ...

A 1890 labor riot in Sydney.
A 1890 labor riot in Sydney. The Australian labor movement, originally influenced by English trade unionism, was strengthened and changed as a ...

A captured Turkish officer at Anzac headquarters.
A captured Turkish officer at the Anzac headquarters at Gallipoli in World War I. A first Australian expeditionary force of about 750 men had ...

A climate and population map of Australia.
A climate and population map of Australia. Although it is the world's sixth largest country, a large part of Australia consists of deserts and ...

A map of Australia and other continents.
A map of Australia and other continents. Australia is situated in a region which includes the politically, economically, and strategically ...

A relief map of Australia.
A relief map of Australia, the driest continent in the world. It is believed to have been a part of the Gondwanaland supercontinent, which ...

Aboriginal group with a didgeridoo.
An Aboriginal group with a didgeridoo (a musical instrument). At the outset of white settlement in 1788, about 500 different Aboriginal ...

Aboriginal rock painting of a kangaroo.
An Aboriginal rock painting of a kangaroo from North Queensland. Aboriginal art ranges through cave art (some of the oldest in the world), ...

Aboriginal sand painting.
Aboriginal sand painting. About half of the Aborigines live in cities and towns, but many continue to live in the remote area and prefer the ...

An Aboriginal artist.
An Aboriginal artist. The Aborigines had been very badly handled in colonial times; they were treated almost as animals and frequently were ...

An Aborigine of the Naomi tribe, ca. 1900.
An Aborigine of the Naomi tribe, ca. 1900. Aborigines, of which there are approximately 160,000 in Australia, are thought to have reached the ...

An Australian colonial homestead.
An Australian colonial homestead, n.d. The term " squatter " originally expressed contempt for people who occupied land outside of settled areas ...

Australians against Japanese in New Guinea, 1943.
Australians in action against the Japanese in Papua, New Guinea, 1943. In World War II, 22,000 Australian troops became Japanese prisoners with ...

Australia's capital, Canberra.
Australia's capital, Canberra. The constitution adopted by the federating Australian states in 1901 provided for the selection of a site which, ...

Bourke Street, Melbourne, ca. 1886.
Bourke Street, Melbourne, ca. 1886. Australian artist Tom Roberts (1856-1931) painted this picture, which was originally entitled Allegro Con ...

Broken Hill steel company at New Castle, ca. 1942.
The Broken Hill steel company at New Castle, ca. 1942. World War I needs had led to the development of heavy industries in the eastern states, ...

Captain James Cook (1728-1779).
A chance decision by this man, the British Captain James Cook (1728-1779) to return to England via the Cape of Good Hope, after having ...

Departure of Burke and Wills expedition.
The departure of the Burke and Wills expedition from Melbourne. Two of the most famous explorers in Australian history are Robert O'Hara Burke ...

Depression late 1920s and 30s affected Australia.
The worldwide depression of the late 1920s and 30s was deeply felt in Australia. Here, in 1929, unemployed men in Sydney offer themselves to the ...

Female immigrants en route to Australia.

Female immigrants (at left) en route to Australia. During the first half of the 19th century, the British confirmed their claims to the whole ...

Gold-seekers arriving at Bathurst.
Gold-seekers arriving at Bathurst. Because of the California gold rush, many Australians were leaving the colony to search for gold in America, ...

Loading sugar cane in Queensland, 1910.
Loading sugar cane in Queensland, 1910. Australia's first commercial exports were sealskins and seal-oil. Eucalyptus oil was among among the ...

Melbourne in the 1980s.
Melbourne in the 1980s. After World War II, liberal reconstruction programs were extended to provide employment and education for veterans, plus ...

Ned Kelly, famous Australian bushranger.
Ned Kelly, the famous Australian bushranger, was a down-under Billy the Kid. The term "bushranger" came from the earlier convicts who had escaped ...

Pouring molten metal, Melbourne.
Pouring molten metal, Melbourne. By 1939, Australia had changed very significantly from the largely agricultural and pastoral country which it ...

Relics of convict discipline.
Relics of convict discipline. Discipline in the colony was harsh. The average age of the First Fleet prisoners was 27 years. However, one ...

Roe's Farm, Western Australia, 1923.
Roe's Farm, Western Australia, 1923. The first wheat grown in Australia was harvested in Parramatta, N.S.W., in 1789. Australia produces about ...

Sheep washing, around 1865.
Sheep washing, around 1865. Much of the new colony's land proved disappointingly infertile, its climate for the most part harsh, and many crops ...

Sir Edmund Barton (1849-1920).
Sir Edmund Barton (1849-1920), the first prime minister of the Commonwealth of Australia, was a Protectionist. Between his term and World War ...

State Parliament, New South Wales, 1868.
The opening of the State Parliament of New South Wales in 1868. England's Australian Colonies Government Act of 1850 allowed the six colonies ...

Steam-powered drilling, Queensland, 1910.
A steam-powered well drilling rig at work in Queensland, 1910. The major reason for the underpopulation of vast areas of Australia has been the ...

Students at Wodonga, Victoria, high school, 1973.
Students at the Wodonga, Victoria, high school, 1973. The national government has encroached on state prerogatives in various ways, against ...

Swimming cattle across Murray River, 1840.
Swimming cattle across the Murray River, around 1840. The pasturelands also made beef production a good occupation. The first "overlanders" in ...

Sydney around 1880.
Sydney around 1880. When he founded Sydney in 1788, Arthur Phillip wrote of his selected site as "having the finest harbour in the world, in ...

Sydney in the 1980s.
Sydney in the 1980s. This major seaport city is one example of Australia's increased interest in world trade and international affairs. Having ...

The Lady Daly , an Australian river steamer.
The Lady Daly , an Australian river steamer. Australia's one great river system has a total length of more than 8,000 miles. Hamilton Hume and ...

The Federal Convention in Sydney, 1897-8.
The Federal Convention in Sydney, 1897-8. The problems of separatism, plus an acute depression in the early 1890s and concerns about German and ...

The Melbourne and Geelong railroad, 1855.
The Geelong terminus of the Melbourne and Geelong railroad, ca. 1855. The first railway in Australia began running between Port Elliot and ...

The Parliament, Canberra.
The Parliament, Canberra. Legislative power in Australia rests in the Parliament, consisting of the Senate and the House of Representatives. ...

The Ranger uranium mine, 1982.
The Ranger uranium mine, 1982. The opening of very substantial sources of various minerals has been a major factor in Australia's postwar ...

The Royal Flying Doctor Service in action.
The Royal Flying Doctor Service in action. This service for Outback families makes it possible for aerial ambulances to be summoned by radio on ...

The settlement at Sydney Cove.
The settlement at Sydney Cove. Originally, the British government had been suspicious of the long-term advantages of another colony. However, a ...

Unfurling the British flag at Sydney Cove.
Unfurling the British flag at Sydney Cove. Australia's beginning was different from that of the U.S. The United

States was settled by people who ...

History of Canada

A fur trader working with Indians.
A fur trader working with Indians. The settlement of Canada was based largely on the fur trade. As part of the much-sought-for French charters ...

A Royal Canadian Mounted Policeman.
A Royal Canadian Mounted Policeman. Prior to the establishment of the "Mounties," the British government and the Hudson's Bay Company had ...

An early oil well in western Canada.
An early oil well in western Canada. Canada's mineral wealth includes iron ore from Newfoundland, asbestos from Quebec, cobalt from Ontario, ...

An Eskimo family with their hide-covered igloo.
An Eskimo family with their hide-covered igloo, n.d. The original inhabitants of the Canadian wilds were the Eskimos (Inuits) and the Indian ...

Bilingualism typified by wording on library van.
Bilingualism is typified by the wording on this library van. Early Canada was settled by two distinct groups, the French and the British, each ...

Canadian troops on the way to war, 1914.
Canadian troops on the way to war, 1914. In October of that year, 33,000 Canadian soldiers sailed for Europe to fight in "the war to end all ...

Chinese at work on Canadian Pacific Railway, 1881.
Chinese at work on the Canadian Pacific Railway, 1881. The plans for a transcontinental railway to join the eastern provinces with the widely ...

Dawson, 1899.
Dawson, 1899. In 1896, at Bonanza Creek, a tributary of the Klondike River, George W. Carmack and his two Indian companions discovered gold. ...

Early view of Ottawa, the capital city of Canada.
An early view of Ottawa, the capital city of Canada. Originally a construction campsite for the Rideau Canal, Ottawa grew into a town dependent ...

Floating timber on St. John River, New Brunswick.
Floating timber on the St. John River, New Brunswick. The forests of Canada have played an important part in her historical development. At the ...

Fort Garry (Winnipeg), ca. 1860.
Fort Garry (Winnipeg), ca. 1860. In 1869-70 the government of Canada, in attempting to acquire Rupert's Land from the Hudson's Bay Company, ...

General Hull surrenders to General Brock, 1812.
General Hull surrenders to General Sir Isaac Brock, Detroit, August 16, 1812. During the Napoleonic Wars, the conflict between Great Britain and ...

Henry Hudson.
Henry Hudson, an Englishman sponsored by the United East India Company in 1609 to search for the northwest passage. His explorations took him ...

Homestead of a Rumanian family near Northbridge.
The homestead of a Rumanian family near Northbridge, Alberta. The settling of Canada's West took a great leap with the federal government's ...

Jacques Cartier (1491-1557).
Jacques Cartier (1491-1557). The three voyages Cartier made between 1534 and 1541 to the Labrador coast and the Gulf of the St. Lawrence and the ...

James Wolfe and Louis Joseph, Marquis de Montcalm.
Two famous 18th century military men, James Wolfe (1717-1759) and Louis Joseph, Marquis de Montcalm (1712-1759). The military careers of James ...

John A. Macdonald, Canada's first prime minister.
John A. Macdonald (1815-1891) Canada's first prime minister . Born in Scotland but reared in Kingston, Ontario, John A. Macdonald studied law ...

Lord Durham (1792-1840).
Lord Durham (1792-1840). John George Lambton, 1st Earl of Durham, was assigned as governor-in-chief of all the British North American provinces ...

Louis Joseph Papineau (1787-1871).
Louis Joseph Papineau (1787-1871) spent his life promoting the causes of the French-Canadians against the British government in Canada. After ...

Martyrdom of the Canadian Jesuits.
Martyrdom of the Canadian Jesuits. As part of the religious zeal of the times, missionary priests of the Society of Jesus (Jesuits) arrived in ...

Negotiation of first Indian treaty at Manitoba.
Negotiation of the first Indian treaty at Manitoba, 1871. In view of the increasing population of the western prairies which followed the ...

Prime Minister John Diefenbaker (1895-1979).
Prime Minister John Diefenbaker (1895-1979), spent most of his life in Saskatchewan. After serving in Europe in World War I, he earned a law ...

Queen Elizabeth II and President Eisenhower.

Queen Elizabeth II and U.S. President Dwight Eisenhower inaugurate the St. Lawrence Seaway, June 1959. The construction of the system of ...

Queen Elizabeth II signs the Constitution Act.
Queen Elizabeth II signs the Constitution Act. In 1931, the British Parliament passed the Statute of Westminister, which granted Canada (and ...

René Lévesque (1922-1987).
René Lévesque (1922-1987). In 1960, a "Quiet Revolution" began in Quebec. A new provincial government instituted changes in the educational ...

Samuel de Champlain (1567?-1635).
Samuel de Champlain (1567?-1635). After making several voyages to the new world around the early 1600s as a map maker, Samuel de Champlain ...

Sebastian Cabot (1482-1557).
Sebastian Cabot (1482-1557), one of the three sons of John Cabot, a Venetian navigator and merchant who went to Bristol, England to live about ...

Sir Sanford Fleming (1827-1915).
Sir Sanford Fleming (1827-1915), who developed the standard time system. Born in Scotland, he came to Canada at the age of 18 and studied ...

Sir Wilfred Laurier (1841-1919).
Sir Wilfred Laurier (1841-1919) was the first French Canadian prime minister of Canada, from 1896 to 1911. Concerned with national unity, he ...

The Acadian land.
The Acadian land. Colonists from the west of France began settling in the Port Royal (Annapolis Royal) region of Nova Scotia in 1632 in order to ...

The British House of Commons in session.
The British House of Commons in session. In order to win the loyalty of their approximately 60,000 French Canadian subjects, the British ...

The Canadian "maple leaf" flag.
The Canadian "maple leaf" flag. The second largest country in the world, Canada covers the top half of the North American continent, from the ...

The Canadian House of Commons, ca. 1930.
The Canadian House of Commons, ca. 1930. Since Confederation, Canada has been governed by one of two major political parties. In 1867, a ...

The early days of codfishing.
The early days of codfishing. Since the voyages of John Cabot in 1497, codfishing rapidly became a regular summer activity for ships from ...

The Fathers of Confederation, 1867.
The Fathers of Confederation, 1867. The British North America Act of 1867 united Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia into the ...

The inventor of the telephone.
The inventor of the telephone. In 1876, Alexander Graham Bell (1847-1922) first successfully tested the telephone in Brantford, Ontario. He was ...

The parliament buildings at Ottawa.
The parliament buildings at Ottawa. Canada chose a "parliamentary" system of government similar to that of Great Britain. There are three ...

The siege of Louisbourg in Nova Scotia, 1845.
The siege of Louisbourg in Nova Scotia, 1745. In 1612, Samuel de Champlain named this area "Havre a l'Anglois" (English Harbor) because English ...

The taking of Quebec, September 13, 1759.
The taking of Quebec, September 13, 1759. The Seven Years' War (1756-63), in which Great Britain and France were the main protagonists, was ...

Two Canadian Nobel Prize winners.
Two Canadian Nobel Prize winners. On the left, Lester Pearson (1897-1972) whose leadership while head of the Canadian delegation to the United ...

Unemployed men in Calgary, 1935.
Unemployed men in Calgary, 1935. The stock market crash of 1929 and the ensuing depression caused extremely difficult times in Canada as ...

Wheat farming in Manitoba, ca. 1900.
Wheat farming in Manitoba, ca. 1900. The farming development of Canada's prairies was dependent upon finding a variety of wheat which would ...

William Lyon Mackenzie (1795-1861).
William Lyon Mackenzie (1795-1861). Born in Scotland, Mackenzie came to Canada as a merchant in 1820 and through the use of his newspaper, the ...

World War II Canadian troops in Europe.
World War II Canadian troops in Europe. Canada initially entered World War II with the intention of limited participation, but by June 1940 it ...

History of New Zealand

A fortified Maori village.
A fortified Maori village. The Maori were a warlike people; inter-tribal warfare, sometimes accompanied by acts of cannibalism, was common. ...

A 1908 photo of the wharf at Auckland.
A 1908 photo of the wharf at Auckland. In 1909, trade union activists formed a Federation of Labour, also known as the "Red Feds," led by ...
A contemporary scene at the Wellington harbor.
A contemporary scene at the Wellington harbor. In 1949, a National Party Government was elected to office for the first time under the ...
A Maori mother and child.
A Maori mother and child, n.d. Beginning in the 1970s, a movement developed amongst the Maori people which aimed to rectify a claimed loss of ...
A relief map of New Zealand.
A relief map of New Zealand. New Zealand lies in the Pacific Ocean midway between the South Pole and the Equator, approximately 1000 miles ...
A settler's homestead, early 1900s.
A settler's homestead, early 1900s. The 1920s were a time of rapid change in New Zealand. Many ex-servicemen settled on farms and new land ...
A ship of the New Zealand navy.
A ship of the New Zealand navy. In 1951 New Zealand, Australia and the United States entered into an alliance aimed at promoting cooperation in ...
Edward Gibbon Wakefield (1796-1862).
Edward Gibbon Wakefield (1796-1862), a British adventurer who had once served a prison sentence for abduction and fraud, had visions of a New ...
In 1984 David Lange became Prime Minister.
In 1984 an Auckland lawyer and leader of the Labour Party, David Lange (b. 1942) became prime minister . His new Labour government made radical ...
Maori canoes.
Maori canoes. Polynesians first settled New Zealand nearly 1,000 years ago, although some ancestors of the modern Maori arrived during the Great ...
Maori land wars.
Maori land wars. As more settlers arrived in New Zealand, the relations between the Maori and Europeans (known by the Maori as Paheka) became ...
New Zealanders in the Middle East.
New Zealanders in the Middle East. During World War II, New Zealand sent expeditionary forces abroad in aid of the Allied war effort, and the ...
Parliament buildings at Wellington, early 1900s.
The parliament buildings at Wellington, early 1900s. In the 1930s, New Zealand suffered the effects of the worldwide depression. In 1931, ...
Richard John Seddon (1845-1906).
In 1893, Richard John Seddon (1845-1906), popularly known as King Dick, became the premier of a Liberal Party government on the death of John ...
Robert Muldoon (b. 1921).
In 1975, the National Party won a landimage election victory and Robert Muldoon (b. 1921) became prime minister . His promises of economic ...
Sir George Grey (1812-1898).
Sir George Grey. By 1864, some 13,000 colonial troops were fighting approximately 4,000 Maoris throughout North Island. Governor George Grey ...
Sir Julius Vogel (1835-1899).
Sir Julius Vogel. By 1869, low gold production, low prices for wool and wheat, and financial mismanagement in the provinces had served to bring ...
Sir Keith Holyoake (b. 1904).
Sir Keith Holyoake (b. 1904). When the Labour Party under Walter Nash (1882-1968) won the 1957 election, it inherited a severe balance of ...
Tasman's ships.
Tasman's ships. The first European to visit New Zealand was a Dutchman, Abel Janszoon Tasman. In 1642, the governor of the Dutch East Indies ...
The gold fields at Otago, 1862.
The gold fields at Otago, 1862. When it became known that some gold deposits existed in Otago Province, the Provincial Council offered a reward ...
The New Zealand Parliament in session.
The New Zealand Parliament in session. In 1972, after a long spell in Opposition, the Labour Party under the leadership of Norman Kirk ...
The plan of Russell, N.Z., 1845.
The plan of Russell, N. Z., 1845. New Zealand was first settled by American and Australian sealers and whalers in the early 1800s; they were ...
The Treaty House at Waitangi, Northland.
The Treaty House at Waitangi, Northland. The actions of Wakefield and others forced the British government to take some action concerning its new ...

History of China

A global view of China.
A global view of China (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

Video Overview: The history of China.
A brief video Overview of the history of China, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: People have lived in China for a million years. ...

Geography, Mythology, Archaeology and the Early Dynasties

A drawing of a Daoist adept sailing in a cloud.
A drawing of a Daoist adept sailing in a cloud and holding a bottle-gourd containing an elixir of immortality. Daoism questioned Confucian ...

A group of Daoist priests, photographed ca. 1910.
A group of Daoist priests, as photographed around 1910. Daoism suffered much debasement in later centuries, and tended to merge with popular ...

A map illustrating Chinese population density.
A map illustrating Chinese population density. The bulk of the Chinese people are concentrated along the great river valleys and on the north ...

A map of China with provincial-level boundaries.
A political map of the People's Republic of China with provincial-level ...

A map of the Chinese agricultural regions.
A map of the Chinese agricultural regions. The darkest colored areas, in purple, are those most cultivated, with more than 30% in cultivation. ...

A physical map of China.
A physical map of China. At a glance, a central geographical fact affecting Chinese history is obvious - a cross-hatch of intersecting sets of ...

A Shang bronze pot.
A Shang bronze pot of the ding type. In the words of sinologist John K. Fairbank, "the quality of bronze casting in the late Shang was ...

A Shang bronze vessel of the ding type.
A Shang bronze vessel of the ding type. The ding evolved from a simple cooking utensil into an elaborate artifact used in religious ...

A view of the Yuncheng basin.
A view of the Yuncheng basin, one key locale linked to the beginnings of Chinese history. This vast, arid, but fertile plain on the edge of the ...

An excavated tomb at Taosi in western Henan.
An excavated tomb at Taosi in western Henan. The Taosi site accords almost exactly with the geographical description given for the Xia capital ...

Bronze jar unearthed at ancient Qin capital.
A bronze jar unearthed at the ancient Qin capital of Yongcheng, showing scenes of archery, hunting, and feasting. The figures and animals were ...

China in the 6th century B.C.
China in the 6th century B.C. This map shows the rough configuration of the major Chinese states just prior to the extended military elimination ...

Excavation of royal tomb of the state of Qin.
Excavation in western Shaanxi province of a royal tomb of the state of Qin. Recent archaeological work at the site of Yongcheng, the Qin capital ...

Excavation of site of "legendary" Xia capital.
Excavation of a site associated with the "legendary" Xia capital, Yangcheng, at Taosi in western Henan. The dynasty, traditionally dated from ...

Fuxi (Fu-hsi), first of "Three Sovereigns."
Fuxi (Fu-hsi), the first of the mythological "Three Sovereigns," who is associated with the invention of marriage (with his sister Nugua), the ...

Guanzi, (Kuan-tzu, d. 645 B.C.).
Guanzi, (Kuan-tzu, d. 645 B.C.), the famous minister of the state of Qi (Ch'i). The end of the Western and beginning of the Eastern Zhou is ...

Hemudu bone plowheads and clay figure of a pig.
Bone plowheads (above) and the clay figure of a pig (below), of the Hemudu culture. The Hemudu people, who lived in marshy sites along rivers, ...

Hemudu neolithic settlement uncovered.
Chinese archaeologists and workers uncovering a Hemudu neolithic settlement dated ca. 5000 B.C., located along the lower reaches of the Yangzi ...

Huangdi (Huang-ti), the Yellow Emperor.
Huangdi (Huang-ti), the Yellow Emperor. The last of the Three Sovereigns, Huangdi ruled for 100 years and is considered an early founder of the ...

Illustration, Chinese system of 28 constellations.
One of the earliest known illustrations of the Chinese system of 28 constellations is found on this chest of about 400 B.C. which was discovered ...

Iron spade found at ancient Qin capital.
An iron spade found at the ancient Qin capital of Yongcheng. Iron, which had appeared much earlier in the West, became common in China during ...

Longshan/Xia period white pottery, gui type.
Longshan/Xia period white pottery of the gui type. This hollow-legged vessel, which was used to boil water in ca. 2000 B.C., was found in ...

Map of present-day China and its setting in Asia.
A political map of present-day China and its setting in Asia. In area, China is nearly 4 million square miles (10 million square kilometers), ...
Mencius, or Mengzi (Meng-tzu).
Mencius, or Mengzi (Meng-tzu), the philosopher considered second only to Confucius in the Confucian tradition. Mencius, who lived around ...
Mountains in northwestern China.
Mountains in northwestern China. The very high ranges of western interior China have a general east-west orientation, while eastern China has ...
Pan Gu (P'an-ku), from Chinese mythology.
Pan Gu (P'an-ku), the creator of the universe in Chinese mythology. Born from the egg of Chaos simultaneously with the initial separation of ...
Pottery of the Longshan culture.
Pottery of the Longshan culture. The late- neolithic Longshan culture is now considered to have overlapped the first two dynasties, the Xia and ...
Reconstruction of Lantian (Lan-t'ien) Man's skull.
A reconstruction of Lantian (Lan-t'ien) Man's skull. The remains of the fully human Homo erectus (an intermediate form of hominid found most ...
Shang bronze artisanship.
A Shang bronze ceremonial vessel in the form of an owl. [The videodisc has a different ...
Shang oracle bone inscription.
A Shang oracle bone inscription reporting a lunar eclipse (left); and a reconstruction of another recording a nova, both second millennium B.C. ...
Shennong plowing, a Han dynasty stone rubbing.
Shennong plowing, a Han dynasty stone rubbing. Shennong (Shen-nung), the Divine Farmer (also known as Yan Di, or Fire Emperor), was the second ...
Site of tomb of Confucius at Qufu (Ch'n-fu).
The traditional site of the tomb of Confucius at Qufu (Ch'n-fu), in Shandong province. Confucius considered it his task to restore the way (dao ...
Stones inscribed with reputed Confucius' writings.
Stones inscribed with the reputed writings of Confucius, at the Temple of Confucius, Beijing. The only reliable source of Confucius's teachings ...
Sunzi. (Sun Tzu, or Sun Wu, ca. 4th c. B. C.).
Sunzi (Sun Tzu, or Sun Wu, ca. 4th century B.C.), author of the Sunzi Bingfa (The Art of War) , a remarkable treatise which distilled what the ...
The Daoist philosopher Zhuangzi (Chuang-tzu).
The Daoist philosopher Zhuangzi (Chuang-tzu). Zhuangzi, who lived in the 3rd century B.C., is the only truly patriarchal figure in Daoism ...
The philosopher Laozi (Lao-tzu).
The philosopher Laozi (Lao-tzu). Laozi is the chief figure associated with early Daoism (Taoism), the other major philosophy emerging in the ...
The Temple of Heaven in Beijing.
The Temple of Heaven in Beijing, the site where sacrificial rituals dating from the Zhou period were conducted under imperial auspices even into ...
Tortoise shell with incised pictographs.
A tortoise shell with incised pictographs , of the Shang period. The Shang, traditionally dated 1776-1122 or 1523-1027 B.C., has been proven by ...
Yao, the penultimate of legendary Five Emperors.
Yao, the penultimate of the legendary Five Emperors, and, along with Shun and Yu, one of the Three Model Emperors associated with an early ...
Yu (Yn) the Great, legendary founder Xia dynasty.
Yu (Yn) the Great, the legendary founder of the Xia (Hsia) dynasty. Yu is best known for his organization of massive dike-building and ...
Zhou Gong, or the Duke of Zhou.
Zhou Gong, or the Duke of Zhou. Zhou Wu Wang ("Military King") died shortly after he had avenged his father by destroying the Shang. His ...
Zhou Wen Wang, father first leader, Zhou dynasty.
Zhou Wen Wang, the father of Wu Wang, first sovereign of the Zhou dynasty. The Zhou people, apparently a semi-nomadic clan from northwest of the ...

The Qin, Han and Post-Han Periods

yubi (round piece of jade), from Western Han.
A yubi or "round piece of jade," dating from the Western Han. The yubi , probably the most ancient type of jade ritual object, found as far ...
A bronze of the Eastern Han period.
A bronze of the Eastern Han period. This vivid galloping horse was found at an Eastern Han tomb excavated in Gansu province. It is one of a set ...
A large statue of the Buddha with attendants.
A large statue of the Buddha with attendants, from the Longmen rock temple in Henan province. These caves were first cut in 494 A.D., under the ...

A map of the Three Kingdoms (Sanguo) period.
A map of the Three Kingdoms (Sanguo) period, 184- or 220-280 A.D. By 189 A.D., two large-scale Daoist-inspired rebellions had broken out which ...
A sample of the calligraphy of Wang Xizhi.
A sample of the calligraphy of Wang Xizhi (Wang Hsi-chih, ca. 303-379), who is considered China's greatest calligrapher. Calligraphy for the ...
Artifacts recovered from Han imperial tomb.
Artifacts recovered from imperial tomb grounds of the Han. The Mao Tomb Garden, located in the Weibei highlands of Shaanxi province, holds the ...
Bamboo writing tablets, Han period.
Bamboo writing tablets, Han period. Chinese books evolved directly from such tablets connected by thongs and used like modern paged books, and ...
Ban Gu (Pan Ku, d. 92 A.D.).
Ban Gu (Pan Ku, d. 92 A.D.) and Ban Chao (Pan Ch'ao, 31-101 A.D.), brothers, and eminent figures of the Eastern Han. Ban Gu was the chief ...
Bronze peacock from the Western Han.
This bronze peacock from the Western Han was probably made by the culturally advanced minority people of Dian, whose kingdom in the area of ...
Daoist and alchemist Tao Hengjing.
Daoist and alchemist Tao Hengjing (T'ao Heng-ching, 451-536 A.D.) who served as an informal advisor to emperors of the Southern Liang dynasty ...
Daoist stretching exercise from Ming period book.
A Daoist stretching exercise from a Ming period book. Daoist exploration of "internal alchemy" during the post-Han period centered upon further ...
Daoist traveler Xu Fu (Hsn Fu).
Daoist traveler Xu Fu (Hsn Fu). According to Chinese records, this Daoist adept was sent on an ocean voyage by Qin Shi Huangdi to search for an ...
Detail of terracotta horse, from Western Han tomb.
Detail of a terracotta horse, unearthed from a Western Han tomb. In l984 Chinese archaeologists discovered about 2,500 terracotta statues ...
Emperor Jin Wudi (Chin Wu-ti).
Emperor Jin Wudi (Chin Wu-ti), founder of the short-lived (265-316 A.D.) Western Jin dynasty. Jin Wudi was a Wei general who seized the throne ...
Guanyu (Kuan Yn, d. 219 A.D.).
Guanyu (Kuan Yn, d. 219 A.D.), the ferocious warrior of Shu, who gradually was apotheosized into Guandi (Kuan-ti), China's god of war. In this ...
Han Confucianist Dong Zhongshu (Tung Chung-shu).
The Han Confucianist Dong Zhongshu (Tung Chung-shu). During the Han, Confucianism became recognized as the state orthodoxy, but it was a highly ...
Han Guang Wudi (Kuang Wu-ti) emperor of Later Han.
Han Guang Wudi (Kuang Wu-ti), founding emperor of the Eastern, or Later, Han who reigned from 25-57 A.D. Poor economic conditions and famine, ...
Han Wudi (Han Wu-ti), the "Martial Emperor."
Han Wudi (Han Wu-ti), the "Martial Emperor." During his long reign, from 141 to 87 B.C., the boundaries and influence of the Chinese empire were ...
Infamous "burning of books & burying of scholars.
The infamous "burning of the books and burying of the scholars," by order of Qin Shi Huangdi. Qin rulers considered the historical records and ...
Liu Bang (Liu Pang), founder of the Han dynasty.
Liu Bang (Liu Pang), founder of the Han dynasty. Within a year of the death of Qin Shi Huangdi in 210 B.C., rebellions had broken out throughout ...
Map of expanding Chinese borders in Han dynasty.
A map illustrating the expansion of the Chinese borders during the Han dynasty. The Chinese empire during this period came to include, with the ...
Mechanism of Zhang Heng's seismograph.
An attempted reconstruction of the mechanism of Zhang Heng's seismograph, as based on a detailed passage from the Hou Han Shu (History of the ...
Mounted aristocrats in procession.
Mounted aristocrats in procession, a segment of one of a number of frescoes recently discovered in the tomb of a Northern Qi ruler in Shanxi ...
One step in making silk is sorting silk cocoons.
One of the multiple steps in the making of silk, the sorting of silk cocoons, is illustrated in this Ming period woodcut. Sericulture was known ...
Qin Shi Huangdi (Ch'in Shih Huang-ti).
Qin Shi Huangdi (Ch'in Shih Huang-ti), the "First Emperor," whose state of Qin managed to unify China in 221 B.C. Qin strength derived from its ...
Remains uncovered at tomb of imperial relative.
The remains of chariots and horses uncovered at the tomb of an imperial relative near Dabaotai village southwest of Beijing. This tomb, thought ...
Sima Qian (Ssu-ma Ch'ien, born ca. 145 B.C.).

Sima Qian (Ssu-ma Ch'ien, born ca. 145 B.C.), author of the Shiji or Historical Records , the first of China's 26 Standard, or Dynastic, ...

Song dynasty painting of scholar under willow.

This anonymous Song dynasty painting of a scholar under a willow tree is thought to represent the famed nature poet Tao Yuanming (T'ao Ynan-ming, ...

Statue of Buddha from the Yungang rock temple.

A large statue of the Buddha from the Yungang (Ynn-kang) rock temple at Datong in Shanxi province. The Yungang complex, of 5th century A.D. ...

Statue of the Buddha from the Northern Wei period.

This statue of the Buddha, sculpted during the Northern Wei period, 386-534 A.D., is the largest of some 1,000 Buddhist figures found at Mt. Xumi ...

Terracotta figure of armor-clad warrior.

A terracotta figure of an armor-clad warrior from the tomb of Qin Shi ...

Terracotta warriors from tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi.

Terracotta warriors and horses from the tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi. Spectacular finds of thousands of burial objects at the First Emperor's ...

The Great Wall of China.

The Great Wall of China. To secure his northern border against pastoral peoples of the steppe, Qin Shi Huangdi set a huge force of laborers to ...

Traditional paper-making in China.

Traditional paper-making in China. This woodcut depicts a preparatory step of cooking bamboo stems in a mixture of water and lime. ...

Woodcut of woman winding strands of silk.

A companion woodcut shows a woman winding strands of silk from the cocoons on a reel. The making of silk was extremely labor-intensive: the ...

Zhang Heng (Chang Heng), (78-139 A.D.).

Zhang Heng (Chang Heng), a brilliant mathematician, astronomer, and geographer of the Eastern Han. Zhang, who lived from 78-139 A.D., is ...

Zhuge Liang Cao Cao, and Sun Quan.

Heroes of the Three Kingdoms period, Zhuge Liang (Chu-ko Liang), Cao Cao, and Sun Quan (Sun Ch'uan). These men figure largely in the still ...

The Qing Period

Landscape by Wang Hui (1632-1717).

Summer Mountains and Misty Rain, by Wang Hui, 1632-1717. Wang Hui, the most prolific and successful of the Four Wangs, excelled at capturing ...

Mandarin with Opium Pipe .

Mandarin with Opium Pipe , a mid-19th century European image. Opium had been introduced to China by the Arabs and Turks by the 8th century, but ...

The Disembarkation , part of a scroll.

The Disembarkation , part of a scroll depicting scenes from an official tour of the Kangxi emperor. The diligent emperor made repeated tours of ...

19th c. etching of French consulate in Tianjin.

A 19th century etching of the French consulate in Tianjin (Tientsin). Tianjin was the site of a major anti-foreign and anti-Christian riot in ...

19th c. Protestant-sponsored "industrial school."

A late 19th century Protestant-sponsored "industrial school," designed to teach Chinese youths a practical trade. Most Protestant missionaries, ...

A "Military mandarin."

A "military mandarin," as depicted in The Illustrated London News of July 9, l842. The poor performance of Chinese military forces in the ...

A Chinese opium den in Canton, around 1900.

A Chinese opium den in Canton, around 1900. The opium trade continued after the Opium War, with the implicit, if reluctant, approval of Chinese ...

A Chinese war junk of the "old style," 1840s.

A Chinese war junk of the "old style," 1840s. Chinese naval vessels were small, around 300 tons burden and 100 feet in length, at a time when ...

A Chinese woman with bound feet.

A Chinese woman with bound feet. The exact origins of footbinding are obscure - it may have begun among dancers at the imperial court - but by ...

A landscape by Wang Yuanqi (1642-1715).

Autumn Color on Mount Hua, by Wang Yuanqi (Wang Ynan-ch'i, 1642-1715). The youngest of the Four Wangs, he held a succession of high official ...

A map of the Qing empire.

A map of the Qing empire showing Chinese territories (pink), tribute states (orange), and general sphere of influence (within dotted line) in the ...

A mosque in Turfan, Xinjiang.

A mosque in Turfan, Xinjiang. After Zuo Zongtang's Central Asian campaign and the diplomatic success of the 1881 Treaty of St. Petersburg, ...

A painting by Zhu Da (Chu Ta, 1626-1705).

A landscape by Zhu Da (Chu Ta, 1626-1705), of the Ching dynasty. A distant descendant of the Ming founder Zhu Yuanzhang, Zhu Da became a ...

A replica of the Potala palace.

A replica of the Potala palace built by the Qing emperors at their summer residence at Rehe, north of Beijing. In order to facilitate their ...

A scene at one of China's first modern arsenals.

A scene at one of China's first modern arsenals, established by Li Hongzhang at Nanjing in 1867. China's self-strengthening movement, especially ...

A view of Macao in the early 1800s.

A view of Macao in the early 1800s. Portuguese adventurers reached the southeast coast of China by 1514 and had sent emissaries to Beijing in ...

A view of Shanghai in the mid-19th century.

A view of Shanghai in the mid-19th century. One of the five treaty ports established by the 1842 Treaty of Nanjing, Shanghai grew rapidly, in ...

A view of the Potala palace-monastery.

A view of the Potala palace-monastery, the traditional residence of the Dalai Lama in Lhasa, Tibet. Control of Tibet, and of its leader the ...

Agricultural laborer, photographed early 1900s.

An agricultural laborer, photographed in the early 1900s. Population pressure had been a root cause of the precarious and worsening economic ...

American consulate at port of Shanghai; 1900's.

The American consulate at the port of Shanghai, mid-19th century. By 1863 Shanghai's unique city government exerted control over the Shanghai ...

American Protestant missionaries in Fuzhou, 1890.

American Protestant missionaries in Fuzhou, around 1890. Predominantly British and American, and part of an upsurge of worldwide missionary ...

American, Japanese, and British storming Beijing.

A Japanese print depicting American, Japanese, and British troops storming Beijing on August 14, 1900. The Allied forces left Tianjin on August ...

Anson Burlingame (1820-70).

Anson Burlingame (1820-70), the first American minister to reside in Beijing (1861-67), was a champion along with British minister Frederick ...

Arrow War: British naval brigade lands Canton.

A British naval brigade lands at Canton during an early phase of the Arrow War. The underlying causes of the Arrow War of 1856-60 (also called ...

Beijing Observatory with Qing period instruments.

The Beijing Observatory with its Qing period instruments. This observatory, located on a city wall watchtower in the southeast corner of ...

British marines & seamen come under Chinese fire.

British marines and seamen come under Chinese fire from the Dagu forts guarding the Beihe river approach to Beijing, June 25, 1859. For the ...

British military units supporting Chinese forces.

British military units, in support of Chinese imperial forces, using field pieces to breach the walls of a Taiping-held city. Even before the ...

British navy attacking Chinese fortifications.

A British naval force attacking Chinese fortifications at Dinghai (Ting-hai) on the Chusan (Zhoushan) Islands, in the Opium War. Fighting broke ...

British ships destroy Chinese pirate squadron.

British ships destroy a pirate squadron off the Chinese coast in September, 1849. When the Chinese government was unable to suppress chronic ...

British warship Nemesis destroying war junk.

The British warship Nemesis destroying Chinese war junks in waters near Canton, January 7, 1841. The relatively small and mobile British force ...

Bronze celestial sphere at Beijing Observatory.

The bronze celestial sphere at the Beijing Observatory. This was the most important instrument in the Qing observatory. It was made according ...

Buddhist statue of Guanyin (Avalokitésvara).

Buddhist statue of Guanyin (Avalokitésvara) located in the "Widespread Calm Temple" (also known as the "Temple of the Great Buddha," referring to ...

Caleb Cushing (1800-79).

Caleb Cushing (1800-79), the American diplomat who negotiated the first Sino-American treaty, the 1844 Treaty of Wangxia (Wanghsia). The 1842 ...

Catholic cathedral in Shanghai, around 1890.

The Catholic cathedral in Shanghai, as photographed around 1890. The relative success of Catholic proselytizing efforts compared to their ...

Charles G. "Chinese" Gordon (1833-85).

Charles G. "Chinese" Gordon (1833-85), who succeeded Frederick Ward as commander of the Ever Victorious Army. Under the capable Gordon, who was ...

China's first railroad, Shanghai-Wusong line.

China's first railroad, the very short Shanghai-Wusong line, opened by foreigners in 1876. This unauthorized

railroad was purchased the next ...

Chinese & British meet about Chuanbi Convention.
Chinese and British officials meet and agree upon the Chuanbi (Ch'uan-pi) Convention, January 20, l841. In late 1840, the British expeditionary ...

Chinese & British discuss British access, Canton.
Chinese and British officials conferring over the problem of British access to Canton, April 1847. The most troublesome issue in Sino-British ...

Chinese Christian refugees during Boxer Uprising.
Chinese Christian refugees at Tianjin during the Boxer Uprising of 1900. Strong anti-foreign and anti-Christian sentiment helped to fire the ...

Chinese tea merchants.
Chinese tea merchants. After the Treaty of Nanjing (1842) the center of China's export trade in tea shifted to Shanghai, contributing to ...

Chinese unloading opium from a British ship.
Chinese unloading opium from a British ship. By the 1820s and 1830s the opium trade, already a major social problem and a source of official ...

Chinese warships of Beiyang fleet in Weihaiwei.
Chinese warships of the Beiyang (Northern Ocean) fleet at anchor in Weihaiwei, just before the fleet was devastated in the Sino-Japanese war of ...

Detail from a painting by Shitao.
Detail from A View of Bamboo in Twelve Panels, by Shitao (Shih-t'ao, also known as Daoji (Tao-chi), 1641-ca. 1710). Like Zhu Da, Shitao was a ...

Detail of a map of Asia published in 1744.
Detail of a map of Asia published in 1744 by Pierre van den Aa at Leiden, Netherlands, reflective of European geographical knowledge at that ...

East India Company's opium factory stacking room.
Some idea of the huge volume of opium imported to China is conveyed by this picture of the stacking room in the East India Company's opium ...

East Room, Yangxin Hall, Beijing's Forbidden City.
The East Room of the Yangxin Hall in Beijing's Forbidden City, used by the empress dowager Cixi to supervise the administration of state affairs ...

Empress dowager Cixi, as photographed ca. 1903.
The empress dowager Cixi, as photographed around 1903. Cixi was traumatized by the Boxer Uprising, and starting in 1901 she endorsed a new ...

Engraving showing Dutch ships in harbor at Canton.
An engraving from around 1669 showing Dutch ships in the harbor at Canton (Guangzhou). The Dutch had been barred from Canton by the Portuguese ...

Factories of British East India Company in Canton.
Factories of the British East India Company in Canton, around 1812. The first British "factory," the term for a trading post or business ...

Foreign-drilled Chinese infantry, around 1890.
Foreign-drilled Chinese infantry, around 1890. During Li Hongzhang's tenure as governor-general of Zhili (Chihli) province from 1870-95, his ...

Frederick T. Ward (1831-62).
Frederick T. Ward (1831-62), the American adventurer and commander of the anti-Taiping "Ever Victorious Army." Early foreign sympathy toward the ...

French forces attack Chinese stronghold, Langson.
French forces under General Negrier attacking the Chinese stronghold at Langson in Annam (northern Vietnam) during the Sino-French war of ...

French soldiers withdrawing from Beijing, 1860.
French soldiers withdrawing from Beijing, November, 1860. The French government used the pretext of the 1856 execution of a missionary in ...

German infantry crossing Beihe river in Tianjin.
German infantry crossing the Beihe river in Tianjin, 1900. The Germans, whose seizure of Jiaozhou and expansion in Shandong had much to do with ...

Gu Yanwu (Ku Yen-wu, 1613-1682).
Gu Yanwu (Ku Yen-wu, 1613-1682), an eminent scholar of the early Qing period and the leading exponent of the new and vigorous movement known as ...

Guo Songdao (Kuo Sung-tao, 1818-91).
Guo Songdao (Kuo Sung-tao, 1818-91), the scholar-official and advocate of self-strengthening who served as China's first minister to Great ...

Hong Kong in the 1840s.
Hong Kong in the 1840s. The entire British trading community in Canton had left for Macao in May 1839, rather than accept Commissioner Lin ...

Hong Xiuquan (Hung Hsiu-ch'nan, 1814-64).
Hong Xiuquan (Hung Hsiu-ch'nan, 1814-64), the charismatic, yet in the view of many who have studied his life, mentally unbalanced founder of the ...

Interior of classroom at Beijing's University.
A rare photo of the interior of a classroom at Beijing's Imperial University, around 1902. Late Qing educational reforms centered upon temporary ...

Interior of north Dagu fort, with dead Chinese.
The interior of the north Dagu fort, with dead Chinese soldiers, as photographed after the Allied capture of the fort in August, 1860. Following ...
Japanese gunners bombard the Russian naval base.
Japanese gunners bombard the Russian naval base at Port Arthur during the Russo-Japanese War of 1904-5. The stunning Japanese victory over a ...
Japanese print - scene from Japan's naval victory.
A Japanese print showing a scene from Japan's naval victory over the Beiyang fleet in September, 1894, off the Yalu River in the Yellow Sea. The ...
Japanese rejoice over dispatching troops to China.
Japanese rejoicing over the dispatch of their troops to China in 1900. After the chancellor of the Japanese legation was killed, Japan had a ...
Jesuit Johannes Adam Schall von Bell (1591-1666).
The German Jesuit Johannes Adam Schall von Bell (1591-1666). Schall, a skilled astronomer, came to China in 1622, and after correctly predicting ...
Kang Youwei (K'ang Yu-wei, 1858-1927).
Kang Youwei (K'ang Yu-wei, 1858-1927), visionary intellectual and chief architect of the abortive "hundred-day reform" movement of 1898. Kang ...
Kangxi emperor visiting Jesuit church in Beijing.
The Kangxi emperor visiting a Jesuit church in Beijing, as depicted in a 19th century European engraving. Kangxi studied Western mathematics and ...
Landscape by Wang Shimin (1592-1680).
Landscape in the Style of Huang Gong-wang, by Wang Shimin (Wang Shih-min, 1592-1680). In the early Qing period, an "orthodox" group of ...
Li Hongzhang (Li Hung-chang, 1823-1901).
Li Hongzhang (Li Hung-chang, 1823-1901), the statesman and modernizer, sometimes called the "Bismarck of China," who from 1870-95 served as the ...
Li Hongzhang as photographed in his yamen.
Li Hongzhang as photographed in his yamen at Tianjin, September, 1900. Li had managed to survive politically despite the blame he suffered for ...
Liang Qichao (Liang Ch'i-ch'ao, 1873-1939).
Liang Qichao (Liang Ch'i-ch'ao, 1873-1939), intellectual, journalist, political philosopher, and staunch advocate of constitutional reform, who ...
Lin Zexu (Lin Tse-hsn, 1785-1850).
Lin Zexu (Lin Tse-hsn, 1785-1850) supervising the destruction of opium near Canton. Chinese officials in the 1830s vigorously debated whether to ...
Loading tea for export from China.
Loading tea for export from China. After the use of tea began to spread during the Tang dynasty, the internal and external tea trade became an ...
Manchu banner forces in action against Zunghars.
Manchu banner forces in action against the Zunghars. To celebrate the Qing conquest of Chinese Turkestan, the Qianlong emperor had some sixteen ...
Map outlining areas of mid-19th c. rebellions.
Map outlining areas of mid-19th century rebellions. From the 1850s through the 1870s much of the Chinese empire was wracked by a series of ...
Map, European "scramble for concessions" in China.
A map illustrating the European "scramble for concessions" in China at the close of the century. The small dots represent original treaty ports, ...
Members of 9th U.S. Infantry in Forbidden City.
Members of the 9th U.S. Infantry encamped in the Forbidden City. The United States did not have territorial interests at stake in China, but ...
Ming loyalist Zheng Chenggong (1624-62).
Ming loyalist Zheng Chenggong (Cheng Ch'eng-kung, 1624-62), known in the West as Koxinga. A half-Chinese, half-Japanese born to a family of ...
Nature themes inspired painting.
A hanging scroll painting of birds and flowers by the artist Wang Yuan, of the Yuan dynasty. This artist was famous for his renderings of the ...
Nurhaci (1559-1626), Ruzhen chieftain.
Nurhaci (1559-1626), the energetic Ruzhen (or Manchu) chieftain who laid the foundations for the establishment of the Qing dynasty. By his ...
Part of the foreign community of Fuzhou in 1890.
Part of the foreign community of Fuzhou (Foochow), as photographed in 1890. As Shanghai and other treaty ports developed into modern cities, ...
Pekinese pug dogs.
Pekinese pug dogs. Among the prodigious amount of plunder carted away from the palace of Yuan Ming Yuan by British and French troops in 1860 ...
Photographs showing trial and execution of Boxers.
Photographs described as showing the trial and execution of Boxers . Qing prestige and China's international position plummeted due to the ...
Porcelain perfumer, design in polychrome enamels.

A porcelain perfumer with open-work design in polychrome enamels, Kangxi period. Qing period ceramics have been said to "show a striving for ...

Portraits of Jiaqing and Daoguang emperors.
Portraits of the Jiaqing (left) and Daoguang (right) emperors. The Qianlong emperor (1736-95) is generally considered the last great Qing ...

Prince Gong (Kung 1832-98).
Prince Gong (Kung; also known as Yixin (I-hsin), 1832-98), son of the Daoguang emperor and younger brother of the Xianfeng emperor, who rose to ...

Prince Qing (Ch'ing 1836-1916).
Prince Qing (Ch'ing; also known as Yikuang (I-k'uang), 1836-1916), whose term in power epitomized the dominance of Manchu noblemen at the expense ...

Puyi (P'u-i, 1906-67) last Manchu emperor.
Puyi (P'u-i, 1906-67), the last Manchu emperor, as photographed (right) in February, 1909, when the three-year old had just begun his brief reign ...

Qianlong (Ch'ien-lung) emperor (1711-99).
The Qianlong (Ch'ien-lung) emperor (1711-99, reigned 1736-96), who presided over one of the most glorious periods in Chinese imperial history. ...

Qianlong emperor arrives at 1760 celebration.
The Qianlong emperor arrives at a 1760 celebration in Rehe of a Qing military victory, the suppression of a Muslim uprising in Chinese Turkestan ...

Qing naval force invades Taiwan to down rebellion.
A Qing naval force invades Taiwan to put down a Triad Society rebellion in 1787. The very able but vainglorious Qianlong emperor praised his own ...

Qingdao (Tsingtao) early 1900s, under Germany.
Qingdao (Tsingtao), as photographed in the early 1900s when it was under German control. After the so-called Triple Intervention of 1895, in ...

Qingdao in the 1980s.
Qingdao in the 1980s. The city retained its early 20th century European architectural flavor even after the Germans were expelled and replaced ...

Railroad construction in China, early 20th c..
Railroad construction in China in the early 20th century. The largely foreign-controlled boom in railway construction of the late 19th century ...

Rendition of ships of Allied expeditionary forces.
A fanciful rendition of the massed ships of the Allied expeditionary forces, over 70 in all, offshore near Tianjin. During the spring and early ...

Russian Cossacks outside American barracks.
Russian Cossack troops pause outside the American barracks in Tianjin. The Russians contributed some 4,800 troops to the international force ...

Russian military post on the border of China 1871.
A Russian military post on the border of China, around 1871. Two decades of Russian advance in the Amur River region were capped by the 1860 ...

Russian train at Mukden - steamer headed Shanghai.
The railroad and the steamship, symbols and instruments of foreign economic penetration in China. Both, for example, were important to the ...

Scene depicts initial Taiping uprising in Jintian.
A scene depicting the initial Taiping uprising in Jintian (Chin-t'ien), Guangxi province. In 1851, after Hong Xiuquan had proclaimed himself ...

Sculptured Buddhist figures in Tibet.
Sculptured Buddhist figures on Mount Yaowang in Tibet. Buddhism had reached Tibet by at least the 7th century A.D. and by the 12th century ...

Signing of Boxer Protocol on September 7, 1901.
The signing of the Boxer Protocol on September 7, 1901. The protocol, which emerged after much argument among the Allies who were working at ...

Signing of the Treaty of Tianjin, June 6, 1858.
The signing of the Treaty of Tianjin, June 6, 1858. After his China policy was vindicated in a national election, British Prime Minister ...

Small 19th century Catholic mission near Shanghai.
A small 19th century Catholic mission near Shanghai. Although Catholicism had been proscribed in China from 1724 to 1846, there were as many as ...

Steamboat landing Canton, photographed ca. 1900.
A steamboat landing at Canton, photographed around 1900. The steamboat, as opposed to the railroad, was better received and had a more immediate ...

Taiping forces defeat the Manchu imperial cavalry.
Taiping forces defeat the Manchu imperial cavalry at a battle in Hunan province, 1852. Taiping soldiers held an Islamic-type belief that if ...

Taiping rebels.
Taiping rebels, as depicted in an etching from The Illustrated London News , March 14, 1857. Taiping institutions were quite radical in the ...

Teaching deaf child at private missionary school.
Teaching a deaf child at a private missionary school in Yantai (Chefoo), ca. 1900. By the turn of the century,

the majority of Protestant ...

The "Nanmu Hall."

The "Nanmu Hall," built in 1703 during Kangxi's reign as a throne room where the emperor gave audiences during his summer stay at Rehe (Jehol; ...

The bombardment of Canton.

The bombardment of Canton. In late February 1841, after both governments had repudiated the Chuanbi Convention, the war entered a new phase as ...

The bound foot of a Chinese woman.

The bound foot of a Chinese woman. Although there were sporadic and isolated Chinese protests against footbinding, it was foreign missionaries, ...

The British capture of Amoy on August 26, 1841.

The British capture of Amoy on August 26, 1841. Sir Henry Pottinger (1789-1856) replaced Charles Elliot in August, l841 as plenipotentiary ...

The cathedral in Macao, as seen in 1797 engraving.

The cathedral in Macao, as seen in a 1797 engraving. Macao was the missionary center and gateway to China for a number of religious orders. ...

The empress dowager Cixi (Tz'u-hsi, 1835-1908).

The empress dowager Cixi (Tz'u-hsi, 1835-1908), the de facto ruler of China for much of the period from 1861 to 1908. A concubine of the ...

The Flemish Jesuit Ferdinand Verbiest (1623-88).

The Flemish Jesuit Ferdinand Verbiest (1623-88). An eminent mathematician and astronomer who earned the respect and friendship of his sometime ...

The Guangxu (Kuang-hsn) emperor (reign 1875-1908)

The Guangxu (Kuang-hsn) emperor, who reigned from 1875-1908 while his aunt, the empress dowager Cixi, exercised actual rule. When the teenaged ...

The Kangxi (K'ang-hsi) emperor (1654-1722).

The Kangxi (K'ang-hsi) emperor (1654-1722), under whose 61-year reign the Qing dynasty was firmly established, was one of the greatest rulers in ...

The Porta de Cero.

The Porta de Cero, the boundary between Portuguese Macao and the Chinese mainland, ca. 1900. The Portuguese paid the Chinese customs dues on ...

The Tongzhi (T'ung-chih) emperor (reign 1862-74).

The Tongzhi (T'ung-chih) emperor, whose reign from 1862 to 1874 covered a period of relative dynastic revival referred to as the "Tongzhi ...

The Xianfeng (Hsien-feng) emperor (reign 1850-61).

The Xianfeng (Hsien-feng) emperor, whose reign from 1850-61 was disrupted by both internal rebellion and foreign invasion. Xianfeng, who ...

Train on Guangzhou-Hankou (Canton-Hankow) line.

A train on the Guangzhou-Hankou (Canton-Hankow) line. This line was part of the Huguang railway system designed to connect Guangdong, Hunan, ...

Treaty of Nanjing signing aboard Cornwallis .

The signing of the Treaty of Nanjing aboard the Cornwallis on August 29, l842, ending the Opium War. The treaty provided for an indemnity of ...

U.S. Secretary of State John Hay (1838-1905).

U.S. Secretary of State John Hay (1838-1905), who issued the "Open Door" notes of 1899 and 1900. The first note was inspired by U.S. concern ...

Vladivostok in the early 1900s.

Vladivostok in the early 1900s. Vladivostok, or "Rule of the East," was founded in 1860, the same year that the Maritime Province between the ...

Weighing of a payment of Chinese indemnity.

British and Chinese officials weighing a payment of the Chinese indemnity for the Arrow War. The 1858 Treaty of Tianjin set an indemnity of 4 ...

Zeng Guofan (Tseng Kuo-fan, 1811-72).

Zeng Guofan (Tseng Kuo-fan, 1811-72), whose creation and leadership of the new irregular "Hunan army" was instrumental in defeating the Taipings. ...

Zhang Zhidong (Chang Chih-tung, 1837-1909).

Zhang Zhidong (Chang Chih-tung, 1837-1909), scholar-official and a leading modernizer of the late 19th century. Zhang was for much of his career ...

Zuo Zongtang (Tso Tsung-t'ang, 1812-85).

Zuo Zongtang (Tso Tsung-t'ang, 1812-85), the prominent scholar-administrator-general. Zuo, like Li Hongzhang, was a protege of Zeng Guofan who ...

The Republican Period and the People's Republic

17th century illustration of Irrigation device.

For comparison, a 17th century illustration of a square-pallet irrigation device, similar to the contemporary device shown in image T ...

A blurry photo of landlords awaiting trial, 1952.

A blurry photo of landlords awaiting trial, 1952. A major agrarian reform program, which began in CCP-controlled areas in 1947 and lasted ...

A Chinese satellite- and ICBM-tracking ship.

A Chinese satellite- and ICBM-tracking ship on a voyage in equatorial ...

A Japanese armored train in Mukden, 1931.

A Japanese armored train in Mukden, 1931. Japanese expansionists after 1895 had increasingly coveted Manchuria and Inner Mongolia, especially ...

A map of Taiwan and the Taiwan Strait area.

A map of Taiwan and the Taiwan Strait area. Taiwan was colonized by Chinese, mainly from Fujian province, between the mid-17th and mid-19th ...

A painting depicting Mao Zedong with Red Guards.

A painting depicting Mao Zedong (with Lin Biao at his shoulder) surrounded by enthusiastic Red Guards holding up copies of the ubiquitous "little ...

Backyard furnaces.

A set of "backyard furnaces," which came to symbolize the excesses of the Great Leap Forward (GLF) launched in 1958. The GLF was a massive ...

Bodies of Communists sympathizers in Canton.

A street in Canton strewn with the bodies of Communists and Communist sympathizers, victims of a Nationalist firing squad, 1927. The uneasy ...

Bodies outside bomb shelter after Japanese attack.

Bodies of men, women, and children stacked and tangled outside a bomb shelter in Shanghai after a night raid by Japanese bombers during which ...

Canton's bustling waterfront photographed ca.1920.

Canton's bustling waterfront as photographed around 1920. In the late Qing and Republican periods, treaty port Canton developed into an urban ...

Career vicissitudes of philosopher Feng Youlan.

The career vicissitudes of the eminent philosopher Feng Youlan (Feng Yu-lan, b. 1895; seated, center, in this undated photograph) typified the ...

Cartoon, Yuan Shikai's attempt to be emperor.

A late 1915 editorial cartoon decrying Yuan Shikai's attempt to have himself proclaimed emperor. As the new provisional president in 1912, Yuan ...

Chen Duxiu (Ch'en Tu-hsiu, 1879-1942).

Chen Duxiu (Ch'en Tu-hsiu, 1879-1942), journalist, intellectual iconoclast, and co-founder of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP). Chen's New ...

Chiang Ching-kuo (1910-1988).

Chiang Ching-kuo (in Pinyin, Jiang Jingguo, 1910-1988), the second president of the Republic of China (Taiwan). Chiang was elected president in ...

Chiang Kai-shek and party in recaptured Yan'an.

Chiang Kai-shek and party in recaptured Yan'an, August, 1947. With its capture, Chiang confidently predicted the total defeat of CCP forces ...

Chiang Kai-shek at Central Military Academy.

Chiang Kai-shek addressing the cadets of the Central Military Academy, Nanjing, 1935. Patriotic, strong-willed, and politically astute, Chiang ...

Chiang Kai-shek, FDR, Churchill and Mme. Chiang.

Chiang Kai-shek, Franklin D. Roosevelt, Winston Churchill, and Mme. Chiang at the Cairo Conference, November, 1943. President Roosevelt and ...

China's first nuclear explosion, 1964.

China's first nuclear explosion, 1964. After 1959 China's nuclear technology had to be developed independently, and this first Chinese nuclear ...

China's first nuclear reactor.

China's first nuclear reactor, which went into operation in 1958. Since the early 1950s, the PRC was strongly interested in developing nuclear ...

China's first rocket launch, 1960.

China's first rocket launch, which took place in 1960. The earliest PRC rockets closely followed Soviet models, but later rockets were ...

China's first satellite, placed in orbit in 1970.

China's first satellite, which was placed in orbit in ...

Chinese Communist troops at Taierzhuang battle.

Chinese Communist troops in action against the Japanese during the battle of Taierzhuang (T'ai-erh-chuang), April, 1938. The Japanese suffered ...

Chinese couple celebrating a "new style marriage."

A young Chinese couple celebrating a "new style marriage." The PRC's marriage law of 1950, one of the most radical measures of the ...

Chinese frontier guards in vicinity of Zhenbao.

Chinese frontier guards in the vicinity of Zhenbao (Chenpao, Damansky in Russian) Island in the Ussuri River. The historically deep-rooted and ...

Chinese ping-pong players at a school in Maryland.

Chinese ping-pong players at a high school in Maryland, April 1972. Zhou Enlai's warm reception of American ping-pong players in April 1971 and ...

Chinese troops entering Korea in late 1950.

Chinese troops entering Korea in late 1950. The Korean War erupted in June, 1950, but only when U.S. troops had intervened in force, crossed the ...

Communist soldiers examine a poster.

Communist soldiers examine a poster calling upon General Marshall to prevent a renewed outbreak of civil war, May, 1946. By mid-1946, ...

Deng Xiaoping points at CCP secretary Hu Yaobang.

Deng Xiaoping pointing at CCP general secretary Hu Yaobang (Hu Yao-pang, b. 1915), in a gesture prefiguring their later falling out. Hu, another ...

Destroyed buildings on offshore island of Quemoy.

Buildings on the offshore island of Quemoy (Jinmen or Kinmen) which have been reduced to rubble following artillery barrages from the mainland, ...

Downtown scene in Taipei, Taiwan's capital.

A downtown scene in Taipei, Taiwan's capital and largest city. Building upon a highly successful land reform program initiated in 1949, Taiwan ...

Employees of the telephone company in Shanghai.

Employees of the telephone company in Shanghai carry home their bi-weekly pay in large sacks, March, 1948. The severe inflation of the ...

Execution of Chinese in the early 1950s.

An even more blurry photo purportedly showing the execution of Chinese in the early 1950s. Considerable arbitrary violence attended the early ...

Hanyang iron works and arsenal ca. 1920.

The Hanyang iron works and arsenal, as photographed around 1920. The history of this industrial complex, inaugurated by Zhang Zhidong in 1890, ...

Henry Puyi inaugurated, chief executive Manchukuo.

Henry Puyi (in top hat and tails, center) who had abdicated as the last Qing emperor of China when a child in 1912, is inaugurated as chief ...

Hu Shih (1891-1962).

Hu Shih (1891-1962), the prominent liberal intellectual who played an important role in the May 4th movement (the political and intellectual ...

Iron and steel works complex at Anshan in China.

The iron and steel works complex at Anshan in northeast China, 1955. The PRC's first Five Year Plan of 1953-57, implemented after a period of ...

Irregular Chinese troops, late 1938.

Irregular Chinese troops, some armed only with lances, in northern Henan province, late 1938. This area was typical of the complex pattern of ...

Irrigation device worked by three people, 1981.

Irrigation device worked by three people, 1981. Although China's population is still 80% rural, the post-1949 drive toward socialist ...

Japanese aircraft bombs village near Shanghai.

A Japanese aircraft bombs a village near Shanghai, 1937. Chinese civilian masses suffered greatly during the Anti-Japanese War, especially ...

Japanese fortifications overlooking Hankou.

Japanese soldiers in fortifications overlooking Hankou (Hankow), November, 1938. Chiang Kai-shek had established his military headquarters at ...

Japanese troops celebrate, Nanjing occupation.

Japanese troops celebrate during the occupation of Nanjing. The rapid disintegration of Chinese defenses after the fall of Shanghai permitted ...

Japanese troops during street fighting, Shanghai.

Japanese troops during street fighting in Shanghai, 1937. In mid-August, the Japanese opened a second front with an attack on Shanghai, hoping ...

Li Dazhao (Li Ta-chao, 1888-1927).

Li Dazhao (Li Ta-chao, 1888-1927), co-founder of the CCP. Li, like Chen Duxiu, was a professor at Beida and a leader of the May 4th movement who ...

Lin Biao, Mao's "closest comrade-in-arms."

Lin Biao, Mao's "closest comrade-in-arms," at the Ninth Party Congress of April, 1969, where he was formally designated as Mao's successor in the ...

Literary and intellectual figures, East and West.

Literary and intellectual figures, East and West; American journalist Agnes Smedley, playwright George Bernard Shaw, Soong Ch'ing-ling (Mme. Sun ...

M-3 tanks being loaded for shipment to Shanghai.

M-3 tanks being loaded at Houston, Texas for shipment to Shanghai, 1948. From the outset of the civil war President Truman had warned the ...

Manchurian warlord Zhang Zuolin (1873-1928).

Manchurian warlord Zhang Zuolin (Chang Tso-lin, 1873-1928) is received with honors by the 15th Infantry, U.S.A., then stationed in Tianjin, about ...

Mao Zedong and Liu Shaoqi (1898-1969), ca. 1965.

Mao Zedong and Liu Shaoqi (Liu Shao-ch'i, 1898-1969), as photographed around 1965. Liu Shaoqi, a key CCP theoretician and organizer in the ...

Mao Zedong lying in state.

Mao Zedong lying in state. Mao's death on September 9, 1976 touched off an intense struggle for power in which the "radicals" led by Jiang Qing ...

Mao Zedong Memorial Hall in Tiananmen Square.

The Mao Zedong Memorial Hall in Tiananmen Square, Beijing. Between 1978 and 1981, the Chinese

leadership gingerly dismantled the pervasive cult ...

Mao Zedong shortly after evacuation of CCP HQ.
Mao Zedong (on horseback, center) shortly after the evacuation of CCP headquarters at Yan'an (Yenan) in Shaanxi province, 1947. In the early ...

Mao Zedong taking famous swim in Yangzi River.
Mao Zedong taking his famous swim in the Yangzi River during an early stage of the Cultural Revolution , July, 1966. Mao, who was 72 years old ...

Mao Zedong, Chairman of the CCP.
Mao Zedong, Chairman of the CCP, proclaims the establishment of the People's Republic of China (PRC) from the rostrum of Tiananmen Square in ...

Mao Zedong, Ho Chi Minh meeting in Beijing, 1959.
Mao Zedong meeting with Ho Chi Minh in Beijing, early 1959. The PRC extended military and economic aid to North Vietnam beginning in 1950, and ...

Map of China-India border with contested areas.
Detail of a map of the China-India border, with contested regions highlighted. In 1959 Chinese troops attempting to secure their border and stop ...

Ming period print illustrates acupuncture points.
A Ming period print illustrating a set of acupuncture points. The practice of acupuncture and moxibustion (or zhenjiu), which can be traced ...

Mme. Chiang, Gandhi, Chiang Kai-shek, and Nehru.
Mme. Chiang (Soong Mei-ling), Mahatma Gandhi, Chiang Kai-shek, and Jawaharlal Nehru at a meeting in Calcutta, February 18, 1942. Chiang visited ...

Nationalist Chinese troops board a U.S. C-54.
Nationalist Chinese troops board a U.S. Air Force C-54 at Liuzhou (Liuchow) in Guangxi province en route to Shanghai, August 1945. Following the ...

Nationalist General Cai Tingkai surveys defenses.
Nationalist General Cai Tingkai (Ts'ai T'ing-k'ai, 1892-1968) surveys the defenses of his 19th Route Army in action against the Japanese in early ...

Nationalist poster dating from 1926-28.
A Nationalist poster dating from the Northern Expedition period of 1926-28. The club bashing the two foreground figures is inscribed "force of ...

Nationalist soldiers in retreat near Shanghai.
Nationalist soldiers in retreat near Shanghai, May, 1949. Chiang Kai-shek's central strategic blunder in the civil war was his insistence, ...

Nationalist soldiers leading Communist prisoners.
Nationalist soldiers leading Communist prisoners captured in fighting along the Jiangxi-Fujian border during Chiang Kai-shek's fifth ...

Nationalist wartime capital ablaze after attack.
The Nationalist wartime capital Chongqing ablaze after a Japanese attack with incendiary bombs, 1942. Chongqing, up above the Yangzi gorges, was ...

Overflowing container dock at port of Shanghai.
An overflowing container dock at the port of Shanghai, 1986. China's ambitious plans for economic modernization depend heavily upon the more ...

Painting of " meeting of Stalin and Chairman Mao."
A painting celebrating the "great meeting of Generalissimo Stalin and Chairman Mao" (in Moscow from December, 1949 to February, 1950). In the ...

Peasants plowing.
Peasants plowing. The plight of the Chinese peasant had reached a point of desperation by the 1930s. Tenancy or semitenancy was the norm, and ...

Peng Dehuai (1900-1974) as Minister of Defense.
Peng Dehuai (P'eng Teh-huai, 1900-1974) as Minister of Defense in 1958. A veteran CCP military commander and Politburo member, Peng was toppled ...

Peng Zhen (P'eng Chen, b. 1902).
Peng Zhen (P'eng Chen, b. 1902), the politically powerful mayor of Beijing from 1952 until his removal from office in May, 1966, as photographed ...

People's Liberation Army marching in victory.
People's Liberation Army (PLA) troops marching in a victory parade down Nanjing Road in Shanghai, July, 1949. In mid-April, 1949, Communist ...

Poster, department in National Revolutionary Army.
A poster of the National Revolutionary Army's political department, capped by Nationalist flags and symbol, reads: "The Nationalist government ...

Power plant after Russians removed equiptment.
The Fushun power plant after its equipment was removed by the Russians. With Soviet entry into the war against Japan on August 8, 1945, troops ...

Premier Guofeng receives UN Secretary General.
Premier Hua Guofeng receives United Nations Secretary General Kurt Waldheim, Beijing, May, 1979. Hua, a provincial official from Hunan who ...

President Nixon meets CCP Chairman Mao Zedong.
U.S. President Richard M. Nixon meets with CCP Chairman Mao Zedong in Beijing, February 21, 1972. Nixon's dramatic seven-day visit to China ...

Prime Minister Thatcher and Premier Zhao Ziyang.
Then British Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher and Premier Zhao Ziyang conclude a Sino-British "joint declaration on the question of Hong Kong," ...
Professor demonstrates acupuncture points.
A professor at the Chengdu College of Traditional Chinese Medicine in the 1980s demonstrating acupuncture points to his students on a bronze ...
Reopening the mountainous Ledo Road.
Reopening the mountainous Ledo Road (left photograph), which began in India and connected with the Burma Road to China, was a key strategic ...
Sun Yat-sen "father of the Chinese revolution."
Sun Yat-sen (1866-1925, also known as Sun Yixian, Sun Zhongshan, and Sun Wen), "father of the Chinese revolution," "father of the nation," and ...
Sun Yat-sen and Chiang Kai-shek in June, 1924.
Sun Yat-sen and Chiang Kai-shek (or Chiang Chieh-shih (in Pinyin, Jiang Jieshi); also known as Chiang Chung-cheng (Jiang Zhongzheng), 1887-1975) ...
Sun Yat-sen, in 1924, several months before death.
Sun Yat-sen, in a photograph probably made in Beijing in late 1924, several months before his death. Sun was frustrated during the Republican ...
Taiwan Delegation leaving U.N. General Assembly.
The delegation of the Republic of China (Taiwan) leaving the United Nations General Assembly on October 25, 1971, just prior to the Assembly's ...
The "Young Marshal" Zhang Xueliang.
The "Young Marshal" Zhang Xueliang, a central figure in the Xi'an (Sian) incident of 1936. Zhang, who commanded the Northeastern army, became ...
The Committee of Three.
General George C. Marshall, head of the U.S. Joint Chiefs of Staff during World War II, flanked by KMT representative Chang Ch'nn (in Pinyin, ...
The Dalai Lama, Tibetan spiritual leader in India.
The Dalai Lama, spiritual leader and national symbol of the Tibetan people, at his new residence in Dharmsala, India, March, 1961. Tibet had ...
The launch of a communications satellite in 1984.
The launch of a communications satellite in 1984. The Chinese have quietly duplicated American and Soviet advances in aeronautics and space, ...
The PRC takes its place in the United Nations.
The PRC takes its place in the United Nations; the chairman of the PRC delegation, Qiao Guanhua (Ch'iao Kuan-hua, 1908-84) is formally seated in ...
Tianjin in aftermath of Japanese air attack, 1937.
Tianjin in the aftermath of a Japanese air attack, 1937. The Anti-Japanese War of 1937-45 is dated from the Marco Polo Bridge (Lugouqiao) ...
Troops of Zhang Zuolin's Fengtian army.
Troops of Zhang Zuolin's Fengtian army. The chaos produced by the hundreds of warlords and their armies left the Beijing government largely ...
U.S. Air Force C-46 cargo plane over "the Hump."
A U.S. Air Force C-46 cargo plane flying over "the Hump" (the Himalayas between China and northern Burma/India), 1944. With the close of the ...
U.S. diplomatic relations with PRC announaced.
President Carter announces the establishment of full diplomatic relations with the People's Republic of China, and the severance of relations ...
Wei Tao-ming and Cordell Hull signing agreements.
Chinese ambassador to the U.S. Wei Tao-ming (1897-1978; in Pinyin, Wei Daoming) and U.S. Secretary of State Cordell Hull signing new agreements ...
Wounded soldiers of Wu Peifu evacuated by rail.
Wounded soldiers of warlord Wu Peifu (Wu P'ei-fu, 1874-1939) are evacuated by rail during the second Zhili-Fengtian war of 1924. The death of ...
Yuan Shikai, military strong man.
Yuan Shikai, military strong man and "father of the warlords," early president of the Chinese Republic, and would-be emperor. Yuan rose to ...
Zhou Enlai in Moscow at funeral of Joseph Stalin.
Zhou Enlai (center) in Moscow at the funeral of Joseph Stalin, March, 1953; to his far left is Nikita Khrushchev. Mao and his CCP had a ...
Zhou Enlai with U.S. youth delegation, 1957.
Premier and Foreign Minister Zhou Enlai joins a U.S. youth delegation in the singing of "Ain't Gonna Study War No More" during a celebration of ...
Zhou Enlai with President Sukarno of Indonesa.
Zhou Enlai meets with President Sukarno of Indonesia at a preparatory session for the second Afro-Asian Conference, Cairo, June, 1965. Not shown ...

The Sui Through Ming Periods

Autumn Over Beijing's Suburbs .
Autumn Over Beijing's Suburbs , ink and color on silk, attributed to Matteo Ricci. Ricci, who was educated in

theology, science, and the ...

Emperor Xuande at Play , ink, color on silk.
Emperor Xuande at Play , ink and color on silk by an anonymous Ming painter. Xuande (Hsnan-te, reigned 1426-36), the fifth Ming emperor, ...

Enjoying the Zither , by emperor Song Huizong.
Enjoying the Zither , attributed to emperor Song Huizong. Huizong, who gathered artists from all over China at his court in Kaifeng, was ...

Myriad of Trees on Strange Peaks .
A Myriad of Trees on Strange Peaks , attributed to Li Tang, (Li T'ang, ca. 1050-1130). Li Tang was an important transitional figure between the ...

On a Mountain Path in Spring , by Ma Yuan.
On a Mountain Path in Spring , by Ma Yuan (active 1190-1225). The "Ma-Xia school" led by Ma Yuan and Xia Gui (Hsia Kuei, active 1200-1230), ...

Pines and Mountains in Spring , by Mi Fu.
Pines and Mountains in Spring , by the eccentric painter, calligrapher, and official Mi Fu (1051-1107). Even while landscape realism reached a ...

The Three Sages .
The Three Sages , that is, of Confucianism, Buddhism , and Daoism , as illustrated in a late Ming period book. From left to right are ...

The Village Doctor by Li Tang.
The Village Doctor by Li Tang contains some elements of landscape but is more notable for its whimsical slice-of-life atmosphere. The ...

Travelling amid Mountains and Gorges .
Travelling amid Mountains and Gorges , by the Daoist painter Fan Kuan (Fan K'uan, ca. 950-1026). This rare and now faded original depicts a ...

A camel laden with silk and supplies.
A camel laden with silk and supplies. Chinese tricolor earthenwares such as this were also exported in great numbers to West Asia during the ...

A Chinese woodblock print.
A Chinese woodblock print, probably early 17th century, depicting ships of Zheng He's expeditions. His voyages demonstrated both the advanced ...

A classical Chinese landscape painting.
A classical Chinese landscape painting, Early Spring, by Guo Xi (Kuo Hsi, 11th century), Northern Song. The 10th and 11th centuries made up ...

A composite crossbow from the Song period.
A composite crossbow from the Song period. The crossbow was in use in China by the 4th century B.C. and by the 2nd century B.C. the Chinese had ...

A gold bowl from the Tang.
A gold bowl from the Tang, carved in a pattern of lotus petals and decorated with the figures of ducks, parrots, deer, and foxes. Decorative ...

A map of Song China, mid-11th century.
A map of Song China, mid-11th century. The Song alone among the major Chinese dynasties never entered upon an expansionist phase. Song military ...

A map of the Ming empire.
A map of the Ming empire. The founding Hongwu emperor's internal military dynamism carried over without interruption into foreign conquest. In ...

A map of the Mongol empire.
A map of the Mongol empire, the largest in territory in world history (its extent is marked here by the darker line). The Mongol conquest of ...

A painting by Wu Zhen (1280-1354).
A painting by Wu Zhen (Wu Chen, 1280-1354). Wu typified the scholar-painter so alienated from the Mongol court and its culture that a gulf ...

A statue of Zheng He (1371-1433), Ming navigator.
A statue of Zheng He (Cheng Ho, 1371-1433), the famous Ming navigator. Between 1405 and 1433 Zheng He demonstrated Chinese maritime power by ...

A Tang period stone sculpture of the Buddha.
A Tang period stone sculpture of the Buddha, Binxian county, Shaanxi province. Empress Wu was a particularly ardent patron of Buddhism , and ...

A view of the Great Wall.
A view of the Great Wall. The Ming reconstruction of the wall between 1403 and 1435 in northern Hebei and northern Shanxi followed approximately ...

Astronomical instruments designed by Guo Shoujing.
Astronomical instruments designed by Guo Shoujing. The large equatorial armillary sphere in the foreground was made by Nepalese craftsmen around ...

Bo Zhuyi (Po Chn-i, 772-846).
Bo Zhuyi (Po Chn-i, 772-846), the Tang poet known for his simple diction, which made his work available to the less educated and helped to extend ...

Bronze cannon, believed the oldest yet discovered.
A bronze cannon, believed to be the oldest yet discovered, dated 1332 A.D. The Chinese invention of gunpowder is associated with the experiments ...

Buddhism was changed by native traditions.
Giant statues of Buddha and attendants at Loyang, in Henan province. After approximately the mid-Tang, institutional Buddhism held much less ...
Ceramic rider, earthenware.
A pottery camel and rider from the Tang dynasty, earthenware with three-color glaze. A vivid picture of daily life in Tang times emerges from ...
Cheng Hao (1031-85) and Cheng Yi (1032-1108).
Cheng Hao (Ch'eng Hao, 1031-85) and Cheng Yi (Ch'eng I, 1032-1108), brothers and Neo-Confucian philosophers of the Song. Signs of a Confucian ...
Court ladies playing music.
Court ladies playing music. During the Tang period the music and instruments of Central Asia, both sacred (Buddhist psalmody) and secular, had a ...
Detail from The Rongxi Studio , by Ni Zan.
Detail from The Rongxi Studio , a landscape by Ni Zan (Ni Tsan, 1301-74), who was known for the austerity of both his painting style and his ...
Dragon Throne inside the Hall of Supreme Harmony.
The Dragon Throne inside the Hall of Supreme Harmony. This throne was used by the emperor only on the most solemn state occasions, such as the ...
Drawings from a 15th century Ming book.
Drawings from a 15th century Ming book showing a zebra and an Arab, reflecting knowledge gained through Zheng He's expeditions. His voyages left ...
Du Fu (Tu Fu, 712-70) Chinese poet.
Du Fu (Tu Fu, 712-70), regarded by many as the greatest of all Chinese poets. A study in contrasts with his friend Li Bo, he was a conscientious ...
Earliest extant paper money printed by wood block.
The earliest extant paper money printed by wood block, Northern Song. The use of paper to represent money probably originated in the early 9th ...
Emperor Wendi founded the Sui dynasty.
Emperor Wendi (Wen-ti), a general of mixed Mongolian and Chinese blood who founded the Sui dynasty. Wendi, whose personal name was Yang Jian ...
Empress Ma (Ma Huanghou), wife of Zhu Yuanzhang.
Empress Ma (Ma Huanghou), wife of Zhu Yuanzhang. Zhu had married the adopted daughter of the Red Turban leader whose rebel band he had joined ...
Empress Wu, or Wu Zhao (Chao) (627?-705).
Empress Wu, or Wu Zhao (Chao), who in 690 A.D. assumed the imperial throne, the only woman in Chinese history to do so. Wu Zhao (627?-705), ...
Examination hall & cubicles at Nanjing, ca. 1900.
Examination hall and cubicles at Nanjing (Nanking), photographed around 1900. During the Song, the civil service and examination system attained ...
Final examination in the presence of emperor.
Final examination in the presence of the emperor, mid 9th century. In the Sui, the Han emphasis on Confucian tradition and the Han examination ...
Founder Tang dynasty Li Yuan (566-635).
Founder of the Tang dynasty Li Yuan (566-635, reigned 618-626), also known by his posthumous title Tang Gaozu (T'ang Kao-tsu). Li Yuan, a high ...
Garden attached to Jie Chuang Lu temple in Suzhou.
A view of the garden attached to the Jie Chuang Lu temple in Suzhou. During the Ming, the region of southern Jiangsu and northern Zhejiang ...
Genghis Khan (ca. 1167-1227 A.D).
Genghis Khan (also spelled Chinggis, Jenghiz, etc.), founder of the Mongol empire, who lived around 1167-1227 A.D. Genghis Khan, whose personal ...
Grand Canal at Suzhou as photographed ca. 1904.
The Grand Canal at Suzhou (Soochow), as photographed around 1904. By 610 A.D., with the connection of various old canals (including some dating ...
Guan Hanqing (Kuan Han-ch'ing, ca. 1220-1300).
Guan Hanqing (Kuan Han-ch'ing, ca. 1220-1300), regarded by many as China's most outstanding playwright. Under Mongol rule Chinese men of ...
Guo Shoujing (Kuo Shou-ching, 1231-1316).
Guo Shoujing (Kuo Shou-ching, 1231-1316), astronomer, mathematician, engineer, and hydrographer. Introduced to Khubilai Khan in 1263, Guo was ...
Guo Ziyi (Kuo Tzu-i, 697-781).
Guo Ziyi (Kuo Tzu-i, 697-781), one of a number of loyal Tang generals who managed to restore order in the aftermath of the An Lushan rebellion. ...
Guo Ziyi receiving the homage of the Uighurs.
Guo Ziyi receiving the homage of the Uighurs, an image conveying the Chinese ideal of virtue and culture winning over uncivilized barbarian ...
Han Yu (Han Yn, 768-824).
Han Yu (Han Yn, 768-824), scholar and essayist, prose stylist, and critic of Buddhism . Han Yu was an early figure in a golden age of formal ...
Imperial order to Yue Fei to withdraw his troops.

The imperial order (in the calligraphy of Song Gaozong) to Yue Fei to withdraw his troops from the north. Calligraphy from National Palace ...

Jesuit pioneer Matteo Ricci, 1552-1610.
Jesuit pioneer Matteo Ricci, 1552-1610 (Chinese name, Li Madou). Ricci entered China via Macao in 1583, and very gradually worked his way ...

Khubilai Khan (1215-1294).
Khubilai Khan (1215-1294), the grandson of Genghis Khan, who completed the conquest of China and ruled concurrently as the Great Khan of the ...

Khubilai Khan gives safe-conduct tablet.
Khubilai Khan gives a golden safe-conduct tablet to Nicolo Polo, father of Marco Polo, and Nicolo's brother Maffeo. The effect of unified Mongol ...

Li Shimin , known posthumously as Tang Taizong.
Li Shimin (Li Shih-min, 600-649, known posthumously as Tang Taizong (T'ai-tsung), whose rule from 626-649 is considered the high point of the ...

Li Zicheng (Li Tzu-ch'eng, ca.1605-45).
Li Zicheng (Li Tzu-ch'eng, ca. 1605-45), whose rebellion helped to end the Ming dynasty. Li rose to power at the head of a great peasant army ...

Lu Jiuyuan (1140-92).
Lu Jiuyuan (Lu Chiu-ynan, or Lu Xiangshan (Lu Hsiang-shan), 1140-92), Song Neo-Confucian philosopher. The thought of Lu Jiuyuan is ...

Map of central Tang empire, early 8th century.
A map of the central Tang empire in the early 8th century. By the end of Tang Taizong's reign the Chinese, aided by the Turkish Uighur ...

Map of Southern Song dynasty.
A map of the Southern Song dynasty, showing the tripartite division of Song, Jin, and Xi Xia. The Southern Song served as a bastion of Chinese ...

Marco Polo.
Marco Polo, the Venetian merchant whose famous Travels (Il Milione) described his journeys throughout the Mongol empire and his some seventeen ...

Ming period drawing of "one-wheeled push-barrow."
A Ming period drawing of a "one-wheeled push-barrow of the south." The wheelbarrow, which first appeared in Europe around the 13th century, was ...

Ming Philosopher Wang Yangming (1472-1529).
Wang Yangming (also known as Wang Shouren, 1472-1529), the most influential philosopher of the Ming period. Wang challenged the Neo-Confucian ...

Mongol horsemen hunting with leader Khubilai Khan.
A band of Mongol horsemen hunting with their leader Khubilai Khan (center, in ermine robe). Mongol military might derived from extremely ...

Mount Wudang, site of complex of Daoist temples.
Mount Wudang (Wu-tang) in northwestern Hubei province, the site of a complex of Daoist temples and monasteries dating back to the Tang. Daoism ...

Mountain scene by Wang Meng (ca. 1309-1385).
Scenic Dwellings at Chu-ch'u, by Wang Meng (ca. 1309-1385). Like his uncle Zhao Mengfu, Wang Meng held a high official position in the Mongol ...

Mounted Khitan nobleman dressed in Chinese silk.
A mounted Khitan nobleman richly dressed in Chinese silk. During the interlude between the Tang and Song dynasties, leaders such as this ...

Ouyang Xiu (Ou-yang Hsiu, 1007-1072).
Ouyang Xiu (Ou-yang Hsiu, 1007-1072), the noted Song historian, statesman, philosopher, poet, and essayist. Versatility was characteristic of ...

Painting accompanied poem on life of a fisherman.
A landscape painting which accompanied a poem on the life of a fisherman attributed to Emperor Song Gaozong (Sung Kao-tsung, reigned 1127-62). An ...

Part of diagram of Beijing in Ming & Qing period.
Part of a diagram of Beijing in the Ming and Qing period. In the 8th century B.C., the Beijing region was already the site of the capital of a ...

Porcelain figurine of the Bodhisattva Guanyin.
An exquisite porcelain figurine of the Bodhisattva Guanyin made for use in a domestic shrine, Yuan period. In matters of philosophy and ...

Porcelain painted in underglaze blue, Yuan period.
A porcelain piece painted in underglaze blue, Yuan period. The Pax Tartarica had further stimulated the demand for Chinese porcelain, ...

Portrait depicting Hongwu emperor at advanced age.
Portrait depicting the Hongwu emperor at a more advanced age. The institutional foundations of the Ming period, "one of the great eras of ...

Portrait of famous Tang poet Li Bo, (701-762).
Portrait of the famous Tang poet Li Bo (Li Po, or Li Taibo (T'ai-po), 701-762). The explosion of poetic talent during the Tang, the dynasty ...

Reception of envoys in palace precinct.
The reception of envoys in a palace precinct is depicted in this painting by the famous Ming artist Qiu Ying.

The Chinese "tribute system," in ...

Ru ware piece in shape of an ancient bronze.
A Ru (Ju) ware piece in the shape of an ancient bronze, with opalescent blue glaze. Ru ware was made at the Kaifeng imperial kilns, during the ...

Scene from the Northern Song capital, Kaifeng.
A scene from the bustling Northern Song capital, Kaifeng; detail from a Qing copy of a famous scroll, The Qingming Festival on the River , by ...

Sculptures lining Hongwu emperor's tomb.
Monumental sculptures lining the approach to the tomb of the Hongwu emperor near Nanjing. The Ming tended to look back toward the glorious Tang ...

Section, Huang Gongwang's influential handscroll.
A section of Huang Gongwang's (Huang Kung-wang, 1269-1354) enormously influential handscroll, Dwelling in the Fuchun Mountains . Huang, one of ...

Sima Guang (Ssu-ma Kuang, 1018-1086).
Sima Guang (Ssu-ma Kuang, 1018-1086), historiographer and scholar-statesman. Sima Guang, a remote collateral descendent of Han historian Sima ...

Song Huizong (Sung Hui-tsung, reigned 1101-1125).
Song Huizong (Sung Hui-tsung, reigned 1101-1125), the last emperor of the Northern Song. Huizong, one of China's most famous patrons of art, was ...

Song patriotic hero Yue Fei (Yueh Fei, 1103-41).
Song patriotic hero Yue Fei (Yueh Fei, 1103-41). The Song military situation in the north following the capture of Kaifeng by the Ruzhen was by ...

Statesman and reformer Zhang Juzheng (1525-1582).
Statesman and reformer Zhang Juzheng (Chang Chn-cheng, 1525-1582). The last two centuries of Ming rule, from roughly the mid-15th to the ...

Statue of a military official.
Statue of a military official on the avenue approaching the tomb of the Yongle emperor, at Nankou (Nan-k'ou), some 25 miles north of Beijing. ...

Su Shi, (1036-1101).
Su Shi (Su Shih, or Su Dongpo (Tung-p'o), 1036-1101), the famous Song poet, calligrapher, painter, prose stylist, scholar, philosopher, and ...

Tai He Dian, Hall of Supreme Harmony.
Tai He Dian (T'ai-ho Tien), or Hall of Supreme Harmony, within Beijing's Forbidden City. In 1416 the Yongle emperor ordered that his new capital ...

Tang emperor.
Emperor Tai-tsu of the Tang dynasty. In the interim between the Tang and Song dynasties the aristocratic families of north China were largely ...

Tang Xuanzong also known as Tang Minghuang.
Tang Xuanzong (Hsnan-tsung), also known as Tang Minghuang, whose long reign (712-56) marked a highpoint of Tang power and cultural brilliance. ...

Tartars on horseback.
The Retinue of the First Tartar King. The Mongol attacks of 1438-49 had ended a period of Ming expansion to the north, and the next century ...

The "Honor Roll" of scholars' names.
The "Honor Roll," white marble tablets inscribed with the names of scholars who had attained the jinshi , or doctoral, degree. This photograph ...

The capture of emperor Huizong by the Ruzhen.
The capture of emperor Huizong by the Ruzhen is portrayed in this 19th century European engraving after a Chinese painting. The Ruzhen were a ...

The cultivation and processing of tea.
The cultivation and processing of tea. Introduced to China from India and Southeast Asia, and valued originally as a medicine (and as a means of ...

The Great Wall.
The Great Wall. Since its construction in the Qin dynasty the Great Wall had been periodically repaired, rebuilt, or extended, both by the Han ...

The walls of Beijing around the turn of century.
The walls of Beijing, as photographed around the turn of the century. The Yongle emperor had Beijing rebuilt on a more extensive scale than the ...

Wang Anshi.
Wang Anshi, the Song official who implemented a famous and controversial set of reforms during his years in power, 1069-76 and 1078-85. By the ...

Xu Guangqi (Hsn Kuang-ch'i, 1562-1633).
Xu Guangqi (Hsn Kuang-ch'i, 1562-1633), one of the most famous Christian converts of the Ming era. Xu had become a Christian even before he ...

Xuanzong emperor fleeing with party to Sichuan.
The Xuanzong emperor (the mounted figure in foreground wearing red) fleeing with his party to Sichuan. An Lushan revolted in 755 and his attack ...

Yang Guang last major Sui emperor.
Wendi's second son Yang Guang (Yang Kuang), canonized as Yangdi (Yang-ti), who reigned as the second and last major Sui emperor, from 605 to 617. ...

Yang Guifei, "Precious Consort" of Tang Xuanzon.
An artist's version of Yang Guifei (Yang Kuei-fei) mounting a horse. A by-product of Xuanzong's fateful infatuation with Yang Guifei was the ...
Zhao Kuangyi (Chao K'uang-i, 939-997).
Zhao Kuangyi (Chao K'uang-i, 939-997, reigned 976-997), known as Song Taizong (T'ai-tsung), the younger brother and successor to Song Taizu. ...
Zhao Kuangyin (Chao K'uang-yin, 928-976).
The founder of the Song dynasty, Zhao Kuangyin (Chao K'uang-yin, 928-976, reigned 960-976), also known to history as Song Taizu (Sung T'ai-tsu). ...
Zhu Di (Chu Ti, 1360-1424).
Zhu Di (Chu Ti, 1360-1424), the fourth son of the Hungwu emperor who usurped the throne from his nephew in 1401 and ruled as the Yongle (Yung-lo) ...
Zhu Xi (Chu Hsi, 1130-1200).
Zhu Xi (Chu Hsi, 1130-1200), synthesizer of Neo-Confucianism and China's leading philosopher after the classic (Zhou) age. Zhu Xi's ...
Zhu Yuanzhang (1328-1398), founder Ming dynasty.
Zhu Yuanzhang (Chu Ynan-chang, 1328-1398), founder of the Ming dynasty and known to history through his reign title as the Hongwu (Hung-wu, or ...

History of India

A global view of India.
A global view of India (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...
Video Overview: The history of India.
A brief video Overview of the history of India, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: India is one of mankind's earliest homes, as ...

India After 1500

"Black Hole of Calcutta" was room in Fort William.
The "Black Hole of Calcutta" was a prison room about 20 feet square in this building, Fort William in Calcutta, where English captives were ...
1930s procession to advocate boycott of liquor.
A 1930s procession to advocate the boycott of liquor. Earlier, B.G. Tilak, a leader from Mahrashtra, had asked his followers to boycott the ...
A benefit for untouchables.
A benefit for untouchables. The miseries suffered by millions of untouchables in India were a major concern for Gandhi and many other social ...
A class in a village school, ca. 1950.
A class in a village school, ca. 1950. The constitution of independent India made provision for free, compulsory primary education throughout ...
A mechanical thresher in use at Chandigarh, India.
A mechanical thresher in use at Chandigarh, India. Most of the machinery and equipment used by farmers in India are manufactured ...
A Portuguese ship of the 15th century.
A Portuguese ship of the 15th century. The Portuguese seaborne spice trade with India depended on the Portuguese being a strong naval power. As ...
A stagecoach for the transportation of mail.
A stagecoach for the transportation of mail. As Governor-General, Lord Dalhousie also reformed the postal system; a uniform rate was provided ...
A village scene in Bengal, in the early 1900s.
A village scene in Bengal, in the early 1900s. Rural India is a vast, hot land of small villages and the farms of poor subsistence farmers who ...
Abdul Ghaffar Khan with his followers.
Abdul Ghaffar Khan with his followers. Popularly known as "the Frontier Gandhi," Khan was the leader of the nationalist movement in the ...
Afonso de Albuquerque (1453-1515).
Afonso de Albuquerque (1453-1515) was a Portuguese navigator and administrator, and the real founder of the Portuguese empire in the East. He ...
An Indian government salt factory.
An Indian government salt factory. Salt was an important source of revenue for the British; its production was a carefully preserved monopoly, ...
An Indian ruler receiving a French representative.
An Indian ruler receiving a representative of France. Rulers often requested the help of the Europeans in their own expansionist schemes, in ...
Bahadur Shah II, the last Mughal Emperor of India.
Bahadur Shah II, the last Mughal Emperor of India, is shown surrounded by his court. During the Sepoy Rebellion of 1857 he was proclaimed ...
Birth control class for women in a village, 1972.
A birth control class for women being conducted in a village in 1972. Faced with an enormous population explosion, the government of India has ...
British soldiers patrols after Amritsar Massacre.
British colonial soldiers on patrol after the Amritsar Massacre. An event which caused a dramatic turn of

Indian opinion against the British Raj ...

Cotton bales on Cotton Green, Bombay, early 1900s.
Cotton bales on the Cotton Green at Bombay, early 1900s. Since ancient times, India had been a manufacturer of cotton fabric for the world. ...

Court of Proprietors at East India House, London.
The Court of Proprietors at East India House in London, mid-19th century. The profits of the original East India Company had caused unrest among ...

De Castro's triumphal entry into Goa.
De Castro's triumphal entry into Goa. Diego Melo De Castro was the last great governor of Portuguese India. With its capture of Goa in 1510, ...

Emperor Shah Alam giving formal grant of Diwani.
Emperor Shah Alam delivering the formal grant of Diwani, or the authority to collect revenues from Bengal, Bihar and Orissa, to Robert Clive. ...

English family at dinner table with two servants.
An English family at the dinner table, attended by two servants. A "punkah," a large hinged fan constantly kept in motion by a servant, cools ...

Englishman in India dresses attended by servants.
An Englishman in India dresses for his day, attended by four servants. While stationed in India, a man who in England would merely have lived a ...

Examining hall of Indian government opium factory.
The examining hall of the Indian government opium factory. From the early 19th century, the production and sale of opium had been officially ...

Fort William, Calcutta.
Fort William, Calcutta. Calcutta was founded by an agent of the East India Company in 1690. Three adjacent villages were later annexed to the ...

Front page of Oudh Ukbar newspaper, 1875.
The front page of the Oudh Ukbar newspaper, published in Lucknow, dated February 2, 1875. In 1801 a Baptist missionary set up a printing press ...

Gandhi with followers during the Salt March.
Gandhi with followers during the Salt March. Back in India in 1930, Gandhi initiated his Civil Disobedience Movement with a march to defy the ...

Gandhi with Sarojini Naidu during the Salt March.
Gandhi with Sarojini Naidu during the Salt March. To protest the British monopoly of salt, the symbolic act of manufacturing and using tax-free ...

Gandhi's body with mourners.
Gandhi's body with mourners. Gandhi had been very distressed by the violence between Hindus and Muslims which resulted from the partition of ...

General Outram, received by Rajah of Travanco.
General James Outram and his staff being received by the Rajah of Travancore. Located in southwest India, Travancore was ruled by a Hindu ...

Government House, Calcutta.
Government House, Calcutta. Calcutta became the capital of the British Indian possessions in 1772, and Government House was completed in 1803. ...

Hindus leave Pakistan, 1947.
Hindus leave Pakistan, 1947. India's freedom was won at a terrible price, since the partition of India caused suffering and death for millions ...

Homeless persons in Bombay, 1975.
Homeless persons in Bombay, 1975. An important goal of the government of independent India was the reduction of the widespread poverty in both ...

Images of Nehru and Gandhi on a postage stamp.
Images of Nehru and Gandhi on a postage stamp issued by the Indian Posts and Telegraphs Department on August 15, 1973, to mark the completion ...

Indian troops in Cyrenaica, North Africa, WW II.
Indian troops in Cyrenaica, North Africa, in World War II. During that war the Muslims, who under the leadership of Mohammed Ali Jinnah were ...

Indian troops in France, October, 1914.
Indian troops in France, October, 1914. As a part of the British Empire, India was drawn into the First World War. Manpower and resources from ...

Indian troops marching in NEFA area, 1962.
Indian troops marching in the Northeast Frontier Agency (NEFA) area in November 1962. This area, comprising some of the most rugged mountains in ...

Indians arrested as result of article, 1930.
Indians being arrested as a result of a magazine article in Bombay, 1930. The Indian National Congress, which was founded in 1885, worked in ...

India's first nuclear power plant.
India's first nuclear power plant, located near Bombay, which was built with U.S. assistance in 1963. India's Atomic Energy Commission was ...

India's first prime minister, Jawaharlal Nehru.
India's first prime minister , Jawaharlal Nehru (1889-1964), addressing the United Nations General Assembly in 1960. Nehru came from a ...

Indira Gandhi meets with Nixon.
Indira Gandhi, Prime Minister of India in 1966-77 and 1980-84, meets with U.S. President Richard M. Nixon and his cabinet, November 1971. Mrs. ...
Jawaharlal Nehru with Dalai Lama of Tibet, 1959.
Jawaharlal Nehru, Prime Minister of India, with the Dalai Lama of Tibet in 1959. Communist China had invaded Tibet in 1950, and Tibet had become ...
Joseph Francois Dupleix (1697-1763).
Joseph Francois Dupleix (1697-1763), was the governor general of the French East Indies from 1741 to 1754. It was his policy to participate in ...
Lord and Lady Curzon on the "Grand Tusker."
Lord and Lady Curzon on the "Grand Tusker" at the 1902 Delhi Durbar (Assembly). Curzon presided over the second great Durbar in Delhi to ...
Lord Cornwallis taking the sons of Tippu Sultan.
Lord Charles Cornwallis receiving as hostages the sons of Tippu Sultan, the ruler of Mysore. Cornwallis, the Governor-General of India (1786-93, ...
Lord Edward R. B. Lytton.
Lord Edward R. B. Lytton, Viceroy and Governor-General of India from 1876 to 1880. During his tenure, Queen Victoria was proclaimed Empress of ...
Lord George Nathaniel Curzon.
Lord George Nathaniel Curzon, Viceroy and Governor-General of India from 1899 to 1905. His regime saw many developments in domestic as well as ...
Lord James A.B. Ramsey Dalhousie.
Lord James A. B. Ramsey Dalhousie, governor-general from 1848 to 1856, laying the cornerstone of the Medical Hospital at Calcutta. Indian ...
Lord Louis Mountbatten.
Lord Louis Mountbatten (center), the last Governor-General of British India (March-August 1947) and the first Governor-General of the Dominion of ...
Lord Pethwick-Lawrence's mission to India.
Lord Pethwick-Lawrence's mission to India. A member of the British Cabinet Mission to India in March 1947, Pethwick-Lawrence was the secretary ...
Map of British India and the major Indian states.
A map of British India and the major Indian states. This map primarily shows (in yellow) the major Indian princely states which remained ...
Map showing India's strategic position.
India's strategic position geographically is shown by this political map of countries from Israel in the west to Japan in the ...
Modernization of railroads at Allahabad in 1966.
The modernization of railroads: rail electrification work on a part of the Eastern Railways at Allahabad in 1966. The national railway system is ...
Mogul Emperor Jahangir giving audience to Sir Roe.
The Mogul Emperor Jahangir giving audience to Sir Thomas Roe. In 1615 Roe came to negotiate a trading agreement for the young East India Company ...
Mohandas Gandhi (1869-1948).
Mohandas Gandhi (1869-1948) as a young man in Natal, South Africa. Born in western India, Gandhi went to London to study law. After completing ...
Moraiji Desai, Prime Minister of India 1977-79.
Moraiji Desai, Prime Minister of India 1977-79, at United Nations headquarters. The policies of Indira Gandhi's government and the Proclamation ...
Nehru with Dr. Rajendra Prasad.
Nehru (R.) is shown with Dr. Rajendra Prasad, the first president of the Indian Republic (from 1950 to 1962). Prasad had gained fame as a lawyer ...
Plague victims, ca. 1899.
Plague victims, ca. 1899. This epidemic was as devastating for India as the plague had been in London two centuries earlier. Health and medical ...
Police raid on Congress House in Bombay, ca. 1930.
A police raid on Congress House in Bombay, ca. 1930. As the sign above the main gate of the building indicates, this was the headquarters of the ...
Prime Minister Indira Gandhi.
Prime Minister Indira Gandhi, here seen as head of the Movement of Non-Aligned Countries, meets with its members at the United Nations ...
Rabindranath Tagore (1861-1914).
Rabindranath Tagore (1861-1914), Hindu writer, poet, philosopher and painter. Born in Calcutta, he studied law in England. He was the author of ...
Rajiv Gandhi became Prime Minister of India, 1984.
Rajiv Gandhi, who became Prime Minister of the Republic of India after the assassination of his mother, Indira, in 1984. He had been a ...
Ram Mohan Roy, Raja (1772-1833).
Ram Mohan Roy, Raja (1772-1833), a product of Western education, was a distinguished linguist and scholar. He translated some of the Upanishads ...
Reading Queen's Proclamation at Calcutta.

Reading the Queen's Proclamation at Calcutta, making India a Crown Colony. This proclamation announced the transfer of the government from the ...

Rebellious sepoys being blown apart by cannon.
Rebellious sepoys being blown apart by cannon after the end of the Sepoy Rebellion, one of the barbarous punishments inflicted on the sepoys. ...

Robert Clive (1725-1774).
Robert Clive (1725-1774), one of the chief architects of the British empire in India. In 1758, Clive was appointed the first governor of Bengal. ...

School for education of Hindu females at Calcutta.
The founding of the school for the education of Hindu females at Calcutta. Lord Dalhousie laid the foundation of a national system of education ...

Sepoys of the Madras army.
Sepoys of the Madras army. The term "sepoy" comes from a Persian word meaning soldiery, and was used for the foot soldiers in the British Indian ...

Shah Alam, the 23rd Mughal Emperor (1759-1806).
Shah Alam, the 23rd Mughal Emperor (1759-1806). After his defeat by the British forces at the battle of Buxar in 1764, the shah was forced to ...

Sir Charles James Napier (1782-1853).
Sir Charles James Napier (1782-1853), the general who led the British forces to victory against the amirs of Sind in 1843. The area of Sind had ...

Starving natives in a residency during a famine.
Starving natives in a residency during a famine. India was frequently subjected to terrible famines which affected millions of its people. ...

Surat, a port and town in Gujarat, western India.
Surat, a port and town in Gujarat, western India. William Hawkins succeeded in obtaining from the Mughal emperor Jahangir permission for the East ...

Tea workers on a plantation in Assam, ca. 1950.
Tea workers on a plantation in Assam, ca. 1950. Tea had been exported from China for British use for more than 150 years before it began to be ...

The English fort at Bombay, ca. 1672.
The English fort at Bombay, ca. 1672. Along with several other trading stations along the west coast, Bombay was a Portuguese possession in the ...

The home of a wealthy family in Calcutta.
The home of a wealthy family in Calcutta. This palatial house is a good example of the marked contrast in the living standards of the rich and ...

The Imperial Assemblage at Delhi, 1877.
The Imperial Assemblage at Delhi, 1877. Ceremonial occasions such as this were featured in the British colonial rule in ...

The meeting of Robert Clive with Mir Jafar.
The meeting of Robert Clive with Mir Jafar, after the battle of Plassey, in June 1757. Mir Jafar, Nawab of Bengal (1757-60 and 1763-65), had ...

The Nagarjunasar Dam in Mysore state.
The Nagarjunasar Dam in Mysore state, a multi-purpose project named for a Buddhist scholar who lived in that vicinity in the 2nd century A.D. In ...

The practice of Sati , widow immolation.
The practice of Sati , (or suttee), in theory a custom of voluntary immolation of widows on the funeral pyres of their husbands. In practice, ...

The Rani of Jhansi.
The Rani of Jhansi. When her husband, the ruler of Jhansi, died without issue in 1853, Lord Dalhousie, the Governor-General of India, did not ...

The relief of Lucknow, 1857.
The relief of Lucknow, 1857. Hundreds of British people were massacred during the rebellion, and a number of garrisons were besieged, notably ...

The Supreme Court at Madras, ca. 1860.
The Supreme Court at Madras, ca. 1860. The British gradually reformed the Indian legal system, which had varied in different parts of the ...

The viceregal summer palace at Simla.
The viceregal summer palace at Simla, in the foothills of the Himalayas. Simla, a hill town in Punjab about 170 miles north of Delhi, came under ...

Thugs in prison.
Thugs in prison. Thugs were a brotherhood of robbers who carried out armed robberies and murders in the name of religion. They had existed in ...

Tippu Sultan, the ruler of Mysore (1783-99).
Tippu Sultan, the ruler of Mysore from 1783 to 1799. During the decline of the Mughal Empire, the kingdom of Mysore became a chief power in ...

Traveling by railway in India around 1875.
Traveling by railway in India around 1875. Until the early 20th century, prejudice against the Indians usually was not related directly to race, ...

Vasco da Gama and the ruler of Calicut.
Vasco da Gama and the ruler of Calicut. Da Gama (1469-1524), a Portuguese navigator, was the first

European to make a sea voyage to India, in ...

View of old and new Delhi in late 19th century.

A panoramic view of old and new Delhi in the last quarter of the 19th century. According to tradition, seven cities have been built around ...

Warren Hastings (1732-1818).

Warren Hastings (1732-1818), the first Governor General of British India (from 1774 to 1784). Hastings abandoned the dual system set up by ...

William Hawkins.

William Hawkins, commander of the third British expedition to the East Indies. He reached Surat in 1608 with a letter from King James I to ...

Pre-Colonial India

A bullock is honored on the third day of Pongal.

A bullock is honored on the third day of Pongal, the South Indian festival of the rice harvest. Bullocks were important draft animals for ...

A carved ceiling in the Jain temple.

A carved ceiling in the Jain temple at Mt. Abu, ca. 9th-13th century A.D. Jainism, which is practiced by about two million followers, was ...

A general view of the excavations at Mohenjodaro.

A general view of the excavations at Mohenjodaro. Harappa and Mohenjodaro were the two centers of the Indus Valley civilization, about 2500-1500 ...

A gold worker.

A gold worker. The goldsmiths and jewelers of ancient India were highly skilled artisans who made ornaments both for humans and for god figures. ...

A man in a yoga position.

A man in a yoga position. One of the six systems of Hindu philosophy, this school of thought believed (and believes) that perfect control of ...

A map of Akbar's empire (in pink, above).

A map of Akbar's empire (in pink, above), which encompassed the area from the Himalayas to the Vindhya mountains. Akbar was an outstanding civil ...

A map of Asoka's empire.

A map of Asoka's empire. He held under Mauryan rule not only central India and the regions northwest of the Indus, but most of the Deccan as ...

A map of King Harsha's empire, 606-648 A.D..

A map of King Harsha's empire, 606-648 A.D. In North India the six centuries which followed the end of the powerful Gupta rule (ca. 320-535 ...

A map of the Sultanate of Delhi and the Rajputs.

A map of the Sultanate of Delhi and the Rajputs. The sultanate reigned from 1206 to 1526. During those 320 years, there were 34 rulers, ...

A Muslim Koran school.

A Muslim Koran school. Under the Mughals, the state gave large grants of rent-free lands to Muslim religious leaders to set up local schools. ...

A scene from the Ramayana .

A scene from the Ramayana , the story of King Rama, who probably lived in the 8th century B.C. The original epic is ascribed to the sage ...

A water wheel.

A water wheel. In the Arthasastra , which was written by the chief minister of King Chandragupta Maurya about the 4th century B.C., we learn ...

Akbar (1542-1605) most famous Mughal emperor.

Akbar (1542-1605), the third and most famous Mughal emperor, succeeded to a weak throne in 1556 on the death of his father, Humayun. Though he ...

Akbar playing parchesi .

Akbar playing parchesi on squares in the palace courtyard at Agra, using pretty slave girls as living pieces. Akbar also enjoyed several ...

An Ajanta Cave 1 painting of a Bodhisattva.

An Ajanta Cave 1 painting of a Bodhisattva. This painting belongs to the Gupta period, about the 6th century A.D. The dominant theme of these ...

An Indian bride, around 1830.

An Indian bride, around 1830. In the early Vedic period, women enjoyed a position of respect, but the unit of Aryan society was the patriarchal ...

Aurangzeb (reigned 1659-1707).

Aurangzeb (reigned 1659-1707), the last great Mughal Emperor of India, was the son of Shah Jahan who had held a number of important positions ...

Aurangzeb takes Shah Jahan prisoner.

Aurangzeb takes Shah Jahan prisoner. The third son of Shah Jahan, Aurangzeb, became a ruler by rebelling against his father. He captured Shah ...

Brahmins from Bengal.

Brahmins from Bengal. The Aryan society gradually developed a social hierarchy which divided Hindu society into four classes. The Brahmin or ...

Dancing Shiva, Dravadian bronze from 12th century.

Dancing Shiva, a Dravadian bronze from about the 12th century A.D. This was the period of the powerful Chola dynasty (846-1246 A.D.), which ...

Emperor Babur (1483-1530), founder Mughal dynasty.

Emperor Babur (1483-1530), the founder of the great Mughal dynasty, was descended from both Genghis Khan and Timur. At the age of twelve, he ...

Emperor Humayun (1508-1556).

Emperor Humayun (1508-1556), the son of Babur, succeeded him in 1530 and almost lost the empire his father had assembled. Humayun ruled from ...

Gautama Buddha with devotees.

Gautama Buddha with devotees, a stone sculpture from Taxila, about the 3rd century A.D. Guatama, also called Siddhartha ("he who has ...

Golden Temple at Amritsar, Sikhs' holiest shrine.

The Golden Temple at Amritsar, the holiest shrine of the Sikhs. This religious group was founded by the mystic Nanak (ca. 1469-ca. 1539), who ...

Illustrations were an integral part of books.

Emperor Shah Jehan and his son Aurangzeb, an image from an early book. Books and libraries were popular in Mughal India, but printing was not ...

Jahangir, fourth Mughal emperor (ruled 1605-27).

Jahangir, the fourth Mughal emperor (ruled 1605-1627), is depicted in this anonymous Mughal school painting as hunting a lion which had been ...

Krishna playing the flute.

Krishna playing the flute. Krishna is a very popular Hindu god whose legend can be traced back to the days of the Aryans. The four Vedas , the ...

Matchlock guns.

Matchlock guns. Babur's victories in India had in part been due to his possession of artillery, and match-fired muskets of European manufacture. ...

Members of the Vaishya or merchant class.

Members of the Vaishya or merchant class. Ranking third in the Aryan class system were the merchants and landlords. Initially, the Aryans had ...

Mumtaz Mahal.

Mumtaz Mahal. The Taj Mahal was built by Emperor Shah Jahan in memory of his wife, "the chosen one of the Palace," Mumtaz Mahal. She was the ...

Nadir Shah, the Shah of Iran from 1736 to 1747.

Nadir Shah, the Shah of Iran from 1736 to 1747, who invaded Mughal India in 1738-39, causing the decline of Mughal power. He sacked Delhi and ...

Pallava temple at Mahabalipuram, ca. 7th century.

A Pallava temple at Mahabalipuram of about the 7th century A.D. Mahabalipuram was a Pallava seaport to the south of Madras. The kingdoms of ...

Qutb Minar, or the Tower of Victory, Old Delhi.

The Qutb Minar, or the Tower of Victory, located on the southern outskirts of Old Delhi. Qutb-ud-din Aibak, who began its construction to ...

Ranjit Singh, maharaja of largest Sikh kingdom.

Ranjit Singh, the founder and maharaja of the largest Sikh kingdom in the Punjab. He inherited the leadership of a Sikh group in 1792 and began ...

Shiva, one of the new gods, India ca. 1000 B. C..

Shiva, one of the new gods who became popular among the Aryans in India around 1000 B.C. Shiva developed from the Vedic storm god Rudra, and is ...

Shivaji (1627-80), founder of Maratha "nation."

Shivaji (1627-80), called the founder of the Maratha "nation" by his followers and the "Mountain Rat of the Deccan" by Emperor Aurangzeb. From ...

Terra cotta toy cow, with movable head.

A terra cotta toy cow, with a movable head, from Mohenjodaro. Other toys excavated here were small carts, whistles shaped like birds, and toy ...

The exterior of the Ajanta caves.

The exterior of the Ajanta caves. Located in the state of Andhra Pradesh, these are a group of about 30 caves excavated out of solid rock, which ...

The Juma Mosque.

The Juma Mosque . The Juma Masjid or the Friday Mosque was built during the time of Shah Jahan, who ruled from 1628 to 1658. Its large size and ...

The Red Fort, important historical monument.

The Red Fort, one of the most important historical monuments at Delhi. Shah Jahan officially transferred his capital from Agra and built this ...

The warrior class, led by the king.

The warrior class, led by the king, probably was at first the highest class of Indian society. Its primary duty was to protect the other ...

Trading boats on the Ganges river, ca. 1835.

Trading boats on the Ganges river, ca. 1835. From pre-colonial times up to the present, India's rivers have served as major transportation ...

Tulsi Das (1532-1623).

Tulsi Das (1532-1623) was one of the greatest Hindi poets of Akbar's days. Next to Persian, the Hindi

language received the greatest patronage ...

History of Japan

Bunraku , or puppet theater.
Japanese puppet theater, Bunraku. The Tokugawa period witnessed the full development of these puppet ...

Divine Soldiers Descend on Palembamg .
Divine Soldiers Descend on Palembamg, Sumatra 1942 , a Japanese painting by Tsuputa Goro. By March 1, 1942, the Japanese forces had landed on ...

Kabuki stage at the National Theater, Tokyo.
A performance at the Kabuki stage at the National Theater, Tokyo. While the tea ceremony, No , and traditional aristocratic art forms ...

Samurai armor.
Armor of the Samurai. All of this societal upheaval was not accepted peacefully. The most important protest, the Satsuma Rebellion of 1877, ...

Seppuku , warrior ritual suicide.
The ceremony of seppuku or warrior ritual suicide, known more commonly to the West as hara-kiri . The Song Neo-Confucianism of the 12th ...

Shino ware.
An example of Shino ware. Bowls used for the tea ceremony were (and are) special works of art with particular traditions. They intrigue and ...

Thirty-Six Immortal Poets , by Sakai Hoitsu.
A black-and-white reproduction of the painting of Thirty-Six Immortal Poets , by Sakai Hoitsu (d. 1828). The Tokugawa era produced one of ...

Torii , Itsukushima Shrine, Miyajima Island.
A Torii at the Itsukushima Shrine on Miyajima Island. The Japanese indigenous religion is called Shinto, or "the way of the gods." These gods ...

"Big Nine" at World Disarmament Conference, 1921.
The "Big Nine" at the World Disarmament Conference, 1921. The international stature of Japan was shown when nine world powers met in Washington, ...

A kamikaze attack.
A kamikaze attack on the U.S. cruiser Columbia in the Sulu Sea on January 6, 1945, illustrating the determination and terror which were ...

A No drama.
A No drama. The arts of the Muromachi period owed much to the patronage of the warrior society which adopted Zen Buddhism as a guiding ...

A Tale of Genji scroll.
A Tale of Genji scroll. Brilliance and elegance in color, dress, hair and general style are well illustrated in this painting. The supreme ...

A bamboo grove in the Nembutsuji Temple, Kyoto.
A bamboo grove in the Nembutsuji Temple, Kyoto. Bamboo is considered auspicious, and bestows many blessings as a result of its beauty and ...

A global view of Japan.
A global view of Japan (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

A Japanese expedition against Korea.
A Japanese expedition against Korea. Toyotomi Hideyoshi developed grandiose plans for the conquest of China after he completed the unification ...

A Japanese scholar writing.
A Japanese scholar writing. The interest in Neo-Confucianism eventually produced a Japanese school of research and thought which led to renewed ...

A Japanese torpedo bomber.
A Japanese torpedo bomber heads for the U.S. carrier Yorktown , 1944. While the terrible fighting raged on Saipan itself, one of the world's ...

A lacquered box.
A lacquered box. This gold five-layered segmented lacquer box is considered a masterwork of Japanese art. It illustrates the opulence of the ...

A lacquered writing box of Momoyama period.
An elegant and richly decorated lacquered writing box of the Momoyama period, used by a scholar when engaged in calligraphy . The gold lacquer ...

A map of East Asia.
A map of East Asia. Japan entered World War I on the side of the Allied Powers, at the request of Great Britain. The Japanese seized the German ...

A map of Japan and Korea.
A map of Japan and Korea. Japan, or Nihon , has four major islands. Kyushu is the southernmost; Honshu, the largest; Shikoku is the smallest; ...

A May Day demonstration, ca. 1934.
A May Day demonstration, ca. 1934. Communist agitation and activity were severely restricted in the interwar period, 1919-37. The third son of ...

A pasture with a combine, in Kushiro.
A pasture with a combine, in Kushiro. Before World War II, 50% of the Japanese people worked on the land.

Today the figure is less than 20%, ...

A portrait of Emperor Hirohito.

A portrait of Emperor Hirohito, n.d. Adding to these woes, or symbolic of them, the Taisho emperor was effectively removed in the best Japanese ...

A scene from The 47 Ronin .

A scene from The 47 Ronin . The Tokugawa period produced Japan's greatest dramatist, Chikamatsu Monzaemon (d. 1724), who is sometimes called ...

A tea ceremony (chanoyu).

A tea ceremony. To many, in earlier times and now, the essence of Muromachi period artistic sentiment was considered to be the tea ceremony (...

A thermal power plant in Osaka.

A thermal power plant in Osaka. The Osaka of Buddhist monasteries and Shinto shrines is gone; Toyotomi Hideyoshi's castle battlements no ...

A U.S. paratroop drop in New Guinea.

A U.S. paratroop drop in New Guinea. The Allied campaign for New Guinea lasted from 1942 to 1944. The Japanese suffered at least 50,000 dead; ...

A wedding at the Meiji Shrine.

A wedding at the Meiji Shrine. Despite the destruction caused by the war and the subsequent economic and social changes, many cultural aspects ...

A Zen monk giving a lesson in calligraphy.

A Zen monk giving a lesson in calligraphy . Every educated person in Japan cultivates a writing style with the proper brush stroke worthy of ...

Ainus bowing before a dead bear.

Ainus bowing before a dead bear. The Ainus gave great reverence to bears as one of the tribal guardian spirits. They killed one ritually each ...

Alessandro Valignano, S.J. (1539-1606)

Alessandro Valignano, S.J. The man usually considered the second greatest Jesuit missionary of the period was Father Alessandro Valignano from ...

American B-25 bombers attacking Rabaul.

American B-25 bombers attacking Rabaul, New Britain, in the Solomon Islands, n.d. This base was the command center for the Japanese military in ...

American Infantry during Kwajalein fighting.

The American 7th Infantry Division in action during the Kwajalein fighting, February 3, 1944. This picture gives an indication of the horrors of ...

Amida Buddha seated on lotus in Byodoin Temple.

The Amida Buddha seated on a lotus in the Byodoin Temple at Uji. The Byodoin Temple was founded by Fujiwara Yorimichi in 1052. It was a center ...

Amphibious tanks approaching Iwo Jima.

Amphibious tanks approaching Iwo Jima during the landing there on February 20, 1945, with Mt. Suribachi in the background. The volcanic island ...

An automated factory.

An automated factory. Japan's production methods and fully automated factories have excited the admiration and envy of the world. In Japan, ...

An Axis rally in Tokyo, 1937.

An Axis rally in Tokyo, 1937. In November 1936, Japan signed the Anti-Comintern pact with Germany, and in 1937 Italy was included in the Pact. ...

An early Japanese merchant ship.

An early Japanese merchant ship. The Inland Sea and other water highways in and around the Japanese Island made commerce by water an important ...

Asuka, near Nara.

Asuka, near Nara. Not only was Buddhism encouraged by the court, but literary pursuits thrived under Chinese inspiration. In imitation of ...

Bomb damage in Tokyo.

Bomb damage in Tokyo. Well before the atomic bombs were dropped, Japan had been devastated by the conventional U.S. air attacks. As one ...

Cavite naval yards after Japanese raid.

The Cavite naval yards in the Philippine Islands on December 12, 1941, following a Japanese raid. The Japanese attacked the Philippine Islands ...

Cherry blossoms at the Kofukuji Temple, Nara.

Cherry blossoms at the Kofukuji Temple, Nara. The imperial court was located at Nara from 710 to 794. Nara was modeled on the Chinese capital ...

Commodore Matthew Perry (1794-1858).

Commodore Matthew Perry (1794-1858), USN, who began a revolution in Japan with his arrival in 1853 as official envoy from the President of the ...

Commodore Perry presents gifts to the Japanese.

Commodore Perry presents gifts to the Japanese, intended for the emperor. The gifts included a telegraph system and a miniature locomotive (at ...

Delivery of Fillmore's letter to the Japanese.

Delivery of Fillmore's letter to the Japanese. Commodore Perry delivered a letter of greetings and introduction from United States President ...

Emperor Meiji enters Edo Castle.
Emperor Meiji enters Edo Castle. Kyoto had served as the imperial capital since 794. The Meiji Emperor moved his court to Edo in 1868 and ...
Emperor Meiji opens Parliament.
Emperor Meiji opens Parliament. The Meiji Period is dated from 1868 to 1912. Between the Meiji Restoration in 1868 and the opening of ...
Feudal warriors.
Feudal warriors. From 1331 onward there had been a complicated series of conflicts and revolts centered around two separate imperial courts. ...
Flying Tigers of American 14th Air Force.
The famous Flying Tigers of the American 14th Air Force under General Claire Chennault, who in the early part of the war had been the primary air ...
Formal photograph of Admiral Togo in uniform.
A formal photograph of Admiral Togo in full naval uniform. From 1914 to 1924, Togo was in charge of the education of Crown Prince, and later ...
Former Prime Minister Nakasone.
Former Prime Minister Nakasone. In 1982, Nakasone Yashuhiro became the leader of the Liberal Democratic Party (LDP), which had ruled Japan since ...
General MacArthur going ashore in Lingayen Gulf.
General Douglas MacArthur going ashore in Lingayen Gulf on January 22, 1945. When MacArthur landed in Australia after his flight from the ...
General Nogi at Port Arthur.
General Nogi at Port Arthur. The Emperor Meiji died in 1912. The Army hero of the Russo-Japanese War, General Nogi, committed seppuku on the ...
General Nogi Maresuke and Admiral Togo Heihachiro.
General Nogi Maresuke and Admiral Togo Heihachiro. Despite the public unhappiness over the Portsmouth Treaty, the war produced military heroes ...
General Suzuki, Kwantung commander, Manchuria.
General Suzuki, the Kwantung commander in Manchuria. The Japanese domestic "incidents" were overshadowed by the Manchurian Incident, as it was ...
General Tojo Hideki at war crimes trial, 1948.
General Tojo Hideki at the war crimes trial, January 1948. Japanese leaders were put on trial for war crimes, as were their German and six ...
Go-Daigo (d. 1338).
Go-Daigo (d. 1338). The Kamakura period was one that could have taught lessons to Byzantium on the art of intricate rule. The Heian (Kyoto) era ...
Gurkha soldiers of British 14th Army in Burma.
Gurkha soldiers (from Nepal) of the British 14th Army in Prome, Burma at the time of its recapture by the Allies, May 22, 1945. The Allied ...
Hiroshima after the atomic explosion.
Hiroshima after the atomic explosion. It is estimated that at least 100,000 people died when this bomb was dropped on Hiroshima on August 6, ...
Ieyasu's forces capture Osaka Castle.
Ieyasu's forces capture Osaka Castle. In 1615, Tokugawa Ieyasu destroyed the power of the Toyotomi Hideyoshi family by storming Osaka Castle. ...
Indian Sikh gunners in Singapore.
This group of Indian Sikh gunners in Singapore illustrates an element of British Imperial defense policy. Throughout the Second World War, ...
Isibutai tomb at Asuka near Nara.
Isibutai tomb at Asuka near Nara. The history of Japan before the 6th century A.D. is somewhat unclear and fragmentary. Much is based on ...
Ito Hirobumi, exemplified new mobility.
Ito Hirobumi, who exemplified the new mobility in Meiji Japan. He had been a samurai from Choshu, which region with Satsuma led the sweeping ...
Japanese and Chinese cavalry, Sino-Japanese War.
A clash between Japanese and Chinese cavalry during the Sino-Japanese War, 1894-95. Japanese trade and political competition with China in Korea ...
Japanese carrier Shoho is torpedoed.
The Japanese aircraft carrier Shoho after it had been torpedoed in the Coral Sea. The Japanese advance toward Australia was stemmed at the ...
Japanese cruiser on fire in battle, Midway Island.
A Japanese heavy cruiser on fire during the battle of Midway Island, June 1942. Ironically, the victor of Pearl Harbor, Admiral Nagumo Chuichi, ...
Japanese drawing, Start of Burma Campaign .
A Japanese drawing entitled Start of Burma Campaign, Japanese Tanks Advancing 1942 . From Thailand, the Japanese smashed their way into British ...
Japanese gun at Port Arthur, Russo-Japanese War.
A Japanese siege gun at Port Arthur during the Russo-Japanese War, 1904-05. The land war between the Russians and Japanese was quite different ...
Japanese opposing a Mongol fleet.

Japanese opposing a Mongol fleet. After the Japanese beheaded two more Mongol emissaries, the Mongols returned in 1281 with two invasion fleets ...

Japanese Treaty Commission, 1860.

The Japanese Treaty Commission, 1860, at the Washington Naval Yard. In that year the Japanese sent their first ambassador to the United States, ...

Japanese warriors fighting the Chinese.

Japanese warriors fighting the Chinese. In 1271, the Mongols under Khubilai Khan established the Yuan dynasty (1271-1368) in China. The Mongols ...

Kiichi Miyazawa (b. 1919).

Kiichi Miyazawa (b. 1919), who was elected prime minister of Japan in November, 1991. His predecessor was Toshiki Kaifu, who served as prime ...

Kinkakuji (the Golden Pavilion), at Kyoto.

Kinkakuji (the Golden Pavilion), at Kyoto. In spite of the devastating political tumult and wars, or some would say because of them, the ...

Lady Murasaki Shikibu.

Lady Murasaki Shikibu. The subtle nature and complexity of Heian or Kyoto civilization may be examined in one of the world's first novels, The ...

MacArthur and Hirohito.

MacArthur and Hirohito. The occupation of Japan was directed by General Douglas MacArthur, who was appointed Supreme Commander for the Allied ...

Marpi Point, Saipan.

Marpi Point, Saipan. Between June 19 and July 9, 1944, a ferocious battle was fought between the Japanese and American forces on the island of ...

Meeting of Minseito Party managers, January 1937.

A meeting of Minseito Party managers, January 1937. Further "direct action" followed. Conspiracies against the state and political system by ...

Minamoto Yoritomo.

Minamoto Yoritomo. The period from 1185 to 1333 is known as the Kamakura Period. The era saw the establishment of a military dictatorship known ...

Mitsubishi engine plant at Nagoya under attack.

The Mitsubishi engine plant at Nagoya under attack by B-29 bombers of the U.S. 20th Air Force, 1945. Months before the atomic bomb was dropped, ...

Mt. Fuji and the Tokyo Express.

Mt. Fuji and the Tokaido Express. Japanese high-speed "bullet trains," or shinkansen , have an international reputation. This picture ...

Nagoya Castle.

Nagoya Castle. The period from 1600 to 1868 is known as the Tokugawa Period. Ieyasu was granted the title of shogun by the emperor in Kyoto ...

Oda Nobunaga.

Oda Nobunaga. In the later part of the 16th century, three warlords or daimyo (literally, great name) defeated their rivals and unified Japan. ...

On Okinawa, Himeyuri Memorial to Japanese nurses.

On Okinawa, the Himeyuri Memorial to Japanese nurses who died during the fighting on the island. In the Pacific War, the ferocity of the ...

Peasant in Japanese countryside in winter.

A peasant in the Japanese countryside wearing winter clothing. The political fabric unraveled and the country was devastated by the Onin War ...

Perry's dinner with Japanese officials, 1864.

When Commodore Perry returned to Japan in February, l854, the Treaty of Kanagawa was concluded in the name of the shogun and not the emperor. ...

Police in front of the Diet, 1933.

Police in front of the Diet, 1933. The violence in domestic politics and in Manchuria was manifested within the Japanese military itself. The ...

Prince Shotoku Taishi with courtiers.

Prince Shotoku Taishi with courtiers. Many aspects of Chinese culture were consciously adopted by the Japanese, such as Confucianism; the ...

Prince Shotoku.

A closer view of Prince Shotoku. Until 552, the Shinto religion dominated the life of the Japanese people. In that year Buddhism was ...

Print of Japanese sailing vessel or junk ca. 1855.

A Western print of a Japanese sailing vessel or junk, ca. 1855. In the first half of the 19th century, the Japanese leadership was confronted ...

Prisoners during infamous Bataan Death March.

Filipino and American prisoners during the infamous Bataan Death March, in the course of which 10,000 prisoners died. The Japanese forces under ...

Procession of feudal lords along the Tokaido .

A procession of feudal lords along the Tokaido , the great highway from Edo to Kyoto. An important feature of Tokugawa political control was ...

Roosevelt asking Congress to declare war on Japan.

President Franklin D. Roosevelt asking the Congress to declare war on Japan, which it did on December 8,

1941. Adhering to the Tripartite ...

Russian battleship hit by Japanese at Tsushima.
A Russian battleship is hit by Japanese fire at Tsushima, 1905. The Russian Baltic fleet had been sent around Africa on a 220-day voyage, only ...

Russians arrive at Portsmouth Treaty Conference.
Russian delegates arrive at the Portsmouth Treaty Conference, August 5, 1905. U.S. President Theodore Roosevelt invited both Japan and Russia to ...

Shimabara Castle.
Shimabara Castle. The persecution of Christians, coupled with the oppression of the peasantry, eventually resulted in a great peasant uprising ...

Shinto shrine for Amaterasu, Sun Goddess.
This Shinto shrine for Amaterasu, the Sun Goddess, is located at Ise on the Inland Sea near the Isuzu River. The inner shrine is rebuilt of ...

Smallpox fleeing from Minamoto Yoritomo.
Smallpox fleeing from Minamoto Yoritomo. The victory over the Taira was achieved by two brothers of the Minamoto clan, Yoshitsune and Yoritomo. ...

St. Francis Xavier.
St. Francis Xavier. Portuguese, and later Spanish, missionaries followed the Portuguese trade. The most famous missionary was the Basque Jesuit ...

Surrender ceremony which ended the Pacific War.
The surrender ceremony which ended the Pacific War, September 2, 1945, aboard the U.S.S. Missouri in Tokyo Bay. General Douglas MacArthur ...

Tanaka campaigning.
Tanaka campaigning. The Korean War helped to launch what has been called Japan's "economic miracle," which has made Japan one of the great ...

Terraces of Imperial Palace being cultivated.
The terraces of the moat of the Imperial Palace in Tokyo being cultivated for food, ca. 1947. The near-starvation and bare subsistence level ...

The assassination of Prime Minister Hamaguchi.
The assassination of Prime Minister Hamaguchi. Men in the military and in extreme nationalist societies such as the Genyosha (Dark Ocean ...

The Custom House at Yokohama, ca. 1861.
The Custom House at Yokohama, ca. 1861. The 19th century modernization naturally led to Japanese interests beyond her borders. This was also ...

The Daibutsu (Great Buddha) of Todaiji Temple.
The Daibutsu (Great Buddha) of the Todaiji Temple at Nara. This statue of the Buddha is housed in the largest wooden structure in the world, at ...

The Diet in session.
The Diet in session, n.d. Political parties, including Socialist and Communist, were allowed to participate in the new democracy supervised by ...

The Dutch concession at Nagasaki.
The Dutch concession at Nagasaki, n.d. In 1636, the death penalty was decreed for any Japanese who attempted to travel abroad. In 1641 the last ...

The Earl of Elgin lands at Jeddo, 1858.
The Earl of Elgin lands at Jeddo, 1858. After the success of the Americans, Great Britain pressed for trading rights, and James Bruce, the Earl ...

The Emperor Mutsuhito (reigned 1867-1912).
The Emperor Mutsuhito (reigned 1867-1912) inaugurated what was called the Meiji Restoration, since genuine power was restored to the emperor. ...

The Five-Storied Pagoda in winter at Nikko.
The Five-Storied Pagoda in winter at Nikko. Tokugawa Ieyasu died in 1616, and eventually his remains were deposited at Nikko. He was made a ...

The Ginza in Tokyo.
The Ginza in Tokyo. Few areas in Japan have a greater international notoriety than the street and district known as the Ginza, which literally ...

The Heian Shrine at Kyoto.
The Heian Shrine at Kyoto. The period from 794 to 1185 is known as the Heian since the imperial court was moved from Nara to Heian or Kyoto. ...

The Heiji (or Heike) civil war.
The Heiji (or Heike) civil war. the Heian period ended in bloody civil strife as warriors outside the court circle gained independence and ...

The Imperial Palace, Tokyo.
The Imperial Palace, Tokyo. The Japanese royal family continues to occupy the Imperial Palace, in the heart of modern, bustling Tokyo. The ...

The Inland Sea at sunrise.
The Inland Sea at sunrise. The beauty of the Inland Sea has inspired much Japanese poetry and ...

The Japanese battleship Shikishima .
The Japanese battleship Shikishima . Due to the commercial treaty of 1894, Great Britain agreed to end extraterritoriality and the unequal ...

The Japanese occupation of P'yongyang, Korea.

The Japanese occupation of P'yongyang, Korea. By the Treaty of Shimonoseki, which ended the Sino-Japanese War in 1895, Japan received Formosa ...

The last days of Singapore, 1942.

The last days of Singapore, 1942. The Malay jungles to the northeast of the city of Singapore had been thought to be impenetrable, but ...

The last Tokugawa Shogun, Yoshinobu or Keiki.

The last Tokugawa Shogun , Yoshinobu or Keiki. After much dispute and some violence, a movement to restore the imperial power and to abolish ...

The Lytton Commission.

The Lytton Commission. China appealed to the League of Nations, and the Lytton Commission, which was named for its British chairman, Lord Victor ...

The Ouru Catholic cathedral.

The Ouru Catholic cathedral. In an effort to demonstrate good will to the West, the proscription against Christianity was finally abolished. ...

The Peace Conference at Versailles, 1919.

The Peace Conference at Versailles, 1919. Japan had also joined the Allied expedition to Siberia following the 1917 revolution in Russia, and ...

The persecution of Catholics from 1600 to 1650.

The persecution of Catholics during the period from 1600 to 1650. Priests, along with thousands of Japanese Catholics, were relentlessly hunted ...

The stone garden at Ryoanji Temple, Kyoto.

The stone garden at Ryoanji Temple, Kyoto. The disciplined elegance favored by the Japanese took many forms, one of which was landscape ...

The Tokyo skyline.

The Tokyo skyline. Tokyo has become one of the largest cities in the world, and it has the usual advantages and disadvantages of a great ...

The Toshogu Shrine in Nikko.

The Toshogu Shrine in Nikko. Despite the abolition of the feudal system in 1871 and the introduction of Western forms, Japan retained its unique ...

The U.S. carrier Suwanee .

The U.S. carrier Suwanee , which was sunk by a kamikaze attack in Leyte Gulf, October 26, 1944. The American invasion of the Philippines ...

The Yasukuni Shrine, Tokyo.

The Yasukuni Shrine, Tokyo. State Shinto and the cult of Kokutai were abolished under the occupation, but private devotions were permitted. ...

Three Banzai for the emperor.

Three Banzai for the emperor at a Seiyukai Party meeting. In May 1932, Prime Minister Inukai Tsuyoshi was assassinated by naval officers. ...

Tokugawa Ieyasu, third and final unifier of Japan.

Tokugawa Ieyasu, the third and final unifier of Japan after centuries of disunity. Ieyasu had been a daimyo and vassal to both Oda Nobunaga ...

Tokyo policeman breathes oxygen in city's smog.

A Tokyo policeman breathes oxygen in order to work in the city's heavy ...

Townsend Harris, first American Consul General.

Townsend Harris, the first American Consul General to Japan. He arrived in Shimoda to secure a trade agreement. After protracted negotiations, ...

Toyotomi Hideyoshi.

Toyotomi Hideyoshi. The second stage of consolidation was accomplished by Hideyoshi, who had been a vassal and leading general of Oda Nobunaga. ...

Traders in the Tokyo Stock Exchange, 1949.

Traders in the Tokyo Stock Exchange, 1949. During the Tokugawa period, Tokyo (Edo) had an exchange for trading in rice. In 1878, following the ...

Troops during the 1936 Mutiny.

Troops during the 1936 Mutiny. The violence climaxed in the spectacular attempted coup d'etat known as the February 26 Incident. The Kodo ...

U.S. 3rd Amphibious Task Force off Guadalcanal.

The U.S. 3rd Amphibious Task Force off Guadalcanal, August 7, 1942. The Allied campaigns in the Pacific were directed primarily by American ...

U.S. marines blasting a cave on Okinawa, 1945.

U.S. Marines blasting a cave on Okinawa, 1945. The battle for Okinawa in the Ryukyu Islands raged from April 1 to June 22, 1945. Approximately ...

U.S. Secretary of State & French Foreign Minister.

U.S. Secretary of State Frank B. Kellogg (left) and the French Foreign Minister, Aristide Briand. In 1928 a further attempt to foster world ...

U.S.Aleutian Islands base during air raid, 1942.

The U.S. base at Dutch Harbor in the Aleutian Islands during a Japanese air raid, June 3, 1942. 43 Americans were killed and 50 wounded in two ...

Video Overview: The history of Japan.

A brief video Overview of the history of Japan, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: Knowledge of Japan before the 6th century A.D. ...

Wedded Rocks or Meota-Iwa, in Futamiga-ura Bay.
Wedded Rocks or Meota-Iwa, in Futamiga-ura Bay. Japanese tradition says that the Japanese islands were formed from the lance of the Kami or ...
World Disarmament Conference in session, 1921.
The World Disarmament Conference in session, November 21, 1921, in the Continental Hall of the Daughters of the American Revolution building in ...
Wreckage of Naval Station, Pearl Harbor, Dec. 7th.
The wreckage of the Naval Air Station at Pearl Harbor, December 7, 1941. On April 13 of that year Japan had signed a neutrality pact with the ...
Yoshida Shigeru leads banzai for emperor.
Yoshida Shigeru leads the cheers (or banzai) for the emperor. The most important political figure during the occupation and thereafter until ...
Yoshida signs the treaty of peace.
Yoshida signs the treaty of peace. The Korean War, which began on June 25, 1950, helped to end the occupation. On September 8, 1951, in the ...

History of Korea

Ch'omsongdae , Oldest observatory in Orient.
The Shilla period was not only renowned for its gold and granite artistic and religious achievements; it produced the oldest observatory in the ...
Diamond Mountains , a painting by Chong Son.
The Diamond Mountains , a painting by Chong Son (1676-1759), who pioneered a Korean style of painting called chin-gyong , or true landscape. ...
Maitreya Buddha at Kwanch'oksa Temple.
A Maitreya (Miruk) Buddha at Kwanch'oksa Temple, Puyo. This image exemplifies a type of culture which is unique to Korea. The style is ...
Maitreya (Miruk) Buddha, Popchusa Temple.
The Maitreya (Miruk) Buddha at the Popchusa Temple in Kyongju. It was made of granite, which was the favorite Korean building material due to ...
A Maitreya Buddha.
A Maitreya Buddha. Paekche was as important for the cultural development of Japan as it was for Korea. By the ninth century a third of ...
A 19th century ox horn cabinet.
A 19th century ox horn cabinet, showing another unique Korean tradition that is continued by the Intangible Cultural Assets. This miniature ...
A blue and white porcelain vase.
A blue and white porcelain vase. The Yi dynasty potters developed blue and white porcelain under the inspiration of the Chinese Ming dynasty. ...
A bow and arrow maker.
A bow and arrow maker. A manifestation of the Korean sense of cultural balance amidst explosive industrial development is depicted in this image ...
A bronze bell.
A bronze bell. Shilla artisans were skilled in the art of bronze bell casting for Buddhist monasteries and temples. These bells remain among ...
A bronze statue of Admiral Yi Sun-shin erected.
A bronze statue of Admiral Yi Sun-shin erected in 1952 near the Korean naval center at Chinhae. Note the Korean gentleman in a black horsehair ...
A celadon (ch'ongja) wine cup.
A celadon (ch'ongja) wine cup, an example of the exquisite craftsmanship of the Koryo potters. The wine cup and its celadon stand are both ...
A contemporary court orchestra.
A contemporary court orchestra. The long tradition of Confucian and Korean music was carefully cultivated by the Yi court. Performances such as ...
A contemporary map of Korea and adjacent nations.
A contemporary map of Korea and adjacent nations. Korea is a peninsula shaped like a rabbit or hare, and its geographical location between China ...
A court dance.
A court dance. The beauties of traditional court dance were also carefully cultivated by the Yi Dynasty and are continued in Korea's modern ...
A global view of Korea.
A global view of Korea (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...
A gold relic container.
A gold relic container. This sarira (sari means relic) or reliquary held relics of the Buddha and was placed inside a pagoda . The sarira ...
A hunting scene in Koguryo.
A hunting scene in Koguryo. The northern state of Koguryo had maintained a strong North Asian tradition, and its capital at one time was in ...
A Korean Boeing 747 air liner.
A Korean Boeing 747 air liner. 1983 was a bloody year for Korea. On September 1, a Korean Airlines 747, flight 007, was shot down by a Soviet ...

A map of the Three Kingdoms.
A map of the Three Kingdoms. The period from 313-668 A.D. is known as the Three Kingdoms Period. This name is the same as an early period in ...
A mother-of-pearl lacquer box, from Yi dynasty.
A mother-of-pearl lacquer box, made during the Yi dynasty in the 15th century. In the rush of the modern obsession with hurried change and ...
A painting of a Sodang , by Kim Hong-do.
A painting of a Sodang , by Kim Hong-do (b. 1745). The Confucian bureaucracy dominated the life of Yi society. A person achieved a position by ...
A painting of the death of Admiral Yi.
A painting of the death of Admiral Yi. Repeatedly, Yi engaged in battles in which his forces destroyed dozens (by his death, it was hundreds) of ...
A portrait of Yi Ch'ae (1680-1746).
A portrait of Yi Ch'ae. The extreme Yi factionalism had many causes, ranging from genuine abuses in society to personal ambitions. In the ...
A portrait of Yi Hang-bok (1566-1643).
A portrait of Yi Hang-bok (1566-1643). The Japanese invasions of 1592 and 1597 devastated Korea in every way, and two later Manchu invasions in ...
A rain gauge or pluviometer.
A rain gauge or pluviometer. As a model Confucian ruler and as intermediary between heaven and men in the great Confucian Triad, Sejong ...
A street scene in Seoul, ca. 1910.
A street scene in Seoul, ca. 1910. At that time Seoul was a city of primarily thatched-roof homes and one- or two-story buildings. (Compare ...
A summer landscape painted in 1816 by Yi In-mun.
A summer landscape painted in 1816 by Yi In-mun (1745-1821), an official painter in the Korean Royal Office of Painting. Scholars and painters ...
Admiral Yi in battle.
Admiral Yi in battle. One of Admiral Yi's crucial inventions in his combat with Japan was the world's first ironclad ships, 300 years before ...
American and North Korean guards at P'anmunjom.
Two American guards and a North Korean guard at P'anmunjom, 1970. An armistice, not a peace treaty, was signed on July 27, 1953. Coming ...
An infiltration tunnel.
An infiltration tunnel. The persistence and dedication of the North Korean military is shown by this infiltration tunnel, which was discovered ...
As shown, the turtle ship was ironclad.
As shown by this model, the turtle ship was ironclad. On top of the ship were placed awl-shaped protruding nails, except for a slender ...
Axe murder victims.
Axe murder victims. On August 18, 1976, two U.S. Army officers at P'anmunjom were killed by North Korean officers, without any warning of ...
Buddhist nuns at the Sonom-sa Temple.
Buddhist nuns at the Sonom-sa Temple. Wang Kon left a legacy known as T'aejo's Ten Injunctions , a series of admonitions to future leaders ...
Buddhist pagoda on grounds, Kyongbok Palace.
The ten-storied stone Buddhist pagoda on the grounds of the Kyongbok Palace in Seoul. This pagoda, a National Treasure, was built in 1348 and ...
Celadon vase called imaebyong (plum vase).
A style of celadon vase called maebyong (plum vase). This particular vase is often called the "thousand crane" vase, and is one of the supreme ...
Celebration of Buddha's birthday at temple, Seoul.
The celebration of the Buddha's birthday at a temple in Seoul. The importance of Buddhism to Korean history was acknowledged in 1975 when ...
Chinese "volunteers" capture U.S. tanks.
Chinese "volunteers" capture U.S. tanks, as pictured by the Chinese communist artist Li Hua, n.d. MacArthur pushed northward in an effort to ...
Chou Pong-jun leading rebels in Tonghak Rebel.
Chou Pong-jun leading the rebels in the Tonghak Rebellion. A widespread Korean peasant rebellion occurred in 1894 as a result of decades of ...
Commander Robert Shufeldt.
Commander Robert Shufeldt. Beginning in 1853, Commodore Matthew Perry had opened Japan to trade relations with the western world, but Korea ...
Confucian ceremonies (Sokchongje).
Confucian ceremonies (Sokchongje). Twice each year, in March and September, ceremonies are held to honor Confucius (Kongja in Korean). ...
Ear Monument or Ear Tomb (Mimizuka), Japan.
The Ear Monument or Ear Tomb (Mimizuka) in Kyoto, Japan. The Japanese invading armies swept quickly up the Korean peninsula in 1592, until the ...
Emperor Kojong.

Emperor Kojong. Korea remained nominally independent after the Sino-Japanese war of 1894-95. In 1897 King Kojong proclaimed himself emperor in ...

Emperor Sunjong, the last Yi ruler.
Emperor Sunjong, the last Yi ruler. In 1909 the Japanese governor-general of Korea, Ito Hirobumi, was assassinated in Manchuria by a Korean ...

Gold sutra tablets and box.
Gold sutra tablets and box. These gold plates demonstrate the depth of devotion and rich patronage of Shilla society. They are a unique ...

Gold antler crown from the Shilla period.
This gold antler crown from the Shilla period is sometimes called an antler crown due to its upright appendages. It seems to reflect the ...

Haeinsa tablets.
Haeinsa tablets. In the 13th century Genghis Khan (also spelled Chinggis, Jenghiz, etc.) led the Mongols in central Asia to establish one of the ...

High rise buildings in Seoul.
High rise buildings in Seoul. President Park oversaw the "economic miracle" which made Korean industry famous throughout the world. During his ...

Hill 717 in Korea, April 11, 1951.
Hill 717 in Korea, April 11, 1951. The bloody stalemate caused a furor in the United States. General MacArthur publicly disagreed with ...

Historical painting of battle of Ansi-Song, 645.
A historical painting of the battle of Ansi-Song, 645 A.D. Much of Koguryo's strength was expended in ferocious battles against the Chinese, ...

Immaculate Conception or Myongdong Cathedral.
The Immaculate Conception or Myongdong Cathedral in Seoul, built in 1898. The Catholic church has been active in Korea since 1784. Catholicism ...

Japanese troops detrain in Korea, around 1904.
Japanese troops detrain in Korea, around 1904. The well-trained army of Japan was faced by hopelessly inadequate Korean military ...

Jar with painted bamboo, example of Yi pottery.
This white jar with painted bamboo is a fine example of Yi pottery. Bamboo is a Confucian symbol of a scholar; it symbolizes the virtues of ...

King Sejong decree, starting han'gul writing.
The original decree by King Sejong, establishing the han'gul Korean writing system. In 1446, Sejong promulgated a new writing system which is ...

Koguryo in the 5th century.
Koguryo in the 5th century. China conquered the ancient northern kingdom of Choson in 108 B.C. under Emperor Han Wudi. One of the most ...

Korea in the Choson dynasty.
Korea in the Choson dynasty. The Tripitaka did not stop Kubilai Khan, and eventually the Koreans were forced to assist him in the two ...

Korean Admiral Yi Sun-shin (1545-1598).
A portrait of Korean Admiral Yi Sun-shin (1545-1598). The greatest military hero in Korean history devastated the Japanese naval forces in 1592 ...

Korean rebels who fought against Japan about 1905.
Korean rebels who fought against Japan around 1905. The Japanese conquest of Korea was resisted by many ordinary Koreans such as these, many of ...

Korean women dancing around the national flag.
Korean women dancing around the national flag. Koreans love grace and color. The symbol on the flag is the taeguk , which means infinity and ...

Koreans hanged by the Japanese.
Koreans hanged by the Japanese, n.d.. The Japanese response to the 1919 Korean demands for independence was brutal. 50,000 demonstrators were ...

Koryo dynasty porcelain, called ch'ongja .
The Koryo dynasty produced this type of porcelain, called ch'ongja . It is bluish green in color and is known as celadon in the West. Korean ...

Landscape painting on screen behind the throne.
The landscape painting on the screen behind the throne in the Ch'angdokkung Palace in Seoul. It depicts the various aspects of nature such as the ...

MacArthur and Truman.
MacArthur and Truman. North Korea quickly overran South Korea and pinned the South Korean and American forces into a defensive perimeter ...

Meeting of United Nations Security Council, 1950.
A meeting of the United Nations Security Council, June 1950. The international situation was tense by 1950. The cold war was at its height ...

Min Yong-han.
Min Yong-han. The rivalry between Japan and Russia in Korea led to the Russo-Japanese War of 1904-05, in which Russia was defeated. Japan forced ...

Mist and mountains.
Mist and mountains. Korea has been known by many names throughout its history. In the 19th century it was

called the Hermit Kingdom by ...

Movable type and a printed page dated 1403.

Movable type and a printed page dated 1403. Two practical inventions of the Koryo dynasty were the 12th century use of a double entry system for ...

Pagodas in the Pulguksa temple.

One of the most important Buddhist complexes in Korea is the Pulguksa temple, which was built by the state of Shilla at Kyongju in 535 and ...

Painting of Japanese naval force besieging Pusan.

A painting of the Japanese naval force besieging Pusan. After nearly three centuries of disunity and warfare, Japan was finally united in 1591 ...

President Chun Doo-hwan.

President Chun Doo-hwan. In 1979, President Park was assassinated by his own Chief of the Korean Central Intelligence Agency (KCIA). Park's ...

President Park Chung-hee (1917-1979).

President Park Chung-hee (1917-1979), n.d. Tensions with the United States and within Korea led to the resignation and exile of Syngman Rhee in ...

Prince Regent or Hungson Taewon'gun, Yi Ha-ung.

The Prince Regent or Hungson Taewon'gun, Yi Ha-ung (1820-1898). International pressures from the West and Japan deeply divided the Korean court ...

Red Cross talks.

Red Cross talks. All Korean leaders, north and south, have sought the territorial unification of Korea since 1945. In 1972, for the first time ...

Rice bowl of white porcelain from Yi dynasty.

A rice bowl of white porcelain from the Yi dynasty period. White porcelain or paekja had been favored by the Korean court since the foundation ...

Roh Tae Woo, elected president South Korea, 1987.

Roh Tae Woo, who was elected president of South Korea in December 1987. Roh, a former general and President Chun's favored successor, portrayed ...

Seoul in the 1980s.

Seoul in the 1980s. The mountains form an impressive background to this modern city, which is dominated by skyscrapers and all kinds of ...

Shamans performing Kut ceremony.

Shamans (mudang) performing the Kut ceremony. Folk traditions and written records speak of an ancestral tradition associated with a bear, ...

Snowscape by Kim Myong-guk, a scholar-painter.

This snowscape was painted by Kim Myong-guk, a 17th century scholar-painter who visited Japan twice when he accompanied Yi dynasty delegations to ...

Spring festival ceremony, Ewha Women's University.

The spring festival ceremony at the Ewha Women's University in Seoul. With a historical past that placed enormous importance on education and ...

Statue of King Sejong, in Toksugung Palace, Seoul.

A statue of King Sejong, in the Toksugung Palace in Seoul. The most revered ruler of the Yi Dynasty and one of the great figures of Korean ...

Syngman Rhee (1895-1965).

Syngman Rhee (1895-1965). At the end of World War II, despite a non-aggression agreement, the Soviet Union declared war on Japan on August 8, ...

Terraced rice paddies.

Terraced rice paddies. The Korean peninsula is a land of mountains and valleys. Every available bit of land has been carefully cultivated ...

Text of the Avatamsaka (Garland) sutra .

A unique example of Buddhist devotion is this text of the Avatamsaka (Garland) sutra , printed with gold illustration and text on indigo-dyed ...

The Hwarang warriors.

The Hwarang warriors. The kingdom of Shilla was slower to develop than Paekche or Koguryo, but led by its bone-rank (Kolp'um) aristocracy ...

The Choltusan Martyrs Shrine near Seoul.

The Choltusan Martyrs Shrine, near Seoul. Despite the persecutions, the Catholic church became a significant force in Korean society. In 1984 ...

The defeat of a Chinese invasion of Korea in 662.

The defeat of a Chinese invasion of Korea in 662. In 918 Shilla was destroyed and replaced by the Koryo dynasty, founded by Wang Kon, also known ...

The Haeinsa Monastery.

The Haeinsa Monastery, which was built on Mt. Kaya in 802. This image shows the solitude in which the monastery exists to the present ...

The Hyundai shipyards, Ulsan, Korea.

The Hyundai shipyards, Ulsan, Korea. Among the most impressive economic accomplishments of the Korean people has been the fact that Korea has ...

The Lotus Pool Pavilion or Hyangwonjong .

The Lotus Pool Pavilion or Hyangwonjong , located on the grounds of the Kyongbok Palace in downtown Seoul. Resting in the midst of this bustling ...

The Old South Gate or Namdaemun , Seoul.
The Old South Gate or Namdaemun , Seoul. It was constructed in 1398 and is a National Treasure. It is dwarfed today by modern office buildings ...
The Olympic Stadium and Park in Seoul.
The Olympic Stadium and Park in Seoul. A notable feature in Korean society over the last twenty years has been the country's achievements in ...
The Sokkuram grotto, Buddhist devotional site.
The Sokkuram grotto, one of the most important Buddhist devotional sites in Korea. It is a national treasure and is considered an international ...
The tomb of King Sejong, in Yoju.
The tomb of King Sejong, in Yoju. Ironically, the trials of life left Sejong unsatisfied with the Confucian approach to eternal life. He built ...
The U.S.S. Pueblo .
The U.S.S. Pueblo . In 1968 a serious international incident reminded the world that Korea was a flash point for capitalist and communist ...
Thirty-three Korean leaders meet in March, 1919.
Thirty-three Korean leaders met in March, 1919, and launched an independence movement against the Japanese domination of their country. Various ...
Throne chamber of Ch'angdokkung Palace in Seoul.
The throne chamber of the Ch'angdokkung Palace in Seoul. Despite its serious social problems and factional battles, the court of the later Yi ...
U.N.-sponsored Freedom House at P'anmunjom, Korea.
The U.N.-sponsored Freedom House at P'anmunjom, Korea, from which visitors may view North Korea. Since 1953 discussions have continued in the ...
U.S. aircraft bombs North Korean position.
A U.S. aircraft bombs a North Korean position in support of U.N. troops. In January the Communist forces (400,000 Chinese and 100,000 North ...
U.S.S. Missouri firing into North Korea.
The battleship U.S.S. Missouri firing into North Korea, October 1950. The Chinese onslaught utilized a combination of "human wave" tactics ...
Video Overview: The history of Korea.
A brief video Overview of the history of Korea, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: Korea's location clearly shows why it has been ...
Voting in the South Korean elections in 1948.
Voting in the South Korean elections in 1948. As a Korean leader, the Soviet Union sponsored Kim Il-sung, who had been active in Korean exile ...
Yi Song-gye, founder of Yi Dynasty.
The founder of the Yi Dynasty was Yi Song-gye (also called T'aejo), who established his capital at Seoul, a word literally meaning capital. He ...

International Organizations

Afghan refugee children in Peshawar, Pakistan.
Afghan refugee children in Peshawar, Pakistan, n.d. One of the better-known U.N. agencies is the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), which ...
Earth from space.
Earth from space (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...
Four Secretaries-General of the United Nations.
Four Secretaries-General of the United Nations. Left to right, Dag Hammarskjold of Norway, who served from the formation of the organization ...
The Dumbarton Oaks meeting.
The Dumbarton Oaks meeting, a 1944 conference of American, British, Chinese and Soviet representatives in which the basis was established for ...
The International Court of Justice in session.
The International Court of Justice in session. A world court had been established under the Covenant of the League of Nations in 1921. The ...
The League of Nations building at Geneva.
The League of Nations building at Geneva, Switzerland. Established after World War I to promote worldwide peace, the League counted as members ...
The United Nations headquarters in New York City.
The United Nations headquarters in New York City. Beginning in the 1970s, the organization has increasingly attempted to use its influence ...
United Nations Charter Conference, San Francisco.
The United Nations Charter Conference in San Francisco, 1945. The U.N. was officially constituted in October of that year with the ratification ...
Video Overview: International Organizations.
A brief video Overview of the history of International Organizations. Transcript: While many had long realized that lasting peace could only be ...

Latin American History

A global view of Latin America.

A global view of Latin America (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

Video Overview: The history of Latin America.

A brief video Overview of the history of Latin America, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: Thousands of years before the arrival of ...

Colonial Latin America, 1492 to 1806

Capitão mor , Brazil, ca. 1835.

Capitão mor , Brazil, ca. 1835. In the Brazilian countryside, the fazendeiros ruled. Royal governors selected them to be capitôes móres ...

Christ of the Earthquake Cuzco, Peru.

Christ of the Earthquake (Lord of the Tremors) , Cuzco, Peru. The Peruvian Indians' devotion to superstition is shown in this moving 17th ...

Corregidores punishing an Indian.

An Indian being punished by Corregidores. The corregidor de españoles administered Spanish settlements, and the corregidor de indios ...

Portrait of Marquesa de San Jorge de Bogotá .

Portrait of the Marquesa de San Jorge de Bogotá , by Joaquín Gutiérrez, 1775. This colonial portrait of an individual noblewoman and her lavish ...

Urbs Domingo in Hispaniola.

Urbs Domingo in Hispaniola (The City of Santo Domingo in Hispaniola) . Spanish officials quickly built cities in the New World around central ...

1929 Diego Rivera mural in Cortés' palace.

A part of the 1929 Diego Rivera mural in Cortés' palace at Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico. Besides silver, the Indies provided many other sources ...

A land grant to Cortés.

A land grant to Cortés. After the conquest of Mexico, Pedro de Alvarado subdued the Maya of Guatemala, Francisco de Montejo defeated the Maya ...

A Brazilian native.

A Brazilian native. When Pedro Cabral and his crew landed on the coast of Brazil, they found no great Indian civilizations; the Brazilian ...

A cathedral altar at Cuzco, Peru, dated ca. 1650.

A cathedral altar at Cuzco, Peru, dated ca. 1650. During the reign of Charles IV, Spain was constantly in need of funds. In 1804, Godoy ...

A gold mine in Brazil.

A gold mine in Brazil. After the Dutch left Brazil in 1654, they established a sugar industry in Curacao and other Caribbean islands. By 1675 ...

A relief map of Brazil.

A relief map of Brazil. Modern Brazil has a land surface of 3,286,500 square miles, slightly less than that of the United States. Colonial ...

Amazons.

Amazons. The 16th-century explorers and conquerors were fearless dreamers, inspired by the myths of the Christian Kingdom of Prester John, the ...

Amerigo Vespucci (1454-1512).

Amerigo Vespucci (1454-1512). The Florentine Amerigo Vespucci sailed with Alonso de Ojeda in 1499 and with a Portuguese expedition to the ...

Arch from ruins of Jesuit mission in Argentina.

An arch from the ruins of a Jesuit mission, Missiones, Argentina. The Society of Jesus, known as the Jesuits, was one of the last orders to ...

Artist's view of battle during Haitian Revolution.

An artist's romantic view of a battle during the Haitian Revolution, 1791. Creole enthusiasm for the French Revolution waned substantially when ...

Aztecs' defeat Spaniards during noche triste .

The Aztecs' defeat of the Spaniards during the noche triste . With Moctezuma under house arrest, Cortés went to Veracruz to meet a fleet sent ...

Balboa claims dominion over the South Seas.

Balboa claims dominion over the South Seas. In 1510, Francisco Núñez de Balboa (1475-1519) established a settlement at Darien in present-day ...

Baron Alexander von Humboldt (1769-1859).

Baron Alexander von Humboldt (1769-1859). The Bourbon Reforms in Spanish America stimulated the colonial economy, fostered creole aspirations, ...

Bartolomé de Las Casas (1484-1566).

Bartolomé de Las Casas (1484-1566). After hearing Montesinos' sermon against the maltreatment of the Indians in Santo Domingo, Bartolomé de Las ...

Breaking up Mexican silver ore by patio process.

Breaking up Mexican silver ore by the patio process. The 17th century in the New World is often viewed as one of depression. The output of the ...

Candomblé cult worship, Bahia, Brazil, 1962.

Candomblé cult worship, Bahia, Brazil, 1962. Father Antônio Vieira once commented that the body of Brazil was American, but its soul was ...

Carlos Signenza y Góngora (1645-1700).

Carlos Signenza y Góngora (1645-1700). The universities of Mexico and Lima were both founded in 1551, a full 75 years before Harvard College, ...

Cathedral of Santa María la Menor, Santo Domingo.
The Cathedral of Santa María la Menor, in Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic. The oldest cathedral in the western hemisphere, Santa María la ...

Cattle ranch (estancia), Argentina, ca. 1820.
A scene at a cattle ranch (estancia), Argentina, ca. 1820. In 1778, the Spanish Crown decreed that all ports in Spain and America (except ...

Christopher Columbus landing in New World 1492.
Christopher Columbus (Cristóbal Colón) landing in the New World, October 12, 1492. In the late 15th century, Europeans knew that the earth was ...

Civil war in Peru.
Civil war in Peru. After Pizarro's murder, the Crown sent Judge Cristóbal Vaca de Castro to construct a civilian government. He led the Pizarro ...

Cortés enters Tenochtitlán.
Cortés enters Tenochtitlán. Emperor Moctezuma II permitted Cortés and his men to enter Tenochtitlán after the emperor learned that the Spaniards ...

Drake attacks Cartagena.
Drake attacks Cartagena. In 1577 Sir Francis Drake (ca. 1543-1596), with the clandestine support of Queen Elizabeth I, set out to circumnavigate ...

Dutch Admiral Piet Heyn capture a Spanish fleet.
The Dutch under Admiral Piet Heyn capture a Spanish fleet at Matanzas Bay, Cuba, 1628. In that year, the newly-formed Dutch West India Company ...

Father Antônio Vieira (1608-1697).
Father Antônio Vieira (1608-1697). In 1653 the king of Portugal gave the Jesuit Antônio Vieira the authority to settle the Indian situation ...

Father Francisco Javier de Clavijero (1731-1787).
Father Francisco Javier de Clavijero (1731-1787). In 1767 King Charles III expelled the Jesuit Order from his kingdoms. Like many other ...

Francisco Pizarro (ca. 1470-1541).
Francisco Pizarro (ca. 1470-1541). Unlike Cortés, Francisco Pizarro, the conqueror of the Incas and founder of Lima, did not enjoy his glory ...

Fray Bernardino de Sahagún (1500?-1590).
Fray Bernardino de Sahagún (1500?-1590). The Franciscans, followed by the Dominicans and the Augustinians, led the religious conquest of the ...

Garcilaso de la Vega (1539-1616).
Garcilaso de la Vega (1539-1616). The son of an Inca princess and a conquistador father, Garcilaso de la Vega spent most of his life in ...

Gonzalo Jiménez de Quesada (1509?-1579).
Gonzalo Jiménez de Quesada (1509?-1579). After the conquest of Peru, Gonzalo Jiménez de Quesada and his men landed in Santa Marta on the coast ...

Hernan Cortés (1485-1547).
Hernan Cortés (1485-1547). On February 18, 1519, Cortés sailed from Cuba to the Gulf coast of Mexico with 11 vessels and 550 men. They soon ...

Hernando de Soto locates the Mississippi.
Hernando de Soto locates the Mississippi. When Alvar Núñez Cabeza de Vaca and his friends had returned to Mexico after a journey from Florida to ...

Jean-Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778).
Jean-Jacques Rousseau (1712-1778). Although the Crown supported the spread of the scientific theories of the Enlightenment, it tried to halt the ...

José de Gálvez (1729-1786).
José de Gálvez (1729-1786). Charles III sent José de Gálvez as visitador general to New Spain in 1765. Gálvez strengthened the economy of ...

José Gabriel Condorcanqui (ca. 1742-1781).
José Gabriel Condorcanqui (Tupac Amaru II, ca. 1742-1781) pictured on a 1974 Peruvian coin. In November 1780, José Gabriel Condorcanqui, a ...

Juan Ponce de León (1460?-1521).
Juan Ponce de León (1460?-1521) sailed with Columbus on his second voyage and served as the Spanish governor of Puerto Rico from 1509 to 1512. ...

King Charles II (1665-1700).
King Charles II (1665-1700). The last Hapsburg king of Spain, Charles II, "the Bewitched," was unable to father an heir despite two marriages. ...

King Charles III (1759-1788).
King Charles III (1759-1788), the greatest of the Spanish Bourbons, was a devotee of Enlightenment ideas who instituted important reforms and ...

King Charles IV (1748-1819) preferred to hunt.
King Charles IV (1748-1819) much preferred hunting to governing. Consequently, he allowed his frivolous wife, María Luisa, and her 25-year-old ...

King Charles V became Charles I of Spain, 1516.
King Charles V (1500-1558), ruler of the Hapsburg domains in central Europe, became Charles I of Spain in

1516. Charles I was very concerned ...

King Philip V (1700-1746).
King Philip V (1700-1746). Philip V was the first Bourbon king of Spain. He began the "Bourbon Reforms," which centralized Spain and ...

Manuela Beltrán breaking the Spanish Coat of Arms.
Manuela Beltrán breaking the Spanish Coat of Arms to protest new taxes during the Comunero revolt in New Granada. In 1781, creoles, mestizos , ...

Map of Spanish and Portuguese viceroyalties, 1780.
A map of Spanish and Portuguese viceroyalties in 1780. In 1776, Charles III created the Viceroyalty of the Río de la Plata, with Buenos Aires as ...

Martim Afonso de Sousa (1500-1571).
Martim Afonso de Sousa (1500-1571). Although there were relatively few Indians in Brazil, the explorers found large stands of Brazilwood trees, ...

Mem de Sá, third governor general of Brazil.
The third governor general of Brazil was Mem de Sá, a career military officer of noble birth. Soon after his arrival in 1558 he undertook ...

Mexico City, ca. 1670.
Mexico City, ca. 1670. By the end of the 17th century, this city had a population of 200,000. According to scholarly estimates, in 1650 the ...

Painting, Tiradentes on the gallows, 1792.
Painting, Tiradentes on the gallows, 1792. In mid-1788, the elite of Portuguese Brazil in Minas Gerais, together with a low-ranking army ...

Part of Diego Rivera mural of Tenochtitlán.
A part of the Diego Rivera mural of Tenochtitlán, in the Palacio Nacional, Mexico City, 1945. One of Cortés' soldiers, Bernal Díaz del Castillo, ...

Pedro de Valdivia (1500?-1553).
Pedro de Valdivia (1500?-1553). In 1539 Diego de Almagro selected Pedro de Valdivia to explore the lands south of the Chilean desert. Valdivia ...

Pizarro, Luque, and Almagro sign a contract.
Pizarro, Luque, and Almagro sign a contract. In 1517 Pedrarias Dávila founded modern Panama City, which served as the headquarters for the ...

Portrait of Sor Juana Inés de la Cruz (1651-1695).
A portrait of Sor Juana Inés de la Cruz (1651-1695). Known as "the Tenth Muse," she was a child prodigy who entered a convent in order to ...

Prophet Naum in Church of Bom Jesus de Matozinhos.
Prophet Naum, a statue in the Church of Bom Jesus de Matozinhos, at Congonhas do Campo, Brazil. The most famous 18th century Brazilian sculptor ...

Pulpit of the Church of San Blas, at Cuzco, Peru.
The pulpit of the Church of San Blas, at Cuzco, Peru. This carved wooden pulpit was fashioned by the Indian craftsman Juan Tomás Tuyru Tupac in ...

Queen Isabella of Castille (1451-1504).
Queen Isabella of Castille (1451-1504). During the Classic period of Mesoamerican history and the Middle Horizon of the Andes, the Muslims ...

Reception of Cortés by Moctezuma II.
Reception of Cortés by Moctezuma II. According to Bernal Díaz, Cortés and Moctezuma II each gave a speech at their first meeting. Cortés spoke ...

Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727).
Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727). King Charles III and his ministers encouraged the dissemination of scientific texts throughout the Spanish ...

Slaves working in a mine.
Slaves working in a mine. Because of Indian depopulation, Spaniards bought African slaves from Portuguese traders. The slaves soon became a ...

Slaves working in Brazilian sugar mill, ca. 1625.
Slaves working in a Brazilian sugar mill, ca. 1625. By 1550, sugar had become Brazil's major export. Its cultivation brought prosperity to ...

Spaniards beating Indian bearers.
Spaniards beating Indian bearers. Las Casas wrote a very persuasive tract, The True History of the Indies , describing Spanish mistreatment of ...

The battle for Cuzco.
The battle for Cuzco. After the execution of Atahualpa, the Spaniards captured and pillaged Cuzco, the ancient Inca capital, in 1533. Once the ...

The battle for Tenochtitlán.
The battle for Tenochtitlán. Cuitláhuac, Moctezuma II's nephew, led the Aztecs during and after the noche triste . He might have defeated the ...

The battle of Guararapes, Brazil.
The battle of Guararapes, Brazil. After Johan Maurits left Brazil in 1644, the Brazilians united to fight the Dutch. Brazilian victories at ...

The British take Buenos Aires, 1806.
The British take Buenos Aires, 1806. In 1806 a British invading force under Sir Home Popham and General William C. Beresford captured Buenos ...

The British take Morro Castle, Havana, July 1762.
The British take Morro Castle, Havana, July 1762. The Seven Years' War, also known as the French and Indian War (1756-1763), redrew imperial ...
The Cathedral of Mexico.
The Cathedral of Mexico, ca. 1850. From 1492 until 1574, members of religious orders controlled the Catholic Church in the New World, with great ...
The Dutch attack on Brazil.
The Dutch attack on Brazil. In 1624 the Dutch West India Company captured the port of Salvador, and six years later the Dutch conquered ...
The fleet of Pedro Alvares Cabral.
The fleet of Pedro Alvares Cabral. The Portuguese had reached the East by sailing around Africa. Following the first voyage of Columbus, Queen ...
The Marquês de Pombal (1699-1782).
Sebastião José de Carvalho e Melo, Marquês de Pombal (1699-1782). As Prime Minister of Portugal from 1750 to 1777, Pombal introduced substantial ...
The Miners' College at Mexico City.
The Miners' College at Mexico City. Thanks to the Bourbon Reforms, technological innovations, and the discovery of new veins, the value of ...
The Portobelo (Panama) fair.
The Portobelo (Panama) fair. The Casa de Contratación (House of Trade), established in Seville in 1503, regulated all commerce between Spain ...
The Potosímine.
The Potosí mine. Silver soon became the chief source of wealth in the New World. In 1545, the Spaniards discovered the richest silver mine in ...
The reconquest of Buenos Aires, 1807.
The reconquest of Buenos Aires, 1807. The residents of Buenos Aires (known as porteños) secretly organized a volunteer army during the British ...
The seizure of Atahualpa, 1533.
The seizure of Atahualpa, 1533. The Spaniards arrived on the coast of present-day Peru during a civil war between two Inca princes, Atahualpa ...
The taking of the Bastille, July 14, 1789.
The taking of the Bastille, July 14, 1789. Although the American Revolution was closer to home, the more radical French Revolution (1789-1799), ...
The Virgin of Guadalupe, Mexico.
The Virgin of Guadalupe, Mexico. In the 16th century, Europeans could only legally conquer heathen peoples in order to convert them to ...
Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826).
Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826). The American Revolution stimulated thoughts of rebellion in the Spanish colonies. After 1783, trade flourished ...
Tlaxcalans receive Cortés.
Tlaxcalans receive Cortés. From Veracruz, Cortés and his men marched to Tlaxcala. Its chief suggested that they ally themselves with the Indian ...
Tomé de Sousa (d. 1579).
Tomé de Sousa (d. 1579). The Portuguese officials divided the Brazilian coast into 15 parallel sections and gave these "captaincies" to ...
Vasco de Quiroga (1470?-1563).
Vasco de Quiroga (1470?-1563), a lawyer and government official, who in the 1530s established an Indian community inspired by Sir Thomas More's ...
Viceroy and Audiencia .
Viceroy and Audiencia . In 1524 the Crown established the Council of the Indies to oversee the two viceroyalties: of New Spain (all territory ...
Wooden statue of Holy Mothers, Easy Death Church.
An 18th century wooden statue of the Holy Mothers in the Easy Death Church in São Paulo, Brazil. Some of the most brilliant colonial sculpture ...

Independence, 1807 to 1825

A cabildo abierto in Buenos Aires, 1810.
A cabildo abierto in Buenos Aires, 1810. On May 25, 1810, a cabildo abierto or open town council in Buenos Aires deposed the viceroy and set ...
Agustín de Iturbide (1783-1824).
Agustín de Iturbide (1783-1824). In November 1820, Agustín de Iturbide, the royalist army officer who had captured Morelos, was ordered south to ...
Antonio José de Sucre (1795-1830).
Antonio José de Sucre (1795-1830). After the liberation of Venezuela, Bolívar began his campaign to free the Central Andes. His lieutenant, ...
Dom João VI, King of Portugal (1769-1826).
Dom João VI, King of Portugal (1769-1826). In 1820 the Portuguese rebelled and demanded that the prince regent, Dom João, return to Portugal, ...
Dom Pedro I (1798-1834).
Dom Pedro I (1798-1834). After Dom João VI became King of Portugal, Parliament insisted that his son also

return to the motherland, but on ...

Dr. José Gaspar Rodríguez de Francia (1766-1840).

Dr. José Gaspar Rodríguez de Francia (1766-1840). In 1813, when a creole army from Buenos Aires arrived in Asunción, the Paraguayans, under the ...

Emigration to the East.

Emigration to the East. In 1813 Bolívar returned to Venezuela with troops from New Granada, proclaiming a "war to the death." He triumphantly ...

Father José María Morelos y Pavón (1765-1815).

Father José María Morelos y Pavón (1765-1815). After Hidalgo's execution in 1811, another priest, José María Morelos, became the leader of the ...

Father José Morelos y Pavón mural, Cortes' palace.

Father José María Morelos y Pavôn, a part of the 1929 Diego Rivera mural in Cortes' palace at Cuernavaca, Mexico. This detail shows Morelos, ...

Father Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla (1753-1811).

Father Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla (1753-1811). Father Hidalgo, a creole priest in New Spain strongly influenced by Enlightenment ideas, had ...

Ferdinand VII, (1784-1833).

Ferdinand VII, (1784-1833). On May 2, 1808, Madrid rebelled against French occupation forces. The revolt spread throughout the country, where ...

Grito de Ypiranga, September 7, 1822.

Grito de Ypiranga, September 7, 1822. On September 7, 1822, while out riding, Dom Pedro received even stronger orders to return to Portugal. ...

José Clemente Orozco mural of Father Hidalgo.

This part of a 1937-38 José Clemente Orozco mural of Father Hidalgo and National Independence, in the Palacio de Gobierno, Guadalajara, indicates ...

José de San Martín (1778-1850).

José de San Martín (1778-1850). In 1811 San Martín, who had been a colonel in the Spanish army for more than 20 years, resigned his commission ...

José Gervasio Artigas (1764-1850).

José Gervasio Artigas (1764-1850). In 1814, a "liberating army" from Buenos Aires captured Montevideo, the capital of modern Uruguay. However, ...

José San Martín and Símon Bolívar at Guayaquil.

José San Martín and Símon Bolívar at Guayaquil, Ecuador, July 26-27, 1822. After Gran Colombia was free, Bolívar and San Martín met in steamy ...

Joseph Bonaparte, (1768-1844).

Joseph Bonaparte, (1768-1844). Napoleon Bonaparte became emperor of France in 1804. Three years later, Napoleon's troops invaded Spain on their ...

Lord Thomas Cochrane (1775-1860).

Lord Thomas Cochrane (1775-1860). After he liberated Chile, San Martín organized a navy to attack Lima by sea. He bought ships in England and ...

Simon Bolívar (1783-1830).

Simon Bolívar (1783-1830) The son of a wealthy creole family in Caracas and heavily influenced by enlightenment ideas, Simon Bolívar symbolizes ...

The battle of Ayacucho, December 9, 1824.

The battle of Ayacucho, December 9, 1824. By 1823, all of mainland Spanish and Portuguese America had been liberated except Peru and Bolivia. ...

The battle of Boyacá, August 5, 1819.

The battle of Boyacá, August 5, 1819. In Angostura, Bolivar allied with the llanero chief, Jose Antonio Páez. In addition, a British legion ...

The battle of Carabobo, July 1821.

The battle of Carabobo, July 1821. After making Francisco de Paula Santander governor of New Granada, Bolívar returned to Angostura to plan the ...

The battle of Maipú, April 5, 1818.

The battle of Maipú, April 5, 1818. The march of San Martín's troops over the frozen Andean passes has become a legend in the history of the ...

The Congress of Angostura, 1819.

The Congress of Angostura, 1819. After Jamaica, Bolívar went to Haiti, where President Pétion gave him material support in exchange for ...

The Portuguese royal family leaving Lisbon, 1807.

The Portuguese royal family leaving Lisbon, 1807. After learning of French plans to invade Portugal, the British supplied passage for the ...

Vicente Guerrero (1782-1831).

Vicente Guerrero (1782-1831). After Morelos' execution the guerrilla war for Mexican independence continued under the leadership of Guadalupe ...

Independent Latin America, 1825 to 1870

A Mazorca official.

A Mazorca official. Not everyone in Buenos Aires supported Rosas. Most intellectuals belonged to the Unitarian Party, which favored a united ...

A Buenos Aires slaughterhouse, 1841.

A Buenos Aires slaughterhouse, 1841. Esteban Echeverría, a leader of the exiled intellectual generation of 1837, created Argentine romanticism. ...

A coffee plantation in Brazil, ca. 1825.

A coffee plantation in Brazil, ca. 1825. Once Brazil officially ended the slave trade in 1850, the system was doomed. Many slaves fled to the ...

A guano quarry on Chincha Islands, Peru, 1857.

A guano quarry on Chincha Islands, Peru, 1857. In the 1840s, Peruvians discovered that bird droppings (guano), accumulated over thousands of ...

A hacienda in the Central Valley, Chile, ca. 1830.

A hacienda in the Central Valley, Chile, ca. 1830. The great landowners benefited enormously from the economic upsurge. Some invested their ...

A map of Latin America in 1830.

A map of Latin America in 1830. Once the euphoria of independence had subsided, the new nations of Latin America faced enormous challenges. ...

A map of the U.S. and Mexican border, 1848-1853.

A map of the U.S. and Mexican border, 1848-1853. Mexico is the only independent nation whose territory was taken away and incorporated into the ...

A stage coach attacked.

A stage coach attacked, ca. 1840. From 1836 to 1845, Mexico had 25 separate governments, was invaded by the French, and suffered countless ...

Andrés Santa Cruz (1792-1865).

Andrés Santa Cruz (1792-1865). In 1829 Andrés Santa Cruz became President of Bolivia. Although he was a repressive dictator, he brought peace to ...

Antonio López de Santa Anna (1795-1876).

Antonio López de Santa Anna (1795-1876) first became President of Mexico in 1832; by 1855 he had held that office nine times. When his ...

Benito Juárez (1806-1872).

Benito Juárez (1806-1872), an Indian from Oaxaca, became the leader of a movement known as the Mexican Reform. It sponsored laws abolishing the ...

Bernardo O'Higgins (1778-1842).

Bernardo O'Higgins (1778-1842). After San Martin's army liberated Chile in 1818, Bernardo O'Higgins, the illegitimate son of a viceroy of Peru, ...

British ship chasing Brazilian slaver, ca.1850.

A British ship chasing a Brazilian slaver, ca. 1850. The prosperity of the coffee-growing zones of Rio de Janiero, São Paulo, and Minas Gerais ...

Diego Portales (1793-1837).

Diego Portales (1793-1837). Never elected to office, Diego Portales nevertheless dominated the Chilean government as Minister of War from 1830 ...

Dom Pedro II (1825-1891), Emperor of Brazil.

Dom Pedro II (1825-1891), Emperor of Brazil. After Dom Pedro I abdicated in 1831, the Brazilians established a regency until his four-year-old ...

Domingo Fausto Sarmiento (1811-1888).

Domingo Fausto Sarmiento (1811-1888). Another exile from Rosas' Argentina, Domingo Fausto Sarmiento, wrote one of the masterpieces of Latin ...

Emperor Maximilian of Mexico (1832-1867).

Emperor Maximilian of Mexico (1832-1867). In 1863, Maximilian of Hapsburg, the brother of the Emperor of Austria, agreed to become Emperor of ...

Emperor Napoleon III (1808-1873).

Emperor Napoleon III (1808-1873). Although England, France and Spain invaded Mexico in 1862 to collect money owed them, Emperor Napoleon III of ...

Execution of Emperor Maximilian, July 19, 1867.

The execution of Emperor Maximilian, July 19, 1867. Juárez' troops gained the offensive in the spring of 1866. Beginning in February 1867, the ...

Francisco Solano López (1826-1870).

Francisco Solano López (1826-1870). After the death of Dr. Francia in 1840, Paraguay expanded its exports of tobacco and the tea yerba maté, and ...

General James Knox Polk (1795-1849).

General James Knox Polk (1795-1849). In 1837 the United States recognized the independence of Texas. During the 1840s, Americans began to ...

General Justo José de Urquiza (1800-1870).

General Justo José de Urquiza (1800-1870). After the Constitution of 1853 was completed, Buenos Aires seceded from Urquiza's Confederation. ...

General Winfield Scott entering Mexico City 1847.

General Winfield Scott entering Mexico City, September 1847. Even after American troops occupied Mexico City, many Mexicans wanted to continue ...

General Zachary Taylor at Buena Vista 1846.

General Zachary Taylor at Buena Vista, February 21, 1846. The Americans planned a three-pronged offensive against Mexico. General Stephen ...

Indians attacking settlers, 1840.

Indians attacking settlers, 1840. For Rosas and the other estancieros , beef and hides were the primary

products of Argentina. In order to ...

Juan Manuel de Rosas (1798-1877).
Juan Manuel de Rosas (1798-1877), the largest landowner in Buenos Aires province, became its governor in 1829. In 1831 he and the interior ...

Marshal Achille Francois Bazaine (1811-1888).
Marshal Achille Francois Bazaine (1811-1888). Maximilian's empire in Mexico depended upon French troops led by Marshal Bazaine. After victories ...

Marshal Luís Alves de Lima Caxias at Fort Humaitá.
Marshal Luís Alves de Lima Caxias at Fort Humaitá, Paraguay, August 1868. At the start of the war in 1864, Paraguay had 60,000 troops and a ...

President José Joaquín de Herrera (1792-1854).
President José Joaquín de Herrera (1792-1854). With the $15 million received from the United States under the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, ...

Railway construction, Brazil, 1860.
Railway construction in the Paraíba Valley, Brazil, 1860. The modernization of Brazil flourished after 1850. For example, Irineu Evangelista de ...

Siege of the Alamo, San Antonio de Béjar, Texas,
The siege of the Alamo, San Antonio de Béjar, Texas, 1836. Once the colonists of Texas decided to rebel against Mexico, they recruited ...

Stephen F. Austin (1793-1836).
Stephen F. Austin (1793-1836), lawyer and former U.S. congressman, inherited 200,000 acres of land in present-day Texas (then Mexico), and formed ...

The battle of Monte Caseros, 1852.
The battle of Monte Caseros, 1852. The rest of the Argentine people grew increasingly resentful as their interests were sacrificed in favor of ...

The Buenos Aires harbor, ca. 1820.
The Buenos Aires harbor, ca. 1820. Although the interior provinces of Argentina were politically tied to Buenos Aires, their economic interests ...

The flag of Rosas' Argentina.
The flag of Rosas' Argentina. The Rosas regime's flag featured the slogan, "Death to the Savage Unitarians!" Even animals had to display the red ...

The French invasion: Puebla under siege, 1862.
The French invasion: Puebla under siege, 1862. Once the French territorial ambitions became known, Spanish and British invasion forces left ...

The house of Emperor Agustín I in Mexico City.
The house of Emperor Agustín I in Mexico City. After independence Mexico was unable to design a workable tax structure, convince its elites to ...

The Junta in Pernambuco, Brazil, 1824.
The Junta in Pernambuco, Brazil, 1824. The new Brazilian empire retained the old colonial patterns of slavery, monarchy, paternalistic ...

The storming of Chapultepec.
The storming of Chapultepec. The Mexicans refused to surrender their capital without a fight. After losing at Churubusco, Santa Anna convinced ...

The U.S. landing at Veracruz, March 1847.
The U.S. landing at Veracruz, March 1847. Despite all the territory gained by the Americans under Kearny and Taylor, Mexico's real problems ...

Threshing in Chile, ca. 1850.
Threshing in Chile, ca. 1850. Chilean commerce, mining, and agriculture prospered from 1841 to 1851 during the administration of President ...

U.S. President James Monroe (1758-1831).
U.S. President James Monroe (1758-1831). By 1823, 20% of all U.S. trade was with its southern neighbors. From 1815-1825, U.S. forces fought ...

Veracruz, Mexico.
Veracruz, Mexico, ca. 1836. Mexican politicians believed Adam Smith's dictum that "the wealth of nations is in trade," and based their new ...

Introduction and Indian America

Islote (Little Island) by Altamirano.
Islote (Little Island), by G. Fernando Altamirano. While much of Latin American art known outside the region is sophisticated and connected ...

The Wrestler , Olmec civilization, 150 B.C.
The Wrestler, sculpture of the Olmec civilization, ca. 150 B.C. This 26-inch masterpiece of Olmec sculpture comes from the present-day Mexican ...

A cattle ranch in Argentina.
A cattle ranch in Argentina. Latin America has excellent grasslands in Venezuela (los llanos) and in southern Brazil, Uruguay, and Argentina (...

A contemporary political map of Latin America.
A contemporary political map of Latin America. The eight million square miles known as Latin America stretch south from the Rio Grande River to ...

A contemporary view of Mexico City.

A contemporary view of Mexico City. Latin America has many big and beautiful cities. With an urban tradition beginning in the 14th century, ...

A family on the Amazon river.

A family on the Amazon river. The Amazon, the longest river in the world, runs 3900 miles from the Peruvian Andes through northern Brazil to the ...

An Aztec human sacrifice.

An Aztec human sacrifice. Human sacrifice became commonplace among the Aztecs after the famine of 1450-51. The priest cut out the victim's ...

An Aztec obsidian mask.

An Aztec obsidian mask, ca. 1450. This remarkable mask, in addition to the Aztec stone carvings, gold, and featherwork, all pay silent homage to ...

An Inca golden vase.

An Inca golden vase, Peru, ca. 1500 A.D. The Incas were justly renowned for their gold work, weaving and pottery. They believed that their ...

An offertory sculpture of Chancay, Peru.

An offertory sculpture of Chancay, Peru, ca. 1100-1476. The Chancay people lived to the north of present-day Lima on the central coast. They ...

An Olmec "head."

An Olmec "head," ca. 900 B.C. The Olmec civilization ("the people of the `gum tree'") was the first to appear in Mesoamerica, an area extending ...

Ceremonial knife (tume) of the Chimú culture.

A ceremonial knife (tume) of the Chimú culture, Peru, ca. 1100-1300. After the decline of Tiahuanaco near present-day La Paz, one of the ...

Detail of a Bonampak fresco, Chiapas, Mexico.

Detail of a Bonampak fresco, Chiapas, Mexico. The ruins of Bonampak ("painted walls") were discovered in 1946. Painted in 785 A.D., the scenes ...

Figures from a Mixtec codex .

Figures from a Mixtec codex , ca. 1100. In the 13th century the Mixtecs, or "Cloud People," conquered the Zapotecs and took over their sites ...

Four stelae , at Tula, Mexico.

Four stelae , at Tula, Mexico. After the departure of Quetzalcoatl in 987, the Toltec culture devoted itself to warfare. These stelae are ...

Four Latin American Nobel Prize winners.

Four Latin American Nobel Prize winners. Latin America has produced centuries of great writing. The region boasts these four Nobel laureates ...

Front of Temple of Quetzalcoatl, Mexico.

A frontal detail of the Temple of Quetzalcoatl, Teotihuacán, Mexico. The bas-reliefs of the temple of Quetzalcoatl depict two important gods of ...

Inca foundations at Cuzco, Peru.

Inca foundations at Cuzco, Peru. Andean Indians still use Inca techniques. In modern Cuzco, Inca foundations, with stones which have been ...

Incas sharing coca leaf.

Incas sharing coca leaf. The Indians of Andean America were organized in ayllu or clan divisions. Pre-marital sexual relations were ...

La Florida Street in Buenos Aires, Argentina.

La Florida Street in Buenos Aires, Argentina. The central areas of large Latin American cities look like typical downtown cities in the United ...

Page from the Codex Mendoza .

A page from Aztec Emperor Moctezuma's Tribute Roll, the Codex Mendoza . Under King Ahuítzotl, the Aztecs extended their rule south to the ...

Pottery of Moche (or "Mochica") culture.

Pottery of the Moche (also known as "Mochica") culture, northern Peru. The Moche civilization, known for its excellent and realistically molded ...

Pottery of the Nazca culture, southern Peru.

Pottery of the Nazca culture, southern Peru. While the Moche developed their civilization on the northern coast, the Nazca inherited the ...

Punishment of official, Codex Florenti .

Punishment of an erring official, as depicted in the Codex Florentino . By the 15th century, Aztec society had become stratified, but merit ...

Quetzalcoatl and Tezcatlipoca.

Quetzalcoatl and Tezcatlipoca. According to Mesoamerican mythology, the Toltecs' ancestral god Tezcatlipoca (Smoking Mirror), came to ...

Section of embroidered cloak from Paracas in Peru.

A section of an embroidered cloak from Paracas in southern Peru, ca. 600 B.C., showing the virtuosity of Paracas textiles. The images of snakes, ...

Tablet of the Cross, Palenque, Chiapas, Mexico.

Tablet of the Cross, Palenque, Chiapas, Mexico. The Maya wrote phonetically, and developed two different ways of calculating historical time. ...

Terracing at Machu Picchu, Peru.

Terracing at Machu Picchu, Peru, ca. 1500. By 1527, the Inca controlled approximately 16 million people and

extended northward to the present ...

The Andes in Patagonia.

The Andes in Patagonia. Latin America boasts considerable geographical diversity. The northern and western sides of South America are dominated ...

The ball court at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico.

The ball court at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico. Most sites in Mesoamerica had their own ball courts, but this one is the largest in the region, ...

The Castle at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico.

The Castle at Chichén Itzá, Yucatan, Mexico, ca. 11th century. Chichén Itzá, a Maya site in the Post-Classic Period, marks the emergence of the ...

The founding of Tenochtitlán, ca. 1369.

The founding of Tenochtitlán, ca. 1369. This page depicts how the gods told the Aztecs to build their capital where they saw an eagle with a ...

The Nazca lines.

The Nazca lines. Although these lines are only visible from the air, they run as long as 500 feet in the desert sand. Some enthusiasts think ...

The Pyramid of Quetzalcoatl, Tula, Mexico.

The Pyramid of Quetzalcoatl, Tula, Mexico, ca. 968 A.D. The Post-Classic Period of Mesoamerica began in 900 A.D., when the Toltec civilization, ...

Latin America After 1914

Integralistas , Brazil.

Brazilian Integralistas. On November 10, 1937, President Vargas canceled the upcoming presidential elections, dismissed the congress, and ...

Paulista soldiers, 1932.

Brazilian Paulista soldiers, 1932. Vargas increased wages by 5% and redistributed some land, infuriating Paulista politicians, who rebelled ...

The Trench , by José Clemente Orozco.

The Trench , a fragment of a fresco by José Clemente Orozco at the National Preparatory School, Mexico, 1926. After 1914, the Mexican ...

" Perón Cumple " (Perón Delivers).

" Perón Cumple " (Perón Delivers). Perón insisted on government involvement in the economy and on the nationalization of foreign-owned ...

"The Prestes column."

"The Prestes column." In 1924, tenentes (junior officers) in Sâo Paulo, joined by a group led by Captain Luís Carlos Prestes from Rio Grande ...

1928 Buenos Aires May Day (Labor Day) celebration.

The 1928 May Day (Labor Day) celebration in Buenos Aires. In 1930, Argentine unions joined together to form the General Confederation of Labor ...

1939 cartoon of Nazis playing cards in Patagonia.

A 1939 cartoon of the Nazis playing cards in Patagonia. During the 1930s the military believed that Argentina needed to break away from its ...

1961Mexico City rally for president Adolfo Mateos.

A 1961 rally in Mexico City supporting president Adolfo López Mateos (1910-1969). President López Mateos turned the government to the left from ...

A "Yanky Go Home" effigy in Panama, February 1964.

A "Yanky Go Home" effigy in Panama, February 1964. During bad economic times in Panama, people rioted and often were unable to wring ...

A 1916 cartoon, Villa Salutes the U.S. Flag .

A 1916 cartoon, Villa Salutes the U. S. Flag . Villa was enraged when the United States recognized Carranza. On March 9, 1916, he sent ...

A 1980s Salvadoran poster.

A 1980s Salvadoran poster, "Neither Massacres, Nor Intervention, Will Stop the Revolution." The murder of Archbishop Romero in 1980 galvanized ...

A car being fueled with gasohol.

A car being fueled with gasohol. As the 1980s advanced, it became clear that the military would have to relinquish power. In 1964 Brazil had ...

A cartoon concerning Roca-Runciman Pact of 1933.

A cartoon concerning the Roca-Runciman Pact of 1933, under which Britain guaranteed Argentina a certain share of its chilled beef purchases and ...

A cartoon concerning the Concordancia .

A cartoon concerning the Concordancia . After the Radicals won the 1931 election in Buenos Aires, the Conservatives made a deal (the ...

A cartoon of Arturo Alessandri (1868-1950).

A cartoon of Arturo Alessandri (1868-1950). In 1920 the Chileans elected as president Arturo Alessandri, who promised social security, a labor ...

A cartoon, Some Promise .

A cartoon, Some Promise . Although Carranza became president on May 1, l9l7, he had no intention of enforcing the new Constitution, and Villa ...

A contemporary political map of Central America.

A contemporary political map of Central America. Despite the signing of the Panama Canal treaty in 1978, Central America became the leading ...

A Cuban agrarian reform poster, 1961.

A Cuban agrarian reform poster, 1961. In May 1959, Castro decreed the first law of Agrarian Reform, which permitted the government to ...

A farmer at work in El Salvador.

A farmer at work in El Salvador. The smallest and most heavily populated state in the region, El Salvador, has been dominated by an elite known ...

A Marxist demonstration in Santiago, 1972.

A Marxist demonstration in Santiago, 1972. Under Allende, government spending increased, particularly for housing and health care. By 1972 ...

A room in the Universidad Nacional, Cordóba, 1915.

A room in the Universidad Nacional, Cordóba, Argentina, ca. 1915. When Hipólito Yrigoyen (1852-1933) was elected president of Argentina in 1916, ...

A rubber factory in Brazil, 1942.

A rubber factory in Brazil, 1942. The Estado Novo planned substantial investment in mining, oil, steel, chemicals, and electric power. In ...

A slum in Salvador, Brazil, 1983.

A slum in Salvador, Brazil, 1983. In December 1968 President Artur Costa e Silva (1902-1969) disbanded Congress, suspended his own constitution ...

A Soviet missile base in Cuba.

A Soviet missile base in Cuba. After the Bay of Pigs, the Soviet Union became Cuba's principal ally, sending missiles and other military ...

A student demonstration against Batista.

A student demonstration against Batista. Batista overthrew Prío Socarrás in March 1952. His dictatorship, which ran from 1952 to 1959, was more ...

A tractor at work in a Brazilian soybean field.

A tractor at work in a Brazilian soybean field. In 1969 the government proclaimed agrarian reforms to promote agribusiness. This spurred ...

A wheat harvest in Argentina, 1972.

A wheat harvest in Argentina, 1972. After World War II, Argentina's economy boomed as it helped to supply the needs of a war-ravaged Europe. ...

A woman in a Mexican laboratory, 1970.

A woman in a Mexican laboratory, 1970. Latin Americans are gradually adopting some of the U.S.'s feminist ideas. Upper class women, aided by a ...

Alfredo Stroessner.

Alfredo Stroessner (b. 1912). A hero in the 1932-35 Chaco War between Paraguay and Bolivia, Alfredo Stroessner became president of Paraguay in ...

Ambassador Dwight Morrow (1873-1931).

Ambassador Dwight Morrow (1873-1931). President Calvin Coolidge appointed Wall Street lawyer Dwight Morrow (Charles Lindbergh's father-in-law) ...

An ABC parade in Havana, Cuba, 1934.

An ABC parade in Havana, Cuba, 1934. After a student leader was killed in September 1930, the students at the University of Havana staged a mass ...

An agrarian reform sign, Peru.

An agrarian reform sign, Peru. Although President Velasco considered agriculture to be second in importance to industry, he enacted a thorough ...

An anti-Perón rally, December 8, l946.

An anti-Perón rally, December 8, l946. Juan Perón understood the power of the working class. He increased the workers' income and sponsored ...

An Argentine meat packing plant, ca. 1920.

An Argentine meat packing plant, ca. 1920. In 1927 the United States enacted a law forbidding the importation of Argentine beef because of an ...

An irrigation project at Jalisco, Mexico, 1977.

An irrigation project at Jalisco, Mexico, 1977. Although Mexicans held Minister of the Interior Luis Echeverría responsible for the deaths at ...

Anastasio Debayle with World Bank president Black.

Anastasio Somoza Debayle (1925-1980) with then World Bank president Eugene Black (L.). By the time Anastasio Somoza Debayle (Tachito) took power ...

Antonio Guzmán (1911-1982).

Antonio Guzmán (1911-1982). By 1978 the U.S. felt that the Dominican Republic could hold its first free election since 1965. But when it became ...

Argentine miners using "jumbo" pneumatic drill.

Argentine iron miners using a "jumbo" pneumatic drill, 1976. After "Isabelita" fell, General Jorge Videla became the leader of a three-man ...

Arturo Frondizi in UN headquarters, 1961.

Arturo Frondizi, at a press conference in the United Nations headquarters, 1961. The army ruled Argentina until 1958, but it could not win fair ...

Augusto César Sandino (1893-1934).

Augusto César Sandino (1893-1934). Sandino pledged to stop fighting when the U.S. Marines left, but he

felt little confidence in the National ...

Bolivian women at a market.
Bolivian women at a market. In the 1980s, Bolivians found an important new export crop, cocaine. Bolivians have chewed coca leaf since Inca ...

Braden copper mines in Chile, in the early 1900s.
Braden copper mines in Chile, in the early 1900s. By 1960, U.S. businesses owned the richest copper mines in Chile. These mines alone produced ...

Brasilia, ca. 1963.
Brasilia, ca. 1963. On April 21, 1960, Kubitschek inaugurated a new capital, Brasilia, in the state of Goiás, 600 miles from the coast. The ...

Brazilian President José Sarney (b. 1930).
Brazilian President José Sarney (b. 1930) at the United Nations, September 1985. The Brazilian military, following their Argentinian ...

Carlos Gardel (1890-1935).
Carlos Gardel (1890-1935). The greatest star of the tango was Carlos Gardel, an orphan of obscure origins who symbolized that dance in ...

Carlos Ibáñez (1877-1960).
Carlos Ibáñez. When Carlos Ibáñez (1877-1960) became president in 1927, he spent money on education and urged settlement on state-owned lands. ...

Carter meets with Sandinista leaders.
U.S. President Jimmy Carter meets with Sandinista leaders at the White House, September 24, l979. Nicaragua had been devastated by the ...

Cartoon, Keeping the Old Messenger Boy Busy .
A cartoon, Keeping the Old Messenger Boy Busy . United States Ambassador James Sheffield wanted Calles to protect foreign interests, but Calles ...

Castro descends from tank at Bay of Pigs, 1961.
Castro (blurred figure at right) descends from a tank at the Bay of Pigs, April 17-19, 1961. During the summer of 1960, the U.S. Central ...

Castro enters Havana, January 8, 1959.
Castro enters Havana, January 8, 1959. The guerrillas gained increasing support in 1957, particularly from the peasantry. Meanwhile, urban ...

Castro, Guevara and Anastas Mikoyan, 1963.
Castro, Guevara and Anastas Mikoyan, 1963. Deputy Soviet Premier Anastas Mikoyan first visited Cuba in January 1961, and agreed to buy 1,425,000 ...

Children work, Bogotá, Colombia brick factory.
Children working at a Bogotá, Colombia, brick factory, 1978. In the 1980s, 4.5% of Colombia's population owned 67% of all farm land, and more ...

Class on counterinsurgency in Panama Canal Zone.
A class on counterinsurgency in the Panama Canal Zone, 1963. The Alliance for Progress included new U.S. support for the Latin American ...

Confederación de Trabajadores Mexicacanos.
A parade of the Confederación de Trabajadores Mexicanos (CTM) during the 1940 presidential campaign in Mexico. Cárdenas was determined to bring ...

Crude oil pumping station, Veracruz, Mexico, 1920.
A crude oil pumping station at Veracruz, Mexico, 1920. Obregón was president of Mexico while Warren G. Harding was president of the United ...

Cuban communists celebrate governnment fall, 1933.
Cuban communists celebrate the fall of the Cespedes government, 1933. On September 4 of that year, a group of army sergeants overthrew the ...

Cuban poster, "Yes, I'm proud of my productivity."
A Cuban poster, "Yes, I'm proud of my productivity." In 1963 Castro found himself forced to reemphasize sugar exports. In 1970 he promoted a ...

Dead in the streets of Mexico City, 1914.
Dead in the streets of Mexico City, 1914. Following the fall of President Huerta in that year, Carranza hoped that he, Villa and Zapata could ...

Demonstration supports nationalization of oil.
A political demonstration in March 1964 supporting the nationalization of oil. By the end of 1963, the media in the U.S. began to present ...

Dwellings of poor with skyscrapers, 1982.
Dwellings of the poor next to high-rise buildings in Rio de Janeiro, 1982. While politicians and the international powers argued ideological ...

Earthquake scene in Managua, Nicaragua, 1972.
An earthquake scene in Managua, Nicaragua, December 1972. Opposition to the Somoza family began to grow in the 1950s, led by Pedro Joaquín ...

Eduardo Frei Montalva (1911-1982).
Eduardo Frei Montalva (1911-1982) became president of Chile in 1964, promoting a "Revolution in Freedom." He wanted agrarian and tax reform, and ...

Eduardo Raúl Chibás (1907-1951).
Eduardo Raúl Chibás (1907-1951). In 1947 populist politician Eddie Chibás, a member of the terrorist Student Directorate during Machado's ...

Ernesto ("Che") Guevara in Bolivia, 1967.
Ernesto ("Che") Guevara in Bolivia, 1967. Born in Rosario, Argentina, Ernesto Guevara (1928-1967), nicknamed "Che" or "Pal," earned a medical ...
Evita Perón (1918-1952).
Evita Perón (1918-1952). Part of Perón's popularity came from the charitable works of his wife, Evita, in the Perón Foundation. The former ...
Fidel Castro.
Fidel Castro (b. 1926) in the Sierra Maestra mountains of Cuba, 1957. Since 1914, Latin Americans have chosen from a multitude of ideologies. ...
Fidel Castro.
Fidel Castro. In May 1960, the Cuban government asked Texaco, Standard Oil, and Royal Dutch Shell to refine some Soviet crude oil which it had ...
Ford do Brasil, 1965.
Ford do Brasil, 1965. On April 9, 1964, the generals issued the First Institutional Act, permitting the president to rule by decree. Under ...
Gamblers in Havana, 1940.
Gamblers in Havana, 1940. Between 1944 and 1952, the Auténticos under Grau San Martín (1887-1969) and Carlos Prío Socorrás (1903-1977) ruled ...
General Augusto Pinochet (b. 1915).
General Augusto Pinochet (b. 1915). The Chilean middle class supported the military coup, believing that the generals would restore someone like ...
General Enoch Crowder (1859-1932).
General Enoch Crowder. In 1920 a sharp decline in sugar prices, following the unprecedented boom known as "the dance of the millions," severely ...
General Juan Velasco Alvarado.
General Juan Velasco Alvarado (b. 1910), of Peru. In October 1968 General Velasco and his fellow army officers formed a revolutionary ...
Gerardo Machado (1871-1938).
Gerardo Machado (1871-1938) was elected president of Cuba in 1924 on a nationalist, anti-corruption platform. He began a series of public ...
Getúlio Vargas (1883-1954).
Getúlio Vargas (1883-1954). After 1932, Vargas became more conservative, and he alienated the National Liberation Alliance (ANL), a popular ...
Getulio Vargas.
Getulio Vargas (l.) and Eurico Dutra (1905-1974). On October 29, 1945, just a few weeks before the scheduled election, General Dutra overthrew ...
Grape pickers in a Chilean vineyard.
Grape pickers in a Chilean vineyard. President Frei planned to improve conditions in rural areas by giving land to the peasants, although he did ...
Hauling sugar cane to the mill, ca. 1915.
Hauling sugar cane to the mill, ca. 1915. The Cuban sugar industry declined so severely in the 1920s that it still has not recovered. It lost ...
Housing in Cuba.
Housing in Cuba. Despite its mistakes, the Cuban revolution has achieved considerable successes. Inequalities in lifestyles have been ...
Indians in the Amazon jungle.
Indians in the Amazon jungle. Many of these Indians continue to live as their people have for centuries, attuned to nature, but the modern ...
Isabel Martínez de Perón.
Isabel Martínez de Perón (b. 1931). In September 1973 Juan Perón became president once more, with his new wife, Isabel Martínez de Perón ...
Jânio da Silva Quadros (b. 1917).
Jânio da Silva Quadros (b. 1917). In 1960 Quadros, the former governor of Sáo Paulo, was elected president with João Goulart (b. 1918) as vice ...
John Dulles welcomes Juscelino Kubitschek, 1956.
John Foster Dulles welcomes Juscelino Kubitschek in Washington, D.C., January 1956. In 1955 the governor of the state of Minas Gerais, Juscelino ...
José Napoleón Duarte.
José Napoleón Duarte at the U.N., October 8, 1984. In 1972, the Christian Democratic Party headed by José Napoleón Duarte and the National ...
Juan Domingo Perón (1895-1974).
Juan Domingo Perón (1895-1974). After he was reelected in 1952, Perón actively looked for foreign investment. In 1953, he extended oil drilling ...
Kennedy announces the Alliance for Progress.
U.S. President John F. Kennedy announces the Alliance for Progress, March 13, 1961. President Kennedy pledged to spend $10 billion over ten ...
Kennedy with Goulart, 1962.
U.S. President John F. Kennedy with João Goulart, 1962. After becoming president of Brazil in September 1961, Goulart tried to calm ...
Lázaro Cárdenas (1895-1970).

Lázaro Cárdenas (1895-1970) signing the land reform law, 1940. In 1934, Calles selected Cárdenas to be the next president. Once elected, ...

Lázaro Cárdenas (1895-1970).
Lázaro Cárdenas (1895-1970). Since 1914, some political leaders, such as Juan Perón of Argentina, Lázaro Cárdenas of Mexico and Salvador Allende ...

Loading coffee at Santos.
Loading coffee at Santos. Coffee prices remained low throughout the 1930s. With Brazil's capacity to import severely curtailed, President ...

Lt. Gen. Uriburu (1868-1932).
Lt. Gen. José F. Uriburu (1868-1932). Yrigoyen's successor, President Marcelo de Alvear (1868-1942), cut government spending, curbing ...

Miguel de la Madrid.
Miguel de la Madrid (b. 1934) entered the presidency in 1982 with promises to clean up corruption. Jorge Díaz Serrano, the former head of PEMEX, ...

Nazis in Santiago, Chile, 1940.
Nazis in Santiago, Chile, 1940. Since 1914, some Latin Americans have chosen to ally themselves with international fascism, under which society ...

Peasants in northeast Brazil.
Peasants in northeast Brazil. Under the direction of a lawyer, Francisco Julião (b. 1915), the peasants of the devastated northeast began to ...

Plutarco Elías Calles (1875-1945).
Plutarco Elías Calles (1875-1945), the most dictatorial president since Porfirio Díaz, succeeded Obregón in 1924. Between 1924 and 1928 he ...

President Alvaro Obregón (1880-1928).
President Alvaro Obregón (1880-1928). During his presidency from 1920 to 1924, Obregón made important strides in implementing Articles 27 and ...

President Anastasio Somoza García (1896-1956).
President Anastasio Somoza García (1896-1956) ruled Nicaragua from 1936 until his assassination in 1956. During that time he was careful to ...

President Fernando Belaúnde Terry.
President Fernando Belaúnde Terry (b. 1912). In 1975 steeply rising oil prices caused an international recession, and President Velasco was ...

President Johnson returns Chamizal land to Mexico.
U.S. President Lyndon B. Johnson signs the act returning the Chamizal land to Mexico. Because of sandy soil in the El Paso region of the United ...

President José López Portillo.
President José López Portillo (b. 1920) at the United Nations, September, 1979. During López Portillo's term, Mexico became the fourth largest ...

President Lázaro Cárdenas and General Camacho.
President Lázaro Cárdenas (at microphone) and General Manuel Avila Camacho reading the law expropriating the holdings of foreign oil companies in ...

President Manuel Camacho and President Roosevelt.
President Manuel Avila Camacho (1897-1955) and U.S. President Franklin Roosevelt review troops. In May 1942, Mexico joined the Allies in ...

President Uriburu's arch rival, General Justo.
President Uriburu's arch rival, General Agustín P. Justo (1878-1943), succeeded him as president. Justo used fraud, enforcers, and the ...

Principal signers of Panama Canal Treaty, 1978.
Principals are shown after the signing of the Panama Canal Treaty, July 6, l978. The conclusion of this treaty was one of the highlights of the ...

Proclaiming nationalization of U.S. companies.
A poster proclaiming the nationalization of U.S. companies, 1961. A major part of Castro's industrial reforms was managed by his Minister of ...

Rafael Trujillo (1891-1961).
Rafael Trujillo (1891-1961). The Cuban revolution and Fidel Castro's prestige throughout the hemisphere changed the United States' view of Latin ...

Raúl Alfonsín (b. 1927).
Raúl Alfonsín (b. 1927). In December 1983, Raúl Alfonsín, the candidate of the Radical Party, was elected president of Argentina. Alfonsín ...

Rebel troops, 1930.
Rebel troops, 1930. After a long period of rule which alternated between the coffee barons of Minas Gerais and São Paulo, a new Liberal Alliance ...

Rivera mural, The Legacy of Independence .
A part of the 1929-30 Diego Rivera mural, The Legacy of Independence , on the West Wall of the Palacio Nacional in Mexico City. One of ...

Roberto M. Ortiz (1886-1942).
Roberto M. Ortiz (1886-1942). President Ortiz restored honesty to the Argentine political process by overturning fraudulent provincial elections ...

Roosevelt inaugurated.
President Franklin D. Roosevelt (1882-1945) is sworn in as U.S. President in 1933. In his inaugural address,

he announced the Good Neighbor ...

Salvadoran troops assembled in soccer stadium.

Salvadoran troops assembled in a soccer stadium, San Salvador, 1969. Overpopulation in El Salvador helped to aggravate existing tensions with ...

Sandino's troops, August 25, 1928.

Sandino's troops, August 25, 1928. From 1927 until 1933, Sandino's forces harassed the U.S. Marines and the Nicaraguan National Guard. Few ...

Scene from bus fare riot in Santiago, Chile 1949.

This scene from the bus fare riot in Santiago, Chile, August, 1949, exemplifies the growing discontent of the working class. Founded in 1912, ...

Scene inside Volta Redonda steel mill, Brazil.

A scene inside the Volta Redonda steel mill, Brazil, 1975. The National Steel Company at Volta Redonda, between Rio de Janeiro and São Paulo, ...

Slums in Santiago, Chile, August, 1964.

Slums in Santiago, Chile, August, 1964. In 1958 President Jorge Alessandri (b. 1896), the son of former president Arturo Alessandri, returned ...

Steel being rolled in Volta Redonda steel mill.

Steel being rolled in the Volta Redonda steel mill in Brazil, ca. 1949. Since 1914, the questions of how best to achieve economic growth have ...

The Cristero banner, 1926-29.

The Cristero banner, 1926-29. Calles, determined to enforce Article 3 of the Mexican Constitution separating Church and state, forbade public ...

The Catavi tin mine in Bolivia, 1940.

The Catavi tin mine in Bolivia, 1940. Since the Spanish conquest, Bolivia has relied on the funds from the export of metals, at first silver, ...

The Club Viña del Mar, Chile.

The Club Viña del Mar, Chile. Allende's success in 1971 was partly due to the high price of copper. His opponents in the military met at this ...

The court of a government building in Querétaro.

The court of a government building in Querétaro. In November 1916, Carranza called a constitutional convention in Querétaro composed of his ...

The home of a landed farmer in Chile.

The home of a landed farmer in Chile. Taxes levied on the foreign-owned copper industry permitted Chilean landowners to escape taxation and ...

The Mexican presidential election, 1929.

The Mexican presidential election, 1929. In 1928 former President Obregón was re-elected despite revolts led by Generals Francisco Serrano and ...

The Moncada barracks, 1953, with bullet scars.

The Moncada barracks, 1953, with bullet scars. Fidel Castro and his brother Raúl, sons of a wealthy Spanish land owner in northwest Cuba, and a ...

The national literacy campaign, 1961.

The national literacy campaign, 1961. Learning from the mistakes of the 1933 revolutionaries, Castro and his "26th of July" movement took the ...

The patio process of breaking up silver ore.

The patio process of breaking up silver ore. The new Mexican constitution proclaimed in Article 27 that land seized illegally during the ...

The steel plant in Monterrey, 1940.

The steel plant in Monterrey, 1940. During World War II Mexico began to develop its own industries, since Europe and the U.S. were occupied ...

The tango, Buenos Aires.

The tango, Buenos Aires. Although they suffered from a corrupt political system, the residents of Buenos Aires believed their city was "the ...

The yacht Granma .

The yacht Granma . After 19 months in prison, the Castros were freed in a general amnesty, and went to Mexico City. There they met Ernesto ...

Tijuana during prohibition, ca. 1934.

Tijuana during prohibition, ca. 1934. Mexico survived the 1929-32 depression years slightly better than many other Latin American nations. The ...

Troops in Bogotá during Colombian election 1949.

Troops in Bogotá during the Colombian election, November 29, 1949. In 1948, the murder of Jorge Eliécer Gaitan, a Liberal, sparked a massive ...

Troops in Brasilia, 1964.

Troops in Brasilia, 1964. On March 31, 1964, when rebel forces began marching on Rio de Janiero to overthrow President Goulart, a U.S. aircraft ...

Two Mexican labor organization's battle results.

The results of a battle between two Mexican labor organizations, the CROM and the FROC, at Puebla, 1937. One problem facing Latin American ...

U.S. marines arrive in Nicaragua, 1927.

U.S. Marines arrive in Nicaragua, 1927. The Marines first occupied Nicaragua in 1909, returning in 1912 to stay until 1925. Soon after they ...

U.S. marines in Santo Domingo, May 8, 1965.
U.S. marines in Santo Domingo, the Dominican Republic, May 8, l965. In April 1965 the legally-elected president of the Dominican Republic, Juan ...
Venustiano Carranza (1859-1920).
Venustiano Carranza (1859-1920). In 1920 Alvaro Obregón and other Sonorans Adolfo de la Huerta and Plutarco Elías Calles rebelled against ...
Villa's troops marching through Chihuahua, Mexico.
Villa's troops marching through Chihuahua, Mexico, 1914. In April 1915, Carrancista General Alvaro Obregón, the former shopkeeper and farmer, ...
W W II Brazilian Expeditionary Force in Naples.
The World War II Brazilian Expeditionary Force in Naples. From 1933 to 1938, Germany became a primary market for Brazilian cotton, coffee, and ...
Woman given shot, Nicaraguan health clinic.
A woman being vaccinated in a rural health clinic in Nicaragua. The Sandinistas nationalized banks, began a literacy campaign, and ...
Workers in a Hughes Aircraft plant in Mexicali.
Workers in a Hughes Aircraft plant in Mexicali. Avila Camacho's successors, Miguel Alemán (1902-1983) and Adolfo Ruiz Cortines (1890-1973), ...

Latin America, 1870 to 1914

" Look, Uncle - there's a bully pear !"
An 1868 cartoon, "Look, Uncle - there's a bully pear!" After 1850, the U.S. interest centered around Cuba, its third largest market. In 1852 ...
Indian & Mule Turning Monarchical Waterwheel .
A cartoon, Indian and Mule Turning the Monarchical Waterwheel , Brazil, 1875. Anti-slave sentiment quickly became anti-monarchical feeling as ...
Inquilinos (sharecroppers), Chile, ca. 1900.
Chilean Inquilinos (sharecroppers), ca. 1900. During the Parliamentary Republic from 1891 to 1924, the economy revived and exports increased, ...
Order and Progress , Mexico City, 1900.
Order and Progress , Mexico City, 1900. This frontispiece for the English edition of Positivist historian Justo Sierra's book shows the ...
Rurales in Mexico, ca. 1906.
Mexican Rurales, ca. 1906. During the Porfiriato , the poor, particularly the Indians and mestizos , could either accept their miserable ...
Slaves Thanking Master for the Law of 1871
A cartoon, Slaves Thanking Master for the Law of 1871 , Brazil, 1885. The Rio Branco Law, like the first anti-slave trade treaty, meant very ...
" My, My Such Possibilities ."
My, My Such Possibilities , a cartoon ca. 1901-1909 by Clifford Kennedy Berryman. During the period from 1870 to 1914, Great Britain was the ...
A 1900 cartoon, Sigue Bajando , "Going Down."
A 1900 cartoon, Sigue Bajando , "Going Down." Despite the visible "progress," by 1900 even the members of the Mexican ruling class were ...
A Brazilian sugar mill in the early 1800s.
A Brazilian sugar mill in the early 1800s. In the northeast of Brazil, where the economy and soil had steadily deteriorated with the bankruptcy ...
A busload of immigrants at Buenos Aires, ca. 1916.
A busload of immigrants at Buenos Aires, ca. 1916. As the middle class grew, immigrants and their sons looked to government jobs and the ...
A Chilean naval squadron in 1879.
A Chilean naval squadron in 1879. Although their enemies had twice their population, the Chileans had a well-trained army and navy. In ...
A Chilean nitrate plant, ca. 1900.
A Chilean nitrate plant, ca. 1900. After the War of the Pacific ended in 1883, Chile returned the nitrate fields to the private companies. ...
A cotton mill in São Paulo, ca. 1910.
A cotton mill in São Paulo, ca. 1910. By 1908 Brazil had more than 3,000 factories. Foreigners owned the banks, public works, utilities, ...
A Cuban village, ca. 1899.
A Cuban village, ca. 1899. The country was occupied by the U.S. army from January 1899 to May 1902. The Americans gave rebel leaders good ...
A fashionable shop in Buenos Aires, 1885.
A fashionable shop in Buenos Aires, 1885. As agriculture and cattle-raising became big business, the Argentine government borrowed large sums ...
A Mexican shoe factory, ca. 1909.
A Mexican shoe factory, ca. 1909. Foreigners, mostly French and Spanish, also dominated manufacturing and the production of consumer goods. ...
A reader in a Cuban tobacco factory.
A reader in a Cuban tobacco factory. Cuba's second biggest export, tobacco, was grown on small family-

owned farms which required skilled labor. ...

A textile factory in Chile.
A textile factory in Chile. Between 1890 and 1900, the Chilean working class doubled to 250,000. Because of terrible working conditions, ...

A wealthy family's home, Mexico.
A wealthy family's home, Mexico, ca. 1901. Díaz firmly supported export agriculture. In 1883, Mexico enacted a survey of "vacant public lands," ...

An Italian settler and his family in Brazil.
An Italian settler and his family in Brazil, ca. 1914. Some countries, particularly Brazil and Argentina, needed more workers to fill the ...

An open pit copper mine in Chile.
An open pit copper mine in Chile. After 1861, the Chilean economy shifted toward its northern desert with copper, nitrates, and guano . Unlike ...

Antonio Conselheiro (Anthony the Counselor).
Antonio Conselheiro (Anthony the Counselor), a new messiah who in 1895 appeared in the cattle-raising part of Bahia and set up a community on an ...

Antonio Maceo (1848-1896).
Antonio Maceo (1848-1896). The Ten Years' War, 1868-1878, or the first Cuban war for independence, devastated the country. The Spanish Crown ...

Araucanian Indians, ca. 1910.
Araucanian Indians, ca. 1910. As in Argentina, the Chileans also launched a campaign against the warlike Araucanian Indians. In 1883 the ...

Boiling house, part of sugar making process, Cuba.
The boiling house, a part of the sugar making process, in Cuba, 1868. In 1800, Cuba became the dominant sugar producer in the hemisphere. ...

Building the Panama Canal, 1907.
Building the Panama Canal, 1907. Built primarily by laborers from India, China, and other parts of the world, the Canal linked the Atlantic and ...

Cartoon showing problems of foreign debt, 1923
The Pursued , a 1923 Buenos Aires cartoon showing the consequences of foreign debt. Although Argentines made large profits in the 1880-1890 ...

Dining room of immigrant hotel in Buenos Aires.
The dining room of an immigrant hotel in Buenos Aires. After 1880, immigrants went to work in plants connected with the cattle industry, and in ...

Double-ended locomotive for mountains in Mexico.
A double-ended locomotive designed for mountain grades in Mexico, 1900. The Díaz system produced many visible benefits. When he first became ...

Entrance to coffee hacienda in Mexico, 1907.
The entrance to a coffee hacienda at Orizaba, Mexico, ca. 1907. From 1870 to 1914, laws throughout Latin America freed Church and Indian ...

Francisco (Pancho) Villa (1877-1923).
Francisco (Pancho) Villa (1877-1923) with some of his guerrillas . In 1910, in the northern state of Chihuahua, Pascual Orozco, a muleteer, ...

Francisco Madero (1873-1913), President of Mexico.
Francisco Madero (1873-1913), President of Mexico. Madero's social reforms were too cautious for peasants and workers, but too far-reaching for ...

Francisco Madero and revolutionary leaders.
Francisco Madero and members of the revolutionary leadership after Ciudad Juárez, 1911. Villa is top left, and Carranza bottom left. Before ...

General Julio A. Roca (1843-1914).
General Julio A. Roca (1843-1914). When General Roca became president in 1880, a new generation closely tied to landowners and wealthy merchants ...

General Manuel Baquedano (1826-1897).
General Manuel Baquedano (1826-1897). On January 15, 1881, after the Chilean navy had destroyed every Peruvian warship and Chile had captured ...

General Zapata (seated, center) and his staff.
General Emiliano Zapata (seated, center) and his staff. In a 1909 election, the Morelos village of Anencuilo chose Emiliano Zapata (1879-1919), ...

German immigrants in Brazil.
German immigrants in Brazil, n.d. As Brazilians debated the continuation of slavery, they increased their efforts to encourage European ...

Harvesting bananas in Costa Rica, 1905.
Harvesting bananas in Costa Rica, 1905. The republics of Central America adopted Mexican reformist concepts. They took land away from the ...

Henry Meiggs (1811-1877).
Henry Meiggs (1811-1877). An American, Henry Meiggs was responsible for some of the most spectacular railroad engineering in the western ...

Herbert Spencer (1820-1903).
Herbert Spencer (1820-1903). The economic transformation of Latin America from 1870 to 1914 often adversely affected large sections of its ...

Hipólito Yrigoyen (1852-1933).
Hipólito Yrigoyen (1852-1933). In 1890 depression struck, and the middle class and progressive elite established the Unión Cívica , headed by ...
Immigrants arriving in Argentina, 1907.
Immigrants arriving in Argentina, 1907. The first president of a united Argentina, Bartolomé Mitre, began a process of modernization which ...
Joaquim Nabuco (1849-1910).
Joaquim Nabuco (1849-1910). After 1870 slavery became the dominant issue in Brazil. Joaquim Nabuco and other abolitionists believed that the ...
José Yves Limantour (1854-1935).
José Yves Limantour (1854-1935). Díaz surrounded himself with a group of intellectuals, professionals, and entrepreneurs known as " Científicos ...
José Batlle y Ordóñez (1856-1929).
José Batlle y Ordóñez (1856-1929). Unlike the timid Argentine oligarchy , the President of Uruguay, José Batlle y Ordóñez, instituted a real ...
José Enrique Rodó (1871-1917).
José Enrique Rodó (1871-1917). Latin American intellectuals quickly understood U.S. power in their region. In 1900, Uruguayan educator José ...
José Hernández (1834-1886).
José Hernández (1834-1886). In the first half of the 19th century, the gaucho symbolized the Argentine character. In 1872 José Hernández ...
José Manuel Balmaceda (1840-1891).
José Manuel Balmaceda (1840-1891). In 1886, when José Manuel Balmaceda became President, he used his full treasury to support infrastructural ...
José Martí (1853-1895).
José Martí (1853-1895), while still a young man, spent much of the Ten Years' War in prison at hard labor. After that, he was sent into exile in ...
José Santos Zelaya (1853-1919).
José Santos Zelaya (1853-1919). In 1893 President José Santos Zelaya of Nicaragua commissioned the building of telegraph lines and railroads, ...
Loading Argentine beef on a ship, early 1900s.
Loading Argentine beef on a ship, early 1900s. Some scholars refer to the years from 1870 to 1914 as a "golden age"; others consider them "the ...
Loading coffee, Santos, Brazil, ca. 1910-1920.
Loading coffee, Santos, Brazil, ca. 1910-1920. After 1898, the Brazilian government devoted much of its attention to promoting coffee exports. ...
Locomotives used by French, Panama canal attempt.
Remains of old locomotives used in the abortive French effort to build a Panama canal, photographed at Empire, C.Z., in the early 1900s. ...
Manuel González Prada (1848-1918).
Manuel González Prada (1848-1918). After the War of the Pacific in 1883, Peruvians created the enganche system, which forced Indians from the ...
Manuel Pardo (1834-1878).
Manuel Pardo (1834-1878). When the Dreyfus contract excluded Peruvian elites, they organized the Civilista Party, and elected millionaire ...
Marshal Deodoro da Fonseca (1827-1892).
Marshal Deodoro da Fonseca (1827-1892). Once slavery had been abolished, the monarchy could not last long. On November 15, 1889, less than 18 ...
Mural From Porfirianism to Revolution .
A part of the mural by David Alfaro Siqueiros, From Porfirianism to the Revolution , in the Museo Nacional de Historia in Mexico City, 1966. ...
Panamanian soldiers, 1903.
Panamanian soldiers, 1903. When Colombia refused to lease the Isthmus of Panama to the U.S. for 99 years for $10,000,000 plus $250,000 annual ...
Pascual Orozco and his men, Juárez, May 26, 1911.
Pascual Orozco and his men, Juárez, May 26, 1911. On May 10 of that year, Orozco and Villa captured Ciudad Juárez, located just across the ...
Philippe Bunau-Varilla (1859-1940).
Philippe Bunau-Varilla (1859-1940). The chief engineer in Panama under de Lesseps, Philippe Bunau-Varilla, organized the New Panama Canal ...
Porfirio Díaz (1830-1915).
Porfirio Díaz (1830-1915). No one better symbolizes the impact of Spencerian Social Darwinism in Latin America than Porfirio Díaz, who ruled ...
Porfirio Díaz (1830-1915).
Porfirio Díaz (1830-1915). In 1910 Porfirio Díaz was 80 years old, and his regime had become a gerontocracy. In 1908, during an interview with ...
Princess Isabel becomes Regent of Brazil, 1888.
Princess Isabel becomes Regent of Brazil, 1888. In May 1888, Parliament abolished all slavery, and Princess Isabel, acting as regent while her ...
Punishing slaves in Cuba, ca. 1868.

Punishing slaves in Cuba, ca. 1868. The quickening of the export economy from 1870 to 1914 meant harsher conditions for many workers. Slavery ...

Railroad from Chilean nitrate mines to sea, 1900.
A railroad from the Chilean nitrate mines to the sea, ca. 1900. The export economies which developed between 1870 and 1914, and the modern ...

Rubén Darío (1867-1916).
Rubén Darío (1867-1916). The foremost exponent of modernist poetry in Latin America, the Nicaraguan diplomat Rubén Darío, like José Martí and ...

Ruy Barbosa (1849-1923).
Ruy Barbosa (1849-1923). After the abolition of slavery, many Brazilians promoted industrialization. Ruy Barbosa, the first Republican minister ...

Silver ore being broken up by Mexican peons.
Silver ore being broken up by Mexican peons, ca. 1905. By 1910 Americans controlled the mining of silver, copper, gold, lead and tin, and shared ...

Tapping a rubber tree in Brazil, ca. 1910.
Tapping a rubber tree in Brazil, ca. 1910. In 1912, rubber amounted to 40% of Brazil's exports, second only to coffee. The rubber boom, which ...

The 1906 Cananea riot at Sonora, Mexico.
The 1906 Cananea riot at Sonora, Mexico. On June 1, 1906, Mexican workers at the Cananea Consolidated Copper Company in Sonora, which was owned ...

The Chilean army, 1879.
The Chilean army, 1879. In 1878, Bolivia placed higher duties on Chilean-owned nitrates mined on its soil, violating treaty provisions. Chilean ...

The Chilean House of Congress.
The Chilean House of Congress. After 1888, President Balmaceda of Chile governed without a parliamentary majority and was in constant conflict ...

The conquest of the desert.
The conquest of the desert. In 1879-1880 General Julio A. Roca, the Argentine Secretary of War, commanded a military expedition to the south ...

The Cuban National Convention, November 5, l900.
The Cuban National Convention, November 5, l900. General Leonard Wood, leader of the U.S. occupation forces, convened the Cuban National ...

The insurrection at Ciudad Juárez, May 19, 1911.
The insurrection at Ciudad Juárez, May 19, 1911. In October 1910, Madero issued the Plan of San Luis Potosí , declaring the recent presidential ...

The São Paulo financial center, 1914.
The São Paulo financial center, 1914. Coffee revenues made São Paulo the industrial and financial capital of Brazil. As the city grew, so did ...

The Victoria cotton mills at Lima, Peru, 1908.
The Victoria cotton mills at Lima, Peru, 1908. Just as the Indian question was emerging, so too was that of the new working class. Strikes ...

The wreck of the U.S.S. Maine .
The wreck of the U.S.S. Maine , February 15, 1898. The war for Cuban independence coincided with a press war between William Randolph Hearst ...

Theodore Roosevelt and the Rough Riders, 1898.
Theodore Roosevelt (wearing eyeglasses, left center) and the Rough Riders, 1898. Although Roosevelt's famous charge up San Juan Hill in Cuba ...

Threshing wheat by machine in Chile, ca. 1869.
Threshing wheat by machine in Chile, ca. 1869. When prices for wheat and copper dropped, Chilean mine owners began to invest in the nitrate ...

Transporting sugar cane in Cuba, ca. 1890.
Transporting sugar cane in Cuba, ca. 1890. After the Ten Years' War destroyed the Cuban sugar industry, U.S. interests invested heavily in what ...

U.S. marines landing at Veracruz, April 1914.
U.S. Marines landing at Veracruz, April 1914. When U.S. President Woodrow Wilson learned that a German ship was scheduled to arrive in Veracruz ...

U.S. soldiers in Cuba, 1898.
U.S. soldiers in Cuba, 1898. After the sinking of the Maine , U.S. President William McKinley demanded that Spain call for an armistice, with ...

Victoriano Huerta (1845-1916).
Victoriano Huerta (1845-1916). As soon as Mexicans learned of Madero's execution, they refused to support President Huerta, whom they called ...

Wallach mansion, Pan American Conference site.
The Wallach mansion in Washington, site of the Pan American Conference in 1889. In 1881, American leaders sought to create better trade ...

William Russell Grace (1832-1904).
William Russell Grace (1832-1904), photographed in 1880 when mayor of New York City. Grace came to Peru from Ireland in the 1850s and entered ...

William Walker (1824-1860).
William Walker (1824-1860). Both the U.S. and Great Britain continued to expand their interests in Central

America, particularly in Nicaragua, ...

Workers in silver smelter, Cerro de Pasco, Peru.

Workers in the silver smelter at Cerro de Pasco, Peru, ca. 1916. The military gained power in Peru after the War of the Pacific. In order to ...

Middle Eastern History

A global view of the Middle East.

A global view of the Middle East (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

Video Overview: The history of the Middle East.

A brief video Overview of the history of the Middle East, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: The peoples of the Middle East have ...

North Africa and the Middle East After 1945

1982 political map of Israel & neighboring states.

A 1982 political map of Israel and neighboring ...

A container ship on the Suez Canal.

A container ship on the Suez Canal. Nasser, the leader of Egypt, nationalized the Suez Canal in 1956, precipitating an invasion by Britain, ...

A graphic map of world oil reserves.

A graphic map of world oil reserves showing the prominence of the Gulf reserves. Saudi Arabia's control of nearly a quarter of the world's ...

A Saudi Arabian desalinization plant.

A Saudi Arabian desalinization plant. Energy from oil, which Saudi Arabia has in abundance, has been used to turn salt water into fresh water, a ...

A slum community just outside of Cairo in 1979.

A slum community just outside of Cairo in 1979. Slum dwellers glean the refuse which is deposited here, seeking anything of value. Obvious ...

A steel mill in Helwan, Egypt.

A steel mill in Helwan, Egypt. Like many other Third World countries, Egypt has sought to build an industrial base, but has been confronted with ...

A textile factory in Israel.

A textile factory in Israel. The influx of Western capital, combined with a skilled work force, has transformed Israel into the most ...

Adult literacy class in Yemen Arab Republic, 1983.

An adult literacy class in the Yemen Arab Republic, 1983. The increase of oil wealth in the Arabian Peninsula has offered new educational ...

American military patrol near Beirut airport 1983.

An American military patrol near the Beirut airport, February 3, 1983. Brought in to evacuate besieged PLO forces in the summer of 1982, the ...

Amman, the capital of Jordan.

Amman, the capital of Jordan, showing the modern city and the 2000-year-old Roman amphitheater . The amphitheater is still used for concerts ...

An Arab nationalist demonstration in Syria.

An Arab nationalist demonstration in Syria. The sign in French reads "Syria is Arab; It will remain Arab." Syria gained independence from ...

Anti-American graffiti painted on wall in Teheran.

Anti-American graffiti being painted on a wall in Teheran in July 1955. American and British aid in overthrowing the Iranian nationalist Prime ...

Anwar Sadat, Jimmy Carter, and Menachem Begin.

Presidents Anwar Sadat of Egypt, Jimmy Carter of the U.S., and Prime Minister Menachem Begin of Israel sign the Camp David Accords in ...

Armed Algerian rebels carrying a wounded comrade.

Armed Algerian rebels carrying a wounded comrade in 1959. Beginning as a small band of guerrillas in 1954, the FLN gradually gained the ...

Chadli Benjadid, President of Algeria.

Chadli Benjadid, President of Algeria, after a meeting with U.S. President Ronald Reagan at the White House in 1986. Despite its support for ...

David Ben-Gurion (1886-1973).

David Ben-Gurion (1886-1973) the first Prime Minister of Israel, He served in the Israeli government until ...

Dr. Mohammed Mossadegh.

Dr. Mohammed Mossadegh (also spelled Mossadeg), the Prime Minister of Iran, in a New York hospital while in the United States to defend Iran's ...

Egyptian pontoon bridge used to cross Suez Canal.

An Egyptian pontoon bridge used to cross the Suez Canal in the 1973 Arab-Israeli war. In October 1973 Egyptian troops crossed the Canal, ...

Egyptian President Hosni Mubarak.

Egyptian President Hosni Mubarak. Coming to power in 1981 after Sadat's assassination, Mubarak sought to rebuild Egypt's place in the Arab and ...

Expressways and modern buildings, downtown Cairo.

Expressways and modern buildings in downtown Cairo. The largest city in Africa and still growing, Cairo faces the chronic problems of rapid ...

French authorities rounding up Algerian suspects.
French authorities rounding up Algerian suspects during violent confrontations at Philippeville in August, 1955. The guerrilla struggle ...
Gamal Abd al-Nasser (1918-1970).
Gamal Abd al-Nasser (1918-1970), President of Egypt from 1956 to 1970, at the 1963 Organization of African Unity meeting in Addis Ababa. An ...
Gigantic earthmovers near nomad tents in Algeria.
Gigantic earthmovers next to nomad tents at Sidi Bel Abbes, Algeria. The contrasts of contemporary life in Africa and the Middle East are ...
Houari Boumedienne, a former President of Algeria.
Houari Boumedienne, President of Algeria from 1965 to 1978, at the 1963 Organization of African Unity meeting in Addis Ababa. Having been chief ...
Ismet Inonu (1884-1973) with his wife, Mevhibe.
Ismet Inonu (1884-1973), President of the Turkish Republic from 1938 to 1950, with his wife, Mevhibe. A soldier during and after World War I, ...
Israeli armored personnel carrier in Beirut, 1982.
An Israeli armored personnel carrier in a Beirut street in August, 1982. Israel launched an invasion of southern Lebanon in June 1982, ...
Israeli convoy during first Arab-Israeli war.
An Israeli convoy during the first Arab-Israeli war of 1948-49. For the Israelis, this conflict was their War of Independence. As the British ...
Israeli troops in Old City of Jerusalem.
Israeli troops in the Old City of Jerusalem during the 1967 June War. The Israeli victory and capture of the West Bank made possible the ...
Jewish refugees arrive by boat at Haifa (Jaffa).
Jewish refugees arriving by boat at Haifa (Jaffa), Palestine, December 7, 1946. The flag with the Star of David later became the official symbol ...
Jiddah, Saudi port city on the Red Sea.
Jiddah, Saudi port city on the Red Sea. This photograph illustrates the rapid urbanization which has transformed the face of the Arabian ...
King Abdullah of Jordan.
King Abdullah of Jordan (formerly known as Transjordan). The son of Sharif Hussein of Mecca, who had led the "Arab Revolt" against Ottoman rule ...
King Faisal (ca.1906-1975), King of Saudi Arabia.
King Faisal (ca.1906-1975), King of Saudi Arabia from 1964 to 1975, meeting with President Richard Nixon in 1971. Faisal was the son of Ibn ...
King Hassan II of Morocco in 1983.
King Hassan II of Morocco in 1983. When King Muhammad V died in 1961, his son Hassan II succeeded him as king. Hassan II had been groomed for ...
King Hussein, Jordan meeting Vice-President Nixon.
King Hussein of Jordan, in military uniform, being received by Vice-President Richard Nixon in Washington in 1959. Ascending to the throne in ...
King Idris I of Libya after independence in 1951.
King Idris I of Libya, on the right, after the country became independent in 1951. A United Nations commission, represented here by Adrian Pelt, ...
King Mohammed V of Morocco.
King Mohammed V of Morocco (c.) being welcomed to the United Nations by United Nations Secretary-General Dag Hammarskjold (r.) in 1957. In an ...
Leather dyers' vats in Fez.
Leather dyers' vats in Fez are a reminder of the historical continuity of Morocco over many centuries. A nationalist movement called the ...
Map: areas Kurdish concentration in Middle East.
A map showing areas of Kurdish concentration in the Middle East. The Kurds are a Muslim population speaking an Indo-European language who ...
Mohammed Reza Pahlavi, the Shah of Iran.
Mohammed Reza Pahlavi, the Shah of Iran, photographed at his desk in Teheran around 1960. Born in Teheran in 1919, Mohammed Reza succeeded to ...
Norwegian soldier of UN Interim Force in Lebanon.
A Norwegian soldier of the United Nations Interim Force in Lebanon (UNIFIL) stands guard in southern Lebanon. This force, which was deployed in ...
Officer inspecting troops of Arab Liberation Army.
An officer inspecting troops of the Arab Liberation Army in northern Palestine, April 17, 1948. Incensed by the 1947 United Nations Partition ...
Oil wells burn, Kuwait, 1991.
Oil wells burn in Kuwait, 1991, after being ignited by retreating Iraqi troops. In August of 1990, Saddam Hussein of Iraq, who had led his ...
Palestinian woman and child near Jerusalem 1948.
A Palestinian woman and child near Jerusalem, December 1948. The first Arab-Israeli war of 1948-49 created a severe refugee problem, as hundreds ...
Peacock Throne in Gulistan Palace, Teheran.

The display room looking toward the Peacock Throne in Gulistan Palace, Teheran. Extravagant purchases and displays of wealth by the Shah and his ...

Political map of northeast Africa and Middle East.
A 1982 political map of northeast Africa and the Middle ...

President Anwar Sadat of Egypt (1918-1981).
President Anwar Sadat of Egypt (1918-1981) listening to an address at an Organization of African Unity meeting in 1973. Sadat was one of the ...

Prime Minister Golda Meir of Israel with Nixon.
Prime Minister Golda Meir of Israel meeting with U.S. President Richard Nixon and Secretary of State Henry Kissinger in July 1974. A series ...

Ralph Bunche (1904-1971).
Ralph Bunche (1904-1971). Appointed to the U.N. Palestine Commission in 1947, Bunche worked with United Nations official Folke Bernadotte (until ...

Refugees living in tents in a camp near Beirut.
Refugees living in tents in a camp near Beirut, n.d. Hundreds of thousands of Palestinians took refuge in Lebanon in the period after 1948, and ...

Ruins of King David Hotel after bombing, 1946.
The ruins of the King David Hotel in Jerusalem after it was bombed by Zionist extremists on July 22, 1946, killing 91 people and wounding 45, ...

Ruins of residential neighborhood in Beirut 1982.
Ruins of a residential neighborhood in Beirut, August 1982. The once-prosperous city of Beirut became a shambles during years of internal strife ...

Saudi Arabian leaders, Khalid and Fahd.
Saudi Arabian leaders, Khalid on the left and Fahd in the center. Khalid ruled Saudi Arabia from 1975 until his death in 1982; he was succeeded ...

Supertankers loading oil off coast of Kuwait.
Supertankers loading oil at a pier off the coast of Kuwait. With huge oil reserves and a tiny population, Kuwait enjoyed one of the highest ...

Syrian military forces in Lebanon in l976.
Syrian military forces in Lebanon in l976. With the breakdown of order in Lebanon in 1975-76, the Lebanese government invited Syria to send in ...

The effects of irrigation in Egypt.
The effects of irrigation in Egypt. The building of the Aswan Dam on the Nile River with Soviet help contributed to strains in U.S.-Egyptian ...

The Iranian oil refinery in the Persian Gulf.
The Iranian oil refinery at Abadan in the Persian Gulf. Iran was one of the first major exporters of oil in the Middle East, and also led the ...

The iron and steel mill at Karabuk.
The iron and steel mill at Karabuk. Turkey has continued its attempts to develop an indigenous industrial capacity since the years of Atatürk's ...

The Israeli Knesset or Parliament in session.
The Israeli Knesset or Parliament in session. Israeli politics were dominated by the Labour Party following the creation of the state in 1948. ...

U.S. marines and a tank on the streets of Beirut.
U.S. Marines and a tank on the streets of Beirut, Lebanon, in 1958. When anti-government movements threatened to upset the delicate political ...

U.S. military equipment arriving in Turkey, 1948.
U.S. military equipment arriving in Turkey in April 1948. Strategically situated in the eastern Mediterranean next to the Soviet Union, Turkey ...

United Arab Emirates TV technician.
A United Arab Emirates technician in a television control room, illustrating the combination of traditional Arab dress and state-of-the-art ...

Yasir Arafat, Chairman of the PLO.
Yasir Arafat, Chairman of the Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO) since 1969. Born in Jerusalem in 1929, Arafat studied in Egypt, and in the ...

Northern and Northeast African to 1945

A column of Axis prisoners in the desert, 1942.
A column of Axis prisoners in the desert, 1942. The German troops were steadily pushed back through Libya, and eventually to the Mareth Line, a ...

A locomotive engine for Sa'id, the Pasha of Egypt.
A locomotive engine for Sa'id, the Pasha of Egypt. In an attempt to imitate modern developments in Europe, the Egyptian successors of Muhammad ...

A railway in the Algerian Sahara.
A railway in the Algerian Sahara. Just as Cecil Rhodes dreamed of a railway from the Cape to Cairo, so did late 19th century French ...

Abd al-Krim (1882-1963) under arrest.
Abd al-Krim (1882-1963) under arrest (on the left) after his capture by French and Spanish forces. An early Moroccan nationalist leader, Abd ...

Abyssinian infantry detachment in war with Italy.

An Abyssinian (Ethiopian) infantry detachment in the war against the Italians, ca. 1935-36. Although many of the Ethiopian soldiers were better ...

Ahmad Urabi, Egyptian nationalist leader.
Ahmad Urabi (1839-1911), Egyptian nationalist leader who led a revolt against foreign rule in 1881-1882. As minister of war in 1882, he became a ...

Algerian resistance leader Abd al-Qadir.
The Algerian resistance leader Abd al-Qadir (1808-1883) as he appeared late in life. A leader in the Qadiriyya Islamic brotherhood, Abd al-Qadir ...

Algiers and the coast, around 1900.
Algiers and the coast, around 1900. The influx of European settlers, tradesmen and administrators to Algeria during the 19th century contributed ...

An Algerian copper mine, mid-19th century.
An Algerian copper mine, mid-19th century. In Algeria, as elsewhere in Africa and the Middle East, underground mineral and energy resources ...

Animal-driven irrigation machinery in Egypt.
Animal-driven irrigation machinery in Egypt. Although such technology had made possible Egypt's high level of food production in pre-modern ...

British Bren gun carriers advance on Bardia.
World War II actions in North Africa began with an Italian invasion of Egypt from Libya in September 1940. British forces struck back in a ...

British naval brigade in Urabi-led rebellion,1882.
A British naval brigade in action in Egypt during the Urabi-led rebellion of 1882. The scene shows two crucial technological advantages that ...

British tank passes burning German tank in desert.
A British cruiser tank passes a burning German tank in the Libyan desert, 1941. Through the summer of that year the British troops regrouped and ...

British troops in ruins at Palmyra, inSyria, 1941.
British troops in the magnificent ruins at Palmyra, in eastern Syria, 1941. To protect their Middle and Near Eastern lifelines, the British ...

Cairo Punch cartoon of British Viceroy Gorst.
A satirical Cairo Punch cartoon showing British Viceroy Eldon Gorst pulling the strings of the various Egyptian ministers. Gorst succeeded ...

Casks of wine awaiting shipment at Algiers port.
Casks of wine awaiting shipment at the port of Algiers around 1900. This rare early color photograph illustrates how Algeria was transformed ...

Citadel in Cairo.
The Citadel in Cairo, showing mosques , minarets and monuments, in the late 19th century. During Mamluke and Ottoman times, Cairo was one of ...

Demonstration by Egyptian Nationalist Wafd Party.
A 1936 demonstration by members of the Egyptian Nationalist Wafd party. Essentially a middle-class and anti-British party, the Wafd participated ...

Easter banquet at Ankobar, in mid-19th century.
The Easter banquet at Ankobar, in the Shoa region of Abyssinia , in the mid-19th century. The king is seated on a throne in the alcove on the ...

Egyptians and British pull steamer up Nile rapids.
Egyptians and British troops pulling a steamer up the Nile rapids in the 1884-1885 expedition against the Sudanese Mahdi. Forces under British ...

Emperor Haile Selassie.
Emperor Haile Selassie (meaning "power of the trinity") and his wife Empress Manen and two sons, soon after ascending the Ethiopian throne in ...

Empress Tauti (or Taytu) wife of King Menelik.
Empress Tauti (or Taytu), the influential wife of King Menelik, ruler of Ethiopia from 1889 to ...

Ethiopian workers weaving rugs.
Ethiopian workers weaving rugs. In many parts of Africa, traditional forms of industrial production were undermined by inexpensive European ...

European plantation house, in ruins, Algeria.
A European plantation house, now in ruins, in Sidi Bel Abbes, Algeria. The influx of European settlers (known as pieds-noirs) into Algeria ...

European's depiction Battle of Tel-el-Kebir 1882.
A European artist's depiction of the Battle of Tel-el-Kebir, September 13, 1882, when the forces of Urabi Pasha were defeated by the British ...

Former President Habib Bourguiba of Tunisia.
Former President Habib Bourguiba of Tunisia. Born in 1903, Bourguiba's life is a mirror of 20th century Tunisian history. A Western-educated ...

Free French troops parade in occupied Tunis 1943.
Free French troops parade in newly occupied Tunis, May 1943. The British, Americans and French forced the remnants of the Afrika Korps into the ...

General Bernard Law Montgomery (1887-1976).
General Bernard Law Montgomery (1887-1976) was placed in command of the British Eighth Army in August of 1942. Reinforced with men, ...

German General Erwin Rommel (1891-1944) 1941.
German General Erwin Rommel (1891-1944) in the North African desert, 1941. In that year Rommel was placed at the head of a tank unit in Libya, ...
Gold/silver specie destined for India & China.
Gold and silver specie destined for India and China being unloaded at Suez in the mid-19th century. Prior to the building of the Suez Canal ...
Group of Spahis in France, 1914.
A group of Spahis, or North African troops, in France, 1914. African soldiers from both North and West Africa fought on the World War I ...
Herbert Lyautey (1854-1934), Morocco official.
Herbert Lyautey (1854-1934), the French resident-general in Morocco from 1912 to 1925. Having served earlier in Algeria, Lyautey developed a ...
King Farouk of Egypt.
King Farouk of Egypt (c.) with Crown Prince Farouk at his left, watching a Cairo parade around 1930. Farouk (1920-1965), the last reigning ...
King Menelik II (1844-1913).
King Menelik II (1844-1913), imperial expansionist and founder of the modern Ethiopian state. After becoming emperor in 1889, Menelik ...
Laying Red Sea telegraph cable at Aden, 1859.
Laying the Red Sea telegraph cable at Aden, off the Arabian coast, in 1859. The extension of telegraph lines across land and sea around the ...
Lord Exmouth with Algerian Dey Umar Pasha.
British naval commander Lord Exmouth (left) negotiating with Algerian Dey Umar Pasha (seated) at the time of the British bombardment of Algiers ...
Moroccans students with teacher in Quranic school.
A class of young Moroccans gathered around their teacher in a Quranic school in 1938. Islam was an important unifying bond among the ...
Muhammad Ali, the founder of modern Egypt.
Muhammad Ali (1769-1849), the founder of modern Egypt. This Albanian soldier maneuvered his way to political power in 1805 in the aftermath of ...
Muhammad V (1910-1961), king of Morocco.
Muhammad V (1910-1961), king of Morocco. Muhammad succeeded his father to the throne in 1927, a time when Morocco was under French tutelage. He ...
Napoleon III at Cathedral of Algiers.
Emperor Napoleon III arriving at the Cathedral of Algiers in 1860. Algeria came to be regarded as an extension of France during the colonial ...
Old King's Castle at Gondar in Ethiopia.
The Old King's Castle at Gondar in the highlands of Ethiopia. These impressive ruins stand as monuments to the power and wealth of the ...
Political poster from the Cairo Punch .
A political poster published by the Cairo Punch , comparing British actions in Egypt to French actions in Morocco in the early 20th century. ...
Retreating British troops in the desert.
Retreating British troops in the desert. As the seesaw war continued, the Afrika Korps, which had been substantially reinforced, launched a ...
Shells from French ship explode near U.S. cruiser.
Shells from the French battleship Jean Bart explode near a U.S. cruiser (left, making smoke) off Casablanca. On November 8, 1942, U.S. and ...
Sultan of Morocco on his way to Kutubia Mosque.
The Sultan of Morocco on his way to the Kutubia Mosque at Fez in the late 19th century. Morocco, the westernmost country of the Maghreb (the ...
The Battle of the Nile, August 1-3, 1798.
The Battle of the Nile, between British and French naval fleets, August 1-3, 1798. In the preceding month, a French force under Napoleon ...
The Court of Justice of the King of Shoa.
The Court of Justice of the King of Shoa, ruler of one of three autonomous Abyssinian kingdoms in the early 19th century. The judges listened to ...
The French military campaign in Algeria.
The French military campaign in Algeria soon after the 1830 French conquest. The animosities between France and Algeria heightened after 1827, ...
The Mahdi of the Sudan (1843-1885).
Muhammad Ahmad ibn Abd Allah, the Mahdi of the Sudan (1843-1885). Egyptian imperialism in the Nile Sudan under Khedive Isma'il contributed to ...
The Suez Canal in 1875, six years after it opened.
The Suez Canal in 1875, six years after it opened, showing one of the enormous dredges used in building and clearing the channel. The Canal's ...
The surrender of Italian officers to King Menelik.
The surrender of Italian officers to King Menelik (seated under the umbrella) following the Italian defeat at Adowa in 1896. Enjoying defensive ...
Throne room of the Bardo Palace at Tunis.

The throne room of the Bardo Palace at Tunis, showing the wealth and splendor of traditional Tunisian rulers. Seeking to reform the Tunisian ...

Tukul huts in Ethiopia.

Tukul huts in Ethiopia, showing beautiful multicolored walls and thatched roofs. The great diversity of Ethiopian terrain, ranging from forested ...

Tunis, capital and largest city of Tunisia, 1900.

Tunis, the capital and largest city of Tunisia, around 1900. Situated in the eastern Maghreb, Tunisia has long been shaped by cultural ...

U.S. artillerymen firing a 105mm howitzer.

U.S. artillerymen firing a 105mm howitzer against the Germans at Kasserine Pass in Tunisia, February 1943. Rommel, with reinforcements which had ...

Union Jack is hoisted in Benghazi, Cyrenaica 1941.

The Union Jack is hoisted in Benghazi, the capital of Cyrenaica, February 7, 1941. In a two-month campaign against the Italians, British General ...

Women trading goods in the market of Dire Dawa.

Women trading goods in the market of Dire Dawa, in the Harrar region of northeastern Ethiopia. For centuries women have played an active role as ...

The Middle East to World War II

13th century penbox inlaid with copper and silver.

An artist's version of a brass penbox, inlaid with copper and silver, which was produced in either Iran or Afghanistan in the early 13th century ...

14th c. brass bowl, inlaid with silver and gold.

An artist's version of a hammered brass bowl with silver and gold inlays from early 14th century Iran (Persia). In the early 14th century, Iran ...

17th century sea battle, Europeans vs. Ottomans.

A 17th century sea battle between Europeans and Ottomans, as pictured by an Ottoman painter. The scene illustrates differences in shipbuilding ...

A castle and sunset at Lake Van in eastern Turkey.

A castle and sunset at Lake Van in eastern Turkey. Near here at Manzikert, the Seljuk Turks under Alp Arslan (1063-1072) decisively defeated ...

A drawing of two fettered demons from Iran.

An artist's version of a drawing of two fettered demons from Timurid Iran or Central Asia in the 15th century. Some Muslims believed in spirits ...

A gold bracelet from early 11th century Syria.

An artist's version of a gold bracelet from early 11th century Syria, during the "golden age" of the Islamic civilization. Gold used in pieces ...

A group of adepts of the Mevlevi Sufi.

A group of adepts of the Mevlevi Sufi order performing whirling dances to create a state of spiritual ecstasy. This Sufi order at Konya, Turkey, ...

A map of the Hellenistic empire under Alexander.

A map showing the extent of the Hellenistic empire under Alexander, 323 B.C. (pink), and the Persian empire under Darius I, 521-486 B.C. (shown ...

A map showing the rise of the Ottoman Empire.

A map showing the rise of the Ottoman Empire from its origins around 1300 A.D. to its greatest extent in the 16th ...

A mosque lamp made of gilded and enameled glass.

An artist's version of an Egyptian mosque lamp made of gilded and enameled glass. The original lamp dated from the second quarter of the 14th ...

A painted pitcher showing animals running.

An artist's version of a painted pitcher from Seljuk Iran showing animals running, dating from about 1300 A.D. The Seljuks were Turkish-speaking ...

A portrait of Mustapha Kemal (1881-1938).

A portrait of Mustapha Kemal (1881-1938), also known as Atatürk (Father of the Turks). Kemal was a war hero in World War I as a result of the ...

A Ptolemy map of the then inhabited world.

A Ptolemy map of the then inhabited world. Claudius Ptolemaeus (ca. 90-168) was an Alexandrian astronomer, mathematician and geographer who ...

A variety of fabrics were produced and traded.

An early Turkish painting of a hunting party, the individuals wearing fabrics of various designs and colors. Woven textiles of wool, cotton and ...

A way station for trading caravans.

A caravanserai (also written caravansary), a hostelry or inn surrounding a central courtyard which functioned as a way station for trading ...

A woman judge holding court in Turkey.

A woman judge holding court in Turkey, exemplifying the reforms in the rights of women instituted by Mustapha Kemal between 1924 and 1938. ...

Abd al-Aziz (Ibn Saud, 1880-1953) in 1945.

Abd al-Aziz (Ibn Saud, 1880-1953) as he appeared in 1945. The revival of the Saudi state and Wahhabi Islam in the early 20th century was largely ...

Abdulaziz, The Ottoman Sultan from 1861 to 1876.
Abdulaziz, The Ottoman Sultan from 1861 to 1876. To cover the costs of war and his extravagant spending plans, Abdulaziz borrowed heavily from ...
After the overthrow of the Umayyad dynasty.
A 14th century drawing of a caravan. Following the overthrow of the Umayyad dynasty in 750 A.D. the Abbasid clan took control of the Muslim ...
An anatomical sketch , 1396.
An anatomical sketch showing the pulmonary system of the body, from the Illustrated Anatomy of Muhammad ibn Ahmad Ilyas, a Persian scientist ...
An astrolabe.
An astrolabe. This instrument, developed in the Middle East, was used to make precise measurements of latitude. It was important in astronomy ...
An early Muslim sickroom scene.
A sickroom scene from Ibn Sina's Canon of Medicine (see E 137). Muslim physicians were active in the advancement of surgical techniques, and ...
An intricate gold ewer crafted in Buyid Persia.
An artist's version of an intricate gold ewer crafted in Buyid Persia. The Buyids (also known as the Buwayhids) were a confederation of Shi'ite ...
Ancient subterranean cisterns at Carthage.
Ancient subterranean cisterns at Carthage, the Phoenician city near present-day Tunis. This photograph was taken around ...
Ancient synagogue at Capernaum, modern-day Israel.
An ancient synagogue at Capernaum in modern-day Israel. Small Jewish communities were widely scattered throughout the Middle East in the ...
Axe head, 16-17th century Iran.
An artist's version of a watered steel axe head from 16th-17th century Iran. In the earlier "golden age" of Islamic civilization, Middle Eastern ...
Brass basin with silver, 13th c. Egypt or Syria.
An artist's version of an Ayyubid period turned and hammered brass basin from Egypt or Syria, dated in the 13th century A.D. [The videodisc has ...
Brass candlestick inlaid with silver, from Turkey.
An artist's version of a brass candlestick inlaid with silver from late 13th century Anatolia, now Turkey. This piece was crafted about the ...
Brass ewer inlaid with silver and copper, Syria.
An artist's version of a Syrian hammered brass ewer from the Ayyubid period, 1232 A.D. The Ayyubid dynasty was founded by Salah al-Din (known to ...
British Field Marshal Edmund H. H. Allenby.
British Field Marshal Edmund H. H. Allenby (1861-1936) just before he entered Jerusalem on foot, December 11, 1917. This marked the end of ...
Closeup, Kaaba, center of Great Mosque at Mecca.
A closeup of the Kaaba or cube-shaped structure at the center of the Great Mosque at Mecca. According to Muslim tradition, the sacred "Black ...
Colossal stone heads at Adiyaman, Mount Nemrut.
Colossal stone heads at Adiyaman, Mount Nemrut, in Turkey. A sanctuary was built here during the reign of Antiochus I of Commagene, a ruling ...
Conducting a census in Turkey, October 20, l935.
Conducting a census in Turkey, October 20, l935. Borrowing selectively from European law codes, President Mustapha Kemal aimed to create a ...
Dam, hydroelectric plant on Jordan River in 1932.
A dam and hydroelectric plant on the Jordan River in 1932. Water, always crucially important in the arid lands of the Middle East, has often been ...
Detail from Ibn Sina's Canon of Medicine .
Detail from a page from Ibn Sina's Canon of Medicine showing a doctor visiting a patient and prescribing remedies. Known as Avicenna in the ...
Detail, Pahlavi text Artae Viraz Namak .
Detail from the first page of Pahlavi text of Artae Viraz Namak , the sacred Zoroastrian book. Founded by a Persian prophet, Zoroaster, in the ...
Detail, statue of Ramses II from temple at Luxor.
A detail of the statue of Ramses II from the temple at Luxor. Ramses II ruled Egypt during the 13th century B.C. and is remembered for his ...
Egyptian wall painting depicts conquest of Egypt.
An ancient Egyptian wall painting depicting the conquest of Egypt in predynastic times. Around 3100 B.C. King Menes united the regions of Upper ...
Engraving from Egyptian stele, woman doctor.
Engraving from an Egyptian stele showing a woman doctor treating a boy suffering from a disabling disease. The physician is presenting her ...
Excavations at Carthage in Tunisia.
Excavations at Carthage in Tunisia. A thriving commercial center founded by the Phoenicians around the 8th century B.C., Carthage was the ...
Faisal I (1885-1933), the first King of Iraq.

Faisal I (1885-1933), the first King of Iraq. The son of Emir Husayn of Mecca, Faisal led the Arab Revolt in World War I against Ottoman rule. ...

First congress of Arab women in Jerusalem 1929.
The first congress of Arab women in Jerusalem, October 26, 1929. The women were protesting the harsh British repression of the Palestinians ...

Fortress overlooking Oran, in Algeria.
A fortress overlooking the Algerian coastal city of Oran. For three centuries, the Ottoman Empire struggled with Spain for control of North ...

Goat artwork, 6th/5th century B.C.
An artist's version of two wild goats made of gold, the originals of which dated from 6th/5th century B.C. Persia. [The videodisc has a ...

Hammurabi, King of Babylon.
Hammurabi, King of Babylon, receiving the code of laws from the sun-god Shawash. Unifier of Mesopotamia in the 18th century B.C., Hammurabi was ...

Harbor scene, Istanbul as it appeared in 1830s.
A harbor scene with Istanbul in the background as it appeared in the 1830s. The engraving reveals an interesting mixture of ship design, ...

Islamic artist's vision of paradise.
A 14th century Turkish painting of angels, by Ahmet Musa. The concepts of a final judgment and life in the hereafter were tenets of Islam from ...

Landing of French infantry at Gallipolli, Turkey.
Landing of French infantry at Gallipolli, Turkey, during the Crimean War of 1853 to 1856. A dispute among France, Russia and Turkey over control ...

Mahmud II, the Ottoman sultan from 1808 to 1839.
Mahmud II, the Ottoman sultan from 1808 to 1839. Mahmud came to the throne in the aftermath of the attempted reforms that resulted in the ...

Map of five major ancient Middle East empires.
A map showing the approximate extent of five major ancient empires of the Middle East and northeast Africa: Mycenae-Crete, Babylonia, Hittite, ...

Map showing decline of the Ottoman Empire.
A map showing the decline of the Ottoman Empire between 1683 and ...

Map, Greek (pink) and Roman (buff) empires.
A map showing the extent of the ancient Greek (pink) and Roman (buff) empires, from the 6th century B.C. to the 2nd century ...

Mehmet II, conqueror of Istanbul.
Mehmet II, conqueror of Istanbul. The Ottomans tried to occupy Constantinople, the Byzantine capital, more than once by the mid-15th century, ...

Mid-13th century Syrian brass and silver canteen.
An artist's version of a hammered brass canteen inlaid with silver, probably dating from mid-13th century Syria. This closeup view shows both ...

Montenegrin peasants flee burning villages, 1861.
Montenegrin peasants fleeing their burning villages in 1861. Declining Ottoman power and increasing nationalist agitation created great ...

Monumental ruins, Sasanian palace near Baghdad.
Monumental ruins of the Sasanian palace, Taq Kisra, at Ctesiphon near Baghdad. Ctesiphon had served as winter capital of Persia during the ...

Mosaic, Roman plantation life in North Africa.
A mosaic depicting Roman plantation life in North Africa. This Tunisian mosaic, rich in scenes of daily life, dates from the late 4th century ...

Moses and the Ten Commandments.
Moses and the Ten Commandments. It was Moses who, according to Hebrew tradition, led the Israelites out of Egypt on their long migration to ...

Mosque and tombs of 9th Shi'ite Imams.
This aerial photograph of the mosque and tombs of the 7th and 9th Shi'ite Imams on the outskirts of Baghdad shows the ornate architecture of ...

Muslim girls embroidering, Algiers, ca. 1900.
Muslim girls doing embroidery in Algiers around 1900. Although some girls became literate in traditional Middle Eastern society, their primary ...

Muslim pilgrims encamped in tents at Mecca, 1889.
Muslim pilgrims (hajjis) encamped in tents at Mecca, 1889. This rare early photograph shows the scene at Mecca as hundreds of thousands of ...

Muslim women on the streets of the Casbah, 1900.
Two veiled Muslim women on the streets of the Casbah (Arab Quarter) in Algiers around 1900. The veiling of women, although widespread in the ...

Muslims performing one of five daily prayers.
Muslims performing one of their five daily prayers. Five times a day, when the call to prayer goes out from the mosque , Muslims turn toward ...

Mustapha Kemal gave women political rights.
Among the radical reforms instituted by Mustapha Kemal in Turkey after 1924 were changes in family law and the rights of women. Women were ...

Naval battle, Greek struggle vs. Ottoman rule.
A naval battle during the Greek struggle for independence from Ottoman rule in 1821. Following the consolidation of Ottoman rule in the 16th ...
Open-air Hittite temple at Boghazkoy, Yazilikay.
An open-air Hittite temple at Boghazkoy, Yazilikaya, in central Anatolia, dating from the middle of the 2nd millennium B.C. It was at this ...
Ottoman Bey giving alms to the poor.
Ottoman Bey giving alms to the poor, from a 16th century miniature commissioned by Sultan Ahmed I. Contributing a portion of one's wealth in ...
Page from an ancient copy of the Quran.
A page from the Quran (or Koran) copied in Turkey in 1545. Considered by Muslims to be the direct revelation from Allah as given to Muhammad ...
Painted bowl dating from 10th century Iraq.
An artist's version of a large painted bowl dating from 10th century Iraq, when the Abbasid Caliphs were reigning from Baghdad. The man depicted ...
Painted bowl dating from 12th century Egypt.
An artist's version of a luster painted bowl dating from 12th century Egypt, during the Fatimid rule. The Fatimids, claiming descent from ...
Painted bowl from Kajar Iran in the 19th century.
An artist's version of a painted bowl from Kajar Iran in the 19th century. The Kajars (also written Qajar) were a family of Turkic origin that ...
Palestinians demonstrate vs. Balfour Declaration.
Palestinian Arabs demonstrating against the Balfour Declaration at Jaffa. To Arabs, the 1917 Balfour Declaration lending British support to ...
Pilgrims arriving at Mecca to perform hajj .
Pilgrims arriving at Mecca to perform the hajj . One of the five basic duties or pillars of Islam, the pilgrimage has drawn Muslims from ...
Pilgrims en route to Mecca.
Pilgrims en route to Mecca. This is a European artist's portrayal of the annual celebration surrounding the departure of a group of pilgrims to ...
Plate with painted calligraphy, Samanid Persia.
An artist's version of a plate with painted calligraphy , dating from 10th century Samanid Persia. The Samanid dynasty ruled in northern Iran ...
Police intervene between Arabs and Jews at Jaffa.
Police intervening between Arabs and Jews at Jaffa, November 6, 1933, one of many confrontations in Palestine during the interwar years as Jewish ...
Portuguese fleet attacking Turkish galleys.
A Portuguese fleet attacking a fleet of Turkish galleys near the entrance to the Persian Gulf on August 25, 1554. Following Vasco Da Gama's ...
Pre-Hittite bronze figurine, Anatolia (Turkey).
A pre-Hittite bronze figurine from Anatolia (Turkey) dating from the 3rd millennium B.C. The mother goddess, Arinna, is in the form of a flat ...
Public scribes, 18th century Ottoman Empire.
Public scribes at work in the 18th century Ottoman Empire. The writing profession was an honored craft in Muslim lands, and calligraphy was ...
Pyramid of Chephren and the Sphinx at Giza, Egypt.
The pyramid of Chephren and the Sphinx at Giza, Egypt. It was common to represent the pharoah as a lion; hence, the Sphinx is a symbol of ...
Quranic school in Cairo in the late 19th century.
A Quranic school in Cairo in the late 19th century. Literacy has been highly prized throughout the Islamic world. The educational system was ...
Remains of temple at Ur in present-day Iraq.
The remains of a temple at Ur on the lower Euphrates in present-day Iraq. It is among the oldest edifices in the world; the temple walls were ...
Resting after battle during Turkish revolution.
Soldiers resting after a battle during the 1911 Turkish revolution. A group of Turkish revolutionaries called the "Young Turks" organized the ...
Reza Shah Pahlavi (1878-1944).
Reza Shah Pahlavi (1878-1944) ruled Iran from 1925 to 1941. An obscure military officer, he rose through the ranks and led the overthrow of the ...
Ruins of Timgad, a Roman garrison.
Ruins of Timgad, a Roman garrison town in present-day Algeria. Timgad served as a frontier post for the defense of the cultivated coastal ...
Second Zionist Congress, Basle, Switzerland 1898.
The Second Zionist Congress, meeting in Basle, Switzerland in 1898. At the podium is Theodor Herzl, leader of the Zionist movement to ...
Selim III, Ottoman ruler from 1789 to 1807.
Selim III, Ottoman ruler from 1789 to 1807. Aware of European designs on his domains, Selim III was the first Ottoman ruler to attempt ...
Semitic nomads enter Egypt, 2nd millennium B.C.

Semitic nomads entering Egypt early in the 2nd millennium B.C. Situated at the intersection of Asia, Africa and Europe, the Middle East has ...

Sennacherib laying seige to the city of Lachish.
Sennacherib laying seige to the city of Lachish. Sennacherib was the king of Assyria from 704 to 681 B.C., succeeding his father Sargon II. He ...

Shah Abbas I, also known as Abbas the Great.
Shah Abbas I, also known as Abbas the Great, who ruled Persia from 1587 to 1629. The greatest Safavid ruler, Abbas reorganized and centralized ...

Sharif of Mecca and Governor of Medina.
The Sharif of Mecca and the Governor of Medina in the late 19th century. Although the two western Arabian sanctuaries of Islam, Mecca and ...

Shepherd and flock of sheep near Irbid, Jordan.
A shepherd and his flock of sheep near Irbid, Jordan. Pastoralism has played a key role in Middle Eastern economic life for thousands of years. ...

Shi'ite city of Qom (or Qum) Persia around 1700.
The Shi'ite city of Qom (or Qum) in Persia as it may have appeared around 1700. For centuries Qom has been a spiritual stronghold for the ...

Shi'ite pilgrims thronging the streets of Karbala.
Shi'ite pilgrims thronging the streets of Karbala, Iraq, during the celebration of the birthday of the Twelfth Imam. In the background is the ...

Shopkeepers outside of Mosque of St. Catherine's.
Shopkeepers sit outside their shops in front of the Mosque of St. Catherine's in Tunis, Tunisia, around 1900. Mosques performed similar ...

Silver head of woman from Persia, 1st century B.C.
An artist's version of a silver head of a woman from Persia, the original of which was crafted in the 1st century B.C. or 1st century A.D. [The ...

Sketch of Hanna sailing around Gibraltar.
An artist's imaginary sketch of Hanna sailing around Gibraltar for the west coast of Africa. Hanna, a member of the Carthaginian ruling family, ...

Statue of Virgin Mary at Ephesus, western Turkey.
A statue of the Virgin Mary in a sanctuary at Ephesus in western Turkey. Christianity spread widely through the Middle East in the first ...

Successors to Muhammad expanded Islamic state.
A closer view of the green dome of the Mosque at Medina, where Muhammad is buried. The four successors to Muhammad, known as the "Rightly ...

Sultan Abdulhamid II, ruler of Ottoman Empire.
Sultan Abdulhamid II, ruler of the Ottoman Empire from 1876 to 1909. Governing at a time of severe internal and external pressures on the ...

Sultan Sulayman on a hunting expedition.
Sultan Sulayman (known as the Magnificent or the Lawgiver) on a hunting expedition. Born in 1494, he ruled the Ottoman Empire at its height from ...

Tents of new Jewish immigrants in Palestine 1918.
Tents of newly arrived Jewish immigrants in Palestine around 1918. The Balfour Declaration, expressing support for a Jewish national home, was ...

The al-Azhar Mosque and University, Cairo, Egypt.
The al-Azhar Mosque and University, Cairo, Egypt. Founded over a thousand years ago, al-Azhar is one of the world's oldest universities. Its ...

The amphitheater at Pergamum in western Anatolia.
The amphitheater at Pergamum in western Anatolia (now Turkey). Pergamum became an important center of Greek culture in the 3rd century B.C., ...

The Atatürk Mausoleum in Ankara.
The Atatürk Mausoleum in Ankara. The massive scale of Mustapha Kemal's tomb reflects the enormous role he played in shaping a modern Turkish ...

The Balfour Declaration, dated November 2, 1917.
The Balfour Declaration, dated November 2, 1917. One of the most important documents in the Palestine/Arab-Israeli conflict, this letter from ...

The carved portal of the Ince Minare Medrese.
The carved portal of the Ince Minare Medrese (or school) at Konya, Turkey. The Seljuk Turks began settling in the lands of the Abbasid caliphate ...

The Celsius Library at Ephesus in western Turkey.
The Celsius Library at Ephesus in western Turkey. Ephesus was founded by Greek colonists in the 1st millennium B.C., and became a major ...

The center of the Tijaniyyah Sufi brotherhood.
The center of the Tijaniyyah Sufi brotherhood at Ain Madhi, Algeria. Founded by Ahmad al-Tijani (1737-1815) in the latter part of the 18th ...

The city of Beirut around 1860.
The city of Beirut around 1860. For centuries the mountainous region of Lebanon served as a refuge zone for ethnic and religious minorities, ...

The city of Damascus about 1575.
The city of Damascus about 1575. Once a great center of trade and industry, and formerly capital of the

Umayyad Caliphate, Damascus declined in ...

The huge minaret of the Mosque of Mansur, Algeria.

The huge minaret of the Mosque of Mansur near Tlemcen, Algeria. Built in the 14th century by the Merinid dynasty, the remains of this mosque ...

The Ishak Pasha palace at Dogubeyazit in Turkey.

The Ishak Pasha palace at Dogubeyazit in eastern Turkey, built in the 17th century. Mount Ararat, in the distance, is the legendary mountain on ...

The Karabuk steel plant in Turkey.

The Karabuk steel plant in Turkey. Mustapha Kemal's efforts at economic development were a mixed success. He was among the first leaders of the ...

The King of Persia on his throne.

The King of Persia on his throne. This sketch, representing either a Safavid or Qajar Shah, shows the monarch surrounded by his courtiers. ...

The mosque at Medina, in western Arabia.

The mosque at Medina, in western Arabia, showing the Green Dome where Muhammad, the founder of Islam, is buried. Medina is considered the ...

The Ortakay Mosque at Istanbul, Turkey.

The Ortakay Mosque at Istanbul, Turkey. In the background is the Bosporus Bridge, linking Europe and Asia. This mosque was built in the baroque ...

The Ottoman Sultan Abdulmejid with his vizier.

The Ottoman Sultan Abdulmejid, who reigned at Istanbul from 1839 to 1861, is shown sitting with his vizier or chief minister (on the left) in ...

The Roman amphitheater at El Djem, Tunisia.

The Roman amphitheater at El Djem, Tunisia. During centuries of Roman colonization, the North African provinces witnessed much political, ...

The royal palace at Isfahan, Persia 1880.

The royal palace at Isfahan, Persia, as it appeared around 1880. The enormous buildings and beautiful mosques of this Safavid capital convey ...

The Selimiye Mosque.

The Selimiye Mosque at Edirne, Turkey, which was built by the architect Sinan in the 16th century, conveys the magnificence of Ottoman mosque ...

The shrine of Iman Ali in Najaf near Kufa, Iraq.

The shrine of Iman Ali in Najaf near Kufa, Iraq, showing the place at which Ali, Muhammad's son-in-law, was assassinated. His death in 661 A.D. ...

The Sultanahmet Mosque at Istanbul, Turkey.

The Sultanahmet Mosque (Blue Mosque) at Istanbul, Turkey. This enormous domed structure, surrounded by six minarets , was built by the ...

Theodor Herzl (1860-1904).

Theodor Herzl (1860-1904), the father of modern political Zionism. Herzl was an Austrian journalist and playwright who witnessed the rise of ...

Timur (also known as Tamerlane, (ca. 1336-1405).

Timur (also known as Tamerlane, ca. 1336-1405) created a vast but short-lived empire in southwest Asia at the end of the 14th century. Timur was ...

Tipasa, a Roman port city.

Tipasa, a Roman port city. It was from coastal cities such as this, west of present-day Algiers, that grain, animals and other commodities were ...

Tomb, Sufi mystic poet, Jalal ad-Din Rumi.

The tomb of the great Sufi mystic poet, Jalal ad-Din Rumi, at Konya in Turkey. Rumi, who died in 1273 A.D., founded the Mevlevi Sufi brotherhood ...

Turkey adopting a new alphabet.

Turkey adopting a new alphabet. Atatürk turned Turkey toward the west in numerous ways, changing the calendar, methods of time-keeping, and ...

Turkish infantry unit at rest during World War I.

A Turkish infantry unit at rest during World War I. The strengthening ties between the Ottoman Empire and Germany in the early 20th century ...

Two Arab resistance leaders condemned to death.

Two Arab resistance leaders condemned to death by an Italian tribunal in Tripoli, Libya during the Turko-Italian war of 1911-1912. Ottoman ...

Two of the great stone pyramids at Giza, Egypt.

Two of the great stone pyramids at Giza, Egypt. Erected as tombs for Egyptian pharaohs, the pyramids represent some of the most magnificent and ...

Western artist's portrayal of Muhammad.

A Western artist's portrayal of Muhammad, founder of Islam. Muhammad lived from about 570 to 632 A.D., establishing a new community in western ...

Pakistan, Afghanistan and Asiatic Russia

Overview: Afghanistan, Pakistan, Asiatic Russia.

A brief video Overview of the histories of Afghanistan, Pakistan, Asiatic Russia. Transcript: Like neighboring India, Afghanistan and Pakistan ...

View of Pakistan, Afghanistan, Asiatic Russia.

A global view of Pakistan, Afghanistan, and Asiatic Russia (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

Afghanistan

An Afghan refugee in Pakistan, 1980.
An Afghan refugee in Pakistan, 1980. As a result of the installation of the pro-Soviet regime in Afghanistan, it was estimated that more than ...

Osama bin Laden.
Russia invaded Afghanistan in 1979. For Russia, the war was terribly costly and difficult. After Russian defeat in 1989, extremists advocating ...

Surrender to British of Dost Muhammad, 1840.
The surrender to the British of Dost Muhammad, the Amir (or Shah) of Afghanistan, in 1840. Dost Muhammad and the British subsequently signed a ...

The British army before Kabul.
The British army before Kabul. Afghanistan had been conquered by many foes through the ages. During the 19th century, the British tried to ...

Asiatic Russia

A 1911 Prokudin-Gorsky color photograph.
This 1911 Prokudin-Gorsky color photograph shows the Zlatonist Iron Works (founded in 1747) in the Ural Mountains, and a Russian Orthodox church. ...

A Buryat horseman.
A Buryat horseman. Russian expansion toward the south collided with the ancestors of the Buryat horsemen around Lake Baikal, the deepest fresh ...

A Buryat with his motorcycle.
A Buryat with his motorcycle. A twentieth century descendant of Genghis Khan's hordes in the Buryat area near Lake Baikal uses his Soviet ...

A convict village in Siberia, early 1900s.
A convict village in Siberia, early 1900s. Especially after the attempted coup by the Decembrists in December 1825, Siberia became an important ...

Doctors in Samarkand, early 1900s.
This early 1900s Prokudin-Gorsky color photograph of doctors in Samarkand offers an insight into the complexities of a national polity in which ...

Georgian cavalrymen after capture of Khodzhent.
Georgian cavalrymen after the capture of Khodzhent in 1866. After their humiliation in the Crimean War, the Russians devoted greater military ...

Kirgiz (Kirghiz) nomads near Bukhara.
Kirgiz (Kirghiz) nomads near Bukhara, which today is in Uzbekistan (Uzbekskaya). Russian Central Asia became Soviet Central Asia after the ...

Map, Soviet Union and East and South Asia.
A map of the Soviet Union and East and South Asia. An understanding of the historic Soviet view of Asia is aided by an examination of the ...

Mt. Elbrus in the Caucasus.
Mt. Elbrus in the Caucasus, the highest point in Europe. The Caucasus is the location of the oldest Christian nation, the Armenians. Their ...

Nomads in Turkestan, ca. 1890.
Nomads in Turkestan, ca. 1890. In the course of the 18th and 19th centuries Russia slowly gained control of the area known as Kazakhstan, most ...

Port of Batumi, Black Sea terminus for oil.
The port of Batumi, the Black Sea terminus for oil from the Baku area. In the nineteenth century, Russia became one of the great oil-producing ...

President Pervez Musharraf of Pakistan.
Pakistan's President Pervez Musharraf was born in Delhi in August 1943. Former prime minister Benazir Bhutto appointed him Director-General of ...

Russian troops on the Afghan border in 1886.
Russian troops on the Afghan border in 1886. The pacification of the Turkmen tribesmen resulted in tension between Russia and the British Empire. ...

Siberian Eskimos at East Cape, on the Bering Sea.
A group of Siberian Eskimos at the East Cape, on the Bering Sea. The Russian penetration of Siberia was disruptive of traditional native life, ...

The ancient Georgian capital of Mtskhet.
The ancient Georgian capital of Mtskhet. The second Christian state in the Caucasus is Georgia, also known as Iberia. The Georgians call ...

The Azova siege.
The Azova siege. This fortress on the Sea of Azov was a key point of struggle between the Turkish and Russian empires in the 17th and 18th ...

The city of Tyumen in 1911.
The city of Tyumen in 1911. With Yermak's conquest of Sibir, the exploration and conquest of Siberia began in earnest. Much of the money and ...

The Japanese military advance in Siberia.
The Japanese military advance in Siberia, as shown in a 1919 Japanese print. Russian imperial ambitions

were shattered by defeat in the ...

The Khivan expedition.

The Khivan expedition. In 1868 Bukhara fell to Russian troops; Khiva fell in 1873 and Kokand in 1876, but the Turkmen tribesmen were not fully ...

The Kremlin in Moscow.

The Kremlin in Moscow. Thundering across the steppe came the terrifying hordes of mounted warriors who destroyed cities and slaughtered entire ...

The U.S. war in Afghanistan, 2002.

The Taliban regime in Afghanistan had provided al-Qaeda terrorists safe haven and support. In response to the attacks of September 11, 2001, ...

The Ukrainian steppe.

The Ukrainian steppe. The geographical distinctions between Europe and Asia have not been as important in historical developments as has been the ...

The World Trade Center attack, 9-11-2001.

Terrorists carried out the most destructive attacks on the U.S. in its history September 11th, 2001, when four hijacked airliners crashed into ...

Tiflis, Georgia.

Tiflis, Georgia. In 1879, Joseph Vissarionovich Dzhugashvili was born at Gori in Georgia; he was known to history as Stalin, or the man of steel. ...

Timur's tomb, the Gur-i-Mir in Samarkand.

Timur's tomb, the Gur-i-Mir in Samarkand, is considered one of the most perfectly constructed buildings in the world. Timur's tomb was opened by ...

Trans-Siberian Railroad station in Vladivostok.

The Trans-Siberian Railroad station in Vladivostok, 1922. Tension concerning the border between Russia and China continued, due to Russian ...

Ulugh Beg had many cultural achievements.

Ulugh Beg's madrasah, a school or college building in Samarkand, built between 1417 and 1420. The grandson of Timur and the governor of ...

Yermak in Siberia.

Yermak in Siberia. In 1480 the Grand Duke of Muscovy, Ivan III, renounced the suzerainty of the Golden Horde, which had settled in Crimea after ...

Pakistan

A busy street in modern Lahore.

A busy street in modern Lahore, n.d. About 70% of the people in Pakistan live in the countryside, but cities have grown, as exemplified by this ...

A street in Srinagar, Kashmir, ca. 1857.

A street in Srinagar, Kashmir, ca. 1857. Because of its cool mountain climate, this city was very popular as a summer resort for the officials of ...

Badshahi Mosque, at Lahore.

The Badshahi Mosque , at Lahore, built by Emperor ...

Hydraulic press at Foundry and Forge Co..

A hydraulic press and operator at the Heavy Foundry and Forge Company in Texila, Pakistan. The Pakistan Industrial Development corporation was ...

Interior decoration of the Wazir Khan mosque.

A closeup of the interior decoration of the Wazir Khan mosque in Lahore, Pakistan, displaying geometrical ...

Lahore, the second-largest city in Pakistan.

Lahore, the second-largest city in Pakistan, ca. 1874. The great mosque built by Emperor Aurangzeb in 1673 appears at the rear right. The ...

Mohammad Ali Jinnah (1876-1948).

Mohammad Ali Jinnah (1876-1948). The founder of Pakistan, Jinnah studied law in England and on his return to India joined the Indian National ...

Mohammad Ayub Khan, president Pakistan (1958-69).

Mohammad Ayub Khan, president of Pakistan from 1958 to 1969. Ayub was the commander-in-chief of the army when he led a military coup, proclaimed ...

Mohammad Zia ul-Haq.

Mohammad Zia ul-Haq, President of Pakistan 1978-88, addressing the United Nations General Assembly, 1985. An army general, he came to power ...

Muslims leave India, 1947.

Muslims leave India, 1947. Just as Hindus fled to India after the establishment of Pakistan, millions of Muslims migrated to the Islamic ...

Parliament House in Islamabad.

Parliament House in Islamabad, or the city of Islam , which replaced Karachi as the capital of Pakistan in 1967. The word Pakistan, meaning ...

Political map shows Pakistan & Western neighbors.

A political map showing Pakistan and its neighbors to the west, including the Persian Gulf ...

Terraced agricultural fields in northern Pakistan.

Terraced agricultural fields in the northern areas of Pakistan, 1984. Over the centuries, this system of terraces on the hilly slopes has been ...

The Karachi shipyard.

The Karachi shipyard, where ocean-going ships are built. At the time of partition , Karachi was selected as the capital of Pakistan because it ...

The Khyber Pass, near Peshawar.

The Khyber Pass, near Peshawar. The Khyber, a 30-mile gap in the Hindu Kush mountains which link northwestern Pakistan with Afghanistan, is ...

The Tarbela Dam under construction in 1974.

The Tarbela Dam under construction in 1974. It is one of the largest earth-filled dams in the world. In water-short Pakistan, water from the ...

UN military observers study a map of Kashmir.

United Nations military observer group members study a map of Kashmir at their headquarters in Srinagar, Kashmir, in ...

Women baking bread in a community kitchen.

Women baking bread in a community kitchen in Karachi. Women in traditional Islamic society lived in special quarters for women. Only their ...

Zulfikar Ali Bhutto.

Zulfikar Ali Bhutto, president (1971-73) and prime minister (1973-77) of Pakistan. Bhutto came from a wealthy family and had been graduated ...

Southeast Asian History

A global view of Southeast Asia.

A global view of Southeast Asia (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...

Video Overview The history of Southeast Asia.

A brief video Overview of the history of Southeast Asia, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: The people of Southeast Asia have ...

History of Bangladesh

Children and pigs on a street in Bangladesh, 1973.

Children and pigs on a street in Bangladesh, 1973. Perhaps the poorest country in Asia, Bangladesh is afflicted with many of the very difficult ...

Grain being transported to market, ca. 1970.

Grain being transported to market, ca. 1970. Land reform has made Bangladesh a country of small farmers. The law of inheritance decrees that ...

Hand processing of jute.

A stage in the laborious hand processing of jute, an important cash crop. After soaking the jute in water for about 18 days, farmers separate ...

Malnourished refugees waiting for food.

Malnourished refugees are shown waiting in line for food at a government distribution center. The chronic poverty in this area was worsened by a ...

Massacred intellectuals, Bangladesh, 1971.

Massacred intellectuals, Bangladesh, 1971. The independence of Bangladesh was achieved at the expense of approximately a million lives. As many ...

Pakistani army surrenders, December 1971.

The surrender of the Pakistani army to the Bangladesh-India joint command, December 16, 1971. The fighting that led to the formation of ...

President of Bangladesh at the U.N. in 1985.

Mohammad Ershad Hossain, then President of Bangladesh, addressing the United Nations General Assembly in October, 1985. As the army chief of ...

President Ziaur Rahman of Bangladesh.

President Ziaur Rahman of Bangladesh. After the assassination of Sheikh Mujibur Rahman in 1975, there were two more counter-coups. General ...

Sheikh Mujibur Rahman.

Sheikh Mujibur Rahman. It was his leadership and the popularity of his political party, the Awami League, that led to the formation of ...

History of Cambodia (Kampuchea)

1985 map, mainland Southeast Asia.

A 1985 political map of mainland Southeast Asia, showing the location of Kampuchea (or Cambodia). This country covers an area of 69,898 square ...

Buddhist monks and their students.

Buddhist monks and their students at the Pali preparatory school in a Cambodian monastery, n.d. The Khmer people, who live in the region of ...

Khmer Republic U.N. delegatesin 1973.

The delegates of the Khmer Republic at the United Nations General Assembly, September 1973. In 1970 Prince Norodom Sihanouk was deposed in a ...

Royal ballet, Phnom Penh, early 1900s.

The royal ballet in the temple at Phnom Penh, early ...

Vietnamese refugees Phnom Penh, 1972.

Vietnamese refugees in a detention area at Phnom Penh, Cambodia, 1972. Cambodia was a French colony from 1853 to 1953. Prince Norodom Sihanouk, ...

History of Indonesia

A 1986 political map of Southeast Asia.

A 1986 political map of Southeast Asia, in which Indonesia appears in green. All of Indonesia is within 10 degrees of the Equator ...

A closeup of bas reliefs at Borobudur.
A closeup of bas reliefs at Borobudur. The symbolism of this imposing structure has been explained by many writers; according to some Buddhists, ...

A Javanese idol carver, about 1920.
A Javanese idol carver, about 1920. Wood carvers in Indonesia are highly skilled. Indonesian sculpture has been influenced by the Hindus and ...

A Muslim mosque on Java.
A Muslim mosque on Java. The Islamic religion, which is the predominant religion in Indonesia, has been influenced there by the older ...

A sugar factory on Java, about 1920.
A sugar factory on Java, about 1920. Sugar cane had been grown on Java; however, new plantation methods and the opening of the Suez Canal in ...

A village scene on Sumatra about 1842.
A village scene on Sumatra about 1842. This westernmost and second-largest island of Indonesia was the center of the Indianized Buddhist Kingdom ...

Achmed Sukarno, Indonesia's first president.
Achmed Sukarno (1901-1970) played a leading role in the establishment of the Republic of Indonesia, and became its first president. His role ...

An Indonesian man works in a rice paddy.
An Indonesian man works in a rice paddy, n.d. The large Indonesian population makes it necessary for every bit of available land to be utilized ...

Balinese dancers perform for Pres. Reagan.
Balinese dancers perform for U.S. President Ronald Reagan and Mrs. Reagan and Indonesian President and Mrs. Suharto, on the island of Bali, April ...

Batavia about 1818.
Batavia about 1818, by James Whittle and R. H. Laurie. The United Provinces of Netherlands (1795-1806) had been called the Batavian Republic. ...

Batavia, around 1900.
Batavia, around 1900. Now renamed Jakarta, the city has several colonial office buildings as reminders of her past, and as a result of a ...

Batavia, the capital of Java, early 1900s.
A waterway in Batavia, the capital of Java, early 1900s. Parts of Batavia were built on swamp land, so canals were used in those areas for ...

Borobudur, the Buddhist temple on Java.
Borobudur, the great Buddhist temple on the island of Java. Borobudur, which is the largest Buddhist structure in the world and the most famous ...

Brunei, the capital of Borneo, around 1857.
Brunei, the capital of Borneo, the third largest island in the world, around 1857. The Dutch steadily increased their influence in the area, and ...

Chinese captain's funeral, about 1815.
The funeral of the captain of the Chinese at Batavia, as drawn on the spot about 1815. By the 18th century, a large group of Chinese was present ...

Coffee plantation on Java, early 1900s.
The road into a coffee plantation on the island of Java, early 1900s. Coffee planting was introduced by the Dutch in Java with great success; by ...

Drake received by Sultan, Moluccas Islands.
Sir Francis Drake being received by the Sultan of Ternate in the Moluccas Islands, ca. l579. The Portuguese had established their first fortress ...

Dutch man, native wife, daughter, in Batavia.
A Dutch man and his native wife and daughter in Batavia, around 1923. For the first two centuries of Dutch rule, relations between the Dutch ...

Dutch ships, Moluccas harbor, around 1842.
Dutch ships in a Moluccas harbor, around 1842. The Moluccas, or the Spice Islands, had become famous in Europe because of the huge profits ...

Dutch troops occupy a village on Java, 1947.
Dutch troops occupy a village on Java, 1947. Opinion in the U.S. and most of the world was against the two Dutch "police ...

Dutch-built tram with revolutionary slogan.
A Dutch-built local tram in Surabaya, Java, with a revolutionary slogan, about 1945. The sign on the tram reads, "Up Republic Indonesia." In ...

Fabric decorated by the Batik method.
Fabric decorated by the Batik method. Similar Batik designs or patterns have been used for centuries in Indonesia. The process involves the ...

Gathering bark from quinine trees, ca. 1923.
Gathering bark from quinine trees, Java, about 1923. The chinchona tree, the source of quinine, was among the plantation crops in Java; its bark ...

Gathering rubber sap on Java, 1914.
Gathering rubber sap on Java, 1914. After World War I, new varieties of rubber plants and improvements in

the methods of production made ...

General Suharto, President of Indonesia 1968-.
General T. N. J. Suharto, President of Indonesia 1968-. In 1965 General Suharto had led the army in crushing a pro-Peking communist coup, in ...

Government opium factory, Batavia, ca. 1928.
The government opium factory at Batavia, about 1928. Opium is a commodity which was widely sold and used in the East, and governmental ...

Hindu temples on Java, ca. 9th century A.D.
Hindu temples on Java, dated approximately 9th century A.D. This shrine of the Hindu god Siva belonged to the Prambanan group of temples, which ...

Indonesians celebrate independence, 1949.
Indonesians celebrate their independence in Jakarta (formerly Batavia), August 17, 1949. After four years of fighting, interrupted only by ...

Indonesians in action against Dutch, 1946.
Indonesians in action against the Dutch in ...

Java, 1947: "We are a Free people..."
On the island of Java, 1947, a sign in English and Indonesian reads, "We are a Free people. Away with colonies for the right of self ...

Masked performers in a Javanese theater.
A group of masked performers in a Javanese theater. Dance dramas have been popular in Indonesia since ancient times; special costumes and ...

Palace of the Governor-General.
The palace of the Governor-General of the Netherlands East Indies at Batavia. The Dutch East India Company was formed around 1600. Many local ...

Picking tea on Javanese plantation, ca. 1900.
Picking tea on a Javanese plantation, around 1900. Tea was one of several new crops which had been introduced into Java; after several ...

Sukarno and Khruschev, 1960.
President Achmed Sukarno and Premier Nikita Khruschev of the Soviet Union in Indonesia, 1960. The PKI, or Indonesian Communist party, had become ...

Sultan of Java and his brother, early 1900s.
The Sultan of Java, who ruled under Dutch supervision, and his elder brother walking arm in arm in a ceremonial procession, in the early ...

The castle and wharf at Batavia around 1815.
The castle and wharf at Batavia around 1815. The Dutch exploited Java and the Indonesian islands throughout the 17th and 18th centuries by means ...

The Dutch depart West New Guinea, 1962.
The Dutch depart from West New Guinea (West Irian), 1962. When the Dutch had transferred sovereignty to the Republic of Indonesia in 1949, they ...

The new British possession of Borneo, 1847.
Hoisting the Union Jack in the new British possession of Borneo, 1847. The British shared the possession of Borneo with the Dutch, but the Dutch ...

The Town House at Batavia, Java, about 1815.
The Town House at Batavia, Java, about 1815. The Dutch East India Company had founded the fort of Batavia around 1619; except for a brief ...

History of Laos

King of Laos presents medals, March 1961.
The King of Laos pins medals on service personnel, March 1961. Laos had received independence from the French in 1953. The communist Pathet Lao ...

King of Laos, French Commissioner, 1949.
The King of Laos and the French High Commissioner salute the flag of the Republican guard in Paris, July 1949. In 1893, Laos had become a ...

Rice paddy near Vientiane in Laos, 1977.
Farmers plow a rice paddy near Vientiane in Laos, 1977. Rice is the most important agricultural product of ...

History of Malaysia

A car stopped at a road barrier.
A car stopped at a road barrier. Communist-led bandits and terrorist activities began disrupting the Malayan economy around 1948. This largely ...

A Malay proa or prau , about 1840.
A Malay proa or prau , about 1840. According to some sources, Malay rulers controlled the trade routes between the Indian Ocean and the Gulf ...

British attack on Borneo pirates, ca. 1845.
A British admiral's night attack on Borneo pirates, around 1845. When Sir James Brooke became the "white raja" of Sarawak, he faced many ...

British expedition against Malays, ca. 1876.
The British expedition against the Malays of Perak, about 1876. A treaty which had been signed between the British and Raja Abdullah, one of the ...

British Secretariat, Kuala Lumpur ca. 1940.
The British Secretariat at Kuala Lumpur around 1940. Kuala Lumpur was the seat of government for the

Federation of Malaya, which the British ...

Chinese residents.

Chinese residents. In colonial days, the Chinese constituted up to 45% of the population of Malaya. According to Francis Light, the founder of ...

Creating Federation of Malaya, 1948.

The Sultan of Selangor signs the agreement creating the Federation of Malaya, 1948. The Federation imposed strict citizenship limitations, ...

Drying coffee, Straits Settlements, ca. 1897.

Drying coffee in the Straits Settlements, about ...

East Indians, Malayan rubber estate, 1940's.

East Indian workers on a Malayan rubber estate in the 1940's. The immigration of Indians to the Straits Settlements was legalized in 1872, but ...

Georgetown, 1811.

Georgetown, 1811. Penang (Georgetown) is situated on an island off the northwest coast of Malaya. The British acquired Penang Island in 1786. ...

Government House, Sarawak, around 1864.

Government House, Sarawak, around 1864. Sir James Brooke also subdued the head-hunters, abolished slavery, and encouraged trade with the British ...

Inauguration of University of Malaya, 1949.

The inauguration of the University of Malaya, 1949. Two pre-existing colleges in Singapore, the Raffles College and the King Edward VII ...

Malacca around 1551.

Malacca around 1551, as drawn by the Portuguese Gaspar Correia. The port of Malacca was founded to the north of the present Singapore in 1403. ...

Malacca in the 17th century.

Malacca in the 17th century. The Dutch took Malacca from the Portuguese in 1641; during this period, it was the chief trading center of the ...

Malacca, 1811.

Malacca, 1811. British interest in the region had increased, and the British occupied Malacca in 1795. The Dutch resented the British intrusion ...

Malaysian government officials in the 1920s.

A group of Malaysian government officials in the 1920s. Although in formal attire, they are ...

Penang residence of a white man, ca. 1879.

The Penang residence of a white man, ca. ...

Rattan processing in Malaya, ca. 1897.

Rattan processing in Malaya, ca. 1897. Rattan is a cane plant about two inches in diameter which is used for chairs, mats, hats and similar ...

Royal Marine commandos, Sarawak, 1964.

A group of British Royal Marine commandos in Sarawak, January 1964. The new Federation of Malaysia came into being with British support in ...

Sir James Brooke, the "White Raja."

Sir James Brooke, the "White Raja" of Sarawak on north Borneo. Sarawak was a dependency of Brunei; in 1841 it was ceded by the Sultan of Brunei ...

The house and mill of a Chinese miller, ca. 1814.

The house and mill of Mr. Amee, a Chinese miller, on Pruang island, three miles north of Georgetown, about 1814. Georgetown had been established ...

Tin mines near Kuala Lumpur, around 1897.

Tin mines near Kuala Lumpur, around 1897. Tin has been mined on the Malay Peninsula since the Bronze Age, having been mixed with copper to make ...

History of Myanmar (Burma)

U Nu, Prime Minister of Burma, 1955.

Nu, Thakin (U Nu), the Prime Minister of Burma, photographed while surrounded by the press at United Nations headquarters in 1955. Burma had ...

British land at Rangoon (now Yangon), 1824.

The first landing of British troops at Rangoon (now Yangon), 1824. Britain was interested in Burma primarily because of its proximity to India. ...

Buddhist monastery, education center.

Buddhist monasteries such as this one played the leading part in educating the youth of Burma under the old monarchies. Throughout Burmese ...

Buddhist monks collect food from devotees.

Buddhist monks with bowls used for collecting food from devotees. Burma is one of the most thoroughly Buddhist countries in the world. The form ...

Burmese Dancing girls, 1920.

Dancing girls, 1920. Women in Burma have enjoyed a great deal of freedom and social equality; dancers and actors alike have always been popular. ...

Burmese envoy arrives at Calcutta in 1854.

The arrival of a Burmese envoy at Calcutta in 1854 with a letter from the Burmese king. During the three Anglo-Burmese wars the British extended ...

Burmese princes, 1903.

A royal group of Burmese princes, posed at the Durbar (or Assembly) in Delhi, India, 1903, which celebrated the coronation of Edward VII as King ...

Burmese prisoners, early 1920s.

Burmese prisoners, early 1920s. This was a time of unrest in Burma. After King Thibaw was exiled to India in 1885, Burma did not have a king ...

Elephants moving heavy timbers.

Elephants moving heavy timbers. Elephants are used a great deal in Burma as beasts of burden; horses and mules are also important to farmers. ...

Farming in Burma ca. 1983.

Farming in Burma, ca. 1983. Here, oxen and a traditional plow are being used by a farmer in lower Burma to prepare a seed bed for the sowing of ...

King of Burma receives India's envoy, 1858.

The reception of the envoy from India by the King of Burma in his audience hall, ca. 1858. Burma at that time was being ruled by the Konbaung ...

King Thibaw and his queen Supayalat.

King Thibaw and his queen Supayalat. Thibaw, the last King of Burma, succeeded his father in 1878 in the course of much violence and strife. He ...

Merchant Street in Rangoon (now Yangon), ca. 1868.

Merchant Street in Rangoon (now Yangon), ca. 1868. This city was not the capital of any of the ancient Burmese dynasties. Originally a fishing ...

Oil wells in Burma, ca. 1903.

Oil wells in Burma, ca. 1903. The royal oil monopoly in upper Burma was taken over by the Burma oil company after the country came under British ...

Pagan, Myanmar (Burma).

Pagan, Myanmar (Burma). King Anawratha (1044-77 A.D.), the founder of the Pagan dynasty, established Pagan on the bank of the Irrawaddy river ...

Shan tribesmen.

Shan tribesmen. The Pagan dynasty, which controlled and unified lower and upper Burma from the city of Pagan, was unpopular with the Shan (Thai) ...

Shwe Dagon, one of the largest temples.

The Shwe Dagon or Golden Pagoda in Rangoon (Yangon), one of the largest Buddhist temples in the world. According to legend, it was built during ...

Sir Stafford Cripps.

Sir Stafford Cripps, the British Chancellor of the Exchequer, addresses a group of Burmese in London on the day when Burma achieved independence. ...

U.N. Secretary-General U Thant of Burma.

The first Secretary-General of the United Nations from the non-Western world, U Thant of Burma. He served in this post from 1962 to 1971. He ...

History of Singapore

Family group of wealthy Malays, ca. 1923.

A family group of ten wealthy Malays, ca. 1923. About fifteen out of every hundred persons in Singapore are ...

Harbor and village of Singapore, ca. 1842.

The harbor and village of Singapore, ca. 1842. The Straits Settlements, Penang, Malacca and Singapore, were important to the British beginning ...

Inauguration of new dock at Singapore, 1869.

The inauguration of a new dock at Singapore, 1869. The opening of the Suez Canal in that year, and the availability of faster and more dependable ...

Lee Kuan Yew, Singapore Prime Minister.

Lee Kuan Yew, Prime Minister of the Republic of Singapore, n.d. Singapore, whose people are predominantly Chinese, was a part of the Federation ...

Nutmeg trees, Singapore, early 1900s.

Nutmeg trees, Singapore, early 1900s. Only a small part of the land in Singapore is used for farming; most foodstuffs must be imported. The ...

Public housing development at Jurong, 1965.

A public housing development at Jurong, Singapore, 1965. The Jurong industrial estate is one of the largest manufacturing complexes in ...

Raffles Place in Singapore City, 1936.

Raffles Place in Singapore City, 1936.

CR Cross-reference: Two images concerning Singapore in World War II are located at N 125 and ...

Rubber trees on Singapore, ca. 1923.

Rubber trees on Singapore, ca. 1923. Rubber planting never became as popular in Singapore as it did in Malaysia; there are some plantations in ...

Singapore in the 1880's.

Singapore in the 1880's. This harbor scene shows a much more crowded port than in the 1840's picture, and many more buildings on the shore. In ...

Sir Stamford Raffles.

Sir Stamford Raffles, the British East India Company agent whose efforts led to the purchase of Singapore in

1819. By agreement with the Dutch, ...

The British island of Singapore, ca. 1825.

The British island of Singapore, ca. 1825. The port of Malacca, on the west coast of the Malay peninsula, had been founded about 1409; the ...

History of Sri Lanka

1551 Portuguese drawing of Columbo, Ceylon.

A 1551 Portuguese drawing of Columbo, Ceylon. Columbo is the capital of the Democratic Socialist Republic of Sri Lanka, an underdeveloped and ...

A Buddhist temple in Sri Lanka.

A Buddhist temple in Sri Lanka. The Mahavamsa , a dynastic history written by Buddhist monks, explains that Mahinda, the son of Emperor Asoka ...

A church near Colombo, Sri Lanka, ca. 1853.

A church near Colombo, Sri Lanka, ca. 1853. The Portuguese had brought Catholicism to Sri Lanka during the period of their domination, and the ...

A scene from the Ramayana .

A scene from the Ramayana . According to this Indian epic, Ravana, the demon king of Sri Lanka, kidnapped Sita, the wife of king Rama. ...

British harbor, Colombo, Sri Lanka, ca. 1864.

The British custom-house and inner harbor at Colombo, Sri Lanka, ca. 1864. Sri Lanka's position in the Indian Ocean made it a popular stopover ...

Buddhist temple, 9th-12th century.

Ruins of a Buddhist temple entrance in the medieval capital of Polonnaruwa, of about the 9th-12th century. Polonnaruwa and Anuradhapura are the ...

Colombo, Sri Lanka, ca. 1698.

Colombo, Sri Lanka, ca. 1698. Colombo had been under the Portuguese since 1505, but the Dutch merchants began competing for its trade, and in ...

Medirigiriya.

Medirigiriya, 25 miles north of Polonnaruwa, is the site of the ancient Malalasiri vihara (multicell living quarters, usually caves cut into a ...

Siamese priests visit Sri Lanka, ca. 1907.

Siamese pilgrim priests visiting Sri Lanka with their offerings, ca. 1907. Sri Lanka enjoys a position of great prestige in the Buddhist world ...

Sri Lanka's President in 1991.

His Excellency Ranasignhe Premadasa, President of Sri Lanka in 1991. In 1959 Prime Minister S. W. R. D. Bandaranaike was assassinated; his ...

The Bodhi tree, a design on an Indian stamp.

The Bodhi tree, a design on an Indian stamp. A sample of the original Bodhi tree under which Buddha received enlightenment was sent to Sri Lanka ...

The gem trade, Sri Lanka.

The gem trade, Sri Lanka. Precious and semi-precious stones such as rubies, sapphires and moonstones have been mined in Sri Lanka for centuries. ...

The Industrial School in Sri Lanka, ca. 1853.

The Industrial School in Sri Lanka, ca. 1853. Built with the help of contributions from people in England, this complex was called "Hope ...

Transporting bananas, Sri Lanka, 1903.

Transporting bananas, Sri Lanka, 1903. The economy of this country depends to a large extent on the export of plantation crops. In addition to ...

Wooden handicraft making in Sri Lanka.

Wooden handicraft making in Sri Lanka. Wooden string puppets up to three feet in height were a part of the folk entertainment in Sri Lanka. They ...

History of Thailand

A busy street in Bangkok in the 1980s.

A busy street in Bangkok in the 1980s. The city is Thailand's leading industrial, commercial and cultural metropolis. Bangkok is a colorful, ...

A general view of Bangkok, around 1893.

A general view of Bangkok, around 1893. Barely 200 years ago, Bangkok was only a fishing village. After its founding in 1782, the city had no ...

Bangkok during Bowaradet's revolt, 1933.

Royalist troops and tanks in Bangkok during the revolt by Prince Bowaradet in November 1933. King Prajadhipok's cousin, Prince Bowaradet, who ...

Chulalongkorn, reigned 1868-1910.

Chulalongkorn (Rama V, reigned 1868-1910), the son of Mongkut. His principal aim was to modernize the Thai political and social structure; he ...

Effort to replace opium as Thai cash crop.

The effort to replace opium as a cash crop in Thailand. The world's first cooperative effort between the United Nations and a national ...

Elephants moving logs in the Mai Sai area.

Elephants bringing logs out of the forest in the Mai Sai area. These logs will be floated down river to sawmills. Tame elephants have been used ...

King Mongkut of Siam, reigned 1851-68.
King Mongkut of Siam (Rama IV, reigned 1851-68). A very cultured man, King Mongkut had spent 27 years in a Buddhist monastery before assuming ...
King Vajiravudh (Rama VI, reigned 1910-25).
King Vajiravudh (Rama VI, reigned 1910-25), at his coronation. He had been educated in England. The principal feature of his reign was his ...
Modern improvements in Thai village, 1965.
Modern improvements (street light at right, telephone pole at left) in a northeast Thailand village, 1965. Thailand strongly supported the U.S. ...
Rama VII, reigned 1925-35, in Paris, 1934.
King Prajadhipok of Siam (Rama VII, reigned 1925-35) in Paris, April 1934. His reign saw the end of a long era of absolute monarchs in Siam. A ...
Refugee child in Thailand hospital, 1979.
A malnourished refugee child in a camp hospital in Thailand, 1979. Much has been done in the field of health care in Thailand, and by Asian ...
Rev. Gutzlaff's residence, Bangkok, ca. 1840.
The residence of Rev. Charles Gutzlaff at Bangkok, around 1840. Christian missionaries were not very successful in converting the Thai people, ...
Rice cultivation in Thailand, 1979.
Water buffaloes and traditional plows are used in rice cultivation in Thailand, 1979. About 90% of the arable land in Thailand is planted with ...
School girls in Siam with American teacher.
School girls in Siam and their American teacher, n.d. The missionaries established European-model schools in Siam, introducing modern teaching ...
Siamese heir Rama VIII, reigned 1935-46.
The heir to the Siamese throne, King Ananda Mahidol (Rama VIII, reigned 1935-46). King Ananda became a monarch at the age of ten following the ...
The city of Bangkok, about 1825.
The city of Bangkok, about 1825. Bangkok, the capital of modern Thailand, is not an ancient city. In 1767 the then capital, Ayutthaya, fell ...
The Golden Buddha at Wat Trimitr, Bangkok.
The Golden Buddha at Wat Trimitr, Bangkok. This beautiful statue, ten feet high, is made of 5.5 tons of solid gold. Although its origin is not ...
The Great Pagoda, Bangkok.
The Great Pagoda, Bangkok. Its Temple of Dawn (Wat Arun) is one of the most striking landmarks in Bangkok. It is especially stunning in the ...
The King of Siam's state barge, ca. 1875.
The King of Siam's state barge, ca. 1875. Inland waterways, rivers and canals, have always played an important role in Thailand. In ancient ...
Vietnamese refugees in Thailand, July 1979.
Vietnamese refugees living at the Songkhla camp in Thailand, July 1979. Beginning in 1975, as a result of the end of the U.S.-Vietnam war, camps ...

History of Vietnam

A jungle patrol base in April 1961.
A jungle patrol base in April 1961, with U.S. advisers and Vietnamese officers. The task of the advisers was a difficult one, to transform the ...
A man smoking opium in Indochina, ca. 1900.
A man smoking opium in Indochina, around 1900. Opium smoking has been illegal in Vietnam for many years, but an illicit opium traffic ...
A mandarin in Saigon, South Vietnam.
A mandarin in Saigon, South Vietnam, n.d. The term mandarin was used to describe a high official of imperial China. Vietnam was conquered by ...
A street scene in Hanoi ca. 1951.
A street scene in Hanoi, the capital of the Socialist Republic of Vietnam, ca. 1951. Although situated on the Red River, Hanoi is not a main ...
B-52 on 4,800-mile trip to bomb Vietnam.
A USAF B-52 bomber takes off from a Marianas islands base for the 4,800-mile round trip to bomb Vietnam, 1967. It is estimated that each of ...
Coal mining around 1930.
Coal mining at the Alexandre coal mine, Tonkin, Indo-China, around 1930. Coal is the most important mineral product of Vietnam. Most of the ...
Dock, Haiphong, Indochina, prior to 1936.
Dock facilities at Haiphong, Tonkin, Indochina, prior to 1936. Around 1873, Francis Garnier secured Haiphong and four other places of importance ...
Emperor Bao Dai and Premier Huu Tran Van.
Emperor Bao Dai (C.) and Premier Huu Tran Van (L.), the governor of South Vietnam, who later became Bao Dai's premier. Bao Dai was the last ...
Foot-driven water wheel in a rice paddy.
Annamite men operating a foot-driven water wheel to raise water from one rice paddy to another, ...

French paratroopers in the Plain of Jars.
French paratroopers crossing a river in the Plain of Jars, n.d. By 1954, in spite of U.S. subsidies of around 80% of the French costs, their ...
French return to Vietnam, November 1945.
The French return to Vietnam after the end of World War II, November 1945. At the Potsdam Conference in July 1945, Vietnam was divided into two ...
Helicopter evacuates wounded, Vietnam war.
A helicopter lands to pick up American wounded during the Vietnam war, which was the first war in which helicopters were extensively used. In ...
Ho Chi Minh calls on Mao in 1964.
President Ho Chi Minh of North Vietnam calls on Chairman Mao Tse-Tung of China at the National People's Congress in 1964. Ho, one of the most ...
Ho Chi Minh, French President, Paris 1946.
Ho Chi Minh, President of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam at Hanoi, shakes hands with French President Georges Bidault at the conclusion of ...
John F. Kennedy and Dean Rusk.
U.S. President John F. Kennedy and Dean Rusk, March 1962. Rusk was secretary of state throughout the Kennedy and Johnson administrations. He ...
Johnson announces that he will not run.
President Lyndon Johnson calls for a bombing pause in Vietnam, March 31, 1968, and announces that he will not be a candidate for re-election. In ...
Johnsons, Diems Saigon palace, May 1961.
The Lyndon Johnsons and the Diems at the palace in Saigon, May 1961, with Mr. and Mrs. Stephen Smith. In 1961, President Diem sent an urgent ...
Kissinger announces "peace is at hand."
U.S. Secretary of State (1973-77) Henry Kissinger announces that "peace is at hand" in October, 1972, perhaps not coincidentally just before the ...
Lyndon B. Johnson.
Lyndon B. Johnson, the President of the United States from 1963 to 1970, makes a public statement on the Tonkin Gulf incident, August 4, 1964. ...
Ngo Dinh Diem with Eisenhower.
Ngo Dinh Diem (1901-1963), President of South Vietnam 1955-1963, with U.S. President Dwight Eisenhower at National Airport, Washington, 1957. ...
Plowing a rice field with a water buffalo.
Plowing a rice field with a water buffalo, n.d. South Vietnam is often referred to as the rice bowl of Vietnam. The techniques for growing ...
Protestors at the Pentagon, 1967.
Protestors at the Pentagon's mall entrance during the October 22, 1967 antiwar demonstrations. In the late 1960s, dissent and antiwar sentiment ...
Richard M. Nixon.
Richard M. Nixon, 37th president of the United States (1969-74), announces the Paris Accords calling for U.S. withdrawal from Vietnam, January ...
South Vietnamese village in 1959.
These South Vietnamese village homes, photographed in 1959, show the way of life of the rural Vietnamese ...
The harbor of Saigon around 1887.
The harbor of Saigon (now Ho Chi Minh City), around 1887. French missionaries began coming to Indochina in the seventeenth century. In 1858 some ...
U.S. search and destroy mission.
Men of the U.S. Seventh Cavalry on a search and destroy mission in the An Lho valley of South Vietnam on May 16, 1967, during Operation ...
U.S. Special Forces in Vietnam.
U.S. Special Forces in Vietnam, June 1964. Also known as the Green Berets, the special forces were one of the best-known groups of advisers; ...
Vietnamese protest French occupation, 1950.
The Vietnamese protest the French occupation, February ...
Vietnamese rubber plantation around 1927.
A rubber plantation 65 miles from Saigon, around 1927. Rubber (grown mainly in South Vietnam) and rice are the country's two major exports, but ...
Westmoreland, Bundy and General Kanh.
General William C. Westmoreland, McGeorge Bundy and General Kanh of South Vietnam, photographed at Camp Holloway, South Vietnam, in February ...
Zbigniew Brzezinski.
Zbigniew Brzezinski, national security adviser to U.S. President Jimmy Carter, who dashed Hanoi's hopes of gaining U.S. diplomatic ...

The Philippines and Oceania (The Pacific Islands)

A global view of the Philippines and Oceania.
A global view of the Philippines and Oceania (there is no corresponding image in the World History ...
Video Overview The history of the Philippines.
A brief video Overview of the history of the Philippines, from ancient times to the present. Transcript: The

Spanish established colonial rule ...

History of the Philippines

1544 map of Magellan's voyage.
A 1544 map of Magellan's voyage around the world, in the course of which he rediscovered the Philippine Islands. Ferdinand Magellan (ca. ...

A garotte in use around 1899.
A garotte in use, possibly against a Filipino revolutionary, around 1899. The garotte was a device used for torture and capital punishment ...

A street scene in Manila, 1899.
A street scene in Manila, 1899. The Treaty of Paris in 1898 ended the Spanish-American war, and the Philippines were taken over by the United ...

Burning Aguinaldo's palace, 1899.
The burning of Aguinaldo's palace during the Philippine Insurrection, 1899. Emilio Aguinaldo had proclaimed an independent Republic of the ...

Emilio Aguinaldo with mother and son.
Emilio Aguinaldo with his mother and son on the porch of their home. Aguinaldo (1869-1964) was a popular and resolute leader of the Philippine ...

Ferdinand and Imelda Marcos.
Ferdinand E. Marcos, president of the Philippines 1965-1986, and his wife, Imelda Marcos, 1982. Marcos states that he was a guerrilla leader ...

General Wood addresses legislature.
General Leonard Wood reads a message before the Philippine legislature. General Wood (1860-1927) served in various military capacities in the ...

MacArthur, independence ceremonies, 1949.
General Douglas MacArthur speaking during the Philippine independence ceremonies Seated behind MacArthur in this photograph are (L.) Manuel ...

Magellan battles Mactan inhabitants, 1521.
Magellan and his men battle the inhabitants of Mactan in the Philippines, 1521. Magellan was killed during an encounter with the natives, who ...

Manuel Quezon, Sergio Osmeno, P. Guevara.
Manuel Quezon (1878-1944) with Sergio Osmeno, speaker of the Philippine House, and P. Guevara, the Philippine Resident Commissioner in ...

Moro soldiers.
Moro soldiers. The Moros are Muslim Filipinos who live mostly in the southern islands of Palawan, Mindanao and Sulu. Their religious laws, ...

Philippine "Insurgents" captured by U.S..
"Insurgents" captured by the American forces at Pasay and Paranque, during the Philippine Insurrection. This armed uprising against U.S. rule ...

Poor boys at a Manila garbage dump, 1978.
Poor boys collect usable articles at a Manila garbage dump, 1978. Poverty in urban centers such as Manila is a major problem which has been ...

President Corazon Cojuangco Aquino, 1986.
Corazon Cojuangco Aquino, President of the Philippines beginning in 1986. Mrs. Aquino is the widow of the popular opposition leader Benigno S. ...

San Sebastian church in Manila.
San Sebastian church in Manila. The studded spires of this Gothic church exemplify the wealth and power of the Church in the Philippines, where ...

Scouts who had led Americans to Aguinaldo.
The Macabebe scouts on Luzon who had led the Americans to Aguinaldo's hideout in 1901. During the Philippine Insurrection, many Filipino groups ...

Subic Bay naval base, 1966.
A scene at the Subic Bay naval base in the Philippines, 1966. An American base was established here in 1901; it became an important part of the ...

The city of Manila in the 18th century.
The city of Manila in the 18th century. A young Spanish officer, Miguel Lopez de Legaspi, is said to have founded the city in 1571 on the ruins ...

The native district of Manila is burned, 1899.
The native district of Manila is burned, 1899. The Philippine Insurrection was a hard-fought war, with an estimated 200,000 Filipino casualties ...

The Philippine legislature, 1916.
The Philippine legislature in joint session, 1916. After subduing the Filipino guerrilla activity, the U.S. began the creation of ...

The Sultan of Sulu, 1910.
The Sultan of Sulu, 1910. The Sulu province comprises the 369 named and about 500 unnamed islands of the Sulu Archipelago, an area which was ...

The U.S.S. Olympia in Manila Bay in 1898.
In 1898, during the Spanish-American War, the U.S.S. Olympia , Admiral Dewey's flagship, is shown at anchor in Manila Bay. In the Battle of ...

Women in Dole pineapple factory, 1967.

Women at work in the Dole pineapple factory in Manila, 1967. High quality pineapples are grown in the Philippines, and modern canning methods ...

Women voting in the Philippines, June 1935.
A group of women voting on the constitutional plebiscite establishing women's suffrage in the Philippines, June 1935. The first bill to grant ...

Wreck of Spanish ship sunk in Manila Bay.
The wreck of the Rena Christina , a Spanish warship which was sunk in Manila Bay by the U.S. fleet. The old and ill-equipped Spanish ships were ...

Oceania (Pacific Islands)

A scene at the Gilbert Islands.
A scene at the Gilbert Islands, a group of Pacific islands which were a British protectorate from 1892 to 1916. They became part of the Republic ...

Bikini islanders' new home, Rongerik Atoll.
A new home for a Bikini island family, built on Rongerik Atoll by the U.S. Navy. The islanders were evacuated from Bikini against their wills; ...

Captain Cook lands in Hawaiian islands.
Native boats approaching the ships of British Captain James Cook upon his landing at the Hawaiian island of Kauai (Kaueye), ca. 1778. He was ...

Cartoon, German-U.S. Samoa disagreement.
A Judge (New York) cartoon about the German-U.S. disagreement over Samoa, February 9, 1889. The Samoan Islands were discovered for the West ...

East Indians cut sugar cane on Fiji, 1940s.
East Indian workers cutting sugar cane on Fiji in the 1940s. Sugar has been the main export crop in Fiji over the past century, accounting for ...

Fijians bring bananas to town for export.
Native Fijians bring bananas to town on bamboo rafts for packing and export. Agriculture is the primary occupation of the Fijian people; other ...

French nuclear test explosion, South Pacific.
A French nuclear test explosion at Mururoa Atoll in the South Pacific, n.d. In spite of massive protests, including official objections from ...

Government buildings at Suva, Fiji, 1940.
An aerial view of the government buildings at Suva, on the island of Fiji, around 1940. Suva is the capital and principal city of the republic ...

Hawaii becomes a state.
U.S. President Dwight Eisenhower signs legislation making Hawaii the 50th state of the U.S., August 21, 1959. In the picture, seated at left, is ...

H-bomb explosion, Bikini atoll.
A U.S. hydrogen bomb explosion at Bikini atoll, 1946. Bikini, in the Marshall islands in the west central Pacific, is a part of the U.S. ...

Hoisting British flag at New Guinea, 1888.
Hoisting the British flag at New Guinea, 1888. In 1884 the southern half of eastern New Guinea became a British protectorate, which was ...

Honolulu, Hawaii, around 1850.
Honolulu, Hawaii, around 1850. The capital of the state of Hawaii, Honolulu is located on the island of Oahu. According to legend, the city was ...

King Kamehameha I, a great Hawaiian king.
King Kamehameha I, who was one of the greatest Hawaiian kings. He became king of the island of Hawaii around 1790, and in a series of brilliant ...

Louis Antoine de Bougainville (1729-1811).
Louis Antoine de Bougainville (1729-1811), the famed French Pacific explorer for whom Bougainville Island in the Solomons and the adjacent strait ...

Natives of New Caledonia around 1875.
Natives of New Caledonia, a French territory in the South Pacific, around 1875. British Captain Cook, who visited the island in 1774, described ...

Palace of the king of the Sandwich islands.
The palace of the king of the Sandwich islands at Honolulu. British Captain James Cook named the islands the Sandwich Islands in honor of his ...

Papeete, Tahiti, around 1850.
Papeete, Tahiti, around 1850. Tahiti, the largest and best-known island in French Polynesia in the South Pacific, was settled by Polynesians in ...

Queen Lilioukalani, last Hawaiian queen.
Queen Lilioukalani, the last reigning queen of the Hawaiian Islands (1891-93). American planters, who had established sugar plantations in ...

Queen Salote of Tonga, in the 1940s.
Queen Salote of the island kingdom of Tonga, in the 1940s. Tonga comprises about 170 islands in the southwest Pacific, which were visited by ...

Sandwich Islands 1811 sailing canoe.
A Sandwich Islands twin-hulled sailing canoe with masked rowers, ca. 1811. The Polynesians sailed in canoes similar to this one across the vast ...

William Bligh of H.M.S. Bounty in 1789.

William Bligh (1754-1817), the British naval lieutenant who was involved in the infamous mutiny on the ship Bounty in 1789. Bligh had been ...